

17 ~~8. 4. 10~~  
~~11. 5. 1~~  
The Portugues Asia :

OR, THE  
HISTORY  
OF THE  
Discovery and Conquest  
OF  
INDIA  
BY THE  
PORTUGUES;  
CONTAINING

All their Discoveries from the Coast of  
*Africk*, to the farthest Parts of *China* and  
*Japan* ; all their Battels by Sea and Land,  
Sieges and other Memorable Actions ; a  
Description of those Countries, and many  
Particulars of the Religion, Government  
and Customs of the Natives, &c.

In Three Tomes.

Written in Spanish by *Manuel de Faria y Sousa*,  
of the Order of Christ.

Translated into English by *Cap. John Stevens*.

*Tome the First.*

LONDON, Printed for C. Brome, at the Sign of  
the *Gln*, at the *West-End* of *St. Pauls*. 1695.





ONE

---

---

TO HER  
Most Sacred Majesty  
**CATHARINE,**  
Queen Dowager  
O F  
**ENGLAND, &c.**

---

*Madam,*

**I**T is not the sense of the mighty Favours I stand indebted for, that moves me to presume to dedicate this Work to Your Majesty ; for Debts to Sovereigns are above all acknowledgement. Nor is it

*The Dedication.*

Protection I sue for under so  
August a Patroness; the Subject  
carries its own Security and De-  
fence along with it, though per-  
haps the Stile be not proportio-  
nable to such Glorious Matter.  
It is Justice that leads me to lay  
this most Wonderful History at  
Your Majesties Royal Feet. To  
whom could I tender the unpa-  
rall'd Undertaking of Your  
Kingly Progenitors, but to You  
their inimitable Offspring? To  
whom could I offer up the Most  
Heroick Atchievements of Your  
Forefathers Subjects, but to You  
the Most Glorious of their Line?  
In fine, to whom could I yield  
up the more than Human Con-  
quests of Your Country, but to  
You the Most Admired of the  
Portugues Race? These are the  
Motives, these the Inducements  
that prevail with me, not only  
to

*The Dedication.*

to hope, but even to assure my self of a Gracious Acceptance of this, though seemingly Presumptuous, yet in reality most submissive Tender of my First Undertaking in this Nature. A Subject so Glorious does not need the Ornament of Retorick. The Sacred History, than which none can be more surprizing or wonderful, is delivered to us in the plainest of Language. Great Actions are still Great, though exprest in the meanest Words: But mean Undertakings require a florid Stile to gain them something of Reputation. The Subject is worthy Your Majesties acceptance, though the Style may not appear equal; that will make amends for this, and the lowness of the later will be hid by the grandeur of the former. I would not confess a Guilt by

*The Dedication.*

begging Pardon; a wilful Offence against so much Goodness would deserve no Mercy. God himself whose Great Attribute is Mercy, does not hear our Cries, if we persist to provoke his Wrath. Why then should I expect Forgiveness, if I knowingly Transgressed? Yet being sensible of my own demerit, I must cast my self upon Your Majesties unlimited Goodness, thence to expect my Doom; which cannot fail being happy, having its dependence on so Horoick and Truly Royal a Spirit. In fine, Madam, I will neither be my own Accuser, nor pretend to justifie or make good my Cause; the decision of it I can leave to no more Tender or Favourable Judge than Your Majesty, in whom my Failings  
may



*The Dedication.*

may be assured to find Compassion, from whom my Zeal may hope to reap Honour, and to whom all Increase of Glory and Happiness is wished by,

*Madam,*

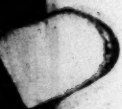
*Your Majesties*

*most dutiful and*

*most obedient Subject*

*and Servant,*

*John Stevens.*



---

---

T H E  
TRANSLATOR  
T O T H E  
R E A D E R.

**I** Will not tire the Reader with a long Harangue in commendation of this History ; it will, I hope, speak for it self. Nor will I go about to vindicate the Translation ; let it take its Chance and stand or fall by the Vote of the Ingenious. My design is first, to inform the Reader, that I have reduced this Work to a much lesser compass than the Original Spanish ; yet at the same time nothing of the Historical Part is diminished, perhaps some of the Ornament. I have not omitted the most inconsiderable passage, nor lessned any material circumstances ; all that has been cut off is only long Speeches, for the most part  
never

## The Translator

never thought of by those they are fathered upon, only added by the Author to set out his Work ; tedious Lists of Officers and Gentlemens Names who were present at any Considerable Actions, which Names are of no use to us ; those of the Commanders in Chief, and such as particularly signalized themselves, being sufficient for History ; and some flights and reflections of the Author, which only serve to make up the bulk of a Volume. And thus much said may suffice as to the bringing this Book into so small a compass. The next thing I have to offer is, that though many of the Actions this History contains may at first sight appear incredible, yet we must not therefore immediately conclude it to be fabulous ; for upon second thoughts we shall not only find those very things possible but very practicable. It is hard to persuade such small numbers of Portugueses could defeat such vast Armies, and take Towns fortified and strongly Garrisoned ; but all wonder must cease when we consider the Portugueses were Europeans, always much superior to the Asiaticks for valour ; that those were men enured to continual Wars with the Moors, and consequently well train'd and disciplin'd, these raw and confused Multitudes ; that though  
the

## to the Reader.

*the Indians had Fire Arms, they were far inferiour to the Portugueses in the handling of them; that the Portugueses overcame as much by Policy as by Strength, sowing divisions among those Princes, and dividing their own Subjects from them; that the Natives weary of their subjection to the Moors, were inclinable to change Masters, and try whether the Portugueses were lighter than that till then they had born. To be short, every judicious Person will find reasons enough to convince the possibility of those Actions, since it is allowed Alexander the Great and many others overcame innumerable Multitudes with handfuls of Men. Besides, though the Author sets down the number of Portugueses, I believe he does not always mention the Natives that assisted them, because the Glory of the Conquest belonged to the former. Yet if there be any so hard of belief as still to doubt, I will not be so positive or zealous in the behalf of my Author, as not to grant he may have strained some points, thereby to add to the Honour of his Nation; not so but in the main the Action is real as is demonstrable by their Possessions in Asia, but so as the Circumstances might be somewhat heightned, the more to raise the admiration of those Undertakings.*  
Let



## The Translator, &c.

*Let none upon this score pretend to condemn him as Romantick; for should we examine our own, and all the Histories of the World, we should not find one which hatred or affection has not added to or diminished. I will not be tedious, and shall therefore say no more in relation to the Author; and but one word as to the Translation, which is, that if the Judicious or Learned shall find any fault with it, by any such I shall be glad to be informed of its defects, that they may be amended in the second and third Tomes which will soon follow this, that is my first in this Nature, after several years spent in far different Employments.*

T H E

---

---

T H E

P R E F A C E.

**T**H E narrow Bounds of the Kingdom of *Portugal* could now no longer contain the greatness of its Natives Hearts. Therefore carried on by a Glorious Boldness, they so far extended those limits, that they infinitely exceeded the measure of the first Matter. Great undertakings are subject to the dangers of great disappointments. But Fortune, whose only care it then seemed to be, not to expose them to the Eyes of the World with any disgrace, having measured their strength and capacity, found it necessary to encrease their Dominions by adding to them at one time great part of *Mauritania*; then a greater of *Ethiopia*; at  
ano-

## The Preface.

another time that vast extent of *Asia*, and lastly that not inconsiderable Region of *America*, called *Brazil* or *New Lusitania*. Having conquered the *West*, they passed to the *South*, and having subdued this they went on to the *East*. All they attempted with their Arms, they perfected with their Fortune, who seemed to be listed in their Service. Such was their Conduct in the most difficult Enterprizes, whereby they enlarged themselves so as to have room to breath the greatness of their Spirits, that what in other Nations by reason of its immoderate greatness would have threatned ruin, in this seems a most admirable Ornament of most various matter wherewith the Temple of the Christian Fame is illustrated and adorned. At length these Great Spirits spread themselves over all the Land and Seas, and to make the whole circumference of them their bounds, overrunning that vast distance that is from the Coasts of *Spain* to those of *China*, and filling both the Hemispheres with the Glory of their Name. They followed the Sun from his Setting to his Rising, and equalled his Course. The Exploits performed in this wonderful Course in  
the

## *The Preface.*

the space of 233 Years are the subject of this Second Work, which I now take in Hand, pursuant to what I promised in the first of our *Europe*; the general applause that has met with, calls on me for the performance of this. Here will be seen Actions, by how much the more admirable, the less Credible, and indeed more truly real, than in appearance probable. For though true, it does not seem likely, that sometimes 100 Men indifferently Armed, should encounter great Armies much better provided. These are the Actions which may justly entitle the Performers to be stiled Heroes; a Name since given gratis to whom it was not due. For a great number to overcome a lesser, though equal in Arms and Courage, is rather the effect of Number than Valour, and seems to carry more of Cowardise than Virtue. Hence it is that those who are so overcome, though they lose the Field do not lose the Glory; but if duly weighed, merit the greater Esteem, for that they dared encounter at so great a disadvantage. We may therefore with reason affirm, that the Portugueses on these occasions merited admiration, either as Conquerors or Conquered; as  
Con.

## The Preface.

Conquerors, for having overcome; as Conquered, for having dared much. This had been before their Fate in *Europe* against the *Roman* and *African* Multitudes that overrun all *Spain*. Let us see whether the same Fortune attends them in *Asia*. Without doubt it does. Soon shall we see innumerable Multitudes flying from their small Numbers, and looking back with amazement to see who pursues and destroys them. We shall see them drove by the terror of the Looks, not the Number of those who press them. We shall see Battels fought with such resolution, that neither the Victor shall rejoice, nor the Overcome lament. In Sieges, such barbarous obstinacy, that despairing of Victory, they will burn themselves with all they hold precious, that their Enemies may reap no other Fruit of their Conquest but the dismal spectacles of the Flames. We shall see not only Valour, but Rage and Despair overcome. The toil of coming at the Enemies will be greater sometimes than that of defeating them. We may be sometimes overpowered by Number, not overcome by Valour; for though upon some occasions Fortune forsook all, yet few were forsaken



## *The Preface.*

forfaken of their Courage. Thefe Generous Spirits looked upon the hardships of the Campagne, no otherwife than if they had been the conveniences of their Houfes, and upon doubtful Battels, as fure Victories. With the firft they began to raife, I will not fay Forts, but Draughts of thofe they afterwards erected. To thefe, and chiefly to the Capitol of *Goa* fhall be brought by force, or come through fear, many Princes in Chains, and many by their Embaffadors. Nothing will appear in that Noble City but Triumphs. Nothing lefs in the Triumphs, than the People and Riches of all *Afia*; thefe in the Hands of the Conquerors, and thofe in the Chains of their Captivity. But there is nothing in them we look upon with more delight, than the Elephants loaded with Castles, and the Carriages with Guns, which not long before were our Terror; thefe for their Greatnefs and Number, thofe for their Number and Rarity. Religion, which we value above all, and which was the chief ground of all thefe Undertakings, will be more exalted, trampling upon Idolatry, for at each ftroke of the Evangelical Sword fell a thoufand Idols of the Pagods; and a

(a)                      thoufand

## *The Preface.*

thousand Pagods in the Theaters of Battle. It will appear that many Families held themselves in greater account for being overcome by us, and in consequence thereof the Conquerors and Conquered joined and united in the Sacred Bonds of frequent Marriages; and many overcoming those by whom they had before been defeated, under our Ensigns; and that the Monuments of our Victories are not now Broken-arms and Warlike Engines hanging on Trees upon Mountains, but Cities, Islands and Kingdoms, first groaning under our Feet, and then worshipping our Government. Some warned with the Example of others Ruins, shall prevent their own, by accepting of our Proposals. For in the beginning we invited all to embrace our Amity; esteeming it a greater happiness to gain voluntary Friends, than to make forced Slaves. By express Order from our Kings, we endeavoured to heap great Riches, extend our Dominions, and acquire Glory rather with Politick Reason, than Odious Violence. We modestly courted those, we could invade forcibly. In fine, we shall see the Portugues Arms not content with the *West*, piercing through and spreading over the *East*;  
sailing

## *The Preface.*

sailing unknown Seas, trampling Provinces and incredible Difficulties; discovering sundry Nations, planting among them firm Fortresses and other Buildings: And lastly, giving Honour to their Country, and Light to the World with their Discoveries and Conquests in so remote Regions. Thus taming various and obstinate Spirits and Humours, with Persuasions when they prevailed, and with Valour when they refused to hearken to us, we shall of sundry Elements compose a Body worthy those Noble Spirits that sailed thither, worthy the Zeal of those Kings who sent, and the Magnificence of the Captains that Commanded them. All the Actions shall be such as deserve not only to be equalized with the most Heroick of Antiquity, but even that these should be forgot to celebrate those, were not Mankind subject to give more applause to what he hears, than what he sees. What is past is celebrated with Memory and Admiration, the present is treated with Oblivion and Envy. We are persuaded the one lessens, the other instructs us; and even in the present there are Examples as proper for our instructions, as the most famous in decayed Antiquity.

## *The Preface.*

This Book without doubt will prove it. I will answer it. As the Power of Man is by so much the weaker, by how much God declares himself more offended at them; so it is the more powerful, by how much he is the more propitious. His Omnipotence seemed now to be pleased with these his Conquerors, (for indeed they were his) so that indeed it will always be doubtful which was most to be admired, whether their Conquering so much, being so few, or the daring Attempt, it being no greater a Number. Such was the success wherewith they gained every thing, it looked as if the World had chose them to be the Universal Lords. Nor did they seem to be sent as Souldiers, with Arms to wage War, but as Legislators, with power to give Laws. Who then will admire that the whole circumference of the Earth should submit to so small a number of such Heroick Spirits, they being rather led by Auspicious Fates, than Valiant Generals? Never had they fallen from this height, had not their own oversights and distractions been the cause of their fall, that Divine Goodness that had so much exalted being no longer able to bear with them. This will



## *The Preface.*

will oblige me to relate some things, which it were more proper for the Honour of my Country should be buried in oblivion than published ; but the sincerity of History requires nakedness, and gives as good an Example to Posterity, condemning vicious and base Actions, as commending the Just and Virtuous. Fortune having been lavishly liberal to us, we had no less than reason to suspect she could not be very durable. For Human Affairs having no fixt point, it is plain that those who arrive at the height, must again fall as low as the various accidents of volubility it self can carry them. As great as the Exploits, were the Riches obtained by them, and as great as these the Vices they ushered in. The cause of these great Evils is, that there are Men, who not content to possess what they only could have wished, would obtain what even in wishes ought not to be sought after. We shall see some, who coming poor into the wealthy Indies, left them poor that they might come out most wealthy. This is grievous, but much more to be lamented it is, that the Example of many who came from thence without Fortunes when in its splendor, was of no force to curb



## *The Preface.*

others from making vast Estates when groaning under its Calamities. The beginnings will not be very bulky, for the greatest things never had great beginnings. All things in their Original are small and almost contemptible. The greatest Exploit and most glorious Victory had its beginning in the Stable of *Bethlehem*.

THE

---

---

T H E  
CONTENTS.

T O M. I. P A R T. I.

---

CHAP. I.

**D** *Discoveries under Prince Henry,  
from the Year 1412. till the Year  
1448.* Page 1

CHAP. II.

*Discoveries under King Alfonso the Fifth,  
from the Year 1448. to the Year 1471.*  
19

CHAP. III.

*Discoveries and Conquests under King John  
the Second, from the Year 1481. till  
the Year 1495.* 12

( a 4 )

CHAP.

# The Contents.

## CHAP. IV.

*Discoveries under King Emanuel, from the Tear 1497. when he sent out Vasco de Gama, till the Tear 1500.* 36

## CHAP. V.

*Conquests under King Emanuel, from the Tear 1500 till the Tear 1502.* 53

## CHAP. VI.

*Conquests under King Emanuel, from the Tear 1501, to the Tear 1503.* 63

## CHAP. VII.

*Conquests under King Emanuel, from the Tear 1503, till the Tear 1505.* 70

## CHAP. VIII.

*Conquests under King Emanuel, from the Tear 1505, and beginning of the Government of Don Francisco de Almeyda, first Governour and Viceroy of India, till the Tear 1509.* 82

## CHAP. IX.

*Conquests under King Emanuel in the Tear 1506, and Government of the Viceroy Don Francisco de Almeyda.* 93

CHAP.

## The Contents.

### CHAP. X.

*A Continuation of the Conquests the same Year 1506. and the Government of the same Viceroy Don Francisco de Almeyda.*

104

---

## TOM. I. PART II.

### CHAP. I.

**C***onquests in India under King Emanuel, from the Year 1506, till the Year 1508, the Viceroy Don Francisco still Governing, and entring upon the Glorious Exploits of the Great Alfonso de Albuquerque, and the Famous Tristan de Cuna.*

III

### CHAP. II.

*Conquests under King Emanuel, the Year 1508. during the Government of the Viceroy Don Francisco de Almeyda, and continuing the Exploits of Alfonso de Albuquerque.*

126

CHAP.

## The Contents.

### CHAP. III.

*Conquests under King Emanuel the Tear 1508 and 1509. A continuation of the Government of the Viceroy Don Francisco de Ameyda, and Exploits of Alfonso de Albuquerque.* 139

### CHAP. IV.

*Conquests under King Emanuel, the Tear 1510, Alfonso de Albuquerque now Governing India, who held it from the Tear 1509, till the Tear 1515.* 154

### CHAP. V.

*A continuation of the Conquest of the same Tear 1510, Albuquerque Governing, and King Emanuel Reigning.* 163

### CHAP. VI.

*A Continuation of the Conquests under King Emanuel, the Tear 1511, and the Government of Alfonso de Albuquerque.* 175

### CHAP. VII.

*Conquests in India under King Emanuel, from the Tear 1511, till the Tear 1513, Alfonso de Albuquerque still Governing.* 184  
CHAP.



# The Contents.

## CHAP. VIII.

*A Continuation of the Conquests of the Tear  
1513, the Reign of King Emanuel, and  
Government of Alfonso de Albuquerque.*  
190

## CHAP. IX.

*A Continuation of the Conquests, the Tear  
1513, till the Tear 1514, the same  
King Reigning in Portugal, and the  
same Governour Ruling India.* 194

## CHAP. X.

*From the Tear 1514, till the Tear 1515,  
concluding with the Government and  
Life of the Great Alfonso de Albuquerque.*  
201

---

## TOM. I. PART. III.

### CHAP. I.

**C***onquests under King Emanuel, from  
the Tear 1515, to the Tear 1518:  
Lope Soarez de Albergaria, being Go-  
vernour.* 209

CHAP.

## The Contents.

### CHAP. II.

*A Continuation of what was done in India the same Tear 1517, during the Government of the same Lope Soarez de Albergaria.* 217

### CHAP. III.

*From the Tear 1518, till the Tear 1520, ending the Government of Lope Soarez de Albergaria, and beginning that of James Lopez de Sequeira, King Emanuel still reigning.* 224

### CHAP. IV.

*A Continuation of the Government of James Lopez de Sequeira, from the Tear 1520, till the Tear 1521, and Reign of King Emanuel.* 233

### CHAP. V.

*A Continuation of the Government of James Lopez de Sequeira, the Tear 1521, and Reign of King Emanuel.* 241

### CHAP. VI.

*Continues still the Government of James Lopez de Sequeira, and Reign of King Emanuel.* 253

CHAP.

## The Contents.

### C H A P. VII.

*The Government of D. Duarte de Meneses,  
in the Tear 1522, when began the Reign  
of King John III.* 262

### C H A P. VIII.

*Continues the Government of D. Duarte de  
Meneses, from the Tear 1522, till the  
Tear 1524. King John then Reigning* 272

### C H A P. IX.

*The Government of the Viceroy D. Vasco  
de Gama, and of the Governour D. En-  
rique de Meneses, till the Tear 1524,  
that of 25, in the Reign of King John  
the Third.* 279

### C H A P. X.

*Concludes the Government of D. Enrique de  
Meneses in the Tear 1526, King John  
the Third Reigning.* 289

TOM.

# The Contents.

## TOM. I. PART IV.

### CHAP. I.

**T**HE Government of Lope Vaz de Sampayo, from the Tear 1526, to the Tear 1527, and Reign of King John the Third. 296

### CHAP. II.

Continues the Government of Lope Vaz de Sampayo, from the Tear 1527, till the Tear 1529, King John the Third Reigning. 310

### CHAP. III.

The Government of Nuno de Cuna, from the Tear 1529, to the Tear 1538, in the Reign of King John the Third. 326

### CHAP. IV.

Continues the Government of Nuno de Cuna, from the Tear 1529, in the Reign of King John the Third. 336

### CHAP. V.

Continues the Government of Nuno de Cuna, and Reign of King John the Third. 361  
CHAP.

# The Contents.

## CHAP. VI.

*Continues the Government of Nuno de Cuna, from the Year 1534, in the Reign of King John the Third.* 371

## CHAP. VII.

*Continues the Government of Nuno de Cuna, the same Year 1536, in the Reign of King John the Third.* 388

## CHAP. VIII.

*Still Continues the Government of Nuno de Cuna, from the Year 1537, till the Year 1538, in the Reign of King John the Third.* 402

## CHAP. IX.

*Continues still the Government of Nuno de Cuna, the same Year 1538, in the Reign of King John the Third.* 415

## CHAP. X.

*Which ends the Government of Nuno de Cuna, this same Year 1538, in the Reign of King John the Third, and concludes the First Tome.* 433

THE





---

---

T H E  
*Portugues A S I A.*

---

TOM. I. PART I.

---

C H A P. I.

*Discoveries under Prince Henry, from the  
Tear 1412. till the Tear 1448.*

I. **L**IKE an Impetuous Torrent  
did the Mahometans spread  
themselves over the Lesser  
*Asia*, after the Catholick  
Arms had expelled them our  
Provinces. The Christian  
Princes busied in destroying each other,  
looked on their Progress, without attempt-  
ing to put any stop to the Current; when  
the Kings of *Portugal*, as the first who had  
B shaken

shaken off themselves the Burthen of those Barbarians, and the first who passed over to crush them in *Africk* (obeying the Decrees of Heaven which required it) undertook to be the first who should stop their proceedings in *Asia*.

2. Prince *Henry*, fifth Son of King *John* the First, accompanied his Father in the glorious taking of *Ceuta*, which was *Anno* 1415. and had a considerable share in the honour of this Victory, as well in regard of his Courage as Conduct, it being doubtful which was most predominant in him, and therefore the more to be admired, for that at this time he was but in the 21<sup>th</sup> year of his Age. At his return from thence, he brought so great an inclination (being already most skilful in the Mathematicks) to discover New Lands and Seas, that he spent above 40 years in this study, and vast Sums of Mony in bringing Masters from all parts, and Discoverers, and sending Vessels to his Discoveries. Being very well read in Geography, and having examined many who had travelled much of the World (chiefly the Moors of *Fez* and *Morocco*) he got some information of the *Arabs* who border on the Desarts of *Africk*, and of the *Azanagi* and Kingdom of *Jalof*, near the border of *Guinea*. That he might more wholly apply himself to these affairs, he chose for his abode the Town of *Ternacabal* in the Kingdom of *Algarve*, on Cape *Sagres*, whence the prospect of the Ocean stirred up his Hopes and Endeavours. Going to  
Bed

Bed one night, with his thoughts fixt on these Designs; in the morning ( as if he had received some heavenly assurance of success ) he with all haste gave Orders for fitting out two Ships, which, and some other, passed not beyond Cape *Bojador*, 60 1412. Leagues beyond Cape *Nam*, then the Bounds of the Spanish Navigation. This Cape was 1415. so called by *Gilianes*, who first passed it, because it stretches it self out so far, viz. almost 40 Leagues to the Westward, which in Spanish is called *Bojar*, and thence the Cape *Bojador*. Its running so far Westward was also the cause that none passed it before; as also that off of it for about 6 Leagues, runs a strong Current, which breaking upon the Sands, rises high and makes a great Sea. This terrified all, not considering, that keeping off at Sea they might turn the Point. The Prince encountering the greatest difficulty, sent *John Gonzales Zarco* and *Tristan Vaz* in a small Ship, with Orders to coast along the *Barbary* shore, till they had passed that formidable Cape, discovering all the Land, which according to the Opinions of Learned Men and Information of *Arabs*, was concluded to run on till under the Equinoctial. Before they 1418. reached the Coast of *Africk*, they met with such violent Storms, they doubted not being swallowed by the Waves. The Weather obliged them not to follow their Orders, and without knowing where they were, fell in with the Island, which they called *Puerto Santo*, or Holy Haven, for such it appeared

to them after the Storm. This is a little Island, not far to the Northward of the *Madera*. The Inhabitants they found neither well Civiliz'd nor quite Barbarous, but the Soil very fertile. The Prince joyful with this News and the hopes the Discoverers gave him, sent them again, and with them *Bartholomew Pereftrello*, with three Ships, with Seeds to sow, and Cattle to stock the Place. They put in two Rabbers, which increased in such manner in two years space, that the Corn and Plants being destroyed by them, it was found more convenient to unpeople, than inhabit the Island.

1419.

3. *Pereftrello* returned home. *John Gonzales* and *Tristan Vaz*, making another Voyage, discovered afar off something like a Cloud, and directing their Course to it, found an Island covered with all manner of Trees, whence they gave it the name *Madera*, which in Spanish is Wood. This Island for Extent, pleasant Air and Plenty is the chief in that Western Ocean. Each Discoverer entred a different part of the Island, and each had a Grant of that Part from the Prince, with the Title of Captain. *Tristan* gave his name to that Point where he landed, and *John Gonzales* took to himself the Title of *Camara de Lobos*, or Den of Wolves, because of a Cave he found at landing, which seemed to be the habitation of those Beasts. The Prince gave the Island of *Puerto Santo* to *Pereftrello* to people, which proved in vain by reason of the vast multitude of Rabbits. The Discoverers of *Madera*



*dira* began to settle their Plantation, by firing part of that Wood that filled the Island; and the Flame took such possession, that it burnt seven years continually, and was seen far off in Smoak and Sparks like *Mount Aetna*; so that afterwards the Island being plentiful of Grain, the greatest want the Inhabitants suffered was of Wood, there having been nothing else in it before. There were Churches built, and now there is a Cathedral. King *Duarte*, Brother to the Prince, gave him the Island, and afterwards the Spiritualities thereof to the Military Order of Christ.

4. The Prince had spent twelve years endeavouring the discovery of *Guinea*, and was now much encouraged by the discovery of these two Islands, though many condemned his undertakings, objecting, That the Land he looked for, was only Deserts, like those of *Libia*; that if any reached those Parts, they would turn black; that King *Fohn*, his Father, had invited Strangers to plant in *Portugal*, so far from sending out people, of which the Country was in want; that God had appointed those Countries for the habitation of Wild Beasts, which might appear by that they were expelled that new Island by the Rabbits. All this time the Prince's undertakings were not only censured, but almost fruitless, till he sent *Galianez* in a Barque, who passed that, till then, Invincible Cape *Boxador*, which action was then in the common Opinion looked upon not inferior to the labours of *Hercules*.

1434.

5. *Gilianes* returned in his Barque with *Alonso Gonzales Balday*, in a bigger Vessel than the former, and passed 30 Leagues beyond the Cape, where landing, they saw a great track of Men and Camels. Without any further knowledge they returned home, giving the name of *Angra de Ruyvos* to that Bay, ( in English, *Bay of Gurnets* ) because they found there great quantity of that Fish.

1435.

The next year the Design was continued, and they passed twelve Leagues farther. Here putting ashore two Men on Horseback, who going on till the Afternoon, saw nineteen Men with Javelins, who fled and were pursued, and some wounded, and one of the Portugueses; the first Blood spilt in those Parts. *Baldaya* having notice thereof, went ashore, but in vain, for the Moors fled; in the Cave where the Moors had been were found some things of inconsiderable value, but esteemed as an Omen of greater advantages. They run on twelve Leagues farther, where at the Mouth of a River they saw so many Sea-Wolves, they judged them to be 5000; they killed many, and brought the Skins, which being a novelty, were then had in esteem. Going farther into the Land, they found Fishing Nets drying, but no People, and their Provisions being spent, they were obliged to return to their Prince without any further progress.

1440.

6. *Antony Gonzales* was sent back to the place of the Sea-Wolves, with orders to load his Vessel with their Skins. One night he

he went up the Country eight Leagues with ten Men, and spying a naked Man with two Darts in his hand driving a Camel, he came up and took him, the Man with the fright neither defending himself, nor endeavouring to escape. In his return he met a company of forty Moors, and one Woman, whom they also took in their sight without resistance; these were the first taken on that Coast. Returning aboard they found another Ship was arrived there from *Portugal* under Command of *Nunno Trifan*; with this addition of strength they went ashore again, and met people at night, and being so close that they lost the use of their Weapons, clasped each other in Arms, and knew not whom they held, but by being naked and cloathed, and the strangeness of the Language; they killed three and returned to their Ships with ten Prisoners. This Place they called *Puerto del Cavallero*, or *the Knights Port*, *Antony Gonzales* being there knighted by *Nunno Trifan*. An Arab that was on board understood these Moors; him and the Woman they put ashore to persuade the Inhabitants to redeem the Prisoners. Next day appeared about 150, some on Camels, some on Horseback, provoking our Men to Land, but finding they did not, discharged a Volley of Stones at them and went off. *Antony Gonzales* returned to *Portugal* with some Slaves. *Trifan* having first careen'd, coasted on as far as *Cabo Blanco*, or *White Cape*, where though he saw the track of People, meeting none, he returned home.

1442.

7. *Antony Gonzales* returns, carrying with him the chief of the Moors he had brought, he promising to give seven *Guinea Slaves* for his ransom, but once ashore forgot his promise, yet giving notice in the Country, others came to redeem the two Young Men that were Prisoners, giving for them ten Blacks of several Countries, and a considerable quantity of Gold Dust, which was the first brought from those parts. Therefore a Rivulet that runs up about six Leagues was called *Rio del Oro*, or *River of Gold*. This and a Shield of Buck-skin and some Ostriches Eggs they brought home, all men admiring the colour of the Slaves. The

1443.

Gold stirred up covetous desires, and encouraged *Nunno Tristan* to undertake again the Voyage, and passing farther, discovered the Island *Adeget*, one of those of *Arguim*, and saw twenty Almadies or Boats passing over from the Continent, four men in each, sitting in such manner that they rowed with their Legs. *Tristan* launching his Boat with seven men, chased them and brought fourteen aboard, and going back for the rest, they had reached the Island. Hence they went over to another Island, which they called *De las Garcas*, or Island of Hawks, because of the vast numbers they saw there, and took some.

1444.

8. The Profit encreasing, the desire of it also encreased. Some came from several parts to *Portugal* to admire those Rarities the Natives brought. *Lancelot* the Prince's Servant, *Galianes* who first passed *Cape Bojador*,



*jador, Stephen Alonso, Roderick Alvarez and John Diaz* erected a Company in the Town of *Lagos*, paying an acknowledgment to the Prince, they asked leave to pursue these discoveries, and set out with six Caravels, whereof the first was Commander in chief; arriving at the Island, *de las Garzas*, *Martin Vincent* and *Giles Vasquez* with each fourteen Souldiers in their Boats, went over to the Island *Nar*, where falling upon a Town, they killed many and brought away 155 Prisoners, all Moors. The Captain *Lancelot* desiring to do the like, attacked *Tider* and other Islands, where he took above forty Prisoners, which he presented to the Prince, and was well rewarded.

9. *Gonzalo de Cintra* set out with one Ship, 1445. and coming to the Island *Arguim*, run up a Creek at night, intending to go ashore, but the Tide ebbing he stuck, and in the morning 200 Moors coming upon him, he was killed with seven of his company. These were the first Portugueses killed in these Attempts, and from the Captain that place took name, being called *Angra de Gonzalo de Cintra*, fourteen Leagues beyond *Rio del Oro*. *Antony Gonzales, James Alonso* 1446. and *Gomez Perez* set out in three Caravels bound for that River, with orders to treat of the conversion of these Barbarians, of Peace and Trade. The Proposals were not received, and they returned, bringing back one of the People of the Continent who came voluntarily to see our Country; and one of ours, called *John Fernandez* remained



ed there with the same design. Next *Nunno Trifan* made another Voyage, and brought twenty Slaves from a neighbouring Village, *Dinis Fernandez* in another Vessel passing the Mouth of the River *Sanaga*, which divides the *Azanagi* from *Falof*, took four Blacks who were fishing in an *Almadie* or Boat. Sailing forward, he discovered the famous *Cabo Verde*, and returned satisfied with this exploit, and having killed a great many Goats in an Island.

1447.

10. *Antony Gonzales*, *Garcia Mendez*, and *James Alonso*, though separated by a Storm, met again in the Islands of *Arguim*: Falling upon a Village they took 25 Moors, they flying, he that ran best took most, as *Laurence Diaz* who took seven, whilst others took but one, and some none. They called this Point, *Cabo del Rescate*, or *Cape of Ransom*, because some Blacks were ransomed there. The joy was the more for that they found *John Fernandez*, who was left there the last Voyage, he was fat and in health, though rough like the Inhabitants. He told them, that the Country being all plane and open they often lost their way, and therefore were guided, as at Sea, by the Stars, the Winds, and by Birds. That the Inhabitants lived miserably, feeding on a certain Grain which the Earth produces without tilling, on some Herbs, Lizards and Locusts, all scorched in the Sun, which is predominant, that place lying under the Tropick of *Cancer*. That they used much Milk, not only as Meat, but Drink, by reason of the scarcity of

of Water ; and therefore when they eat any Meat they never kill the Female, because of the Milk ; those near the Sea eat some Fish. When they were acquainted with our People, and they gave them Corn, they eat it whole. The Land is Barren being all Sand, bears a few Palm and Wild Fig-trees, they have no Houses but Tents, their Cloaths are Skins, and the better and neater sort wear Alhaiques, which is not unlike our Crape, and the best, some better sort of Cloath, but none good; their Employment is the care of Cattle, their Language and Writings the same with those of the Coasts of *Barbary*, with only about as much difference as is between the *Castillians* and those of *Gallicia* ; they have no King, and live by Hords or Companies. Returning home with this Account of *John Fernandez*, at *Cabo Blanco* they killed some Moors and took 55.

11. *Dinisfanez da Gram*, *Alvaro Gil* and *Mafaldo de Setubal*, with each a Caravel, landed in the Island *Arguim*, where they took seven Moors, and by the help of them forty seven afterwards. They ran along the Coast of the Continent eighty Leagues, and at several times took fifty Slaves, losing seven Portugueses, whose Boat being left dry by the Ebb in the Island *de las Garzas*, they were all killed. *Lancelot*, who once before had commanded a small Fleet, sailed from *Lagos* again towards *Arguim* as Admiral of fourteen Vessels. At the same time set out from *Madera*, *Alvaro* and *Dinis*  
Fer-

*Fernandez* and *John de Castilla* and others, who all together with the former fourteen, made up twenty seven Sail: Nine of the fourteen of *Lagos* came to *Arguim*, where *Dinisianez* was, who perswaded them to destroy the Island in revenge of the seven that had been killed, but the Moors understanding the danger, fled; so that only twelve were found, whereof only four could be taken, the rest killed, as also one of our men. *Alvaro de Freytas* returned with his three Ships. *Lancelot* with his sailed to the Island *Tider*, landed, and finding no People, returned aboard, where seeing some Moors from the Shoar jearing our men, because they could not find them, two of our men were so provoked that they leaped into the Water with their Arms, and swam to shoar to the Moors, who ran down to receive them. Others of our men seeing the danger those two were in, leaped after them, and on the shoar was a sharp skirmish; many of the Moors were killed and sixty taken. This done *Suero da Costa* and three more returned home. In a Village at Cape *Blanco* they took nine Moors, among them a Woman, who, promising a great Ransom, deceived *Suero*, for at the Island *Tider* the bold Woman who could swim very well, leaped over-board and gained her liberty by swimming ashoar. *Lancelot* and others unwilling to return without some Loading, as light as they came out, designed to sail to *Zabara* of the *Azanagi* and *Guinea*, but after some small attempts resolved for the Island of *Palma*.

*Palma.* They touched at *Gomera* and were received by two Commanders *Piste* and *Brucbo* in acknowledgment of some kindness they had received from Prince *Henry*. They discovered to them the design, and taking them along landed in *Palma*, all they got was seventeen Prisoners, but among them was a very large Morish Woman, who was said to be Queen of part of that Island. They returned to *Gomera*, and *John de Castilla* dissatisfied with the small Prize, base and ingratefully carried away Captives about twenty Islanders who were his Friends and had assisted him. Which wrong the Prince amended by sending them back well cloathed.

12. *Gomera* and *Palma* are of the number of the *Canary* Islands. The *Canaries* were discovered for King *Henry* the Third of *Spain* by *John de Betancour* a Frenchman; among them he conquered those called *Lancarote*, *Fuerteventura* and *Ferro*. In them he left *Masiot de Betancour* his Nephew who conquered *Gomera*, and exchanging them with Prince *Henry* for some Land in *Madeira*, he went and lived there. And because the Islands being twelve in number, there remained eight not conquered, viz. *Gran Canaria*, *Palma*, *Graciosa* *Infierno*, *Alegranca* *Santa Clara*, *Roche* and *Lobos*; the Prince sent a Fleet in which were 2500 Foot and 120 Lances, commanded by *Don Fernando de Castro*, who landing there, converted many Infidels. But there being complaints made from *Spain* to whom that Conquest appertained



ed it was given over. Afterwards King Henry the Fourth of Portugal gave them to D. Martin de Ataide Count of Atonguia. And lastly, in the Treaty between *Alfonso* of Portugal, and *Ferdinand* of Castile it was agreed they belonged to Castile. The Inhabitants of these Islands were governed by a certain number of Persons, they varied in their Worship, in Fight they used no Weapons but Sticks and Stones, their Cloathing upwards was Skins, the lower part a covering made of Palm-leaves of divers Colours; they took off their Beard with sharp Stones, their Governours had the Maidenheads of all Women that married, they feasted their Guests with them at their visits, the Children sucked Goats, their common food Wheat and Barley, Milk, Herbs, Mice, Lizards and Snakes.

13. *Lancelot* being homeward bound, discovered the River *Ovedec*, which he called *Sanaga*, because a Black of that name was released there. It was then believed to be one of the Branches of *Nile*, because they were informed it ran far to the Eastward. *Stephen Alonso* in a small Boat went up the River, and took two Blacks with considerable opposition made by their Father. *Roderick Anez* and *Dinis Diaz*, were here separated from the rest by a great Storm and arrived in Portugal. *Lancelot* steering toward Cape Verde, went ashore upon an Island, where he found nothing but Goats, and these words cut on the Bark of a Tree,  
TALENT DE BIEN FAIRE.

This



This was Prince *Henric's* Motto, whereby he expressed his designs, and gave *Lancelot* to understand the *Portugueses* had been there before ; - it was *Alvaro Fernandez* of *Madera* that was there. He stood along the Shoar, whilst *Gomez Perez* going up close in a Boat, threw a Looking-Glass and a Sheet of Paper with a Crucifix on it upon the Land to some Blacks that were there, who breaking and tearing them to pieces, poured in a Volley of Arrows, for which our men design'd to be revenged next day; but a great Storm which dispersed all our Ships prevented the execution. *Lawrence Diaz* got home first, *Gomez Perez* put in at *Rio del Oro*, whence he brought one Slave, and many Skins of Sea-Wolves, and found the people there somewhat tractable. *Alvaro Freytas* and *Vincent Diaz* in the *Island Tider* took fifty nine Slaves. *Diniz Fernandez* and *Palacano* at *Cape St. Ann*, took nine more; twelve of our men swimming ashore for them. With these and such like small successes, they all returned home, having lost one small Vessel, but the men saved.

14. *Nunno Tristan* run 60 Leagues beyond *Cape Verde*, and anchoring at the Mouth of *Rio Grande*, or the Great River, he run up in his Boat, and soon discovered eighty Blacks in thirteen *Almadies* or Boats, who surrounded him, and poured in their poisoned Arrows in such manner that they killed most of his men before they could get aboard, where he also died, none escaping without a Wound. Only four men that

were left in the Ship brought her home, after two months wandring in the Sea without knowing which way to steer. *Alvaro Fernandez* prosecuted the same Voyage, and went 40 Leagues beyond *Tristan*, killing with his own hand the Lord of a Village whereby was put to flight a multitude that oppressed him. At their return to the Ship they took two Women. He came to the River *Tabire*, where he was wounded, being attacked by the Blacks in five *Almadies*. *Gilianes* and others set out with ten Caravels, carrying with them the Prisoners unjustly seized by *John de Castilla*. They put in at *Cape Verde*, where they were beaten and lost five men. They throve better among the Moors, and therefore returned to *Arguim* where they made forty eight Slaves, and at their return in *Palma*, two Women which had cost them dear, had not *James Gonzales* with a Cross-bow killed seven of the Islanders, and among them their King, who lead them with a Palm in his hand in token of his Sovereignty, and our Victory.

J448. 15. *Gomez Perez* deceived by some Moors of *Rio del Oro*, who had promised a great ransom, was revenged by bringing away eighty Slaves the same year. Next year set out *James Giles Homen* with orders from the Prince to settle a Trade with the Moors of *Meca* or *Messa*, 12 Leagues beyond *Cape Gue*, where he got fifty Blacks for eighteen he carried with him, and returned being drove away by a storm. Here was left behind against his will *John Fernandez*, he who

who voluntarily staid before among the Azanagi. They brought a Lion, which was then much looked upon in *Lisbon*. The Fame of these Attempts flew so, that it brought from the King of *Denmarks* Court a Gentleman called *Ballarte*; a person capable and desirous of great Designs. He was well recommended by his King to the Prince, who at his Suit sent him with *Ferdinand Alonso* who then went Embassador to the King of *Cape Verde*. They were ready to receive him in hostile manner, but were appeased when two Blacks, who were the Interpreters, told them our design, the chief points whereof were the shewing them the Light of the Gospel, and teaching them a more civilized way of living. Their Farim or Governour, being informed hereof came down to the Shoar, and sent an account of our arrival to his King. Mean while they began peaceably to trade. Some Elephants Teeth stirred up a desire in *Ballarte* to see one alive. A Black offered to shew him one, and treacherously slew him and some of our men, which obliged us not to stay the coming of that King.

16. King *Duarte* reigned but a short time. His Son *Alonso* the Fifth succeeded him, being but six years of Age; at seventeen he took upon him the Government; Prince *Peter*, Brother of the Discoverer, having ruled for him those eleven years. Because from this time the Discoveries were managed upon the King's account; we will conclude with a description of this great

**Undertaker.** Prince *Henry*, the Beginner and Author of the *South* and *Eastern* discoveries, was of a proportionable bigness, his Limbs gross and strong, his Skin white and fair, his Hair strong and rough, his Countenance was terrible to such as were not acquainted; for in the greatest heats he was more governed by Meekness than Passion; he had a grave and graceful Gate; he was very circumspect and cautious in his words; plain in his Person, as far as suitable with his Quality; patient in Troubles, valiant in Danger, skilled in Learning, the best Mathematician of his Age, very liberal, extream zealous for Religion; he was not known to be given to any Vice; he never married, nor was it heard that he sinned against Continency; his Memory and Prudence were equal to his Authority: He died at *Sagres* in the year 1463. and the 67<sup>th</sup> of his Age; he lies with his Father in the most noble Church of *Batalla*.



## C H A P. II.

*Discoveries under King Alfonso the Fifth,  
from the Year 1448. to the Year 1471.*

I. **K**ING *Alfonso* the Fifth took upon him the Government, and prosecuted as his Uncle had done, those discoveries. The first step he gave was a grant <sup>1448.</sup> to the Prince, that none without his leave should pass *Cape Bojador*; and also the fifth and tenth of all things brought from thence. The differences between the King and his Uncle Prince *Peter*, were a great stop to these affairs. Leave was granted the <sup>1449.</sup> Prince to plant the Islands *Azores*, discovered by *Gonzalo Vello*; they are seven in number, their Names *St. Michael*, *St. Mary*, *Jesus* or *Tercera*, *Graciosa*, *Pico*, *Fayall*, *Flores* and *Cuervo*, which lies farthest to the Westward, as does the first to the Eastward. They differ not much in Latitude, being about the same with *Lisbon*. The reason why they were so called, is from a great number of Hawks, which they call *Azores*, that were seen there when first discovered. In the last was found the Statue of a Man on Horseback, with a Cloak, but no Hat, his Left Hand on the Horse's Main, the Right pointing to the *West*; there were some Letters carved on the lower Rock, but not understood. It seemed to point out *America*. Because in the Islands of *Argum* there was

C 2

trading



1460.

trading for Gold and Blacks ; the King ordered a Fort to be built in one of the Islands, and called by the same name ; it was erected by *Suero Mendez*, who was Commander of it. At this time also were discovered the Islands of *Cape Verde* by *Antony Nole* a Genoesse, sent by that Republick to *Portugal*. He also discovered the Island called *Mayo*, or *May*, because he arrived there the first day of that Month. Next day he saw the other two, which he named *St. Philip* and *St. Jacob*. The names of those not yet mentioned, are *Fuego*, *Brava*, *Boavista* *Sal*, *St. Nicholas*, *St. Lucy*, *St. Vincent*, *St. Antony*, in all ten. They are commonly called of *Cape Verde*, for that they lie 100 Leagues to the Westward of it. *Pedro de Cintra*, and *Suero de Costa* went as far as *Sierra Leona*.

1471.

2. So great were the hopes of the *Guinea Trade*, and the returns stirred up covetousness, so that the King farmed this Trade to *Fernando Gomez* for 500 Ducats, a small sum in comparison of their present greatness. He was obliged to continue the discoveries 500 Leagues farther in five years. He fortunately discovered the Trade of *Oro de la Mina*, or the Gold of the Mine by *John de Santarem* and *Peter de Escobar*. They went as far as *Cape St. Catharine* 37 Leagues beyond *Cape Lope Gonzales* in two Degrees and half of *South Latitude*. For this discovery was added to him the Sirname of *Mina*, and he was made Noble. *Ferdinand Po* discovered the Island which he called *Hermosa*, or Beautiful,

Beautiful, which name it changed for the Discoverers. The last discovery during the reign of King *Alonso*, was that of Cape *St. Catharine*, so called because discovered on her day. There were other discoveries before this, as the Coast from whence was brought the first *Cochinilla*, which the Italians (knowing the Value, but not the Name) call *Grana del Paraiso*, or Scarlet of Paradise, they had it from the Moors of this part of *Guinea*, who crossing the Country *Mandinga* and Deserts of *Libia*, brought it to the Port *Mundibarca* in the *Mediterranean*. Now were found the Islands *St. Thomas*, *Anno Bueno*, and *Principe*, all neglected, the King being wholly bent upon *Africk*. How little these places were minded, may appear by this, that a Spanish Fleet commanded by *Garcia de Loaysa*, Knight of *Malta*, arriving at the *Maluco* Islands the year 1525. he found there were Portugueses there before it was known in *Portugal*, and found in two degrees of South Latitude, the Island of *St. Mathew* not inhabited, but with footsteps of the Portugues, several Fruit-trees, and tame Cattle, carved on the Bark of a Tree, that our men had been there 87 years before, and the French Motto of Prince *Henry*, *Talent de bien Faire*. It was the custom of those Sailors to leave this Mark in all places where they landed.

## C H A P. III.

*Discoveries and Conquests under King John the Second, from the Year 1481. till the Year 1495.*

1. **K**ING *John* the Second, who succeeded his Father *Alonso*, considering the Riches of the Countries discovered encreased his Revenue, and finding the Natives inclined to receive the Faith, ordered a Fort to be raised in that part where was the Trade of Gold called *Mina*. To this end he fitted out twelve Vessels laden with all Materials for the Work, from the Stones of the Foundation to the Tiles, with Provisions for 600 Men, 500 of them Souldiers, the rest Workmen. The Commander was *James de Azambuja*. At his arrival he confirmed the Peace some time before concluded with that People. He acquainted the Prince of it ( called *Camaransa* ) with his arrival and intention. He landed to take possession, and set up the Portugal Colours upon a Tree ; at the Foot of it he made an Altar, and caused to be celebrated the first Mass that had been in those parts. He prepared himself to receive the Black King, who came attended with many of his Subjects naked , save that from their Waste downward, hung Monkies Skins or covering made of Palm-leaves: All armed, some with Shields and Javelins, others Bows and Arrows ;

Arrows ; some had Skins for Helmets, in such manner they appeared more ridiculous than terrible. The Prince's Legs and Arms were covered with plates of Gold ; on his Neck a Chain, with many small Bells, and Tags to his Beard. Before him went a great number of Instruments, more noisie than harmonious ; all that were known were Tabors, Horns and Bells. He met the Captain with a grave and pleasing Countenance ; the Captain received him with Gravity and Magnificence. The Black took his hand in token of Peace, the same the chief Men about him : After the Ceremonies (different in the Nations, but all vain and impertinent) *Azambuja* laid open his Kings design, which was first to instruct him in the Christian Faith, and conceal our Covetousness, asking leave to build a House for our Men to live in, which was to be a Fort to offend them upon occasion. I do not pretend to persuade the World, our only design was to Preach, on condition it be believed it was not only to Trade.

2. The Portuges Captain was heard with wonderful attention, and the proposal of Religion admitted, but that of the House or Fort rejected ; for they are Barbarians in our conceit, but not for their own Interests. *Azambuja* pressed, and *Caramansa* yielded and retired. The Workmen began to break a Rock for the Work, and the Blacks who adored it (taking that as an Affront) drove them away. *Azambuja* took the wisest course, and running to them, pacified them



with many Gifts, not of value, but such as pleased. The Fort finished was called *St. George*, for the particular devotion the King had to that Saint. As it encreased it gained the name and priviledge of a City. *Azam-buja* remained there with 60 men, and sent back the Fleet laden with Gold. He held that Government three years, he gave it up with Honour ( a thing rare among the Portugueses ) and was honourably rewarded.

3. The King began to take the Title of Lord of *Guinea*. The Custom till now had been to set up Wooden Crosses in all the new Discoveries; the King ordered for the future to carry them of Stone with the Kings and Captains Names, the Time when, by whom, and by whose Order erected. The first of these was *James Cam*, who passing Cape *Catharine* ( the last of King *Alonso's* discoveries ) came to the River *Congo* in the Kingdom of the same Name, by the Inhabitants called *Zagre*. He went up the River, and saw on both sides Blacks, but were not understood by those he carried with him. By signs he found they had a King, and that he resided far off. He sent him Presents ( the most powerful Arguments of Embassadors ) but finding the Men that carried them stay long, he set sail, bringing some Blacks home with him. King *John* was well pleased to see them, and dispatched again the same *James Cam*, sending back with him the Blacks joyful, with many Presents he gave them, but above all with the recovery of their Liberty. The first part of his In-

structions



structions was the Conversion of those Infidels. At his arrival he restored those Blacks to their Prince, and received the Men he left behind, with mutual admiration. Following on the Discovery, he ran 20 Leagues farther, setting up the Cross he called *St. Augustin*, in 13 degrees of *South* Latitude, and another in 22. At his return to *Congo*, having seen the King, he found in him such an affection to our People and Religion, that he sent with him to *Portugal* some Sons of his Chief Men, desiring they should be baptized, and being made Christians returned, and with them Ministers to instruct them in the Faith. They were baptized at *Beja*, where the King and Queen were Godfather and Godmother to the chief of them, and he called *D. John*, his Heathen Name being *Zacuta*; the same was done by the Nobility, with the others, whose Names and Surnames they took. Betwixt the Fort of *St. George* and *Congo*, is the Kingdom of *Benin*. The King hereof covetous of the advantages he saw others reap by our Trade, feigned he would be converted, and desired Priests for his instruction; but they being sent, the design was discovered, and so the effect ceased, but not the covetousness; for those Heathens bought Christned Slaves, and we with the same avarice sold them, after being baptized, knowing their new Masters would again make them fall into Idolatry. This lasted till the Religious King, *John* the Third, forbid it, though to his great loss; but God who gives an hundred for one,

one, to requite him ordered that another Gold Mine should be discovered below that of St. George, whence much more was gathered without a Crime, than had been before by that so scandalous a Trafick.

4. King *John* was informed by the *Benin* Embassador, who came to desire the Priests should be sent them, that 250 Leagues beyond them was the most powerful Prince of all those Countries, called *Ogane*, by whom the Kings of *Benin* for their security were confirmed; receiving of him a Staff with a Head and a Cross like that of *Malta*, all of Brass curiously wrought. An Embassador went with Rich Presents to solicit these Ensigns of Royalty, who never saw *Ogane*, because he speaks from behind Curtains, but at their departure shews a Foot, in token that he grants their Request. Our King imagined this Prince might be he that is vulgarly called *Prestre John*, by comparing these Formalities with what he had heard reported of him. He fitted out three Ships, commanded by *Bartholomew Dias*; he set up a Cross in 24 degrees of South Latitude, 120 Leagues beyond the other Discoverers in *Sierra Parda*. He sailed in sight of the Bay they called *de los Vaqueros*, or of Herdsmen, because of the many Cows they saw there; beyond this they touched at the small Island *Santa Cruz*, or Holy Cross, so called from one he set up: 25 Leagues farther they came into the mouth of a River which they called *del Infante*, the Sirname of the second Captain, who was the first that

that saw it. Being about returning they discovered that so many Ages unknown Promontory, which they called *Tormentoso*, or Stormy, because of a great Tempest they met with there; but our King gave it the name of *Cabo de Buena Esperança*, or Cape of Good Hope, for the great hopes it gave of discovering the Indies. There was set up the Cross St. *Philip*. The two first Ships coasting along met the third with only three men aboard, having lost it nine Months before with nine Men in it then. With meer joy of seeing the others (a strange, but not unheard of death) one of the three died, the other six had been killed by the Blacks. With various fortune observing the discovered Country they arrived in their own, the extent of Land till then found out, being 750 Leagues.

5. Whilst these Discoverers conquered the difficulties of the Seas; *Peter de Covillam* and *Alfonso de Payva* travelled by Land, who came first to *Naples*, then to *Rodes*, to *Alexandria*, *Grand Cair*, then with a Caravan of Moors to *Toro* on the Coasts of *Arabia*. Here they parted, *Payva* towards *India* and *Covillam* for *Ethiopia*, having appointed a time when to meet again at *Grand Cair*. *Covillam* went to *Cananor*, *Calecut* and *Goa* (famous Cities in the East) passed thence to *Zofala* in *Ethiopia*, then to *Aden* at the Mouth of the *Red Sea* on the side of *Arabia*, and at last to *Grand Cair*, where he found his Companion had died. After these had been sent out two Jews, *Rabbi Abraham* of *Beja*,

*Beja*, and *Joseph of Lamago*. *Covillam* sent back the latter to inform the King of his success, with the other he embarked for *Ormuz*, where having observed what was most remarkable, he left the Jew to follow the Caravans of *Aleppo*, and returning to the *Red Sea* came to discover the Court of *Prester John*, who detained him there as a Spie. But while he was detained, travelled from *Rome*, *Luke Mark*, an *Ethiopian* Priest, sent by *Prester John* to our King. This Priest's information revived the Kings hopes and desires, and he was sent back with an Account of what means had been used to settle a Correspondence, and Projects for the perfecting of it.

6. Before *Luke Mark* parted from *Portugal*, was arrived *Bemoi* Prince of *Jalof*. He came with State, and was received accordingly, being conducted to Court by *Don Francisco Coutinho* Count of *Marialva*. His strangeness did not cause so much admiration, as he conceived of the Majesty and Grandeur with which the King received him under his Royal Canopy. This was the cause of his coming. *Biran* who reigned in *Jalof*, giving himself up to all manner of Vice, resigned the Kingdom to his Brother *Bemoi*, with the reputation of delivering it to a Person in all respects worthy of the Royal-dignity. But *Cibitab* the elder Brother, envious of *Bemoi*'s happiness, kills *Biran*, and seizing the Government, makes War upon *Bemoi*, who with the assistance of *Gonzalo Coello*, sent by King *John*, made  
some



some resistance. This relief was sent him by reason of the hopes he gave of receiving the Faith. But it being suspected he only designed to make use of the Portugues assistance, the Captain was ordered to leave him, which was a great grief to *Bemoi*. He gave such excuses for not being presently baptized as seemed sufficient, and losing soon after a Battle, he went to *Portugal* to seek a more favourable turn of Fortune.

7. It was no small part of his Fortune to 1489. be received by so great a Prince, but above all to the hopes of Eternal Happiness, being soon after baptized by the name of *John*, which he took from the King who was Godfather. Next day he gave him Arms, Purpure a Cross Or within an Orle of *Portugal*. He in return did homage to the King for all the Lands he should be possessed of. Twenty four Gentlemen of his Retinue were baptized with him. There was great rejoycing, our People shewing their grandeur in such divertisements as were most in use then; and *Bemoi* with his Retinue giving a view of their Activity in Riding, Alighting, and Mounting upon a Speed, standing upright on the Saddle Galloping, and some in their Career took up Stones off the Ground, and much more, worthy admiration. The King furnished him with twenty Caravels well manned and armed, as well to forward his Restoration as to build a Fort on the River *Zanaga*.

8. The Province of *Jalof* lies between the two famous Rivers *Gambia*, or rather *Rio Grande*



*Grande* and *Zanaga*, so called by the Portugueses from a Prince of that Name, whom they spoke with when they discovered it; it has other names in the several Countries it runs through, and makes many Islands, most as being uncooth, inhabited only by Wild Beasts. It is navigable 150 Leagues up, where a ridge of perpendicular Rocks crosses it in such manner, that the Water falling down, forms an Arch, under which Travellers pass dry, and pleasant to behold, but makes a hideous noise with the fall. The *Gambia*, or *Rio Grande*, runs 180 Leagues, and carries more Water; it is not all Navigable, but runs with less noise, though filled with many Rivers that water the Country *Mandinga*. Both these Rivers flow out of the famous *Niger*, and may as well be esteemed but so many Mouths thereof. There is great variety of Fish in these Rivers, and several other Creatures along them, as Horses, Crocodiles and Serpents with Wings; the other Beasts that abound are Elephants, Ounces, Wild Boars, and a many more. Great are the numbers of them, and wonderful their variety and different forms. The Waters of the two Rivers mixt cause Vomiting, yet each asunder does not. In this part is that great Cape called *Cabo Verde*, by *Ptolome C. Assinarium*, in about 14 degrees of North Latitude. The Country runs 170 Leagues Eastward, is most fruitful, and has many populous Cities. To *Tombutu* the Mart of *Mandingo Gold*, resort the Merchants of *Grand Cair*, *Tunex*, *Oran*, *Tremisen*, *Fex*, *Moroc-*

co, and other places. This trade moved King *John* to build the Fort on the River *Zanaga*. The 20 Caravels were commanded by *Peter Vaz de Cunna*, who landing with D. *John Bemoi* the King, and beginning to raise the Fort in the place assigned, either suspecting that he deceived him, or fearing to die in that Country, basely killed the King, endeavouring with that Foul Crime to hide another not so hainous, which was to return without finishing the Work, and in fine he came back without any effect.

9. The Congo Embassador being well instructed in the Faith, was sent home with three Ships. *Seno* was the first Land they made, and arrived safe at *Congo*. They were joyfully received by an Old Lord called *Manifono*, Uncle to that King, who desired to be baptized. An Altar was erected in the Field, and he was admitted to this Sacrament by the name of *Manuel*, and his Son by that of *Antony*, in the presence of 25000 of their People, this being the first time that Sacrament was there administred. The King of *Congo*, Nephew to this Lord, hearing what he had done, added to his Estate, and caused all the Idols within his Dominions to be destroyed. The King made his residence at *Ambasse Congo* 50 Leagues distant, where he received *Ruy de Sousa* the Portugal Commander, on an Ivory Chair, placed on a Lofty Throne. From the Waste upwards he was naked, the lower part wrapt in Sky-colour Damask, on the Left Arm a Bracelet of Brass; from his  
Shoul-

Shoulder hung a curious Horse-tail, a Royal Badge among them; on his Head a thing like a Miter, of a delicate Webb, made of Palm, which resembles wrought Velvet. After the Ceremonies, he desired to see the Holy Vestments: He viewed them with deliberation and respect, in presence of his Queen, Children and the Chief of the Court. Then he gave leave to build a Church, which was done in few days, of the invocation of the Holy Cross, because begun the day of that Feast in *May*. In this Church was baptized the King, and some of his People, there being above 100000 present, as well for that they flocked to see the Novelty, as because they were preparing for a Neighbouring War. The King was called *John*, and the Queen *Ellenor*, in honour of our Sovereigns. Afterwards were baptized the greatest part of those had flocked thither. The New Christian King went to meet his Enemy, relying more on his Conversion, and the Cross in the Colours he had received from *Ruy de Sousa*, than in 80000 men he had in Arms, nor were his hopes vain, he returned with Victory, and *Ruy de Sousa* to *Portugal* with the honour of having compleated one of the most famous undertakings of this Crown, leaving in that Kingdom People capable to labour the New Vineyard.

3. 10. Afterwards was baptized the Prince, who had been absent in the Wars, and called *Alfonso*. *Panso Aquitimo*, the King's Second Son, would not receive the Faith, and the

the Father falling off, because as a Christian he could be allowed but one Wife, resolved to leave the Crown to the Heathen *Aquitimo*, in wrong of the Prince who continued constant in the Faith. *Alfonso* was abroad in banishment when his Father died, but returning to Court was received as King. *Aquitimó* having recourse to the Sword, fell upon him when he had but thirty seven Christians, as well Portugueses as Blacks; yet under the Banner of the Cross *Alfonso* overcame a vast multitude of Infidels, *Aquitimo* being taken and then slain. A Gentleman that accompanied *Aquitimo* desired to be baptized immediately, declaring they had been overcome by a Glorious Army that was lead by a Cross, and not by the thirty seven Christians. *Alfonso* established in peace, destroyed all Idols, and propagated the Faith with great zeal. He sent his Sons, Grandsons and Nephews to *Portugal* to study. Two of them were worthily afterwards Bishops in those parts. In memory of that Victory, and of the first Colours sent this King, as also that the Faith was first planted on the day of the invention of the Cross; he took for his Arms, Gules, a Cross Fleury Argent between two Crosses Pattee, charged with the Arms of *Portugal*.

11. The beginning of the Year 1493, 1493. came into the River of *Lisbon*, *Christopher Columbus*, who brought from an Island (guessed to be that of *Sipango*) some Men, Gold, and great tokens of Riches. This

D

Great



Great Man some time Before had offered his service to King *John*, who having slighted him then, looked on him now with some regret, and he provoked him with some extravagant words in revenge of the small regard made of him. There were some who offered to kill him, as well to punish his Boldness, as to conceal from *Spain* his Discoveries. But the King sent him away with honour: *Columbus* was a *Genoese*, and learned Navigation in *Portugal*; he was employed by the King of *Spain*, and he had sent him to the Discovery he now came from. King *John* did not envy the Fortune of *Spain*, but feared that Discovery was part of what the Portugueses had been so long in quest of. This caused him to fit out a Fleet commanded by *D. Francisco de Almeida* in order to oppose those proceedings, judging he had right on his side, but it proved not so. Several Embassies passed on both sides to agree the business, and at last came to a conclusion.

12. Though Prince *Bemoi* was dead, the hopes of making a farther progress in that Country about *Zanaga* died not with him. They who went in that Fleet had not performed what they were sent for, but discovered more Land, and gained the good will of the Natives. The Trade was afterwards continued, and a good correspondence between our King and those Princes. *Peter de Evora* and *Goncalo Anes* went to those of *Turucol* and *Tombou*: *Roderick Rebelo*, *Peter Reynel*, and *John Colaco* and others car-



carried Presents to *Mandimansa* and *Temala* of the *Fouli*, the most warlike of all those People. The King had also correspondence with him of the *Moses*, very famous in that Age ; and with *Mabomet Ben Manzugul*, Grandson of *Muz,a*, and King of *Songo* ( a populous City of *Mandinga* ) who receiving a full account of our King said, That none of 444 from whom he was descended, had any knowledge of more powerful Kings than four, which were those of *Alimaen*, *Baldac*, *Grand Cayre* and *Tucuroi*. At this same time the King laboured to settle a Factory in the City *Huadem*, 70 Leagues to the Eastward of *Arguim*, as well for the Trade of Gold, as to have some intelligence of *Prester John*, which he solicited by all means. Many were sent to these Discoveries by Land. But Death put a stop to King *John's* farther progress in these affairs; but cannot obscure the Glory due to him for propagating the Christian Faith in so remote parts, building the Forts of *Arguim* and *St. George de la Mina*, which fixed the Sovereignty of *Portugal* in *Guinea* that abounds in Gold, Ivory and all other Riches and Plenty, and the Gate that opened a way to the most Heroick Actions afterwards performed by the Portugues Arms.

## C H A P. IV.

*Discoveries under King Emanuel, from the Tear 1497, when he sent out Vasco de Gama, till the Tear 1500.*

1497.

1. **K**ING Emanuel inherited not only his Predecessors Kingdom, but his earnest desire of finding a shorter passage by Sea to the *East Indies*. This attempt was generally condemned by the greater number, but carried by the more prevalent Judgments. The King being in the Town of *Estremoz*, when he appointed *Vasco de Gama* to Command the Fleet he designed to send. This was a Gentleman of sufficient Quality, Ability and Spirit for such a difficult Enterprize. The King honour'd him expressing the great confidence he had in him, and delivered the Colours he was to carry, on which was the Cross of the Military Order of Christ, and on which this worthy Hero took the Oath of Fidelity.

2. Having received Letters for the Princes of the *East*, among others *Prestor John*, and *Zamori* or the King of *Calicut*; he sailed from *Lisbon* upon *Saturday* the 8th of *July* with only three small Ships and 160 men. The Names of the Ships, *St. Gabriel*, *St. Raphael* and *Berrio*; the Captains *Paul de Gama*, Brother to *Vasco*, and *Nicolas Nunnez*; there went also a Barque laden with Provisions,  
Com-

Commanded by *Goncalo Nunnez.* Having passed the Seas already known to Portugues Sailers, they discovered others, and after five Months sail, landed on the Sands of a Bay, now called *Angra de Santa Elena*, because first seen on that Saints day. Here they took one of two Blacks who were busie gathering Hony in the Mountain, little thinking how far human Boldness carries men. This man pleased with some Glasses and small Bells, brought some others from a Village, in hopes of getting some of those things, and these being furnished brought many more.

3. *Fernando Velofo*, a daring Young Man, asked leave to go see the habitation of the Blacks; but he returned with more speed than he went, being pursued to the shore, and a Shower of Arrows following as he got into the Boat. *Vasco de Gama* endeavouring to appease them, was wounded in the Leg, and because they would not hearken to him, he revenged himself with Cross-bows from aboard. The third day being the twentieth of November, he weighed and passed the Great Cape of Good Hope. On St. Catharines day they touched at *Angra de San Blas*, which is near the Island, where are found the Birds called *Soliticairos* made like a Goose, but with Wings like Batts; this is 60 Leagues beyond the Cape. Here they exchanged some Merchandise, and observed the People garding their Cattle, some Women riding on Oxen, and some dancing to Pipes that made no contemptible Musick.

1498.

But because as they coasted in order to find some Port, they found the Blacks appeared in greater numbers and warlike manner, he terrified them with firing some Guns. He took all the Provisions out of the Barque and burnt it. On *St. Lucies* day hapned a Storm, the more terrible because it was the first. On *Christmas-day* they saw the Land, which for that reason they called *Terra de Natal*, or *Christmas-land*, as also the River they named *de los Reyes*, or *of the Kings*, for being first seen on the day of *Epiphany*. Here *Gama* left two Men to inform themselves of the Country, and give him an account at his return. To this purpose he carried some Malefactors, their punishment being changed for these dangers. After dealing for some Ivory and Provisions, so much to the satisfaction of the Blacks, that their King came aboard, he went on as far as *Cabo de Corrientes*, and without seeing the Town of *Zofala*, passed 50 Leagues farther, and went up a River where were several Boats with Sails made of Palm. It was an encouragement to our Men to see these People, for that they understood something of sailing, a thing they had not seen in all those Coasts, and because they were not so black as the others, and understood the *Ara-bick* Letter. They concluded them more civilized by their Habit of several Colours, and divers sorts of Stuffs both Cotten and Silk. They said that to the Eastward lived White People, who sailed in Vessels like  
 This River *Gama* called *de Bons Sinays*,  
 or



or of good Signs, for the information he got of what he looked for; though he lost some Men, and many sickned, their Gums swelling out of their Mouths, and there was no cure but cutting, which proceeded from the badness of the Provisions. Sailing hence they again cast Anchor among the Islands of St. George, opposite to *Mozambique*, whence came several Zambucos or Boats in jovial manner, the Musick of several Instruments sounding in them. As they came near were seen some Black others almost White, all had Persian Veils, and were cloathed with Cotton of sundry Colours. They asked our Men boldly who they were, and what they wanted. *Gama* answered to the first part, and said he would answer to the rest when he knew whose that Town was. They said the Lord of it was *Zacoeja*, to whom all Vessels sent notice of their Arrival. Then *Gama* replied, that his Voyage was to *India*, and wanted a Pilot to conduct him to *Calicut*, that this was what he desired of the *Xeque* or Lord. He sent him some Presents, though not of great value, valuable for their rarity.

4. A Moor who carried the advice, returned with many thanks for the Presents with some fresh Meats, making excuses that the great distance was what hindred the Lord from visiting him. These Lucky beginnings moved *Gama* to attempt entring the Harbour, but meeting some danger he Anchored above the Town, which lies in 14 Degrees and half of South Latitude, and is



encompassed by the Sea; the Land about it is low and unhealthy, the Houses of Hurdles, that of the Lord and the Mosque of Mud Walls; the Inhabitants were Strangers and Moors: this being between *Quiloa*, which lies above, and the Mine of *Zofala* below it. This place was ever much accounted of by our Seamen, being a most secure place to Winter in. The Natives of the Continent are Black. Here came aboard *Gama* three Ethiopians, who as soon as they spied *St. Gabriel* painted on the Poop, fell on their Knees, as those who had always preserved Christianity, which was preached among them in the Primitive times, though now with some corruption. *Vasco de Gama* sent other Presents to the Lord, and they concluded a Peace, which was confirmed on our part by erecting a Cross there by the name of *St. George*. But the Barbarians having deceitfully concluded this Agreement, our Men going for Wood, fourteen Boats fell upon them, pouring in abundance of Arrows, but being answered by our Cross-Bows and Guns, they never offered to molest us a second time. They sailed hence the 11th of *March* with one Morish Pilot; he had hired two, but the other fled. Bad Weather obliged him to come to an Anchor again at *St. Georges Island*. He took in Water by force of Arms, the Blacks opposing it. And they encreasing to 2000, he fired some Cannon, which killing some, the other with the fright fled to the Continent, leaving many in our hands.

5. The *Xequé* or Governour at first refused a Pilot, he they had being fled, but fearing it might be revenged, sent another so wicked, that he run the Ships among some Islands, which were called *del Acotado*, because the Pilot was there severely whipped for this fault. This punishment instead of amendment, provoked him to another fraud. He persuaded *Gama* to take the Port of *Quiloa*, by telling him there were Christians there; but believing our Ships might be destroyed. The Currents drove the Ships off, and they came to an Anchor at the City *Monbaxa*, which is an Island made by a River that falls into the Sea by two Mouths: The Buildings like those of *Spain*; the Inhabitants all Moors, without any mixture of Christians, as the Pilot affirmed. Our Commander sent a Present to the King, and he deceitfully offered a kind reception. This inclined *Gama* to enter the Port, but it being God's Will to deliver him, the Ships fell off, and our Seamen making some extraordinary cry to bring them about, some Moors, who were aboard, thought they were discovered, taking this for a signal of Battle; they all leaped overboard, which undeceived the Commander, who sailing on, and chasing two Boats, he took one with 13 Moors. By them he was informed that not far off was the City *Melinde*, and there several Vessels from *India*.

6. *Melinde* is seated on the plainest of a Rocky Coast, encompassed with Orchards, Palm-trees, and Woods of Fruit-trees; the Build-

Buildings great and lightly ; the Country as well stored with Cattle as Fruit ; the Natives Pagans, of Colour Swarthy, of Body Strong ; the Women are counted beautiful ; from the Waste downwards they wear Silks and Cottons ; on the Head, Veils with Gold-Laces. Most of the Merchants who trade here are of *Guzarat*, who in return of their Spice, carry Gold, Ivory, Amber and Wax. The King is a Mahometan, and is served with State and Splendor. *Gama* gave him an account of his Voyage by a Souldier, and how he stood in need of a Pilot. Some Presents and Complements having passed between them, they met on the Sea, where the King was pleased above all with the gift of the 13 Moors not long before taken. The Portugues feared the Moors kindness was deceitful ; but it proved otherwise, for the effect of this interview was a lasting Peace faithfully observed by the Portugueses and Moors. Here *Gama* discoursed with some Merchants of *Cambaya*, who aboard his Ship were seen to worship an Image of our Lady ; which shewed there were yet among them some foot-steps of the Preaching of *St. Thomas* the Apostle. He carried with him *Melema Cana* of *Guzarat*, finding him so expert in Navigation, that being shewn an Astrolabe, he took little notice of it, as one who was used to more considerable Instruments. With this Able Pilot *Gama* set forwards, having first erected a Cross, which he called of the Holy Ghost ; and crossing that great Gulph of 700 Leagues, in  
twenty

twenty two days anchored 2 Leagues below *Calecut*.

7. Whilst our Discoverers rejoice at their arrival in *India*, let us give a general description of it, referring the particulars to the arrival of our Ships in those parts. The Region properly called *India*, is that which lies between the two noble Rivers, *Indus* on the *West*, and *Ganges* on the *East*. Of the first it takes Name, as does the most Ancient Kingdom of *Delbi*, the best and most powerful of this Country. Hence the Persians call it *Indostan*. On the *South* it is all girt by the vast Ocean. Encompassed by those Rivers it makes a sort of Peninsula, almost in the form of a Lozenge, or Rhombus of equal Sides, but not equal Angles. The two most distant opposite Angles lie *North* and *South*; the latter is made by Cape *Comori*, the other towards the Fountains of the Rivers, which though distant in the Mountains, called by *Ptolomy Imao*, yet running down the Rivers come almost to meet. The distance between these Angles in a streight Line is about 400 Leagues. The other two opposite Angles, which lie *East* and *West*, and are distant 300 Leagues, are formed by the Mouths of the Rivers. They encompass as much Land on their two sides, as does the Ocean on the other two. Though all this Country be inhabited by Heathens and Mahometans, yet they differ in their Opinions and Customs, as they are divided into several Kingdoms, as *Multan*, *Delli*, *Cospetir*, *Bengala*, *Orina*, *Mando*, *Chitor*, and



and *Guzarat*, commonly called *Cambaya*. The Kingdom of *Decan* is divided into many Sovereignties, with Character of Kings, with that of *Pale* divided between both. That of *Bisnagar*, to whom are subject many Petty Princes; and all the Province of *Malabar* divided into small Territories, some absolute, some subject to those already named. Had not Nature set Bounds to Human Ambition, separating these Countries with vast Rivers, Mountains, Lakes, Woods and Deserts, inhabited by sundry and innumerable Wild Beasts, they had all doubtless been under the Command of one Lord. The most remarkable Bounder of this vast Continent, is a long Ridge of Hills, which the Natives call *Gate*, that is, Mountains; they run about 200 Leagues from *North* to *South*: on both sides between the Sea and the Hill run two long, but narrow Plains for about 80 Leagues, that on the *West* is called *Malabar*, on the shoar whereof is seated the City *Calicut*. It was then inhabited by Pagans, and resorted to by Mahometan Merchants. Their Kings were always of the Family of the *Bramenes*, among them esteemed most Religious and Learned, and great Observers of the Doctrine of *Pythagoras*. The People is divided into two Degrees, the Commons, whom they call *Poleas*; and the Nobles called *Nayres*, who are valiant and skil'd in the Arms they use, and always wear Sword and Buckler; so proud, that if but touched by a Commoner, they hold it as a great misfortune, and cleanse



cleanse themselves by washing. This King of *Calicut* is the most powerful of all the Coast, and therefore for distinction called *Zamori*, as much as Emperor. The Kingdom took its name from the Metropolis, in which are many Stately Buildings of the Natives, for the Merchants do not mind it. It has no shelter for Ships, which are forced to Ride it out at Anchor in the Road. This is the place where we left the Discoverers.

8. *Gama* arrived here on the 20th of *May*; he gave advice to the King, who was not then in the City, but sent him a Pilot to bring the Ships to a safer place. During this interval came acquainted with the Portugueses a Moor called *Monzayde*, who lived there, and told them in Spanish he had known them in *Oran*, and would be serviceable to them there. So it proved, for from that time he passed between *Vasco de Gama* and *Zamori*, upon all occasions with great fidelity, and at last died a Christian in *Portugal*. The third day our Commander went ashore with twelve others, a Catual, or Governour coming from the King to conduct him; they were carried on Mens Backs with such ease, that the motion, though swift, is hardly to be perceived. Thus they were carried, many flocking about them, to a Pagod or Temple, equal, including all its Offices, to the greatest of our Monasteries. On the top of the Front were five Bells, and opposite to it a high Pillar of Brass, with a Cock on the top. Within the Gate attended

tended four *Bramens*, covered from the Waste to the Knees with Cotten Cloaths; and for a Badge of their Profession each had three Threads cross his Shoulders, hanking like a Shoulder Belt. They sprinkled them with Water, and gave Powder of Sandal to put on their Foreheads, all with great Ceremony, and no less Reverence than is used among us in taking the Holy Water in Church. About the Walls were painted several horrid Figures of Monsters and Wild Beasts. In the middle was a round Chappel of good Structure with Brass Gates; within it was the Statue of a Woman, which by reason of the darkness could not be perfectly discovered. The Portugueses looking upon it, and asking what it was, the Malabars answered aloud, and with a joyful Reverence, *Mary, Mary, Mary*, and prostrated themselves on the ground. Our Men did the same, judging that to be the Image of our Lady, nor were they deceived, for it could be no other, those People many Ages before having professed Christianity. The throng of the People grew so great, they stopped the way, and with the eager desire of seeing the new Guests, almost stifled them. Having gone thus 5 Leagues, they came to the Palace, where they saw the King on a Rich Bed set out with Silk and Gold, his Looks full of Majesty, Cloathed with White Cotton strewed with Branches and Roses of Beaten Gold; on his Head a thing like a Mitre set with many Pearls, his Arms and Legs naked, but on them Bracelets and

and Rings of Gold set with Rich Jewels. A Grave Person by his side held a Gold Plate with some Leaves of Betele, an Herb comfortable to the Stomach, which the Eastern Princes much use, chewing and swallowing the Juice of it. The eldest *Bramen*, who was next the Bed, and whose Age, Grey Hairs and Garb were Venerable, arose, and taking *Vasco de Gama* by the Hand presented him to that Great Emperor, who looked upon him friendly, but saluted him so scantily, that the motion of his Head could scarce be perceived, and made signs to the *Bramen* to make him sit down on the Steps of the Ascent whereon the Bed stood. He heard him, and answered in general Terms; then took the Letter sent by King *Emanuel*, which was writ in Portugues and Arabick, keeping it to consult with his Ministers about the Answer, promising it should be speedy. The substance was only to settle a friendly correspondence between the two Crowns in order to a Free Trade, which might be to the advantage of both. *Gama* was entertained in the House of a Cautual, or Governour, where the next day he endeavoured to gain him and the other Ministers with Presents, but they being inferiour to their Avarice, he found next time he spoke with them, that he had not won them; but the King seemed more pleased than the first time, whence may appear the Good Will of a Prince is bought at a cheaper rate, than those who would govern them when raised to their Favour. In  
fine,

fine, he was content that a free Commerce should be settled between the two Kingdoms.

9. The Moors understanding this Agreement, envious of our success, and fearing the damage must ensue to their Trade, made many Objections against our admittance, assuring, that we who came now suing, would settle our selves forcibly in time to come. They bribed the Catual or Governour, and he perswaded the King, our Men were Pirates and not Embassadors. It was wonderful that the King, not knowing how to proceed, because there was none could satisfy him of the truth of this Business, he resolved to rely upon the Faith of him whom his Ministers accused; for, as if he had known how odious a Lie, though to their advantage, was to the Portugueses, he sent for *Vasco de Gama*, declaring to him at large how he was informed his Embassie was feigned, and that he was some banished or fugitive Person, making him great offers of a kind reception in case it were so, and promising to rely upon his information for the credit of the whole matter. *Gama* heard the King with a great deal of firmness in his Countenance, and declared himself highly sensible of the great confidence the King reposed in him, in a most learned Speech, with powerful Arguments answered to all that had been laid to his Charge, and concluded with the same gravity and steadiness he had kept through his long discourse. The King who had kept his Eyes fixed upon



upon him all the time his harangue lasted, hoping by exterior signs to discover the truth of his assertions, drew a conclusion from the security of his Looks, the elegancy of his Words and gravity of his Person, that there could no deceit be couched under such fair appearances, that the Moors proceeded maliciously, and his Ministers were imposed upon. Then very frankly bid him return to his Ships to land what Merchandise he brought, if any, and while that was disposed of, he would prepare such an Answer for the King, as should be to his satisfaction.

10. *Vasco de Gama* providing to return to his Ships, was detained by Order of the Governour, and finding himself Prisoner, left seven of the twelve he had brought as Hostages. He complained, but to no effect, the faithful Moor *Moncayde* soliciting for him with all possible diligence. *Gama* being abroad and finding no fair means could prevail to have his men restored, having called a Council, it was resolved to apply force; accordingly he sent out after some Fishermen and took twenty of them: Immediately he let fly his Sails, making shew of departing, that they might send to stay him. And accordingly it succeeded, for the King informed of the reason why his Subjects were taken, ordered the seven Portugueses to be exchanged for them, and sent the Answer for our King, and excused the treachery of his People. The fortunate *Gama* steers homeward, the Moor *Moncayde* came voluntarily  
E with

with him, and some of the Prisoners by force, who were not restor'd, it being thought convenient to bring some to shew, promising them they should return.

11. As he was leaving the Sea of *Calicut*, sixty Vessels, full of Armed Men, set upon and pressed him, but the Cannon being well played, they went off. Sailing along in sight of Land, he set up the Cross of St. Mary in an Island between *Baranor* and *Batticale*, which thence took name, with admiration of the Inhabitants. This was the sixth and last he set up this Voyage, they were St. Raphael, in the River *Bons Sinays*; St. George, at *Mozambique*; St. Stephen, at *Melinde*; and St. Gabriel, at *Calicut*. Whilst he was erecting the last Cross, he writ a Letter to the *Zamori* or King of *Calicut*, by the hand of *Moncayde*, and sent it by a Fisherman of that place: In this Letter he excuses himself for carrying away those Prisoners, which he did not in satisfaction of the Merchandise taken from him, but as an earnest that he would return with them, when he had shewed them to his Prince, and they informed him of the state of their Country; and that in recompence he would bring a perfect account of *Spain*. In this Voyage he discovered 1200 Leagues, drawing a strait Line from the River *del Infante*, found by *Bartholomew Diaz*, to the Port of *Calicut*; for in sailing it is much more. Here he found the Island, the People of *Canara* call *Anchediva*, near the Continent, it is small, well shaded with Trees, of a wholsom

some Air, and has good Water. *Ancho* or *Ange* signifies Five, and *Dios*, Islands; there being so many, but the Chief has carried the Name. He was here careening his Ships, taking water, and some respite, when a Pirat attacked him with eight small Vessels, so linked and covered with Boughs, that they looked like a small floating Island. He was somewhat surprized at first sight, but perceiving the danger that approached under those Leaves, he attacked it, and having put to flight seven, took one Vessel. The Name of this Pirat was *Timoja*, we shall hear of him hereafter. The Prince of Goa, by means of a Jew, endeavoured to draw *Gama* to his ruin; the Jew from thence making signs with a Cross, who being taken aboard, and put upon the Wrack, confessed he was sent with an ill design, and repenting, was baptized, and called *Gasper de Gama*. Some of the men died whilst they were sailing across the Great Gulph between India and the Coast of *Melinde*. He Anchored in sight of the Town of *Mogadorn*, which stands on an open Coast, but is beautiful and strong. Not far from thence came out against him eight Boats well manned, but were soon repulsed. He came to *Melinde*, and was received by that King as a Friend. Being again under sail, the Ship *St. Raphael* struck and was lost, leaving that Name to those Sands. The men were saved by the other two Ships, and they parted by a Storm near *Cabo Verde*. *Nicholas Ccello* arrived at *Lisbon*, believing his Commander

was there before him, but he was burying his Brother, *Paul de Gama*, in the Island *Tercera*. Soon after he came up the *Tagus*, having been out two Years, and almost two Months. He carried out 160 men, and returned only with 55. They were all rewarded by the King. *Vasco de Gama* had the privilege of being called *Don*, annexed to his Family; to his Arms was added part of the Kings; he had the Title of Admiral of the Eastern Seas, 3000 Ducats yearly, and afterwards the Title of Count *Vidigueyra*. *Nicholas Coello* was made a *Fidalgo*, which is Noble, and had a 100 Ducats a year.

12. Prince *Henry*, the First Author of these Discoveries, had built a Chappel on the Banks of the River a League below *Lisbon*, for the conveniency of Sailors. In the same place now did King *Emanuel* erect a stately Church to the same intent, and with the same name it had before, to wit, *Our Lady of Bethlehem*, placing the Statue of the Prince over the Great Gate, his own and the Queens over the lesser. This is a Monastery of the Order of *St. Hierom*, and for its security was built in the Water a strong Tower called *St. Vincent*, not great, but sightly.



C H A P. V.

*Conquests under King Emanuel, from the Year 1500 till the Year 1502.*

1. **T**Here were Publick Thanksgivings through the Kingdom for the good succels of this Voyage; to these succeeded Feasts and Joyful Entertainments. And all mens expectation being raised with the glory of the Action and hope of ensuing Profit, it was consulted how to prosecute what was begun, and resolved, that according to the disposition they had found in the People of those Countries there was more need of Force than Intreaty, in order whereunto thirteen Vesses of several sizes were fitted, and *Peter Alvarez Cabral* was named Admiral. On the 8th of *March* the King delivered with his own hand to the Admiral the Flag of the Cross. The Shoar was covered with People, who flocked to see the Fleet sail. It contained 1200 Men, 8 Franciscan Friers, 8 Chaplains, and a Chaplain Major. The substance of their Instructions was, to begin by Preaching, and if that failed, to proceed to the decision of the Sword.

2. Twelve days the Fleet sailed with a fair Gale, but at *Cape Verde* a Storm arose, and one of the Vessels returned to *Lisbon*. In 10 degrees of *South* Latitude they saw a

Tawny People with lank Hair and flat Faces: They fled from our Men, till halting all together upon an eminence, they were spoke to in several Languages and by Signs, but all in vain. The Fleet passed on, and Anchored upon *Easter Eve* in a Port they called *Seguro*, or Safe, because it proved so to them. The People being affable, our Men landed and set up an Altar under a Tree, where there was Mass said and a Sermon preached, to which those Heathens were present with wonderful attention. The Admiral sent a Vessel to advertise the King of this discovery, and erected a Cross on a great Tree, calling the Country *Santa Cruz*, or Holy Cross. He also left there two Portugueses to enquire into the Customs, Language and Product of the Country. This is that large Province of *America*, called *Brazill*, for the abundance of that Wood which it produces, and hither had he been drove by Storms. Having left this Port, on the 12th of *May* he saw a Comet stretching its Tail to the Cape of *Good Hope*, which vanished in eight days, and was the forerunner of a terrible Storm, insomuch that the day growing dark, they could not see each other or hear, with the horrid noise of the Winds; 20 days this Tempest lasted, and swallowed four Ships. The Admiral arrived with only six Ships of all his Fleet upon the 16th of *July* on the Coast of *Zofala*. He chased two Ships, the one was stranded, the other taken, they belonged to Moors, and came from

from the Mine of *Zofala*, commanded by *Xeque Foteyma*. The Admiral treated him courteously, restoring all that was taken, because he was Uncle to the King of *Melinde*, who deserved well of the Portugueses for the kind Offices *Vasco de Gama* had received of him in time of need. Having quitted the Moor, he arrived at *Mozambique* on the 20th of *July*, where he refitted and held on his Voyage.

3. Coasting along, he came to an Anchor before the antient and noble City *Quiloa*. *Abraham*, a Man renowned among his People, and rich with the Trade of *Zofala*, then reigned there. The Admiral sent him word, he had important Affairs to communicate to him from our King. The Answer was, that he should come ashore and he would hear him. He replied, That according to his Instructions it was not permitted him to land, unless to fight such as refused the Friendship of *Portugal*; but that in respect to such a Prince, he would meet him in a Boat in the middle of that Bay. This Answer was surprising, and Fear wrought more than Kindness. Several Boats were set out on both sides, richly adorned and filled with Musick. Our Commander proposed Amity, Trade and Religion. The Moor gave good words, but disguised ill designs. This known, a Council was held, the Resolution was to go on, leaving the Revenge for a fitter opportunity, and thus they arrived at *Melinde* the second of *August*, where they were received with all

kindness, not only upon account of the Friendship established with *Vasco de Gama*, but also for the Generosity wherewith *Xeque Foseyma* had been treated. They visited and presented each other. Ours which was considerable, was carried by the Factor *Ayres Correa*, together with a Letter from our King, writ in Arabick, which was so highly prized by that King, that to the end he might keep the Bearer ashore that night, he sent the Admiral the Ring whereon was his Seal, the greatest security of those Kings. He told how much he was infested by the King of *Monbaca* for having admitted our Friendship, renewed and confirmed it with words and actions. Soon after our Ships sailed, having taken in two *Guzarat* Pilots, and set ashore two Men in order to discover *Prefter John's* Country, the antient desire of our Princes.

4. On *St. Bartholomew* Eve they reached *Anchediva*. The Vessels were wash'd and tallow'd, they watered and dealt with the People by signs, and left them satisfied. Then they stood over for *Calicut*, and discovered it the 17th of September. The Natives beheld us with Pleasure and Admiration; our Cannon was fired for joy, but struck a terror into the People on the Shoar, who fled. *Ayres Correa*, who had this employment at *Melinde*, went to advertise the King *Zamori*. He settled the manner how the King and Admiral should meet, which was done with much circumspection. There were given as Hostages for the safety of  
the



the Admiral, and such as should land with him, six of the Kings principal Ministers of the Family of the *Bramenes*, whose Names he brought from *Portugal* by the advice of *Moncayde*. The Prisoners that *Vasco de Gama* took, were also returned in performance of what he had writ to *Zamori*, and that they might give an account of what they had seen in *Portugal*.

5. The Embassie was delivered with much state, it tending only to the settling Peace and Commerce. After much delay proceeding from Jealousie, Peace was concluded and sworn to, and a House in the Town, with much difficulty, granted for the conveniency of Trade. *Ayres Correa* took possession of it with sixty able Men. The Merchants of *Meca* obstructed our getting landing, complaint was made to the King, but no redress.

6. The cause of it was the enmity between two Moorish Governours, one of the Sea, the other of the Land Affairs, the first called *Coje Bequi*, the other *Coje Cemireci*. This last was offended that our Factor had made greater application to the other than to him, and contrived to be revenged, as follows. He was informed there sailed from *Cochin*, a City distant about 30 Leagues, a very great Ship of *Ceylon*, bound for *Cambaya* with Elephants, who must pass before us. He therefore told the Factor, that the King having desired one of those Beasts, was refused it by the Owners; that if our Men would take the Ship they would oblige

lige the King, forward their own business, and possess themselves of a great quantity of Spice which the Merchants of *Meca* had there. His design was, that we should receive damage in the attempt, that Ship being of great bulk; and to this purpose gave notice to the Owners, that they might be the better provided; and in case that did not succeed, at least hereby we should disoblige the Merchants of *Cochin*. The Admiral sent after the Ship, *Peter de Ataide* in the *St. Peter*, who gave her chase, she made no account of our Vessel till some of our Balls reaching her, she bore upon us pouring in her shot, then made away, and was pursued and taken out of the Bay of *Cananor*. There were aboard seven Elephants, whereof one was killed by a Cannon Ball, and eaten by our men. This contrivance was of advantage to discover the Author, to terrifie the King, seeing such a Vessel taken by one that was not above the sixth part of her bulk, and to gain the Friendship of the King of *Cochin*; for the Admiral discovering the fraud, restored the Ship to the Owners, making satisfaction for the damage. Here it was that *Duarte Pacheco Pereyra* gave the first marks of that Heroick Valour, which after made him renowned in all the World.

7. This evil design turned to our advantage, but not the next; for the Ships having been there three Months, there were but two laden, and at a dear rate; and the Factor suspecting that the Ships of *Meca* laden

laded by night, which hindred ours, complained to the King, who ordered him to make Prize of such Boats. They entred and found nothing, for it was a contrivance of the Moors to incense the People against the Portugueses, and so it fell out, for the attempt being divulged, the Rabble rises in search of the Factor and his Company, whereof they suddenly slew forty; the others with five Franciscan Fryers escaped that Storm. The Admiral before the blood of those slain was cool, in a rage burnt fifteen great Vessels in the Port, and battered the Town two days from the Ships, doing great damage, and killing above 500 men.

8. Then sailed to *Cochin* the Metropolis of the Kingdom, of the same Name, having by the way burnt two Ships they met belonging to *Calicut*. The King lived out of Town. The Admiral sent to advertise him of his coming by a *Bramen*, a Religious Malabar, one of those who wander naked, girt with Chains and daubed with Filth, who, if Heathens, are called *Jogues*, and if Moors, *Calendars*; this man was afterwards baptized and called *Michael*. The King returned a favourable answer, and permitted us to lade Spice. It was done slowly, but without interruption. At *Cranganor* were found some Christians of *St. Thomas*, under Armenian Bishops. Two were brought to *Portugal*, one died and the other returned. *Zamori* of *Calicut* had gained the ill will of the Neighbouring Princes by his ill manner of proceeding with our men. Those of

*Cochin*

*Cochin* and *Cananor* desiring an opportunity of breaking with him, strove to draw the Portugues Fleet to their Ports. The Governours of *Coulon*, on the *South* of *Cochin*, sent to this effect to the Admiral, he returned thanks, though the Offer was not accepted, having already sufficient lading. He left *Goncalo Gil Barbosa* as Factor at *Cochin* with others, to provide lading for the next Ships should come.

9. He had promised to take in some *Ginger* at *Cananor*, he went thither to perform his word, and shew he was not afraid to appear before *Calicut* ; he found that King well affected towards us, who sent with him an Embassador (he of *Cochin* sent two) to King *Emanuel* with Presents, and offer of a Free Trade. About the middle of *January* the Admiral set out in order to return home. On the Coast of *Melinde*, one of the Ships was drove by bad Weather upon a Bank, the men saved. At *Mozambique* the rest were refitted, and one sent to settle a Trade at the Mine of *Zofala*. At *Cabo Verde* they found *Peter Diaz*, and his Vessel, which had been parted from them; he had escaped many dangers by Sea and Land, chiefly in Port *Magadoxa* near Cape *Guardafu*. After the Admiral arrived also in *Portugal*, *Peter de Ataide*, who had been parted, and the other sent to the discovery of *Zofala*, with an account of it.

10. In *March* before this Fleet returned, sailed out of *Lisbon* four Ships with 400 men, commanded by *John de Nova*, an able



able Seaman. In eight Degrees of *South* Latitude he found the Island he called of the Conception. Beyond the Cape of Good Hope, at the place called *Agoado de St. Bras*, they found in a Shoe a Letter writ by *Peter de Ataide*, who Anchored there after the Storm before spoken of; it gave an account of the Voyage of *Peter Alvarez Cabrall*. In August they arrived at *Mozambique*, then at *Quiloa*, having found an Island, which from the Commander was called of *John de Nova*. Short of *Melinde* they gave chase to two great Ships, one was taken, lightened and then burnt. At length they arrived at *Cananor*; and that King desirous they should stay there, to oblige them discovered that the King of *Calicut* was sending against him forty great Ships. This which he thought would detain them, hastened their departure; for *John de Nova*, lest the King should think he staid for fear, sailed on towards *Cochin*, leaving ashore four Factors, to prepare Goods against his return. In the Road of *Calicut* they found the Fleet ready, and falling on it lost never a Shot, pouring it in all that day and night, and part of the next; there were sunk five great Vessels and nine Paraos, which are small ones, the rest fled to the City with the news. At *Cochin*, *Nova* took in his lading with speed, it being provided by the Officers *Cabrall* had left there to that purpose. He returned to *Cananor* and took the rest of his lading; at his entrance into that Port he took a Ship of *Calicut*, plun-

plundered and burnt it; the same hapned to another as he came out. In his return having passed the Cape of *Good Hope*, he found the Island of *St. Helena* not inhabited; it has proved since a most advantageous place to all that use the *Indie Trade*, being provided with most excellent Water. It lies in 15 Degrees of *South Latitude*, distant from *Goa* 1549 Leagues, from *Mozambique* 1100, from the Cape of *Good Hope* 520, from *Angola* 370, from *St. George de la Mina* 375, from *Brazil* 540. from *Lisbon* 1100.

CHAP. VI.

*Conquests under King Emanuel, from the  
Tear 1501, to the Tear 1503.*

1. **T**HE Account *Peter Alvarez Cabral* brought, shewed it was requisite either to attempt making a great Fortune with a great Force, or else to quit the attempt. Some were of Opinion to desist, but the credit of so great an Action prevailed; and though many were lost, the gain of those who returned was so great, that it outweighed the consideration of the damage. The King was inspired with the hope of carrying on what the Apostle *St. Thomas* had begun, and planting the Christian Religion in those Countries, and enlarging his Royal Titles by adding to them, as he did, those of Lord of the Navigation Conquests and Trade of *Ethiopia, Arabia, Persia, and India*, which were confirmed by the Pope.

2. The King was sensible, that to obtain a Great Name among so many, so powerful and so distant Nations, it was requisite to shew great Power; therefore in 1501. *March* he set out Three Squadrons; the first of ten Ships, commanded by *Vasco de Gama*, now on his Second Voyage. The second of five Ships under *Vincent Sodre*, which was to scour the Coast of *Cochin and Cananor*,

*Cananor*, and hinder the Trade of the Ships of *Meca*, watching the Mouth of the Red Sea. The third was under *Stephen de Gama*, but all subordinate to *Vasco de Gama*. The whole consisted of twenty Ships, and were gone before *John de Nova* arrived. The King delivered to *Vasco de Gama* the Flag with great Honour in the Cathedral Church, giving him the Title of Admiral of the Eastern Seas. With him returned the Embassadors of *Cochin* and *Cananor*, much honoured by our King. They met off *Cabo Verde* a Caravel bound for *Lisbon*, with much Gold from the Mine. *Don Vasco* shewed some to the Embassadors, and they surprized, said it did not agree with the account the Venetian Embassador in *Portugal* had given them, that the Portugueses without the help of *Venice* could scarce put Ships to Sea. This was envy, because they were like to lose their Trade with *Grand Cayre*.

3. The Admiral arrived the 12<sup>th</sup> of July at *Quiloa*, having lost two Ships in bad Weather. He entered furiously, firing all his Canon, and battering the Town in revenge of the ill usage others had received from that King. But he to prevent his total ruin, came in a Boat to appease the Admiral, offering to be subject, and pay Tribute to King *Emanuel*. Thus the Storm was converted into Joy. Sailing thence he was put by the Port of *Melinde*, and forced to anchor 8 Leagues below it in a Bay, whence spreading his Fleet that no Ship might escape



escape him, he took several, but was most severe with those of *Calicut*. A Ship of great bulk called *Meri*, belonging to the Sultan of *Cayre*, most richly laden, and full of many Moors of Quality, who went Pilgrims to *Meca*, fell so unexpectedly into our hands, that she was taken without the least resistance, and all the Goods shifted into our Ships. But when 260 Moors perceived we were going to force the Vessel, in which, besides them, were above 50 Women and Children, laying hold of what Weapons were at hand, they beat the Boats from the sides; a Ship coming to her assistance was almost taken, till another relieved it, and the Admiral coming up, the Enemies Vessel was boarded, and after a courageous resistance taken and burnt with all that were in her, except twenty Children who were afterwards baptized.

4. The Admiral sailed to *Cananor*, and had a meeting with the King upon the Shoar, and Persons were appointed to confer about the business of Trade. Then he sent a Letter to the King of *Calicut*, signifying to him, that the 260 Moors burnt in the Ship, were upon account for the Portugueses killed by his People; and the twenty Children made Christians, for one Portugues turned Mahometan. That this was but the earnest of revenge he would soon take upon his City. Mean while they differed at *Cananor* about the Price of Spice, and at last some few men were left there to agree the matter, and many Threats sent the

F

King

King for this usage. Then he set forward to perform what he had promised at *Calicut*.

5. As he coasted along, there met him a Boat, and in it four Noblemen sent by *Zamorin* with offers extorted by fear. *Don Vasco* thought they might be advantageous; but resenting that the Proposal was to rest content with the destruction of almost 300 Moors and a rich Ship, in satisfaction for the loss of the Portugueses, he returned answer, that at his arrival he would burn and destroy the City. The Fleet spread, and took one Ship at anchor, and some Boats. The King prepared himself, but to no purpose; for the Cannon playing, there was great distraction and confusion. He hanged thirty Moors at the Yard Arms; then cutting off their Heads Hands and Feet, threw them into the Sea to be cast upon the Shoar by the Tide, warning them it was but a merciful death to what he designed for the Murderers of the Portugueses. Next, the Ship taken was fired, and then he sailed, leaving that Prince and City in a Consternation.

6. The King of *Cananor*, through fear, granted all he had denied to Entreaties. And the Admiral arriving at *Cochin*, and having seen the King, perceived it was true (as he had been informed) that those three Kings had combined to make him winter there by fraud, hoping thereby to destroy him, finding a Fleet of 200 Sail they had fitted out for that purpose was utterly lost by

by Storms. At length Peace and Amity was concluded with the King of *Cochin*, which proved not only advantageous then, but afterwards durable. *Don Vasco* among other Presents, gave him a Crown of Gold; and he besides many other things of value, sent the King a Stone of great worth, as being a Sovereign Antidote against all Poyson. This Stone of the bigness of a Hazle Nut, is found in the Head of that Creature the Indians call *Bulgodalf*. The King of *Cannanor* understanding the good Correspondence there was between *Vasco de Gama* and him of *Cochin*, and fearing our Fleet would not return to his Port, declared he was as ready to comply with the Admiral as the other, and received a satisfactory answer. Here *Don Vasco* received Embassadors, who said they came from some Christian Inhabitants of that Neighbouring Country, the Metropolis whereof was *Crauganor*, and they to the number of 30000: That *St. Thomas* had preached to their Forefathers; that they were subject to the Patriarch of *Armenia*; that they were infested by the Pagans; that they knew he was an Officer of the most Catholick King of *Europe*, to whom they submitted themselves, delivering into his hands the Rod of Justice. This Rod was Red, about the length of a Scepter, the ends tip with Silver, with three Bells at the top. They were dispatched with hopes of a powerful assistance.

7. Whilst the Ships were lading at *Cochin*, a *Bramen* of Note, with his Son and Nephew, offered himself to *Don Vasco*, signifying a desire of coming to *Portugal* to be instructed in the Faith, and proposing methods of reconciliation with the King of *Calicut*. He found credit, because his Son and Nephew were to remain as Hostages; and the Admiral sailed for *Calicut* in a great Ship, accompanied by only one Caravel, hoping to meet *Vincent Sodre*, who was gone to set the Embassadors ashore. But he being attacked by the Moors, though he worsted them, was gone to *Cananor*. The *Bremen* was landed, and carrying several Messengers back and forward, gave time for fitting 100 Paros or great Boats, which suddenly one morning hemmed in the Admiral so boldly, that many offered to board him with Fireworks to burn the Ship. It began to take fire, when cutting the Cable she put off the Fireship, and the Boats to avoid it were discovered, but much more by our Cannon, which being at good distance took effect. *Sodre* receiving advice by the Caravel the Admiral had sent, when first he misfed him, came in good season, and all together charged the Enemy in such manner, they were put to flight with great loss. The Hostages were hanged at the Yard Arms in sight of the City, and then put into a Boat with a Letter for the King, desiring him to accept of that Present in return for his Messengers contrivance. The Admiral returned to *Cochin*, and being dispatched, left there in



in a wooden House built for that purpose with the King's leave, a Factor and 32 Portugueses.\* Then sailed with his ten Ships for *Cananor*; not far from *Pandarane* there met him twenty nine of the King of *Calicut*. He sent out three Vessels to engage the two foremost of the Enemies, which was performed with such vigour, that when the Admiral came up, the two were taken, the rest fled, 300 Moors killed. The Booty was considerable, the chief thing an Idol of Gold, weighing 30 pound, of monstrous shape, his Eyes were two Emrauds, on his Breast was a very large Ruby, and part of him covered with a Cloak of Gold set with Jewels. *Sodre* was left there to guard the Coast and Factories; the Admiral continued his Voyage.\* He arrived at *Lisbon* with nine Ships richly laden, and with publick pomp carried the Tribute he with much honour had received of *Quiloa*, whereof the King ordered to be made a Custodium of Gold for the Church of our Lady of *Betlehem*, and gave all his share of such Prizes as should be taken, to the use of that Structure.

## C H A P. V I I

*Conquests under King Emanuel, from the  
Year 1503, till the Year 1505.*

1. **T**HE King of *Calicut* envying the advantage he of *Cochin* made of our Trade, got together 50000 men at *Patane* 16 Leagues from *Cochin*, with other preparations for War. The People of *Cochin* fearing that Power, were for delivering up the Portugueses to him of *Calicut*, who demanded nothing more. But *Triumpara*, King of *Cochin*, refused, and went out with three Nephews, and small force to meet the Enemy. At the first charge he was forsaken by some of his Nobles, yet assisted by the Portugueses, valiantly maintained a Pass, till his Nephews being killed, whereof one was General, he was forced to fly and secure himself in the Island *Vaipi*, near to and more tenable than *Cochin*, which was burnt; and he persisted in not delivering up the Portugueses; a notable example of Fidelity in a Heathen, scarce to be parallel'd among Christians.

2. Whilst the People of *Cochin* were besieged in the Island, there sailed from *Lisbon* nine Ships under three distinct Commanders. The first was *Alfonso de Alburquerque*, the second *Francis de Alburquerque*, and the third *Antony de Saldanna*. The three  
last

last were to cruise in the Mouth of the *Red Sea* against the Ships of *Meca*; the others to return with their lading. *Francis de Alburquerque* arrived first with more Ships than he brought out, having met with those of *Vincent Sodre*, who was cruising upon the *Indian Coast* and distressed by Storm; as also a Vessel that had been separated from *D. Vasco de Gama*. *Sodre* had taken four Ships of *Calicut*, which he carried to *Cananor*, and burnt several small Vessels; but this hapned before the invasion of *Cochin*, to whose King he had offered his assistance, but was not admitted; and sailing thence touched at *Zocotora* and *Guardafu*, and on the Coast of *Arabia* took some Vessels of *Cambaya* and *Calicut*. Winter coming on he took shelter in a Bay near the Islands *Curiamuria*, and found the Moors of that Coast called *Baduiis*, who live by their Cattle, were tractable; and after two Months they advised *Sodre* to seek a better Harbour, because about that time there arose such Storms in that place that he would be lost. He would not credit them, believing they said it only to be rid of him, but found they spoke truth, being lost with his Brother, and all the men in a sudden Tempest, the other Vessels with great danger, and suffering much through hunger and thirst escaped, met *Francis de Alburquerque*, and arrived with him at *Cochin*. The Commander sent the King a Present into the Island, part whereof was 10000 Ducats in Moeny. Then going ashore the King ran and embraced him, crying,

*Portugal, Portugal*; and all the People with great cries repeat *Portugal, Portugal*; and the Portugueses to return the civility, cried *Cochin, Cochin*. The Commander comforted the King, giving him assured hopes in the assistance of his Ships and the others he expected. Not to lose time, he fell upon those who held the Island of *Cochin* for the King of *Calicut*, and killing many expelled the remainder; then passed to *Vaispi*, restoring that Country to its lawful Prince. The Lord of *Repelim* his Lands were wasted with Fire and Sword, and only four Portugueses lost in this action. The joy *Triumpara* conceived in being restored by our assistance, moved him to grant us leave to build a Fort in *Cochin*. The work was begun when *Alfonso de Albuquerque* arrived, and it was called the Fort of St. *James*, and a Church then built, dedicated to St. *Bartbolomew*. 500 men were put aboard some Vessels taken from the Enemy, who burnt *Repelim* after a stout defence made by 2000 *Nayres*. *Alfonso de Albuquerque* ambitious of performing some notable Exploit by himself, advanced against a Town, when a multitude of expert Heathens issuing, brought him into great danger, and the more by the assistance of thirty three Vessels of *Calicut*; but *Francis* his Brother coming up, they were put to flight, and many killed, as were 700 in the Island *Cabalam*, where they thought to secure themselves. *Duarte Pacheco* destroyed another Town, killing many of the Inhabitants. As our men sailed (though victo-



victorious) spent with fatigue, fifty Ships of *Calicut* met them, the number surprized them, but our Cannon being well played, the Enemy fled. *Antonio do Campo* carried the news of this success to *Portugal*.

3. Pepper was bought with some expence of blood. The Queen of *Coulam* offered landing for two Ships, *Alburquerque* went thither, and settled a Trade as in *Cochin*; and to manage it left there a Factor and twenty six men. The King of *Calicut* perceiving our success, desired Peace, it was granted upon our Conditions, some being put in execution, he put a stop to the rest. He loved the Conveniency, but hated the Means, and again prosecuted the War. The King of *Cochin* representing how just he had been to us, desired some able Commander might be left there with a number of men to his assistance. The demand was reasonable, it was therefore resolved that *Duarte Pacheco* with his Ship and two Caravels, and 100 men should be left there. *Alfonso* and *Francis de Alburquerque* returned towards home. The first arrived safe, and among other things brought the King forty pound of Pearls, and four hundred of the small; a Diamond of wonderful bigness, and two Horses, one a *Persian* the other an *Arab*, which were held in great esteem, being the first that were brought to the Kingdom. *Francis de Alburquerque*, and the Ships under his Command were never more heard of. *Peter de Asaide*, who followed them, having escaped a Storm, was found with his men at *Melinde*.

4. *Antony de Saldanna*, the last of the three Commanders, and who was sent to cruise in the Mouth of the *Red Sea*, having lost *Diego Fernandez Petreira* came to an Anchor at *St. Thomas*. Short of the *Cape of Good Hope* was made famous a place by the name of *Aguada del Saldanna*, or *Saldannas* watering place, not for any Water he took, but the Blood of his Men shed there, endeavouring to land. At this time a Storm had parted from him *Ruy Lorenzo*, driving him up to *Mozambique*, whence he held his course to *Quiloa*, where he took some small Prizes. An ambition of doing something more remarkable, carried him to the Island *Zanzibar*, 20 Leagues short of *Monbaga*, where he took twenty small Vessels. Then he appeared before the Town of that name. The King of it designed to take the Ship with a number of Paraos, or Boats; but our Long Boat going out with thirty men, killed several, and took four Paraos. The King appeared on the Shoar with 4000 men commanded by his Son, who was killed with some others by the first Volley. Their loss produced our safety, for one of them running from their Croud, with Colours bearing the Arms of *Portugal*, Peace was concluded, that King agreeing to pay 100 Meticules of Gold yearly, as tributary to *Portugal*. Thence he visited *Melinde*, whose King was oppressed by him of *Monbaga*, for his friendship to us. This obliged *Ruy Lorenzo* to stand in; by the way he took two Ships and three *Zambucos*, small Vessels, and in them twelve Ma-

Magistrates of the City *Brava*, who, as such, submitted that City to *Portugal*, with the yearly Tribute of 500 Meticales. The two Kings came to a Battle, and parted upon equal Terms. Now came *Antony de Saldanna*, whereupon he of *Monbaga* came to an agreement. Beyond Cape *Guardafu*, and in the Islands *Canacani* they worsted some Moors who would hinder their watering: On the upper Coast of *Arabia* they burnt a Ship laden with Frankincense, and forced ashore another that carried Pilgrims to *Meca*. But whilst they sail to *India*, let us see what is doing at *Cochin*.

5. *Zamori* of *Calicut* called together the Kings and Lords of *Malabar*, and there resorted to him those of *Tanor*, *Bespur*, *Cotugan* and *Corin*, and ten Lords of equal Power, besides the Lesser. They drew together 5000 men, as well for Land as Sea; for the Sea were 4000 men in 280 Paraos, Catur, and Tonees, Vessels of several sorts, with 382 Cannons to batter the new Fort; all the rest was for the Land to attack the Ford of a River that passed to the Island; these were commanded by *Ngubea Dering*, Nephew and Heir to him of *Calicut*, and by *Elantol*, Lord of *Repelim*. The King of *Cochin* was in fear, seeing many of his Subjects desert, but *Duarte Pacheco*, who commanded the Portugueses, encouraged him. *Pacheco* put himself into a posture of Defence. Into the Ship he put 25 men, into the Fort 39, into the Caravel 26, into a Boat 23, he was in another with 22; besides

sides these, 300 Malabars attended him; the King with his Forces was to guard the City. Thus he went to meet *Zamori*, and finding him quartered in a Village, attacked it, and did much harm. There hapned three fierce engagements about gaining the Pass; in the first the Enemy lost 20 Paraos sunk by the Cannon, and 180 Persons of Note, above 1000 private men. In the second 19 Paraos and 360 men. In the third 622 Paraos, and 60 fled, and 15000 men by Land, and among them *Zamori*; *Pacheco* pursuing, burnt four Towns.

6. The Moors that were with the King of *Cochin* gave intelligence to the Enemy. The King gave *Pacheco* leave to punish them. He took five, secured them, and gave out they were hanged, which the King and all his People resented. *Zamori* returns and attempts another Ford. *James Perez*, and *Peter Raphael* with two Caravels and some Boats were posted, where the Lord of *Repe- lim* was to attack with 3000 men, sustained by the Prince *Naubeadarim* with his men. At this time 300 Moors deserted *Pacheco*; he wanted Powder, and the Prince of *Cochin*, to whom he sent for it, did not relieve him, for the Messenger treacherously forbore delivering the message. But *Pacheco* overcoming all difficulties, killed 650 of *Zamori's* men, who retired to a Grove of Palm-trees, where nine of his men were killed so near him by a Cannon Ball, that he was sprinkled with their Blood. After this he lost 6000 men by the Plague.

7. Great



7. Great were the preparations the King of *Calicut* made, and the mean time fatigued *Pacheco* with several stratagems and treacheries. The *Bramen* Conjurers proposed the making a Powder, which being thrown in our mens Eyes, would blind them, and so they would be easily overcome; besides they had a new invention of Castles that were to destroy them; and the Moors of *Cochin* were underhand bribed to poyson the water of the Island. The Powder was looked upon as ridiculous, but great care was taken by *Pacheco* to prevent the Poyson. The Castles began to appear, and were eight in number, fifteen foot high, and placed upon two Boats each, and carried many men. *Pacheco* had a 160 men divided into four parts, the Foord, the Fort, the Caravels and the Ship, and herein consisted the principal strength of the Kingdom of *Cochin*; for of the 30000 men the King had at first, there were now but 8000 left, many of the Principal Men having deserted. *Zamori* had brought 80000 men, and lost 20000. Whilst the Towers were preparing *Pacheco* was attacked by a number of Paraos, in one attack he killed some men, and took five Boats; in another eight with thirteen Cannons. Six bold *Nayres* offered to kill him, and in order thereto came over as Deserters, but he having intelligence, apprehended and sent them to the King. *Zamori* gave out that the Portugueses at *Cochin* were all killed, to the intent those who resided at *Cananur* and *Coulam* should be destroyed; they

they were in great danger, one or two killed, and many wounded. The King of *Cochin*, though he saw the great danger that threatned him, was resolved to endure the utmost miseries, rather than abandon the Portugueses, but feared those few must at last be overpowred by the multitude of the Enemy, and the danger of those brave men grieved him more than his own; he therefore most earnestly entreated *Pacheco* to quit that enterprize, and save himself and men for some opportunity wherein he might do his Prince greater service. But *Pacheco* bid the King be of good courage, and not dishearten his Subjects with any signs of fear, but exhort them to stand firm, and thereby they should overcome all difficulties. And fearing lest some *Portugueses*, by his example, might faulter in his resolution of dying or conquering, he went aboard the Ship, and made to them a most learned, copious and resolute Speech, which gave new vigour to them all; but much more his speedy Orders, and Couragious Activity shewn at that very time; for scarce was the Speech ended, when the Enemy came to assail him; the Enemies design was to burn our Ships, and therefore those Castles were drove towards them, all the Front flaming. But *Pacheco* who perceived their intent, threw over long Beams, one end whereof resting against the Ship, the other hindred the approach of those burning Castles.

8. The Enemy appeared with 290 small Vessels, well stored with Men and Artillery, and

and eight Castles, one carrying 40 men, two 35 each, and every one of the other five 30 men, before all came the Fireworks. The Shoar was covered by 30000 men, with good Artillery; at the Head of them the Lord of *Repelim*, with a vast number of Pioneers. The Fight began, the odds being almost 300 Vessels to three. At first the Artillery wrought no effect, but being continued tore those Towers, and the Smoak being somewhat allayed, the Sea appeared covered with broken Boats, Arms, dead Bodies, and others struggling with Death; the Fight was renewed with great loss to the Enemy, and not one Portugues killed. Next day *Zamori* returned, and was beaten off with greater damage, having lost 18000 men in the space of five Months that this service lasted. The King by the advice of his *Bramens*, retired to do Pennance, and by consent of his Council desired a Peace, which the King of *Cochin* granted. At this time *Pacheco* received a Message from the Factor at *Coulam*, desiring he would come to assist him against five Ships of Moors who obstructed his Market of Pepper. *Pacheco* went with all speed, and they submitting, he took the Pepper at their own rate, without doing them any harm. He hindred others from coming into that Harbour, and returned to *Cochin* with the Glory of having struck a general terror through all that Coast.

9. King *Emanuel* being informed by *D. Vasco de Gama*, how necessary it was to appear with a greater Force in *India*, fitted out a Fleet

a Fleet of 13 Ships, the biggest had yet been built in *Portugal*, and gave the Command of them to *Lope Soarez*, and in them 1200 men. The first Land of *India* he touched at was *Anchediva*, where *Antony de Saldanna* and *Ruy Lorenzo* were refitting, in order to cruise on the Coast of *Cambaya* upon the Moors of *Meca*. But *Lope Soarez* took them along with him to *Cananor*, where he staid to give the necessary Orders, and then appearing before *Calicut*, had some Prisoners, who were taken in the late War, delivered to him; but because they did not give up all, he battered the City two days, wherein he ruined great part of it, and killed 300 Inhabitants, and then sailed to *Cochin* at the time that *Pacheco* was upon his return from *Conlam*. The King informed him of the damage he received from *Cranaganor*, a Town but 4 Leagues distant, and fortified by *Zamori*.

10. *Lope Soarez* with great secrecy provided 20 Vessels, and sailed with them up the River, where he found 5 Ships and 80 *Paraos* well manned; which two Ships of ours who had the Vanguard, burnt after a sharp engagement. Then he sailed on, the Prince of *Cochin* was to join him, but came late. A multitude of Indians and Moors covered the Shoar, who with Showers of Arrows endeavoured to hinder our landing, but our Musquetiers made way, and having reached the Town, it was burnt down to the ground, and the Prince of *Calicut* who was to have guarded it, fled. This Victory and  
ano



another obtained by the King of *Tanor* against that Prince, wherein *Lope Soarez* was to assist him, though the Succour came late, produced a friendly Peace with that King.

11. *Lope Soarez* left *Manuel Tellez Barreto* with four Sail to secure the Fort of *Cochin*, and set sail in order to return home, with design first to fall upon *Banane*, a Town subject to *Calicut*. He was met by twenty *Paraos*, who freely bestowed their Shot, drawing him into a Bay, where were seventeen great Ships well stored with Cannon, and with 4000 men. The Ships were all burnt with their lading, which was very rich, and 700 Turks drowned, besides what perished by Fire and Sword; this Victory cost twenty three men. It was the beginning of *January*, when *Lope Soarez* sailed 1506. hence, and he arrived at *Lisbon* on the 22<sup>d</sup> of *July* with thirteen Victorious Ships laden with Riches; three were of the foregoing years Fleet; of his own he lost *Peter Mendoza*, who being stranded 14 Leagues from *Aguada de S. Bras* was never more heard of. One of the other three was that of *Diego Fernandez Peteyra*, who after taking several Prizes, on the Coast of *Melinde*, discovered the Island *Zocotora*. The King placed *Duarte Pacheco* ( who had so bravely defended *Cochin* ) by his side under a Canopy, and went with him in that manner to Church, to honour his great Valour. But soon after imprisoned, and suffered him to die miserably: A terrible example of the uncertainty

certainty of Royal Favours, and the little regard that is had to True Merit.

---

## CHAP. VIII.

*Conquests under King Emanuel, from the Tear 1505, and beginning of the Government of Don Francisco de Almeyda, first Governour and Viceroy of India, till the Tear 1509.*

1. **B**Efore these Discoveries, the Spice was brought to Europe with vast trouble and charge. The Clove of *Malucco*, the Nutmeg and Mace of *Banda*, the Sandal of *Timor*, the Camfir of *Borneo*, the Gold and Silver of *Luconia*, and all the other Riches, Spices, Gums, Perfumes, and Curiosities of *Cbina*, *Java*, *Siam*, and other Kingdoms were carried to the Market of the City *Malaca*, seated in the Golden *Chersonesus*, whence the Inhabitants of all the Western Countries as far as the *Red Sea*, brought them, dealing by way of barter; for no Money was used, Silver and Gold being of less value there, than with them that traded thither. This Trade it was enriched the Cities of *Calicut*, *Cambaya*, *Ormuz*, and *Aden* adding to what they brought from *Malaca*, the Rubies of *Pegu*, the Stuffs of *Bengala*, the Pearls

Pearls of *Calicare*, the Diamonds of *Nat-singa*, the Cinnamon and richer Rubies of *Ceylon*, the Pepper, Ginger and other Spice of the Coast of *Malabar*, and other places Nature had enriched therewith. From *Ormuz*, they were brought to *Europe* up the *Per-sian* Gulph to *Bacora* at the Mouth of *Euphrates*, and thence distributed in Caravans through *Armenia*, *Trebisond*, *Tartary*, *Aleppo* and *Damascus*, and then at the Port of *Barrut* upon the *Mediterranean*, the *Venetians*, *Genoese* and *Catalonians* laded with them to their respective Countries. Such as came up the *Red Sea* were landed at *Toro* or *Sues*, Towns at the bottom of that Streight, thence went in Caravans to *Grand Cayre*, to down the *Nile* to *Alexandria*, and thence shipped off. Many Princes, and particularly the Soldan of *Cayre*, being great losers by this new way found by the Portugueses, they endeavoured to drive them out of *India*.

2. The Soldan endeavoured to work his ends by a Wile, and therefore gave out, that he was going to destroy the Temple and Holy Places of *Jerusalem*. Father *Maurus* of *Mount Sinai*, fearing the execution, offered to go to *Rome* to the Pope to procure an accommodation. The Soldan, who desired nothing more, gave him a Letter to the Pope, signifying that his Reasons for destroying those Places, were in revenge of the damage done to his Trade. The Pope sent the same Father *Maurus* to *Portugal*. But the Purport of his Message being already known before his arrival, the King made such Preparations, that he re-

turned with admiration, carrying more from *Portugal* to relate at *Cayre*, than he brought thence to recount here. However the King gave considerable Alms for the Convent, and answered the Pope, shewing that his Intentions in those Eastern Discoveries tended to the Propagation of the Faith, and extending the Jurisdiction of the See of *Rome*.

1507.

3. On the 25<sup>th</sup> of *March* sailed from *Lisbon* a Fleet of twenty two Ships, eleven of them were to return with Merchandise, and eleven to remain in *India*; they carried 1500 fighting men, and were commanded by *Don Francisco de Almeyda*, who went to govern in *India* with the Title of Viceroy, and gave great demonstrations of his Prudence and Courage. The second of *July* hapned a terrible Storm, which tearing to pieces the Sails of *Diego Correias* Ship, carried three men overboard; two were lost, the third cried from the Water they should have an Eye after him, for he would keep above water till the next morning, and the next morning the Storm ceasing, they took him up, his name was *Fernando Lorenzo*. *Don Francisco de Almeyda* arrived at *Quiloa* with only eight Vessels, the others were separated by stress of Weather, and one lost, but the men saved. He entred that Port and saluted as usual, but was not answered, whereupon he complained to the King. He at first framed excuses, and avoided coming to a Conference, though *Don Francisco* attended in the place appointed, which set him upon studying revenge.



venge. After a Council held, it was resolved to erect a Fort in that place, as was desired by King *Emanuel*. Having promised some description of all such places as we took possession of, it will be fit to insert here that of the Country, City and Fort of *Quiloa*.

4. From Cape *Guardafu*, the most Western point of *Africk*, to *Mocambique* are 550 Leagues, a hollow Coast like a Bow when bent. From Cape *Mozambique* to Cape *Corrientes* 170 Leagues; thence to the Cape of *Good Hope* 340 Leagues; hence the Coast runs bowing to the Westward as far as the Borders of the Kingdom of *Congo*; but by reason of its great length, appears to the Eye to run strait to the Northward. Drawing a Line from the Southern borders of *Congo* cross the Continent Eastward, there remains to the Southward that great portion of *Africk*, to which the Barbarous Inhabitants have given no name, but was called by the Persians *Cassaria*, and the Inhabitants *Cafres*, which signifies a Rude People, without Law or Government; and our late Geographers call it *Ethiopia Inferior*. Above this on the *East*, runs for above 200 Leagues that Coast which we call *Zanguebar*; but the Arabians and Persians give this name to all the Coast as far as the Cape of *Good Hope*. Above *Zanguebar* as far as Point *Guardafu*, and Mouth of the *Red Sea*, is that which the *Arabs* call *Aiam*, or *Aiana*, inhabited by the same *Arabs*, and the Inland by Heathen Blacks. Most of this Coast is very  
G 3 low,

low, and subject to inundations, covered with impenetrable Woods, which made it excessive hot and unhealthy. The Natives are black, of curled Hair, Idolaters, so given to Superstition, that upon frivolous motives they give over the most important Designs, as it hapned to the King of *Quiloa* at this time; who because a Black Cat crossed him at his coming out, failed of meeting *Don Francisco de Almeyda*. The Cattle, Fruit and Grain is answerable to the wildness of the Country. The Moors who inhabit the Coast and adjacent Islands, are little given to Tilling, and feed upon Wild Beasts, and some loathsome things; those who live in the Inland, and have commerce with the Barbarous *Cafres*, make use of some Milk. Nature has stored the Country with much Gold, that those People might inhabit it, and our Covetousness, though at such distance, find them out. It was Covetousness that first drew thither the *Arabs*, called *Emozaydii*, that is, subjects of *Zayde*, who built two considerable Towns, only sufficient to secure them against the *Cafres*. These continued so, till great numbers of other *Arabs*, who were Neighbourers of the City *Laçab*, 40 Leagues from the Island *Babarem* in the Persian Gulph, came over thither, whose first Plantation was *Magadoxa*, and after *Brava*; the former became the Metropolis. The first *Arabs* separated from these, and mixing with the *Cafres*, were called *Badiis*. The first that had the Trade of the Mine of *Zofala*, were those of *Magadoxa*, who

who discovered it accidentally. Thence they spread themselves, but never durst pass Cape *Corrientes*, a Point opposite to the Westernmost part of the Island *Madagascar* or *St. Laurence*, and takes its name from the violent Current of Water which often endangers Ships there. But along these Coasts they possessed themselves of *Quiloa*, *Mombaza*, *Melinde*, the Isles of *Pemba*, *Zanzibar*, *Monsia*, *Comoro*, and others. *Quiloa* was the chief of all their Plantations, and thence many were spread, particularly on the Coast of *Madagascar*. The Sea by degrees wearing away both sides, made *Quiloa* an Island. It bears many Palm and Thorn-trees, and divers Herbs and Plants; Cattle, Wild Beasts, and Birds, much after the same manner as *Spain*; the Buildings also after our manner, flat at the Top, with Gardens and Orchards behind. On one side is the Royal Palace, built in the manner of a Fort; the Gate to the Sea opposite to the Anchoring place, where ours at that time were.

5. *Don Francisco de Almeyda*, having resolved to land, was the first that touched the Shoar with 500 men. He and his Son *Laurence* at the same time attacked the City in two places. Our men had enough to do to cover themselves with their Shields from the showers of Arrows that flew, yet they advanced; but finding the greatest damage they received was from the tops of the Houses, they entred and gained some of them, and thereby so much advantage, that the King fled, and set up in the Field Por-

tugues Colours, which stopt the Current of the Conquerors, till he had got over to the Continent with his Wives and Riches. The City was plundered, and not one man lost in this Action, though a considerable number of the Enemies was killed.

6. *Mir Abraham* now overcome, was but an Usurper, but the 44<sup>th</sup> Possessor of that Island, of which number many were Tyrants like him. A Kinsman of this *Abraham*, called *Mabomet Anconii* had been very faithful and serviceable to the Portugueses; to requite him *Don Francisco* ordered when the City was plundered, that nothing appertaining to him should be touched. And after all was settled, sent for, and declared him King of that place, putting a Crown of Gold upon his Head with much Pomp and Ceremony. It was a wonderful act of Moderation in this Barbarian, that as soon as the Crown was on his Head, he declared, that had the lawful King *Alfudail*, murdered by the late Usurper, been living, he would have resigned that Crown to him, but since he could not do it, he desired the Son of the said *Alfudail* might be sworn hereditary Prince, though he himself had Children for whom he might cover that Inheritance. This Example in a Heathen might confound the inhuman insolence and barbarity in Christians (at least those who pretend to the name) who wade through Seas of Blood, rend the most Sacred Bonds of Consanguinity and Alliance; spoil Provinces, oppress the Good, exalt the Wicked,  
make



make Honesty, Treason ; and Perjury, Duty ; and Religion, a property to work their ambitious cursed ends, to wit, to snatch Scepters and Crowns from the Hands and Heads where the Eternal Providence has most worthily placed them.

7. All things being again settled, *Don Francisco* in twenty days raised a Fort, the Gentlemen, Captains and he himself working at it. He put into it 550 men, and left a Caravel and a Brigantine to cruise there. The 8th of *August* he set sail for *Mombaca*, and arrived there with 13 Sail. The City *Mombaca* is seated in an Island, which is about 14 Leagues in circumference ; it is beautiful and strong ; before it is a large Bay capable of many Ships. Before he entered, two Vessels were sent to sound the Bar, which is commanded by a Platform with eight Pieces of Cannon, which began to play upon them that were fadoming, but they repaid the Courtesie so fortunately, that a Ball falling among the Enemies Powder did great harm, and they quitted the Work. The like success was against two lesser Works, so that our Fleet entered without further resistance. *Don Francisco* was told the King was prepared, and had hired 1500 Archers of the *Cafres* besides his own men. He sent a message to him, but was not hearkned to, and only answered, that the Moors of *Mombaca* were not to be frightened with the noise of Cannon, like those of *Qui-loa*. *Don Francisco* enraged that some men had been wounded, attempting to burn the  
Ships

Ships of *Cambaya* in the Port, without succeeding, landed his men and marched to the City.

8. He entred the Town the 15<sup>th</sup> of *August*, and drove the Enemy out at the other end, and among them the King, whose Pallace he had possessed himself of, and planted thereon a Cross, and here received the News of the Victory at Sea, the Ships having been burnt as he ordered. In this Action were lost five Portugueses; of the Moors 1513 killed, and 1200 taken, whereof he kept but 200, discharging the rest, the Ships being heavy with Plunder; after which the City was burnt to the ground. Some of the Ships which had been separated by the Storm, joyned the Fleet here. *Don Francisco* dispatched two before him to carry the News of what he had done, and the necessary Orders till he came. He set out for *India* with 14 Ships, and anchored in the Bay called *Angra de Santa Elena*, where he found *John Homem*, Captain of a Caravel, who having been distressed by Weather had discovered some Islands, and met some of the Ships that had lost the Fleet. Sailing thence, the first Port of *India* where he touched, was *Anchediva*.

9. *Anchediva* ( as was said before ) is the chieft of five Islands, where the King had ordered a Fort to be built, which was now put in execution. Hither the King of *Orr* sent Embassadors to *Don Francisco* with Presents. Hither came to meet him Considerable Men, though Merchants, assuring him  
of

of the Good Affection of their Prince to the Portugueses. Hither the Neighbouring Moors of *Cincatora* brought Gifts to him. All was the effects of Fear, produced by the Fame of his Actions. He was informed there was not far from him a Fort, strong by Nature as well as Art, built by the Prince *Sabago*, and garrisoned with 800 men, being seated on the Banks of the River *Aliga* and Borders of *Onor*; he sent his Son *Don Lorenzo* on pretence of a Friendly Visit to take a view of it, which he effected, remaining there some days.

10. The Fort being finished, he put a Captain and 80 men into it, leaving a Galeon and two Brigantines to cruise there, and then sailed to the Port of *Onor*. He was ill received, and resolved to shew himself as terrible there as he had done at *Mombaca* and *Quiloa*. The Inhabitants perceiving it, amused him with excuses till they had secured their Wives, Children and Goods in a neighbouring Mountain, and then appeared with shouts and motions, endeavouring to terrifie rather than seem fearful. *Don Francisco* marched by land, and sent his Son with 150 men in Boats to burn some Ships; and though innumerable Arrows flew, and *Don Francisco* was wounded with one, the Town and Ships were fired at the same time. The Wind being in our mens Faces, the Smoak of the Fire did them much harm; but *Don Lorenzo* taking a compass avoided it, and fell upon 1500 of the Enemy. The confusion was great on both sides,

sides, but more on ours, our men beginning to give ground, till *Don Francisco* coming up, they took heart and drove the Enemy to the Mountain. *Timoja* Governour of the City, and Owner of some of the Ships that were burnt, and a man of Graceful Presence, with discreet words appeased *Don Francisco*, and stopt the ensuing ruin. He excused his King, and in his Name offered Vassalage to *Portugal*. This done *Don Francisco* sailed to *Cananor*.

CHAP.



CHAP. IX.

*Conquests under King Emanuel in the Tear 1506, and Government of the Viceroy Don Francisco de Almeyda.*

1. **B**ECAUSE the Government of *Don Francisco de Almeyda* was the Foundation of our Security and Conquests in *India*, it will be necessary here to say some things of its Ports and Chief Places along the Sea Coasts. *Asia* is divided from *Europe* by the River *Don* or *Tanaïs*, and the *Euxine* or *Black Sea*, and Streights of the *Dardanelis*. From *Africk* by the *Red Sea*, and a Line drawn from *Suez*, the utmost Port thereof, to the *Mediterranean*, cross that narrow Neck of Land which joyns these two parts of the World, and is 24 Leagues in length. The different Religions there practised, may be reduced to four principal ones, the Christian, the Mahometan, the Pagan and the Jewish. That part of *Asia* which makes most to our purpose, may be divided into nine parts, as it runs along the Coast. The first beginning to the Westward, commences at the Mouth of the *Red Sea* in 12 d. 40 m. of North Latitude, and reaches to the Gulf of *Persia*. From the Mouth of the *Red Sea* to the City *Aden* is 44 Leagues, thence to Cape *Fortaque* in 14 d. 30 m. Latitude 100 Leagues, with these Towns *Abian*, *Ax*, *Canaan*,

*nacan*, *Brun*, *Argel*, *Zebel* the Metropolis, *Herit*, *Cayem*, *Fartach*. Hence to *Curia Muria* 70 Leagues, in which are the City *Dolfor*, famous for Frankincense, and 20 Leagues beyond it, *Norbate*. From *Curia Muria* to *Cape Ras Alegate* in 22 d. 30 Latitude 120 Leagues, all barren and desert. Here begins the Kingdom of *Ormuz*, and hence to *Cape Mozandan* are 90 Leagues, with these Cities *Colagate*, *Curiate*, *Mascate*, *Soar*, *Calata*, *Orfacan*, *Daba* and *Lima*, 8 Leagues from *Monbazam*, which *Ptolomy* calls *Cape Assaborum*, in 26 degrees of North Latitude. All this tract the *Arabs* call *Ayaman*, and we *Arabia Felix*, because the most fruitful and best inhabited of all *Arabia*. The second division contains 200 Leagues, from *Cape Jaques* to the Mouth of *Indus* is called *Chirman*, divided into the two Kingdoms, *Macran* and *Madel*, with these Towns, *Guadel*, *Calara*, *Tibique*, *Calamate*, *Goadel* and *Diul*, this Coast is barren and much of it desert, because of the shoal Water. The third contains 150 Leagues, 38 from *Diul* to *Cape Jaquete*, thence to *Dio* in the Kingdom *Guzarata* 50, with these Towns, *Cosinna*, *Mangalor*, *Chervar*, *Patan* and *Corinar*; from *Dio* to *Cambaya* 50 Leagues, and these Towns, *Madrasawat*, *Moba*, *Talica*, *Goda* and *Gundin*. Between *Cambaya* and *Jaquete* is included a part of the Kingdom of *Guzarata*, and the Mountain Country of the *Resbontos*. The fourth contains 290 Leagues, and is the most pretious part of *India*, and most frequented by the *Portugueses*.

gueses. This division is subdivided into three parts by two Rivers that run from *East* to *West*. The first separates the Kingdom of *Decan* from that of *Guzarat*, which lies *North* of it; the second parts *Decan* from *Canara* on the *South*. There are other Rivers which all have their Springs in the *Mountain Gate*. The chief of all those Rivers is called *Ganga*, or *Guenga*, and falls into the Sea near the Mouth of *Ganges*, between the Cities *Angali* and *Pisalta*, in about 22 degrees of Latitude. The River *Bate* has his Springs in the *Mount Gate*, and falls into the Sea by *Bombaim*, parting the Kingdoms of *Guzarata* and *Decan*. From the City *Cambaya* to the Mouth of this River are 70 Leagues. From *Chaul* *South* of it, to the River *Aliga*, the southern extent of *Decan* 75 Leagues, with these Towns, *Bander*, *Dabul*, *Debetete*, *Cintapori*, *Coropatan*, *Banda*, *Chapora* and *Goa*, our Metropolis and Archiepiscopal See in *India*. The third district begins where *Canara* parts from *Decan*, and ends in *Cape Comori*, and contains above 140 Leagues. From this River to *Mount Delli* is about 46 Leagues, with these Towns, *Onor*, *Baticale*, *Barcalor*, *Baranor*, and others of the Province *Canara*, subject to the King of *Bisnaga*. Below this to *Cape Comori* are 93 Leagues, and is called *Malabar*, divided into three Kingdoms which own no Superior. The Kingdom of *Cananor* has 20 Leagues of the Coast, in which are these Towns, *Cota*, *Coulam*, *Nilichilam*, *Marabia*, *Bolepatam*, *Cananor*, the Metropolis, in the Latitude

Latitude of 12 degrees, *Tremapatan*, *Cheba*, *Maim* and *Purepatan*. Here begins the Kingdom of *Calicut*, and runs 27 Leagues, and has these Towns, *Calicut* the Metropolis in about 11 degrees 70 minutes of Latitude, *Coulete*, *Chale*, *Parangale* and *Tanor*, the head of a Kingdom, subject to the *Zamori* or Emperour of *Calicut*, and *Chatua* the last Bound of this Empire. Next is the little Kingdom of *Cranganor*, which borders on that of *Cochin*, then that of *Coulán*, and lastly *Travancor*, subject to *Narsinga*. Near *Travancor* is the Famous Cape *Comori*, the southermost Inland of this Province of *Indostan* or *India*, within *Ganges*, and 7 degrees and half of *North* Latitude, where ends the Coast of *Malabar*, and the fourth of the nine districts I now divide the Coast of *Asia* into. From Cape *Comori* in the *West*, to Cape *Cincapura* in the *East*, which is the Southermost Land of the *Aurea Oerfonesus*, or *Malaca*, are 400 Leagues; and within this interval is contained the great Bay of *Bengala*, called by some *Sinus Gangeticus*, because the River *Ganges*, after watering the Country of *Bengala*, falls into this Bay about the Latitude of 23 Degrees. This River is wonderful for the abundance of water it carries, and esteemed Holy by the Neighbouring People, who imagining it conduces to their Salvation when given over, are carried and die with their Feet in its water, which brings the King a great Revenue, for none must wash there without paying a certain Duty. Though this River



River has many Mouths, the two most remarkable are called *Satigan* to the *West*, and *Chatigan* to the *East*, near 100 Leagues distant from each other; and here will end the fifth of the nine Districts. This may be subdivided into three parts, The first the Kingdom of *Bisnaga* contains 200 Leagues, and these Towns, *Tarancurii*, *Manapar*, *Vaipar*, *Trecbendur*, *Caligrande*, *Gbarcacale*, *Tucucurii*, *Benbar*, *Calicare*, *Beadala*, *Manancort* and *Cannameira*, whence takes name that Cape that stretches out there in 10 degrees of *North Latitude*; then *Negapatan*, *Habor*, *Triminapatan*, *Tragambar*, *Trimenawa*, *Colororam*, *Puducheira*, *Calapate*, *Connumeira*, *Sadrapatan* and *Meliapor*, now called *St. Thomas*, because that Apostles Body was found there. From *St. Thomas* to *Palicata* are 9 Leagues, then go on *Chiricole*, *Aremogan*, *Calesuro*, *Caleciro*, *Pentipolii*, where ends the Kingdom of *Bisnagur*, and begins that of *Orixa*, the second part of this District, and contains about 120 Leagues to Cape *Palmeiras*, with these Towns, *Penacote*, *Calingan*, *Vizipatan*, *Bimilepatan*, *Narsingapatan*, *Puacatan*, *Caregare* and others. Here begins the third part, which is the Kingdom of *Bengala*, and extends above 100 Leagues. The sixth District of the nine begins at the *East Mouth* of *Ganges* or *Chatigan*, and ends at Cape *Cincapura*, in little more than one degree of *North Latitude*. This Coast contains about 380 Leagues to Cape *Negraes*, in the Latitude of 16 degrees 100 Leagues, and these Towns, *Sore*, *Satatolu*, *Attracam*,

Metropolis of the Kingdom so called, and *Dunadiva* upon the Point. Hence to *Tavay* in the Latitude of 13 Degrees 16 Leagues. This is the bounds of the Kingdom of *Pegu*. From *Tavay* to *Cincapura* 220, the chief Towns along this Coast are *Martaban*, *Ligor*, *Tanacerin*, *Lungar*, *Pedam*, *Queda*, *Solongor* and *Malaca*, Head of the Kingdom. At *Cincapura* begins the seventh District, and ends at the great River of *Siam*, which falls into the Sea in the Latitude of 14 Degrees, and has its rise in the Lake *Chiammay*, called by the Natives *Menam*, that is, source of waters; upon this Coast are the Towns *Pam*, *Ponciam*, *Calantaon*, *Patane*, *Ligor*, *Cuii*, *Perperii*, and *Bamplacot* on the Mouth of the River. The eighth District contains these Kingdoms, that of *Cambodia*, through which runs the River *Mecon*, whose Springs are in *China*; that of *Champa* or *Tsiompa*, whence comes the true Aloes; on this borders the Kingdom of *Cochinchina*; then that of *China*, divided into fifteen Provinces or Governments, each of which is a great Kingdom; those on the Sea are *Quantung*, *Fokien*, *Chekiang*, where ends the eighth District. The ninth begins with the Province *Nanking* and continues that of *Xantung* and *Pecheli*, running to the farthest discovered Land of the Coast of *Tartary*. I shall speak of the Islands that lie along this tract as they are discovered, but the Names of the chief are these, the *Maldivy* Islands, *Ceylon*, *Sumatra*, *Java*, *Borneo*, *Banda*, *Timori*, *Celebes*, the *Moluccoes*, *Mindanao*, *Luconia* and *Japan*.

*Japan.* Thus much of the Coast of *Asia*; let us now see by whom inhabited, and what it produces.

2. Though there be many, and very different manners of Worship in *Asia*, as well as sundry Nations; the chief Religions there may be reduced to these four Heads, the Christian, Jewish, Mahometan and Gentile. The first two, for the most part, under the slavery of the latter. With the two latter the Portugues waged War; their Power is thus divided. All that tract from the River *Cintacora*, opposite to *Anchediva* towards the North and West, is subject to Mahometans, thence Eastward, to Pagans, except the Kingdom of *Malaca*, part of *Sumatra*, and some parts of *Java* and the *Molucco* Islands, held by the Moors. In that tract which is governed by these, are the following Sovereign Princes. The Kings of *Aden*, *Xael* and *Fartaque*, who have many Ports of great Trade, and their Subjects, the *Arabs*, are couragious and warlike. Next the King of *Ormuz*, greater than the other three together; and then he of *Cambaya*, equal to *Xerxes*, *Darius*, or *Porus* in grandeur and warlike power. From *Cboul* to *Cincatora* belonged to *Nizamaluco* and *Hidalcan*, two powerful Princes, not inferiour to great Kings, who maintained great Armies composed of sundry warlike Nations well armed. The Moors of *Sumatra*, *Malaca*, and the *Moluccoes* were well disciplin'd, and much better stor'd with Artillery than we that attacked them. The Heathens were

the Kings of *Bisnagar*, *Orixá*, *Bengala*, *Pegu*, *Siam* and *China*, all (but chiefly the last) so Powerful, it is not to be expressed, and if related scarce credible. *Siam* extends above 500 Leagues, and has seven Kingdoms subject, which are *Cambodia*, *Cómo*, *Lanchaam*, *Cheneray*, *Chencran*, *Chiamay*, *Camburii* and *Chaypumo*. The King has 30000 Elephants, whereof he carries out 3000 armed to War, and 50000 men only of the City *Udia*, Metropolis of his Empire. The King of *China* alone in extent exceeds them all, and all the Princes of *Europe* put together. *China* is above 700 Leagues in length, it has abundance of all sorts of Metals, and exceeds *Europe* in Manufactures; some of their Works seem beyond Human Wit; the Silks, Provisions and Pleasures wherewith it abounds, are beyond computation.

3. All the Heathens of *India*, chiefly between *Indus* and *Ganges*, write upon Palm Leaves (without Ink) with Wooden or Steel Pens, which easily cut the Letters on the Leaf, whereof I have seen some in *Rome* curiously folded; what they design should be lasting, they carve on Stone or Copper; they begin on the left Hand; their Histories are fabulous. 600 years before the arrival of the Portugueses in *India*, there was a King so powerful in *Malabar*, that the People began their Era or Computation of Time from his Reign, as they did afterwards from our arrival. He was persuaded by the Moors that traded in his Ports, to turn Mahometan, and gave them leave



to build *Calicut*. Being old, he divided his Kingdoms among his Kindred. To the Chief he gave that of *Coulán*, where he placed the Head See of the Religion of the *Bramens*, and called him *Cobritim*, that is, the same as High Priest; to his Nephew he gave *Calicut*, with all the Temporal Dominion, calling him *Zamori*, that is, the same with Emperour. This last Dignity continues in the same place, the other was translated to *Cochin*. Having disposed of his Dominions, he resolved to die at *Meca*, but was drowned by the way. *Calicut* is a plain Country, well watered, plentiful of Pepper and Ginger; all other Spice it has from its Neighbours. The People are very Superstitious, and do not suffer those of one Trade or Profession to marry into another, or put their Children to Learn. The *Nayres* who are their Nobles, if they chance to touch any of the Commons, cleanse themselves by washing, as the Samaritans and Jews. The Women of the *Nayres* are common to them all, but chiefly the *Bramens*, therefore know no Father, nor is any bound to maintain them. They are most expert at their Weapons, beginning to exercise them at the age of seven years. They use all the ancient manners of Augury and Divination.

4. The Viceroy, *Don Francisco de Almeyda*, had an interview ashore with the King of *Cananor*, who brought with him 5000 men well armed. He acquainted him he came to reside some time in *India*, by reason of some troubles that were so inflamed

with the *Zamori King of Calicut*. He asked leave to build a Fort in the Harbour, and it was granted. Having begun it, he left there *Lorenço de Brito* to command with 150 men, and two Vessels to cruise upon the Coast. Being arrived at *Cochin*, he received the News that the Factor of *Coulau* with all his men, were killed by the Moors. He sent his Son *Don Lorenço* with three Ships and three Caravels, with Orders to procure Lading, without taking notice of what had past, but in case of denial, to revenge the slaughter. The Messenger was answered by a Shower of Arrows, and twenty four Ships of *Calicut* and other places prepared to receive ours. *Don Lorenço* after pouring in his Shot liberally, burnt them all, only a few of the Moors were saved by swimming. *Don Lorenço* then went to load in another Port.

5. He returned to *Cochin*, where his Father, according to his Instructions, was preparing to Crown *Triumpara*, that King, in recompence of the Gallantry wherewith he had defended the Portugueses against their Enemies. But he being retired to follow a Religious Life, and his Nephew *Nambeadora* left Successor, it was thought fit to bestow the same Honour upon him. He was Crowned with great Solemnity with a Crown of Gold set with Jewels, carried from *Portugal* for that purpose. This was a security for that Prince, and a terror to others; six Ships were now sent home richly laden.

6. King

6. King *Emanuel*, to secure the Trade of the Gold of *Zofala*, had caused a Fort to be built at *Quiloa*, another at *Moçambique*, and a Factory at *Melinde*. After *Don Francisco* he sent out *Pedro de Annaya* with six Ships to build a Fort at *Zofala*; three of the Ships were to go on to *India*, and return with lading, the other three to cruise on the Coast of *Zofala*. One of the Captains fell overboard, and was lost; another had 16 men killed in an Island where he landed. The others found *Don Pedro de Annaya* in the Port of *Zofala*. He obtained leave of that King, and raised a Fort, whereby the Trade was secured, which that King never intended, imagining that the Country being unhealthful, the Portugueses would be obliged to quit it. Here *Annaya* found twenty Portugueses in a miserable condition, after travelling with great hardships from *Cape Corientes*, where they were forced to run their Ship ashore, being no longer able to keep above water. Their Captain was *Lope Sanchez*, whom they would not obey ashore, but dividing, travelled in several Companies through those unknown Countries. They were all lost except these twenty, and five found by *Antony de Magallanes* in the River *Quiloame*, who brought them to *Zofala*.

## CHAP. X.

*A Continuation of the Conquests the same Year 1506. and the Government of the same Viceroy Don Francisco de Almeyda.*

1. **T**HE Kingdom of *Zofala* is a large tract of Land, of 750 Leagues circumference, subject to the *Monomotapa*, that is Emperour of that South Part of *Africk*, called by the same Name, or *Ethiopia Inferior*; it is watered by these two Famous Rivers, *Rio del Espiritu Santo*, and *Cuama*, the latter Navigable 250 Leagues. These, and many other Rivers that fall into them, have Golden Sands. Most part of the Land enjoys a Temperate Air, pleasant, wholsom and fruitful. In part it bears great flocks of Sheep, of the Skins whereof the Natives are Cloathed, because of the cold South Winds. Along the Banks of *Cuama*, the Country is Mountainous, covered with Woods, and watered with many Rivers, which make it delightful, and therefore the best Peopled, and the common residence of the *Monomotapa*. It is abundantly stocked with Elephants, and consequently Ivory, and Mines of Gold encompassed 30 Leagues about, with Mountains, on the tops whereof the Air is serene and clear. They are called the



the Mines of *Manica* 50 Leagues South-west of *Zofala*, there are others 150 Leagues distant, none then much valued by their Owners. Here are some Buildings of wonderful Structure, with Inscriptions of unknown Characters, but the Natives know nothing of their Foundation. They believe in one God, under the Name of *Moximo*, and use no Idols. Witchcraft, Theft and Adultery are most severely punished by them. They have as many Wives as they can maintain; the Kings are above 1000, but the first commands the others, and her Children inherit. In their Funerals they are superstitious; their Cloathing Cotton, the better sort mixed with some Gold Threads; the Houses of Wood. The Kings Attendance is more ceremonious than great; his Guard 200 Dogs, and is always followed by 500 Jesters. He is Sovereign over many Princes, and because they rebel, always keeps their Heirs about him. There are no Law Suits among them; they fight a foot; their Arms are Arrows, Javelins or Darts, Daggers and small sharp Hatchets. The Women are so much respected, that if the King's Son meets one, he gives her the way, and stops till she pass.

2. The Moors of *Magadoxa* were the first that possessed these Mines of *Zofala*; after them, those of *Quiloa*, whose Kings were possessed thereof, till *Ruf*, one of their Governours rebelled, and usurped the Sovereignty to himself, with the Title of King, and was the same with whom *Pedro de Annaya*  
now

now treated ; and in this place he built the Fort so much desired by King *Emanuel*, strong though of Wood. The three trading Ships sailed toward *India*, under the Command of *Peter Barreto*. *Francisco de Annaya* was ordered by his Father to secure the Coast up to Cape *Guardafu* with two Ships ; both Vessels were lost, and the Captains saved in their Boats.

3. Whilst the Sea swallowed the Guard of the Coast, the Moors studied the destruction of *Peter de Annaya* at *Zofala*. The King's Son-in-law persuaded him to get rid of them, at such time as they were so weak, through Diseases contracted by the strange Air, that they joined six of them to bend a Cross-bow. The King laying hold of this opportunity, surrounds the place with 5000 *Cafres*, and fills the Ditch with Faggots, then gives the assault, darkning the Sun with Showers of Arrows ; but our Cannon being well played made such havock, that they filled with their Carcases the part of the Ditch they had not levelled with Wood. Only 35 Portugueses, who were able to carry Arms, did all this execution. Afterwards *Peter de Annaya* sallied with 15 or 20 Moors and drove the *Cafres* first to a Wood of Palm-trees, and then to their Dwellings, with such consternation, that they cried, out, *the King of Zofala had called them to fight against God*. *Peter de Annaya* with a few men attacks the Town by night, and entring the King's House, he stood behind the Door with a Cimiter, and as *Annaya* entered,

tred, wounded him in the Neck, but was soon killed with many more. Next day his Sons with all the Moors assaulted the Fort, but in vain, for the fright cured many of the sick, who joyning in the common defence, the Enemy was repulsed. The two Brothers fell out about the Succession to the Crown, and *Solyman* gaining *Annaya*, was by him Crowned; and for his own security made a strong Alliance with, and supported the Portugueses.

2. Whilst these things hapned at *Zofala*, in *India*, the *Zamori* of *Calicut* had stirred up the Soldan of *Cayre*, and hoped with his assistance to drive us out of these Seàs; this was not so private but the King of *Cochin* had intelligence of it, and advertised the Viceroy *Don Francisco*, who sent his Son *Laurence* with 11 Sail to prevent or put a stop to the design. As he visited some Ports, news was brought him, that in the Road of *Cananor* was a Fleet of 260 Paraos, whereof 60 exceeded our Ships in bulk. He directs his course towards them, and after a very sharp engagement they were put to flight, pursued, and some taken, but many sunk and obliged to run aground, with great loss to the Enemy, and of his own only five or six men; the chiefeft part of the Booty was four Ships laden with Spice. *Don Lorenzo* had scarce time to breath after this Victory, when he understood the Fort of *Anchediwa* was beset by 60 Vessels of Moors and Gentiles well armed and resolute, commanded by a Renegado. The besieged behaved  
them-

themselves gallantly, and no less the Besiegers; but having lost some Vessels tore by our Cannon, and hearing of the relief *Don Lorenzo* was about to bring, they went off with all possible speed.

5. The Moors perceiving their Trade was cut off by the Portugueses, thought to shun them by keeping out at Sea in their Voyages to *Sumatra* and *Malaca* where they went for Spice, striking through the *Maldivoy* Islands, and bearing away South of *Ceylon*. The Viceroy sent his Son from *Cochin* with nine Ships to infest that Course. But the Pilots wandring through unknown Seas, discovered the Island *Ceylon*, formerly called *Trapobana*. They anchored at the Port *Gale*, where many Moors were lading Cinnamon, and taking in Elephants for *Cambaya*. They fearful of *Don Lorenzo's* anger, presented him in the name of the King with 400 Bahares of Cinnamon. He well understood the contrivance, but thought it at that time better to dissemble and content himself with the Present, and discovery of the Island, planting there a Cross, with an Inscription, signifying his arrival there. In his return to *Cochin* he fell upon the Town of *Biramjam*, which he burnt down, putting all to the Sword, in revenge for the Portugueses killed at *Coulam*, because this Town belonged to that Crown.

6. *Cide Barbudo* and *Peter Quaresma* coming with two Ships from *Portugal*, after many misfortunes, arrived at *Zofala*, where they found *Peter de Annay*, and most of his men



men were dead, and the rest sick. *Quarisma* remained there to relieve the Fort, and *Barbudo* sailing towards *India*, found *Quiloa* in the same condition whereof he gave the Viceroy an account. He sent with all speed *Nunno Vaz Pereyra* to the relief of the Fort, who having repaired it, and given necessary Orders, went on to *Zofala*. Nevertheless the Fort of *Quiloa* was afterwards razed by the same hands that built it, after having cost many Lives, all the effect of the ill usage of the Portugueses towards the Natives, proceeding from their unlimited Pride and Boundless Avarice.

*End of the First Part of the First Tome:*

THE



---

T H E

*Portugues A S I A.*

---

TOM. I. PART II.

---

C H A P. I.

*Conquests in India under King Emanuel, from the Year 1506, till the Year 1508, the Viceroy Don Francisco still Governing, and entring upon the Glorious Exploits of the Great Alfonso de Albuquerque, and the Famous Tristan de Cunna.*

1. **T**HE King had resolved to send *Tristan de Cunna* to Command the Trading Ships, and *Alfonso de Albuquerque* to cruize on the Coast of *Arabia*, when *James Fernandez Piteyra* discoverer of the *Island Zocorora* in the Mouth  
of

of the Red Sea arrived. Being by him informed there were Christians there who were subject to the Moors, he ordered the two Commanders to direct their course thither, and endeavour to possess themselves of the Fort, to the intent our Fleets might afterwards winter there, and so the Navigation of that Gulf might be secured. They carried with them a Wooden Fort to be set up there, in case that which was there were not found serviceable. On the 6<sup>th</sup> of *March* they sailed from *Lisbon* with 13 Vessels, and 1300 Fighting-men, whereof some (being infected, the Plague at that time raging in the City) died by the way. When they came under the Line the Sickness left them. They had a sight of Cape St. *Augustin* in *Brasil*, and in crossing the vast Ocean between that place and the Cape of *Good Hope*, *Tristan de Cuma* run so far to the Southward, that some of his men perished with Cold, and discovered the Islands still called by his Name; where being assaulted by a Storm, all the Ships were parted, each running a different course, till they met again at *Mozambique*, except *Alvaro Tellez*, who at Cape *Guardufu* took 6 Ships so laden with all sorts of Goods, that from them to his own Vessel he made a Bridge of Bails thrown into the Sea, over which the men passed as on dry land. *Ruy Pereyra*, who fell into *Motatanna*, a Port in the Island *Madagascar*; being informed it abounded in Spice, especially Ginger, invited thither *Tristan de Cumna*. He came and anchored in a Bay which



which *Nunno de Cunna* his Son called *de Dona Maria de Cunna*, a Lady he courted; others named it of the Conception, so it retained the name of *Mary*, either Religious or Profanely. Some Blacks appeared upon the Coast; he sent a Moor to speak to them, but they hearing he spoke of Christians, had killed him, had not our Cannon from the Ships forced them to retire. Sailing three Leagues farther, they fell upon a Village on the Bank of a River, where, among others, they took the Lord of it, whom they call *Xequé*. This man the next night carried our Commander to another Town in a close Bay, which receives the great River *Lulangan*. This was inhabited by Moors, somewhat civilized, who fearful of our Fleet, fled over to the firm Land in Boats so overladen, that many perished by the way. But our men encompassing the Island, took 500 Prisoners, whereof only 20 Men, the rest Women and Children, among them their *Xequé* or Lord, a man of Age and a respectful Aspect. The Morning discovered the Sea thronged with Boats with about 600 armed men, who came to release the Women and Children. The Portugues Commander notified his designs to them, and they with very discreet words persuaded him to restore their People. He was satisfied to understand the Island *Madagascar* was peopled by *Cafres*, most of them Black, and produced little Ginger, to the contrary of the account he had received. Afterwards he would have entred the Town they call

*Zada*, but it being an unseasonable hour, the People in a fury set fire to it, which raged so, that from the Sea it appeared as if the whole Mountain had burnt.

2. Hence he sent *Alfonso de Albuquerque* with 4 Sail to *Moçambique*, because he designed against some places on the Coast of *Melinde*, whilst he with 3 Ships went round to *Matatana*, where was *Clove*, *Ginger* and *Silver*. One of *Tristan's* Ships was lost, the Pilot and only seven men saved, this forced him to Steer for *Moçambique*, but the Wind carryed him to the Island *Angoxa*. At night he discovered the Light of the Ship *St. James*, which he had left at *Moçambique*, whither they both returned, and soon after arrived *John de Nova*, who had wintered in *Angoxa*, laden with *Pepper*. Hence he sailed after meeting *Alfonso de Albuquerque*, and sending him before to *Melinde*. He met two other Ships at *Quiloa*, and went on to *Melinde*. The King obliged him to fall upon *Oja*, a City, that with the assistance of the King of *Monbaça* infested him. The *Arabs* inhabited this Country, where are seen some antient and wonderful Structures. Each City, and a'most Village has a King whom they call *Reque*; the Chief are *Quiloa*, *Zanzibar* and *Monbaça*; but he of *Melinde* pretends to be the antientest, deducing his Pedegree from those of *Quitau*, a City 18 Leagues from him, though ruined, shews the footsteps of its former Grandeur, having been superiour to all its Neighbours, which are *Luziva*, *Parimunda*, *Lamon*, *Jaca*, *Oja*,  
and

and others. The Country is watered by the River *Gulimanja*. *George Alfonso* going up this River in the term of five days, saw on the Banks impenetrable Woods, and in the water an infinite number of Sea-Horses. *Tristan de Cunna* (with seven Ships less than he brought from *Portugal*, whereof one lost, some were separated by Storm, and others sent away) appeared before the City *Oja*, 17 Leagues from *Melinde*, on an open Shoar, secured with a Wall, which hides it from the *Cafres* towards the Land. He sent word to the *Xeque* he had important affairs to communicate with him. Who answered, That he was a Subject of the Soldan of *Cayre*, head Calif of the House of *Mabomet*, and therefore could not treat with People that were so much his Enemies. *Tristan* considering the danger of delays, as soon as day appeared, divided his men into two parts in Boats, one part commanded by *Alfonso de Albuquerque*, the other by himself: And though the Sea seemed to favour the Moors, who stood on the Shoar to hinder our landing, they were forced to ~~fly~~ to the shelter of the Walls, and not trusting to them, entred at one Gate and run out at the other. *Nunno de Cunna* and *Alfonso de Noronha* finding the King fled with many of his men to a Wood of Palm-trees, pursued and killed him in the midst of them. *George Silveira* perceiving a Grave Moor who led a Beautiful Young Woman through a Path in the Wood, made at him, and the Moor making signs to the Woman to ~~fly~~ whilst they fought, she followed

lowed him, signifying she had rather die or be taken with him, than escape alone ; and *Sylveira* seeing them strive who should give the greatest demonstrations of Love, let them both go away, saying God forbid my Sword should part so much love. The Town taken, was plundered, and then burnt with such precipitation, that some of our men perished in the flames. The City *Lamo*, 15 Leagues distant, knowing what had hapned to its Neighbour, submitted to the Portugueses ; and to make it the more acceptable, the *Xeque* came to make the submission, and offer a Tribute of 600 Meticales of Gold yearly, and paid the first year in hand ; Meticales are a Coin of about a Ducate value each. The Fleet went on to the City *Brava*, a populous place, before conquered, but in rebellion, and vain-glorious now with 6000 armed men it exposed on the Shoar. But *Cunna* and *Albuquerque* next day landed in two Bodies, and in spight of Showers of Arrows, Darts and Stones, scaled the Walls and routed the Moors, after washing the Streets with their Blood, and killing so many, their number was not known ; of ours 42 were lost, not half by the Sword, but through Covetousness, for overloading a Boat with the Spoil, they were drowned with it. These were they, who blind with Avarice, barbarously cut off the Hands and Ears of Women to take off their Bracelets and Earrings, to save time in taking them off.



3. The City Burnt and Plundered, *Tristan de Cunna* set sail, and met off of Cape *Guardafu*, *Alvaro Tellez*, who had been in a Storm with the rich Booty before spoken of. Having discovered the Cape, he stood for *Zocotora*. *Zocotora* is an Island 20 Leagues in length, and 9 in breadth, it lies almost *East* and *West*, in the Latitude of 12 Degrees 40 Minutes. It is the biggest about the Mouth of the *Red Sea*, but has no Ports fit for any great number of Ships to winter. Athwart the middle of it runs a ridge of Hills as high as the Clouds, yet not free from the Sand of the Shoar, which is carried up to the very top by the *North* Winds, and is therefore barren, not only of Plants but Trees, only some small Valleys that are under shelter of those Winds. It is distant from the Arabian Continent 50 Leagues, and 30 from Cape *Guardafu*. The Ports most used by us, are *Zoco*, inhabited by Moors; or *Calancea* to the Westward, and *Beni* to the Eastward. The Natives are unpolished. Those Valleys that are sheltered from the Sand, produce Apple and Palm-trees, and the best Aloes, which for its excellency is called *Zocotorinos*. The Common Food is Maiz or Indian Wheat, Tamarins and Milk. They are all Jacobite Christians, as the Ethiopians; the Men use the Names of the Apostles, the Women chiefly that of *Mary*. They worship the Cross, which they wear on their Cloaths, and set up in their Churches, where they pray thrice aday in the Caldean Language

1508.

alternatively as in a Choir ; they receive but one Wife, use Circumcision, Fasting and Tythes. The Men comly, the Women so manly, that they follow the War, and live like Amazons ; some of them for Propagation making use of such Men as arrive there, and even bringing some by Witchcraft. Their Cloathing, some Cloath and Skins ; their Habitation in Caves, their Weapons, Stones and Slings. They were subject to the Arabian King of *Caxem*. *Cunna* found here an indifferent sort, not ill manned or unprovided. He sent a Message to the *Xeque*, and his Answer provoked his Anger. He resolved (though it were dangerous) to land with *Albuquerque*, but the first who leaped ashoar, was his Nephew *Don Alfonso de Noronha* ; who to prove himself worthy the choice the King had made of him to Command that Fort, if gained, advanced with a few, but brave men. The *Xeque* received him with no great number, though much Gallantry, maintaining his ground, and threatning *Cunna*, who, through a shower of Bullers and Stones made his approach to the Fort, and was briskly repulsed by the *Xeque*, whom then *Don Alfonso* struck down with his Lance. There was a sharp skirmish, the Moors endeavouring to carry him off, and ours to hinder it, till he and eight more were slain. The Enemy fled to the Castle, which was scaled, and those who entred opening the Gate, gave entrance into a very large Court, presently possessed by our men. About the inward Fort was a  
bloody

bloody Fight, the Moors fighting to the last man, so that of eighty there was but one left alive, besides a Blind Man who was found in a Well, and being asked how he could get in there; answered, that Blind Men saw only one thing, which is the way to liberty, and which even Blind Men covet. He had his liberty given him. We lost six men. The Natives who had kept off, hearing of our success, came with their Wives and Children to thank our Commander for delivering them from the Heavy Yoke of those Infidels; and he, to their great satisfaction received them under the protection of the King of *Portugal*. The Mosque was cleansed and made a Church of the Invocation of our Lady of Victory, and many were there baptized; in which Pious Work the Labours of *F. Antony* of *St. Francis* were very remarkable. *Cunna* gave the Command of the Fort, now called *St. Michael*, to *Don Alfonso de Noronha*, who had well deserved it by his Valour, though he had not been appointed for it by the King; he named his other Officers, and gave him 100 men. After this he wintered, though with inconveniency, in those Ports, and then sailed for *India*, and *Albuquerque* for the Coast of *Arabia*.

4. Whilst these things hapned at *Zocotora*, the King of *Calicut* was arming afresh against the Portugueses, relying on the promises of his Sourhfayers and Wizards, who finding the arrival of *Tristan de Cunna* was delayed, assured him of success in that lucky

opportunity, and on account of a great change of Affairs, which they said must necessarily follow, as foretold by a great Earthquake and Eclipse of the Sun which hapned, and was so great, that the Stars appeared for a considerable time, which were interpreted as Omens of our destruction. But the Viceroy *Don Francisco* shewed him a greater Power than he imagined to defend the Trade of *Malabar*, composing a Squadron of ten Ships, whereof he gave the Command to his Son *Don Lorenzo*. There remained behind at *Cananor*, *Gonzalo Vaz*, with his Vessel, taking in Water, who followed, and meeting a Ship of *Cananor* with a Portugues Pass, he sunk it, and all the Moors sewed up in a Sail, that they might never be seen. A wicked action, for which he was broke, if that could be reckoned a sufficient punishment for so great a Crime, as violating the Publick Faith; such Enormities producing the Calamities that after besel us in *India*. *Don Lorenzo* lay before the Port of *Cbaul*, when seven Ships arrived, which taking no notice that he saluted them, stood in without making any return. He followed them in his Boats, and the Moors leaped overboard to gain the Shoar, but he was so ready to receive them, that many perished by the way. The Ships were laden with Horses, and other Goods, in the sale whereof some of the Moors dealing deceitfully, *Don Lorenzo* ordered them all to be burnt, to their great admiration, because Covetousness had not moved him



to save any part thereof. Imagining he should find the Fleet of *Calicut* at *Dabul*, he sailed thither, and anchored at the Mouth of the River, where discovering the Fleet, and the narrowness of the place to engage, it was carried in Council to desist, contrary to the Opinion of *Don Lorenzo*, who was inflamed with a desire of fighting. He passed on 4 Leagues, and a Brigantin and Parao that had the Van, saw a Ship sailing up the River. They pursued till it cast Anchor over against a Town, where were many other Vessels. *Don Lorenzo* seeing the two Vessels follow the Ship, sent after them a Galley, and they three together began to clear the Shoar with their Shot, of many Moors who flocked thither. The noise of Cannon called upon *Don Lorenzo*. He made haste, but before his coming up, the others had gained the Vessels in the Harbour, and also burnt a House full of considerable Merchandise. All the Ships in the Harbour were burnt, except two they carried away laden with Riches from *Ormuz*. At his return to *Cochin* with Victory and Spoils, he expected to be received by his Father with joy, and applause; but he on the contrary designed to punish him severely for not fighting the Fleet of *Calicut*, and was excused only, because it appeared he was over-swayed by the Votes of all the Captains, contrary to his own Opinion. The Viceroy immediately broke, and sent them all to *Portugal*. This severity much troubled his Son, and obliged him afterwards, endeavouring

vouring to restore himself to his Fathers esteem, to lose his Life with as much Rashness as Valour.

5. The King of *Cananor* desiring to break with the Portugueses, was encouraged by the *Zamori*, and grounded this Rupture upon finding on the Shoar the Body of a Nephew of *Mamale*, a rich Merchant of *Malabar*, which was one of those *Gongalo Vaz* had thrown into the Sea sowed up in the Sail. This Action was not known there, and the blame was laid upon *Laurence de Brito*, Captain of the Fort, whose Pass that Ship carried. *Brito* having discovered the design, and finding himself weak, advertised the Viceroy. The Message was delivered him at Church, whilst he assisted at the Service of *Maundy Thursday*, and he immediately left the Church, and went about taking up from every one what Provisions they had, and shipped the men with such haste, that those who had lent their Arms to them who watched at the Sepulchre (as the custom is) went to the Church to disarm them. *Don Lorenzo* was Captain, and had Orders when he came to *Cananor* to obey *Laurence de Brito*. But *Brito* insisted, that the other, as Son of the Viceroy, and so Famous an Officer, should command; *Don Lorenzo* was positive, he would obey *Brito*, as being Commander of the Fort, and in pursuance of his Fathers Orders. But finding *Brito* resolved to persist in that Courtesie, and that it might prove dangerous, he left the Relief, and returned alone to  
*Cochin.*

*Cochin.* The Besieged fortified and entrenched themselves, the same was done by the Besiegers, who were 20000 strong. Much Blood was spilt about the Water of a Well, but our men by the help of a Mine, made themselves Masters of it. The Moors after this loss retired to a Wood of Palm-trees, to prepare Engines to batter the Fort. Our Commander had intelligence of it by means of a Nephew of the King of *Cananor*, who endeavoured to gain our Friendship. He prepared to receive them, and when they gave the assault, succeeded so well, first with his Cannon, and then with the Sword, that he filled the Ditch with their Bodies, which they intended to have done with Faggots. They retired to the Wood, and *Brito* sending out by Night 80 men, commanded by one *Guadalajara* a Spaniard, who was his Lieutenant, the Sally was so vigorously executed by the firing of some small Pieces first, in a cold rainy Night, that the Enemy in a consternation knew not where to save themselves, 300 were killed. But this Joy was abated by the Magazine of Provisions taking fire, so that Hunger began to rage, and all Vermin was eaten. The Garrison, part sick and part famished, was reduced to extremity; but the Sea being then rough, left abundance of Lobsters when it went off on the Point of Land where our Chappel was, which were the only relief our men had. The *Zamori* sent a powerful supply to the King of *Cananor*, who gave the last assault to the Fort by Sea and Land,

Land, with above 50000 men, who were vigorously received and repulsed with great loss, not one of our men being killed in this action. But now arrives *Tristan de Cunna* and the King of *Cananor* terrified with his coming, and the defence made by *Brito*, sues for Peace, which was concluded with great honour to the Portugues Valour.

6. *Tristan de Cunna* was upon his return home with the Merchant Ships, and the Viceroy bore him company in order to fall upon *Panane*, a Town subject to *Calicut*, where our Enemies laded under the shelter of four Ships of the *Zamori*, Commanded by *Cutiale* a Courageous Moor. The Viceroy and *Tristan* anchored at the Bar, held a Councel, and then sent both their Sons in two Barques with several Boats, and they in a Gally followed them. They all went up the River through Showers of Balls sent from the Shoar, which is high. The Moors run into the Water to meet our Boats, and killed three men. But the dispute was now come to their Trenches, which some of ours mounted, and *Peter Cam* set upon them *Don Lorenços* Colours. The Colours were flying, when the Viceroy seeing his Son *Don Lorenzo* climbing with some difficulty, cried out Ah! *Laurence*, *Laurence*, what laziness is that; and he very readily answered, Sir, I give way to him that has gained the Honour. A large Moor encountred and wounded *Don Lorenzo*, and he gave him such a stroke, as clove his Head to his Breast. The Town being entred, all were put to the Sword.



Sword. Then all the Ships in the Haven and Docks were fired. We lost 18 Portugueses, none of Note; of the Enemy above 500 perished. Though the Plunder was of great value, it was all burnt to Ashes, and only the Artillery saved. After this Victory they returned to *Cananor* to take in some lading, and *Tristan de Cunna* set sail for *Portugal*. At *Moçambique* he met some Ships of 12 that came from *Lisbon* the year before. Seven were to return with lading, and five under the Command of *Vasco Gomez de Abreu*, to cruise on the Coast of *Melinde*, who was also to Command the Fort of *Zofala*. There were also two Ships to joyn *Albuquerque* on the Coast of *Arabia*. *John Chanoca*, with his Ship, was lost in the River *Zanaga*; *John Gomez*, and his, in another; *Vasco Gomez de Abreu* was cast away with four Vessels going for *Moçambique*. Others, with great danger and Storms, were driven to several places. Misfortunes, terrible, even in the remembrance, but none sufficient to curb Human Avarice and Boldness.

## C H A P. II.

*Conquests under King Emanuel, the Year 1508. during the Government of the Viceroy Don Francisco de Almeyda, and continuing the Exploits of Alfonso de Albuquerque.*

2. **A**FTER the taking of *Zocotora*, on the 20th of *August*, *Cunna* and *Albuquerque* parted, the former for *India*, the latter for the Coast of *Arabia* and *Persia*, in pursuance of the Orders they had from the King. *Albuquerque* had with him 7 Sail; and 460 Fighting-men. The first place where he touched in the Kingdom of *Ormuz*, was *Calayate*, a Town once more Populous, still Beautiful and strong, the Buildings after the manner of *Spain*. He sent a Message to the Governour, who offered him Refreshment, and established a Peace. He went on to *Curiate*, 10 Leagues farther, and was ill received, and storming the Town, met with a Vigorous Opposition, but entred with the death of 80 of the Enemy, and loss of three Portugueses; after the Plunder, the Place was burnt, and with it 14 Vessels that were in the Harbour. Hence he sailed 8 Leagues farther to *Mascat*, a place stronger than any of the others, and well manned with People, who resorted to it from all Parts,

Parts, hearing the destruction of *Curiate*. The Governour fearing the like disaster, made Peace, and sent great store of Provisions, and our men went ashore for Water; but on a sudden the Cannon of the Town began to do great execution upon our Ships, which drew off hastily, not knowing the cause of this turn, till some time after they understood 2000 men, sent by the King of *Ormuz* for the defence of the place, were newly arrived, and their Officers refused to stand to the Peace. *Albuquerque* had received no small damage from the great Cannon, which was plaid very smartly, but landing his men at break of day, he assaulted the Town so courageously and fortunately, that as our men entred in at one Gate, the Moors ran out at another. The Place was plundered, all except the Governours House, saved because he received our men friendly, and gave them notice to retire when the Relief came, though he was killed in the confusion, not being known. This done, he passed to *Soar*, all the Inhabitants whereof fled, except the Governour, and some of the Principal Moors, who offered it up to *Albuquerque*, and received it back to hold of King *Emanuel*, paying the same Tribute he had given to him of *Ormuz*: 15 Leagues farther is *Orfucam*, where he found little to do, the Inhabitants having deserted it; he sent after them his Nephew *Don Antonio*, with 100 men, who having received almost equal damage to what he did, the Moors being numerous, and fighting

ing for their Wives and Children, returned with 22 Prisoners. The Town was plundered for the space of three days, during which time he prepared to enter into the Harbour of *Ormuz*, which was the Principal End of this Voyage, and to which these exploits were but a prelude, being small in his esteem, though to others they might appear considerable.

2. The City *Ormuz* is seated in a little Island, called *Gerum*, at the Mouth of the Persian Gulf, about 3 Leagues in compass, so barren, that it produces nothing but Salt and Sulphur. The Buildings of the City are sumptuous; it is the great Market of all Goods, brought thither from the *East, West* and *North*; which is the reason, that though it have nothing of its own, it abounds in all things, and is plentifully supplied from the Province *Mogastam*, and the Islands *Quixome*, *Lareque* and others. About the Year 1273, King *Malec Caex* possessed all the Land from the Island *Gerum*, to that of *Babarem*, and bordered upon the King of *Gordunxa*, of the Province of *Mogastam*; this King subtilly obtaining of *Malec* the Island of *Gerum*, as a place of no worth; after he was fortified therein, drove him out of all his Country. And translating the City *Ormuz*, where the King kept his Court before, to this Island, he grew so formidable, that the King of *Persia*, fearing he would refuse to pay the Tribute the other had done, prepared to invade him. But he of *Gordunxa* prevented him, by imposing on himself



self a yearly Tribute, and offering to do him Homage by his Embassadors every five years. In this Tyrant began the City and Kingdom of *Ormuz*, afterwards possessed by his Heirs and others; for the most part violently. When *Albuquerque* arrived there, *Ceyfadin*, a Youth of 12 years of age reigned, and over him his Slave *Coje Atar*, a man subtil and couragious. Who hearing what had been done by *Albuquerque*, made preparations, laying an embargo upon all the Ships in the Harbour, and hiring Troops from the Neighbouring Provinces, Persians, Arabians and others, so that when *Albuquerque* came, there were in the Town 30000 Fighting-men, among them 4000 Persians, most expert Archers, and in the Harbour 400 Vessels, 60 of considerable bulk, with 2500 men.

3. *Albuquerque* was not ignorant of the reception designed him; but to shew those People the greatness of his Resolution, he entred that Port about the end of *September*, and came to an Anchor between five of their greatest Ships. For the more terror he fired his Cannon, and the Shoar was soon covered with above 8000 men. Seeing no Message came from the King, he sent aboard the biggest of those Ships, which was of *Cambaya*, and seemed to ride Admiral, the Captain whereof presently came to, and was received by him with Civility and State. He told him he had Orders from his King to take him of *Ormuz* into his Protection, and grant him leave to Trade in those Seas,

provided he paid a reasonable Tribute ; but if he refused, his Orders were to make War. It was doubtless no small Presumption to offer a King the liberty of his own Seas, and impose Conditions upon him , with that handful of 460 men against 33000, and seven Ships to 400 ; but the success justified these proceedings, and verified those Actions, which to some have appeared fabulous. The Moor delivered this Message to the King and his Governour *Coje Atar*, and presently returned one *Coje Beyrame*, excusing their not having sent to know what we demanded in that Port, and promising the Governour would come next day to treat. He came not, but the Messages continued, only in order to gain time to fortifie the City, and receive further Supplies. *Albuquerque* saw into the drift, and told *Beyrame*, he need only return with the acceptation of Peace as offered, or the declaration of War. He brought answer, that City used not to pay, but receive Tribute. Night coming on, it appeared they prepared to fight by the noise of Warlike Instruments, and Shouts that was heard from the Walls and Ships. The Morning discovered the Walls, Shoar and Vessels covered with Armed Men ; the Windows and tops of the Houses filled with both Sexes and all Ages, as Spectators of what should ensue. *Albuquerque* having held a Council, and given necessary Orders, began to play his Cannon furiously, and was answered by the Enemy. They taking the advantage of the Smoak, which hindred the sight,

sight, attacked our Ships with 130 Boats well manned, which did some damage with Showers of Arrows, but received more, many being sunk, and the rest forced to retire by our Artillery. Yet they made a second onset, but were so received, that the Sea was coloured with Blood. By this time *Albuquerque* had sunk two of the great Ships, and taken a third, though with great opposition, forcing the Moors to leap into the Sea. The mean time the other Captains had mastered other Ships, and perceiving themselves victorious, ran along the Shoar, and set fire to above 30 Ships, which cutting their Cables, were drove flaming upon the Persian Coast, where they burnt others that lay aground. This struck so great a terror into all that multitude, that they fled to the shelter of the City, and *Coje Atar* sent to offer all that *Albuquerque* had demanded. He stopt further proceedings, but perceiving the deceitfulness of the Moor, threatned a greater effect of his Anger in case he persisted in his Wiles. And comparing the damage, found, that with the loss of 10 men, most of the Enemies Vessels, with vast Riches, were either sunk, burnt or torn to pieces, and 1700 of them killed. The dead Bodies floating upon the Water, many were seen with Ornaments of beaten Gold, which our men fished for, and observed that many were wounded with their own Arrows, there being none used among the Portugueses.

4. *Coje Atar*, considering the damage received, and what might ensue, called a Council, where it was agreed to submit to what was demanded by *Albuquerque*. The Articles were drawn, and sworn to by both Parties; their substance was, that the King of *Ormuz* did submit himself to King *Emanuel*, with the Tribute of 15000 Xeraphines yearly (a Xeraphin is worth about half a Crown) and should assign the Portugueses place to build a Fort. The Fort was immediately begun, and much advanced in few days, but *Coje Atar* could not bear with it. He feigned Embassadors were come to receive the Tribute they used to pay the King of *Persia*, and therefore desired *Albuquerque* to give them an Answer, since his King was now subject to the Crown of *Portugal*. He guessed at the design, and bid *Coje Atar* send somebody to him who might carry the Answer; the Messengers being come, he put into their Hands Bullets and Spears, telling them that was the Coin the Tribute should be paid in. *Coje Atar* finding his Plot fail, endeavoured to corrupt our Men with Money. He prevailed with five Seamen, one of them a Founder, who cast some Cannon there; and another who informed him, that our men were not compleat 460; whereby animated he studied to break the Peace, refusing to deliver up those men, and pretending at the same time, it was *Albuquerque* that broke it.

5. *Albuquerque* began to revenge this affront, but with little success, because the Captains



tains employed, opposed it. *Coje Atar* perceiving this, at Night fired a Boat we were building on the Shoar, and one of the Portugues Deserters cried from the Wall, *Alfonso de Albuquerque*, defend the Boat with your 400 men, and you shall meet 700 Archers. Nor was it to be admired, those vile Wretches should offer these and other Reproaches, since some of the Captains gave intelligence to the Enemy, and persuaded those five to desert. *Albuquerque* burning with Rage, attempted to fire some Ships in the Arsenal, and failed. He resolved to besiege the City, and having taken some that carried in Provisions, cut off their Hands, Ears and Noses, and sent them in to the great terror of all. There was a hot dispute about filling up some Wells that supplied the Besieged, in so much that they were filled with Carcasses of Men and Horses, the Captain and Guard that maintained them being all slain. The King and *Coje Atar* came to second this Action, and *Albuquerque* was in great danger, his retreat being cut off, but a fortunate Cannon Ball opened a way, putting the Enemies Horse into confusion. *Albuquerque* in these Actions found his men ill disposed to obey; among the rest, three Captains resolving to leave him and sail for *India*, drew up a Paper of Reasons, why he ought to desist from that Enterprize, which he gave to one of the Masons to lay under a Stone in the Work, saying, he had answered, and would be glad to see who durst remove the Stone

to read his Answer. None replied. But offended with this, and each fearing he should not have the Command of the Fort when built, the three put in execution their design of quitting him. This troubled *Albuquerque*; yet he resolved not to desist, though two Captains that staid with him opposed him, desirous to accompany the others; but he used them with such severity, that they were forced to obey him. From *Babarem* to *Queixome* sailed a Fleet with relief of Men and Provisions. *Albuquerque* having pursued, and missing of it, fell upon a Country House of the Kings, guarded by 300 Foot and 60 Horse, and beat them out, killing 80 with the loss of one man. He returned to *Queixome*, and fell upon 500 Archers sent to the King of *Ormuz* by him of *Lara*, under the Command of his two Nephews, and slew them and most of their men, having but 80 with him, the Brothers he sent to *Coje Atar* as a Present. The Town was burnt, and there being taken among the Plunder a Carpet, so big, the Souldiers were about cutting it for convenience of carriage; *Albuquerque* bought, and sent it after to *Santiago* in *Galicie*. Finding he had but few men left wherewith to continue his enterprize, and those harrassed, and Winter coming on, he resolved to go to *Zecora*, and gave leave to *John de Nova* to sail for *India*.

6. Whilst this hapned at *Ormuz*, the Soldan of *Cayre* set out a Fleet of 12 Sail, and 1500 men, Commanded by *Mir Hozem*, to oppose

oppose the Portugueses in *India*. By the way he attacked *Imbo*, and killed the *Xequé*; the same he did at *Ioda*, and got great Plunder; then sailed to *Diu*, where *Melique Az* Commanded for the King of *Cambaya*, whom he was to joyn, and treat with, in order to oppose the Portugueses. The Timber whereof these Ships were built, was cut in the Mountains of *Dalmatia*, by procurement of the Venetians, (as was said) because the Soldan and Turk were at variance. A Nephew of the Soldan carried it in 25 Ships, with 800 Mamalukes besides Seamen. *Andrew de Amarall*, a Portugues, commanded then the Galleys of *Malta*; he knowing that Timber was designed against us in *India*, attacked the 25 Ships of the Enemy, with 600 men in four Galleys and six Ships; and after a sharp engagement that lasted three hours, took seven and sunk five, the rest fled to *Alexandria*, whence the Timber was carried up the *Nile* to *Cayr*, and thence on Camels to *Suez*.

7. At this time the Viceroy, *Don Francisco de Almeyda*, was upon the Coast of *Malabar*, and had sent his Son *Don Lorenzo* to guard those of *Cananor* and *Cochin*, and ran as far as *Chaul* with 8 Ships. On his way he took some Ships of the Moors. *Chaul* is seated on the Bank of a River 2 Leagues from the Sea; one of the chief of that Coast for Greatness and Trade, subject to the *Nizamaluco*, by whose Order *Don Lorenzo* was well received. They had some intelligence of this Fleet of the Soldan, but gave no cre-

dit to it, till it appeared in sight as *Don Lorenzo* was diverting himself ashoar with his Officers. They hasted to the Ships, giving such Orders as the shortness of the time permitted, and were scarce aboard when the Enemy entred the Harbour, with many demonstrations of Joy; for *Mir Hozem* thought himself secure of Victory by surprizing our Ships. He designed to board the Portugues Admiral, and the rest of his Ships to board the others. Ours were so placed, that the Enemy passed between them, and *Mir Hozem* coming up with *Don Lorenzo*, poured in Ball, Arrows, Granadoes, and other Fireworks, but was so well answered, that he gave over the resolution of boarding, though the Portugues Vessel was much less than his. The others had the like success, and so passed on, and Night approaching, they prepared themselves for the next Morning.

8. Day appearing, *Don Lorenzo* gave the signal of Battle, and endeavoured to board *Mir Hozem*, the like was done by the others, but only two Galleys succeeded, which took two of the Enemy, having put all their men to the Sword. Mean while the Cannon was furiously plaid on both sides. *Don Lorenzo* seemed to have the upper-hand, when *Melique Az*, Lord of *Diu*, came with a great number of small Vessels well manned, to the assistance of *Mir Hozem*. *Don Lorenzo* sent two Galleys and three Caravels to hinder the approach of that Relief. They executed it so effectually, they obliged him to fly to another place for shelter, and the Fight

con-



continued till Night parted them, each striving to conceal his loss from the other. The Portugues Captains met in Council, the Result, that it was a rashness to persist in that enterprize, *Melique Az* being so near with that powerful assistance, that it was convenient to take the open Sea, either in order to escape, or to fight with less disadvantage. *Don Lorenzo* remembring the anger of his Father for not fighting the Fleet of *Calicut* in the River *Dabul*, and fearing his retreat might be termed a fearful flight, resolutely expected the Morning, only making some motion to save the Ships of *Cochin* that were in great danger. *Melique Az* imagining this motion was in order fly, lanced out from his retreat, not at all daunted to see many of his Vessels torn in pieces by our Cannon, and Charges briskly; then *Don Lorenzo's* Ship running foul of some Stakes that were drove in the River, made so much water, there was no preventing her sinking, though *Don Lorenzo* laboured indefatigably till a Ball broke his Thigh, and ordering himself to be set against the Main Mast, where he stood encouraging his men, till another Ball broke his Back. The Body was thrown under Deck, and followed down by *Lawrence Freyre Gato* his Page, who bewailed him with Tears of Blood as well as Water, being shot through the Eye with an Arrow. After a vigorous resistance the Moors entred the Ship, and found the Page by his Masters Body, who rising to defend it, killed as many as covered it, and then died upon them. The Ship  
sunk

sunk at last. Of above 100 men that were with *Don Lorenzo*, only 19 escaped, in all the Ships were lost 140, of the Enemy 600.

9. The other Captains got to *Cochin* (where the Viceroy was) with the News of his Sons death, which he received with a wonderful resolution. The numbers of men slain and taken being yet doubtful; he endeavoured by all means to get some intelligence, and at that time received a Letter from *Melique Az*. This Man, born in Slavery, and descended of the Heretick Christians of *Roxia*, rose by degrees to that height wherein he was then placed. The Principal Action that advanced him was, that a Kite flying over the King of *Cambaya*, dinged upon his Head, whereat in a Passion he said, I would give all I am worth that Bird were killed. *Melique Az*, who was a most expert Archer, no sooner heard this, but he let fly an Arrow, which brought down the Kite. The King rewarded this Action so bountifully, that *Melique Az* came to be made Lord of *Diu*, a most Famous City, which being seated on a triangular *Peninsula*, joyned to the Continent by a very smal Isthmus, is commonly reputed an Island. This man endeavoured politickly to secure himself at one time, both with the King of *Cambaya*, and the Portugueses, whose Power he feared, and hated for the damage they brought to the Trade of *Diu*. And to this effect he assisted *Mir Hozem*, sent the 19 Prisoners to the King of *Cambaya*, and writ to the Viceroy, condoling the death

death of his Son, extolling his Bravery, and offering to ransom the Prisoners. Thus he endeavoured to appease the Wrath he knew he had provoked by assisting *Mir Hozem*, which was the Cause of all our Loss.

### CHAP. III.

*Conquests under King Emanuel the Tear 1508 and 1509. A continuation of the Government of the Viceroy Don Francisco de Ameyda, and Exploits of Alfonso de Albuquerque.*

1. **T**HIS same year 1508, about the beginning of *April*, sailed from *Lisbon* 17 Ships, which being all separated by bad Weather, at length met at *Mozambique*, except one that was cast away on the Islands of *Tristan de Cunna*; these Ships with those of the foregoing year, came together to *India*, and added Courage to our People to resist their Enemies. The King ordered that *Don Francisco de Almeyda* should resign the Government to *Alfonso de Albuquerque*, and return home in one of the Trading Ships. But he suspended the execution of this Order, because already engaged in taking revenge of *Mir Hozem*. *Albuquerque* pressed him to obey the Order, *Don Francisco*

*isco* excused himself, saying the Ships were gone, and that he had in hand that enterprize upon the Rumes or Turks who had killed his Son. The other answered, there were more Ships ready to sail, and he would undertake to drive the Turks out of *India*. *Almeyda* replied, that he had taken up the Sword, and had never resigned it to another to revenge his Wrongs. *Albuquerque* offended hereat, went to *Cochin*; and this was the beginning of some mens protracting the time of their Command, and others pressing them to quit, wherein these two Illustrious Men discovered much of Human Frailty.

2. Precedent to this were the Actions of *Albuquerque* at *Ormuz* and *Zocotora*, where he wintered and relieved the Portugues, who were there oppressed by Famine. To this effect he went himself with his Ship to *Cape Guardafu*, and sent *Francis de Tavora* towards *Melinde*, and two Vessels to *Cape Fum*, to make prize of some Ships for their Provisions; they all found what they sought, and so put a stop to the growing Evil. He then resolved for *Ormuz*, though too weak to effect what he intended, yet at least to sound the designs of that King and his Friend *Cajé Atar*. By the way he resolved to be revenged on *Calayate* for injuries done to some Portugueses. This Town is seated beyond *Cape Siagro*, called also *Cape Rosalgate*, at the Mouth of the Persian Gulf. On the Back of it is a Mountain, which has only some Passes, that open a Communication to the Neighbouring Country. One of these Passes



Passes is just opposite to the Town, through which is managed most of the Trade of that Province of the Arabs call *Ayaman*, because (as they say) first inhabited by *Name*, which signifies Plenty or Abundance, a Son of *Lot*; and this Land is full of Populous Cities, Fruitful, and of great Trade. *Albuquerque* no sooner arrived, but he landed and entred the Town, some of the Inhabitants flying to the Mountains, and others being slain in the Streets. *Albuquerque* staid there three Nights, upon one of which 1000 Moors entred the Town by surprize, and did much hurt; but our men gathering, killed many, put the rest to flight, and burnt all the place. They got great quantity of Provisions, which was most of the Booty, and arrived at *Ormuz* the 13th of September. *Alfonso de Albuquerque* presently advertised the King and *Coje Atar* of his arrival, and they answered, that as for the Tribute of 15000 Xeraphins they were ready to pay it, but would not consent to build the Fort. He therefore resolved again to besiege the Island, and ordered *Martin Coello*, with his Ship, to guard the Point *Turumbaca*, where the Wells are; *James de Melo* he posted opposite to the Island *Queixome*, he and *Francis de Tavora* lay before the City. Thence he view- the growth of the Fort, for *Coje Atar* had finished it, making use of what the Portugueses had began, the better to oppose them. The success was much the same as the other time, but he was in great danger himself, and *Diego de Melo*, with 8 private men, being

ing killed, he returned to *India*, having taken a Ship that carried much Pearl from *Babarem*, and *Francis de Tavora* took one of *Meca*.

3. The Viceroy having sent *Albuquerque* to *Cochin*, and dispatched the Trading Ships homeward-bound, under *Fernando Soarez* and *Ruy de Cunna*, who perished by the way, and ordered other lesser matters, he sailed on the 12th of *December* from *Cananor* towards *Diu* in pursuit of *Mir Hozem*. He had with him 19 Vessels of several sizes, and in them 1600 Souldiers and Seamen, whereof 400 were Malabares. All *India* was alarmed at this motion of the Viceroy, but chiefly *Zamori*, and *Melique Az*, who had used all necessary precautions to secure himself against this danger. The Viceroy being landed with his Officers in the delightful Island *Anchediva*, made to them a grave and learned Speech, touching upon the great Actions performed, and reflecting upon the damage received from the Turks; shewed how much they were obliged to God, their King and Country, to revenge that defect, and the death of his Son, with many more circumstances, and concluded, that the more to terrifie the Enemy it were convenient first to fall upon the City *Dabul* their Neighbour. All that were present unanimously approved of his resolution.

4. The City *Dabul* is one of the most noted of that Coast, by reason of its Situation, Greatness and Trade; seated on a Navigable River, 2 Leagues from the Mouth. The Buildings

ings were then stately, the Inhabitants Pagans and Moors. It is on the Borders of the Kingdom of *Decan*, subject to *Sabayo* the King, and was then held by a Governour of his, with a good Garrison, being in fear of our Power. Upon notice of our approach 6000 men were sent in, new Works raised, and much Artillery planted. The Viceroy appearing before it, the Inhabitants, though well provided, began to send away their Goods, the Governour forbid it upon pain of death; and the more to encourage the People brought into the Town his own Wife, who was in a Country House; this example was followed by many of the Principal Men, whose Wives were abroad in the Country. On the 30th of *December* our Fleet entred the Port. The Viceroy ordered *Peter Barreto* to post himself among the Ships that were in the Harbour, and following close, endeavoured to be the first that landed; but every one being inflamed with the same desire, it was all confusion, leaping over one another, so that all, or none was first; of the Viceroy's Boat, the first were *Fernando Perez de Andrade*, and *John Gomez*. The Works being high, the Shot flew over our Men. Our Cannon plaid not on the Enemy because our Men were under it. The Portugueses having gained the Shoar, divided themselves in order at once to attack three Gates, which the Moors perceiving, made so brave a resistance at all three, that the dead Bodies caused a greater stop than the living Defendants, or their Works. The Place

Place was narrow, and the Confusion great every one thronging for fear of being last. The Viceroy cleared all by sending *Nunno Vaz Pereyra* to gain entrance another way, who after a hot dispute, though the Moors came on in great numbers, put them to flight, some retiring to a Mosque, others flying to the Mountain. The Commander of the Enemies did all he could to hinder their flight, seeing only ten Portugueses pursue a Multitude, who through hast falling over each other, retarded their own escape. The Fight lasted about five hours, in which time, with the loss of 16 Portugueses, were killed 1500 Enemies, all hand to hand, for the Cannon on neither side was plaid. The Viceroy remained that Night in the Mosque; he distributed his men about the Town with Orders to keep Guard. *George de Melo* and his Company, stood all Night at their Arms, expecting the Enemy that fled to the Mountain would return. Nor was he deceived, for they by the favour of the Night, stole into the Town, hoping to recover their Wives, Children and Goods. Little was done till Morning, when the Viceroy gave leave to Plunder, which was hindred by the sudden firing of the Town, so that in few hours it was only a heap of Ashes, and therefore the Booty exceeded not 15000 Ducats. It was afterwards known that the Viceroy was the cause of that Conflagration, fearing the men, taken up with those Riches, might retard his other Design. The Ships in the Harbour had the same end, with no small



confusion among ours, scarce able to endure the Flames so near them. The Viceroy had laid in no great store of Provisions, not doubting to get enough along that Coast ; but very little was found here where most was expected, the furious Flames, perhaps fiercer than expected, having devoured all. He thought to remedy this by sending to the Neighbouring Villages, but to no effect, because all was destroyed by multitudes of Locusts, whereof they found many kept in Pots, that were Food to the Natives, which some Portugueses tasting found pleasing to the Pallate, not unlike our Shrimps, which made them conclude these were Shrimps of the Land, as the others of the Sea. So in some places, particularly the Vineyards about *Rome* are found Crabs, not unlike those of the Sea. So that if those Creatures came not so numerous as to destroy the Harvest, they might be covered as Food, not dreaded as a Plague. Such were the Locusts the Scripture mentions the Baptist fed on in the Desert.

5. The Viceroy parted from *Dabul* without Provisions, hoping to get them along the Coast. *Payo de Sousa* run up a River in his Gally, having seen some Cattle upon the Shoar, and hoping to take some of it ; the Owners opposed, and killed him and *George Guedex*. *James Mendez* succeeded in the Command of the Gally, and met another passing from *Diu* to *Dabul* ; this was well manned, and commanded by a Courageous and Expert Turk, who no sooner

L dis-

discóvered our Gally, but keeping his men close, so that only they that rowed were in sight, he drew on *James Mendez* to board him without suspecting any danger, when immediately the Turks that were hid, rushing out had almost gained our Gally; but our men recovering themselves, gained their Gally with the death of all the Turks, without losing one of ours. The Chief Prize was a Noble Beautiful Hungarian Young Woman, who was brought to the Viceroy, and by him given to *Gaspar de la India*, who gave her to *James Pereyra* of *Cochin*, and he married her for her Virtuous Qualities, so well suiting with her Birth and Beauty; Perfections seldom to be found together in the World. Farther on they took in the River of *Bombaim*, a Barque with 24 Moors of *Guzarette*, by whose means the Governour sent some Sheep and Rice, whilst Cattle was brought from other places. The same was done at the Fort of *Maim*; for the People terrified with what had hapned at *Dabul*, fled to the Mountains. The Viceroy arrived the 2d of *February* at *Diu*, which appearing high at Sea, girt with Walls and Towers, beautiful and strong, populous and well governed, after the manner of ours in *Spain*, renewed in our men the memory of our Country, and that inflamed their Courage and Vigour. *Melique Az*, Lord of this City, was absent 20 Leagues off, with his Army against the *Resbuti*, but had still advice of the motions of our Fleet, which scarce anchored before the City, when with

WOD.

wonderful celerity he flew thither. He had already used precaution, that *Adir Hozem* might not perceive how little he was inclin'd to assist him; and that he might not altogether exasperate the Viceroy, and both of them equally feared him. The Viceroy considered the strong situation of the Place, much improved by Art, the Courage and conduct of *Melique Az*, and *Mir Hozem*, and the number of above 200 Vessels well manned, and furnished with all things necessary. Having called a Council, it was resolved, that *Nunno Vaz Pereira* should be the Forlorn Hope with his Ship, in which were 120 Fighting-men, most Gentlemen, and of known Valour. He was to be seconded by *George de Melo*, with the like number, who was to be followed by *Peter Barreto de Magallanes*, and he by *Francis de Tavora*, then *Garcia de Sousa*, and so the other Vessels, carrying from 25 to 80 men each. The Night was spent particularly on our sides, in preparing their Consciences and Arms, for the danger was to be encountred next Morning.

6. Between 9 and 10 in the Morning, when there was Flood enough for the Ships to swim, the Admiral gave the signal for entering the Port. On a sudden all moved with loud Shouts, and sound of Warlike Instruments on both sides. *Melique Az* his Vessels ran to hinder the entrance of ours, Showring Bullets and Arrows, which immediately slew 10 men in *James Perez* his Gally, that led the way to *Nunno Vaz*. Yet

*Nunno* pierces forward, and pouring his Shot among the Great Ships, sunk one to rights. He was in great danger between two of them, when *George de Melo* came up with such fury, that running foul of one of the two, he drove it upon that of *Nunno Vaz*, and thereby gave way to *Sebastian de Miranda* to board it, which he performed. Then *George de Melo* went on to another, in like manner the other Captains. The Viceroy in the midst of the Enemies Vessels, gave them a sufficient diversion, that they might not hinder what the others were acting; and tho' they did him some damage with their continual Shot, he destroyed them with his, till the Paraos of *Calicut* fled, spreading the News along the Shoar, that the Rumes or Turks were victorious. *Mir Hozem* being wounded, in despair slipt out of his Ship disguised into a Brigantine, and thence to Shoar, where taking Horse, he never stopt till he came before the King of *Cambaya*, no less fearful of our Fury, than the falshood of *Melique Az*, who had assisted him with his Vessels, but not with his Person. The absence of *Mir Hozem* did not discourage those in his Vessel; for being boarded, they never yielded, but were all slain. A great Ship belonging to *Melique* being attempted by some of ours, and not able to carry her, the Viceroy discharged all his Cannon upon, and sunk her. *Antony de Campo* took a Galeon. *Ruy Soarez*, one of the last in order of Battel, but not in Courage, running through all, placed himself before the City, and plying molt



most dexterously, took two Gallies, having forced the Defendants to quit them, in such manner, that the Viceroy seeing him at a distance, in a glorious emulation cried out, Who is that who so much excels the rest? O that I were he! The Victory being now no longer doubtful, because some harm was done us by the Artillery on the Shoar, the Viceroy made up to the Ships, where our Gallies and other lesser Vessels killed all that leaped into the Sea, so that the Water was turned to Blood. This Victory was not cheap, for we lost near 40 men. Of the Enemy above 1500 were killed. The Ships being plundered, there were great Riches found in them; and by the great variety of Books in several Languages, was judged, the men were of sundry Nations; among the Books were some Latin, Italian and Portugues. The Soldan and *Mir Hozem's* Colours were sent to *Portugal*. Of all the Vessels that were taken, the Viceroy ordered four Ships and two Gallies should be preserved, the rest were burned. The Victory had been more Glorious, had not the Conquered been treated with such Barbarous Cruelty, that many, not without reason, judged the unhappy end of the Viceroy and other Gentlemen, to be a just punishment of that Crime. We shall soon see it.

7. Next Morning *Melique Az* pretending to be much pleased with the Viceroy's Victory, sent *Cide Ale*, a Moor of *Granada* to wish him joy. There was a Report that the City was in a great Consternation, fear-  
L 3 ing

ing the Conqueror would assault it, and that many were filled with this apprehension. Our men finding the Viceroy inclined to admit *Melique Az* his deceitful Congratulation, began to mutter, and complain that he stopped the course of his Good Fortune, which the Enemies began now to fear. He calling together the Principal Men, told them, that he had no regard to *Melique Az*, but the King of *Cambaya*, who was our Friend, and whole City that was; that the Town was strong and they tired; that of 1200 men he Commanded, only 600 were able to bear Arms; that though the Town were taken, it could not be maintained; and that they might be revenged against *Melique Az* on his Trading Ships. All agreed there should be no more said of the Assault, and should give ear to the Moor. The Viceroy received him courteously, and told him, that two Motives chiefly brought him to that Port, the one to be revenged on the *Rumes*, the other to recover the Portugeses that were taken, and who were to him instead of a Son. The first Point he had obtained, and the second he must gain by having them delivered to him; that he should also deliver to him all the Artillery and Munitions belonging to the *Rumes* that were in the Ships haled in, and they burned, and sell him Provisions. All this seemed little to *Melique Az*, and was performed with such expedition and exactness, that it settled a profitable Peace with the Viceroy, who left one of the Prisoners there to load two Ships with such things as were want-

wanting at *Cochin* and *Cananor*. He dispatched *Don Antonio de Noronha* with Provisions, and some of the Booty of the Ships, to relieve his Brother, *Don Alfonso*, at *Zocotora*. Then the Viceroy sailed, and arriving at *Chaul*; that King terrified with the late Victory, became tributary. Passing by *Cananor*, he was there received with Honour, and at *Cochin* in Triumphant Manner; but before he had laid aside his Festival Ornaments, he was accosted by *Alfonso de Albuquerque*, pressing to deliver up the Government according to the King's Orders. The Answer was, he should give him leasure to put off that Heavy Robe, and there would be time afterwards. *Albuquerque* pressed and the Viceroy delayed.

8. Some Gentlemen perswaded the Viceroy not to resign the Government, whilst *Albuquerque* made instance to have it delivered up, Evil Spirits fomenting these Feuds. The King of *Cochin*, urged by these Divisions, delayed the lading with Pepper, two Ships that were to return home, till *Albuquerque* were possessed of the Government. In fine, the Viceroy sent *Albuquerque* Prisoner to *Cananor*, where he was courteously entertained by that Governour, who then was *Laurence de Brito*, to whom in few days the Viceroy writ, that he should treat his Prisoner as one who soon must Govern *India*.

9. King *Emanuel* being informed of the preparations made by the Soldan of *Cayre* at *Suez*, resolved to send a powerful Relief

to *India*. This consisted of 15 Sail, Com-  
 manded by *Don Fernando Coutinno*, who had  
 an extraordinary Power given him, the  
 King (as was thought) having some ink-  
 ling of the disagreement was like to be be-  
 tween the Viceroy and *Albuquerque*. No-  
 thing of note hapned him till he arrived at  
*Cananor*, whence he carried *Alfonso de Al-*  
*buquerque* to *Cochin*, treating him as Gover-  
 nour of *India*. Though there passed some  
 Acts of Civility between the Viceroy and  
*Coutinno*, the rest was not suitable; for a  
 Ship he had prepared to pass to *Portugal*  
 was denied him, and he obliged to take  
 another he had no mind to. He sailed with  
 two more on the 19<sup>th</sup> of *November*, and  
 had fair Weather till passed the Cape of  
*Good Hope*, when he said, now (God be  
 praised) the Witches of *Cochin* are Liars,  
 who said we should not pass this Cape.  
 Near there he put into the Bay of *Saldanna*  
 to take Water; and some men going to ex-  
 change Goods with the Blacks, a Servant of  
 the Viceroy treated two of them so ill, that  
 they knocked out his Teeth, and sent him  
 away bloody. Some Gentlemen looking  
 upon this as an Affront, perswaded the Vice-  
 roy to go ashore, when they ought to ad-  
 vise him to punish his Servant for abusing  
 People where they sought Relief. This had  
 been Justice. He yielded, but so much  
 against his Will, that as he went into the  
 Boat he said, Ah! whether, and to what  
 end do they now carry the 60 years? Hereby  
 declaring, that was an Action of Raw Heads.  
 There



There went with him 150, the Flower of the Ships. They went on to a miserable Village, and returned with some Cattle and Children, when 170 Blacks coming down from the Mountain, whither they had fled, attacked them in defence of their Children, casting Stakes with sharp Points, hardened at the Fire, so furiously, that in a little time they killed 50 Gentlemen, and among them the Viceroy, who died kneeling on the Sand, with his Eyes lifted up to Heaven, struck through the Throat with one of these Stakes. *George de Melo* returned with the wounded Men to the Ships, and when he thought the Blacks were withdrawn, went ashore and buried the Viceroy and the rest. This was a manifest judgment of God, that so few unarmed Barbarians should overcome those who had done such Noble Actions in *India*. *George de Melo* carried the News to *Lisbon*, where it was received with great Grief. The Viceroy, *Don Francisco de Almeyda*, was seventh Son of *Don Lope de Almeyda*, Count of *Abrantes*, and of *Donna Beatriz de Sylva* his Wife. He was married to *Donna Joana Pereyra*; he was Knight of the Order of *St. James*; He was of a Graceful Presence, Ripe Council, and Obliging Carriage; he was very Continent, an Enemy of Avarice, very Liberal and Grateful. *Don Francisco* wore the Coat or upper Garment (which then was instead of the Cloak used now) Black, the Doublet of Crimson Satin, the Sleeves whereof appeared; the  
Breeches

Breeches also Black, which were Breeches and Stockins reaching from the Feet to the Waste, over them Boots, a Truncheon in the Right Hand, the Left upon his Sword, which hung almost before. He was the first Viceroy and Governour of *India*.

---

#### CHAP. IV.

*Conquests under King Emanuel, the Tear 1510, Alfonso de Albuquerque now Governing India, who held it from the Tear 1509, till the Tear 1515.*

2. **A**lfonso de Albuquerque, now possessed of the Government, prepared to fall upon *Calicut*, with *Don Fernando Coutinho*. The Design was kept private, but *Zamori* provided, as did all the Princes of that Coast when the Portugues were in motion. They set out from *Cochin* with 30 Vessels and 1800 men, besides some Boats of *Malabares*, who followed in hopes of Plunder. They arrived at *Calicut* the 2d of *January*, and weighing the difficulties of Landing, consulted about the manner; and Ordered that part of the Fleet which belonged to *Albuquerque*, should be committed to the care of his Nephew *Don Antonio de Noronha*; and the part of *Coutinho* to *Rodrigo Rabelo*. Every one strove

strove to be so posted as to land first. Our Men were at Arms all Night, and so tired in the Morning, they had more mind to sleep than to land, though the desire of landing had kept them from sleep; but they soon recovered, the signal being given, and the Cannon Playing. *Coutinno* had 800 men, and some Field-pieces: *Albuquerque* had the same number, and besides them 600 *Malabares*. They marched with more Confusion than Order, each striving to be foremost; the first that attacked the Bulwark of *Cerame* were *George de Cunna* and *Francis de Sousa*; they found there 600 men, who made a vigorous resistance, till *Albuquerque* coming up, they quitted it. *Albuquerque* being fearful of the disorder of his men, gave notice to *Coutinno*, who running with all speed to his relief, and our Colours being already set up, judging it had rather been a contrivance of the Governour, than disorder of the Men, took the liberty to say unto him, What means this Sir? Was you ambitious the Rabble of *Lisbon* should report you were the first at taking *Calicut*, which you so extol to the King? But I shall go to *Lisbon* and tell the King I could have entred it with only this Cane in my Hand. And since I find no body to fight with, I will not be satisfied till I enter the Pallace of *Zamori*, and dine in one of his Rooms. This said, without expecting the Answer *Albuquerque* was about to make, he marched with his men towards that Pallace, where *Zamori* then was not. He was tired when

when he reached it, being above 5 Leagues from the Shoar, the Road encumbred with Palm-trees, and having marched hard, and met with opposition by the way, he rested a while in a Plain before the Pallace. Which being then attacked, though well defended, was entred, the Moors flying to the Mountains. Our men now possessed of the Pallance, fell to plundering, without shame or sense of honour, and with as much disorder as if they had been on the Shoar, and their Enemy destroyed. The Enemy now reinforced, returned, and falling upon our disordered men, put all into great confusion, killing many under their Burdens, and doing great harm, though *Vasco de Sylveira* signalized himself, killing two of thier Chiefs, whom they call *Caymales*. In the meantime *Albuquerque* had entred the City, and fired it; and having nothing to divert him, marched to see what *Coutinno* had done. He found all about the Pallace thronged with Armed Men, and that *Coutinno* was within in eminent danger. Finding it best to hinder the Enemies from pressing upon him, he sent him word he waited his coming. *Coutinno* answered not till the third Message, and then returned, that *Albuquerque* might march, and he would follow, being busie in gathering his men, who were disperfed about the House. *Albuquerque* marched, and the Enemy pressed him doing much damage, till News was brought, *Coutinno's* life was in great danger. He endeavoured to return to his relief, but was hindred by the multitude



itude of the Enemy, who slew many of his men, and wounded him with a Dart in the Throat, and a Stone in the Head, and in such manner that he was carried senseless to the Shoar. By this time *Coutinno* and many more were slain in the Pallace, and several on the way, being oppressed by the multitude, and spent with the labour and heat, and stifled with the great Dust. Doubtless they had all perished, if *James Mendez Vascancellos*, and *Simon de Andrade*, whom *Albuquerque* left in the City with 2000 men, had not stopt the fury of the Enemies, and obliged them to retire. There hapned as great a contest about being the last on Shoar, as had been about landing first, not considering all their misfortune had proceeded from that foolish dispute. At last they sailed, having lost 80 men, among them many of Note, whereof *Coutinno* was one. *Albuquerque* being come to himself, gave out several Orders at Sea, and dispatched the Trading Ships homeward-bound; and when arrived at *Cochin*, made preparations for a third attempt upon the Island *Ormuz*. While he is employed about this Business, we will give some account of what was done by two of the Captains spoken of in the beginning of the third Chapter, which could not conveniently be inserted before.

2. One of these two Captains was *Duarte de Lemos*, who, after a Storm, arrived at the place called *Medones de Oro*, thence he went to *Madagascar*, or the Island of *St. Laurence*, and thence to *Mozambique*, where the rest  
of

of his Squadron joyned him. *George de Aguiar* being lost, he took upon him the Command of the Coast of *Ethiopia* and *Arabia*, given him by the King, that Government being then divided into three Parts. From *Mozambique* he sailed to *Melinde*; then set out to visit some Islands of that Coast that had neglected to pay the usual Tribute to *Quiloa* since it was taken. *Monfia* submitted immediately; *Zanzibar* made resistance, but they were drove to the Mountains, and the Town plundered. At *Pemba* hapned the same, the Inhabitants flying to *Monbaza*, leaving nothing in their Houses; but some little plunder was taken in a Fort whether the *Xequé* had conveyed such things as he had not time to secure otherwise. *Lemos* gave the necessary Orders at *Melinde*, particularly in relation to the Factory for the Trade of *Zofala*. Hence he set out with seven Sail for the Coast of *Arabia*; one Vessel Commanded by *Gregory de Quadra*, insensibly was separated from the rest in the Night on the Coast of *Magadoxa*, and carried by the Current to the Mouth of the *Red Sea*, where the City *Zeila* is seated, and was there taken. *Lemos* resolved to take a view of *Ormuz*, and managed the Towns of that Coast more with cunning than force. The same at *Ormuz*, where he received of the King and *Coje Atar* the 15000 Xoraphens, imposed on them as Tribute by *Albuquerque*, and was well treated. Hence he sent to *India*, *Vasco de Sylveira*, who was killed at *Calicut*. Then he sailed to *Zocotora*,  
and

and gave the Command of that Fort to *Peter Ferreira*, sending to *India*, *Don Antonio de Noronha*, who took a Rich Ship of the Moors, which being manned by some Portugueſes, was caſt away in a Storm between *Dabul* and *Goa*, and the men made Priſoners: His own Ship was ſtranded in the Bay of *Cambaya*, where he and ſome others endeavouring to eſcape in the Boat, were all loſt; about 30 that remained in the Ship were taken by the Moors and ſent to the King of *Cambaya*. *Lemos*, on his return to *Melinde*, took a Veſſel richly laden. The *Winter* being paſſed, he returned to *Zocotora*, and found there *Francis Pantoja*, who came from *India* with Proviſions, and had taken a rich Ship of *Cambaya*, the great wealth whereof he ſhared with *Lemos* his men, ſaying they had right to it, as being taken in the Preſcincts of his Government. A rare example of Bounty. *Lemos* finding himſelf unprovided for other undertakings, ſailed to *India*, and was received by *Albuquerque* with great Pomp and Civiliry.

3. The other of the two Captains mentioned was *James Lopez de Siqueira*, who was entrusted with the diſcovery of the Iſland of *Madagaſcar* and *Malaca*. In the Iſland *St. Laurence* he arrived in the Port of *St. Sebaſtian*. He run along the Coaſt, making uſe of a Portugueſe as Interpreter, who had been left there, and forced by neceſſity to learn the Language. He ſpoke with a King called *Diaman*. and was by him civilly treated, but had no intelligence of any Spice or Silver,

Silver, the great end of his Voyage. Having had much trouble and no profit, he failed to *India*. *Don Francisco*, then Viceroy, received him well, and to assist in the discovery of *Malaca*, gave him another Ship, Commanded by *Garcia de Sousa*. He passed by *Pedir*, and that King sent him some Presents, and made him great Offers. The same the King of *Paçem*; in both places he erected Crosses. At last he anchored in the Port of *Malaca*, and terrified the Coast with the thundring of his Cannon, so that all the People running to the Ships and Vessels in the Harbour, shewed the apprehension they had of their new Guest. A Boat came to *Lopez* his Ship to enquire who they were; he answered, there was an Embassador from the King of *Portugal*, who came to propose such things as might be advantageous to that City. There came back a Message from the King in doubtful language, such as is usual when the designs are pernicious; for some forreign Merchants, Enemies to the Portugueses, had persuaded him and his Favourite *Bandara*, with the Powerful Argument of Rich Presents, to destroy *James Lopez*. The third day *Lopez* sent *Hierom Teixeira* with a handsome Retinue as Embassador, who was well received on the Shoar, and placed upon an Elephant, so carried to the King, from whom he returned well pleased.

4. All this was but a Bait to ensnare our People, and therefore the King gave out he would do *Lopez* the Honour to dine with him in Publick. He sent to invite him, and the



the Invitation was accepted, till he was informed by a Friend of *Jao Utimutiraja*, that the Invitation was to murder him. Then he gave credit to the advice sent him from a Persian Hostess by *Duarte Fernandez* after she had endeavoured to come aboard at Night, and was not admitted by *Sequeyra*, judging it some Love Intrigue, but it proved one means to save those Ships. *Lopez* excused himself by counterfitting an indisposition. Another way was contrived to carry on the Treachery, which was by offering lading of Spice, saying it was requisite to send for it to three several places. This took so well, that 30 men were sent according to agreement, whilst a Fleet of several Vessels was behind a Point of Land, ready to assault our Ships, at the same time the 30 were killed in the Town. Mean while a Son of *Utimutiraja* came to visit *Lopez*, and found him playing at Draughts. He persuaded *Lopez* to continue his Game, that he might the less observe him, who offered a thousand times with a Dagger to kill him, and only waited the sign from the Town, when a Seaman, who was Centinel upon one of the tops seeing a throng, and hearing noise, cried out, Sir, Sir, Treachery, Treachery, they kill our men. *Lopez* threw away the Draught-board with such fury, that *Utimutiraja's* Son and those with him, in a consternation leaped into their Boats: All was done that could be expected upon a sudden, and having sunk many of the Enemies Boats, and forced the

M rest

rest to retire, and left 60 of our men in slavery, and 8 killed, they sailed, and soon after took two Vessels bound for *Malaca*. *Lopez* arrived at Cape *Comori*, sent *Teixeira* and *Sousa* with their Ships to *Cochin*; resolving, though ill provided, to return to *Portugal* alone, being fearful of *Albuquerque*, because he had sided with the Viceroy. With great hazard he arrived at the Island *Tercera*.

5. *Albuquerque* had now fixed every thing for his design upon *Ormuz*, dispatched the Trading Ships, and other affairs with great expedition. About the end of *January* he sailed from *Cochin* with 1700 men in 21 Vessels of several sorts and sizes. *Albuquerque* at the River *Onor*, sent for the Pirat *Timoja* (before spoken of) who desirous of our Friendship, and being Powerful, came presently with much Provision. He being skilful in the affairs of *Asia*, *Albuquerque* communicated his design to him. But he dissuaded, shewing how much better it was to attempt *Goa*, that was unprovided, and would be more advantagious. This pleased *Albuquerque*, and hereupon calling his Captains to Council, it was proposed to them by the said *Timoja*, and the Design approved of and commended by all. *Timoja* furnished 12 Ships, giving out he would accompany the Portugueses to *Ormuz*, to the end that *Goa* might be less provided. *Timoja* had been dispossessed of his Fortune, and ill treated by his Kindred and Neighbours. The desire of revenge, and recovering what he

he had lost, caused his Love to our People, that it may always appear, that private Interests are the ruin of the Country. On the 25th of February they came to an anchor in the Port of Goa.

---

## CHAP. V.

*A continuation of the Conquest of the same Year 1510, Albuquerque Governing, and King Emanuel Reigning.*

1. **T**icuari is an Island on the Coast of Canara, formed by two Mouths of the River Gacim, its length from East to West 3 Leagues, the breadth one. There is in it Hill and Plain, has good Water, very Fruitful, Pleasant, Beautiful and Healthy. On the Northern part of it is seated the City Goa, which formerly was on the South. This now in being was built by Melique Hozem, a Moor, 40 years before the arrival of the Portugueses. The Old is not known when founded; but some Authentick Writings have been found, wherein is mentioned, that Mantrasat, King thereof, above 100 years before, confesses one only God, the Incarnation of his Son, and the Trinity and Unity; whence appears they had knowledge of the true Faith; to which may

be added, that when the City was taken, there was found in a Wall a Copper Crucifix. These might be the fruits of the Apostle *St. Thomas's* Preaching.

2. About the year 1300 the Moors began to conquer *India*. The first that attempted it with great Power was *Xa Nofaradin*, King of *Delbi*; with a Powerful Army he came down from the *North*, conquering all the Gentiles as far as the Kingdom of *Canara*. Thence he returned to *Delbi*, leaving *Habedxa* to prosecute the Conquests, who by his Valour and Conduct became so great, that he coped with his Master, which beginning, his Nephew *Madura* prosecuting, possessed himself of the Kingdom of *Canara*, and casting off his Allegiance to the King, he called the Kingdom *Decan*, from the sundry Nations wherewith he Conquered it, this Word signifying so much in that Language. Too great an Empire always threatens ruin. *Mamudxa* fearing this, used great industry to secure himself, which was effectual for some time; but at length several Governours intrusted with Provinces of this Empire, erected them into Sovereignities. The greatest of these was he of *Goa*, about the time of our coming into *India*, called *Sabayo*, deceased about the time of *Albuquerque's* design upon *Goa*; and *Cuso*, King of *Hidalcan*, had possessed himself of the City, and put it into the Hands of his Son *Ismael*. The other Princes were *Nizamaluco*, *Mudremaluco* *Melic Verido*, *Coje Moçadan*, *Abexeiapado* and *Cotamaluco*, all great, some very great. *Sabayo* was born



born at *Saba*, a City of *Persia*, of very mean extraction, but served the King of *Decan* so fortunately, that he gave him the City *Calberga*. Thence he extended his Conquests of the Pagans of *Bisnagar*, and after over the Island of *Goa*, lately possessed by the Moors come from *Onor*, *Melique Hoxem* being then Lord of it, who defended it with 1200 men, and was killed in the defence. *Goa* had several dependencies, and with these and others he gained *Sabayo*, became the most Powerful of those Princes, and consequently hated of them all. He maintained himself against all whilst he lived, sometimes by Policy, sometimes by Force; but his death produced great alteration.

3. We left the great *Albuquerque* at anchor before the Bar of *Goa*, let us see what he acted. It was necessary to sail up the River, on whose Bank the City is seated; therefore he sent his Nephew *Don Antonio de Noronha* and *Timoja* to sound it. A light Vessel leading the way, spied a Brigantine of the Moors, and giving it chase, found they drew under a Fort well stored with Artillery and 400 men, Commanded by *Yacu Gorgi*, a valiant Turk, to secure the entrance of the River. *Don Antonio* seeing the other in the chase, pressed after him; and though the attack of the Bulwark seemed difficult, they attacked, and after a stout resistance took it, the Commander having almost lost a Hand, and not able to stop the flight of his men, retired to the City. Mean while *Timoja*, not to be

out-done, took another Bulwark on the Continent, defended by some Artillery and 30 men. Then they sounded the River. Next day as *Albuquerque* entred the River, he was met by *Mirali*, and other Chief Men of the City, who came to surrender it, upon condition their Lives, Liberties and Estates should be secured. The reason of this surrender was, that the Turk *Yacu* had terrified them with the relation of what he had seen a few Portugueses do, and that a *Fogue* (these are Religious Men among those People, esteemed Saints and Prophets) not long before had declared, that place should soon be subject to Strangers. *Albuquerque* accepted the offer, and anchoring before the City on the 17th of February, was received on the Shoar as if he had been their Natural Prince. He mounted on a Horse, they brought him, with Rich Furniture, at the Gate received the Keys, and went on to the Pallace, built by *Sabayo*. He found there much Cannon, Arms, Tackle, and many Horses. Next he gave such Orders as were to the satisfaction of all the City, then dispatched several Embassies to divers Kings, which produced no effect, only shewed the greatness of his Thought.

4. The Neighbouring Towns depending on *Goa*, came instantly to make their submission, and were kindly received. The Command of the Fort was given to *Don Antonio de Noronna*; the Government of the Infidels to *Timoja*, and so the other Posts to the general satisfaction. Understanding that Ships  
of

of Ormuz, and the Coast of *Arabia* were landing at *Baticala*, four Vessels were sent thither, which took and carried them to *Cochin*, sending plenty of Provision to *Albuquerque*. Now our Fortune begins to frown. The Moors begin to exercise their Treachery. Those whom *Albuquerque* most relied upon conspire, and after four Months revolt, notwithstanding the most faithful *Timoja* blamed his confidence. They had delivered themselves up so easily to shun their own ruin, and gain time till *Ismael Hidalcam* prepared to come to their relief. So it fell out, and he came on with great Power, sending before his great General *Camalcam*, with 1500 Horse and 8000 Foot. *Albuquerque* disposed his men with great diligence and order to receive him.

5. The first step was to secure the Heads of the Conspiracy, and the chief being *Mir Cazem*, to whom he had given the Command of 400 Moors, and his Nephew, they were hewed to pieces by his Guards, others were hanged in publick places, and others kept Prisoners, there being 100 convicted. This discovery, with the punishment, terrified the City. *Camalcam* attempted to pass over to the Island, having prepared Boats to that effect. *Don Antonio* opposed him, and took 12 Boats. Many of the Enemies were killed, many devoured by the Crocodiles, wherewith that River abounds. Nevertheless *Camalcam* landed in the Island, which was quitted by our men, and some Cannon had been lost, had not two Masons

M 4

main-

maintained it, though our Gentry fled, till they were killed, and it brought off. After some resistance, all retired into the City. *Camalcam* encamped about it, playing his Cannon effectually; *Albuquerque* did what the Place permitted, and now comes up *Hidalcam* with 60000 Men, whereof 5000 were Horse. Part of this Army passed the River, and the rest was divided into two parts, one Commanded by a Famous Officer, the other by his Mother and Women, who maintained their Souldiers by the gain of 4000 Common Women they had with them; so that the Women lived upon them, and they upon the Women. The siege was closed by the coming of the King, and no place left *Albuquerque* to act any thing considerable. It is prudence sometimes to yield to necessity. It was resolved in a Council, before day to abandon the City. This was executed with great hazard, for the way to the Ships began to be stopped by *Hidalcam*, and *Albuquerque* had his Horse killed, yet got off without loss, after a siege of 20 days.

6. It was resolved to winter in that Sea, and to this effect drew into a Bay, though not commodious, the best thereabouts; and because the Fort of *Pangi* with much Artillery incommoded them, there was no remedy but gaining of it; 300 Portugueses were appointed for the attack. *Don Antonio de Noronha*, with a Party, was appointed as a reserve, to relieve where there was most need, and *Albuquerque* to guard the Shoar. At the same time they prepared by Night  
to



to appear with the day before the Fort; there marched 500 men, sent by *Hidalcam* to reinforce it. They Joy of these People was so great, that those without, as well as those within being all drunk, they mistook our Men, one side thinking it was the Relief sent them, and the other believing it was the Garrison came out to receive them. They were undeceived by the execution done upon them, 340 being slain, the rest routed, with the loss of one man accidentally drowned. The same hapned at the Bulwark *Timoja* had before gained at *Bardes*. *Hidalcam* hearing of this, was so terrified, that he went from the City, and his fear was the more, because some Conjuror had told him he should be killed by a great Shot near some River. He sent some ceremonious Messages to *Albuquerque*, to discover what was doing aboard the Ships, and he answered, still adding to his fear. By this means he exchanged those Moors he had kept Prisoners, for the Portugueses that were left in the City at their abandoning of it.

7. *Albuquerque* had intelligence some Vessels were preparing to burn his Ships, and he resolved to anticipate by firing them, and they being drove up the Harbour, *Don Antonio de Noronha* was killed in this action. This man used to moderate the Violent Passions of his Uncle *Albuquerque*, who immediately after shewed the effect of his rigid Severity, by hanging a Souldier because he found him with one of the Slaves he called Daughters, that he used to give in Marriage.  
And

And when some of the Officers asked him what Authority he had to put this in execution, putting them under Deck, he lifted his Sword over them, saying, That was his Commission against all that were disobedient, and then broke them all. They all suffered much hardship this *Winter*, especially Hunger. Sailing hence they discovered four Sail, which were judged to be Turks; but coming nearer, appeared to be some of the Fleet come from *Portugal*.

8. This year King *Emanuel* had dispatched two Squadrons for *India*, one of seven the other of four Ships; after them went out two Ships more, and a third to settle a Trade at *Madagascar*. The four Ships under *James Mendez*, were those *Albuquerque* met at his setting out from *Goa*, and gave him the News of the other Ships that were on their way, which was a great satisfaction to him, being the better enabled to prosecute his great designs. *Gonçalo Siqueira* with the seven Ships arrived at *Cananor*, soon after *Albuquerque*, who communicated the enterprize upon *Goa*, but was over-ruled by *Siqueira* and went to *Cochin*. By the way he obtained a Victory over the Malabares of *Calicut*, who opposed our lading Pepper; then he dispatched *Siqueira* with the Trading Ships homeward-bound, and soon after *Duarte de Lemos* with four more, and then turned his view again to the affair of *Goa*. *James Mendez*, who commanded the four Ships, and was before inclinable to the design, now excused himself. *Albuquerque* find

finding this, commanded him and his Captains, upon the severest penalties, not to stir without his Orders. It troubled them because they feared losing the opportunity of going to *Malaca*, whither the King sent them; but they obeyed. *Albuquerque* set out from *Cananor* with 23 Sail, and therein 1500 Fighting-men. He passed by *Onor* to joyn *Timoja*, whom he found busied in his Wedding, being to marry the Daughter of a Queen, and he desiring to be honoured with the Presence of *Albuquerque*, obliged him to land, which proved very dangerous, for a Storm rising kept them ashoar three days, and when he returned to his Ships, a Boat with 30 men was lost. *Timoja* sent with him three Ships, and promised to join him at *Goa* with 6000 men.

9. On the 22<sup>th</sup> of November *Albuquerque* anchored the second time before the Bar Calling to mind the dangers he had there escaped, and the discontent that was among some of his Officers, he thought fit to sooth the Principals with an obliging Harangue, and therewith won all their Inclinations. At break of day, on the Feast of *St. Catharine*, the City was assaulted with great slaughter of the Enemy that maintained the Shoar, but (though it seem strange) not one Portugues killed. The Enemy fled to recover one of the Gates of the City, and our men to enter with them. Here the Fight was renewed, till many Portugueses forced their way in, doing great execution in the Streets. They cleared all to the Pallace

Pallace with great danger, and loss of five Men of Note ; and there was a most furious Contest begun with equal Valour on both sides. Now *Albuquerque* having done what became him, came up, and Fortune appearing wholly on our side, the Moors fled, and abandoned the City, endeavouring to get over to the Continent, but through hast and confusion perished in the River. After the Victory it was found, that of 9000 Fighting-men who defended the Town, 6000 had perished, and 50 Portugueses. *Medeoro*, who commanded the three Ships sent by *Timoja*, behaved himself well. *Timoja* with 3000 men came too late, he was only Witness to the Slaughter. The booty of Horses, Artillery, Arms, Provisions and Ships was excessive, and such as was necessary for the great designs *Albuquerque* had conceived.

10. Our Dead were honourably buried, those of the Enemy in the Bellies of the Crocodiles of that River, into which they were cast. Not one Moor was left alive in the Island. The Gentiles, who were Countrymen, were restored to their Farms, and the Government of them given to *Timoja*, and after to *Melrao*, a Nephew of the King of *Onor*. Whilst *Albuquerque* settled these Affairs, he received many Embassadors with Congratulations of his success from several Princes of *Malabar*. Many of *Hidalean's* Officers, then, and afterwards made inroads as far as *Goa*, but always returned with loss. *James Mendez* and his two other Captains, de-



desirous to go to *Malaca*, stole away out of the Port by Night, contrary to *Albuquerque's* Orders. He sent after them, and being brought back Prisoners, he Ordered they should be sent to answer it in *Portugal*, and two Pilots condemned to be hanged at the Yard-arms. Some were suspicious that *Albuquerque* detained *James Mendez*, lest he should take *Malaca*, which Action he designed for himself; others said, he kept him from the danger *Siqueira* met with there, that Enterprize requiring a greater Power.

II. *Albuquerque* providing for the safety of *Goa*, laid the Foundation of a Fort, which he called *Emanuel*, being the King's Name. He caused the Names of the Captains who were at the taking of it, to be carved upon a Stone; but because every one would be named before the others, he turned down the Stone, hiding the Names, and on what was visible put this Inscription, *Lapidem quem reprobraverunt edificantes*; and thus they were all pleased; for the Portugueses had rather their own Praise should be forgot, than that another should partake. He coined Mony, that of Gold he called *Emanuels*, that of Silver, *Esperas*, and half *Esperas* that of Copper. He married some Portugueses to Women of the Country, giving them in Portion, Lands, Houses, or Employments, the better to secure his Colony. One Night that some of these Weddings were Celebrated, the Brides were so mixt and confounded together among the People, that some of the Bridegrooms went to Bed  
to

to those that belonged to others, and next Morning finding the mistake, they changed them, each taking his own, and all equal as to the point of Honour. This gave the more occasion to some Gentlemen to ridicule the care of *Albuquerque*. But he persisted with such Constancy, that he brought to pass what he intended, which was, to make *Goa* the Portugues Bulwark in *India*. King *Emanuel* was very desirous of, and recommended to *Albuquerque*, with much instance, the taking the City *Aden*, and raising a Fort there. He now possessed of *Goa*, thought time lost while he attempted not something; he therefore counterfeits the carrying on this Enterprize, and sent some Shipstowards the *Red Sea*, when at the same time his design was upon *Malaca*. He went to *Cochin*, having first secured and ordered all things at *Goa*: Where was left for the defence of it *Rodrigo de Castello Branco* with 400 Portugueses and 5000 Gentiles, under *Melrao* to secure the Country and Revenue. He set out of *Cochin* for *Malaca* on the 2d of May with 19 Sail and 1400 Fighting-men, 800 of them Portugueses, the rest Malabares.

## C H A P. V I.

*A Continuation of the Conquests under King Emanuel, the Year 1511, and the Government of Alfonso de Albuquerque.*

1. **T**HE City *Malaca*, whither *Albuquerque* now directed his Course, is seated on that part of Land, being a Peninsula, commonly called by the name of *Aurea Chersonesus*, and upon that Channel which parts the Island *Sumatra* from the Continent of *Asia*, about the middle of that Channel, in something more than two Degrees of North Latitude, stretched along the Shoar about a League, in the same manner as *Lisbon*. It is divided by a River, and the two parts joyned by a Bridge. The Buildings of Wood, except the Mosque and Pallace, which were of Stone. It afforded a pleasant Prospect to the Sea, and was well secured with Fortifications. The Port was filled with abundance of Ships, as being the great Market of all those Parts. It was first built by the *Celates*, a People for the most part employed in Fishing, who joyned themselves to the *Malayes*, that before inhabited the Mountains. They were assisted by *Parisamora*, submitting to him. This Man had been great in the Island of *Java*, and expelled by a Tyrant who usurped his Lordship, fled to *Cincapura*, where being well  
en-

entertained by that King, he rebelled against him, and was again cast out by the King of *Siam*, and so forced to wander about *Malacca*; a just punishment for his ingratitude. He having increased the new Colony, gave it the name of his Fortune; for *Malacca* in that Language signifies a Banished Man. The first King of *Malacca* was *Xaque Darxa*, or as another Author says, *Raal Sabu*) Son of *Paramisora*, subject to him of *Siam*, from whom his Successors revolted. The Country of *Malacca* is subject to Inundations, full of thick Woods, stored with hurtful and dangerous Creatures, chiefly Tigers, which obliges many people to pass the Nights on the tops of high Trees, because they fetch them off the low ones with a leap. The Men are couragious, the Women wanton. The Trade of the *East* and *West* make *Malacca* most Rich and Populous. *Mabomet* reigned at this time, against whom the King of *Siam* had sent an Army of 40000 men, most whereof perished by sundry accidents, and partly by the treachery of *Mabomet*, which he practised with *James Lopez de Siqueira*; but now came *Albuquerque* to revenge them all. *Mabomet* feared the reward of his baseness, and therefore brought to his aid the King of *Pam* with a great Force, and had now 30000 men and 8000 pieces of Cannon, and yet his fear was greater than his preparations.

2. *Albuquerque* sailing from *Cochin*, by the way he took five Ships of the Moors bound for *Malacca*, off of *Ceylon*. The King  
of



of *Pedir*, in the Island *Sumatra*, sent some Moors to visit him, and with *John de Viegas*, one of the Portugueses left behind by *Siqueira*, who, with others, flying from Slavery, arrived at *Pedir*. The same was done by the King of *Paçem*. *Neboada Beegua*, of the Principals of the Treachery of *Malaca*, was fled from *Pedir*, and being beaten and taken at Sea by *Ayres Pereyra*, to the general astonishment of all that beheld him, he shed not one drop of Blood, though pierced with several mortal Wounds; but scarce had they taken off his Arm a Bracelet of Bone, when the Blood gushed out. The Indians discovered the Secret, saying it was the Bone of a Beast that breeds in *Java*, which has that virtue; it was esteemed a great Prize, and brought to *Albuquerque*. Next they met a Vessel with 300 Moors, so resolute, *Albuquerque* was forced to come up himself to take it, not without some danger. In this Vessel was *Geniall*, the rightful King of *Paçem*, banished by the tyranny of the present Possessor. Three other Vessels were taken soon after, whereof one gave intelligence of the affairs of *Malaca*, in which Port our Fleet anchored on the 1<sup>st</sup> of *July* with much noise of Warlike Instruments and Cannon, terrifying all the People that covered the Shoar; for the guilt of what they had before acted, made then sensible what this Fleet was designed for; there being no surer foreteller of their punishment to wicked men, than their own Conscience.

N

3. Next

3. Next day came a Gallant Moor, with a deceitful Message, from the King to *Albuquerque*. He received him with great state, the greatest was that of his Person and Venerable Beard, which had never been cut since he was at *Ormuz*, he saying it should never be cut till he sat to that purpose upon the Back of *Coje Atar*; so it grew to such a length, that he knotted it to his Girdle. He treated the Moor courteously, whose Message contained, that if he came for Merchandize it was ready. The Answer was, That the Merchandize he sought for, were some Portugueses that were in the City ever since *Siqueira* went away; that having got them, he would let the King know what more he demanded of the King and City. The Moor at his return spread the terror of this Answer, and it was generally agreed to buy off that danger by restoring the Portugueses, and paying a sum of Mony. Prince *Alodim* and his Brother-in-law the King of *Pam* prevented the executing this, and made ready to defend themselves. *Albuquerque* began some military execution, whereupon the King restored the Captives. Other Messages were sent by the King in order to appease *Albuquerque*, who answered, That he offered him Peace upon condition he permitted him instantly to raise a Fort there, and repayed the Charge of his and *Siqueira* coming to that Port, since his Falshood had been the cause of all the damage sustained; and that he must immediately return an answer, whether he chose  
Peace

Peace or War. The King desired an Accommodation, but his Son and the King of *Pam* opposed it. At last they all made the necessary preparations to repel the danger.

4. On the Eve of St. *James* the Apostle, the Signal was given for landing, with great Shouts and noise of Guns; immediately the Portugueses leap ashore, and mix with the Enemy. The hottest of the dispute was about gaining and maintaing the Bridge, which *Albuquerque* had undertaken himself, and was vigorously defended till the Enemies pressed, leaped into the River, where many were killed, and many drowned. The Prince and King of *Pam* bravely withstood another party of ours that would make their way to the Bridge. King *Mahomet* came out on a bulky Elephant, with two more carrying Castles on their Backs, whence flew a great number of Darts. Our men attacking the Beasts, so wounded them, that they fled, trampling their own men, and making way for ours to joyn those at the Bridge. *Albuquerque* then fortified himself there, and because much harm was done with poisoned Arrows from the tops of neighbouring Houses, he caused them to be burnt. *Albuquerque* bestowing great Praises on his Captains for their Valour, and perceiving they were scorched with the heat, and faint for want of Meat, retired with them to the Ships about Night, where ten died of poisoned Arrows. The Enemies loss was not known. The King of *Pam* went away, on pretence of bringing a recruit, but returned not.

5. Whilst *Albuquerque* rested in his Ships refreshing his men, the King harraſed his, undermining the Streets to blow us up, and covering them with poisoned Thorns that might gore us at coming in; he planted more Artillery in many places, and ſecured the Bridge. *Albuquerque* ſent *Antony de Abreu* in a Veſſel well manned, to gain it; from the Bridge flew Showers of Bullets, and *Deniz Fernandez de Melo* ſeeing him near killed, endeavoured to carry him off to the Ships to be dreſſed, but he with wonderful conſtancy ſaid, *Though I have neither ſtrength to Fight, nor voice to Command, I have ſtill life to keep my Poſt.* Floats of Wildfire were drove along the River to burn the Veſſel, and no remedy to prevent it, till *Albuquerque* effected it by gaining the Bridge; then the Veſſel had liberty to act. Our Commander enters the City through Showers of Bullets, Arrows and Darts. Underſtanding the danger of the Mines which were in a broad Street, he took another way and gained the Moſque; and at laſt with vaſt ſlaughter of the Enemy, took entire poſſeſſion of the City, having with him in this Action only 800 Portugueſes and 200 Malabares.

6. In nine days time all the Moors were killed, or driven out of that great Place. It was Peopled again by Strangers, and ſome Malayes, to whom leave was granted. Among them came that Powerful Native of *Java Utimutiraja*, whoſe Son had like to kill *Siqueira*. The Souldiers had three days liberty to plunder. There were found 3000  
Pieces



Pieces of great Cannon ; of 8000 that King *Mabomet* relied upon, being with the rest retired to *Bintam*, where with Prince *Alodim* he fortified himself. This would be of dangerous consequence, therefore *Albuquerque* sent out 400 of his men, and with them went 400 of *Utimutiraja*, and 300 belonging to the Merchants of *Pegu*, these put the Prince to flight, took seven Elephants with costly Trappings, and retired. The King now wandred the Woods, blaming the obstinacy of his Son and the King of *Pam* ; so the Father and Son fell out and parted, each shifting for himself. *Albuquerque* instantly built the Fort, which he called *Famosa* for its beauty, and a Church dedicated to the Visitation of our Lady. He Coined Mony (as had been done at *Goa* ) of several Names and different Value, which was proclaimed about the Streets, and some scattered among the People. By these and other honourable Actions he gained the Hearts of the Strangers, and secured this most Important Place.

7. *Albuquerque*, though he saw into the Soul of *Utimutiraja*, knowing it sometimes convenient to trust an Enemy, gave him the Command of the Moors who remained in the City. But he kept private Correspondence with Prince *Alodim*, on pretence to restore him, but in reality to the intent to set himself up. This was not so private but it was discovered, and he, his Son, and Son-in-law were apprehended, and publickly (after Conviction) executed on the same

Scaffold they had erected for *Siqueira*. This was the first piece of Publick Justice executed by the Portugueses in *India*. One Fire is followed by another. *Pate Quitir*, a Native of *Java*, to whom *Alfonso* gave that Government, took a sum of Money of the Wife of *Utumutiraja* (whom he had succeeded) and a promise to give him her Daughter, upon condition he would revenge the death of her Husband on the Portugueses, to whom she had offered 100000 Ducats for his Life. *Pate* accepted the Offer, with the same intention of seizing the City. The King of *Campar* also having this design, sent to Congratulate with *Albuquerque*, offering his Service, and asking the Command of *Pate Quitir*. But this had no effect now, in its time it shall be related. *Albuquerque* received here several Embassies, particularly from the King of *Siam*, who rejoiced to see his Quarrel revenged, though by another hand. He also sent Embassadors to *Siam*, to *Pegu*; and two to discover the Islands of *Maluco* and *Banda*. They had all Orders to publish every where what had hapned at *Malaca*, and offer the Trade of that Place on better terms than it was before. All things being ordered, the best the time would permit, he resolved to return to *Cochin*, leaving *Ruy de Brito Patalim* to Command in the Fort with above 300 men. The like number to guard the Sea, in ten Ships, under *Fernando Perez de Andrade*. *Albuquerque* carried with himself four Sail.

8. Whilst this passed at *Malaca*, there broke out a Rebellion of many of the Natives at *Goa*, and *Pulate Cam*, an Officer of *Hidalcam*, appeared before it with a good Body of Men; he passed over into the Island and besieged the City. One of the Principal Exploits was a Sally made by our Commander *Rodrigo Rebelo*, in which was done much execution. But soon after he was killed, and with him *Manuel de Cunna*, so that things were in a bad posture. To remedy this, by Publick Consent *James Mendez de Vasconcellos* was chose Commander.

9. *Pulate Cam* gave some jealousy, that he designed to usurp this Territory, to prevent which *Hidalcam* sent his Brother-in-law *Rotzmo Cam*, who overcame him with the assistance of *James Mendez*, whom he drew to his Aid, and after would drive out of the City, finding himself with a power of 7000 men, there being then not above 1200 in the Town, whereof the third part only were Portugueses. He laid siege, and Hunger began to press within, and some of our men deserted, whereof part repenting, returned, which gave the first hopes to the Besieged

10. Next came *Emanuel de la Cerda*, left to cruize upon that Sea, and had wintered at *Cochin*; then *James Fernandez de Beja*, who had been demolishing the Fort at *Zocotora*, and receiving the Tribute at *Ormuz*. The abundance of Provisions and Recruits of Men they brought, gave new life to the

almost dismayed besieged. After these arrived, *John Serram*, who came from *Portugal* the year before with *Payo de Sa*, in order to settle some Trade in the Island *Madagascar*, where they made several attempts to no effect. *Christopher de Brito*, who was at *Cananor* with one great and four smaller Ships, hearing of the condition of *Goa*, went thither, carrying many Men and much Provision, and secured the Town which had suffered much that *Winter*.

---

## CH A P. VII.

*Conquests in India under King Emanuel, from the Year 1511, till the Year 1513, Alfonso de Albuquerque still Govern- ing.*

I. **A** *lbuquerque* sailing from *Malaca* to *Cochin*, off *Cape Timia*, of the Kingdom *Aru*, in the Island *Sumatra*, his Ship set upon a Rock, which so split it athwart the Keel, that those in the Poop could not come at them in the Forecastle, and the contrary; neither could the other Vessels, by reason of the darkness of the Night, come to relieve them. Till day appearing *Albuquerque* was seen holding in his Arms a Girl, Chance had conducted to him  
in



in the Confusion; *Peter de Alpoem* coming up, though with much danger, saved him. The loss he most lamented was that Bone which hindred the wounded Moor from bleeding, and some Iron Lions of curious Work, which he had designed for Supporters to his Tomb. Some men were lost. *Albuquerque* went into *Alpoem's* Ship, and prosecuting his Voyage, took two Ships of Moors, which, though Rich, made not amends for his great loss. Immediately upon his arrival at *Cochin*, being informed of the distress of *Goa*, he dispatched thither eight Vessels with Men and Provisions, and a Promise of his speedy coming in Person. There were then in the Town 1000 men, and the Besiegers were 20000 strong.

2. Six Ships arrived in *India* from *Portugal* 1512. Commanded by *Don Garcia de Noronha*, who had a tedious Voyage, having spent a whole year without touching in any Port: And though the men were tired and sick, yet they relieved some places. The mean while sailed from *Portugal* to *India* a Fleet of 13 Ships, whereof one perished at the Islands of *Angoxa*.

3. This Fleet containing 1800 men, anchored at the Bar of *Goa* on the 15th of *August*. They presently visited the Enemy in their Fort of *Benastarim*, and then *Don Garcia*, and *George de Melo* with their Squadrons passed on, carrying with them *John Machado* and others newly delivered from the slavery of *Cambaya*. *Albuquerque* rejoiced more than at his Victories to see his Nephew  
Don

*Don Garcia* with that Command, the great succour he and *Melo* brought, the Captives released, and all things concurring to further his designs. His satisfaction was increased by the arrival of *Antony de Sadanna* with the Garrison of *Quiloa*, which Place being of small importance, they had quitted. At the same time came an Embassador from the King of *Persia*, and one from him of *Ormuz* to go to *Portugal*. *Albuquerque* ordered the affairs of *Cochin* to pass to *Goa*, and by the way left *George de Melo* in the Fort of *Cananor*.

4. He was received at *Goa* as a publick Father, and being informed of the past as well as present posture of Affairs; he visited the Fortifications, and studied how to drive *Rotzomo Cam* from his Works. The sixth day from his arrival, being on an eminence with some Gentlemen viewing 4000 Moors and 200 Horse, who diverted themselves in the Field, it being *Friday*, which is their Sabbath, he could not hinder our men from rushing upon them, and driving them up to their Fortifications, where was a hot Skirmish, and our men victorious with some Booty, having killed above 100, and lost one Captain and another man, and some wounded.

5. *Albuquerque* resolving to take that Fortrels from the Enemy, gave the assault by Land and Sea, and thinking it was not vigorously carried on by Sea, he leaped into a Boat, and came so near that a Cannon Ball killed a *Canara* that steered the Vessels, dashing  
ing

ing his Brains and Blood on his Beard. This so inflamed him, that he promised a reward to any that should break that Cannon, and immediately one of our Gunners directed a Ball into the Mouth of it, wherewith it flew in pieces and killed the Canonier. This made way for our men to come up the River and lay the siege <sup>more</sup> cloſer, when *Zufulari* appearing on the Continent with 7000 men coming to the relief of it, but finding nothing could be done, he retired with ſome loſs ſuſtained by our Cannon. *Albuquerque* ſet down before the place with 4000 men, whereof 3000 were Portugueſes, in two Bodies, one Commanded by himſelf, the other by his Nephew *Don Garcia de Noronha*. At firſt we received ſome damage, but afterwards did ſo much, that *Rotzomo Cam* ſurrendred upon condition to leave the Fort with all the Cannon and Ammunition, and deliver all the Slaves and Renegadoes, which laſt *Albuquerque* puniſhed by cutting off their Noſes, Ears, Right Hands, and Thumbs of the Left, and ſending them ſo maimed to *Portugal*. One of theſe was *Ferdinando Lopez*, who to do Pennance for his Sins, voluntarily ſtaid with a Black in the Iſland *St. Helena*, where he was afterward ſerviceable to ſome Ships, and began to ſow that Iſland.

*Albuquerque* endeavoured to bring *Rotzomo Cam* over to the Portugues Service, but ſucceeded not. But this his Fortune terrified many Princes. The King of *Calicut* concluded a Treaty with *Don Garcia de Noronha*, whom his Uncle had ſent to *Cochin* to take charge

charge of Affairs there. Those of *Narsinga* and *Bisa*, *Hidalcam* and others sent Embassadors, to all which he answered, extolling the value of the Portugueses Amity, and the terror of their Arms; and being dispatched, sent after them Messengers of his own to inform those Princes, and gain intelligence of them. Now arrived at *Goa*, *Matbew*, Embassador from *Prestre John*, in order to go to *Portugal*; he brought with him a piece of the Holy Cross, and Letters from *Queen Helena*, who Governed that Kingdom during the minority of her Son *David*. The design of this Embassie was to settle Amity with our King, and ask Aid against the Moors, who ever infested that Empire. The Embassador said, that at his Masters Court there were then three Portugueses, one called *John*, who stiled himself Embassador of the King of *Portugal*, and two who said they had been lately set ashore at *Cape Guardafu* to discover the Country. These were *John Gomez* and *John Sanchez*, set ashore there by Order of *Albuquerque* himself, with a Moor for that discovery.

7. Finding the Affairs of *Goa* in so good a posture, he resolved to put in execution an Enterprize he had been charged with by King *Emanuel*. This was the Conquest of the City *Aden*. He fitted 20 Ships, without acquainting any body with the design. When ready to sail he acquainted the Captains with his intentions. The number of the men was 1700 Portugueses, and 800 Canaras and Malabars. They set sail the



18th of February, and arrived safe at *Aden*. *Miramirzan*, Governour of the Town, sent to complement *Albuquerque*, and a Present of Provision. Several Messages passing, and no hopes of a surrender appearing, it was resolved to give the assault.

8. The City *Aden* is seated on the Coast of *Arabia Felix*, near the Mouth of the *Red Sea*, called by *Ptolomy*, *Modocan*. Over it appears the Mountain *Arzira*, all a barren Rock, in many Cliffs. The Town from the Sea looks beautiful and strong. It is rich and famous for the great resort thither of many Nations. The Soil so scarce of Water, that it has only a few Wells and Cisterns. Even from the Clouds it is scarce watered above once in two or three years; whence it is void of all Trees, Plants and Orchards, the delight and pleasure of other Towns.

9. *Albuquerque* found the Enterprize was more difficult than it had been represented. On *Easter-Eve* in the Morning our men landed with Scaling Ladders, this being thought the proper method for gaining the place. It was doubtful who first mounted the Wall, but several being already upon it, the Ladders, overburdened with the multitude that pressed to get up, broke several times, so that there was no hope of relieving those who had gained the top, and stood in great danger, and *Albuquerque* was forced to order them down, making one out of the broken Ladders, some fighting while the others came off. After four hours engagement, they retired with great danger and

and loss, more sustained by the accident than the Enemy. *George Silveira* and five men were killed, some died after of their wounds, and some with the fall from the Wall.

10. *Albuquerque* complying with his ill fortune, and the persuasions of his Captains, and to save time, resolved to give over that attempt, and sail towards the Mouth of the *Red Sea*. But first they took a Bulwark that guarded the Port, where many Moors were killed, and 37 great pieces of Cannon found.

The Ships were all first plundered, and then burnt. The fourth day after their arrival they sailed out of this Port, and arrived at the Mouth of the *Red Sea*, next the Coast of *Arabia*, which was much celebrated with great signs of Joy by *Albuquerque*, as being the first of our Nation that had entred those Seas.

## CH A P. VIII.

*A Continuation of the Conquests of the Year 1513, the Reign of King Emanuel, and Government of Altonso de Albuquerque.*

1. **T**HE Form of the *Red Sea* is not unlike to that of a Crocodile, the Mouth of it is the place answerable to the narrow Neck, and the Head is that Sea which lies out between Cape *Guardafu* and Cape *Fartaque*, and the Point of the Tail reaches to

to the Town of *Suez*; it lies N. N. W. and S. S. E. The length of it 350 Leagues, the breadth where widest 40. The Channel is in the middle, and has Water enough to carry the greatest Ships; but the sides are shoal, full of little Islands and Banks of Sand. No River of any note falls into it. By the Moors it is called *Babar Corzu*, that is, closed in; by others the Sea of *Meca*; by us the *Red Sea*, from the Colour it takes of the Bottom, as was experienced by the Viceroy *Don John de Castro*, who caused to be taken up in some places a matter Red, like Corral; in others, Green; and in others, White; and in each the Water seemed of that Colour, but the most is Red, and the Water taken up is as clear as any other. There are some fisheries of small Pearl in many parts of this Sea; it abounds not in Fish. The Mouth lies between 12 and 13 degrees of North Latitude, and is as it were locked up by seven small Islands, the greatest called *Mehun*, and *Perantonomasiam* Island. From the Mouth of the streight till *Suez*, along the Coast of *Arabia*, for the first 44 Leagues, are some Ports of small note, till we come to the Island *Camaran*, subject to King of *Aden*. Thence to *Gezan*, a great Town 60 Leagues, where are seven considerable Ports. From *Gezan* to *Imbo* 130 Leagues, all the Dominion of *Meca*, wherein are good Towns and Ports; among which *Ziden*, a famous Town, then *Ioda*, much known, and *Meca* 15 Leagues up the Country; 60 Leagues from *Imbo*, is *Toro*, where it is said the Children of *Israel* crossed the *Red Sea*, which is  
here

here 3 Leagues over; hence to *Suez* 40 Leagues, and there ends the Coast of *Arabia*. Let us now return from *Suez* to the streight, where we began, running along the opposite Coast of *Egypt* and *Ethiopia*: 20 Leagues from *Suez* is *Grand Cayr*, the vast Metropolis of *Egypt*, but it lies upon the *Nile*, not the *Red Sea*; 45 Leagues from it to *Alcozer*; thence 135, in which space are many Ports to the City *Zuanquem*; 70 Leagues farther *Mazma*, in a small Island, as is the other, and opposite to it *Arquico*; hence 85 Leagues to the Mouth of the Sea. Behind a ridge of Mountains that runs along this Coast lies the Empire of *Prestor John*, which has always preserved Christianity after their manner, and has of late been much supported therein by the Portugues Arms.

2. *Albuquerque* sailing along this Sea, arrived at the Island *Camaran*, abandoned by its Inhabitants for fear of his coming. Here he took four Ships richly laden, one belonging the Soldan of *Cayr*, two more he had taken by the way. From this Island he visited others, and now appeared in the Sky, visibly to all, a Red Cross very bright, seeming to be about a Fathom athwart, and of a proportionable length. They all knelt, and *Albuquerque* made a devout Prayer, and the Vision was Celebrated with Joy and sound of Musick, and Cannon, till by degrees it was covered by a bright Cloud. He returned to *Camaran*, designing to winter there, the Wind having failed him to sail to *Ioda*, as he had designed.

3. Here



3. Here they suffered extreemly by Famine, and after many died by sickness, caused by the ill Food. *Albuquerque* parted hence when the Weather would permit, which was in *July*, resolving to appear again before *Aden*, He touched at the Island *Mebun*, at the Mouth of the Streight, and called it *Vera Cruz*, because he erected there a very high Cross on an Eminence. He dispatched two Ships to discover the City *Zeyla*, where they burnt two Vessels in the Harbour and joyned him again at *Aden*.

4. *Albuquerque* found this City newly fortified. The Cannon on both sides was plaid with almost equal damage. Nothing considerable was performed, but some Ships taken and burnt, and then sailed for *India*.

5. About the middle of *August* he anchored off of *Diu*; the Lord of it *Melique Az*, more out of Fear than affection, sent him some Provisions, and a courteous Message. *Albuquerque* knowing him, dealt cautiously, and demanded leave to raise a Fort there; he excused himself with the King of *Cambaya*; at the same time advising him to deny it if asked. However it was agreed a Factor and some others should be left there to settle Trade; and at parting *Melique* treated *Albuquerque* with such civility and cunning, that he after said he had not seen a more perfect Courtier, or fitter to deceive, and at the same time please an understanding man. Afterwards leave was obtained of the King of *Cambaya* to raise a Fort at *Diu*, upon condition he might build another at *Malaca*,  
O
and

and other reasonable Proposals which were admitted.

6. Now arrived in *India* two Ships from *Portugal*, a third being cast away, but the men saved, and taken up by the others at *Melinde*; the Captain of her was after lost in a Boat. *Albuquerque* went to *Goa*, and sent his Nephew *Noronha* to dispatch these two, and three other Ships homewards. These Ships carried an Embassador from *Zamori* to King *Emanuel*, he being now in amity with us, and having permitted a Fort to be erected where it was desired. They carried also the offers of several Princes, and many Captives taken in War, as Testimonies of what he had acted. There went also a Portugues Jew, an Inhabitant of *Jerusalem*, sent by the Guardian of the Franciscans there, to acquaint *Albuquerque*, that the Soldan of *Cayr* threatned the destruction of all the Holy Places.

---

## CHAP. IX.

*A Continuation of the Conquests, the Year 1513, till the Year 1514, the same King Reigning in Portugal, and the same Governour Ruling India.*

1. **T**Hat Powerful Native of *Java*, *Pati Quitir*, who had been honoured and preferred at *Malaca* by *Albuquerque*, and at the time of his departure was in Rebellion,

lion, improved his absence to carry on his Treason. One Night he killed a Captain of ours, and took some Cannon, and fortified himself therewith and with what he had before, and 6000 Men and two Elephants. *Ferdinando Perez* and *Alfonso Pessoa* with 320 Men attacked him, one by Land, the other by Water; after a vigorous defence, many of his men being slain, he fled to the Woods. In his Fort was found much Artillery, Ammunition and other Riches, and all that part where he lived was burnt to the ground.

2. *Pate Quitir* having received succour from *Java*, and King *Mahomet* who lost *Malaca*, begins to raise another Fort in a convenient place, appearing Powerful by Sea and Land, in hopes to usurp the Dominion of the City. *Ferdinando Perez* went again to oppose him, but though he fought with the same resolution, had not the same success as before, being forced to retire with loss of three Captains and four private men. *Lacsamana*, a Commander of King *Mahomet*, now enters the River with many Men and much Cannon in several Vessels. *Ferdinando Perez* goes to meet him with three Ships, the Fight lasted very furious the space of three hours, with much advantage on the Portugues side. *Lacsamana* with wonderful celerity that Night, threw up a notable Fortification, whilst *Perez* guarded the River, fearing he should fly from him. It was thought a rashness in their condition to attack him, so they retired to the City to

consult their own safety, but before they consulted their relief came unexpected.

3. Just then entred the Port three Ships from *India* with Ammunition and 150 Men. Whilst they considered how to put in execution the Orders sent by *Albuquerque*, *Lacsamana* took all the Vessels that carried Provisions to the Town. Hunger so pressed the Town that some fainted about the Streets, the same Plague attended *Pate Quitir* in his Quarters. The Weather being fit to sail, *Ferdinando Perez* set out with ten Ships and one Gally. As they sailed toward *Cincapura*, the Gally going before, discovered a Sail and kept it in play till the Fleet coming up took and found it stored with Provision and Ammunition, designed for *Pate Quitir*. *Perez* brought the Captain and Principal Men over to his own Ship, who resolved to kill our Men, and began to execute it, running *Perez* into the Back with a Poniard; some of them were taken, others leaped into the Sea. Being put to the Rack, they confessed there was a Son of *Pate Quitir* among them, and that they were followed by three Vessels with the like lading, which were also taken, and all carried to the City. At the same time arrived *Gomez de Cunna* with his Ship laden with Provision; he came from *Pegu*, where he had been settling Peace with that King. The Famine being appealed, and Men recovered, *Ferdinando Perez* with his Fleet attacked *Pate Quitir*, and fortunately burnt his Fort, obliging him to fly to *Java*. *Lacsamana* seeing this success, drew off  
But



But at *Java* a great Fleet is preparing to fall upon *Malaca*.

4. *Java* is an Island S. E. of *Sumatra*, they are divided by a Streight 15 Leagues over, it is long and narrow, the length lying from East to West, is almost 200 Leagues. All the length of it runs a Mountain (like the *Apennine* in *Italy*) which hinders the Commerce between those People: It has some Ports and good Cities. The Inhabitants came from *China*. Afterwards Moors from *Malaca* possessed themselves of the Coast. *Pate Unuz*, who was after King of *Zunda*, was now Lord of the City *Japara*. This Man now prepared a Fleet of 90 Sail to fall upon *Malaca*; among these, some equal in bigness to our Galeons, and that which he was to go in, greater than any of them. He had been seven years making this preparation, and kept private intelligence with the Natives of *Java* that were in *Malaca*. He had 12000 men and much Cannon. On a sudden they appeared before the Town. *Ferdinando Perez* with 17 Vessels, and in them 350 Portugueses and some Natives, met them, had a sharp engagement, and did much execution.

5. The Night parted the Fleets, and was spent in consulting what should be done next Morning. *Pate Unuz* endeavoured to gain the River *Muar*. *Perez*, pursues and pierces into the middle of the Enemy, playing his Cannon and Fire works with such success, that many Ships were sunk and fired. The Fight was very furious, till *Pate Unuz* fled, and was pursued

sued in vain, for he never stopt till in *Java*, where he preserved that vast Vessel as a memorial of his escape, and the grandeur of his Fleet, not without reason, for a Merchant of *Malaca* offered for it 10000 Ducats in case it were taken. This Victory cost some Lives and much Blood, few escaping without some Wounds. Thus were those of *Java* for ever banished from *Malaca*. *Ferdinando Perez* laden with Spice and Victory sailed to *Cochin*, in Company of *Lope de Azevedo* and *Antony de Abreu*, who came from the discovery of the *Maluccoes* with three Ships. After them arrived *Antony de Miranda* from *Siam*, to the great Joy of *Albuquerque*, seeing the good Fruits of his Labour and Care for *Malaca*, and happy return of those he had sent to other places.

6. King *Mahomet* who had lost *Malaca*, had not yet lost the hopes of being restord to it. He drew near, and having tried all ways by force, resolved to make use of a Stratagem. He ordered that *Tuam Maxelix*, a Favourite of his, should imitate the great *Zopirus* of *Babylon*. With his consent he did him some great injuries. He then fled to *Malaca* with some Companions, giving out he fled from the tyranny of his Prince. *Roy de Brito* who commanded the Fort, gave credit to him, and by Presents and Policy he gained such freedom, that he had admittance at all times, till he came prepared to kill *Brito*, the King at the same time being ready to second and bring him off; six men were suddenly slain by his followers: *Brito* then

then opened his Eyes (for he was sleeping) and gathering his Men, drove the Traitor out at the very time that a Party of *Mahomets* came up to the Fort. The Commander of the Party *Tuam Calascar* understanding the miscarriage, with a ready wit counterfeited he came to the assistance of *Brito*, and retired. Now arrived *Peter de Faria* from the Streight of *Sabam*, bringing with him *Abdela*, King of *Campar*, who no longer able to endure his Son-in-law *Mabomet*, came to live under the Portugueses in *Malaca*. This was in the Month of *July*, and *George de Albuquerque* was come from *Goa* to Command in this City, with instructions what to do with the King of *Campar*, which in effect were to give him the charge of *Bendara* (that is, Governour of the Natives) till the posselt by *Ninachetu*, on whom for his good Services *Albuquerque* had before bestowed it, and now took it from him for some miscarriages. This Heathen so much resented it, that he resolved to give a wonderful demonstration of his Constancy and concernment. He was very rich, and ordered in a Market-place a Scaffold to be erected, adorned with Rich Silks and Cloath of Gold; in the middle he placed a great heap of sweet Aromatick Wood, and strewed the Street from his House thither with sweet Herbs and Flowers, and hung it answerable to the Scaffold. He invited his Friends, and clad himself and Family richly. Then mounting upon the Scaffold, whilst by his Order that Rich Pile was fired and kindled, he made a long Harangue,

protesting his Innocence and the Zeal where-with he had served the Portugueses, and saying he would fly up to Heaven in that Flame and Smoke, he cast himself into that Fire, to the great admiration of all the Beholders.

7. The King of *Campar* was gone home, designing to return and take upon him the charge of *Bendara*, but was hindred by the King of *Bintam* and *Mahomet*. They fitted out a Fleet of 70 Sail, and 2500 Men, under the Command of the King of *Linga*; they besieged *Campar*, and 8 Portugues Vessels set out to shut them up, with some Boats equipped by the Town. The King of *Linga* observing them somewhat careless, on a sudden fell upon *George Botello* the Commander, with his Gally, all the Fleet following him, but he was well received, his Gally taken, the Fleet put to flight, and the King forced to leap overboard. They took in the King of *Campar*, and brought him to *Malaca*, where he exercised the Charge of *Bendara* so excellently, that in four Months time the City was visibly improved, many People resorting to it who had fled to *Mahomet*, offended at *Ninachetu*. *Mahomet* perceiving the growth of the City caused by his Son-in-law *Abdela*, to put a stop to it made use of a Fraud peculiar to a Moor. He gave out in private, but so that it might be spread abroad, that his Son-inlaw was gone over to *Malaca* by common consent, and the same was done by such as seemed to fly from *Bintam*, with a design to seize upon the Fort the first opportunity, and deliver it to him



as lawful Prince. This secret (as *Mabomet* had designed it) was divulged at *Malaca*, and had the effect he pretended; for *George de Albuquerque* gave more credit to the Report, than to the Honest proceeding of the *Bendara*, who was tried and condemned as a Traytor, and his Head cut off upon a publick Scaffold. The City escaped not the punishment of this Crime, being left almost desolate by the flight of the Inhabitants, and then oppressed by Famine.

## C H A P. X.

*From the Year 1514, till the Year 1515, concluding with the Government and Life of the Great Alfonso de Albuquerque.*

1. **W**Hilst what is before related hapned at *Malaca*, *Albuquerque* visited the Important Places of his Province, and gave the necessary Orders for their security. He dispatched *Don Garcia de Noronha* to *Cochin*, thence to encourage the work of the Fort that was building at *Calicut*, He appointed four Sail to cruize in the Mouth of the *Red Sea*, under the Command of his Nephew *Peter de Albuquerque*, with Orders to touch at *Ormuz*, and receive the Tribute when it became due, and then discover the Island of *Babareni*. He dispatched Embassadors well attended, to several Princes. *James Fernandez* 1514.

*nandez de Beja* went to the King of *Cambaya* to treat about the Fort of *Diu*, which he had consented to before, and now refused, induced thereto by *Melique Az.* The Embassadour returned with Presents to *Albuquerque*, among other things a Rhinoceros or Abada, which was afterwards lost in the *Mediterranean*, being sent by King *Emanuel* to the Pope, with other Rarities of *India*. *John Gonzalez de Castellobranco* was sent to *Hidalcán* about the pretensions of *Goa*, to less effect than the other in the affairs of *Diu*.

2. In September arrived at *Goa* five Ships from *Portugal*, under the Command of *Christopher de Brito*, one was after lost, bound for *Cambaya*; care was taken to dispatch the lading of the others. *Albuquerque* eased of these more Profitable than Honourable Cares, prepared to set forwards, yet unresolved, whether he should steer to *Ormuz* or the *Red Sea*, the King having Ordered both. In order to fix a Resolution, he consulted with his Captains. It was agreed the Enterprize should be upon *Ormuz*, a suitable determination to *Albuquerque's* desires. On the 20th of February he directed his Course thither. His Fleet consisted of 27 Sail, 1500 Portugueses and 600 Malabares and Canaras. They anchored in the Port of *Ormuz* on the 26th of March. Immediately came aboard a Visit and Presents from the King. But what best pleased *Albuquerque* was, that he found there *Michael Ferreyra* whom he had sent to *Xequé Ismael* of *Persia*, to procure Amity with him, whereof he brought great hopes.

3. *Raez Hamet* was now possessed of the Favour of the King of *Ormuz*, as *Coje Atar* had been with his Predecessor, both these being dead. Among other things *Albuquerque* sent to demand of him the delivery of the Fort he had begun there, and that he should send some Principal Men with the Instrument of the Submission of that Kingdom made by King *Ceyfadin*. All was consented to, because there was no power to resist. The Governour *Raez Nordim* came with his Nephew to ratifie all, to whom *Albuquerque* gave rich Presents, and by them sent the King a rich Coller of Gold, no less valuable for the Workmanship than the Metal, and a Standard with the Portugues Arms, to declare the Union between both Nations. Publick demonstrations of Joy were made on both sides for this agreement, with sound of Warlike Instruments and noise of Cannon. On *Palm Sunday* *Albuquerque* took possession of the Fort before begun, which in few days did rise to a great height, and *Albuquerque* with some of his Captains went into the Houses neighbouring to it.

4. *Albuquerque* prepared to receive an Embassador that came from the King of *Persia* with *Michael Ferreyra* with Presents, on a Scaffold near those Houses; this Audience was so long deferred to shew to those of *Ormuz*, that so powerful a Prince sought his Friendship. The King of *Ormuz* was at a Window to see this Reception. The Present consisted of Ounces, Brocards, Precious Stones, and Jewels of Gold, and many Silks. The

The Embassador was honourably received, and the Treaty concluded with mutual satisfaction.

5. *Raez Hamet* was come from *Persia* with a design to secure *Ormuz*, and deliver it up to his King *Ismael*. He so far gained upon the King, that he absolutely governed him, and nothing was done but by his direction. The better to carry on the Enterpize, he underhand brought People into *Ormuz*, and was actually in readines to kill the King, but deferred it till a more favourable opportunity. *Albuquerque* was informed of all these practices, and how much the King desired to be delivered from that oppression; he studied, and Fortune offered him the occasion of executing it. An interview was appointed between the King and *Albuquerque*. His Evil Conscience warned *Raez Hamet* to shun that danger. He proposed *Albuquerque* should come to the King, lest the King going should carry him. The other insisted that the King should come to him, and carried it, upon condition that neither Party should be Armed. Some of *Raez Hamet's* Men broke the Condition, carrying hidden Arms. He was armed himself, and entring the first with much rudeness, *Albuquerque* cried to his Captains, kill him, which was instantly obeyed. The King came, and the Conference began; but was interrupted by the noise of the People, supposing the King was killed. *Raez Hamet's* Men knowing it was he who was slain, ran and possessed themselves of, and fortified the King's House.

*Albu.*



*Albuquerque* would presently have scaled it, but was hindred by the King, who with the assistance of his Governours, found other means to expel those Enemies the City. They were to the number of 700, who all went away to *Persia*. This disorder was succeeded by the Pomp wherewith *Albuquerque* and all his Captains accompanied the King to his Pallace, to the great Joy of the whole City, seeing their Prince delivered from that Tyranny, and restored to the Majesty of a King. Then *Albuquerque* dispatched the King of *Persia's* Embassador, sending along with him *Ferdinando Gomez*, with a Present of double the value of that he had received. He was to give an account of what had been done at *Ormuz*. He was well received, and brought a favourable Answer.

6. It requires a larger History to give an account of the Affairs and Kings of *Persia*. Let it suffice to say, that the Valiant Prince Reigning at this time, was embroiled in War with the Turk, which was one cause of sending this Embassie, hoping to make an advantage of our Arms against his Enemy.

7. Whilst the Fort was building, or rather finishing, *Albuquerque* persuaded the King it was for the safety of the City to put all their Cannon into the Fort, pretending thereby to secure them against their Enemies, but in reality to disable them from offending him. Security is a Powerful Argument where there is Fear. The King and his Governours, though

though with some reluctance, consented to all was demanded. The Command of the Fort was given to *Peter de Albuquerque*. So was that Rich and Powerful Kingdom brought under the Portugues subjection, rather to the advantage than detriment of its Natural Kings; more oppressed before by the tyranny of their Ministers, than by the Tribute they afterwards paid. Besides the security it enjoyed, being protected by our Arms; but that Liberty is sweeter than all other Conveniencies.

8. These Affairs settled, *Albuquerque* applied himself to dispatch the Trading Ships homeward-bound. He sent to this purpose his Nephew *Don Garcia de Noronha* with most of the Fleet to *Cochin*, staying behind himself to conclude such affairs as required his Presence. Soon after he fell sick, and the Disease increasing, was persuaded for the recovery of his health, to go to *India*, which he consented to, to the great grief of the King, who looked upon him as a Father. By the way he met the News, that there were arrived in *India* 12 Ships from *Portugal*, who brought Orders for him to return home. *Lope - Soares*, who Commanded them, being appointed his Successor; hearing this, he cried out, *Lope Soares* Governour of *India*; this is he, it could be no other: *Don James Mendez* and *James Pereyra*, whom I sent Prisoners for hainous Crimes, return, the one Governour of *Cochin*, the other Secretary? It is time for me to take Sanctuary in the Church, for I have incurred the  
King

Kings displeasure for his Subjects sakes, and the Subjects anger for the King's sake. Old Man fly to the Church, it concerns your Honour you should die, and you never omitted any thing that concerned your Honour. Then lifting his Eyes and Hands to Heaven gave God thanks a Governour came so opportunely, not doubting he should die. He was seized with a profound Melancholy, and arrived at *Dabul*, almost in the Arms of Death, and there writ these last Lines to the King. *This is, Sir, the last Letter which I write to your Highness, now under the Pangs of Death, of many that I writ full of Life, because mine was then free from the Confusion of the last Hour, and employed in your Service. I left in that Kingdom a Son, called Blas de Albuquerque, I beg your Highness will make him as great as my Service deserves. As to the Affairs of India, it will answer for it self and me. Upon the Bar of Goa ( which he called his Land of Promise ) he gave up the Ghost on the 16th of December, in the 63d year of his Age, in his Perfect Senses, and like a Good Christian. He was buried in a Chappel built by himself at the City Gate, and called *Sennora de la Sierra*, or *Our Lady of the Mountain*. He was Second Son to *Gonçalo de Albuquerque*, Lord of *Villaverde*, and of *Donna Leonor de Meneses*, Daughter of *Alvaro Gonzales de Atayde*, first Count of *Ataúguia*. He had been Master of the Horse to King *John* the Second. Of a moderate Stature, his Countenance pleasing, and venerable by the Beard which reached below his*

his Girdle, to which he wore it knotted; that and his Complexion very White; his Picture shews his Breeches, Doublet, Cloak, Cap and Coif all Black, with Gold Trimming; the Waistcoat striped with Green Velvet, with small Spots like Studs. It was doubted whether he was a better Man or Officer. When Angry, his Looks somewhat Terrible; when Merry, Pleasant and Witty. He was twice before *Ormuz*, twice before *Goa*, and twice before *Malaca*, three Famous Islands and Kingdoms in *Asia*, whereof he gloriously Triumphed.

9. After a long resistance made by the People of *Goa*, his Bones were brought to *Lisbon*, and buried in the Church of Our Lady of Grace. He was the first had the Title of Governour of *India*, as *Don Francisco de Almeyda* the first of Viceroy.

*End of the Second Part of the First Tome.*



---

THE  
PORTUGUES  
ASIA.

---

TOM. II. PART III.

---

CHAP. I.

*The Government of the Viceroy D. Anton.  
de Noronna from the Year 1564, till  
1568, in the Reign of King Sebastian.*

1. **W**E concluded the Second <sup>1564</sup>  
Part with the Arrival at  
Gos of the Viceroy D' An-  
ton. de Noronna. His good Service in India  
preferred him to the command of Ormur, and  
his wise Conduct there to the Government  
of India.

2. With him went four Ships, and he was  
received with a general Satisfaction. He im-  
mediately sent Relief to Cananor, which was  
Besieged, giving the Command of the Land  
to D. Antony de Noronna, and that of the Sea

to *Gonçalo Pereyra Marramaque* with a good Fleet. *D. Francis Mascarenas*, who was there with a Squadron before, deliver'd it to him, and went away to his Command of *Mozambique*: This was occasion'd by that Morish Woman spoke of in the end of *John de Men-doça* his Government.

3. *Peter de Silva* and *Meneses*, had the command of seven Ships given him to secure the Boats that brought Provisions to *Gos*, whereof their was a scarcity. About the River *Cannaroto* he lost sight of three of his Ships by stress of Weather, and after found them encreased to six, for the three had met and taken as many of the *Malabars*, and were sailing after their Admiral. Returning to the Place where they were dispersed, between the Islands and the Continent, they met the More *Murimuja* with seventeen Paraos well provided to meet all dangers. He instantly made to our Ships, and after the discharge of Cannon on both sides, they boarded, and having received some damage, the *Portugueses* sunk two and took five, one of them being *Murimujos* who was kill'd; the others flying, were pursued to the River *Pudepatan*, where three Paraos and above fifty Almadies or great Boats came to their Relief. Our Cannon repulsed them, and they run up the River: Of the Enemy five hundred were killed, and three *Portugueses*.

4. The Viceroy being in care for *Canoe*, sent thither *D. Paul de Lima Pereyra*, with four Ships. Being at Anchor in the Bay of *Batçala*, the *Malabar Pyrat Canatoli* came upon

upon him with seven Paraos loaded with Booty taken on the Northern Coast. *Paul* seeing him come, sets out to meet him. After the usual Salutes with their Cannon, *Canatale* with three of his Ships lays D. *Paul's* Galliot on Board, the others did the like to the other three, whereof two shamefully fled, the third stood by it till he was sunk. Now all the Enemies force fell upon D. *Paul*, who, with fifty Men he had, did things beyond belief, killing above two hundred Mores, but with the loss of thirty *Portugueses*. D. *Paul* was so wounded, he was forc'd to sit down and gave order to make to the Enemy, who was drawn off. *Canatale*, who was preparing to fall on again, seeing the Galliot beyond Expectation make at him, stood away; D. *Paul* return'd to *Goa*, being in no condition to reach *Cananor*.

5. There our Men were much streightned by the number of the Enemies who were Masters of the Field. *Andrew de Sousa* made a good resistance, till he dying, and D. *Antony de Noronna* succeeding him, with the relief he carried, in several rencounters they kill'd above Two thousand Mores, and cut down forty thousand Palm-trees. This is the greatest harm can be done that People, because those Trees are their principal Subsistence. The City enrag'd hereat, call'd together all the Neighbourhood to the number of Ninety Thousand, to take Revenge. They had the boldness to assault and scale the Fort with such confidence of carrying it, that they had before-hand divided the Booty.

*Nicerigcaripo a Nayre* did us great Service, advising *D. Payo de Noronna* then commanding there, to put the Men and Riches of the Town, as not tenable, into the Fort. All was drawn in, except *D. Antony de Noronna* and his Men, who said he would live and die by those Walls, and staid accordingly. The Men all prepared themselves for Death, and stood at their Arms all the last night.

5. By break of day the Enemy attack'd the Works with great crys, and above Two thousand of them entred the City. In one place *Emanuel Travaças* with Thirty Men did great Execution upon them. *D. Antony* appear'd in all Parts, *Thomas de Sousa*, *Gasper de Brito*, and the two *Betancores*, made great slaughter at their Posts. The Field was so cover'd, that never a Bullet was lost. The Enemy began to give back, when two Cazices brought them on again. The assault lasted till Sun-setting, then the Enemy retired to their Camp, with a resolution to protract the Siege. About Five thousand of them were kill'd.

7. At this time came *Gonçala Pereyra* with his Fleet, and was a great encouragement to them all; and after him *Alvaro Paes de Sotomayor* to succeed *D. Payo*. They both prosecuted the War, and utterly destroyed the City of *Aderrajao* who commanded at the Siege, and cut down a great Wood of Palm-trees with considerable slaughter to the Enemy, and without losing one Man. This was the end of that Siege.



## C H A P. II.

*Continues the Government of D. Anton. de Noronna.*

1. **T**HE Tyrant *Raju* disturb'd the Peace of *Ceylen*, resolving to make himself Master of the whole Island : He gather'd a numerous Army, and the better to surprize the *Portugueses* in *Columbo*, gave out, his design was upon *Cota*. He encamped between the two Forts and alarming *Cota*, imagin'd they were unprovided at *Columbo*, and suddenly attacques it by Night, so that above Two thousand Men mounted the Walls, but were as soon thrown down by the Commander *James de Ataide* and his Men. The Assault was renew'd, but at length the Enemy, having lost Five hundred Men, retired ; *Raju* resolv'd to carry both places by Famine, since he could not by force. At *Cota* he attempted to drain the Ditch by turning away the River, and had compassed it, had not *Peter de Ataide* with some Musqueteers oblig'd his Workmen to give over, killing Three hundred of them. It is said, a Cloud miraculously hung between our Men and the Enemy, which conceal'd the former from the latter, but not them from us, so that they fired at a Mark without being seen.

2. But now Provisions began to fail in *Cota*, and they fed on things loathsom. *Ataide* thinking to take some of the Enemies

Elephants that were in a Wood hard by, sallied out with Eighty Men, but being over-power'd with a multitude was forc'd to retire, having lost two. *Raju* knowing how famine rag'd, had corrupted not only the Natives, but some *Portugueses*. *Luis Carvalho*, rather through Dispair than good Will, discover'd the Treason; and *Ataide*, without taking notice he knew it, gain'd the Hearts of the Conspirators, by favouring and cherishing them. The little Silver he had he coin'd and distributed among them.

3. *George de Melo* commanding in the Island *Manar*, easily perswaded the King of *Candea*, as being an Enemy to *Raju*, to invade his Country now he was absent, thinking by that means to draw him from the Siege. He sent Five thousand Men, and with them Thirty *Portugueses* commanded by *Belchior de Sousa*; they destroyed all as they went, and utterly subverted the great City *Chilao*, yet *Raju* never stir'd. On the contrary he prepar'd to Assault *Cota* by Night. A *Chingala* Woman appear'd at the foot of the Bastion *Praema*, desiring to be carried to our Captain: She discover'd to him *Raju's* design, and was the saving of the City. Some believed this Woman was an Angel; the truth is, she was Mistress to one of our Souldiers, and fearing her Lover's danger, made this discovery. There is nothing so bad, but at some times does good.

4. *Peter de Ataide* sent *Antony de Silva* to *Calicut* to order *James*, as soon as he heard Cannon fire at Night, to sally with his Men,

Chap. II. *The Portugues Asia:*

247

Men, and fall upon the back of *Raju's* Army, that would be then busie in the Assault. *George de Melo* was already come thither from *Manar* with One hundred Men, seeing the Project of *Candea* take no effect. In the dead of Night the Enemy attacks the City on all hands, and finds those of *Cosa* ready to receive him: Yet killing some of the Defendants, they enter the Works in one place, thither the King and *Peter* hast, and with incredible bravery drive them out again. *Stephen Gonzales*, Captain of the *Innamas*, with Seven Men did the like upon the like occasion.

3. At this time came from *Columbo* the other *Araide* and *Melo*, who by reason of the darkness of the Night, could do no more but fire the Enemy's Camp, and return to their Fort, lest if he succeeded here, he should immediately attack it. *Raju* in Person with the Flower of his Army attacks the Bastion of *Preacota*, where he found Fifty Soldiers, that seem'd to him to be Fifty thousand by the harm they did him. These Men afterwards declared, That they saw in the Air a beautiful Woman, who with her Vail cover'd them and received therein the Enemies Bullets and Arrows, whereof many returned upon and kill'd them. By her side was a venerable old Man with a General's Staff in his hand. This was supposed to be the Blessed Virgin and *St. Joseph*. *Raju* in the Morning seeing this great disappointment fled to *Ceytavaca*, leaving above Two thousand Men dead.

6. *Peter de Ataide* fearing he might return, and being quite destitute of Provisions, caused Four hundred of the fattest Men that were killed to be salted, and a *Mulato* tasted them eating up a Liver. *F. Simon* of *Nazareth* urged the unlawfulness of this Food, and *Ataide* pleaded necessity : But no use was made of it; for it being known that *Raju* was not in a Condition to return, Provision soon came from *Columbo*. Thus ended this Siege of four Months, the last forty Days whereof, there was scarce any thing to eat. The *Portugueses* alone obtained this Victory, for all the King's Men deserted. Those were not above Three hundred, some sick and old.

7. What *Raju* had design'd we now did our selves; for it being difficult and troublesome to maintain *Cota*, it was judged expedient to demolish it, and remove the King to *Columbo*, where he was no less tormented with the Covetousness of the *Portugues* Commanders, than he had been before with the Tyranny of *Raju*. This was performed by *James de Melo*, who went to succeed *Peter de Ataide* in that Command.

8. Three thousand *Mogol* Horse appeared before the Fort of *Damam*, where *John de Sousa* commanded, he sent advice to the Viceroy and the neighbouring Places, and began to fortifie. His greatest Confidence was in the Palisade made of the Plant *Lechera* (that is, Milk) which is not be assaulted, because when struck it casts out drops like Milk, (from whence it has the name) which



which if they touch the Eyes infallibly blind. *Treſtan de Mendoça* Commander of *Chaul* came with Two hundred Men. The Viceroy ſent four Ships : They marched out to fight the Enemy, who was encamped three Leagues off, who fled at the firſt fight, leaving a rich Booty in their Camp.

9. The Baſſa of *Baçora*, during the Government of the Count *de Redondo*, deſiring the *Turks* might have a free Trade at *Ormuz*, had made ſome overtures of Peace, and the Count thinking it a Matter of too great Concern to be tranſacted without the great *Turks* Concurrence, ſent *Antony Teyxeyra* a Gentleman ſufficiently qualified Embaſſador to *Conſtantinople*. He entred the Pallace this Year, ſcattering gold Coin. The Grand Signior to receive him was ſeated on the ground ſewing Caps, which his Grandees bought at exceſſive Rates. The Embaſſador told him, That the Baſſa had propoſed a Peace to the Viceroy, and a free Trade for the Subjects of the *Turkiſh* Empire. The Great *Turk*, without lifting up his head from ſitching, answer'd, I ask Peace of no Body : If the King of *Portugal* deſires it, let him ſend ſome Great Man of his Court, and he ſhall be heard. The Embaſſador brought a Letter containing this Answer to *Portugal*, and it was thought fit not to reply to it, becauſe they found the *Turk* did not ſpeak like a Taylor.

10. *D. Ferdinand de Monroy*, a *Spaniſh* Gentleman, was out with two Ships and four Galliot, to intercept the Fleet bound from  
*Achem*

*Achens* to *Meca*; he lay in the Chanel of *Cardu* among the *Maldive* Islands. *Peter Lopez Rabelo* in his Ship met one of those they waited for of great force and value, and after a long fight they both took Fire, and were entirely consumed. The Captain and some *Mores* were saved in a Galliot that followed him, and *James Ferreyra de Padilla* who commanded it, was very insolent with *D. Ferdinand* about the Distribution of the *Mores*. *D. James Pereyra*, who set out afterwards upon the same design with five Galleons, and six small Vessels, had yet worse Fortune. Being deceived by the *Mores*; at those same Islands he went to wait for the Fleet at the Mouth of the *Red Sea*: As he returned without doing any thing, a violent Storm that lasted eight days swallowed up two Galleons, whereof his was one; the others were dispersed, and put in where Chance guided them, almost Four hundred Men were lost.

11. At length the War of *Cannanor* ended, for that King wearied out begged a Peace, which was concluded to our Advantage. The concluding Acts of this War were, the taking several *Malabar* Vessels by *Gonzalo Periera Marramaque*; the slaughter of many *Mores* that opposed *Emanuel de Brito*, who conveyed the Ships from *Malaca*, *China*, *Moluccs*, *Pegu*, *Bengala*, and Coast of *Coromandel* trading to *India*, when he was taking Water at *Mount Delii*; and several other Rencontres in which we were successful, except in one, where *D. Lope de Moura* was killed. I

will conclude with a remarkable Accident. *Calisto de Sequeyra* a most expert Marksman, dug a hole in the Field, and lying close did not miss a shot; the Enemy a long time could not perceive whence that harm came, till another well skill'd in the same Art among them found it out, and placing himself in the same manner the other had done, they both aimed at one another so exactly, that both fell down dead.

12. *Brama* King of *Pegu* being told by Astrologers he was to marry a Daughter of the King of *Columbo*, sent to demand her, and he had never a one; but his Chamberlain had one the King esteem'd as his own; They both agreed to put her upon him, as really the King's. And the Chamberlain the more to oblige the King of *Pegu*, seeking thereby to cast off the *Portugues* Yoke, feign'd he had that Tooth which was taken at *Jasanapatan* and burnt at *Goa*, and would give it in Dowry with the Bride. The Embassadors easily crediting what they desired, took the Bride and the Tooth without acquainting the *Portugueses*, and sent advice to *Brama*, who received the Wife first, and then the Relick, with the greatest Pomp that ever has yet been heard of. Many Gallies were fitted out, but that which was for the Queen was covered with Plates of Gold, and rowed by beautiful young Women richly clad and brought up to this Exercise, so that they were more expert then Men. They were of those Women who there live without Men in separate Quarters by two and two like Man and Wife, A new sort of *Amazons*.

13. The

13. The King of *Candea* understanding the deceit of this Marriage, and envying that great Fortune, acquainted *Brama* therewith, offering him a true Daughter and Tooth, and affirming, both that of *Columbo* and the other of *D. Constantin* were Counterfeit, and the true one was in his Hands. If the Daughter was not more real than the Tooth, he was even with the King of *Columbo*. *Brama* considering it was as bad for a Prince to own himself cheated as to be so, gave ear to the Embassadors, but not to their Information. The King of *Candea* missed his aim, and discover'd his ill Affection. Two things are here worthy consideration, the one that the *Portugues* Commanders, through their Avarice, expos'd that important place to evident danger of being lost, had not *Brama* being undeceived, grown cold; the other, that had *D. Constantin* sold the Tooth as he was advis'd, there had not now been two set up to be adored by so many People.

14. The Trade of *India* was this Year at a very low Ebb, by reason of the Desolation of the Kingdom of *Bisnagar*, whose Riches are equal to its great extent, which is from the Borders of *Bengala* to those of *Cinde*. The Kings of *Decan*, *Nizamaluco*, *Idalca*, and *Cutubina*, jealous of that Grandure, entred into a League to suppress it. They took the Field with Fifty thousand Horse, and Three hundred thousand Foot: The King of *Bisnagar* met them with double that Power, and his Age was double, being Ninety six Years old. He had the better at first,



first, but Fortune turning to the other side, he lost his Head, and they remained Victorious. They spent five Months in plundering *Bisnagar*, and yet they were not the first, for the Natives in three daystime had carried away One thousand five hundred and fifty Elephants loaded with Money and Jewels worth above One hundred Millions of Gold, and the Royal Chair for great Days that could not be valued. Notwithstanding all this, *Idalxa* found a Diamond as big as an ordinary Egg, on which the late King's Horse's Feather used to be fixed; and another, tho' not so large, yet of an extraordinary size, besides other Jewels of incredible value. That Crown was divided between the Sons and Nephews of the deceased.

---

C H A P. III.

*Continues the Government of D. Anton de Noronna, in the Reign of King Sebastian.*

1. **T**HE beginning of this Year *Gonzalo Pereyra Marramaque* sailed for *Amboino* with One thousand Men in Twelve Ships, Embassadors from that Island having represented in how great danger those were who had newly receiv'd the Faith. *D. Emanuel de Noronna* sailed for *Banda*, and was stabbed by the way by the Purser of his Gally, whom he had

1567.

had affronted with a Cane. Great Men may command, but not abuse the lesser, for the small have Honour as well as the great. No Man, though never so little, owes any submission in Point of Honour to the greatest, and in point of Condition he owes no more than he pleases to impose upon himself. *Alvaro Paéz de Sotomayor* (the War of *Cananor* being ended) sails for the Coast of *Malabar* with twenty Sail: *James Lopez de Mesquita* with three for the *Moluccos*; *D. George de Meneses Barroche* for the *Red Sea* with four Gallies, one Gally, and four small Vessels; *Lisuarte de Aragon* for *Ceylon* with one Ship; *D. Leonis Pereyra* for *Malaca* with six; *George de Moura* for the North with the same number; *D. Francis Mascarennas* for *Olala* to suppress that Queen, who was about to refuse her Tribute; for this use Twenty-seven Ships were allotted, and *John Peixoto* went before with eight of them.

2. The Viceroy was fitting a good Fleet in order to follow those that were gone before to *Olala*, designing to build a Fort at *Mangalor*, to curb *Bucadevi Chantar* the Queen. The Fleet consisted of seven Gallies, two Galleons, and five small Vessels, and carried about 3000 fighting Men.

3. The Viceroy anchor'd in the Bay of that City called *Mangalor* and *Olala*, seated on the Banks of a River that washes both sides of it not far distant from the Sea, whence was to be seen a Wall wherewith the Queen had fortified her self, within which and the other Works were Thirteen thousand Men with

with sufficient Cannon. The Viceroy divided his Men into six Battalions, and landed on the 4<sup>th</sup> of *January*. At night the *Portugueses* sitting to supper, and to play with many lights, and the same security as if they had been at *Goa*, the Enemy laying hold of the Opportunity sallied in a body of Five hundred, followed by Fifteen hundred, fell upon and put them into such a disorder, they scarce had time to take their Arms. *D. Francis Mascarennas* who had the advanced Post, fared worst; and though he fought well, lost several Men, most perhaps killed by our own Fire, for through the darkness and confusion no body knew what they aimed at. *D. Luis de Almeyda* relieved him with his Men, who all slipped away to nine, that behaved themselves with incredible Valour.

4. On the Eve of the *Epiphany* they gave the Assault, and being as desirous of Revenge as entring the City, soon forc'd their way and fired the Town, at the same time cutting down the Palm-trees. The Queen fled to a Mountain. Of the Enemy Five hundred were slain, about Forty of the *Portugueses*. The Viceroy immediately laid the Foundations of the Fort, giving it the name of *St. Sebastian*, because the first stone was laid upon his day, and that day chose in Honour of our King then Reigning. By the middle of *March* the Work was finished with a Church and other Conveniencies. He gave the command of it to his Brother-in-Law *Antony Pereyra* with 300 Men, and Ammunition for six Months, and returned to *Goa*. Afterwards in the time of  
*D. Luis*

D. Luis de Ataiades Government, the Queen sued for a Peace, and purchased it by a new imposition of Tribute, and a sum of ready Money.

5. The King of *Achem* had now entred into a League with many Princes of the *East*, and the *Turk*, who desired to get footing in *India*, not doubting with this united Power of carrying *Malaca*: He Imbarqued with his Wife and Children as if he had gone to take Possession of, rather than to Besiege that City. On a sudden he appear'd before it with 450 Sail, 200 Bra's Cannons, and 20000 Men. D. Leonis Pereyra was at that time on the Shore celebrating the Birth-day of King *Sebastian*, with a certain Exercise used among *Portugueses* on Horseback, and perceiving some of the Company were surprized at the sight of the Fleet, he ordered the Sport to continue, drawing down nearer to the Shore, that the Enemy might not imagin they could disturb his Pastime.

6. Afterwards he gave the necessary Orders, and making a review, found he had Fifteen hundred Men, whereof only Two hundred were *Portugueses*. The King of *Achem* began with Complements, and shew'd desiring accommodation, but all tended only to discover what was the Condition of the Town. D. Leonis who understood him wary, and carried it on with dissimulation. At length the King perceiving no artifice succeeded, and that he advanc'd but slowly, resolv'd to put the whole Event upon a furious Assault. After the Discharge of the Cannon



Cannon, above two hundred scaling Ladders were laid to the Wall with great Shouts on both sides. D. *Leonis* had also distributed his Men in their several Posts. The Priests had undertaken to defend one, but no sooner did the Enemy attack, than they fled to the Church.

7. In the heat of the Action a Party of ours sallies out upon the Enemies Works, making a great slaughter; among the rest was killed the King of *Aru*. Our Men retired with one Cannon, and loaded with Musquets, Cimeters, and Heads of all sorts of People that compos'd that Army, having lost but one *Portugues* and six *Malayes*. The Enemy encourag'd by the King who looked on, mounted our Works, and were as soon thrown down by the Defendants. The King in a rage stamp'd and blasphem'd, and seeing three days furious Assault had not gained a foot of Ground, he utterly despair'd of Success; therefore with great Secrecy Shipping off all his Army and Train, except Four thousand Men that were killed, he set sail, firing the Ships that were to spare by the loss of those Men. This great Success cost us but three *Portugueses*.

8. The Commander, D. *Leonis*, bestow'd not only Praises, but Money and Jewels on all that had signaliz'd themselves, to the value of 15000 Crowns. The Viceroy receiving advice of the danger the City was in, sent to its relief *John de Silva Pereyra* with Men and Ammunition in seven Ships, but he came when the Siege was raised. So the

R

King

King of *Ujantana* our Neighbour with sixty Sail, who visited our Captain in the Fort, and was received with Royal Magnificence, rejoycing at our Success not without trouble that he had no share in it.

9. The Viceroy offended at the Insolence of the Natives of the Island *Salsese*, who persecuted the new converted Christians, fitted out a Fleet against them without letting his design be known. When those of *Salsese* least thought of it, he fell upon them, and destroyed 200 of their Idolatrous Temples. Because we have sometimes mentioned this Island, without speaking of an ancient and wonderful Structure that is in it, it will not be amiss to say something of it here.

10. In this Island is a high Mountain, winding about which are 3000 Cells with each of them a Cistern all cut out of the solid Rock. Under the same Mountain is a way cut through the same Rock, with such Cells on the sides, which is said to go as far as *Cambaya*, which, if so, must run under the Sea. *F. Antony de Porto*, a Franciscan, resolving to enquire into this Secret, got Company, Provision, Torches, and great quantity of strong Packthread, and fastning an end at the Mouth of the way, travelled seven days through it. Then finding no end, and the Provision growing short, he returned by the help of the Thread, having as he believed travelled fifty Leagues to his great admiration, but not satisfied. The Gentils said, this was the Work of *Bimilamansa*, who 2300 Years before was King of all that is between

between *Bengals* and the *Mogol's* Country. Formerly a Learned Man of those Parts affirm'd, this and some others were the Works of the holy Prince *Josaphat*.

11. The Affairs of the *Molucos* were not at all successful. We left *Gonçalo Pereyra Marramaque* on his Voyage to *Amboyna*, he joined with the Kings of *Bacham* and *Tidre*, set out for the Island *Cebu*, where some *Spaniards* had settled under the Command of *Michael Lopez de Lagaspa à Biscainer*, and a Man so valiant and subtle, that he amuzed our Captain, till he got together his Men that were dispersed, and then expelled him the Island with shame, for that if attacked at first, the *Spaniard* had been utterly defeated. To add to this Misfortune, he lost almost Three hundred Men by a Sickness natural to that Country.

12. Hence he passed to *Amboina* or *Ito*, for it is called by both Names, a most beautiful and pleasant Island, abounding in Fish, Flesh, and Fruit of all sorts and delicious taste. It is inhabited by two sorts of people, the *Ulanas*, who are native *Mahometans*, and have three Towns; the *Ulenfivas* are Heathens, and have four. Our Captain found the Natives assisted by Six hundred of the Islanders of *Java*, and well fortified under the Command of *Gemiro* Governour of those Islands. He attacked them with such peril, and was so vigorously opposed, he seemed rather to fight for Life than Victory.

13. At length the *Portugueses* prevailing, were in danger of being overcome by their

great Disorder in plundering. The Captain rectified all by firing the Booty, and many of the Men were scorched, whose Covetousness overcame the fear of the Flames. The Enemy retired to a Mountain, and there compounded only for Life, laying down their Arms. But the People of *Amboina* having been the first among those Islands who admitted the *Portugueses* offering Subjection to our Crown, Lands, and leave to erect a Pillar in their Metropolis with the Royal Arms of *Portugal*, and finally embracing our Religion, and contracting Marriages with us, it will be convenient to look a little back in order to proceed in the relation of these Affairs, and particularly of one wonderful Passage, that may serve as an Example to such as pretend to Plant Colonies.

---

#### C H A P. IV.

##### *The End of the Government of the Viceroy D. Anton. de Noronna.*

1. **T**HEY who know with what kindness the People of *Amboina* at first received us, will be earnest to understand the Cause why now they are become our mortal Enemies. The worst is, they had so just a Cause, which was thus. The People of *Curon* (I suppose this should be *Ceram*) became implacable Enemies to those of *Amboina*, on  
no



no other account but that they received the *Portugueses*, admitted their Religion, and contracted Marriages with them. Hereupon they resolved to expel not only the *Portugueses*, but even the Natives out of the Island, accordingly on a sudden came upon them with a great Power. Those of *Amboina* had been ruin'd, but that the *Portugues* stood by them, and to be short, utterly defeated their Enemies.

2. The People of *Amboina*, to shew their Gratitude to those who had defended them, invited them to a splendid Entertainment. The Wives of those who made the Feast came abroad to see the *Portugueses* entertain'd. One of these (doubtless he was drunk) was so charmed with the Beauty of one of those Women, or so blinded with Lust, that leaping suddenly from his Seat he caught her in his Arms with such insolence, after being three times admonished without desisting, that if *Genulius*, a Man of great Authority, had not interposed, the *Portugueses* had there been all cut to pieces. And well they had deserved it; for it appears they did not hinder or obstruct so insolent and publick a lustful Extravagancy, which openly in the sight of the World, durst force a Hand to those Parts, which even with consent are not touched but in private, and without Witnesses.

3. Those People burned with the desire of Revenge for the affront they had receiv'd, and look'd upon as most hainous. Nor could *Genulius* appease them, but by expelling the impudent Guests, which he desir'd as much

as any, looking upon himself equally concerned in that Injury : and knowing it was a new offence every time the injured saw him that gave the wrong ; he therefore reproaching them with the hainousness of the Crime, and shewing how greatly they were favour'd in having their Lives spared, ordered them instantly to depart the Island, and never more presume to set their feet upon it.

4. The People overturning the Tables with furious Countenances, gave them to understand they would by force execute what *Genulius* had directed, if the *Portugueses* doubted doing of it by fair means. There was nothing to do but submit, so they went away to their Ships full of shame ; their general Confusion paying for the Impudence of one in which all had a share, because none reproved it.

5. Scarce had the *Portugueses* left the Shore, when those of *Ambaina* prescribed the same Laws to the People of *Atire* and *Tavire*, that the *Curons*, or *Cerams*, had done to them before. That was, they threatned them with War if they received the *Portugueses* into their Ports : But those People answer'd, That they were Christians, and as such would admit to their Ports and Houses the *Portugueses*, though it were with hazard of their Lives.

6. They of *Ambaina* were so irritated with this Answer, that falling suddenly upon them, they routed and put to the Sword most of the Inhabitants of those two Places, bringing under their Subjection those Towns that

that had submitted to the Crown of *Portugal*, such as refused were reduced by Fire, and Sword, and Slavery. They were not content to put to Death those who were constant in the Faith, unless they did it with barbarous and cruel Tortures. One may serve as an Example of all their other Barbarities.

7. A little King of *Elate* was taken, who because he would not renounce the Christian Faith, was tied to a Stake, and Pans of Fire being set before him, they cut off pieces of his Flesh, broiled and eat it in his sight: Some they made him eat, and asked whether he liked it? He with much patience answer'd he did, and was pleased to do that for Christ, who had suffer'd for him: That if after he was dead, they would put a piece of his Flesh into a new Pot, within twenty four hours they would find it converted into Oil, in testimony of the Truth of the Christian Doctrine, and, in fine, that the *Portugueses* would revenge his Death.

8. They continued the Torments till he died, and then to try what he had said, put a piece of his Flesh into a new Pot covering it, and the Twenty four hours being expired found it full of most sweet Oil. They were astonish'd, but did not repent; and soon after the Prophecy was fulfilled by their Ruine.

9. *Gonçalo Pereyra* (as was before said) coming thither defeated them and their Succors they had from *Java* and other Places,

and reduced them, notwithstanding they fortified themselves in the Mountains. In this Action five *Portugueses* were lost, and *Pereyra* left *D. Duartes de Meneses* to command there.

10. At this time *James Lopez de Mesquita*, a most wicked Man, commanded at *Ternate*. *Aeyro* King of that Island, who had been so unjustly treated by *D. Duarte Deça*, had always carried himself respectfully to the *Portugueses* without any Merit of theirs, but was now at variance, because they killed his Nephew. He began to revenge it, killing three of them, because they refused to do him Justice. This difference was composed by some well meaning Persons, and the King and *Mesquita* solemnly swore to the Reconciliation. But it being all deceit in the latter, before six days were expired he murder'd the King as he visited him. This was done at parting, he waited on him to the Door, and his Nephew *Martin Alfonso Pimentel* stabbed him by the Unkle's Order.

11. When this King the last time Embraced that false Friendship, he took to witness of his sincerity the Scutcheon of the *Portugueses* Arms, which represent the Wounds of our Saviour. As he was stabb'd, he laid hold of a Cannon about the place where those same Arms were, saying, *Ab Gentlemen, why do you thus kill the best Subject your King my Master has?* Neither these words, nor the sacredness of the Place, it being hallowed Ground, allwaged their fury. There they strip'd and cut him in pieces,  
which



which being salted and put into a Chest were cast into the Sea in sight of his Queen and Daughters, who begged only for leave to bury him. Such was then the *Portugues* Government, that these and other the like Cruelties and Villainies passed unpunished by them. But God did not so, who first with shame deprived them of those Dominions, and afterwards of a Prince of their own. *Gni Chil Babu*, Son to the deceased, succeeded him in the Crown, and just desire of Revenge for such inhuman Oppression. He fortified himself, and entred into a League with all the Neighbouring Princes against us, beginning the War with the slaughter of some *Portugueses*, and persecution of the new converted Christians in all those Islands. But this happened later, we shall see it in its proper place.

12. The Viceroy order'd D. *Luis de Almeida* in the Spring to Cruize in the Sea of *Suratte*, to examin what Ships sailed there without our Passes. He had six Ships with him, and was joined by fourteen more, they took three great Ships richly laden, and brought two of them to *Damam*, one having foundred at Sea. This was the last publick Action of the Viceroy. He embarqued to return home and died in the Voyage. It was ordered in his Will, that his right Arm should be cut off, and preserved, to be buried with his Unkle D. *Nunno Alvarez* at *Centa*, and that the Body should be cast into the Sea. It was accordingly performed, and some observed that the cutting off this Arm was

was the Execution of the Sentence he had given against himself, when a Relation prevailing upon him to sign an unjust Paper, he said, *The hand that signs such a thing deserves to be cut off.* Such is the force of Affection, it makes a Man do the very thing he abhors.

13. D. Anton. de Noronua was a Man of a good Disposition, Judgment and Inclination. He was Viceroy the term of four Years the 11th of that number, and twenty-third of the Governours, the first of that Name, and third of the Sirname.

14. During the Government of D. Anton. the Ships that came from *Lisbon* to *India* were, in the Year 1565 four, in 1566 four more, and four in 1567.

15. This Year our great Poet *Luis de Camoens* was at *Zofala*. Being very poor in *India*, where he served sixteen Years, *Peter Barreto* who was going to Command at *Zofala* promised him great things, and *Camoens* finding nothing came of them, after waiting long he resolved to come for *Portugal* in a Ship that had touched there, in which was *Heñor de Silveyra* and other Gentlemen. Being about to depart, *Peter Barreto* who had made those Promises not to prefer him, but divert himself, demanded Two hundred Ducats he said he had spent upon him; and those Gentlemen paid the Money and brought him away. So it may be said, *Luis de Camoens* his Person, and *Barretto* his Honour, were at once sold for that Money. He arrived at *Lisbon* the Year 1569, when the

the Plague raged in that City ; so that famous Man always flying one Plague fell into another.

C H A P. V.

*The Government of the Viceroy D. Luis de Ataide, Count de Atouguia ; from the Year 1568, till 1571, in the Reign of King Sebastian.*

1. **T**O D. Anton. de Noronha succeeded with the same Title of Viceroy D. Luis de Ataide, Count de Atouguia, a Person meritorious of this Government, or of a greater, if ever any greater was committed by a Prince to one single Person. He was the first who carried Orders that a Gentleman should be bare when they spoke to the Governor, and be seated on a Chair without a Back. He was the first also sent by King Sebastian after he was out of his Minority.

2. With him went five Ships with a great number of Men, and great part of them of Note. He arrived at Goa in October, and was received in the City with a general Satisfaction of all Men. Though he found the number of Shipping but small yet in few days he set out so many Sail, as caused admiration ; and good Squadrons were sent to several Expeditions.

3. Luis de Melo de Sylva went in February 1569 with thirteen Sail to relieve D. Leonis de Perreya

*Pereyra* at *Malaca*, the News of his Success not being yet come to *Goa*, *Alfonso Pereyra de la Cerda* sailed towards the North with six in *November* : And *Martin Alfonso de Miranda* with thirty six to scour the Coast of *Malabar*, infested with *Pyrats*. The *Narives* were out with a considerable Strength, and lost five great Vessels, many Men and much Ammunition; but *Martin* being wounded with a Cannon Ball was carried to *Cochin*, and died there. *D. George de Meneses* set out with two Gallies and five small Vessels to seek the *Pirate Canatale*, whom he found not; but discovering many Vessels in the River *Carapatan* he made to them, and came up himself with a Gally in which 180 *Mores* fought so desperately, that none being left alive but a Father and Son, the former killed the latter, and stabbing himself leaped over-board.

4. *Ayrez Tellez de Meneses* set out with seven Sail, and *D. Paul de Lima Pereyra* with eight for the North. In the River *Banda* near *Goa* he found four Catures, or Barges of *Malabares*, who after losing many Men escaped. Then he held on his Voyage, which was to relieve *Rostumecan*, besieged by the *Mogols* in *Baroche*, which place he had Usurped, laying hold of the Confusions of *Cambaya*, since the Death of the King *Badur* in the Sea of *Diu*. *Itimican* now held that Government in his Hands by great Subtilty and Artifice, having perswaded the *Guzarates*, that a young Man his own Son was the last King's, and therefore he secured that Crown in him for himself.

5. Whilst



5. Whilst *Ayrez Tellez* sailed, *D. Peter de Almeyda* Commander of *Damam* went to *Suratte*, to call to an account *Agaluchem* Lord of that Town, by the same Title as *Rostumecan*, for loading two great Ships without the Viceroy's leave, the Ships were taken, and valued above 100000 Duccats. As *Almeyda* had done, *Tellez* began to play his part, which was to force the *Mogols* from *Barache*. He performed it effectually: But *Rostumecan* being out of danger, forgot his Promise to the Viceroy, which was to become Tributary to us. So easie it is to make promises in danger, and to break them when delivered.

6. *D. James de Meuses* on the Coast of *Malabar* did such Execution, that *Zamori* was not in a condition to relieve *Agaluchem*, who sent from *Zuratte* to beg his assistance, being distressed by *Nunno Vello Pereyra*, who was come from *Damam* to clear the Bay of *Cambaya* of Enemies. He burnt two Villages and some Vessels, and brought away many Prisoners. Then with 400 Men he pursued a Body of *Mogols* who were fled to a Mountain (called *Parnel*) almost impregnable by Art and Nature, and three Leagues distant from *Damam*. *Nunno* neither knew the strength of the place, nor number of the Enemies, who were above 800, and so began to Mount that difficult ascent, whence great Stones were rowled down to hinder the Passage. But the Souldiers climbing upon Hands and Feet, reached the first Intrenchment, which after a vigorous opposition was

was entred. Then they assaulted the Fort, where both Parties fought desperately. In some places they came so near as to lay hold of one another's Weapons. *Antony de Fonseca* was lifted up by his Lance which some of the *Mogols* held, and he never quitted it but laughed. Being afterwards asked what he laughed at, he said, *To think the Barbarians believed they could get the Lance out of my hand.* At length they let him fall. *Nunno Vello* seeing he strove in vain, retired after losing seven Men, having killed above thirty of the Enemy, and taken much Provision, fifty Horses, some Camels and Oxen, with which he drew off not without danger, being pursued by 500 of the Enemy, whereof 100 were Horse.

7. He consulted this Affair with *Alvaro Perez de Tavora* who had the Command of *Damam*; the result was, that *Nunno* marched with 100 *Portugues* and 50 *Morish* Horse, 650 Foot, half *Portugues*, half *Mores*. They went up the Mountain with great Labour, through ways never before trod, carrying three pieces of Cannon. They met with considerable opposition, five Cannon playing upon them from the Fort, and some Horse breaking out of the Woods; so they lost eight Men, six killed and two taken. Three days were spent in climbing the Mountain, being got to the top *Nunno* planted his Cannon, and batter'd the Work with such fury, that the Enemy the sixth Night abandoned it. The Fort was razed.

8. The great importance of the impregnable Fort of *Azarim*, moved the Kings of *Coles* and *Sarcetas* to attempt the gaining of it. They entred the Country of *Bacaim*, in which it is, and after doing great harm, set down before it; but *Andren de Villalobos* who commanded there, bravely defended it till the Viceroy sent Relief. Being then Eight hundred strong they fell upon the two Kings, and not only forced them from the Siege, but following into their Countries put all to Fire and Sword, and returned Victorious. The Viceroy now sent out D. *Roderick de Sousa* with six Ships from *Cambaya*; *Peter Lopez Rabelo* and *Giles de Goes* with two Ships and three Galleons for *Aden*; D. *James de Meneses* with twelve Gallies and thirty small Vessels for *Malabar*; *Peter de Silva de Meneses* with thirteen Sail for *Braçador*. *Braçador* is a new Fort between *Goa* and *Malabar*, upon the Mouth of a River. The Viceroy offended at the King of *Tolar* designed to possess himself of it, and agreed with him that commanded to betray it. *Peter de Silva* going to take possession of it, by the way entred the River *Sanguise*, which runs through the Lands of *Hidalen*, where he burnt two Towns and some Vessels. The Commander of *Braçador* according to promise delivered up the Fort by Night, and our Men falling upon the Town, killed and took above Two hundred of the Inhabitants. The Kings of *Tolar* and *Cambolim* came up that Night with 1500 Men, and the next with 3000, in a hot Engagement they

they lost many Men, and we five. The place not being judged tenable, was quitted with Honour, bringing away twenty Cannon, and a great quantity of Ammunition and Arms.

9. *Mem Lopez Carrasco* sailing for *Sunda* with only one Ship, and only forty fighting Men in it, passed in sight of the Port of *Acbem* at such time as that King in person was setting out against *Malaca* with 20 Gallies, as many Galleons, and 160 other Vessels. *Carrasco* finding it impossible to shun them, resolved to sell his Life as dear as he could. The whole Fleet attacks them, and tears all their Rigging to pieces, Night parted, and Morning brings them together again, three Gallies board them and are beaten off. The Fight lasted three days; the King having lost forty Vessels and many Men returned into his Harbor. As much of our Ship got to *Malaca* as was hid by the Water, all that was above being shattered to pieces; and thus for that time was *Malaca* delivered of that trouble.

10. *Miran*, a King between the *Mogul* and *Cambaya*, design'd to possess himself of the Crown of *Cambaya*, to which he thought he had the best Title, since it had been usurped from the lawful Heirs upon the Death of *Badur*. He treated about it with the Viceroy, offering him at present a sum of Mony, and afterwards some Towns, if he would assist him in gaining that Kingdom, and expelling the Tyrant *Himican*. The Viceroy admits the Proposals, sends an Ambassador of his own with the Kings, and makes such diligenc



diligent; Preparations, that on a sudden the Sea of *Goa* was covered with 140 Sail. To amuze the Enemy he gave out the Design was against *Malabar*. Whilst an Answer could come from *Miran*, the Viceroy, to keep his Men out of Idleness, sailed towards the Rivers of *Braçalor* and *Onor*, whose Banks are peopled by *Canard's*, who at the Instigation of the *Malabars*, refused to pay the Acknowledgments due to the *Portugueses*.

## CHAP. VI.

*Continues the Government of the Viceroy  
D. Luis de Ataide.*

1. **W**Hilst the Viceroy was busie in these Preparations, four Ships from *Lisbon* arriv'd opportunely at *Goa*. *D. Paul de Lima* with one Galleon and six Ships, and *Martin Alfonso de Melo* Commander of *Bacaim* meditating Revenge against the Kings of *Cole* and *Sarcetas*, got together One hundred and thirty Horse, and Eight hundred *Portugues* Foot. The Enemy had Four hundred of the former, and Two thousand of the latter, yet were put to flight, and even in the flight cut off *Emanuel Pereyra* and all his Men. So much is an Enemy to be fear'd even when he flies. The Cities of *Darila* and *Varem* were destroyed, and all the Countries

tries about them. *D. Paul* in his return took two Ships of the Enemy, though forsaken by some of his own Vessels, and those that left him had afterwards the Impudence to boast of the Victory. The Viceroy receiv'd *D. Paul* with much Honour; and one of those that had forsaken him coming to kiss (as was the Custom) the Viceroy's Cloak, he said to him, *Keep off, go kiss your Mother's hand.*

2. In *November* the Viceroy set out of *Goa* with above One hundred and thirty Sail, some of them were Tenders, and some Merchants: In the fighting Ships were Three thousand *Portugueses* besides *Indians*. He entred the River of *Onor*, and landed Two thousand three hundred Men, not without opposition. The place seem'd impregnable both by Art and Nature, yet our Men with great difficulty beginning to ascend the Hill, notwithstanding the Bullets that fell from above, soon discovered the People flying out of the City, and the Queen of *Gnarcopa* retiring to the Inland, as despairing the Fort could hold out, though Garrison'd with Five hundred resolute Men, and well stored with Artillery and Ammunition.

3. The City which was rich and beautiful was first Plundered, and then reduced to Ashes. Our Forces sat down before the Fort, and batter'd it without intermission four days, without the least molestation from a Body of the Natives who came to hinder their Progress: Which the Besieged perceiving, surrendred upon condition to march away  
without

without Arms. The Booty was small, the most considerable part of it Cannon and Ammunition. The next day being *St. Catharines*, a place was cleansed to say Mass in. The Command of it was given to *George de Moura* with Four hundred Men, half of them *Portugueses*.

4. Here the Ingenier *Simon de Ruan* fought alone with thirty of the Enemy till he fell as was thought dead, but as they put him into a Shroud a small motion was perceived, and soon after, to the admiration of all Men, he recovered. In this Action we lost twenty Men. Next the Viceroy passed to *Braçador*, which is much like the other in strength and situation. The Landing was somewhat more difficult, being obstructed by 11000 Men, but at length Two hundred of them being killed (with the loss of nine on our side) our Men possessed themselves of a Work which much dismay'd the Enemy.

5. Those in the Fort, before the Viceroy could besiege, abandon'd it. Soon after the Kings of *Tolar* and *Cambolim* attack the Fort on a very dark Night, but found *Peter Lopez Rabelo* who commanded it with Two hundred Men so ready to receive them, that they lost Three hundred, killing only five of his, and despairing of any Success, concluded a Peace with the imposition of a greater Tribute than they paid before. The Viceroy had an interview with those two Princes and the Queen of *Cambolim*, and they parted very good Friends. Above a Month was spent in building a new Fort in a convenient place,

which was the mid-way between the City and the Mouth of the River. The Command of it was given to *Antony Botello*, who spilt the first Blood in this Action.

6. The Viceroy was in great care, that he received no answer from *Miran*. But there is no security in humane Policies. *Miran* thought to tie the *Mogol* to his Interest, by marrying his Brother to the *Mogol's* Sister. But scarce did the Brother, assisted by his Father-in-law the *Mogol*, see *Miran* march towards *Cambaya*, when he enters his Kingdom with a great Power ; and *Miran* having notice hereof, was forced to stay to secure a certainty of his own, rather than to go to a doubtful Purchase. The Viceroy was much concern'd at this News, and having no present Employment for so great a Fleet, divided it into several Squadrons, and sent them upon different Expeditions. *D. Peter de Casto* had one to secure the Ships trading to *Goa* ; *Ferdinand Tellez*, who not long before had taken some Ships of the Enemy, went with another to the North. Of his Squadron were *Ruy Diaz Cabral*, and *D. Henry de Meneses*, who being separated from him, met fifty Sail of *Malabars*, and rashly fell upon them. *Ruy Deaz* and seventy Men they both commanded were all killed ; *D. Henry* from among the dead was carried into slavery, and after ransom'd. *D. Emanuel Pereira* and *John de Silva Barreto* came too late to prevent this Misfortune, but not to put the Enemy to flight after receiving and doing much harm.

7. The



7. The Viceroy resented this loss not so much for its greatness, as because it was the first time Fortune had frowned on him. He went to *Mangalor*, twelve Leagues to the Southward, to appease some Disturbance that lessened the King's Revenue, and was prejudicial to Trade. This proceeded from the Enmity between the King of *Bangul* and Queen of *Olala*; the Dominion of the latter lies to the South, and that of the other to the North of that Place. The Viceroy being better received at *Mangalor* than he expected, had a meeting with those two Princes, and agreed their Differences. In his return to *Goa*, he left with *Antony Botello* Commander of *Bragalor* for the Security of that Place, six hundred fresh Men; and *Antony Cabrall* at Sea with three Vessels well provided. At *Onor* he added to *George de Moura* Five hundred Men, and left on that Sea *Francis* and *Rocque de Miranda*, Brothers, with six Ships, who with Fire and Sword destroyed some Towns and Ships, because they rebelled as soon as the Viceroy had turned his back.

8. At the end of this Year arrived at *Goa* five Ships from *Portugal*. The Queen of *Guarcepa* who was fled to the Mountain, rather for fear than good Will, came now to an Accommodation.

9. In those Seas were left *D. James de Meneses* with Forty two Sail; *Luis de Melo de Silva* with fifteen; *Vincent de Saldanna* with eight; *D. John Continno* with Four; and *D. Francis de Almeyda* with Two Galleons: The first

of these carried Fire and Sword all along the Coast of *Malabar*, to the Terror of all that Empire. The strong Towns of *Coulete*, *Tiracole*, *Capocate*, *Padrarigale*, *Panane* and *Calicut* felt this fury. Above 1000 Heathens were killed or made Prisoners, above Sixty Vessels taken, and many more sunk and burnt. We lost but four Men in all those Actions.

10. *Zamori* thought to put a stop to the Ruine of his Country by offering Proposals of Peace, but no Ear was given to them. The Weather effected what that did not, it being no longer practicable to lie upon that Coast. *Luis de Melo* disappointed the Artifices of the Queen of *Guarcopa*, who treated of Peace, and prepared for War. He burnt many of her Towns, ravaged the Country and demolished her Fort of *Sanguise*. *Vincent Saldanna* in the Sea of *Mangalor* did his Duty, securing our Ships that traded that way. *D. John Continno* did the same about *Cambaya*, *Cochim* and *Chaul*. *D. Francis de Almeyda* disabled and put to flight at *Dix* six *Malabar* Galliots that attempted the entering that Port to burn the Ships that were in it.

11. In the beginning of Winter the Vice-roy fitted out two Squadrons to relieve *Oncr* and *Daman*, fearing the *Mogol* design'd against the last, and the Queen of *Guarcopa* against the other. His greatest care was for *Oncr*, hearing the Enemy had attempted to destroy our Men by Treachery, bribing some *Cavarages* who were in it, to poison our Men with

with the Fruit of the Herb *Du:uro*, whose quality is such, it makes Men forget all things, and renders them wholly insensible, even of Wounds. The Treachery was discovered, and the Conspirators hanged over the Walls in sight of them that employed them, who then betook themselves to open force, having failed in this private Practice. At that time entred the Port a Galley and three other Vessels with a Body of choice Men for the Relief of the Fort.

12. The Wickedness of the *Portugueses* in killing the King of *Ternate*, began to be punished: That King's Son and Heir had commenced his Revenge, as was said before, and now sent his Unkle *Calacinco* with twelve Gallies to *Amboina*. He was near taking our Fort, whilst the Commander of it D. *Duarte de Meneses* was consulting far off with *Gonçalo Pereyra* about the manner of maintaining it, but *Baltasar de Sousa* who supplied his place defended it well. *Baltasar Vieyra* saved it, killing with a Musquet Shot a Caciz of Note, upon whose Death the Enemy withdrew to the Island *Varenula*, and had they not retired, they had carried the Fort before *Pereyra* and *Meneses* could come to relieve it.

13. They being come, *Pereyra* puts to Sea with six Sail. One of them commanded by *Lawrence Furtado* being hard set by the Enemies Admiral, *Furtado* leaps into it and kills the old Commander, and the Galley was taken, two other were also taken, and the Enemy fled to other Islands, not thinking

themselves safe at *Varenula*. Above Nine thousand Men were killed in these Expeditions.

14. Whilst this happened at *Amboina*, the Fort at *Ternate* was so close besieged, that our Men wished for Vermin to feed on, having eaten all that could be found. The King perceiving the besieged did not treat of a Surrender, joined with the King of *Tidore*, gave so furious an assault, that he killed twenty *Portugueses* and entred the Trenches. The next Night they had as good success. *Juis de la Mo* defended his Bastion with great Bravery, and *Belchior Vieyra* for this time delivered the Fort, killing *Beneuoa* General of *Tidore*, at which sight his Men fled. *Pereyra* hearing of this Posture of Affairs, left *Sancho de Vasconcelos* to command at *Amboina*, because *D. Duarte* was dead, and hasted to *Ternate* with three Vessels that rowed, and One hundred Men. At *Bacham* where the King was our friend, he encreased to fourteen Sail.

15. The Confederate Kings set out to meet *Pereyra* with fifty *Coracoraes*, which are great Gallies. *Pereyra* receives them, and they fought with much bravery: The King of *Tidore* attacks our Admiral Galley, but being almost killed, drew back with his Galley quite disabled. The Enemy gave way, and *Pereyra* came to the Fort, and brought fresh vigor with that Success. But those of *Ternate* were so intent upon Revenge, that they continued the Siege five Years, and our Men were forced to abandon the Fort.

The



The King of *Tidore* received those that would stay with him, the rest dispersed into several Countries. We shall see in time how they were expelled *Tidore*: And it is rather a wonder they continued there so long, being guilty of such Villainies, than that they were at last drove away. But great Storms threaten *India* now, and our Viceroy is preparing to meet them.

C H A P. VII.

*The dangerous Sieges of Goa and Chaul ; and first of the foremost, continuing the Government of D. Luis de Ataide, and Reign of King Sebastian.*

1. **A**LL humane Grandure is subject to 1570.  
 Envy. The Princes of *Asia* seeing the vast increase of the *Portugues* Power, resolved to give it one fatal Blow ; and to this purpose entred into a League, which was five Years in forming and concluding, and carried on with wonderful secrecy.

2. These Princes were *Hidalcan Alecdaxa*, *Nizamaluco Xaozem*, and *Zamori*. Their Design to extirpate the *Portugueses* in *India*. To this effect they raised powerful Armies, and made so sure of the success, that they had beforehand divided their imagined Conquests. The first was to have *Goa*, *Onor*, and *Bragator* ; the second, *Chaul*, *Damam*, and

and *Baçaim*; and the third, *Cananor*, *Mangalor*, *Cochim*, and *Chale*. *Hidalcan* had assigned his principal Men Offices at *Goa*, and some *Portugues* Women that were cried up for Beauties. The King of *Achem* was at the same time to make an attempt upon *Majalaca*. In fine, those Princes broke out like impetuous Torrents, covering the Fields with multitudes of Men. *Hidalcan* marched to besiege *Goa*, *Nizamaluco* to *Chaul*, without any respect to the Peace which had been no way infringed.

3. The Viceroy upon this occasion shew'd an undaunted Spirit. It was generally agreed *Chaul* should be abandoned, for the greater security of *Goa*, but the Viceroy resolved the Enemy should have nothing but what was dearly bought. He immediately sent D. *Francis Mascarennas* with 600 Men in four Gallies and five small Vessels to the Relief of *Chaul*. Among these went many Gentlemen of Note, to serve as private Souldiers. They set out about the end of September.

4. Next the Viceroy applied himself to provide for the defence of *Goa*. He posted *Ferdinand de Sousa de Castellobranco*, an old Souldier in *Asia*, in the Pass of *Benastarim* with 120 Men; D. *Paul de Lima* at *Rachol* with 60, and thus in other places he distributed 1500 Natives of the Island. There were not compleat 700 *Portugueses* in it, these he reserved to relieve where ever the greatest danger threatned. The City he put into the Hands of the *Dominicans*, *Franciscans* and Clergy, who exceeded not 300, assisted

assisted by 1000 Slaves. Captain *John de Sousa* with 50 Horse was to be ready to appear where ever there was occasion. D. *George de Meneses*, surnamed *Barroche* was to keep the River with 25 Sail. At the same time the Viceroy caused Ammunition and Provisions to be brought from all Parts, the Works to be repaired, and about the middle of *December* he took his Post upon the Bank of the River.

No sooner was he there, than several Bodies of Men appeared coming down the Mountain Gate, and encamping at *Ponda*, commanded by *Norican*, *Hidalcan's* General. About the end of *December* he advanced, and encamped over-against the Pass of *Benastarim*, pitching his Master's Tents, who spent eight days in coming down the Mountain by reason of the greatness of his Army. At night he lighted so many Fires to discover the Paths of the Mountain, that at a great distance the multitude of his men could be seen. Being come to *Ponda* he covered those vast Plains with rich and costly Tents.

6. This Army consisted of 100000 fighting Men, besides an infinite number of Followers; 35000 Horse; 2140 warlike Elephants; 350 pieces of Cannon, most of an extraordinary bigness, and some great Barques brought upon Mules, to be lanced for all occasions upon the River. The chief Commanders of this multitude were, *Norican* called *Hener Maluco*, of such quality, that he never appeared with his Prince but in the Field; *Rumercan* and *Cogercan*, who for their quality

lity had distant Quarters on the edge of the Water. The Army encamped in such manner, it looked rather like a regular City than a Camp. Their order of Battle was thus: *Hidalcán* at *Ponda* with 4000 Horse, 6000 Musqueteers, 300 Elephants, 220 Cannons; *Cogercán*, *Rumercán*, and *Mortazacán* near the Mouth of the Channel *Ganja* with 3000 Horse, 130 Elephants; and nine Cannons. *Nerican* opposite to the Island of *John Lopez* with 7000 Horse, 180 Elephants, and eight great Cannons. *Camilcán* and *Delirracán* facing the Pass of *Benastarim* with 9000 Horse, 200 Elephants, and 32 battering Pieces. *Solyman Aga* on a height above *Benastarim* with 1500 Horse, and two Field Pieces. *Anjozcán* opposite to the Island of *John Bangel* with 2500 Horse, 50 Elephants, and six Cannons. *Xatiarviatan* in sight of *Sapal* with 1500 Horse, 6 Elephants, and 6 Cannons. *Danlatecán*, *Xatiatimanaique*, *Cbitican*, and *Codemencán* facing the Pass of *Agacaim* with 9000 Horse, 200 Elephants, and 26 Cannons. The rest of the Army covered the Mountains capable to strike a Terror into the boldest Spirits.

7. The Viceroy viewed all the Posts, offering his Person to the greatest danger. The ranging of the Enemies Army caused him to alter his first method, being now reinforced with some men come from several Parts; he posted his men thus: The dry Pass which he had designed for himself, he committed to D. *Peter de Almeyda*, and D. *George Deça* with 120 men, and went himself



self to that of *Benastarim*, where *Ferdinand de Sousa de Castellobranco* was with the like number, taking to himself the Command of one of the lesser Posts there, rather than remove that Officer. *D. Michael de Castro* not far from *Madre de Dios* with 150; *James Barradas* on the point of the dry Pass with 60; *D. Peter de Castro* towards *Benastarim* with 120 maintained at his own Charge; *James de Azambuja* hard-by with 50; *Francis Pereyra* a little farther with 20; *Vincent Diaz Villalobos* at *Sapal* with 60; next *Gaspar Fernandez* with 50; then *D. Luis de Almeyda*, *D. Ferdinand Monroy*, and *D. Martin de Castellobranco* with each 60; *Francis Marquez Botello* with 50; *Alvaro Mendoca* between the Viceroy and Pass of *Mercantor* with 10; a little farther *Simon de Mendoca* with 120; *Emanuel Rolim* at *St. Johns Pass* with 100; In the Pass of *Marque* the City placed 80; *John de Sousa* with his 50 Horse went from *Agacaim* to the Bar, to receive and execute his Orders; *Baltasar Lobo de Sousa* at *Pardoe* with 50; *Peter Alvarez de Faria* near him with 80; *Vasco Perez de Faria* at *Necra* with a Company; *Damian de Sousa* at *Bachol* with the like Body; and *Francis de Silveira* at *Norva* with 30.

8. Several Vessels with small Guns were to run along the River to relieve all these Posts. Thus the number of the Viceroy's Men was not above 1600, and he had but 30 Cannons in all those Posts. This was the force we had to oppose that great Power, the like was at *Ghaul*.

9. For

9. For *Nizamaluco* set down before it at the same time, as *Hidalcan* did before *Goa*. They two being suspicious of each other, kept time in their Preparations, Setting out and Marches. But that we may not confound the Actions by mixing them, we will first relate those at *Goa*, and then proceed to *Chaul*. The Cannon began to play, the flashes whereof enlighthned the Night, and the smoak darkned the day. The Enemy spent their first Fury on the Fort and Works of *Benastarim*, and did great harm, but could not perceive it; for whatever they ruined by day was repaired by night. They poured in showers of Bullets, for only in *Alvaro de Mendoga* his Post 600 were found, some of them of two Spans diameter; we could not answer with the like number, but could see we did great execution. And our Vessels sailing nimbly about, plied their small Guns with good effect. *Ferdinand de Sousa de Castelobranco* one night by the help of a great number of Torches that went before spied an Officer of the Enemies crossing a height opposite to him with young Women dancing before, *Sousa* desirous to untune their harmony, caused a Cannon to be so luckily levelled at them, that the Officer, some of those that lighted, and two couple of the young Women were seen to fly into the Air.

10. This was the time for the return-Ships to sail for *Portugal*, and every Body advised the Viceroy to stop them, because they would carry 400 Men that might be a great help in the present distress. But the Viceroy ambitious

bitious of making his Glory the greater, by conquering the greater difficulties, answer'd, *There was want of them in Portugal, and he trusted those that remained were sufficient for the work he had in hand.* So the Ships set sail.

11. Hitherto the *Portugueses* did much more harm than they received, having killed many of the Enemy, and among them some of Note, and lost no number nor any person considerable, only some were dangerously wounded. *D. Francis de Sylva* being wounded with a Cannon Ball so that his Guts hung out, continued encouraging his Men holding them up with his hand. *Peter Homem de Silva* losing much Blood at three Musket Shots he had received, and being perswaded to go off, said, It could be no matter of moment since he felt it not. Our Vessels did good Service; and the Enemies were not idle, carrying their men from one place to another. Our men had the boldness often to land and attack the Enemy in their Posts, and still brought away Prisoners, the heads of those they killed, Colours and Arms. *D. George de Meneses Barroche* in his Vessels, and *D. Peter de Castro* by Land with 200 *Portugueses* made such a slaughter, that the Viceroy to animate the City, and shew them what was done abroad, sent them two Carts loaded with Heads. *Gaspar Diaz* and his Brother *Lancelot* running up the Country one night a League and half with 80 men, burnt two Villages and many Farm Houses, and brought away many Prisoners, heads of the slain, and of Cattle.

12. Ano-

12 Another time these two Brothers with 130 men, attack the Quarters of *Cogergan* and *Rumergan*, and making a great havock, destroyed all they had provided in order to pass over into the Island of *John Lopez*. In this Action *Francis de Cunna Coutino*, Servant to the Viceroy, going alone before the rest, came so close up to 500 *Mores*, that he threw two Granadoes among them, which did some execution, and retired without hurt. The Enemy admired the smallness of our number, and greatness of our Actions; but was more surprized when he heard, that in the heat of all this fury, the Viceroy had order'd D. *James de Meneses* who came from the Coast of *Malabar* with his Squadron, to return thither; and D. *Ferdinand de Vasconcelos* to go with four Gallies and two small Vessels to destroy the City *Dabul*, to show *Hidalcán*, whose it was, how little account he made of all his Power. D. *Ferdinand* burnt there two great Ships of *Meca*, and many small Vessels; then landing fired some Villages, and had done the same to the City, had not his own Captains opposed it.

13. He returned to *Goa*, and attacking the Quarters of *Angoscan*, a principal Man among the Enemy, three Miles distant from the Viceroy, entred them with great slaughter. But his Men with the success falling into Disorder, the Enemy rallied and fell upon them, killing some, the rest fled leaving their Captain, who, weakned with loss of Blood, and tired with the weight of his Arms, could not get into a Boat, but fought in



in the Water till he fell down dead. His Ensign *Augustin Fernandez* died honourably with his Colours in the left hand, which he bravely defended with the right. Forty were killed, their Heads with the Colours were carried to *Hidalcan*. The Viceroy immediately sent *Barroche* with 100 Men more to burn *D. Ferdinand's* Vessel taken by the Enemy, which he performed, bringing away the Cannon that was left in it by the Enemy, believing no Body durst come where it lay.

## CHAP. VIII.

*Continues the Siege of Goa, and Government of D. Luis de Ataide.*

1. **A**T this time *Zamori* made Proposals of Peace to the Viceroy, either to amuse him while he went upon other designs pursuant to the Articles of the League, or else hoping to gain some advantage in that pressing Conjunction. The Viceroy gave him to understand he would not yield the least point for fear, and continued firm in this resolution, notwithstanding *Hidalcan* had prevailed with the Queen of *Guarropa* to declare War at *Onor*: That Prince was astonished to see him send relief thither, when he thought there was not force to supply *Goa*. The Viceroy at this time also

T

relieved

relieved *Marramaque* at the *Malucos*, and *Francis Barreto* at *Mocambique*.

2. The grand design of *Hidalcan* was to get over into the Island, in order to it his General *Norican* began to lay a Bridge over the River with a vast number of Workmen. The Viceroy falling upon them made a great havock. There was a Report that *Hidalcan* designed to pass over to the Island in Person, and earnestly desired a fine Horse the Viceroy had, for which he had before offered a great Sum of Mony. The Viceroy sent it him for a present, assuring nothing should be more pleasing than to see him come over to *Goa*. *Hidalcan* accepted of the Horse, and caused him to lie upon silk Quilts under Canopies of Cloath of Gold, to be covered with embroidered Dammask, and his Trappings to be adorned with massy Gold, and his Provender was mixed with Preserves and other Dainties. The Horse enjoyed it not long, being killed by a Cannon-Ball. At this time such a violent Storm of Rain fell, that most Posts were abandoned; the Viceroy desired to take a Standard that was left in one; a French Gunner with only one Man went over in a Boat to fetch it, and were both killed.

3. It was now the beginning of *March*, and the Siege had lasted two Months, without abating any thing of the Fury. Many of our Buildings were ruined by the Enemies Cannon, many of them killed by ours. *Anthony Cabral* run up the River *Chapora* with four Vessels, and landing fifty Men, burnt four Villages,

Villages, and above fifty Sail, bringing away some Booty. *D. Paul de Lima* with forty Men did as much at *Rachol*. The Viceroy laying hold of a Rope at the Pass of *Benastarim* to draw a Cannon, others refusing for fear of the many Bullets that flew, one hit him upon the Arm, and only pierced the sleeve without doing him any harm. Afterwards being in the Church of *Santiago*, the Roof of it was beat down and hung over his head. *Emanuel de Sousa Coutinho* stepped up to save him, by receiving the Blow, but he acknowledging the Kindness reproved the Action.

4. The Viceroy used all possible means to have Intelligence from the Enemies Camp. He bribed some Renagado *Portugueses* that served there, but what is more, he corrupted *Hidalcan's* most beloved Wife, and by her means knew the King's secret Thoughts, which he could not conceal from her.

5. *Hidalcan* now began to consider the damage done by so few Men to so numerous an Army, that now the *Portugueses* increased in strength by the arrival of several Squadrons that had been abroad, among which *James de Meneses* returned victorious from *Achem*, and *Luís de Melo de Silva* from *Malabar*. He desired Peace, but was loath to propose it. The Viceroy who knew his Thoughts ordered it so, that a Treaty was in a manner set on foot, so that no body could discern who was the Author of it. Yet at length *Hidalcan* stooped to make the first Proposals. But still the Siege was carried

on, and *April* was began. Seven hundred *Mores* attack a Pass, Two hundred *Portugueses* at first opposed them, but seeing they were relieved, fled in such Disorder, that neither their Officers nor the Viceroy could rally them. Their two Captains were killed.

6. The Action of D. *James de Meneses* relating to *Zamori*, shall be referred to the Chapter of *Chaul*; that of *Luis de Melo* is fit for this place. He set out with Fourteen Sail in search of the Fleet of *Acchem*, and met it near that Port; it consisted of Sixty Sail well Manned and provided with Cannon, commanded by the King's Son and Heir. *Melo* and he met first, and our first Shot killed him and several of his Men. The Fleets met and fought resolutely on both sides; but the Enemy was utterly destroyed, three Gallies and six small Vessels taken, all the rest sunk but one. We lost not one Man; of the Enemy Twelve hundred were killed, and Three hundred made Prisoners. *Melo* returned to *Malaca* with the Vessels and Cannon he had taken, and thence sent some Men to the *Malucos*, and came to *Goa* with Fifteen hundred, and *Vasco Lorenzo de Barbuda* whom he found at *Cochim* preparing to bring some Relief.

7. These Commanders being come to *Goa*, took their Posts. *Meneses* executing his Office of Admiral was carried off wounded, at such time as Three thousand of the Enemy began to enter the Island of *John Lopez*. *Antony Fernandez de Cale* with One hundred and



and twenty Men met and put them to flight, killing a great number.

8. During this time, before Winter came on, several Attempts were made upon the Enemies Quarters and Inroads into the Country always with success. One Night One hundred and fifty Men beat the Enemy out of a Post at *Benastarim* and after another at *Angoscan*, ruining all the Works they had raised. They did the same at *Xatiarrac*, *Chatigan* and *Rachol*, burning Villages demolishing the Works, and killing very many.

9. *Hidalcan*, though almost in despair, began to plant Gardens, and other Works, as if he designed either to take *Gog*, or live in that Field: He resolved to enter the Island with Nine thousand Men at the pass of *Mercantor*, which was not guarded, because the River is wide there. Our Men bearing a Drum, which never beats but when that Prince marches in Person, run thither, and saw him on the other side encouraging his. Advice being brought to the Viceroy, he sent several Parties and followed himself. In spite of all opposition Five thousand Men got over under the Command of the Turk *Soliman Aga*, Captain of the Guard. Fresh Men still flocked to the Viceroy, till he was Two thousand strong. All the Posts which extended two Leagues were in Action.

10. All the Thirteenth of *April*, from Morning till Night the attack lasted, and from the next Morning till the Day following. *Hidalcan* all the while looking on,

curſing his Prophet *Mahomet*, and throwing his Turbant on the Ground. Of the *Portugueſes* ſcarce Twenty were killed, of the Enemy almoſt Four thouſand, and among them *Soliman Aga*; *Hidalcan's* Brother-in-Law, and other Perſons of Note, ſome Colours, and Plunder were taken.

11. *F. George de St. Lucia* a Dominican and Biſhop of *Malaca*, foretold this Succels to the Viceroy. *Hidalcan* raged, and in publick vowed not to ſtir thence, but in private wiſhed a concluſion, but uſed not the means. He propoſed a Peace, and deſpaired of concluding it upon the Terms he offered; one of them was the Surrender of *Goa*, as if the *Portugueſes* had all this while fought for any thing but to keep it. Our Viceroy treated with *Norican* about killing the King, offering him either the Crown or great Power in the Government. *Norican* admits the Propoſals, and as the blow was ready to be given, the Treachery was diſcovered, he ſecured, and ſo the other Conſpirators deſiſted. This was about the end of *April*.

12. The treaty of Peace failing, the Siege went on, but not with the vigour as before. The Enemies Cannon ruined our Buildings, ours their Men, and Parties of ours burnt all the Country. *Sebaſtian de Reſende* with only four Men attempts a Poſt of the Enemies, and killing ſome, would have brought away one alive, but he making much oppoſition, *Reſende* was forc'd to kill him. *Lancelot Picardo* and others with forty Men did great

great execution. *Antony Fernandez* with thirty falling upon *Rumercan's* Quarters where there was eighty, killed eighteen, and retired without any damage received. The Viceroy leaning one day on a Page, a Ball took away his Prop. Being at rest one night he heard a great Noise, and instantly came abroad, and a Bullet hitting him on the Breast, fell at his feet without doing the least hurt.

13. *Hidalcan* to divide and weaken the Viceroy, again perswades the Queen of *Guarcopa* to attack *Onor*. She consents, and joining Three thousand Men of her own to Two thousand sent by him, besieges the Fort. It was the middle of *July*, the dead of Winter there, when the Viceroy received Advice thereof. He sent instantly *Antony Fernandez de Cbale* with two Galleys and eight Vessels, and what Men they could contain: *Antony* in five days enters that Port, and joining with *George de Moura* commanding there, falls upon the Enemy and puts them to flight, killing many, and bringing all the Cannon into the Fort. About this time *Zamori* broke out in another place, but that requires a particular Chapter.

14. The Viceroy underhand endeavoured to stir up other Princes to invade *Hidalcan's* Dominions, by that means to draw him from the Siege. Both endeavoured to hide their desire of Peace. *Hidalcan* made appear as if he resolved not to stir, and the Viceroy as if he valued not his lying there. In fine, the whole Winter was spent, and towards

wards the end of *August*, when Summer begins, and the Enemy might better keep the Field, the number of Tents was seen to decrease, then the Men, and lastly the Cannon vanished, without coming to any accommodation, after a Siege of ten Months, wherein the Enemy lost Twelve thousand Men, Three hundred Elephants, Four thousand Horses, and Six thousand Oxen, part by the Sword, and part by the Weather. Thus *Goa* was suddenly delivered. Let us now see what was done at *Chaul* by *Nizamaluco*, the second Chief of this League.

---

## C H A P. IX.

*The Siege of Chaul.*

1. **N**izamaluco keeping time with *Hidalcan*, set down before *Chaul* at the same time the other did before *Goa*. His General *Faretecan* invested the place with Eight thousand Horse and Twenty thousand Foot; and on the last day of *November* the Enemy broke ground with a horrid noise of warlike Instruments.

2. *Luis Ferreyra de Andrade*, a Man well deserving such a Post, commanded at *Chaul*, and laboured long under great Wants of all Necessaries, supplying those Defects with his and his Men's Valour, till *D. Francis Mascarennas* came to his assistance with Six hundred



dred Men in four Gallies and five small Vessels, and some Barques loaded with Ammunition and Provision.

3. The Fort of *Chaul* is seated in about 18 deg. of N. Lat. on the Bank of a River, not twelve Miles from the Mouth of it. There were in it but fifty Horse, and a small number of Foot. The first bold Action done here was by *Sebastian Gonzales de Alvelos*, who passing over a small Creek alone, challenged any of that number of Enemies, and none darst answer him. Then *Alexander de Sousa* went over with fifteen Horse to discover the Enemy, and stayed so long till 5000 came upon them, among which they killed a considerable Officer. At this time *Faretecan* was marching down the Mountain Gate with 8000 Horse, a great number of Foot, and twenty Elephants; he sat down before *Chaul*, and began to plant Cannon.

4. *Faretecan* desiring to do somewhat before his Prince came, set the Castles upon the Elephants and tied Syths to their Trunks to give an Assault. All turned to his Loss, for he was repulsed by Sea and Land, and forced to retire as far as the Church *de la Madre de Dios*, or Mother of God, where his men rallied.

5. Here it is said some Miracles were seen, as that a Bullet hitting a Souldier on the hand, rebounded from it as a Ball struck with a Racket. The fight lasted three hours with great slaughter of *Mores*, and loss of three *Portugueses*.

6. The

6. The Enemy having lodged themselves about the Town, it was thought convenient to demolish all the Buildings that were any thing distant. Nothing remarkable happened till after *December*. Some *Mores* being then gathering Fruit in an Orchard, *Nunno Vello* went out with five Soldiers, and killing one of them, others came on still till they made up Six thousand, and ours encreased to two hundred ; who behaved themselves with such bravery, they drove that multitude, killing One hundred and eighty, with the loss of two.

7. *Nizamaluco* came before *Cbaul* in the beginning of *January* with the rest of his Army, which now together consisted of 34000 Horse, 100000 Foot, 16000 Pioniers, 4000 Smiths, Masons and other Trades of sundry Nations, as *Turks*, *Coraçons*, *Perfians* and *Ethiopians*, 360 Elephants, an infinite number of Bufalos and Oxen, and forty pieces of Cannon most of a prodigious bigness, some carrying Balls of 100, some 200, and even 300 weight, and had Names answerable, as *Cruel Butcher*, *Devourer*, *Orlando Furioso*, and the like. Thus 150000 Men so well provided, planted themselves before a Town that had only a single Wall, a Fort like a House, and a handful of Men. *Fartecan* lodged himself in the Vicar's House near the Chapel of the Mother of God with 7000 Horse and twenty Elephants. *Agelascan* in the House of *James Lopez* with 6000 Horse ; *Ximirican* between that and upper *Cbaul* with 2000, so the City was beset

beset from Sea to Sea. At the same time 4000 Horse ravaged the Lands of *Bacaim*. The King took his Quarters at the farther end of the Town; thus the space of two Leagues was covered with Tents.

8. The *Portugueses* at first being but few, and the Works inconsiderable, had no particular Posts, but were wherever the danger threatned. Soon after the News of the danger of *Chaul* being spread abroad, many Gentlemen flocked thither with supplies of Men, so that in a little time there were 2000 Men in the Town. It was resolved to maintain the Monastery of *St. Francis*, and it was committed to *Alexander de Sousa*. Some Houses were also judged fit to be defended. *Nuno Alvarez Pereyra* with forty Men had those on the Shore, those between the *Misericordia* and *St. Dominick D. Gonçalo de Meneses*, others near *Nunno Vello Pereyra*, and so in other Places.

9. Mean while it was generally voted at *Goa*, that *Chaul* ought to be abandoned, but the Viceroy resolutely opposed, and was seconded by *Ferdinand de Sousa de Castello-branco*. He immediately sent thither *D. Duarte de Lima* and *Ferdinand Tellez de Meneses* with their two Gallies, and some Men in four other Vessels. Let us see what was done at *Chaul* whilst they are under Sail.

10. *Nimirican* had promised *Nizamaluco* he would be the first man should enter the Town, in order thereto he vigorously attacks the Posts of *Henry de Betancor* and *Ferdinand Pereyra de Miranda*. They bravely made

made good their Ground, and being reliev'd repulsed him, killing Three hundred of his Men, seven of ours were lost. The Enemy turn their Cannon upon the Monastery of *St. Francis* where we had some Pieces, and both sides striving to burst or dismount the opposite Guns; the Gunners were so dextrous, that Bullets were seen to meet by the way. On the Eve of *St. Sebastian* a Party of ours sallied upon some Houses where the *Mores* had fortified themselves, and killed a great number without losing one Man.

11. *Nizamaluco* enraged at the last repulse desired Revenge, and that same night attacks the Fort of *St. Francis* with Five thousand Men. The *Mores* thought to surprize ours, but were soon undeceived by the Execution done among them. The attack lasted very furious the space of five hours. The *Portugueses* suspected the Enemy worked under the Wall, and could not see by reason of the darkness, but *Christopher Curoo* three several times put half his Body out of a Window, with a lighted Torch in one hand, and a Buckler in the other, to discover what was doing. The noise was very great, and those in the City fearing for those that were assaulted, sent them Relief though with great hazard. The Morning discovered the Fort stuck with Arrows, and under it above Three hundred *Mores* slain, without the loss of one *Portugues*.

12. Next day the Enemy repeated the Assault, and continued it five days with great resolution, with as great bravery were they



they received by the *Portugueses*, who often sallying covered the Field with dead Bodies and took several Colours. However it was at last judged expedient to quit that Fort, and withdraw the Men into the City, lest the losing of it should prove more prejudicial than the defending it could avail. Seventeen Men were killed in it. One of these being on a high place to give notice when the Enemy fired their Cannon, said to those that were below : *If they should now fire Raspadillo (that was a Cannon eighteen Foot long so called) without doubt they would send me all in pieces to sup with Jesus Christ, to whom I commend my self, for the Gun points at me.* Scarce had he spoke the words when he was torn in pieces by a Ball from that Cannon.

12. The *Mores* being possessed of the Fort and Monastery of St. *Francis*, fired a whole Street, but attempting to gain some Houses lost Four hundred Men. Three of them challenged a like number of ours, who thinking it a disparagement to answer them upon equal terms, only two went out, which were *Gomez Freyre* and *Luis del Valle*, who carried a great Hanger. The *Mores* refused the odds, and one of them withdrew. *Valle* with the advantage of the Hanger overcame his Adversary, and then assisted *Freyre* to kill the other. So both sides might be said to be conquer'd, the *Mores* losing their Lives, and ours their Honour by taking the Advantage.

14. *Chaul* being now streightned, *Ruy Gonzalez de Camara* was sent to *Goa* for Relief; which he brought in two Galleys. At this time appeared here, and before *Mangalor*, the *Malabar-Ships*, sent by *Zamori*, pursuant to the Articles of the Confederacy. But our Method being to relate what each of the Confederates did separately, this shall be referred to another Chapter. Let us see one of the bravest Actions that has been heard of, performed by *Stephen Perestrelo*, Commander of the weak Fort of *Caranja*.

15. It was said, above 5000 of *Nizam-Inco's* Horse marched into the Lands of *Balgain*. They resolved to attempt some of our Garrisons; and being beaten off at *Agarim* and *Damam*, went and sate down before *Caranja*, where *Stephen Perestrelo* was, with only Forty Men, *Caranja* is a small, inconsiderable Work, between *Chaul* and *Damam*, on the Edge of the Water, and is, in some measure, an Island, being encompassed by small Brooks. As the Enemy sate down before it, *Emanuel de Melo* came with Thirty Men. Being now Seventy strong, *Perestrelo* falls upon that great Number, with such Success, that after covering the little Island with dead Bodies, the rest fled, leaving their Cannon, and a considerable Quantity of Arms and Ammunition.

16. But to return to *Chaul*: The *Moms* furiously batter'd it with Seventy Pieces of large Cannon, for the space of a Month; the least that was spent every Day being 160 Balls. They made great havock among  
the

the Houses, in which many were killed ; one single Ball slew six Persons that were eating together ; others fell into the Ships, and failed not of Execution there. This Battery began against the Bastion of the Cross, and was carried on to the Place where *Peter Ferreys* and *Mem Dornelas* were posted, levelling all with the Ground. The Besieged worked incessantly to cover themselves ; but the Enemy's Gunners were so expert, they mounted their Balls so, that they fell among those that thought they were within Shelter. *Augustine Nunez* found an Expedient to avoid this Danger, which, though thought difficult at first, was afterwards their only Security.

17. Our Commander seeing the Battery on the other side of *St. Dominick* never ceased, thought fit to attack the Enemy's Quarters opposite to it. *Alexander de Sousa* and *Augustine Nunez* undertook it with One Hundred and Twenty Men, and, though vigorously opposed, drove the Enemy thence ; killing many, and firing the Works.

18. *John Alvarez Suarez*, an Officer of the Revenue, hearing the Danger of *Chaul*, fitted out a Vessel at his own Charge, and came thither with some Soldiers ; where he behaved himself beyond what was expected of one, whose Business seemed to be only the Pen, though now he converted it to the Sword.

19. Coming now at the time of the Attack of those Works, he was one of the first that mounted. *Ferdinand Casqueiro* hearing

ing the *Moors* play at Tables in an House, ran in, and killed two of them, driving the rest from the Sport. The Work was levelled with the Ground, without any Loss on our Side. Among the Arms taken in this Action, was a Cymiter with this Inscription, *JESUS SAVE ME.*

---

## CHAP. X.

*Continues the Siege of Chaul.*

1. **T**HE Enemy attacked some considerable Houses, and were repulsed, with Loss of one Man of ours; but we having undermined that of *Heñor de Sampaio*, to blow it up, they ran furiously, and set their Colours upon the Top of it. This incensed our Men, and there followed an obstinate Dispute in the House, till some Fire accidentally falling into the Powder, it blew up, killing Forty Two of our Soldiers: Some escaped so disfigured, that their own Friends mistaking them for *Moors*, ran out to kill them.

2. The *Moors* escaped here unhurt, and set their Colours upon the Ruins of the House, and upon that of *Xira*, which they took next. *Ximirican* assaults by Night the Bastion of the Cross, with Six Hundred Men; but *Ferdinand Pereyra* opposed them with Thirty; and *Henry de Betancor* second-  
ing



ing him with some others, they beat them off, and took five Colours they had planted upon the Work. *Betameor* fought with the Left Hand only, having before lost the Right: And *Dominick del Alamo* being lame, caused himself to be brought out in a Chair.

3. April was now begun, and the Enemy seemed resolved to continue there all the Winter, and were raising new Works. *Albuquerque de Sousa* and *D. Gonçalo de Meneses* were appointed to fall upon them. Their Soldiers understanding it, ran out without Orders, to the Number of Two Hundred, and furiously drove the Enemy from their Works, which, their Captains coming up, they ruined. Above Fifty *Moors* were killed, and some few *Portugueses*.

4. *Nizamaluco* perplexed with so many Losses, gives a general Assault with his whole Army, at once attacking all our Posts. There was scarce any of our Works that the *Moors* did not enter, and plant their Colours; and with the same Vigour and Fury were repulsed, and drove out of them. In the Morning above Five Hundred *Moors* appeared slain, and Four or Five *Portugueses*. This was the Posture of Affairs, when some Supplies came from *Goa*, *Diu* and *Bacaim*, being above Two Hundred Men, and a sufficient Quantity of Ammunition.

5. Two other Dangers now terrified the Besieged: The one, a troublesome, though not mortal Disease; being great Swellings all over their Bodies, which deprived them  
U of

of the Use of their Limbs. The other, that *Nizamulica* solicited the King of *Sergis*, and some Rebels of *Cambaya*, to fall upon the *Portugueses* in other Places, by that means to hinder Relief coming to them. But neither of them gave ear to him. The Prince seeing he must finish some what he had undertaken alone, fell to battering the House of *D. Nunno Alvarez Pereira*, and continued it for the Time of Forty Days. He assaulted it with Five Thousand Men. The Defendants at first were but Forty; soon after, Twenty more came to their Assistance; and some others also after that. We lost but One Man, and killed above Fifty *Moor*s. One being taken, and brought to the Captain, told him, above Five Thousand had been killed during the Siege.

6. The House of *Nunno Vello* was battered and assaulted Thirty Days, with much the same Success; only this Difference, that we lost Ten Men. Only Thirty Soldiers sustained these furious Assaults, till it being judged no longer needful to defend the House, it was agreed to blow it up. The Enemy hastily ran to possess themselves of it, setting up their Colours at such time as part of the Building flew into the Air, doing good Execution, though not so much as was expected. But what this fell short, was made up by another Mine, and by the Valour of *D. Francis Mascarennas*; who falling upon those that escaped the Mine, put them to the Sword, and came off much hurt. In like manner, the House of *Francis de Melo* was

was quitted, after they had been defended to Admiration.

7. The Summer was now almost spent: There were thrown into the City above Six Thousand Cannon-Balls, some of a prodigious Bigness; and *Nizamato* was making Preparations to lie there the Winter. Above Two Hundred *Portugueses*, fearing the Ruin of the City, had deserted; but, instead of them, Three Hundred came from *Goa*, which put *Chaul* into somewhat a better Posture. On the 11th of April, *Ruy Gonzalez de Camara* fell upon Five Hundred *Moors*, in an Orchard, with such Success, that only Fifty of them escaped. He took Five Colours, and lost only Two Men, but had many wounded.

8. Fortune could not be always favourable to the Besieged, sometimes they must meet Disasters. The *Moors* enraged at that Loss, played their great Cannon incessantly: A Chance-Ball from one of them, lighting upon one of the Gallies that brought the Relief, sunk her downright, with all that was in her, being Forty Men, and Goods valued at Forty Thousand Ducats. The *Moors* did not long receive at this Accident; for *Ferdinand Alencar* falling the next Day with Four Hundred Men on the Side of *St. Francis*, obtained another Victory, equal to that of *Ruy Gonzalez*, and brought away some Ammunition, Arms, one Piece of Cannon, and other Booty. *Nizamato* beheld this Action, and mounting on Horse-back, offered to come down in Person, with a

U 2

Lance

Lance in his Hand; then changing it to a Whip, in a Rage threatned his Men, and upbraided them as Cowards.

9. Our Men were now so accustomed to Danger, nothing could terrifie them; and they seemed to court Death, as if she had not been busie enough about them. Some of our Soldiers being employed, levelling the Enemy's Works we had driven them from about *St. Francis*, and being more handy at the Sword than Spade, drew upon themselves a great Number of Enemies, whereof they killed above Two Hundred, not without Loss on our Side.

10. *D. John de Lima*, *Francis de Sá*, and *D. Nunno Alvarez* went out to discover some Mines it was thought the Enemy was carrying on. They executed their Command, entring those Quarters, where they put all that were in them to the Sword. In these two Actions we lost Six Private Soldiers, and *D. Luis de Castellobranco*, who having lost one Leg, offered the other; *D. John de Lima*, who seeing a Moor miss several Shots he made at him, stood still till he was killed; performing his Promise made on his Brother *D. Duarte's* Grave, that he would soon follow him; *Anthony de Fonseca*, he who hung by his Lance at *Parnel*, and laughed at the Enemy; *Francis Barradas*, and *Ruy Pereyra de Sa*, and Five other Gentlemen of note.

11. After the King had made it appear he designed to continue the Siege all the Winter, and all Things were on both Sides disposed in order thereto, *Foresecan* made  
some



some Overtures of Peace, but without any visible Commission from his Prince, who caused him to be apprehended, not for acting therein without Orders, for, doubtless, he had private Instructions; but upon suspicion that he was corrupted. It was no wonder if *Nizamaluco* desired a Peace, after lying before a Town Seven Months, without any Success, but losing as many Thousand Men. Nor was it strange the *Portugueses* should wish it, having already lost above Four Hundred of their own, besides *Indians*. But the Hopes of Peace being extinguished by the Imprisonment of *Faretecan*, *George Pereyra Continno* went out with his Ships, and, without any considerable Loss, burnt Three that belonged to *Nizamaluco*.

12. It was now the Beginning of *June*, and the Attacks and Batteries were carried on with such Vigour, as if they then began. The first Attempt was upon *D. Nuno Alvarez* his House, which was lost through Carelessness. Yet after it was taken, some Gentlemen attempting to recover it, lost at least Twenty *Portugueses*, without doing any considerable Execution. Next, the Enemy possessed themselves of the Monastery of *St. Dominick*, where great Slaughter was made. At *D. Gongalo de Meneses* his House it was well fought, but to our great Loss. In all the other Quarters, the Cannon-Balls flew like Hail. Let us come to the last Assault.

13. The Batteries never ceased from the End of *May*, till the End of *June*; *Nizamaluco*

*maluco* resolving to make a Breach fit for his whole Army to try its Fortune. On the 28th the Elephants appeared loaded with Castles, and the Castles full of Men. A valiant *Moor*, well mounted, walked leisurely before all our Works, within Musquet-shot, and never altered his Pace; notwithstanding above Five Hundred Shot was made at him, and his Horse wounded, he went off unhurt. The whole Army expected the Sign to move, but it was not given because our Cannon killed an Officer of Note, which the King took as an ill Omen, and put off the Assault till next Day. Six of our Men venturing out of the Works, drew a great Multitude of the Enemy within reach of our Shot which was so well bestowed, that One Hundred and Eighteen fell down dead, and above Five Hundred were wounded, without doing us the least hurt.

14. The next Day about Noon the King gave the Signal to fall on; and the whole Body of Men and Elephants advanced with horrible Cries, and Noise of Warlike Instruments. *Agalascan* attacked *James Suarez de Albergaria*, *John de Silva Barreto*, *Roderick Homen de Silva*, and *Laurence de Brito*, in their Posts. *Faretecan* and *Sujatecan* fell on the Quarter of the *Misericordia*. *Misnarra*, Captain of the Guards, on that of *Ruy Gonzalez*. *D. Francis*, our Commander in Chief, being to relieve where-ever the greatest Danger pressed, planted himself opposite to the King with part of his Men, having distributed the rest where there was need.

15. The

15. The Day was darken'd with Smoak, at Times lighted with Flames; the Slaughter and Confusion was great on all Sides. Some of the Enemy's Colours were planted on our Works, but soon taken, or cast down, with those who had boldly set them up. The Elephants, made drunk by the *Nayres*, that they might be the more fierce, being burnt and wounded, ran madly about the Field. One much valued by the King, being fired in the Flames, ran into the Water, and swam over the Bar, where one of our Vessels killed him with a Cannon-Shot. In fine, The Assault ended with the Day, the *Portugueses* remaining Masters of all their Works, after killing above Three Thousand of the Enemies; among which, one was the Son of *Agalascan*, and many more of Note.

16. This Action cost us but a few private Soldiers, and Eight Gentlemen. *D. Henry de Meneses* being lame, having his Legs burnt, caused himself to be carried in a Chair. *Laurence de Brito* took a Colours. *Gonçalo Rodriguez Caldera* and *Hierome Curvo* would not leave their Posts, after receiving many dangerous Wounds. In fine, All did more than mortal Actions; it would be a Lessening of others to commend some, and we cannot particularize them all.

17. The *Moors* asked Leave to bury their Dead; which being granted, as they drew them off, they asked the *Portugueses*, What Woman it was that went before them in the Fight, and whether she was alive? One answered,

swered, *Yes ; for, doubtless, she was immortal.* And they replied, *Then certainly, it was the Lady Marian.* So they call the Blessed Virgin. Many said they saw her at *Lawrence de Brito's Quarter*, so bright, that she blinded them. And some who went to see her Image in the Churches, were converted, and staid in Town.

18. *Nizamaluco* was desirous to treat of Peace, but was not willing to shew it : Our Commander wished as much as he, and was as backward in making it appear. At length both Sides abated, and a Treaty was set on foot : *Faretacan* and *Azafacan* were Commissioners for *Nizamaluco* ; *Peter de Silva*, and *Meneses*, and *Anthony de Teyve*, for our Commander in Chief ; and *D. Francis Mascarennas Baroche*, for the Captain of the City. The Substance of the Accommodation was a League Offensive and Defensive between *Nizamaluco* and King *Sebastion*. This Agreement was celebrated with great Joy, and sending of rich Presents on both Sides. All this might have been done, without so much Effusion of Blood. *Nizamaluco* raised his Camp, and returned home.



## C H A P. XI.

*The Proceedings of Zamori upon this Oc-  
casion, and during the Government of  
D. Luis de Ataide.*

1. **Z**amori the third Chief of this League, who was to act by Sea as Sovereign thereof among those of *India*, performed his Part very coldly. After *Goa* and *Chaul* had been Besieged a Month, he instead of putting his Fleet to Sea, sent to treat of Peace with the Viceroy, either by this means to amuze him, or else to gain some Advantage upon his pressing Necessities. For few Princes follow the Dictates of Honour, when opposite to their Interest. This Affair being proposed in Council at *Goa*, it was unanimously agreed to accept of a Peace though upon hard terms. But the Viceroy who had resolved to loose all or nothing, said, *He would make no Peace unless upon such Terms, as he might expect in the most flourishing Condition.*

2. Zamori seeing this Design fail, set out a Fleet about the end of *February* under the Command of *Catiproca Marca*. He soon appeared before *Chaul* with twenty-one Sail, and a great number of Men, whereof above One thousand were Musqueteers, and passed by Night through all our Gallies and Gallions that filled the Port without opposition. The Entrance was defended against only two

two Paraos, whereof one got in, the other not. The *Malabars* with reason boasted of this Action, and *Nizamaluco's* Men rejoiced at the Success.

3. *Nizamaluco* was much pleased at the arrival of the *Malabars*, posted the 1000 Musqueteers, and then perswaded the Officers to attack our Ships, which were under the Command of *Leonel de Sousa*. A great number of *Calemutes*, which are small Vessels that King made use of, were crammed full of Men to accompany the twenty-one *Malabars*, every one going as to a sure Victory. They set out with great eagerness, bearing down upon *Lionel de Sousa*, and fled with the same precipitation seeing him make at them. Yet for all their haste our Gallies did considerable execution among them. *Nizamaluco*, who from a height had been looking on, did all he could to perswade them to try their Fortune again, but to no purpose; for after twenty days they stole away by night out of that Harbour with the same good Fortune they came in.

4. The Queen of *Mangalor* thinking to make some Advantage of these Confusions, and hearing that *Catiproca* was near with his Fleet, represented to him how easily our Fort might be surprized, and offered to defray the Charge. He accepted the Proposal, thinking to regain the Credit lost at *Chaul*. Unexpectedly he applies scaling Ladders, and some of his Men mounted. Some Servants of *D. Antony Pereira*, who Commanded there, awaking, and seeing the Enemy

Enemy, threw out of a Window the first thing came to hand, which was a Chest of their Master's full of Silver, and with it beat down those that were upon the Ladder. *Pereyra* waking with the noise, threw down those that had mounted, the other fled carrying away the Chest aboard the Ships. As they passed before *Cananor*, D. *James* with his Squadron fell upon and totally routed them. D. *James* follows them up the River of *Tiracole*, and not one Ship of them escaped, *Catiproc* was killed, and his Nephew *Cutiale* taken, as also D. *Antony's* Chest recovered.

5. *Zamori* did not fulfil the Articles of the League by sending this Fleet, for every one had promised to undertake something in Person; till now D. *James de Meneses* had obstructed him, scouring that Sea, burning many Towns and Ships, and taking many which he carried to *Goa*. Towards the end of *June*, when D. *James* was gone, and *Hidalcu* and *Nizamaluco* were about drawing off, *Zamori* laid down before the Fort of *Chale* with 100000 Men, most of them Musqueteers. This place is but two Leagues from *Calicut*, that Prince's Court, and was then held by D. *George de Castro*. The Enemy planted forty Pieces of Brass Cannon, and girding the place round thought they had shut out all hopes of Relief. Some was sent from *Cochim* under the Conduct of D. *Antony de Noronha*, who could not put it into the Place, for the furious Batteries of the Enemies Cannon. *Francis Pereyra de Sousa* coming

ing from *Canonor* with extravagant Bravery, conquered the difficulty, but the Relief was small because the Vessels were so. As soon as the Viceroy had advice, he sent D. *James de Meneses* with eighteen Sail to carry Supplies to the Fort. He with great difficulty got to *Ghale* about the end of *September*, when the Belieged were reduced to the last Extremities, there being at least Six hundred Persons in the place, whereof not above Seventy that could bear Arms.

6. It seemed impracticable to attempt the putting in any Relief, for the mouth of the Harbour was very narrow, and all the Hills about it were planted with Cannon. But our Commander resolved to surmount all Difficulties: A great Vessel was filled with Provisions for two months, and fifty Soldiers put into it. *James de Azambuja* went before in his Gally, and *Antony Fernandez* and D. *Luis de Meneses* cover'd it with their Vessels. They pierced with incredible Courage through Showrs of Bullets, and *Ferdinand de Mendoca*, Nephew to D. *James*, run in all the Supplies, whilst *Francis de Sousa* with his Men killed above Five hundred of the Enemy, who endeavour'd to obstruct it. This done, they retired through the same Dangers with loss of forty Men. As they were cutting off a Soldier's Leg he asked whether the Succour was got in, and hearing it was, *Then*, said he, let me die in God's Name, for I cannot die more honourably.

7. Though



7. Though it was not possible to bring the People out of the Fort, as was design'd, yet the putting in of Relief was an Action scarce to be parallell'd, for the great hazard and difficulty that attended, and vast Power that opposed it.

8. The King of *Achem*, the Fourth of these great Confederates, whose thoughts were always employed against *Malaca*, did not in point of time answer the Covenants of the League, but we shall see him at length in the Government of D. *Antony de Noronha* performing what he so long delayed. The Queen of *Guarcopa* and others, as has been related, made up what was wanting in him.

9. This was the end of that mighty League; this the Government, Valour and Fortune of our Viceroy; who opposing all the united Power of *India*, re-established the *Portugues* Reputation, so much decayed; For which he deserves an everlasting Fame.

10. D. *Luis de Ataide* Lord of *Atouguis* was of unquestioned Valour, had great Experience in Military Affairs, to which he had applied himself from his Youth, and of a Spirit so free from the Infection of Avarice, that as others brought from *Asia* to *Portugal* heaps of Treasure, he brought four Jars of Water from the four famous Rivers, *Indus*, *Ganges*, *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, which were preserved many Years in his Castle of *Peniche*.

11. After serving in *Europe* and *Africk* he went over to *India*, and served there, and at the Age of twenty-two, was Knighted at Mount

Mount Sinai by the Governor D. Stephen de Gama. Returning to Portugal he went Ambassador to the Emperor Charles V. and was in that Battle in which the Emperor defeated the Lutherans under the Landtgrave and Duke of Saxony; where he behaved himself so well, that Charles V. offered to Knight him, and he said, He had already received that Honour at Mount Sinai, and was therefore sorry he could not admit it then. The Emperor in the hearing of all answer'd, He more envied that Honour, than he rejoiced in his Victory.

12. At his arrival at Lisbon King Sebastian caused him to be received under a Canopy, yet afterwards (like King Emanuel and Duarte Pacheco) very much slighted him. We shall see it when he is made the second time Viceroy, being the first that was so twice. D. Antony de Noronha succeeded him now: He was the Tenth that had this Title, and of Governours the Twenty-fourth: The First of the Name and Sirname, the Third Count that had that Post: He was of the larger size, had a good Meen, his Complexion white.

C H A P. XII.

*The Government of the Viceroy D. Antony de Noronna, from the Year 1571 till 1573, in the Reign of King Sebastian.*

1. **K**ING *Sebastian* thinking the Government of *India*, as it was then extended, too great a Burden for one Man, divided it into three Parts: The first from Cape *Guardafu* to the Island *Ceylon*, which is that of *India*: The second from Cape *Corrimoes* to *Guardafu*, which is *Monomastapa*: The third from *Pegu* to *Cbina*, which is that of *Malaca*. The first was given to D. *Antony de Noronna*, with the Title of Viceroy; the second to *Francis Barreto*, and the third to *Antony Moniz Barreto*, both stiled Governors. Though it may alter things as to point of time, I will speak of them in distinct Chapters, beginning with D. *Antony de Noronna*.

2. He set out from *Lisbon* with five Ships, and was followed by two more. They arrived at *Goa* the beginning of *September* safe as to the number of Ships, for none was lost; but not so as to Men, 2000 dying at Sea of sickness of 4000 that set out. D. *Antony* came before *Hidalcan* had raised the Siege, and thereby obtained part of the Honour of obliging him to quit it. *Hidalcan* lest Commissioners to conclude the Peace with the new Viceroy. It was proclaimed with great Joy

Joy on the 13th of *December*, and so the Year and the War ended together.

3. The first care of the new Viceroy was to send Relief to *Chale* in two Galleys, one Galleon and four Ships, and after them two Galleys and three other Vessels. But these were soon applied to other uses; D. *James de Meneses* coming from *Chale*, he sent him back with 1500 Men, who came too late, the Fort being already delivered to *Zamori* upon Conditions. This surrender was made contrary to the plurality of Votes by the Commander D. *George de Castro*, overcome by the Prayers and Tears of his Wife and other Ladies that were there, without considering that he was Eighty Years of Age, and ought rather to chuse an honourable Death, than a short term of infamous Life. Nor was this all his fault, for the Provision had lasted longer, had not he put it into his Wife's Hands, and she into those of her Slaves. Thus she was the first Eve among the *Portugueses* of *India* that tempted her Husband to a Crime of this nature, this being the first place so delivered by them to the Enemy. And the Viceroy could not but lose more Honour by loss of *Chale*, than he could justly pretend to by the raising the Siege of *Goa*.

4. D. *James* gathering the People that came out of *Chale*, and were under the Protection of the King of *Tanor*, left them at *Cochin*. Then dividing his Fleet with *Matbias de Albuquerque*, they clear'd the Sea of Pyrats and secured the Coasts; next they took and demolished



molished a Fort built by a *Nayque* subject to *Hids/can*, at the mouth of the River *Sanguicer*. Here was killed *Antony Fernandez Chale*, a *Malabar*, who for his Valour and Conduct had often the Honour to Command many of the bravest Gentlemen that were in *India* at that time. He was of the Order of Christ, was carried to *Goa*, and there buried with greater State than any till that day, that had not been Governor of *India*.

5. When the Viceroy accepted this Command in *Portugal*, so much lessened by the Division of Governments, his great aim was to get an Estate, being poor, and having Children. He thought *India* might mend his broken Fortune, and that *Antony Moniz Barreto* would be satisfied with less than was ordered to fit him out for the Government of *Malaca*; he was deceived, for *Moniz* was not satisfied with what could be done, nor was *India* in a Condition to give what was promised him in order to go to *Malaca*, nor *Malaca* in a posture for a Man, who look'd upon his Reputation, to go thither with that Title without a considerable Force. The one would not go with what was given him, and the other could not give more. Difficulties hard to be composed.

6. *Moniz* resolved not to go to *Malaca*, and writ to *Portugal* that the Reason was, because the Viceroy would not furnish him with what was requisite, as not desiring he should go. Malicious Whispers are generally grateful to Princes and great Men. Those who govern'd King *Sebastian* (w:  
happy

happy Kingdom, whose King is a Child! ) without any other Information besides this Gentleman's, which all tended to his own Advantage, committed the weakest Act that has been heard of: *Moniz* himself will shame them and himself, as shall appear in its proper place.

7. The Vice-Roy, after sitting out several Squadrons as usual, and receiving four Ships from *Portugal*, two whereof were lost in their Return, was obliged to make ready a considerable Succour for *Damam*, threatened by the *Mogol*, on account that that Place and *Bacaim* both belonged to the Kingdom of *Cambaya*, whereof he was now possessed; and by this Means Sultan *Mamud*, Heir to the late King of *Cambaya*, was left to the Tuition of three Great Men, *Alucan*, *Itimitican* and *Madremaluco*. Each of these envying the others Fortune, strove to make himself Master of the young King: And he finding all their Aim was Power, fled from *Madremaluco*, where he thought himself in danger, to *Itimitican*, and totally lost himself. They were all three bad, but this was the worst of all. Therefore, considering the young King might flee from him, as he had done from the others, he resolved to lay aside all Shame, and betray him. *Gelalde Munier Hechar Taxa*, King of the *Mogols*, was now in great Power; to him he offers to deliver the King; by which means, with a small Army, he might possess himself of that Kingdom, whereof he should be Vice-roy, as a Reward of his Treachery. *Hechar* agreed,

agreed, set forward with a good Army; and at the City *Amadaba*, the Traitor delivered up his Prince to him; and so the *Mogol*, without drawing Sword, was seated in the Throne of *Cambaia*.

8. *Hebar* not satisfied with what he had got, resolved to recover the Lands and Towns of *Buçaim* and *Damam*. This Design being known, *D. Luis de Almeyda*, Commander of *Damam*, gave Advice to the Viceroy; who immediately sent some Succours, and prepared to follow in Person. He set out from *Goa* the Latter End of *December*, with nine Gallies, five Gallions, eight Gallies, and ninety other Vessels.

9. The Viceroy being come into the River of *Damam*, struck such a Terrour into the Enemy, who was encamped two Leagues off, that the King immediately sent an Ambassador to the Viceroy, to treat of Peace. The Viceroy received him in his Galley with great State, and firing all the Cannon of the Fleet; and having heard his Proposals, sent back with him *Anthony Cabrall*, who concluded the Peace to the Content of both Parties. The Viceroy returned to *Goa*, and the *Mogol* settled himself in the Possession of the Kingdom of *Cambaya*, cutting off the Head of the Traitor *Irimutican*, a just Reward of his Villany.

10. The Inhabitants of *Bregalar* were offended at the Port lately built by us there; they besieged it to the number of 6000. *Ruy Gonzalez de Camara*, who commanded there, gave Advice to the Viceroy, and provided

to make a good Defence. Five Sail came immediately to his Relief; then twelve more, under the Command of D. *George de Meneses*, who by the Way destroyed the Town of the *Naique* of *Sanguicer*, with great Slaughter of the Enemy, and Loss of two Men. Without the Bay of *Braçador* he took a Ship of *Me. ca*; and entring, found all was safe, with the Succour of the first Ships.

11. D. *Henry de Meneses* sailing to the Northward with one Galley and seven other Vessels, near the Islands of *Angerula*, eight Leagues from *Chaul*, took two great Ships belonging to *Hidalcan*; but a Storm arising, they were all drove ashore, and taken by *Malabars*, who carried them to *Hidalcan*; and he, because the Ships were taken after the late Conclusion of Peace, (though the Fault was theirs, for answering with their Cannon, when they were required to shew *Portuguese* Passes, as had been agreed) caused D. *Henry*, and all the *Portugueses* then at his Court, to be put into the Castle of *Bilgam*; and it cost some trouble to release them, and appease that Prince.

12. It was the Middle of *October* when the King of *Achem* (though late, yet pursuant to the great League before spoke of) appeared before *Malaca*, with almost 100 Sail, 7000 Men, and a vast quantity of Ammunition. He landed the same Night of his Arrival, and suddenly set fire to the Town of *Iller*; which had been burnt to the Ground, had not as sudden and violent a Shower of Rain quenched it. *John Bandara*, Captain of the Horse,



Horse, ran with more Zeal than Discretion to succour the Town, and was killed.

13. The Enemy attempted to burn our Ships ; but failing in this, and other Designs, he sat down before the City, resolving to carry it by a regular Siege, having at first thought it would not cost him that Trouble. The City was in a miserable Condition, very poor, without Men, unhealthy and out of heart, having suffered much by Shipwrecks, Sicknes and Famine, not without deserving it ; for *Malaca* was ( I know not whether it is ) the *Portuguese Ninive in Asia.*

C H A P. XIII.

*The Siege of Malaca, with other Occurrences, and End of the Government of D. Anthony de Noronna.*

1. **M** *Alaca* had, in a manner, no Hopes of Defence ; the Enemy incessantly battered the Walls, and cut off all Provision from coming to it : There was nothing within but Misery, and Calling upon God for Mercy, without deserving it by any other Action, but because they implored it. So easie it is to appease the Divine Wrath.

2. So it happened ; for in this Extremity, accidentally came into that Port *Tristan Vaz de Vega*, with one only Ship, in which he sailed for *Sunda*, to load with Spice. The Besieged earnestly intreated him to assist  
X ; them,

them, and he could not but give ear to their Intreaty, though it seemed a Rashness to engage a Fleet of an Hundred Sail with Ten, whereof Nine were almost rotten, and unriggered. Among these were distributed 300 Soldiers, as naked as hungry. The Captain, who might repose much Confidence in his own Valour, acknowledging, in such Cases there ought to be no Trust but in God, gave the Example, and caused all his Men to confess, and prepare themselves for Death.

3. About the End of *November* he sailed, and discovered the Enemy's Fleet in the River *Ferneseo*. He gave the Command of his own Ship to *Emanuel Ferreyra*, and went himself into a Galliot with his Sword in his Hand, to encourage the Men, seeing him expose himself to the greatest Danger with them. The Signal being given, and the Cannon furiously discharged, our Captain lays the Enemy's Admiral on Board, makes great Havock among 200 Men that were in her, beats down her Flag, and she getting loose, shews him her Stern.

4. Mean while, *Ferdinand Perez*, with only thirteen Men, in a small Vessel, took a Galley. *Ferdinand de Lemos* runs his Ship with such force against another, that he over-set and sunk her. *Francis de Lima* having taken another, burnt it, to be at leisure to return to the Fight, that still continued. *Emanuel Ferreyra*, who was in *Vega's* Ship, sunk three Vessels, unriggered others, and killed many Men. To be short, Every one fought to admiration, the whole Enemies Fleet fled,  
ex-

except four Galleys and seven small Vessels that were burnt or sunk, 700 of the Enemy were kill'd and taker, of ours only five were slain: Our Ships waited three days to see if the Enemy would return, and then carried this joyful News to *Malaca*, where it was scarce believed.

5. Let us see what was doing at the *Malucos*. Whilst *Gonzalo Pereyra Marramaque*, our Admiral in those Seas, carried Relief to *Ternate* from *Amboina*, this Fort was Besieg'd by the Fleet of *Ternate*, sent by the King either to stop *Pereyra* from going to relieve our Men whom he held in great Distress, or if he were gone to possess themselves of those Islands. They being too late to stop him, besieged the People of *Ulate* in the Islands of *Iliacer*. They had been forty days shut up, when *D. Duarte de Meneses* with *Sancho de Vasconcelos*, who commanded at Sea, came to their Relief. They of *Ulate* encourag'd with this Succor, fell upon the Besiegers and put them to flight. They presented our Captain with Baskets of Heads, and he returning to *Amboina*, found *D. Duarte* dead, and succeeded him in that Command. The Command of the Sea he gave to *Simon de A-breu*, call'd *Papabierro*, that is Sword-swallower, because, being concern'd in many Duels, he always disarm'd his Adversary.

6. Being abroad with his Squadron he met that of *Ternate*, and there began a furious Battle, but the other Vessels in the heat of the Action forsook him, and he overpower'd by the Multitude was killed, and 25 men

with him. *Antony Lopez de Resende*, who went not off with those Cowards, came to succour him, but it being too late; the Enemy offer'd him Quarter, and he refused it, saying, *He had rather die as his Commander had done.* The Admiral of *Ternate* attacks him, and he taking a Cannon upon his Shoulder (I suppose it was a little one) order'd a Souldier to give fire to it, so successfully, that it broke the Admiral's Leg. His Men thought him dead, and whilst they were busie about him *Resende* had time to make his escape, having lost four Men in this great Action.

7. The little King of *Atua*, a new Convert, who had fought bravely, was betrayed to *Reboanje*, Commander of the *Ternatenses*, who offer'd him his Life if he would renounce the Faith, and threatned him with a new sort of Martyrdom if he refused: He continued firm; and being hung by a Rope between two Vessels, *Reboanje's* Galley run with all its force at, and tore him to pieces.

8. *John de Silva* succeeded in the Command of the Sea. All our Men seeing so many misfortunes befall us in those Islands, were for quitting them: Only *Sancho de Vasconcelos* protested he would not abandon the Christians of those Islands, affirming, if no Body would bear him Company he would stay alone and defend them with the Natives. They were all ashamed, and yielded to his Resolution. They quitted *Ita*, and fortified themselves upon the Point of *Rosanive*, where the Land makes a Bay of four Leagues in length;



Length, and three Leagues over at the mouth, and runs up still narrower like a Pyramid; on one side of the Point is the pleasant and plentiful Town of *Rosanive*, the Inhabitants thereof and the neighbouring Places were our Friends. There the new Fort was built, the *Atives* and *Tavires* labouring at it with great Fidelity to the *Portugueses*, by whom they were reduced to the Faith, which they firmly adhered to. *John de Silva* went to *Malaca* for Succor, which was granted him by *Francis de Costa* commanding there, and was cast away in the Bay of *Tapara*, where the Men were made Slaves.

9. Though these were lost, yet some Supplies came to *Amboina*, sent by the Viceroy. Our Enemies at *Atua* falling on a sudden upon the *Portugueses*, killed five and an *Italian* Jesuit. *Mascarennus* fled into the Woods, whence he was brought out at the end of eight days almost famished. *Sancho* gathering our Friends, fell upon *Atua*, and killed not only the Children at their Mother's Breasts, but the very Beasts. In the Island *Rosaler*, twelve Leagues distant, he did the same, some of the Natives retiring to a Mountain.

10. At this time arrived at *Goa* four Ships from *Portugal*, under the Command of *D. Francis de Sousa*, who as soon as he landed, went to the Archbishop *D. Gasper*, and deliver'd to him a Letter from the King, and other Papers. Scarce had that ancient and learned Man seen them, when without any consideration, he committed a great weakness,

ness, putting those Orders in Execution ; for there being several Circumstances that ought to be weighed by a Person of his Years and Profession, he instantly with great disorder called together several persons appointed for this extravagant Action into the Church.

11. The Orders were read by a Cryer; they contain'd, That *D. Antony de Noronna* should be deposed from the Viceroyship, and that *Antony Moniz Barreto* should immediately succeed him with the Title of Governour. All *Noronna's* Crime, whereby he merited to be thus deposed, was, that he gave not to *Moniz* what was not in his power to give ; and all the Merit of *Moniz*, that he promised that which afterwards he could not perform. *D. Antony* return'd to *Portugal*, though slighted, not inglorious ; for extravagant Injuries done by Superiors, are rather Honours than Affronts to the Person that receives them : Yet he not well considering it, died for Grief, as did his Wife and Brother-in-law ; and that Minister of State who was the cause of their Death, by crediting so slightly the Information of *Antony Moniz*, being sensible of the wrong he had done, broke his Heart : And King *Sebastian* hearing of the Death of *D. Antony*, declared he was sorry it happen'd before he had made him reparation of his Honour. *D. Antony* was a Man of great Honour, Sincerity and Prudence, and who, according to the Rules of the World, deserved his Fortune. His Visage long and disagreeable, his Body large and gross. In the number of Vice-

Viceroy he was the 11th, in that of Governors the 25th; the 1st of the Name, and 4th of the Sirname; he held the Government two Years, and deserved to hold it many.

C H A P. XIV.

*The Government of Antony Moniz Barreto, from the Tear 1573 till 1576, in the Reign of King Sebastian.*

1. Scarce had the Bishop concluded that 1573  
 Aft so misbecoming the Pastoral Staff, when he took out another Order, wherein *Gonçalo Pereyra Mavramague* was appointed to succeed *Antony Moniz Barreto* in the Government of *Malaca*, and in default of him *D. Leonis Pereyra* was named. The latter succeeded, for the other died after relieving of *Ternate*. This done, that Pharisaical Cabal broke up, and hasted to carry the News to the Viceroy, who received it with such unconcernedness as might well put them all out of Countenance.

2. Advice is now brought, that *Malaca* is again in danger, the King of *Achem* being again before it, assisted by the Queen of *Japara*. The new Governor orders *D. Leonis Pereyra* to be gone to his Government to succour that place; *D. Leonis* demands of him what he had before demanded of *D. Antony*, and he returns the same answer *Nomina* had given him, without remembering what

what he had writ to the King, or considering he had now less reason to refuse D. Leonis, than *Noronha* had to deny him; for then *India* was threatned by all the Power of the *East*, and was now deliver'd of that danger. D. *Leonis*, to take all manner of excuse from him, would have been satisfied with much less now, than *Moniz* demanded before: But even that was not given him, and he came away for *Portugal*; where that was his Justification for not taking upon him that Command, but was not esteemed an Offence to deprive *Moniz* of the Government, as it was with less reason in the Case of D. *Antony*; whereby it appears, the Will of Ministers of State makes the Crimes or Merit of such as depend on them.

3. This Year passed without any thing remarkable, and about the end of it arriv'd six Ships from *Portugal*: They carried an Order for Trying and Executing D. *George de Castro*, for delivering up the Fort of *Chalo* to *Zamori*. He was taken into Custody, and with him his Wife *Donna Felipa*, who, tho' really guilty of the Crime, was not liable to undergo the Punishment. He suffer'd for her, and all that were in fault, having his Head cut off upon a Scaffold in the Market Place of *Goa*; and it was observ'd, that others who were as much to blame as he, did not only escape unpunish'd, but were rewarded; and it is yet more remarkable, that a Year after a Commission was sent from *Portugal*, for D. *George de Castro* to serve in another Post,



4. Scarce did *India* begin to breath, after so many Troubles, and particularly *Malaca*, when the Queen of *Japara* sent to Besiege it, her General *Quiaidaman* with 15000 chosen Natives of *Java*, in almost 80 great Gallions, and above 220 smaller Vessels. *Tristan Vaz de Vega* was come back thither from *Sunda* after the late Victory: By common Consent, and with much Justice, he was chose Commander of that Place, *D. Francis Enriquez* his Predecessor being dead. He gave Advice of the danger to the Governor *Antony Moniz*, and he to all the neighbouring Places, promising to requite whatever they should do in order to relieve the Besieged; whereby such Succours came into them on a sudden, as put them into a good posture of Defence.

5. Mean while *Moniz* demanded of the Chamber of *Goa* to lend him 200000 Pardaos to fit out a Fleet, and finding them backward, offer'd his Son *Duarte Moniz*, a Boy of eight Years of age, as a Pledge; the Chamber gave the Money, and took the Pledge.

6. Whilst this Fleet was fitting out, the General of *Java* began to act in the same manner the King of *Achem* had done, attacking *Iller*; and *D. Antony de Castro* coming with only ten Men to defend it was killed, as *Bandara* had been the last Siege. The whole Army landed and lodged themselves round the Town. *Vega* sent *John Pereyra* and *Martin Ferreyra* with 150 men to beat the Enemy from a Post; they killed 70 of them,

them, levelled their Works, and brought off seven Pieces of Cannon. *Pereyra* afterwards burnt above 30 of their Galleons, and some great Engines they had framed to attack a Bastion. *Ferdinand Perez de Andrade* and *Bernardin de Silva* burnt their Palisades. In all these Actions we lost 15 or 20 men. The River being thus cleared, *Pereyra* with our Vessels besieges the Besiegers, and at last takes the Provisions that were coming to them; whereupon in great Consternation they imbarqued and went off by night. *Pereyra* pursues and cuts off their Rear: Almost half the 15000 perished by Fire, Sword, and Sickness during the Siege, which lasted three months, and the pursuit of three hours.

1575.

7. The King of *Achem* and Queen of *Japara* took it by turns, for when he left the Port she came in, and he now comes in as she goes out. He came now with 40 Gallies, some Ships, Galliot and other Vessels, to the number of 100, with a great Train of Artillery. *Tristan Vaz* order'd *John Pereyra* in a Galley, *Bernardin de Silva* in a Caravel, and *Ferdinand de Pallares* in a Ship with each 40 Men to go out to guard the Provisions that were coming, and whereof the City was in great want; the Enemy falls upon them, and in an instant beat all three to pieces; 75 Men perish'd by Fire, Sword and Water, 40 were taken, and only five sav'd themselves by swimming, the three Captains fought to their last breath. *John Pereyra* promised to do, to one who seeing all lost offered him a Boat in which he might have escaped.

Only

Only 150 men remained in *Malaca* to defend it, and of these 100 were sick and aged. Want of Men and Ammunition caused them to be very still in the City. The Enemy not knowing the Cause, imagined they had some cunning Stratagem in hand, and in a panick Fear raised the Siege, when they might have carried the Town, contenting themselves with their success against the three Captains. They came into the Port in the beginning of *January*, and went out about the latter end.

8. The Priests, Women and Children had cried loud with sighs and tears, imploring the Mercy of God, which at length they obtain'd: Next to God the City was saved by *Tristan Vaz de Vega's* Courage, being ready upon all Occasions; and by his liberality having spent above 20000 Ducats, wherewith he has purchased a never-dying Honour. The Succours the Governour sent came too late.

9. *D. John de Costa*, Admiral of the *Malabar* Seas, cruized there victorious with two Gallies and 24 other Vessels. He fell upon the Town of *Gaijar*, near *Braçalor*, then in Rebellion, kill'd 1500 of the Inhabitants, burnt the Town, and cut down the Woods. Thus the King of *Tolar*, grown haughty, was humbled. In the River of *Chale* he destroyed an Island belonging to *Zamori*. Above that his City of *Parapangulem* could not escape its Ruin. The Heir of the Crown coming to the Relief of it, was killed with 200 *Moors*. At *Capocate* 300 were slain, with  
the

the loss of two on our side. At Mount *Dellii*, the Town of *Nilachiram* was consumed to Ashes. Between these Actions, several Vessels were taken, which supplied the Gallies with Slaves, and the Fleet with Provisions.

10. Let us now see our Dominion in the *Molucos* drawing to an end. New Commanders were still sent to ruin all by their Avarice, with strength to maintain the Fort: *D. Alvaro de Ataide* was now there, and *Nunno Pereyra* under Sail to succeed him. The King of *Ternate* continued the Siege, and the place was almost famished. It looked as if God had undertaken the Revenge of his Father's Death, and assisted him to starve that Garrison; for no Succor was sent thither, but perished. Of all *Martimaque* his Squadron not the least Vessel return'd to *Goa*; four Ships that went with *Antony de Valadares* and *Lacerda* were cast away in several places, and he got thither alone, and after him *Francis de Lima* with a Galliot. These were comforts to the Besieged, but no perfect Cure. The King of *Ujantana*, our Friend, supplied the Enemy with Arms. *Sancho de Vasconcelos* coming from *Amboina* to succor the Besieged to small effect, found a Galleon of his loaded with them in the Port; and a *Portugues* Ship at *Banda* in danger of falling into the hands of those People: For, seeing the decay of our Affairs on that side, every one strove to hasten our Ruin. *Belchior Botello* going with one Galleon to relieve the Fort, was cast  
away



away on the Sands *Solocas*. Another in which *D. Alvaro* was going, away, after resigning that Command to *Nunno*, was beat to pieces in the Harbor. The great Ship of *Lionel de Brito* came when there was no Fort therē, and was lost afterwards. Other Supplies, a great deal of Cannon, much Merchandise and Ammunition, and above 2000 Men design'd thither, perish'd all by lamentable disasters. The Murderer of that innocent King was stabbed by the People of *Java*, rather as Executioners of God's Justice, than Enemies to the *Portugueses*. *Gonçalo Perryra Marramaque*, who consented to the Murder, died for meer Grief of so many Misfortunes, as he sailed for *Ambuina*, and was cast into the Sea.

11. In fine, our Dominion in that Island came to a dishonourable Period; for those who had so insolently treated the *Ternatenses*, were forced to beg their Lives of them, delivering up the Fort to the King, who treated them better than they deserved.

12. The King entering the Fort, protested before the *Portugueses*, he did not take possession of it for himself, but in trust for the King of *Portugal*, and would deliver it to whoever he should appoint, as soon as the Murder of his Father was punish'd. I believe they never demanded the Fort, because they would not oblige themselves to do Justice. This was the second Place we lost after this manner in *Asia*. The loss of this Place was not punished as that of *Chale*, the Crime being the same, only with this difference.

difference, that the Tears of the Women extorted the one, and the Perswasions of Jesuits the other. The arrival of that Ship, with sufficient Supplies was a testimony of the Guilt. But both places being lost for want of Relief, they ought rather to have been Executed who did not relieve, than they that surrendred them. It was a good answer of the King of *Persia* to a *Portugues* Ambassador, when asking, *How many Governours of India the King had beheaded?* the Ambassador said, *None*: Then replied the King, *The Dominion of the Portugueses in India will not last long.*

13. Our Affairs at *Amboina* were not in much better a posture; for though *Sancho de Vasconcelos* did more than could be expected of his force, yet it was less than was requisite, it was but rising and falling. He defeated two Fleets of *Ternate*, killed their Commanders, and *Cachil Tidore*; the People of *Amboina* slew *Maladam*, and many more, and eat them; for they use to eat those they kill in the Church. By his Order *Alexander de Mattos* destroyed the Island *Jamam*, but at length the Natives killed him and all his Men; but afterwards *D. Henry*, Unkle to the King of *Tidore*, coming with Two hundred and fifty Men, slew Two thousand of them. Two Natives of those Islands, as big as Giants, killed with their own hands, the one above Twenty, the other above Thirty Men. *Sancho* returned again, and entred the same Town.

14. The

14. The People of *Amboina* designed privately to Murder *Sancho de Vasconcelos*. He suspecting that *Ruy de Sousa*, a new Convert, and the principal Man of *Resnive*, was the Author of that Conspiracy, sent friendly for, and then secured him by the advice of some *Portugueses*, not without the help of the *Jesuits*, believing it was for the better, and they ruined all: For *Sousa* escaping out of Prison, did what he never had design'd, joining our Enemy, and killing a good number of our Men, which put our Affairs into a desperate Posture.

15. This Year *F. Peter de Alfaro* with three Companions entred the City of *Quantung*, and perceiving he did not profit much there, returned to *Macao*, where he built the Church. He was a *Spaniard*, and seem'd to foresee, that what belong'd now to the *Portugueses* only would soon belong to his Nation. A token of his Sanctity is, that perishing by Shipwrack, he was afterwards found on the Shore upon his Knees.

16. This Year concludes with the arrival of four Ships from *Portugal*. Since there is no Account to be found of what our Governor acted the next Year till *D. James de Meneses* succeeded him, let his Government end here, and I will go over to the Relation of what was done these very Years, in *Monomotapa*, by the Governour *Francis Barreto*, and his Successour *Vasco Fernandez Homem*. *Antony Moniz Barreto* was a Man deserving of that Post he obtained, though he got it not fair-

ly, and was one of the best Governors of India, the Twenty-sixth of that Number, and Second of the Name and Sirname.

---

## CH A P. XV.

*The Government of Francis Barreto in Monomotapa, beginning in the Year 1569, in the Reign of King Sebastian.*

1. **S**ince, by reason of the Disagreement between *Antony Moniz Barreto*, and the Viceroy *D. Antony de Norrona*, and *D. Leonis Pereyra*, the Government of *Malaca*, one of the three into which that Dominion was divided, took no effect, let us go over to the other of *Monomotapa*, which was erected, though it lasted not long. When *Francis Barreto* returned to *Portugal*, after having been Governor of *India*, he was appointed Admiral of the *Gallies*: He exercised this Command at the time of that memorable Action of *Pennon*, by which he gain'd great Reputation. Being come back to *Lisbon*, and the King resolv'd to make that Division of Governments, he named him for *Monomotapa*, with the additional Title of Conqueror of the Mines there. The great inducement to this Conquest, was the Information and Experience of the vast quantity of Gold found, particularly



larly at *Manica* in the Kingdom of *Bocaranga*.

2. The Doubt was, whether it were proper for a Man who had been Governor of all our Dominions in *Asia*, and this Southern Part of *Africk* to accept of this, which was the least considerable part into which it was divided, but the danger and difficulty of it made amends for the greatness. Three things prevailed with him to accept of it; the first, that he was poor; the second, that he thought it no lessening to take a less Command in Obedience to his Prince; and the third, that it was allowed him, in case the Viceroy and he met at Sea, their Power should be equal in all respects.

3. In fine, *Francis Barreto* submitted to his King's Command, and the Desires of his Country, and sailed from *Lisbon* in April, 1569, as Captain, General, and Governor of that Conquest, with three Ships. He carried One thousand Landmen, and might have had more, if the Vessels could have contained them; for the noise of Gold drowned the thoughts of danger, and nothing raises Men like the thoughts of gain. Among these were many Gentlemen and old *African* Soldiers. Being come to *Mozambique*, he went to subdue the King of *Pate*, who was revolted from us.

4. *Barreto* had Orders not to undertake any thing without the Advice of *Francis de Monclaros*, a Jesuit, who was the cause of the ill Success of this Enterprize. So great an Error it is to subject a Soldier to a religious Man: So indiscreet a Presumption

for a religious Man to undertake what does not belong to his profession: There were two ways to the Mines, the one through *Monomotapa*, the other by *Zefala*, *Barreto* was for this, *Menclaros* for the other, and carryed it, notwithstanding, all the Votes to the contrary, and so the first step they gave was to their ruin.

5. Now the Governor enters upon this Conquest, let us say something of its Climate, quality, and extent. The Coast from Cape *Delgado* to *Mozambique*, is in the form of a bow; it begins in 9 deg. of S. lat. and ends in 14 d. 3 m. in which space are the Islands *Pajaros*, *Mesa*; one at the Mouth of the River *Pandagi*, *Mocoloe*, *Mutemo*, *Queriba*, *Cobra*, near the River *Montuane*, *Quisue*, and *Cabras*, or *Del Agotado*. Then follow the Rivers, *Macutii*, *Macululo*, *Situ*, *Habe*, *Xanga*, *Samoco*, *Velofo*, *Pinda*, *Quizimaluco*, *Tiragone*. Between these last are the Bays of *Xanga* and *Fuego*, and the Sands of *Pinda*. From *Mocambique* to the Port of the Bay of *Cauca*, in 21 deg. and half of S. lat. The Continent runs to the Westward, gathering the Waters, where appears the *Parcel de Zefala*, the dangerous *Seylla*, and *Caribdis* of those Seas, into which falls these Rivers, *Moengo*, *Bayones*, *Moffige*, *Mojancoale*, *Sangage*, *Ambuzi*, (here lie the three Islands of *Angora*,) *Monca*, *Macolanga*, (with three other Islands) *Tondamaje*, *Corombeca*, *Quisungo*, *Loranga*, *Chimani*, *Mogundo*, *Mafusa*, (between the last are the Ports of *Quilimane*, and *Lnabo*, with the Island *Cbingoma*,) *Tendicala*,

*dicatu, Quiloe, Sabam, Bagoe, Miave, Zofala,* (with the opposite Island called *Inbanfato*) *Quiloane, Mambony, Molimon, Quilamancobi.* Between Cape *Bisiqua* in 32 deg. of S lat. and Cape *Correntes* in 23, is the great Bay of *Sausa*. Into this Bay falls the River *Inbambane*, where is the Trade of Ivory. From these names I infer the Language of those People, cannot be harsh, being mostly compounded of the soft Letters, L. and M.

6. The Empire of *Monomotapa* from the Mouth of *Cuama* in the East, runs 250 Leagues, is divided by the great River *Zambere*, which falls into that of *Chiri*, running through the Country of *Borero*, where are many other large Rivers, and on their banks many King's, some absolute, some Subjects of *Monomotapa*; the greatest of the first is *Mongas*, bordering on *Cuama* and *Zambere*, which falls into the Sea, between *Mozambique* and *Zofala*, to the S. E. by four Mouths. The first that of *Quilimane*, 90 Leagues from *Mozambique*. The second *Cuama*, 25 to the Southward. The third *Luabo*, 5 Leagues lower, and the fourth *Luaboel*, 15 more to the South. Between them are fruitful and large Islands, whereof one is 60 Leagues in compass. The River is Navigable, the same number of Leagues up to the Town of *Sena*, inhabited by *Portugueses*, and as many more to *Tete*, a Colony of theirs also. The richest Mines are those of *Musapi*, called *Ansur*, the Ophir where the Queen of *Saba* had her Riches, when she went to *Hierusalem*. In these Mines has been found a lump

of Gold worth 12000 Ducats, and another of the value of 400000. It is not only found among Stones, but grows up within the bark of several Trees to the top, where the branches spread. The Mines of *Manchica* and *Butica* are not much inferior to these. There are many others not so considerable. There are three Fairs or Markets, whither our People Trade for this Gold, from the Castle of *Tete* on the River *Zambeze*, 120 Leagues from the Sea; the first is *Luane* four Days journey up the inland. The second *Buento* farther distant, and *Mafapa* the third, yet farther off. This Gold was purchased for Cloth, glass-beads, and other things of no value among us. At *Mafapa* resides a Portugues Officer appointed by the Commander of *Mozambique*, by consent of the Emperor of *Monomotapa*, but upon condition, not to go into the Country, without his leave upon pain of Death: He is Judge of the differences that arise there. There are Churches of the Dominicans at *Mafapa*, *Buento*, and *Luanze*.

7. The Original, number and time of the Reign of the Kings is not known; it is believed, there were several in the time of the Queen of *Saba*, and that they were subject to her, for thence she had her Gold. In the Mountain *Afur*, near *Mafapa*, are seen the ruins of stately buildings, supposed to be Pallaces and Castles; in Process of time, the Empire was divided into three Kingdoms, *Quiteve*, *Sabanda*, and *Chiganga*; this last the most powerful, as possessing the Mines of



of *Manchica*, *Butua*, and others; its believed, the Blacks of *Butua* of the Kingdom of *Chicanga*, are those that carry the Gold to *Angola*, because 'tis thought there are but 100 Leagues distance between those two places; this Country bears Rice, and what we call Indian-wheat, has abundance of all sorts of Cattle, Fowl, and Gardening: Their chief care is Pastorage and Tillage; this Empire is divided into 25 Kingdoms, which are *Mongas*, *Baroe*, *Manica*, *Boesa*, *Macingo*, *Remo*, *Chique*, *Cbiria*, *Cbidima*, *Boquizo*, *Inbanzo*, *Chiruvia*, *Condesaca*, *Daburia*, *Macurumbe*, *Mungussi*, *Antiovaza*, *Cbove*, *Chungue*, *Dvia*, *Romba*, *Rassini*, *Chirao*, *Mocaran-ga*, and *Remo de Beza*; there are many Lordships, that have not the Title of Kings.

8. The Emperor has a great Palace, though of Wood; the chief Apartments of it are three, one for himself, another for his Wife, and a third for his menial Servants; it has three Doors into a Court, one for the Queen, to go in and out at, another for him and the Servants that attend his Person, and are Sons of his Noblemen; the third for the Cooks, who are two great Men and his Relations; and the under-Cooks who are also Men of Quality. None of these must be above 20 Years of Age, for till that Age, they do not believe they have to do with Women, and if any do, they are severely punished; after that time, they are preferred to great employments: Those within Doors, are governed by a Captain, and those with-  
out

out by another, as formerly in *Spain*, the *Alcalde de los Donceles*.

9. The Principal Officers about the King are, *Ningomoxa* Governor of the Kingdom, *Mocomoxa*, Captain General, *Ambuya* great Steward; to him it belongs when the *Mazarira* or the King's Principal Wife dies, to name another in her stead, but it must be one of the King's Sisters or nearest Relations; *Inbantoro*, the head Musician, who has many under him, and is a great Lord; *Nurucio*, Captain of the Van-guard; *Bucurumo*, which signifies the King's Right-hand; *Magande*, the chief Conjurer; *Netambe*, the Apothecary that keeps the Ointments and utencils for Sorcery; *Nebono*, chief Porter. All these Offices are executed by Lords; there is no delicacy in Cookery used; they only Eat boyl'd and roasted, they Eat the same as is usual among us, with the addition of mice, which they esteem as good as Partridge or Rabbet.

10. The King has many Wives, only nine called great Queens, which are his Sisters, or near Relations; the others the Daughters of Nobles. The chiefeft is called *Mazarira*, and Mother of the *Portugueses*, who often present her, because she sollicitates their business with the King; and he sends no Embassador to them without some Servant of hers; the second is *Inabanda*, that sollicitates for the Moors; the third *Nabuxa* that lives in the same Apartment with him; the fourth *Navomba*; the fifth *Nemangoro*; the sixth *Nizingoapangi*; the seventh *Nemangoro*;

*mongoro*; the eight *Nessani*; the ninth *Nee-runda*, each of them lives apart, with as great state as the King, and have several Revenues and Kingdoms for their expence. As soon as one dies, another succeeds in place and name; they have power to reward and punish, as well as the King; sometimes he goes to them, sometimes they come to him; there are many Women waiting on them, of whom he makes use as he pleases.

11. The Principal People of *Monomotapa*, and whereof the Emperor is, are the *Moss-rangi*, not warlike, nor furnished with any other Arms, but Bows, Arrows, and Javelines; they have no Religion nor Idols, but acknowledge one only God, and believe there is a Devil, that he is wicked, and they call him *Muzuco*: They believe their Kings go to Heaven, and call them *Mugimas*, and call upon them in time of need, as we on the Saints. They speak of things past by tradition, having no knowledge of Letters. They give Ear to the Doctrine of Christianity; the lame and blind they call the King's Poor, because maintained by him with great Charity; and if they travel, the Towns they go through are obliged to maintain and furnish them guides from one place to another. A good example for Christians.

12. Every Month has its Festival Days, and is divided into three Weeks, each of 10 Days; the first Day is that of the New-Moon, and the Festivals the fourth and fifth of each Week: On these Days they put on their best Apparel, the King gives publick Audience

Audience to all, holding a Truncheon about three quarters of a Yard long in each hand, as it were leaning upon it; they who speak to him lye prostrate, this lasts from Morning till Evening: If he is indisposed, *Ningomoxa* stands in his place, no body can speak to him, or go to Court, on the 8th Day of the New-Moon, because it is held most unlucky.

13. On the Day the New-Moon appears, the King with two Javelins runs about in his House, as if he were Fighting, the great Men are present at this pastime, and it being ended, a pot full of *Indian* wheat, boyled whole, is brought, which he scatters about the Ground, bidding them Eat, because it is the growth of the Earth; they know how to flatter, for every one strives to gather most, knowing that pleases him, and they Eat it as savourly, as if it were the greatest dainty.

14. Their greatest Holy-day, is the first Day of the Moon of *May*, they call it *Chuvave*: On this Day all the great Men, which are a vast number, resort to Court, and there with Javelins in their Hands run about representing a Fight; the sport lasts all Day, then the King withdraws, and is not seen in eight Days after, during which time, the Drums never cease beating. On the last Day he orders the Nobleman he has the least affection for to be killed; this is in the nature of a Sacrifice he offers to his *Muzimos*, or Ancestors; this done, the Drums cease, and every Man goes home. The *Mumbos* Eat  
Man's



Man's flesh, whereof there is a Publick Butchery. Let this suffice for the Customs of this Empire, for it would be endless to relate all.

---

C H A P. XVI.

*Continues the Government of Francis Barreto in Monomotapa.*

1. **S**uch was the Country whether the Governour *Francis Barreto* was now going, he set out from *Mozambique* with more Vessels than he brought and more Men, Tools, Camels, Horses, and other necessaries for War, and for the work of the Mines; having Sailed Ninety Leagues, he went up the River *Cuama*, called by our first discoverer *De las buenas sennales*, he came to *Sena*, or Fort St. *Marçalis*, as *F. Monclaros* desired, and repaired the Town *Inaparapala*, which is near to another of the *Moors*, they being always professed Enemies to the Christians, began to undermine our designs, as they had formerly done in *India*; they attempted to poyson our Army, and some Men and Horses began to Die, and the cause being discovered by one of them, they were all put to the Sword, and the Chief of them torn to pieces at the mouths of Guns, except one (called *Mahomet Fame*) who affirming the Blessed Virgin had appeared to him, and  
com-

commanded him to become a Christian, by the name of *Lawrence*; he had the favour to be strangled. The discoverer was pardoned.

2. *Barreto* sent an Embassador to the Emperor, who for the more honour admitted him to his Presence, not as other Embassadors were treated at this Court, which is to go without Arms, bare-footed, on their Knees, and when they come near, prostrating themselves on the ground. The effect of the Embassy was to desire leave to punish the King of *Mongas* who was in Rebellion, and go on to the Mines of *Rutua* and *Manchica*: The first part was a piece of flattery, to obtain the second, because the Lands of *Mongas* lie between *Sena* and the Mines, and it was necessary to make way with the Sword. He consented to all, and offered One hundred thousand Men; *Barreto* accepted not of them, because he would give him no share in the Honour gained in that War, and thinking thereby to oblige him the more.

3. He marched ten Days with Twenty three Horse, and Five hundred and sixty Musquetiers, (enduring much by Hunger and Thirst) for the most part along the River *Zambeze*, over whose most rapid stream hang pieces of the high Mountain *Lupata*, ninety Leagues distant from the *Ethiopian* Sea. At the end of this tedious march, they began to discover part of the Enemy, and soon after saw the Mountains and Valleys covered with Arm'd Men, the Governor was not daunted, seeing it was  
hard

hard to discover the end of that multitude, he drew up, and gave the Van to *Vasco Fernando Homem*, he had the Rear, and between the bodies was the baggage, and some Field pieces; when they came to charge, he removed the Canon to the Front and Flanks, the two unequal bodies advanced, the Enemy in the form of a half-Moon; before they engaged, an old Woman advanced and scattered some Powder towards our Men, having perswaded the Enemy (she was a notorious Witch) that that Powder alone would gain the Victory.

4. *Barreto* understanding the superstition, having seen the like in *India*, ordered a Gunner to level a Piece at her; which was so well performed, the old Woman was torn to pieces; the *Cafres* were astonished, believing her immortal. *Barreto* rewarded the Gunner with a Gold Chain; the Enemy advance without order, either through ignorance, or relying on their multitude, and clouds of Arrows and Darts begin to fly, but our Musquetiers killing them by Hundreds, they turned their backs, many were killed in the pursuit, and then our Men ordered to halt; the Governor marches to the City *Mongas*, and meets another multitude like the former, which in like manner was put to flight, above Six thousand *Cafres* were slain, and two of our Men, and the Governor was forced to alight and lead his Men; the City was entered without opposition, being abandoned, our Men entrench'd, and in the Morning discovered an Army as great  
as

as both the former; the *Cafres* were again routed, and beg'd peace in the King's name. The Governor received the Messenger with such Majesty, that he was astonished, and could not speak; being come to himself, and having delivered his Message, *Barreto* promised he would see the King, and matters should be adjusted.

5. The next Day our Men marched and incamped in a convenient place where Embassadors came from the King to treat of Peace. It happened one of our Camels broke loose and came so near the Governor, that he stoped him till they came up that were in pursuit of him; the *Cafres* having never seen such a Beast, admired it stoped at the Governor, thinking it some submission it made to him, and began to ask some questions. He making his advantage of their ignorance, told them, he had many of those Beasts that only fed upon Man's flesh, and having devoured all that were killed, that Beast came from the rest to desire he would not make Peace, because they would come to want Food; they astonished hereat, earnestly intreated him, he would desire the Camels to be satisfied with good Beef, and they would instantly bring them a great number. He granted their request, and marched on. He was in great distress for Provision when news came his presence was required at *Mozambique*. He gave the Command of the Forces to *Vasco*, and departed. The cause was this,



6. *Antony Pereyra Brandam*, who at the *Moluccos* had committed Crimes that deserved the severest punishment, in *Portugal* was condemned to banishment into *Africk*; he desired the Governor he might be permitted to go with him to *Monomotapa*; he did it, and being come to *Moçambique*, gave him the Command of that Fort. *Brandam*, though Eighty Years of Age, and under such obligations, resolved to secure himself in the Fort, and defame *Francis Barreto* with false informations sent to the King: the Original Papers fell into the Governor's Hands, who being come to *Moçambique*, showed them to him, and he falling down and kissing his Feet begg'd Pardon; *Barreto* lifted up and forgave him, then giving the Command of the Fort to *Laurence Godino*, returned to prosecute his design.

7. Our Governor being come to the Fort of *Sena*, *F. Monclaros* came out in a great rage to tell him, he should desist from that Conquest, with which he had imposed upon the King, that no more Men might be lost, for he should be answerable to God for what had, and should die. It was most certain, *Barreto* was not the promoter of that Conquest, and *Monclaros* was in fault for all the miscarriage that had been committed; *Barreto* took this insolence so much to Heart, that he died within two Days without any other Sickness, breathing out his Soul in sighs. Doubtless the Jesuit had more to answer for his death, than he, for the miscarriages the Jesuit was guilty of.

8. King *Sebastian* much resented this loss, and particularly expressed it by the honourable Reception he made to his Body when brought to *Lisbon*. So this great Man having escaped so many Bullets among the *Indians*, so many Darts and Arrows among the *Cafres*, and the Malice of a Villain, fell by the Words of a religious Man.

## C H A P. XVII.

*The Government of Vasco Fernandez Homem in Monomotapa, in the Reign of King Sebastian.*

1. **T**HE Governor *Francis Barreto* being dead, an order of the King's found among his Papers was opened, by which *Vasco Fernândeز Homem* his Major, was appointed to succeed him. The Perswasions of *F. Monclaros*, who now disliked the Conquest, so far prevailed with him, that forgetting his Duty he returned to *Moçambique*. There some understanding Persons, and chiefly *Francis Pinto Pimentel* his Kinsman, represented this Affair in such manner to him, that he returned to *Monomotapa*. Being now delivered of that religious Man, who went away to *Portugal*, he set out by the way of *Zofala*, as *Francis Barreto* would have done, that being the properest Road for the Design in hand: He marched directly towards  
the

the Mines of *Manchica* of the Kingdom *Chicanga*, bordering by the Inland with that of *Quiteyve*, the next in Power to *Monomotapa*. With him was the same number of Men, and sorts of Instruments his Predecessor had. To oblige the King of *Quiteyve*, he Complemented and sent him Presents, and tho' these are the most efficacious means to make all things easie, that Prince grew so jealous of these Solicitations, that he received all very coldly.

2. The Governor not making much account of his Answer, marched into his Kingdom. Several Bodies of *Cafres* attempted to stop his Passage, but were routed with great slaughter. The King seeing he did not prevail by force of Arms, had recourse to Policy. He caused all the People and Provisions to be withdrawn from the Towns and Country, so that our Men suffered extream want till they came to *Zimbaoe* his Court, whence he was fled, and had fortified himself in inaccessible Mountains. *Vasco* burnt the City, and marched on to *Chicanga*, the King whereof rather through fear than love, received him with exterior signs of Affection, and gave him free passage to the Mines. Our Men marched to them, many believing they should gather Gold by handfuls; but seeing the Natives with much difficulty gather'd but little in a long time, and not being expert at that work, and that to make any thing of it, more Men and Materials were requisite. they return'd the

Z 2

way

way they came, and parted Friends with that King.

3. Though they obtained not what was sought this way, yet the ease wherewith they came to the place designed, evinced how great an Error it was to impose *F. Monclaros* as Director to the late Governor, who, only to follow his own extravagant Humour, lead him a'way so dangerous and tedious. *Vasco* returned to *Quitave*, and that King did now for fear what he refused before, permitting the *Portugueses* to march to the Mines of *Maninnas*, only upon condition they should pay him Twenty Crowns yearly. *Vasco* passed thence to the Kingdom of *Chicova*, bordering upon *Monomotapa* to the Norward along the Inland. The cause of undertaking this March was, the Account he had of rich Silver Mines. Having encamped, he ask the *Cafres* for the Mines, and they seeing it was in vain to resist, and fearing the discovery of the Mines would be their Ruine, scattering some Ore far enough from the Mines, shewed it, telling them, there they were.

4. By this means the *Cafres* got time to escape; for our Men giving credit to them let them go, perhaps not desiring they should see what Treasure they got. The Governor caused all round about to be dug, and after much labour it was no wonder he did not find what was not there. Provision growing scarce, and finding no Fruit of his Labour, he marched away, leaving Captain *Antony Cardoso de Almeida* with Two hundred



dred Men, and Necessaries to continue there some Days, to examine into the Truth of that so much coveted Corner of the Earth.

5. *Vasco* being gone, *Cardoso* suffered himself to be again deceived by the *Cafres*, who had before imposed upon him. They offered, since he could not find a Vein there, they would show him a place where he might; and leading him the way of Death rather than that of the Mines, killed him and all his Men, after they had defended themselves with incredible Bravery. This may convince those who affirm, numbers of *Cafres* would fly from a Gun, as not having before seen them, since here Two hundred Men fighting with them for their lives, were all slain by their Darts and Arrows.

6. This was the end of that Government, scarce begun sooner than ended, and possessed by two Governors, who no sooner saw, but they lost it. The first killed by rash words, the second expelled by a prudent, not barbarous, Stratagem. However the Peace and Trade with the Emperor of *Monomotapa* continued. These Actions of *Francis Barreto* and *Vasco Fernandez Homem*, were in the time of the Government of *D. Luis de Ataide*, *D. Antony de Noronna*, and *Antony Moniz Barreto*; but we could never exactly find when the first died, and the last desisted.

## C H A P. XVIII.

*Of the Viceroy Ruy Lorenzo de Tavora, and the Government of D. James de Meneses, from the Year 1576 till 1578, in the Reign of King Sebastian.*

1575. 1. **I**N the beginning of this Year sailed from *Lisbon Ruy Lorenzo de Tavora*, to succeed *Antony Moniz Barreto*, with the Title of Viceroy of *India*, and four Ships: He died at *Moçambique*, and was the first that came short, being appointed for that Government. The Ships arriving at *Goa*, the Royal Patents of Succession were opened, and *D. James de Meneses* there present was the Person named in the first. So he was rather Successor to *Antony Moniz*, than *Ruy Lorenzo*. However, since he was designed for it, we will reckon *Tavora* the Twelfth of the Viceroy's, and Twenty-seventh of Governors, and First of the Name and Sirname.

2. *D. James de Meneses* having held this Command near two Years, there is no doubt but there happened more remarkable Passages than I heer relate, but I could find no more, having used all possible endeavours to get some farther Memoirs of his Time. Certain it is there are some, but our *Portugues* Gentlemen, though they make no use of, keep them as close as Misers do their Treas-

Treasure. The little I could gather is thus :

3. As soon as D. *James* took upon him the Government, he fitted out several Squadrons for the usual purposes. At that time some Captains were upon the Northern Coast upon their own account, as D. *Hierome Mascarennas*, D. *James* and D. *Antony de Silveyra* Brothers, and *Francis Pessoa*. They anker'd in the River of *Dabul*, that City being then at Peace with us, and were received by the *Tanadar Melique Tocan* with feigned kindness. He proffered to furnish them with what they wanted, and invited them home to dine with him, having Men ready to murder them in the height of their Merriment. All things succeeded as he desired, for they put themselves into his Power unarmed, except *Mascarennas*, who forboding some Treachery stayed in the River. Those that accepted the invitation were killed, except a few who fled to the Shore, and the Murderers after them had like to have entred *Mascarennas* his Vessel, but that he and those few that were with him laying hold of Arms repulsed the bloody Assassins. *Mascarennas* carried the news of this Disaster to *Goa*.

5. Towards the end of this Year arrived the Ships that sailed from *Lisbon* the beginning of it ; they were six in number, two set out first under *Matthias de Albuquerque*, appointed to Command at *Malaca*, and four after.

1577.

5. As soon as the Governor was informed by D. *Hierome de Mascarennas* of the Villainy committed by the *Tanadar* of *Dabul*, he dispatched D. *Peter de Meneses* with a small Squadron to Revenge that wrong, ordering him to lay wait for the Ships of *Meca*, and do all the Mischief he could on the Coast subject to *Hidalcan*. *Meneses* met two great Ships of *Meca*, and after a sharp dispute forced them a Shoar, where the Sea running high they beat to pieces. This was the posture of Affairs when in *August* arrived D. *Luis de Ataide Count de Atougna*, to take upon him that Government the second time, which D. *James de Meneses* then quitted, having been the Twenty-eighth Governor, the Second of the Name, and Third of the *Sirnan e*.

---



C H A P. XIX.

*The Count D. Luis de Ataide is the Second time Viceroy of India ; he set out in the Year 1577, and Governs till 1581, and is the last sent out by King Sebastian.*

1. **W**HEN King *Sebastian* had resolved (though he designed better) to bury the Glory of his Kingdom in the Sands of *Africk*, he appointed *D. Luis de Ataide* Count de *Atouguia*, General of his Forces : But soon after, not able to conform his Youthful Heat to the prudent Circumspection of the Count, that he might have a plausible Colour for removing him, he again constituted him Viceroy of *India*, pretending there was need of such a Man there ; as if he had not much more need of his Conduct himself.

2. The Count well understood the drift of this Change, but not willing to disgust the King, took no notice of it. He desired to have along with him *Nunno Vello Pereyra*, a Man more Expert than Fortunate in Military and Sea Affairs, as will appear hereafter, and *John Alvarez Suarez*, a Man versed in the Revenue, and who had given good Proof of his Courage, as was related in the Siege of *Chaul*. *D. Luis* had a prosperous Voyage, and was received at *Goa* with great Joy.

3. His

3. His arrival at *Goa* was about the end of *August*: The first thing he did after receiving the Sword, was the spreading the News that King *Sebastian* would infallibly that Year go over into *Africk*, where he was already killed when this was given out. The Viceroy foreseeing that disaster, and the ill Consequences might arise from it, fitted out such a mighty Fleet, as struck a Terror into all the neighbouring Princes, who measure their own safety by our Power. The design of this Fleet he never revealed to any Man.

4. Amidst these greater Cares he forgot not the less, but sent Supplies to D. *Peter de Meneses* to enable him to act the more vigorously against *Melique* the Tanadar of *Dabul*. The Viceroy in Person carried on the War against *Hidalcán* along the River of *Goa*, whether his Dominions extended; and he no longer able to endure it, proposed a Peace, promising the Traytor *Melique* should be for ever banished *Dabul*, and all his Dominions. The Peace was concluded, and our Forces withdrew. At that time arrived at *Goa* three Ships from *Portugal*, and were the last sent by King *Sebastian*. When these came to *India*, two Caravels set out from *Lisbon* with the News of the King's Death, one bound for *Goa*, the other for *Malaca*.

5. *Henry* the Cardinal succeeded in the Throne, and from amidst those Ruines dispatched five Ships for *India*, fearing lest the loss of King *Sebastian* being known, new Troubles

Troubles might arise, if those Dominions were not timely supplied.

5. The Viceroy understanding that *Melique Tocan*, contrary to the Articles of the Peace concluded the Year before, continued at *Dabul* publicly exercising his Office, and was ready to Launch a great Ship to Trade to *Meca*, he resolved to show how much he resented that wrong, and to that purpose sent thither *D. Paul de Lima Pereyra* with ten Sail.

7. *D. Paul* coming to the Mouth of the River found all the Shore fortified, and a great number of Cannon planted in all convenient Places: He forces his way in through all the Batteries, and sees Six thousand Horse, and great number of Foot covering the Shore, and pouring showers of Bullets and Arrows upon him; nevertheless he attempts to burn two Ships belonging to *Hidakan*, but finding it impossible to come at them for the number of the Enemy's Cannon, he runs up the River, and spent some days in burning all the Towns along the Coast.

8. The Enemy calls in to their Aid *Cartale* and *Mandaviray*, two *Malabar* Pyrats who were in the Sea of *Chaul* with five Gallies: To these *Melique* joins other five Sail he had ready with Five hundred *Turks*, *Persians*, and other resolute Men. The Shore was cover'd with People that came to see this Action. *D. Paul* prepared to receive them, and after the Discharge of the Cannon they came up board and board, and hand to hand.

9. *D. Paul*

9. *D. Paul* boarded the first Galliot, they were ten to ten, though the Enemy had the advantage of the bigness of the Vessels and number of Men; but our Captains following the Example of their Admiral, behaved themselves so bravely, that only one of the Enemy's Galliot's escaped, the rest were all taken. We lost but two or three Men in this Action, which was as fortunate as any we perform'd in *Asia*.

10. Having taken this Revenge of *Melique* for his Crime, and of *Hidalcan* for winking at it, *D. Paul* sailed out of the River through the same Dangers he came in, losing one Man. Being come to *Goa* with Nineteen Sail, whereas he went thence with only Ten; the Viceroy came out to receive him, and in the hearing of all that were present, said, *What is it you mean, D. Paul, will you with such Acts of Bravery provoke my Envy to poison you?* Thus Heroes praise great Men, and at the same time upbraid those who enviously Rail at noble Actions.

11. The Emperor of *Ceylon* had some time since by his Ambassadors desired King *John III.* to send him some Religious Men of the Order of *St. Francis*, to instruct him in the Christian Religion: They being come to him he recanted. *F. John de Villa de Conde* was this Year at his Court, and had several times confuted the *Bramenes* disputing of Religion. Yet they refusing to yield themselves overcome, he offer'd with a lively Faith, that he and one of them should be cast into a River full of great Crocodiles, or  
into



into a great Fire, and that his Religion, who came out unhurt, should be allowed to be the true. They refused, and the *Franciscan* immediately reaped the Fruit of this Victory, baptising *D. John Parea Pandar* King of *Cota*, in the same Island.

12. The Kingdom of *Angola* is near *Monomotapa*, whereof we lately spoke, and therefore will relate what happened there this Year, because it is a remarkable Passage. *Paul Diaz* undertook to War with that King, who had treacherously kill'd a number of our Men: This Captain with only two Gallies did Wonders on the Banks of the River *Congo*, till he fortified himself in an Island formed by this and the River *Lucula*. Then joining the King of *Congo* and other Princes with only 150 *Portugueses* he several times defeated the Enemy. But the most remarkable is the Battle wherein that King had a Million of Men, which were put to flight in such Confusion they kill'd one another.

13. At the beginning of this Year, when the Ships sailed for *India*, our Kingdom, by the Death of the old Cardinal, King *Henry*, was under the Direction of five Governors, who dispatched them. They were four, whereof one was forc'd back to *Lisbon*, the last sent under a *Portugues* Government, and the last our Viceroy saw: For he having done no more than what is related, or if he did, having left no memory of it, died the beginning of the Year, having in some manner foretold it. For some time before leave being asked of him to bury his Cousin *Antony Botello*

*Botello* by his Brother *D. John de Ataide*, he refused it, saying, *He had long since designed that place for himself.*

14. At the end of his first Government something was said of his Qualities and Merit, and I have referred it to this place to speak of his undaunted Courage, as a virtue most peculiar to him. Some Proof of it has been given in the former Part of his Life, I will now give another Instance. At the attack (as I think) of *Onor* he sailed in a *Brigantine*, sitting on a Chair, and a famous Musician by him playing upon a Harp. The Enemy's Cannon from the Fort reached the Vessels, and grated the Musicians Ear; *D. Luis*, who was pleased to hear the Musick, seeing him give over, as if he had not seen the Cause, asked him, why he left off; the Musician told him; and he stretching out his hand, said, *I pray let nothing disturb thee, go on with that Tune, for it is a very good one.*

15. One of the Gentlemen that were standing behind him, seeing this was too great a Contempt of Danger, said, *Tell that Man, if he happens to be killed, all will be lost:* And another answer'd, *Do not tell him so; for if he be killed, here are Men enough fit to succeed him.*

16. *D. Luis* this second time govern'd the Term of two Years and seven Months, and may be reckoned in the number of Viceroy's the Thirteenth, in that of Governors the Twenty-ninth; the First of the Name and Surname.

## C H A P. XX.

*The Government of Ferdinand Tellez de Meneses, who was named by the Governors of Portugal, upon the Decease of the Cardinal King Henry, in the Year 1581.*

1. **T**H E Ships dispatched by the Governors of *Portugal* the last Year, carried new Patents of Succession. In the first was named *Ferdinand Tellez de Meneses*. The Bishop of *Malaca*, *D. John Ribeyro Gayo*, was President at this Ceremony, which was celebrated with such Demonstrations of Joy, as if there had been no Memory of their fresh Subjects of Tears.

2. Whilst the Affairs of *Portugal* were in this miserable Condition, those in the Kingdom of *Visapor* were no better, the Succession being uncertain upon the decease of *Hidalcán*, who died without Heirs in the 23d Year of his Reign, and 50th of his Age. He studied less to have Wives to get Children, than young Men instead of Wives. A Youth of 18 Years of Age, who had more Honour than to consent to such Baseness, killed him as he was endeavouring to allure him to his brutal Appetite. *Abraham*, Son of *Xatamas*, one of two Brothers not long before slain by him, succeeded in the Throne. *Quisbalechan*, a powerful Man, conspiring with

with others, enters *Visapor* with Forces, and seizes that Prince. Not long after the *Ethiopians* (who are the Guard of those Princes) did the same under three Heads, chose by themselves to this purpose, who were *Acalachan*, *Armichan*, and *Delarnachan*. This last secures the other two, and takes all the Power into his own hands. Our Governor kept a watchful Eye over all these Proceedings, knowing the Happiness of our Affairs, depended much upon the Event of those.

3. At this time were brought to *India* new Instructions from the Governors of *Portugal*, and *Philip* the Second then sworn King, and First of the Name there. The Governor was order'd to tender the Oath there. *Ferdinand Tellez* performed the Ceremony with great Solemnity in the Church of *Goa* on the third of *September*.

4. The Captains then commanding our Forts there were at *Goa*, *D. Tristan de Meneses*; at *Zofala* and *Moçambique*, *D. Peter de Castro*; at *Ormuz*, *D. Gonzalo de Meneses*; at *Daman*, *Martin Alfonso de Melo*; at *Baqaim*, *D. Emanuel de Almada*; at *Chaul*, *D. Ferdinand de Castro*; at *Cananor*, *George Toscano*; at *Cochim*, *D. George de Meneses Baroche*; at *Columbo*, *Emanuel de Sousa Continno*; at *Tidore*, *James de Azambuja*; and at *Malaca* *D. John de Gama*.

5. The Governor understanding that four Galliot of *Malabar* Pyrats were harboured in some of the Rivers about *Goa*, immediately



ately sent *Matbias de Albuquerque* with ten small Merchant Ships that were the readiest at hand, after them. He found them in the River *Carapatan*; three of our Vessels that were foremost falling violently upon them, forced the *Malabars* to leap into the Water, and by that time *Albuquerque* came up, each of them had taken one.

6. There were at *Mazulapatan* two Ships of the bigness of ours that Trade to *India*; one belonging to the King of *Achem*, loaded with Ammunition, design'd, as was believed, against *Malaca*, the other to the King of *Pegu* richly loaden. The Governor sent *Gonçalo Vaz de Camoens* with four Ships to seize upon them: The first of the two had notice of it, and went off, and *Gonçalo Vaz* being informed of the great Force of the other, by the consent of his Men left that Design, and went over to the Coast of *Pegu*, where the *Malabar* Pyrats took one of his Ships Commanded by *Francis Serram*, and a Galliot of *Ferdinand de Lima*. They came to the Mouth of the River *Negraes*, just at such time as the Ship they feared to Encounter at *Mazulapatan* was entring. They could not in Honour avoid engaging her, though they were but two Galliot: After a desperate Fight, which lasted almost two days, the Ship was sunk, our Men having first rifled her with such covetousness, that our Vessels had sunk, had not the Captain thrown many of the Goods over-board.

7. The Galliot's setting out again, were for some time carried about by the Weather, it being the beginning of Winter, till about the place where they sunk the Ship, they discover'd the Prince of *Pegu* with a Fleet of 1300 Sail, design'd for the Conquest of the Kingdom of *Arracam*. The Prince desired to meet with these Galliot's, having advice they were thereabouts, and that his Father would be as much pleased with taking of them, as the Conquest of that Kingdom. Sixteen of the best Sailers advancing, began to play their Cannon, and were as well answer'd, till they came to Board. After a sharp Engagement, three of the Enemy's Ships were disabled, some entred, many Prisoners and 18 Pieces of Cannon taken; then our Men seeing all that Multitude was coming upon them, making all the Sail they could and plying their Oars, got into the Port of *Arracam*. The King rejoycing for the share he had in this Success, and well pleased that *Gonçalo Vaz* made him a present of some of his Subjects taken in the great Ships, gave liberty to some *Portugueses* he had long kept in Prison.

8. About this time three Turkish Gallies set out of the Port at *Moca*, sent by the Bassa *Mirazenam* to plunder *Mascate*, having Intelligence from *Moors* living there; that the Town was Rich, and unprovided of Defence. *Alibec*, a Turk, used to Robbing, undertook this Design. *Mirazenam* was born at *Otranto* of Christian Parents, and was Governor

governor of all that Part of *Arabia Felix* and *Pe-  
tra*, which the Natives call *Ayaman*, he resided  
in the City *Cana*, the Center of *Arabia Felix*.  
60 Leagues North of *Moca*, and as many from  
*Xael*. *Cana* is built upon a Hill, encompass-  
ed with a good Wall, and thought to be  
the Foundation of *Cham* the Son of *Noah*,  
and to have been the Court of the famous  
Queen of *Saba*. The Province is most fruit-  
ful, called by the Ancients, *Siria Mumifera*,  
because it produces Frankincense, Myrrh, and  
Storax.

9. *Alibec* being before *Mascate*, landed  
his Men, ordering those that remained in  
the Gallies to enter the Port, and as soon as  
they were in to play their Cannon furiously,  
that so the Inhabitants being imployed on  
that side, he might come in upon their Backs.  
It succeeded as he desired; for most Men  
saved themselves by flight, but few their  
Goods, and he in an instant entred and  
plundered the Town. *James Machado* going  
out to bury some Treasure, was killed, and  
himself and Money deprived of Burial.

10. Let us in some manner describe the  
Situation of this Town: Extend the right  
Hand with the Palm of It down, stretch out  
the Thumb from the fore-finger, and sepa-  
rate that from the middle Finger, keep  
that close to the other two. The space be-  
tween the middle and fore-fingers, is a Bay  
called *Seabo*, running up as the hand repre-  
sents. The distance between the Thumb  
and Fore-finger is another Bay, not so deep,  
along the Shore whereof the Town is built,

shut in by two Mountains; one rises at the point of *Seabo* next that part where the three Fingers are together, it has only one Path that leads to *Mascate* so narrow, that two Men cannot pass it a-breast. This way *Alibec* come into the Town, no Body imagining he would attempt it, for four Men with one Cannon might maintain it against the Universe.

11. Let us not deny any Man the Honour that is due to him: They that fled from *Mascate* to *Mataro*, a Town a League distant, not thinking themselves safe there went to *Bruxel*, a Fort four Leagues up the Inland, belonging to *Catani*, Head of a Hord of *Arabs*. This place at that time was commanded by an Officer of his, a Man so Just and Honourable, that hearing the Misfortune of those People who came to him for Refuge, (for in great Dangers the lesser is a Refuge) he went out to receive, comfort, and entertain them. This was much, but what follows is more; His Men seeing the *Portugueses* come loaded with Riches, advised him to make use of that Opportunity, and not show too much Weakness or Pity. And he fearing, lest Covetousness should make them Disobedient, laboured with soft Expressions and sweet Words, to dissuade them from their wicked Design.

12. They all submitted themselves to their Officer's Reasons, and, with kind Usage, much comforted the Disconsolate *Portugueses*, who continued there till *Alibec* being gone, they returned to *Mascate*, always



ways relating and admiring how honourably that Moor treated them, without suffering the least wrong to be offered to their Persons or Goods.

13. The News of the Ruine of *Mascate* being brought to *Ormuz*, The Commander, *D. Gonçalo de Meneses* caused the Gallies to be closely watched, and Ships to be fitted out immediately to follow them. He made *Luis de Almeyda* Commander in chief, giving him a Galleon, a Galley, and six other vessels, with Four hundred good Men. But he not observing the Orders of *Meneses* that were to follow the Galleys, fell into the Coast of the *Naytaques*, where they intended to Surprize the beautiful and rich City *Pesani*. But *Francis Machado* having given the Alarm, by falling upon some People that were passing in two Boats, the Inhabitants all fled.

14. They plundered the City without Honour or Danger, and after burnt it and near Fifty Sail that were in the Bay. The very same Fate attended the City *Guadel*, not inferior to *Pesani*, and that of *Ten* of the *Abindos*, a barbarous and fierce Nation, the last of *Gedrosia*, on the Banks of the River *Calamen*, the People of it join with the *Naytaques* in their Piracies.

15. All these Things were begun, though not absolutely transacted, when *D. Francis de Mascarennas* arrived in *India* with the Title of Viceroy, being the first sent by our first King *Philip*, who was second of

*Spain.* Ferdinand Tellez left the Government in a peaceable Condition, and the Sea of *Goa* well furnished with good Ships. He was the last Governor appointed by the *Portugues* Authority, in Number the Thirtieth, held it Six Months, the First of the Name, and Fourth of the Surname.

*The End of the Third Part.*

---

THE

---

T H E

P O R T U G U E S

A S I A.

---

T O M . I I . P A R T I V .

---

C H A P . I .

*Of the Gods, Surpestitutions and Opinions of the Asiaticks, particularly the Indians, and among them the Malabars.*

I. **I** Have purposely omitted giving so particular an Account and Description of the People and Countries mentioned in this History, as will be expected from me, to avoid interrupting the series of Affairs, and connexion of Matter, reserving it still for a more proper place. The grand Revolution of the Kingdom of Portugal now brought under a foreign Prince, puts a Period to the Proceedings of our own, that we may begin again with what

was transacted under our new Sovereigns. Here then it will not be amiss to give the Curious the Satisfaction of some further Information touching the *Indians*, *Ethiopians*, *Chineses* and *Japans*, but still with my usual brevity, dividing among them this Fourth Part of this Second Volume. As *Asia* is divided into several Empires, so it is inhabited by many very different sorts of People, and each People distinguished by very opposite Customs. Yet those that are of one Belief, agree in the essential Part, though they differ in Form. It is so in *India*, as well as any other considerable Portion of the World, and therefore the *Malabars*, one of the Nations thereof, may inform us of the Religion and Government of all the rest.

2. As to the Frame of the World, they believe it had a beginning, and will have an end ; but then begin again, and in that manner will be everlasting ; that all things after having encreased, diminish ; that in the beginning as One thousand and Animals were produced One thousand died, but now for One thousand produced One thousand and one die ; that the reason why more die is, because the heat of the Sun increases ; that in the end, a violent Wind shall dissolve all things ; that nothing shall then remain but the Deity *Txoreta*, as in the first *Chaos* ; that he shall be reduced to the bigness of an Egg, and this to the quantity of a Dew drop, scarce discernable ; that after it has sounded like a Cricket, it shall increase by the same measure it diminished, and shall produce within it



it self the five Elements, (for they reckon the Heaven the fifth) that their increasing shall burst the Egg in the middle; that there shall appear in it seven shels put together like an Onion; that the Egg being divided into two unequal parts, the biggest will be the Heavens, and the lesser the Earth; that the Gods were and shall be so formed again.

The Egg being open, the Deity will be placed in the upper part, on the Earth will appear a Mountain of Silver, on the top whereof will be seen the instruments of Generation (which they call the true *Ixoreta* or Deity, the true God and *Causa Causarum*) because all things in the World proceed from the Union of the instruments of Generation; therefore they particularly adore the noblest, that it is the Male, and place its Image in their Pagods, and on their ways. This they feign to have three Rines, from which proceed the three Gods, *Bramá*, *Vishnú*, and *Givem*, or *Ixora*.

4. Of the superior and inferior productions, this is their Opinion. *Ixora* with this instrument of Generation, which was of a prodigious bigness, plowed up the Earth for the space of Seven hundred thousand loxennas, each of these when greatest, is four Leagues, and when least a League and a halfe; from the Furrows sprung seven Seas and seven Lands, the ridges were the Mountains, the furrows, the Vales and Waters. Then from *Ixoras* back came the Woman called *Cbati*, (this has some resemblance with *Eve's* being made of *Adams* Rib,) and was

was separated from it by virtue of some words, and they resolved to have copulation. The length of the Generating Instrument ( called *Linga* ) wherewith *Ixora* had plowed the Ground hindred ; he cut it into eighteen pieces, whereof were made the Weapons they use, as the Spear, Sword, Bow, and Buckler. Then *Ixora* with his Finger opened the way of Generation in *Chati*, which shed much Blood ; he received it in his Hands, and throwing it up into the Air, suddenly of it were produced, the Sun, Moon, Stars, Roses, Flowers, Sweet-herbs, and Snakes, which they use in their Ceremonies, both being then fit for Copulation, by them the World was Peopled, the Beasts and Devils produced, and Heaven filled with Spirits, which they say are Thirty three Millions.

5. The Heaven is fixt upon the Earth, not the Earth, the Center of it. The Sun and Moon move like the Fish in the Water, by Day from East to West, by Night they run about the Northward, not under the Earth, but along the edge of the Horrizon ; they doubt whether the Earth be supported upon a Bulls-horns, or upon the Snake called *Ananta* ; their Paradize is in some Mountain. The Snake *Bassagui* fighting with the Wind, would not let it pass, but *Ixora* commanding her to give it way, the Wind flying the more impetuous for having been detained, tore up a Mountain, which falling into the Sea, formed the Island *Ceylon*. Other Islands are encompassed with Seas they call of Sugar, Milk, Butter, and Sweet-Water. Happy the Sailors

Sailers that could find such pleasant Seas.

6. The Bases or Grounds of the Elements are of several matters, that of the Earth of Copper; that of the Water of Silver; that of the Fire of Gold; that of the Air of a Precious Stone; that of Heaven of another Stone of more value: They are Gods and move, on the first waits the Bird *Anam*; on the second *Guereram*, on the third a Cart; on the fourth an Ox; on the fifth a Horse.

7. There are seven large Subterranean dwellings, called *Padalas*, where live People who have no other light but that of certain bright Stones, which Snakes have in their Foreheads. One Day of ours is a Year in Heaven, and one of our Years, Three hundred and sixty five there. The Days of the Week (as among us) take their names from the Planets, and one of them is a Festival. They believe the transmigration of Souls.

8. The God *Givem*, or *Ixora*, is of the colour of Milk; besides the usual two, he has one Eye in the Forehead, which being of Fire, consumes all things; his Body of such a length, that *Brama*, though he endeavoured it, could never find the beginning or end of it. The other Brother *Vistnu*, who is God of the Transmutations, converted himself into a Hog, and turned up the Earth with his snout, but could never find his Feet. He is so thick that the Snake that girts the World, cannot encompass one of his Arms, he has Sixteen Hands, all employed with Deer, Chairs, a Guitar, a Bell, a Bason, a Trident, a Rope, a Hook, an Ax, Fire, a Drum,

Drum, Beads, a Staff, a Wheel, a Snake; on his Forehead, a horned Moon; his Apparel skins of Beasts, laid down with Snakes; he has two Wives, the Goddess of the Water, and *Chati*, who has already dyed One and twenty times; and because every time she dies, he puts one of her Bones upon his Neck, he now wears One and twenty Bones there. Having shared his Body with his Wife, and she hers with him, he is halfe Man halfe Woman; his care is to finish all things, *Brama* to Create, and *Vishnu*'s to govern them.

9. The God *Ixora* lives in *Calaya*, a most delicious Mountain for Woods, Gardens, Fountains, Birds and Nymphs, among them there is nothing but Harmony. The desert parts of it are inhabited by *Rixis*, *Hermits*, much esteemed for sanctity, in a private and most pretious Tabernacle, is the Silver Rose with two Muscal white Nymphs, and among them the *Linga*, or Eternal God, placed on a Lion of inestimable value, and invisible.

10. *Brama* and *Vishnu* envying *Ixora*'s greatness, set themselves against him; he said if they could find his beginning or end, they should be his Superiors. *Vishnu* looked for his Feet and *Brama* and for his Head; the first was deterred by a Snake, the second dissuaded by Roses; he brib'd them to testifie he had seen his Head, which they did. *Vishnu* sensible of the fraud, turn'd them into Beasts, and cut off one of his Heads, of his Blood sprang a Man with Five hundred Heads, and One thousand Hands. *Ixora* did penance for this crime, and travelling, came to



to a place where they threw several Beasts at him, he caught, fhead them, and cloathed himself with their Skins; being overpowered, *Vistnn* came to his Aid in the shape of a beautiful Maid, and his Enemies were astonished at her form: *Ixora* having to do with her, a Son was born, *Ixora* and *Vistnn* differed about whom it should belong too, and a Heavenly Spirit reconciled them, taking it to himself. He bred him an expert Archer, and kept him as his guard against *Sagatrascavarem*, the Giant of Five hundred Heads, and One thousand Hands, sprung from *Bramas* Head, cut off by *Ixora*. This pilgrimage of *Ixora* gave the Original to the Pilgrims, called *Jogues*, who wander about living upon Charity, wearing Periwigs, and strewed with Ashes.

11. *Ixora* has four Children, the first has the Face of an Elephant; the second of a Monkey; the third is *Superbenia*, with six Faces and twelve Arms; the fourth a young Woman called *Patricali*. The father and his Wife *Chati* converted into Elephants, begot a Son with an Elephant's Head and four Arms, he is wonderful big, and rides on a Mouse. The first fruits of all that is sowed are offered to him.

12. The *Bramones* who are the Masters of their Ceremonies, abstain from Fish, Flesh, Eggs, and Wine, of other things they Eat and Drink without measure, they celebrate the Aniversaries of their Dead with great Banquets; they are so much afraid of the Moon on the fourth Day after the full, that they

they shun seeing even the reflection of her in the Water.

13. *Chati* washing her self in the time of her courses, produced a Man. Her Husband cut of his Head, which rowling to the foot of his Mountain *Calaya*, brought forth the Tree on which grow the Coco's, which therefore have the resemblance of Eyes, Nose and Mouth. But the Wife complaining *Ixora* cut of an Elephants Head and put it to the Body, which remained Man and Elephant. Then both converting themselves into Monkeys, begot one, but she ashamed to bring it forth, desired the Wind to translate it to another Womb, and it was removed to that of the Wife of the Heavenly Spirits. She was delivered of, and *Ixora* gave him great power, calling him *Anuman*. This is the Reason the *Indians* adore Monkeys.

14. *Patricali Ixora's* Daughter is black, she has eight Faces, and sixteen Arms, great round Eyes, Hogs Teeth, two Elephants for pendants, she is cloathed with Snakes, her Hair like the Peacocks Tails, has several things in her hands, particularly Arms, the Devil *Medala* waits on her; she seeing her Father could not overcome the Giant *Daridabaxada*, Conquered him by Policy. *Ixora* to deliver her from Enemies, sent her to live invisible among Men. At Sea she overcame some Fishermen, and landed at *Conlam*, and married the Prince of *Conless*, who being falsely accused of stealing the Queen of *Pande's* Bracelets, was impaled.

*Patricali*

*Petracali* brought him to Life, caused Sacrifice to be offered to him, and thus freed from the bands of wedlock, remained a Virgin.

15. *Ixora* in a passion threw his Wig on the ground, which became an Armed fierce Man, who cut off the Head of *Lecxaprazava* King of the *Peringales*, and the Hand of the God of Fire, and the Sun's Teeth. *Ixora* put on a Goats-head upon *Lecxaprazava's* Shouldiers instead of his own.

## C H A P. II.

*The Metamorphoses or, Transformations.*

1. **T**H E God *Vishnu* is black, he has four Hands, and always lies sleeping on his back in the Sea of Milk; yet so he governs the whole World; his Bed is the Snake *Ananta*, which has five Heads; on four he lays his Hands, on the other his Head; the Snake asked him, in case she had more Heads, what he would lay on them. Then One thousand Heads sprung out from her, and as many Hands from him to lay on them. He has two Wives, *Lacxemi* and *Pumedevi*, the first scratches his Head, the other his Feet.

2. *Vishnu* was born or transformed nine times, into a Fish, a Tortoise, a Hog, half-

a Man, half a Lion, a Bramen, *Siriparexi Rama*, *Siri Rama*, *Belapader*, and *Siri Cbristna*, and is to be born the Tenth time. In the first shape he overcame *Breniackem* in the bottom of the Sea, taking from him the Law he had stole from the heavenly Spirits. In the second he reconciled the Difference between the celestial and infernal Spirits, about parting the Ambrosia from Poison, and giving this to the latter, and that to the former. With Ambrosia he cured King *Devaindra*, who being Cursed by *Rizi* for lying with his Wife, was cover'd all over with Privy-Members, which were converted into Eyes.

3. The Sea is salt, because the great *Raxi Agossia* having drunk it all up, at the request of *Vistnu* pissed it out. That there might be no Thieves in the World, he appointed Guards; these were *Indra*, King of the higher Spirits; *Vani*, God of Fire; *Pidarpasi*, King of the Devils; *Varuna*, God of the Water; *Maril*, God of the Wind; *Cabera*, God of Riches, and other Persons of Note. The *Malabars*, in their Poems, make a Jest of this, because they are all Theives.

4. *Maveli*, Lord of the World, kept Mankind in such plenty, that none remembered God. *Vistnu* in one of his Changes remedied this, and then from the Water which washed one of his Feet came the River *Ganga*, which therefore is the Purgatory of such as when they die are washed therein. *Venu* endeavouring to hinder the Reformation of Mankind, lost an Eye.

5. The



5. The *Bramenes* are the Masters of the *Indian* Religion, and proceed from Fishermen; because the *Malabar* Churches were delivered to Fishermen, upon condition they should always wear some mark of their Trade. This is the cause they wear about their Necks some threads of their Nets. This is the Original of those Threads they wear, never before mentioned by another Writer.

6. *Vishnu* turned himself into *Siri Rama*, and his Snake *Ananta*, *Chocra* and *Buzio* into Men. *Siri Rama* killed *Tarbega* Wife to *Rajada*, that was a Man-eater, and had the Face of a Lioness, and wore two Elephants as Pendants, her Cloathing Snakes, her Weapon a Trident; she lived in a Mountain of Bones of the People she had eaten. *Siri* married the Daughter of King *Genega*, and went to do Penance for killing *Tarbega*. His Wife went with him, and he obtained of *Rixi Anisoya*, that he should be always Victorious, and his Wife appear Beautiful to him. They went to *Ceylon*, where *Churpanaga* Sister to *Ravena* King of that Island being a Widow, asked *Siri Rama* to get her a Husband, he bid her chuse among the Heavenly Gods, and she liked none of them, but *Lacxena* Brother to *Siri Rama*, who despised and cut off one of her Breasts, of the Blood whereof sprung the Leeches.

7. Her Brother *Ravena* for Revenge stole *Siri Rama's* Wife *Sida*. The manner of looking for, finding, and recovering her is so tedious, preposterous, and foolish, as

well as the foregoing part, it is not worth the strickest Curiosity to read it. What follows is little better, but something of this monstrous Medley is fit to be related, to show the prodigious stupidity of these Opinions.

8. *Siri Rama* having found his Wife, and seeing she was very Beautiful said she had wronged him, and lain with his Enemy. He threatned to kill her, and she offered to Purge her self by Fire; and kindled one so fierce, the heavenly Spirits could not endure it, she stripped her self naked, and walked seven times round it, then turning to the East, said, *When Ravena stole and would have taken me by the hand, I doubt whether his Shadow touched me. Afterwards in the Island Ceylon setting me under the Tree Axogani, he fell at my feet to overcome me, and I doubt whether the Crown he had on his head touched them. There was nothing more that I know of between me and him.* Then she threw her self into the Fire, and could not be seen for some time; then the God of Fire came out, and bidding *Siri Rama* hold out his Hands, dropt *Sida* upon them, assuring him her Honour was unstained.

9. This done, *Siri Rama* placed *Bixim* on the Throne of *Ceylon*, and went himself to possess that of *Aioddia*, after he had spent Fourteen Years in these Affairs. The Princes, People, Celestial Spirits, and Dancing Women received him. The Queens prevailed with *Sida* to show them the Figure of *Ravena*, she drew him with Chalk on a Board,

Board, which shook as *Siri Rama* fate on it; not knowing his Enemy's Picture was thereon. The Queens told him, *Sida* had painted him, and he again jealous, though she was with Child, ordered *Leexena* to carry her to a Mountain, and there kill her. He carried, but left her there alive. She was delivered of two Sons very like *Siri Rama*, who seeing them, and knowing she was not dead was satisfied. He went to fetch her, but could not; for *Pumi* Goddess of the Earth opened it and swallowed her up. His Sons succeeded him in the Crown of *Ajda*.

---

### CHAP. III.

*Other Metamorphoses, and the Consequences of them, of the God Brama, and the Foundation of Pagods; an Account of the famousst of them.*

I. **V**isnu turned himself into his younger Brother *Siri Christna*, who was born very beautiful. At the hour of his Birth the Palace was filled with Brightness, though it was Mid-night; the Doors flew open, and the Fetters fell off that held *Bassudever*. He arose and took the Child to carry it to *Amparbi*, and by the way the Waters of two Rivers divided themselves, that he might pass dry. *Camusem* consulting Diviners a-

bout the Birth of this Child, which was the first Quarter of the Moon, on a Thursday in *August*, the Sun being in *Leo*, and the Moon in *Taurus*, in the time of *Minabizum*, they answer'd, *Siri Christna* would govern the whole World, and would kill him in the Sixteenth Year of his Age. They advis'd him to send a Woman that had venomous Milk, that sucking her might be his Death; but the Child, instead of her Milk, sucked out her Soul, and she died to the astonishment of his Mother *Axada*, who was present. Thus he escaped other Dangers from his Enemies, and at Seven Years of Age, was skilled in all Sciences, and among other Extravagancies defloured the Maids he played with.

2. His Mother whipped, and causing him to open his Mouth to discover whether he smelt of some Butter 'twas said he had eaten, she saw within Heaven and Earth and her self. She frighted, bid him shut his Mouth, but he would not till she promised him Figs or Sugar, and other things, and that she would carry him to the River to make Pipes to play upon. He, to be revenged on the Women, watched a Bath where they came, and enjoyed them all.

3. He went afterwards to fight the Snake *Caliga* that was Nine Leagues long, had Eyes like two Suns, and lived in a Lake made of the Venom she cast out of her mouth. The Snake finding she could not overcome him, perceived he was the God *Vistnu*, and begged his pardon. *Caused*  
caused



caused a Woman turned into a Snake to swallow him, and he swelled till he burst her. In fine, *Camused* was killed, and *Siri Christna's* Parents placed on the Throne of the Kingdom of *Madura*. This done, *Vistnu* turned into *Siri Christna*, married 16108 Women, and lying with them all in one day got as many Sons. This is counted the greatest Action of this God.

4. *Betele* is a Plant, the Leaves whereof powder'd with Lime and *Areca* the *Indians* chew and suck to preserve the Teeth, strengthen the Stomack, and provoke Lust. It is so like our Ivy, that an Ambassador of *Hidalcu* in *Lisbon* made use of it instead of *Betele*, mixing it instead of *Areca* with *Cypress* Apples, and said the Virtue was the same. *Argionem* being upon a Tree *Degestri*, one of the Wives of the Celestial Spirits came and carried him up in her Chariot, where he found this Plant, and stole a Stock of it which he planted on Earth. This is the reason the *Indians* believe this Plant came from Heaven, and that it cannot thrive unless he that Plants steal it.

5. The time of *Siri Christna's* Death drawing on, he gave signs to know it by, which was, that when he expired the World should be inverted from what it ought to be, and is the time of *Culi*, which now is. Their Writings say, all will come to Confusion. But *Vistnu* coming to the World again, shall kill all for their Wickedness, except two Kings, who till then shall be doing Penance

for the love of *Vistnu*. These are *Mara* of the Sun's Charge, and *Divappi* of the Moon's.

6. *Darmaputrem*, one of the hundred Brothers, descended into Hell, where he saw one encompassed with great Treasures, and perishing with hunger: He asked the reason, and the other answer'd, That it was because he had not given Alms while he lived in the World; but that once he shewed a poor Man the House where the Rice was kept that was given for Charity, pointing at it with his Finger. Then *Darmaputrem* bid him put that Finger with which he had pointed into his Mouth, which he doing thought he tasted all the Dainties in the World. *Darmaputrem* and others returning into the World gave great Alms, whereby after Death they purchased Paradise. This proves the *Malabars* believed Heaven and Hell, and a Reward and Punishment for good and bad Works.

7. *Brama* is the antientest God of the three; he resides in the Rose that springs from *Vistnu*'s Navel, though he lies in the milky Sea. He descends through the hollow stalk of the Rose to *Vistnu*'s Belly, where are the Ideas of all things, and where he produces these by looking on those. He has four Heads, which are the Original of four Laws; and because *Ixora* cut off the fifth Head for the Lye he told, he lost the fifth Law, which is that of God, and therefore the *Bramens* want it. He dies and comes to Life very often; an artificial Day of his contains 120000 Years of the Celestial Spirits. He

has two Wives, but never had Children by them.

8. Among the *Malabars* are four sorts of Nobility, *Bramene*, *Exastri*, *Baestri*, *Chadra*. The first they say proceed from *Brama's* Face; the second (being Kings called *Coilas*) from his Arms; the third from his Thighs, which Race they say is extinct; the fourth from the Feet, called *Nayres*. The *Bramenes* have the name, because descended from the Face, and are much honoured by the Kings who are not *Bramenes*, and may sit down before them.

9. Though they attribute the Production of all things to *Brama*, he acts only in the most perfect, giving others the lesser power. Sometimes he grants so great Power to others, that he is in great danger of them, and forced to fly. *Vistnu* converted into a Nymph, delivered *Brama* from one of those Dangers. *Ixora* seeing that beautiful Form of his got him with Child. He was delivered of two Children, the one at the Mouth, the other at the Thigh. One was called *Chartava*; the other *Ayapem*, who lost his Birthright by drinking too much Wine, and it being put to his choice, whether he would be the Lowest among Angels, or Chief among Devils, he chose the latter, and was constituted such. *Ixora* gave him Privilege to converse with Men and be serviceable to them, and he came in the Shape of a *Nayre* to the Court of the King of *Pande*. He lived in *Malabar* and turning Physician, in which he was successful, had Temples dedicated to him.

His chief offering is Whelps, because he is a Hunter. So ancient a Custom it is for Doctors and Whelps to go together. They say in this Age of *Brama* all Men have Monkey Faces, and in the next they will be Horse Faces. The contrary is seen among us ; for outwardly we appear Men, and inwardly are Brutes.

## C H A P. IV.

*A Continuation of the same Matter.*

1. **B**Efore they build a Pagod they sow the Ground with Kidney-beans, when they are green they turn in a greyish Cow to feed on them, and where she Dungs, they believe is the place for the Pagod, placing on the very spot a Pillar, and on the top of it the Idol, to whom it is dedicated ; Then they build the Walls, which are never of great extent, but rich, as being black Marble well carved, covered with Copper-plates, with Globes of Gold, or gilt. The inside is set thick with monstrous Images with many Heads and Arms, and girt with Serpents. Then they build a square Wall about it, on each side of it is an entrance with a sumptuous Portal, with Histories of their Gods carved about them. They are covered in the same nature as the Temples. Underneath are Heads of Elephants, Bears, Lions, Tigers,



Tigers, and other wild Beasts with terrible Eyes and Teeth. It is thought these things are to terrifie those that resort thither, and move them to give Alms; though their Poet *Paleanar* laughs at it. Those who go to visit the Idol enter the inclosure, but not the Temple. The Inhabitants of *Pande*, Subjects of *Bisnagar*, are singular in these Works.

2. The most famous Pagods are, that of *Kettora* built by *Cberam Perimal* living at *Cranganor*, who placed in it the Statue of a Man ten Cubits in length, lying on a Snake with five Heads in the Sea of Milk. The Temple was covered with Plates of massy Gold, but because they were subject to be stole he put them into the Treasure of the Pagod, and instead of them placed others of Copper. The Idol is still covered with pure bright Gold that shines like Fire; his Crown is of an inestimable value, and has many precious Stones, in the Forehead three Rubies that exceed all price, on his Feet Baskins valued 200000 Ducats.

3. In the Treasure, besides the covering Plates there laid up, there are nine Boats of Gold set with rich Stones, each big enough to contain three Men; the same number of Kettles of the same Matter, each deep enough to hide the *Bramene* with the Idol upon his Head, many Pots, Peacocks and Cocks of Gold and Silver, and an infinite quantity of Gold. These are useless Vessels, those that are of use and the same Metal are kept more at hand. At the entrance of the Pagod hangs a Gold Candlestick so big, no Man can lift

lift it from the ground, and with the continual smoak looks like Ebony. Several Idols and Candlesticks that stand before the principal Idol are of the same Metal. In fine, the Treasure is unmeasurable, if we may believe a Bramene who turned Christian, and had many good Qualities that show he merited Credit.

4. The Revenues of this Pagod are incredible, and very many live on them. The enclosure is of Marble six Yards high, and above one in thickness; it is about half a League from the Shore, a beautiful Way leading to it. At each of the wonderful Gates can enter at once four Elephants with all their Furniture. It is guarded by 1000 armed Men: The Coast is dangerous, which secures many great Men who keep their Treasures there.

5. The Pagod called *Comori*, from which that famous Point of Land takes name, is also remarkable. *Comori* Pagod, signifies, The Church of the Virgin. It is like the other in Structure, but not in Riches, because they trust them not there, since our Fleets Sail upon those Coasts. The Pagod is dedicated to a Virgin Daughter to a Shepherdess, that was changed for a Son of *Davagni* Sister to the Giant *Maveli*, who killed all her Children, because he was told one of them would be his Death. He thought to kill this Virgin, and she giving him a kick flew through the Air into the Desert to the place where the Pagod now stands on the Shore, having been formerly 60 Leagues from the Sea. She after  
flew

flew a great Giant by the help of the God *Vishnu*, and set his Head on a Rock that now appears in the Sea, and is above 400 Fathom round. In the very place where the Virgin sat after this Victory, was erected the Pagod.

6. The Pagod of *Trivate* is more ancient than that of *Rettora*, but poor, having been plondred by the *Nayque* of *Madure*. It is not much frequented. This Temple was instituted in memory of the Giant *Naragecoguer-poli*, who by destroying the World provoked the God *Vishnu*; and still came to Life again, though overcome and killed by him. *Vishnu*, to end the dispute, laid him on the ground and sat down upon him. This is what is represented in the Pagod.

7. That of upper *Cranganor* has an Idol on whose Head one of the *Bramenes* gives several strokes of a hammer every day. For they think if this were not done, he would by this time touch the Stars with his head. In the Frontispiece are several Images in the *Portugues* Habit, whence is concluded either that Work was finished after their arrival, or such a Habit was formerly used there.

8. That of *Canari* in the Island *Salsete*, is bigger than all the others, and exceeds them in sumptuousness of building. It seems to have taken the name from some Builder of that Country, or from *Canara* King of *Bisnagar*, the grandure of the Work requiring so great a Founder. It is dug out of a Mountain that looks like one solid Stone, and is black Marble. The Body is very high, the  
Isles

Isles low, but altogether of a vast bigness, somewhat dark, as dug out of the middle of a Mountain. Among at least 3000 Habitations that are cut out about it with each a Cistern by the Door, there are some large Rooms, and one of an extraordinary bigness, in which 'tis said are read Lectures of all Sciences. We have already spoke in the Second Chapter of the Second Part of this Tome, of the Way cut under this Mountain said to run as far as *Cambaya*, of the *Franciscan* that attempted to discover that Secret, and the Princes that are believed to have made it.

9. The Pagod of *Maliassa* is in the same Island. At the foot of a Mountain is a Portal of a moderate bigness : The two Pillars that support it are in the Shape of Giants well carved. There are other Figures like those of Angels among Christians. This leads into a large Porch, and on the left hand is the Gate of the Pagod through which the Water runs : Then follows a great Apartment, after that other little ones, and then a strait way, all dug out of the solid Mountain.

10. The Pagod called of the Elephant, because the Figure of one stands upon a Rock at the entrance of it, is in one of the many Islands of the River *Bombaim* between *Basain* and *Chaul*. It is like the others, in that it is cut out of a Mountain, but exceeds them much in curious work. The first entrance is into a spacious Room supported by vast Pillars in the form of Giants curiously carved.



It has three Isles : The Pillars are all composed of Figures of the same height as the Temple : On one of them is the Giant *Briareus* with his hundred Hands ; on another the God they call *Mabamurte*, who has three Faces to one Body, on his Head a Pontifical Mitre, though of Marble, wrought to admiration. In a Chapel is the Angel turning our first Parents out of Paradise. *Pasiphae* and the Bull are there also : On one of the Walls is a sort of Altar, and over it are carved many wild Beasts, the most remarkable one with seven Heads. Some Soldiers attempted to enter an Apartment that is very dark, and being fearful took Lights, but were drove out by a multitude of Bats that were frightened at the Light. There are Galleries with rich carved Work of Men and Women, most of them in very immodest Actions and Postures. This (they say) was the Chaire of their Ceremonies. Their are other Buildings to be admired for their Greatness and Structure, and two remarkable Sepulchres.

11. To conclude, the Pagod dedicated to the Monkey is so great, that only the Cloister in which they shut up the Cattle designed for Sacrifices, has 700 Columes of Marble nothing inferior to those of the Roman *Pantheon*.

## C H A P. V.

*Of the Officers, Rites, Ceremonies, Burials,  
and other things.*

1. **E**very *Pagod* has a Cook who dresses the Rice that is offer'd for himself, for the Idol, and for those who offer. The last divide their share with their Neighbors, who esteem it as a Holy thing. A great Poet of theirs laughs at them for offering more Food to the statue, seeing it has not Eaten the last, and they answer, though he does not Eat, he smells it.

2. The Kings and Nobles every Day use a ceremony ( called *Tevaram*, that is Divine Ceremony, ) which is with many Prayers to offer Rice, Coco, and Butter, all burnt in honour of their golden Idols, of which they have a number answerable to their Estate ; so that some have above 1000 ; this sacrifice is to obtain Riches for themselves, revenge and destruction of their Enemies: Many have in their Houses familiar Devils, which they call *Cutichates*, every Day they offer something to them, they get by them ; and some have 300 of them. They make them enter into the bodies of those they would be revenged of, whereof they make great advantage, for many pay to be delivered from them. By the help of them converted into the shapes of Beasts, they hurt People and infest whole Towns : There are those living, who have seen the  
Town

Town of *Cranganor* burnt by this means. At *Pudiangale* near *Calicut*, a Woman had one of these, and saw it in the shape of a Cock, a Monkey, and a little black Boy with a Truncheon in his Hand: these are not punished in *Malabar*, but their Kings make use of them in danger: The very Heathens observe that all those who follow that course live and die miserably.

3. In sickness they consult Wizards, not Doctors; they say a Devil causes the Disease, and bringing him into the Sick Man, make him tell the Reason of molesting him; then they promise him something to go out again, and he does it. They think the Small-pox is Cured with an offering to *Patracale*, who they affirm causes them. The Gout they believe is caused by five the Devils like Sows, to them they offer Food fit for such Beasts, that they may transfer the Disease to their Enemies.

4. They adore and offer Sacrifice to venomous Snakes, that they may not hurt with their Poyson. The Lawyers on the first Day of *September* do the same to their Books.

5. Their Baths are used rather to cleanse the Soul than the Body; they know the ten Commandments, but think not themselves bound by them. It is a great Sin if a Nobleman is touched by one that is not such, though he be never so great by learning, by the Sword, or by Virtue: And even Riches there cannot prevail to gain this point. The King of *Travancor* being resolved to become a *Bramene*, though not of that descent, was told,

told, he must first be bore of a Cow; he made one of Gold so big, that going into it, he was born out of it; he offered it to the *Bramenes* with a great Sum of Gold, and obtained the dignity, but not Hereditary.

6. They purge themselves from venial Sins, by putting their Heads under Water, one of these is a Nobleman touching a *Ph. bean*, and to prevent it, the latter cries as he goes, *Po, po, po*, that is, have a care; another is, touching the Dead or their Friends within fifteen Days; another, to touch Meat with the right Hand when they Eat; another, to touch them so touched, or their Houses or Wells; to touch another with the right Hand whilst Eating; to touch a grain of Rice fallen as it is taken up; to touch a drop of Water disturbed by one not so noble Mortal Sins are not forgiven, so he who commits them, remains subject to Death, and the Lord of the Earth as long as he lives. The mortal are these, To use Pots touched by Men defiled; to Eat Rice before Purification, to Eat it boyled by a Man of base race; to have to do with a Woman of that sort; to Eat Rice into which is fallen the least grain out of another Man's plate.

7. Their bathing is thus, They believe the stone of the bath is the God *Brama*; the lips of it *Vistnu*, and all together *Ixta*. When they go in, their nakedness is covered with a rag or leaf; in the Water they write *Om* with one Finger, and throw Water over it with three, believing the three Gods bathed there. Then dividing the Wa-

ter,



ter, dip their Heads, and after cast up some towards eight parts of the World, offering Water to the eight Guardians thereof. They call upon *Siri Pagod*, and wash their Faces three times; they also cast Water up towards Heaven, offering it to the Sun, then wash their Hands and Feet: On the Palm of their left Hand they put Ashes of Cowsdung and sprinkle it, and believe the left Hand is the Earth, the right Heaven, and and the Palm the place of Generation; laying one Hand upon the other and shutting them close, they say, *Let the end of the World come.*

8. This they do in imitation of *Ixoraa's* Egg, and think the upper Hand when opened, represents Heaven, the lower the Earth; with the right Thumb they write upon the Ashes, *Jara*, that is the Fight that was in the Egg between Fire and Water. Then that all their limbs may be sanctified, they touch with their Hand the principal parts of the Body, from the privy parts to the crown of the Head, and the Ears, Elbows, Knees, and great Toes: They hold their hands as if they gave something to two Spirits (who they say attend on us writing our good works on the right Hand, and the bad on the left,) the same they do to the eight Guards of the World, turning about. The last ceremony is to rub the Forehead, Shoulders and Breast with Ashes taken with two Fingers and the Thumb of the right Hand, in honour of the three Gods.

9. The bathing called *Titan*, performed in the Sea, is very solemn; before it they perform a ceremony, in which they offer *Fulas*, (a sort of flowers) prostrating themselves three times on the ground, once in reverence to the *Pagod*, once to the Sun, and once to the Sea. The chief places they resort to for this bathing, are three on the Coast of *Travancor*, (viz.) *Bacora*, *Rettora*, and *Comeri*; the Days appointed are the first of each Moon, chiefly those of *July* and *January*, but if the New-Moon fall on a *Wednesday*, it adds so much to this devotion, that the Mountains and Valleys can scarce contain the multitude of Pilgrims that resort from above Five hundred Leagues distance, of all Sexes, Ages, and conditions, and all a foot. Above all others, the *Ganga* of *Bengala*, is held in veneration for this washing.

10. Ashes of Cows dung is their chief Purgation, powdering their Forehead, Shoulders and Breast with it; the more of it their *Iogues*, or Religious Men, have upon them, the more Holy they are reputed; they carry it in purses to recompence the Alms that are given them: The Reason they esteem this Powder is this, *Ixora* was sanctified by the Ashes of *Gevelinga*, *Vistnu* desiring to partake of this blessing, and impart it to Mankind, carried a Cow to *Calaya*, where she got a mouthful of that dust; *Vistnu* took her dung in which was that Ashes she had Eaten, and burning it made more Ashes, which he shared with Man.

11. They also dissolve the same dung and sprinkle their Houses and Highways with it, to purify them; with this is the way dayly sprinkled through which *Zamori* goes from his Pallace to the *Pagod*, and his Table cloth, and a Gold dish, on which the Meat is brought. As soon as they see a Cow piss, they run and catch it in their hands, drink part, and sprinkle themselves with the rest, and believe themselves most pure; besides the Law that forbids killing a Cow, 'tis so great a Sin, that it requires much Alms and other good acts to expiate it. Oxen are not so much valued, though many Princes think themselves descended from a Bull, because all Men being destroyed, and only Women left, one of them had carnal Copulation with a Bull, and brought forth a Boy, who was the restorer of Men.

12. Their manner of swearing is laying a Hand upon a Sons head, if the swearer has one, or else upon a Cows; to clear themselves when accused of any crime, the party puts his Hand into boiling Butter, or Oyl, then 'tis wrapt and sealed up in a cloth; if on the third Day after it appears sound, he is cleared, if otherwise, found guilty, the accuser, if the party be cleared, makes satisfaction with a Sum of Money. They make another Tryal in the River that runs from *Cochin* to *Cranganor*, where is the *Pagod* of the Crocodil. The *Bramenes* by their forceries bring one of them to the shoar, the person accused leaps upon his back, if he is carried over safe, they account him

C 6 2

innocent,

innocent, if devoured, guilty. Both these Experiments have been made use of in presence of our People of late Years.

13. They have yet another manner of Tryal, which is by putting the Hand into a pot full of Adders, to fetch out a Ring, thereby the more to provoke them. If they sting, the party is guilty, if not, clear. This is used in *Cranganor*, *Mangalor*, and other parts of *Canara*. A King of theirs coveting a most plentiful Wood of Coco's that belonged to a Poor Woman, took it from her by force, and ever after it bore none but hollow empty Coco's; there are some living who are Eye witnesses of this wonder.

14. They have several Fasts, one called *Egadezi*, which is kept the eleventh Day of every Moon, on this Fast they Eat nothing but Fruit: That called *Giveraseri* begins by Night in *February*, and they neither Eat, Drink, nor Sleep, in Twenty four Hours. They walk round the *Pagod* rehearsing stories out of their Scripture: If any happen to shut his Eyes, overcome with sleep, he washes himself as oft as it happens, and continues his former exercise. In the morning they offer some Money to the Idol: The Fast *Tirivadira* belongs only to the Women. That for the Dead, which the kindred of the Deceased keep, lasts a Year, during which time they do not Eat, Fish, Flesh, Eggs, drink Wine, or chew Betele.

15. The Fast *Masa Upasa* is the most religious of them all, and few account themselves



selves so happy as to observe it. He that does, begins the last Day of *October*, he washes himself, puts on clean cloaths, and visits the *Pagad of Vistnn*. On the first of *November* he goes round it One hundred and one times, (the devoutest One thousand and one) at each turn in the nature of a Prayer, repeating the name of *Vistnn*, One hundred and one times: This must be done every Day of *November*, and the ten first of *December*. He must Eat only Eggs and Milk, not look upon Women, he must think on nothing but that name, add praises of it. Next Year he must do the same, beginning the first of *December*, and ending the tenth of *January*, so he must go on every Year till twelve be over; and then begins again the first of *November*, and fasts the forty Days; after this he is canonized for a Saint, in such a manner, that only the sight of him is forgiveness of Sins.

---

C H A P. VI.

*Continues the same Subject.*

1. **I**N matters of Matrimony they have several customs. The *Bramenos* may have as many Wives as they can maintain, though they be not of their Race; but the *Bramene* Women can have but one Husband, and must not mix with the *Nayres*,

on pain of losing their quality. They consult Foretune-tellers about a happy time to Marry; they choose a Husband of their own race born under the same Planet, and the same Day of the Moon, as themselves, to which purpose the times of Nativities are punctually observed. The *Bramen* that does the duty of Priest, is called *Odicon*, or *Curical*; he for four Days sacrifices in a Den Rice, Butter, Cows, and such like things; he lights a lamp, and sets aside a portion of Rice for *Garapatii*, and for the *Epicurean* Elephant, that he may not disturb the Feast. The Bridegroom ties about the Brides neck, a thread on which hang three little pieces of Gold, in honour of the three Gods; this is called *Tale*, and is the mark of a Married Woman. Hence among the *Malabars* Matrimony is called *Que Fa*, which signifies binding; if the Husband dies first, the Woman throws away the thread, or *Tale*, in token of liberty.

2. The Priest takes the couple by the Hands and says some Prayers, then they go to feast; they do not lie together till some happy Planetary Conjunction, when that happens, they go to the door of the Room which is half put too, and therewith the Priest say some Prayers, and withdraw; the next Day they go to a Cauldron of Water, in which are live Fish, and each holding the end of a cloth, draw it through like a Net, the Fish taken they lay respectfully on their Heads, with the right Hand; if many be taken, they believe they shall have many Children, and the contrary.

3. If any dies a Maid, they cause some poor Man of the family, ( an unheard of beastliness ) to deflour her though very young; him they pay well for so doing, and as soon as done, throw stones at him till he runs out of reach. Those of the family *Exastri*, and the Kings that are not *Bramenes*, make no Royal Marriages, so their Wives are not Queens, but Concubines, called *Naians*, and all of them may have Gallants. Therefore the Sons do not inherit, but the Nephews born of Sisters. Of their manner of Marrying we have spoke before.

4 The *Tale* among the meaner sort of Women, serves to tie them to one Husband, and among Ladies, to turn them loose to all lasciviousness. Only the *Bramenes* have liberty to lie with all sorts of Women, from the meanest to the Queen. The others if they have to do with inferiors are killed, if Women, fould. The *Nayres* differ not from the others, in the manner of their Weddings. Among the meaner sort as Tradesmen, one of them puts the *Tale* upon the Young Woman, who is thereby capacitated to follow whom she pleases, or be taken up by whoever likes her. Among Silver-smiths, Blacksmiths and Founders, four Brothers, or as many as there are, keep one Wife between them, and have particular Days assigned for each, that the inheritance may not be confounded. Till a Maid is licensed by the *Tale*, she may be abroad among Men, and none dare presume to meddle with her.

5. The *Bramens* of the North do not only celebrate their own Weddings, but those of Beasts and the Elements. In our Age there was a great Man of that Family, who spent above 15000 Ducats at the Wedding of a Bull and a Heifer. There was also a Baneane who making a Well in the Village *Calegam* for the use of Passengers, and resolving to Marry this Water with some other, despised all that was near, and Married it to the River of *Suratt*, above 30 Leagues distant, and spent above 5000 Crowns in the Wedding.

6. The *Chatines* Marry as the *Bramenes*, but their Widdows cannot throw off the *Tale*, because they must not Marry again, nor keep a Gallant: When they want Heirs, they adopt one, by drinking to the adopted, who pledges in Coco-milk dyed with *Safran*. If he is a Man they give him one of the names of the Sun, if a Woman, of the names of Gods Wife.

7. The cause the families do not mix, is because the *Bramenes* descended from the God *Bramasface*, those of *Chatrier* (that is Kings) from the right Hand, those of *Vaix-er* from the Belly; those of *Chadrer*, (they are the *Nayres*) from the Foot. At first they used to mix, but afterwards the *Bramenes* obtained a priviledge of King *Cheraman Perimal* to the contrary; hence they are so much superior to others, that they are polluted by coming near as well as touching them; they must not Eat with those of a lower race, nor any thing drest by them,



nor out of any Vessel of theirs; if any of them Marries, or has to do with inferiors, they burn on his Forehead a mark like a daws foot, and his kindred making a statue like him of straw, and the Herb *Dorpe*, burn it with ceremonies, as if it were a dead Man. The *Bramenes* loose their birthright of their Family, by Eating Fish, Flesh, or Eggs; and by Drinking *Sura* or *Orraca*, by stealing or killing another *Bramen*, provided it is not in War; among the other Families, there are divers customs about being defiled.

8. *Saniade* or *Saniaffi* is a dignity greater then a King, of which only the *Bramenes* are capable, the elect is installed by another *Saniaffi* in this manner. The Image of the elect is made in Straw and burnt, to show he is dead to the World; then the Master leads him to a Bath, cuts of his *Corombi*, and dips him 72 times, then takes off his piece of Net, the mark of a *Bramene*, cloaths him in red, and he can never after wear white, only on his back a *Fota*. He delivers him a rod with a piece of the same cloath, and a straw Hat; for three or four Days he is under the Masters tuition, must not Eat Fish, Flesh, chew Betle, nor so much as look upon a Woman, and if accidentally he meets one, he puts his Hat over his Eyes, and goes on till she is out of sight. He is to take what is given him without complaining, lives in or near the *Pagod*, succeeds and is Heir to his Master. He bows only to the Idol, and even the King and *Bramenes* do to him, all his defence

defence is in curses, so much dreaded, that every one endeavours to appease him; he is not to handle Money; none can carry his Hat when he goes a foot: If he does any thing contrary to his institution, the *Bramenes* accuse him before the King; if convicted, they stain him with *Safran* and depose him, but he buys it off with bribes.

9. They use no ceremony with those that die under the Age of 7 Years; those that are above this Age, are burnt towards the South from their Houses, where lives *Jemen* King of the Devils, that he may the sooner carry away the Soul. For mourning they shave their Heads and Beards, which they do not cut for a whole Year after, nor have to do with Women: Lye 15 Days on a mat, and enter not into the *Pagods*; the 15 Days expired, they cast the Ashes into the Sea, if near, if not into some bye place, and plant a Fig-tree where the funeral pile was; then they wash and put on clean cloaths, cast out all Earthen Vessels, and one comes to purify the House, sprinkling it with Cows piss and Milk.

10. Every Day of the Fast, he that purifies the House puts a little Rice upon a Fig leafe, which the Rooks Eat, or if they fail, which is looked upon as a great misfortune, 'tis cast into the Water for the Fish. The Anniversary is a Feast at which there must be no Poor. On the Coast of *Coromandel*, *Goa*, and *Cambaya* the Women burn themselves with their Husbands, unless such as have sucking Children. If any refuse, the  
relations

relations hold it as an affront to them, and force her. 300 burnt themselves with the *Naique* of *Madure*. The manner of it is thus, The Woman is carryed on Mens shoulders to the *Pagod*, in her best attire, and anointed with Sandal, after praying to the Idol, she dances all the way to the place; where her Husband was burnt, and casts her self into the Fire; the relations standing round with forks to keep her in, and making a noise with several instruments that her cries may not be heard and move compassion.

11. The Original of this Custom was from King *Pandues* Wife, who voluntarily burnt her self with him, and it is upheld to secure the lives of the Husbands; it having been observed, that more died by means of the Wives, then by Sickness. The *Saniade* or *Saniassi* is not burnt, but buried whole in the *Pagod* where he serves; they make a hole and seat him in it upon the bench he used before he is quite Dead, with a little Rice, and some without for the Idol, then cover him with Clay without any farther ceremonies, believing he is suddenly gone to Heaven.

## C H A P. VII.

*Of the Empire of Æthiopia, and first of the Kingdoms and Provinces into which it is divided; of the Progress of Christianity therein, and of the Product of the Land.*

1. **E**thiopia was the Second of our Three great Discoveries (which were India, Ethiopia, and China) and therefore shall be the Second described. The Reader may be assured of its Truth, as being delivered by an unbiassed and learned Person, that spent a considerable time there, travelling and examining into the Truth of things, and being an Eye witness of the greatest part.

2. The City *Dancoas* was the Metropolis of this Empire, seated on the top of a Mountain: The Country about it is divided into Districts, some mountainous, but all fruitful. Three Miles to the Northward is *Ogara* so fertile, that the green and ripe Fruit hangs at once upon the Trees. Westward is *Dambia*, not inferior to the other; then *Amfras*, where our Patriarch resided, and had Lands. Next follows *Dara* and others, till you come to the Nile.

3. In all these Divisions are many Monasteries and Churches, with Priests and Friars. Ethiopia knew not the Sacrament of Confirmation. The Country *Tacussa* was best disposed to receive Christianity, because  
many



many *Portugueses* lived there, and that of *Gorgorro* by the Labours of the Jesuits who had a Church there. So the Heathen *Agoas* gave ear to our Doctrine; these are a war-like People, and possess a plentiful Country. The *Damotes*, though more polite, received not the Gospel so well, till being overcome in a Battle by their Prince, they submitted and entertained the Religious Men, and there are now theremany Churches and Monasteries.

4. The Kingdom of *Gojao* was the first that admitted the Observation of Lent, and kept the Catholick Holy-days. It contains a great number of Monasteries, among them those of *Gonge* and *Salalo* are famous. The Jesuits had three Residences here, *Colelá*, *Sarcá*, and *Nebisse*. The first two have good Churches finished, the third one very magnificent begun. The Stone they are built of is blew, so light it is more like Wood, but yet hard. The Kingdom of *Bagamidri* received some Catholick Fathers, and there are still Christians there.

5. The Kingdom *Amara* began to incline to Christianity at the time the Emperor rejected our Doctrine. The Viceroy *Eda Christos* and many of the People continued firm. The Faith was not spread into the Kingdoms of *Narea* and *Zemen*, or Provinces of *Abargale*, *Borá*, *Saloá*, *Castá*, *Bugua*, *Orejate*, *Sarte*, *Anubas*, *Sera* and others.

6. It took most root in the Kingdom of *Tigre*, which being the chiefeft of *Ethiopia*, the Description of it will serve to illustrate what

what relates to all the others. The Kingdom of *Tigre* is almost round, its extent One hundred Leagues North and South from the Borders of the *Amacens* to those of *Enderate*, with the same distance East and West from *Dangali* at the mouth of the red Sea to the River *Tacasse* near *Semen*. It is divided into several Governments, called *Xumets*, and the Governors *Xumos*, some of them in some cases not subject to the Viceroy, but immediate to the Emperor. In *Sire*, *Enderrata*, *Agamea*, *Serave* and some others, the *Xumos* must be Natives of the Province, and of certain Families to which those Commands are peculiar. Their Law-suits are like ours in *Europe*, there lies an Appeal from the Judge to the Viceroy, and from him to the Emperor, except in some Cases, in which the Judge finally determines.

7. The Governments are sold, and he that bids most carries them. A Governor is declared, by putting on him the *Cabaya*, tying a red Ribband about his Head, and he walking about the *Catama*, or Court, a Crier proclaims; *We have made this our Slave Governor of the Province of Bugna* (or any other.) Then he returns to Court, and takes his leave of the Emperor, having first laid aside the Ornaments used at this act, for the same serve all upon that Occasion. Then he sends a Servant with such a Riband, to make it known in the Town where the Governors reside. The Viceroy of *Tigre* for his Place pays Three hundred Oqueas yearly, which is about Two thousand Ducats. The *Barnagus*

*nogus* (corruptly *Barnagan*) which signifies King of the Sea ; for *Bar* is the Sea, and *Nogus* a King, pays Two hundred. The *Xamos* or Governors according to the value of their Commands, there being no set Rates, but all pay.

8. Along the Coast of *Massua* Northwards is the Country of the *Dobeytas*, subject to the *Turks* ; Southward lie the *Xios* ; up toward the Inland near *Enderata* and *Ojerate* the *Dobas*, all Mahometans subject to the Emperor. Next those are the *Dorbeytas*, Christians only in name, Rebels to the Empire, defended by their inaccessible Mountains. The *Mampsis* follow their Example, and have been often attacked without success. Along the same Coast are these Provinces ; *Cantiba* the Upper and Lower, *Seraoe*, *Salicit*, *Sama*, *Tedexerez*, *Torates* and *Galas* : Westward is *Siré*, and its Desert on the Banks of the famous River *Tacasse* bordering on the *Cafres* ; then *Nader* and *Addis*. From the West Southward *Tamben*, *Gralia*, *Sarr*, *Ojerate*, *Enderata*, the *Bugnas*, *Dobas*, and *Sera* a plentiful Country peculiar to the Queens. Turning again to the West *Senase*, both *Mambarata's*, *Agamea*, *Ambacenete*, *Bur* the greater and lesser, *Galá*, and many other Governments. The Center of all is *Tremona* between the famous Church of *Acçum*, where the Emperors are Crowned, and the Famous Monastery of *Abba Guarima*. In each of these Divisions there is a Fair every week, and several Custom Towns, as *Barava*, *Seraoe*, *Sire*, that yield a considerable Revenue.

9. There

9. There are two Winters, the first of the Sea, and reaches about two days Journey up the Inland, beginning at *Massua*, and ending beyond the Monastery of *Brizan*. It begins in *December* and ends in *March*. From that place forward towards the Inland it is Summer. The second Winter begins near the famous Church *Asmara* near *Bizan*, where the first Winter ended, and reaches over all *Ethiopia*. The Commencement of it is in *June*, as in *India* and Coast of *Arabia*, but not so severe. It Rains the Afternoons only with Thunder and Lightning before, which gives notice to Travellers and Shepherds to get to shelter; for soon after fall flashes of Fire, and such Hail as kills all it meets.

10. There are also two Summers, the first temperate, the other insupportable, for the burning Wind, which they call *Urrur*, strikes down People, and sometimes they rise no more. In some Places, as *Marebo*, *Tacasse*, *Nor* and others, as soon as Winter expires, pestilent Fevers Rage, proceeding from Vapors the Sun exhales from Bogs. Though the Roads are full of Woods, mountainy and lonesom, they are not so much infested with Highway-men as in *Europe*.

11. There never was the Plague in this Kingdom, and when it happens in the other Provinces, it kills not many, because there are no great Towns. Such as are Infected, or fearful, go from the Towns into Cottages about the Mountains, and if any dies, he is burnt together with the Cottage, no Body daring



daring to bury him. The People are long lived, and know not what the Pleurisie or Stone is: They have abundance of good and wholsom Springs. From them and what the Country about most produces the Provinces take name. There are also hot Springs doubtless Medicinal, if they knew the use of them. The Cattle drinks of them, and thereby becomes larger and fatter. They have other Springs and Rivers esteemed miraculous.

12. As there are two Winters and Summers, so the Product of the Earth is twofold: They have abundance of Wheat and Barley, Pease, Lentils, Beans, Kidney-beans, Indian-wheat of several Sorts, Hemp, whereof they make no use, Nuga, an Herb with yellow Flowers whereof they make Oil, Zuso for the same use, and serves to die Cloath of a Saffron colour; Aja, a Grain between Wheat and Rye, but has a scattering Ear, a particular sort of Grain whereof they make Sava answerable to our Beer, though not so clear, yet serves to make them drunk.

13. They have white Rose-trees, white and red Lilles very beautiful, Jasmin wonderful for smell and greatness, Hony-suckles, a certain odoriferous Flower that dies by day, and recovers at night. Their Hills, Valleys, Meddows, and Shores are cover'd with variety of Flowers of of all Colours. All sorts of Herbs are there abundantly produced, and some but little Ginger.

14. For Fruit-trees they have the Tamarine, Peach, Pomgranate, Ancoy a sort of Pear, Fig, Orca like the Fig, the Tree of

Do

bigger

bigger bulk, but the Leaves less; another sort of Fig-tree, called *Muss*, which grows like a Body of a Tree covered with Leaves so big, that a Man may wrap himself in one of them; out of the top shoots one only Branch on which are the Figs, on each of them, whatever way cut, appears a Cross, for which reason it is concluded to be the Fruit forbidden our First Father *Adam*, and the cause of his Fall. There are wild *Tamarins*, the Fruit whereof is not eaten. Vineyards there are none, but some wall Vines whereof they make no Wine, but Reasins. There are Lemmon-trees sweet and sowre, Cedars and Ebony-Trees. They have also Cotten, whereof are made course Clothes for the common Sort, and is used as all other things instead of Mony, of which in this Country there is none.

15. They Plow their Ground only superficially, not cutting deep, and their Plows in many places are drawn by Men and Women, most of the Plow-shares are of Wood. Their chief Stocks consist in Cattle, and some Men possess from two to 10000 Head of great Cattle. Some of them divide their Herds by the Colours, and those that have Horns from those that have none, for there are naturally many here without them; none of the Bulls are fierce. There are many Goats, and it is reckoned a shame to drink their Milk; no less quantity of Sheep, some of such large Tails, as are equal to one of the Quarters; they make course Cloath of the Wool for the Poor. They have all other

other sorts of Beasts and Fowl in abundance.

16. The Conuntry abounds in Butter and Honey, the best of the last is that of *Endersia* and *Agamea*. The Bees, for fear of Theives, are kept within Doors, with holes through the Walls for them to go out. There are wild Bees, and of their Liquor is made the Wine most in esteem; both Men and Women glory in being drunk with it. Where these swarm, there resorts a little Bird that loves Honey, and fearing the Bees, goes out to meet Passengers, and attracts them with his Note, and leaping from Tree to Tree to the place where the Honey is; the People knowing this, follow him, take the Honey, and he remains satisfied with what is left.

17. It is certain there are gold Mines here, but not made use of, lest they should provoke the *Turks* and other Nations to covet the Country. They lie Eastward, and on the right hand of the way from *Maigoga* to *Tamovem*. On the top of a neighbouring Mountain is to be seen a Wall, believed to have been a Fort to defend the Mines; though they are stopped up, some Gold is taken about the Skirts of them. There are others in other places, but none known of Silver in this Kingdom; in that of *Semen* there are, and those so rich, that two Parts in three of the Oar are pure Metal, they are also stopped up. In *Tigre* there are Mines of Lead, and many of so good Iron, that they make thereof all sorts of Weapons without Steel, whereof they have none. In

*Senafe* there is abundance of pure Sulphur, and as much Salt-peter at *Gralta*.

18. Between *Baraoa* and *Massua*, there is abundance of a sort of bright Stone which opens in Leaves like Izinglass, and being burnt turns to a white Poudrer like Ceruse used by Painters, but not with Oil, for that turns it black. Between *Dangali* and *Senafe* is a great Mine of Salt of great value, because there is no other there but what is made with Sea-water between *Massua* and *Defalo*. The Salt dug out of the Mine is cut into Bars about a Span in length, and between two and three Fingers broad and thick, which serve for Money in other Parts. Not far from it in a Mountain is a sort of Salt that is a Cure for some Diseases.

19. The Empire of *Ethiopia* has never a good Sea-port Town, because it reaches not to the Sea, only some little Part of the Kingdom of *Tigre*. The Port *Baclur*, the first within the mouth of the Red Sea belongs to the King of *Dangali* a Mahometan, and is not considerable, being incapable of great Ships. The Port *Defalo* between that and *Arquico* where the *Turks* have a Fort is yet worse. The best Port on the Coast is *Arquico*, where the *Turks* have raised another Fort: Between it and *Defalo* are two large Bays, where any Ships may ride.



C H A P. VIII.

*Of the Laws Customs and Religion of the  
Empire of Ethiopia.*

1. **I**N *Ethiopia* there are no written Laws, but ancient Prescription is preserved by Memory, and often proclaimed at the Courts of Kings and Governors. There are no Prisons. When a Man is accused, they fasten a Chain to his right hand, and to the left of the Accuser, or one of his Servants, and so they continue till Sentence is given; so that it is as dangerous to accuse as be accused. When a Man is condemned to death, they deliver him over to the Party aggrieved, to kill him as he pleases, without allowing the least time for preparation.

2. The Witnesses may be accepted against, and such as are allowed give their Evidence *Viva voce*, for nothing is writ. They have a sort of Judges called *Umbares*, which they hold to be descended from those sent by *Salomon* with the Queen of *Saba*, and her Son *David*, when she returned from *Hierusalem*.

3. The rich wear Shirts of *Boseta* lined with the same, or another sort of Linnen, they reach to the Ankles, the Sleeves long and close to the Arm with abundance of gathers, the Neck high and stitched, with silver and silk Buttons of several Colours, and Loops of the same instead of Button-holes. Others wear them blew, and all girt them-

themselves with silk or Linnen Scarfes ; they use no Belts, but such as are fastned to their Swords, which they seldom wear ; their Breeches as long as the Shirt and narrow ; from the mid-thigh downward of Velvet, Damask or Sattin, upward of Linnen, because of the heat. Over all they wear *Cabayas*, which are like Sheets (called also *Fotetes*) thrown over their Shoulders, to do Reverence to any Body they open these, for they wear nothing on their Heads ; but if they do Reverence to the Queen or Prince, they let fall the *Fotete* to the waste. If any wear Veils on their Heads they do not take them off.

4. They wear Periwigs, which they call *Gatonas*, made of sundry shapes, some like the brims of a Hat one over another, some round, others like Horns, and so other sorts. It is a Trade to make them, and they spend a whole day in ordering one ; they are ointed with Butter whereon the Dust settling makes them look monstrous.

5. Some over their Cloaths hang carelessly tcertain Skins like Sables with little Bells of Gold or Silver ; about their Necks gold Chains with Crosses, Bracelets of the same Metal, and Silver Rings. The poorer sort cloath much in the same Nature, but with Apparel of less value. For the most part they go barefooted ; or if they wear any thing, it is only a sort of Buskins so streight the Foot never goes to the bottom, and so they drag them. The meanest sort of all wear Cow-Hides either with or without the Hair

Hair, dressed as soft as any Cloath.

6. The Women of great Quality, as the *Oisoros*, that are of the Blood-Royal, and others wear Shifts of Silk, or rich Indian Linnen, they cover the whole Body, very close at the Wrist, but the rest of the sleeve so wide it hangs down to the ground. They use Bracelets of Gold and Silver, Necklaces of Glafs of several Colours, from the Shoulders downwards they are covered with silk Veils of several Colours, or white as the Men, and they let them fall like them when they make Reverence; they put nothing on their Heads, their Hair hanging in many breadths, or loose and divided, fastned to the Skin ointed with Butter, the ends are knotted. Men and Women to avoid discomposing this so tedious dress, when they sleep rest their Neck upon sticks so framed, that the Head lies hollow: They always carry Bodkins of Ivory, Ebony, or other things well wrought to scratch themselves with, and are always stuck in the Hair.

7. Round their Eyes and Lips they lay Colour, makes them rather blew than black. The Brides on the Marriage-day die their Hands blacker than they are naturally; for as among us whiteness is beauty, so blackness among them: They wear Rings on their fingers, on the little one they let the Nail grow so long, it exceeds all the other fingers, in their Ears great Rings of Gold or Silver.

8. Their Weapons are Firelocks, which they have from the *Turks*, Darts of several

forts, Maces, Slings, Swords, Hangers, Poi- niards, and for the defensive Coats of Mail, Helmets, and Bucklers of Bufalo and Sea- Horses Skins. The warlike Instruments, Trumpets and Kettle-drums, the Musical Ta- bors, great and lesser Guitars, the first of five, the others of three strings.

9. They love Feasting, and make more account of the Wine than the Meat; the Tables round; for Table-cloaths Cakes of Bread of several sorts of Grain, generally three cover the Table, and sometimes one. Their Food much the same as ours. When they wash their hands, every one wipes on the Cloath he wears, and when they eat on a piece of Bread. The greatest Dainty, without which the Feast is not compleat, is Beef just killed and eaten raw, and for the more delicacy, instead of Mustard, dipped in the Excrement of a certain Gut of the same Beast. The Desert is parched Pease and other Grain. Whilst they eat they drink little or nothing, but as soon as dinner is done they go to another place to drink, in which they spend more time than in the former. The drink is *Sava*, or Beer, and that Liquor of Honey before-mentioned. They drink and talk, till being hot-headed they go out brandishing their Swords, and promising to kill all the Master of the Feast's Enemies. The Feast is esteemed most splea- did, whence most come out drunk. The Women go to Feasts with their Husbands, and the *Qisere* without them if they please.



10. The Sons of Women of the Blood-Royal, that is those *Oisoros*, can never inherit the Crown, nor they marry with Men of the Family, though removed a hundred Degrees. In this they agree with the *Chinifes*. All Men descended from the Male-Line can pretend to the Crown, and he that is descended from a King that Reigned 200 Years ago, has as good a Claim as the Son of the last. The *Oisoros* Women pay no Reverence to any Body, not to their own Husbands. In this particular we have many *Oisoros* among us.

11. There can be no fix'd Callendar of their Festivals, for they are many according to every Man's Fancy ; those universally received are *Saturday* and *Sunday* in every week, six days of every month, one of the most holy Trinity, another of our Saviour, one of Our Blessed Lady, one of St. *Michael*, one of the Apostles, and one of a Saint they call *Guebramanisascodust*. *Easter* they keep fifteen days ; all the Festivals of the Year they observe according to the old Stile, on the Feast of the Epiphany they also celebrate the Baptism of Christ, and Men and Women repeat their Baptism in some River or Pool.

12. They add more Days to the Lent than we do to make up the forty, because the *Saturdays* as well as *Sundays* are kept holy. Their way of Fasting is only to eat after Sun setting till the rising. Throughout the Year they fast *Wednesdays* and *Fridays*. They dress their Herbs with Oil of Nuga, having  
none

none of Olives, and have little Fish, which must be such as has Scales, for in most things they retain somewhat of the Jewish Customs.

13. The Weddings are celebrated with Trumpets, Tabors and Dancing. Some live together upon promise of Marriage, if they have any Children. The Women are common to the Husband's Brothers and Relations, and the nearer of kin the more free to this beastliness. If the Wife knows the Husband has to do with another Woman, she recovers of her forty of every Creature she has upon the ground, as Forty Cows, Sheep, Goats, or any other thing; and if she will, the Husband is fined for her use many Cloaths which are delivered to her, for the Wives have their Goods apart. Adultery is not punished with death.

14. In their Funerals they use the same Musick and Dancing as in the Weddings, to signifie it is the same thing to die as to be born. All the difference is the People that follow the Corps wear white Ribbands tied about their Foreheads, and go without Priest or Cross. Instead thereof they carry the dead Man's richest Goods before him. It is a great token of Grief to shave their Heads (at the Death of their Kings all men are obliged to it) but yet a greater to accompany the Corps naked from the Waist upwards.

15. Their Mourning is a black Cloath died in a certain sort of mud, for they have no other dying. If a Man be found dead and the Murderer not known, the Country  
is

Chap. VIII. *The Portugues Asia.*

27

is fined to make satisfaction to the Relations. The same if any Cattle be lost; the Country People are obliged to maintain the Viceroy<sup>s</sup> and other People when they travel. When two meet after a long absence, their salutation is kissing commonly the Mouth, sometimes the Cheek, or Shoulder. The Women neither spin nor soe, the Husbands mend the Cloaths; the Poorest Woman would be ashamed to wash her own Cloaths, the Men do it, and the Women bring the Water.

16. They have many Churches, I will say somewhat of the chiefest, that of *Acçum* is the principal of all *Ethiopia* for its antiquity, and because the Emperors must be Crowned in it and no other. It stands in the middle of one of their greatest Towns. Near *Acçum* are the Caves where the Holy King *Caleb* and his Son did penance. They are buried in the Church of *St. Pantalion*, which stands on the top of a high Mountain; *Pantalion* was one of the 9 Saints, they say went from *Rome* to Preach the Gospel in that Country.

17. The famous Monasteries of *Abbagarima* and *Alclaya* and the Church of *Acçum* stand in the form of a Triangle, a Days journey distant from each other. In the Center is *Tremona*; *Abbagarima* took name from its founder, who was one of the 9 Saints, and Son of a King of *Rome*, called *Isaac*, as the Son also was; but the *Ethiopi*ans called him *Abbagarima*, which signifies, a Man prodigious for Miracles; they feign that there was a way under ground from this Saints Cave

Cave to *Rome*, and that he used to travel it.

18. The Monastery of *Alcluya* formerly the habitation of many religious Men, now of very few was founded by *Abba Samuel* Disciple to one that was so to *Abba Arragavi*, one of those 9 Roman Saints and Preachers. The religious of these Monasteries are of two sorts, those of *Abba Tula Aymann* and those of *Abba Statens* the founders. They live not in community, but every one where he pleases with Servants; they observe no noviceship, nor make any vow; such as will Marry and have 2 or three Wives; most of them have Mistresses, and think it no sin. Such as do profess Chastity are much esteem'd, all their business is to gather Riches, and get Governments. Their Habit is white Shirts, or striped with several colours, over them, a black Scapulary before, a narrow round hood of the same colour; they never take it off, not even when they consecrate, Cloaks or Mantles as every one can afford, the Poorest or most observant wear Cow hides, like the meanest of the People. All carry crosses in their Hands; the Masters who are not Married bigger then the others; but they want not for Women even of those they call Nuns.

19. The Nuns make no Vow, live where they will, and wear hoods like the Fryars; sometimes they retire into Deserts, where they say the religious Men follow them. The Men are well read in Scripture, the Clergy lead much the same life, but must not Marry twice



twice, if they do, they are excluded the Church. The *Abnegas* who give the Holy Orders scarce do it *gratis*. They use no ceremonies, nor examine those who are to be ordained; they pay more respect to the Altar stone on which they lay the blessed Sacrament, then to the the Sacrament it self; their Chalices are made of Tin, or Copper, very large, that they may hold much Wine for the People to whom it is given in little spoons. The Priest to say Mass puts nothing over his cloaths, but as it were a piece of a *Casula* which hangs behind and covers his back. The *Tburibels* have bells to make a noise, they use no Mass book, but say the Mass by Heart; they assist at it with a confused noise their Chalice cloaths are black and dirty, so rags for other uses, their bells of stone.

10. In the Country of *Barnagassa* towards *Arquico* is the famous Monastery of *Biran*, corruptly called *Vizan* or *Vifon*. It is of 200 Years standing, had once 500 Fryers, now not above 40. There is a great Church with 3 Isles. sustained upon 12 Pillars, built and dedicated, as they say to the Blessed Virgin before her birth; about half a League from it, is the Church of *St. George*, possess'd by the last Patriarch; near this Church is a large Cave cut out of the Rock, where are kept with great veneration, and even Heathen Sacrifices, some dead bodies they call Saints, and not dead Men, for they say, they rest there, and if any offer to lift the cloaths that cover them, to see what is under,

der, they hinder them saying, *Do it not for they will wake.*

21. There are many other ancient remarkable Churches; those most admirable which are curiously cut out of Rocks; those lately built are, that of *Dancas*, those of *Nebesse* and *Tremona*, of *Gorgorra*, *Colena*, and *Sarca*; most of the Antient ones are round; Men and Women go not to the same Church, but each Sex to their own apart.

22. Their errors in Faith are many, the chief, that they baptize without saying any thing, or if they do, use not the words instituted by the Church: In confession they use no form of absolution, others absolve without hearing the sins, giving unreasonable Penances. They say God is like a Man, that the Divinity was born of the Blessed Virgin, that there is but one nature in Christ, that the Holy Ghost proceeds not from the Son, that there is no Purgatory, that the Souls are given by the Parents, not by Heaven, that till the Day of Judgment none goes to Heaven or Hell, even the Blessed Virgin. They Eat not Swines Flesh, Hare, Rabbit, or Eel; *Saturday* they keep better then *Sunday*, no Woman in the time of her courses enters the Church; nor 40 Days after she is delivered of a Son, and 80 of a Daughter, nor those who have had carnal Copulation the Day they had it. If any one enters the Church when they are communicating, he must receive without confessing, though he be loaded with sin, they had no knowledge of the Sacrament of confirmation, nor extream unction. There is no punishment for errors in matters of Religion.

## C H A P IX.

*Of the Nature of the Country of Ethiopia, of its Towns and the Kings it has had, and of the entrance and expulsion of our Doctrine.*

1. **A**LL this Country is divided by vast Mountains, so high, that they appear as if they had been heaped one upon another, of strange figures on which they build impregnable Castles; some are difficult of ascent, some almost, and others quite impossible to be ascended; they are beautified with variety of Trees, and inhabited by a rebellious People, that have much of the nature of their habitation.

2. Their Cities and Towns are small, but the ruins of great ones are to be seen. In *Acçum* they appear to have been very sumptuous, for there are Obelisks of black stone, some ruined, some standing, two whereof are above 40 Yards high. It is believed the Court of their Kings was there kept for some Ages after the famous Queen *Saba*. I will here give a particular account of the City *Adem*, though on the Coast of *Arabia*, because it was in a manner, and is the inlet into *Ethiopia*.

3. About 30 Leagues from the mouth of the red Sea, a point of the Continent runs into the Sea, making a small *Peninsula* covered

ed with vast Hills and Rocks that do not produce the least Plant ; on the top of one is a square Fort with Towers ; thence runs down towards the Bar a wall with Bastions, the last of them at the foot of the Mountain. Hence the wall turns along the foot of the Hill, till it joins the lower Fort, making a sort of Circle. This work though it appears formidable at Sea, can do no great harm to the Ships, by reason of its great height, to remedy which fault, there is a Plat-form raised near the Water. In all the works there are about 12 large, and 20 lesser pieces of Canon, and 600 Soldiers armed with good Firelocks, Swords without shells, Cimitars, and Tucks.

4. In a bottom at the foot of the wall and Mountain, lies the City, not the third part of what it has been, girt with a wall and Towers at convenient distances ; it is divided rather into lanes than streets, there are wells the Water whereof is brackish, but used when Rain Water fails, the inhabitants are *Arabs* and strangers, Moors descended from those who were once masters of it, and Jews who are in all parts of the World and here live meanly.

5. Provisions are brought from the inland on Camels ; their Money pieces of Eight, and another of the same value called *Calves* or *Xamies*. There are no Thieves, and therefore no Locks to the Doors ; their weapons Swords, Semiters, Poniards and Bucklers hanging by straps about their Necks. Their cloathing black, the better sort wear a thing like a  
shirt



like a shirt down to the Ancles; the Poor a clout tyed about the waste, reaching half way down the thigh; the Gallants add a *Foca* or loose cloak hanging down, or under the Arm, only the *Xarifes* wear Veils on their Heads. The Women use the same sort of shirt or cassack as the Men, except that before it reaches only to their Knees, and behind sweeps the Streets with a train a Yard long. The best sort wear a kind of silk Petticoat of several colours, they cover themselves to the Knees with a kind of Veil, and have only one Eye uncovered in the street.

The *Arabs* easily took this Town from the *Turks*, and it might as easily be taken from them, if any would attempt it by way of surprise. A *Portugues* Gentleman, after being possessed of it, shamefully quitted it.

7. The Emperors of *Ethiopia* since the Queen *Saba* ( or *Maqueda* for she was so called ) are these, her Son *Solomon*, *Amna*, *Sabacani*, *Baremga*, *Sabacio*, *Tboasca*, *Adona*, *Ahsayo*, *Omacio*, *Cboa*, *Luvo*, *Ansata*, *Babaca*, *Savala*, *Adina*, *Gotolea*, *Sasalea*, *Elgabul*, *Bautan*, *Bavares* the first, *Bavares* the second, *Mahase*, *Nalque*, *Baisol*, in whose time Christ was born, *Chempasgado*, *Bhur Sagad*, *Grima*, *Casor*, *Sarado*, *Cucii Bacbeon*, *Sargay*, *Zeray*, *Sana Aogad*, *Gbeena*, *Gaya*, *Macugna*, *Safavada*, *Agdar*, *Abraba*, and *Cababa*, who Reigned together, in whose time went thither a Patriarch called *Minatas* and *Pantaleon*, who we said Preached the Gospel there. *Hapba*, *Arjid*, *Anci*, *Arada*, *Afsadadora*,  
E • *Amamid*,

*Amamid*, in whose rime two Christian Kings sailing through the red Sea, landed with some religious Men, and Reign'd there, and then the descendants of the former were restored, and were *Saba*, *Thazena*, *Caleb*, *Gabra*, *Masael*, *Constantine*, *Bagar*, *Zanfagad*, *Frey*, *Sonay*, *Adoraza*, *Aidar*, *Madai*, *Calaudama*, *Grima Affar*, *Zergazo*, *Digna*, *Micoel*, *Bad Gaza*, *Arma*, *Asbanani*, *Digna*, *Zana*, *Ambafao*, *Demo*, *Delnaod*, hitherto the line of *Saba*; those that follow are of another branch, *Himnamale*, *Agba*, *Acbeon*, *Bhar*, *Sagad*, *Hesta*, *Sarad*, *Cama*, *Afgad*, *Vdomo Arad*, *Anda Cbeon*, *Caifa Arad*, *Vd Doma*, *David*, *Tbeadros*, *Ifac*, *Andreas*, *Astbinani*, *Anda Jesus*, *Bad Linavi*, *Jarai*, *Acob*, *Beda Mariad*, or *Zeriaco*, *Hefcander*, or *Alexander* he that *Peter de Covillam* saw when *Vasco de Gama* was discovering the *Indian Sea*, *Andacheon* or *Naut*, *David*, *Oena Saged*, whom *D. Christopher de Gama* went to assist; *Claudius* or *Athana Saged*, to whom went the first Embassador from *Portugal*. In all 86 Emperors from *Queen Saba*, till the Year 1600, or thereabouts.

8. We have already, at the time it happen'd, spoke of the introduction of a Catholick Patriarch into this Country, and shall in its proper place, in the third Tome, speak of the banishment of them. It is very remarkable that this Emperor, who so joyfully received an Apostical Prelate, and submitted to the Holy See, should after be so cruel an Enemy to it; and that these People who called themselves Christians, were the backwardest  
in

in receiving the true Catholick Doctrine; the chief cause hereof, is their great inclination to Judaism, as descended from *Solomon's Son*. Therefore they so rigidly adhere to Circumcision, that not only the Men but Women are Circumcised; they observe strictly the *Saturday*; they take the liberty of being divorced only for their pleasure, and have several Wives, without regarding whether they have been their own Father's Brother's, or other Mens. This obstinacy is not a little helped by the Pontifical Power usurped by their Emperor; and by a Prophecy they have, that the *Frangis* or *Europeans* shall become Masters of their Country, and they fear the Preaching the Faith may be an Introduction to it. They have also another Prophecy, that they, assisted by the *Frangis*, shall destroy the House of *Meca*, which they desire as much as any other Christians. But let this suffice for *Ethiopia*.

## C H A P. X.

*Of the Islands of Japan.*

1. **WE** have already in the Eleventh Chapter of the First Part of this Tome spoke of the Situation, Extent, Names, and some other particulars of these Islands, which will be needless to repeat, and shall therefore proceed to what has not yet been related.

2. The Country, though not void of large  
                     E c 2                      Plains

Plains, is very mountainous, some so high they are much above the Clouds. Two are most remarkable; that of *Fiyenoyama* four Leagues from *Miaco*, and that of *Letchu* which continually casts out terrible Flames, and among them sometimes the Devil comes out to perswade the People to cast themselves in there, affirming, it is the shortest cut to Heaven. About this Mountain are many Silver Mines: The Fields are water'd with many Rivers, which together with the Summer Rains and Winter Snow make them Fruitful, if the continual Wars did not hinder all Tillage, which is the Reason that Land is undeservedly accounted barren. It bears Rice and Wheat, of which they do not make Bread, but use it after their own manner, all sorts of Fruit usual among us, and many others, abundance of Wood both on the Hills and Plains. It is plentiful of all sorts of Cattle, and abundantly furnished with Fish. Their Water is thin, the Air wholesom; the Natives are generally long-liv'd, and vigorous to the last; they apply themselves to the use of Arms at 15 Years of Age, and give it not over till sixty.

3. Their Countenance is agreeable, well-shaped, generally large, and they value the greatest Bodies, very strong, and inured to Labour and Hardship: As soon as born they dip the Children in the Water to make them hardy, and as soon as grown to any strength the Boys hunt wild Beasts in the Woods. They are more ready at Handy-crafts than the *Europeans*, and their Country People more



more polished ; this makes them the more tenacious of the Christian Faith, because they admit it not till sufficiently convinced.

4. Honour is no less Worshipped among them than their Idols, and they will endure any thing rather than abate in any point of it ; this makes them very courteous, they show the same civility to Friends and Enemies, they never swear, Princes punish Subjects and Masters Servants in such manner, as neither has cause to complain, all Differences, though between near Relations, are composed by a third hand to avoid Animosities. To speak ill of the absent, is a Crime to them unknown ; so is Play and Theft, and no less begging or borrowing. Poverty, nor any other Misfortune that depends not of the Will, is not looked upon as disgraceful, for they will no way allow Honour to depend upon Fortune.

5. Withal there is no Faith among them, even between Father and Son, but it is a Disgrace for a Man to be open-hearted. Hence it proceeds they commonly Murder one another in their Embraces, Subjects do the same to their Princes, and Servants to Masters. Thus Rebels are carested by their Sovereigns, for all their study is conveniency ; Mothers instead of suckling strangle their Children ; some kill themselves to save receiving an Affront ; and the Sick have no Relief, for all fly from them, and when dead throw them like Beasts on a Dunghill. They are not only given to Women, but much more to Sodomy.

6. If two happen to lie together, each lays his Head at the other's Feet. Neither Men nor Women wear any thing on their Heads, only the great Men when they travel go under an Umbrello; they mount on Horse-back on our off-side. Instead of bowing when they meet, they draw back their Foot out of the slipper more or less; when the Inferior sees a Superior he sits down. They value pretious Stones no more than Straws; any piece of Antiquity they esteem at extravagant Rates of what sort soever. The King of *Bango* gave 13000 Crowns for a Vessel among us not worth a Groat. They have the same value for any draught of a famous Master, or for a Blade of a Sword or Hanger.

7. Their Mourning is white, and their festival Apparel black, the same is used by the *Chinises*. The Men varnish their teeth, the Women their hair. Our Musick to them is ungrateful; they delight in those Instruments that make most noise: Their Fish they eat raw, and hate Milk or any thing made of it, calling it unconcocted Blood. Beef or Mutton is never eaten but in the utmost Extremities, as loathsom Vermin among us; the Wheat they make like the *Italians* into *Ver-micheli*, or *Macaroli*, and drink Water boil'd with the Herb *Cha* hot, sipping it; this I believe is our Tea. The Service of their Tables differs from ours; the Vessels are all of Gold or Porcelane, for the Silver is all coined into Money. Our sweetest Perfumes are loathsom to them. What would make

is sick is the Diet of their Sick, as Fish salt and raw, Limons and other acids. Bleeding is not used, for they say 'tis a madness to lavish the Treasure of Life, so they call the Blood. Their Purges are sweet and pleasant, the others, they say, and with reason, do but heap misery on the Patient.

8. Though there are many Kingdoms, the Language is the same; but so various, it sounds like many; for they have great variety of Words upon all Occasions: those that are used in serious Discourse serve not to jest, those that are for great Men are not for the meaner, those for the old are not for the young, the same are not for Men as for Women. In Writing they have fourteen different sorts of Characters, all varying not only in form but signification. The Gentry learn to read and write till twelve Years of Age in the Monasteries of the *Banços*. There is one sort of Character to write to Princes, another to Nobles, another to the meaner sort, and another for Books, of which they have great plenty in Prose and Rhime very elegant and ingenious: Every Character is a Word. Some of our People that understand the Language of *Japan* and *Latin*, avouch the former to be much more copious, beautiful, soft, and compleat in all particulars.

9. All their Buildings, because of the Earthquakes the Island is subject to, are of Wood, but of such Structure, they are no way inferior to the finest in the World. They are whitened with a Plaster made of Shells of Fish, which preserves the Wood

from the Weather, and makes the Cities appear most beautiful at a distance. The Tiling is black and of such a nature it will last Five hundred Years. The Curiosity within it not to be paralleled. Hangings are not used, but all the Walls curiously painted with Landskips or Histories of their Ancestors. The floors are covered with fine Mats, and such as go on them wash their Feet first. There are no Chairs nor Bedsteads. On the Beds there are few Cloaths but what they wear by day, but some have coverings of the same Straw as the Mats wrought with Gold.

10. The Poor eat as they can, but always with decency; the Rich with such state of Servants, Musick, Plays, and variety of Dishes, that a whole night is spent in a Supper. They use as many Tables as Dishes, about a span and half high, because they sit on the ground, each Table about half a yard square curiously wrought of Cedar inlaid with Gold and several Colours. There are no Napkins nor Table-cloaths, because they never touch any thing, but feed themselves with little Cipress sticks so artificially that never any thing drops. The Meat is heaped in the Dishes like Pyramids strewed with Gold, the Fowl whole, the Beaks and Talons gilt. Their Entertainment is generous and friendly, but so ceremonious, it were better to endure hunger than their Complements.

11. All the cloathing is Silk, thin in Summer, more substantial in Winter, and a set time for all People to alter their Dress. They



They take many Wives, and are easily divorced, yet Adultery is a capital Crime, and the Woman's Relations resent it as haionously as the Husband. The Children are bred as has been said, and at Fifteen have their Sword put on by the *Bonzos* with much Ceremony. Every Man is so absolute over his Children and Servants, he may punish and kill them without being liable to any penalty for it.

---

## C H A P. XI.

*A further Account of Japan.*

1. **T**ILL the Year One thousand there was but one Monarch over all *Japan*, he was called *Huo*, or *Dayri*. He had two *Cucabo's*, or Generals of his Army. At that time one of these killed the other, and rebelled against his Prince. Civil Wars ensuing, several Kingdoms were erected. Every Lord of a Province called himself *Jacata*, that is King. They have four sorts of People, as among us, the *Bonzo's* or Clergy, the Nobility, Gentry and Commonalty, these two last pay great respect to the Nobles, who are called *Tonos*; and, as among us, have the Distinctions of Dukes, Marquesses, Earls, &c. The chief Trade is Silver and *China* Silks. In Mechanicks they are excellent. Their Cutlases are so temper'd, they cut through our Armour as if it were Wood. Their

Their Lances are longer and lighter, their Musquets and other Arms perfectly good, as is their Powder, their Horse Furniture curious beyond expression. Printing among them, as well as the *Cbineses*, is very ancient. All the Land is the King's, and he gives Parcels of it to Noblemen and Gentlemen to serve him in War and Peace, and they give Portions of it to their Servants.

2. The King has power to recall his Grants, and take back his Lands at pleasure, and hereupon it is not counted infamous in the Subject to forsake his Prince, and go over to his Enemy for Profit: So it often happens that Kings are dethroned, and private Men set up. But this does not only happen in *Japan*.

3. No Prince is more difficult of access than those of *Japan*; all Business is done by way of Petition. The People when they see the King, rather adore than reverence him. There is no Prison or juridical proceeding against Criminals, every King, *Ten*, or Master of a Family punishes without any of our Forms. The Punishment is commonly inflicted by Surprise, for none will receive it without resisting. When the King punishes a great Man, he causes his House to be beset with armed Men, and as an Honor gives him leave to kill or defend himself. If he defends himself, there is a Battle between those that are to execute him and his Family; if he kills himself, he makes a cross Wound with a Dagger, and throws it into the Air, to shew he fears neither Heaven nor

nor Earth. When they are grown in Years, and have Sons of the Age of Eighteen, they give their Estates to them, reserving only some small thing to live upon, and this they do not for love, but to prevent being turned out and dispossessed by them. There is nothing among them but what is purchased and maintained by force of Arms, and so dividing them into five parts, not above the fifth dies a natural Death, the other four by the Sword.

4. In the Reign of *Doyri* sole Monarch of the Island, there rose a *Bongo* with the name of a Prophet, and introduced Sodomy among them; since which time they have never been free from Rebellions, which are the Destruction of *Japan*, to prove God could better endure Idolaters than Sodomites. Of their several sorts of Opinions in Religion enough was said in the Eleventh Chapter of the First Part of this Tome, and somewhat shall be hinted out of a Hebrew Canon in the last Chapter of this same Tome, touching the Preaching of *St. Thomas* the Apostle in this Island. *Bongo* is a common name for all the Ministers deputed to the Service of their Gods, as well *Camies* as *Fuques*. Though these differ in Condition and Profession, they agree in three Particulars; the first, a counterfeit Chastity, for it is not lawful for them to Marry; the second, Abstinence from all sorts of Fish and Flesh; and the third, Shaving their Head and Beard, in token they condemn the World.

5. Some

5. Some live in Towns, and have the Charge of the *Varela's* or Temples of the Idols, others in great Monasteries. There are also Monasteries of Women, whom they call *Biconies*, who also profess Chastity, and observe it as ill as the Men. It is wonderful that though both of them be extravagantly Debauched, Proud, Covetous and Cruel, yet on account of their Profession they are held in great Veneration. They had once an infinite number of stately Temples, and even at the time *St. Francis Xavier* went thither, he found Five hundred that had escaped the Fury of their Wars. In one of these is that prodigious Altar on which stand Fifteen hundred Idols of the common Stature of a Man, all gilt and orderly placed in nine rows round a principal one, to whom they seem to make their Court. Every one of these has three Heads and above forty Arms, which the *Bongos* say represent the Power of their Deities. The Silver and Gold Lamps and other rich Gifts presented by Kings and Lords when they go to War, are innumerable. All the City *Hara* is full of Temples; in one of them is the Idol *Xaco* of gilt Metal, and so big, that a Pigeon standing upon its head, can scarce be seen by those who stand at its feet.

6. In these Buildings there are wonderful Columns of Cedar: In one of them there are Ninety-eight of a vast height, and near twenty-three foot in compass, so wrought that none of them could cost less than Five thousand Ducats. The Porches are Forty Foot



foot high, and twenty-five in breadth, on sides of them are Statues of a monstrous height with Maces in their Hands, threatening the Devil who lies at their Feet, as St. Michael the Archangel is painted among us. All is kept extraordinary clean: In the City all things more Majestick. The Gardens belonging to these Houses are surprising, adorned with variety of Flowers, many whereof seem rather the work of Art than Nature. The Parks, Ponds, Fountains, Birds of several Colours, and variety of wild Beasts not to be molested, are impossible to be described. The Sons of the principal Men put themselves into these Convents. The Colour of their Habits differs according to their several Sects. They wear Beads, and keep Choir, where they sing in the manner of our Psalms; Matins at midnight, other hours at break of Day, and others at Sun rising. They are called together by Bells, whereof they have great number, and of extraordinary grandure. They are rung at certain hours of the day for the People to pray, and they do it in the Evening as we Vespers.

7. Their Galleries before their Cells, their Refectories and other Offices are very large and orderly. The funeral Ceremonies are very stately. They grant Indulgences for the Living and Dead, and for the latter Habits which they say carry them directly to Heaven. There is a commemoration of the Souls departed in the great Feast of their *Camies* and *F. toques*. They Preach in large Pulpits,

Pulpits, and the People is called with a Bell. The Preacher is cloathed in majestick Garments with a gold Fan in his Hand, and moves the Audience with an affected Gravity and Modesty, takes his Text out of their Scripture, and discourses thereon efficaciously, that the Hearers burst into Tears, calling upon *Aminda* and *Xaca*, and leaving very consideral Alms, the chief aim of the *Bonzos* passionate Discourse. They study in several Colledges founded by their Kings.

8. They have also a military order, which they call *Nengoras*, consisting of two sorts of *Bonzos*. One (the fewest in number) keep a Choir, and have charge of Idols and Temples; the other follow the War, serve any Prince for pay, to the number of Thirty thousand, and are absolute in their own Conquests. Some of them have Estates of Sixty thousand Ducats a Year. Every day they carry five Arrows to the publick Magazine of Arms. They profess Chastity, and admit no Women into their Towns, but make no scruple of committing Sodomy.

9. Over all these Religious Professions is a head *Bonzo* called *Zaco*, who (in the same nature as the Pope) has the disposal of all their Church Dignities, orders all Matters of Religion, and grants Dispensations. The Monasteries chuse their Superiors. The Cities have *Tundos*, answerable to our Bishops, to them all the *Bonzos* are subject, and they grant Power to the Superiors of them to dispence in lesser Matters. The Pontifical Chair is at *Misco*, is vastly rich  
it

in Revenues, and is in continual War with the Laity about the Succession.

10. Besides those spoke of, there are some remarkable Buildings in *Japan*, but I will only touch upon one Fort. Six Leagues from *Cangoxima* in the Kingdom of *Sagame*, there is a vast high Mountain all of one solid Rock. On the top of it is artificially cut out a Castle with all Apartments equal to any great Palace, defended by ten Bastions, and they encompassed by a large deep Ditch, the whole of one entire piece, as being cut out of the very Rock, in the same manner, as if it had been formed of Clay or Wax. We have already and shall again in its place speak of some such Works in *India*. Let us now go over to *China*.

---

## C H A P. XII.

*Of the Great Empire of China, and first of its Situation, Division into Provinces, of its Product, Arts and Commerce.*

1. **T**HE Island *Hainan*, the Southermost part of this Empire, is in 19 deg. of North Lat. and the Tartar Wall the utmost Northern bound, in some places exceeds 41 deg. The extent from East to West no less, so that it is not much inferior to all *Europe* in greatness. On the South Coast are abundance of small Islands so near the Continent, they seem to be all one Body.

2. This vast Empire is divided into Fifteen Provinces, each of them formerly a large Kingdom. Most of the Nine they call the Southern Provinces are watered with such large Rivers, that in some of them the opposite Shore is out of sight; they are all Navigable, and such multitudes of Vessels upon them, as seems incredible even to those that are Eye-witnesses. A Passenger in less than an hour counted above Three hundred in only an arm of the River *Mam-quim*. They are curiously built, for round the outside are Galleries for the Seamen to Sail them, without incumbering the middle, so that they are more like *Plasure-houses* than Boats, and that also in respect of their Painting, Gilding, and the Spaciousness of their



their several upper and lower Apartments. Those of *Hungeben* exceed all the others.

3. The 6 Northern Provinces being nearer to our Latitude, are subject to the same temperature, they are dryer than the others, and more healthy; yet Men are equally long lived in all of them, and there are many vigorous old Men; it is so well Peopled, that not only small Towns, but Cities are in sight one of another, and where the Rivers are much frequented, seems a continued Town. They have greater and lesser Cities, Towns, and Castles, which they call *Fu, Chen, Kien, Chin*, the Villages are innumerable; they are guarded throughout the Kingdom by Night, as if they were upon a Frontiere; the Streets are watched with great diligence.

4. The multitude of People is unexpressable; it is difficult going in the Towns by reason of the concourse, and the Roads are usually crowded, upon Fairs. According to their general list there are near 60 Millions of Men, which with Women and Children are innumerable. The common buildings are not so light, and lasting as ours, but well contrived, and clean. They are painting and *Gberam* with great Art in their structures; *Gberam* is a sort of varnish that distils from certain Trees, it mixes with all colours, and is most beautiful as may be seen in many things brought from thence. They build no upper floors, looking upon the low to be more convenient; all neat People have Gardens with Flowers and small Trees; in the North

they use such as bear Fruit, if they have much ground, they plant great Trees, with Mounts, on which are kept Fowl, as Cranes and Swans, and Beasts, as Deer and others. They also make Ponds in which are black and red Fishes with gilded Scales.

9. They first frame the Roof of the House, then set it upon Pillars, each of them of one piece of Timber, varnished with *lac* ram for the most part black; then they build the Walls of brick, and a sort of plaster like lime which is very hard; they say that formerly they built after our manner, and have still rules of Architecture only observed in publick buildings, as Pallaces and the like; they have many Towers of several forms, all beautiful, from 5 to 9 stories high, with winding stairs and others, and galleries without; their Household stuff is various, curious, and very cheap.

6. This Kingdom being of so great an extent and consequently lying under so many several Climates, produces all sorts of Fruit that the whole Earth affords. Their common sustenance is Rice, and Wheat, whereof they have such plenty, that a *Pico* of either of them, is sold for 5 Royals, and wheat dearest for 7. A *Pico* is a Hundred and a quarter weight of ours. The Northern Provinces make most use of Wheat and Barley, the Southern of Rice; all other sorts of Grain is plentiful, the Poor use it for Wheat and it serves to feed Cattle. The commonalty feed on Herbs all the Year, and so other Medicines are found in the Apothecaries Shops.

7. Every Village affords abundance of Meat, the commonest is Pork, Beef is sold without bones, wild Fowl and Beasts not so usual, they have of all sorts except Rabbits, they have Nightingals that sing like ours, but are much bigger; and another sort very beautiful and of delicious taste, they have also all those sorts of birds we see painted on their works; they breed infinite quantities of tame Fowl, the Geese so numerous, they are in vast flocks about the Fields. What is said of their hatching Eggs by art is true, but it is done only in Summer.

8. As for savage beasts they have many, as Tigers, Wolves, &c. but not hurtful; Elephants are brought from abroad; of tame Cattle they have all the same sorts as among us, and use not Oxen for plowing as in India, but *Bufalos*. Horses are plentiful but not good; they formerly used Coaches, now Chairs. Their way of Travelling is in Litters, on Mules, or in Chairs carryed by 4, 6, or 8 Men, according to every ones ability; they are bigger than ours. In the Cities of *Peking* and *Nanking*, Horses stand in the Streets bridled and saddl'd, to be hired to go about the Town.

9. Fish is not so plentiful in the Northern Provinces, because there are not many Rivers, but much comes from the South salted, and otherwise preserved: Their best fruit is in the Southern Provinces, the best Oranges those of *Quantung*; in *Xeni* there are most Grapes, whereof they make Reasins, but not Wine. In the North they make Drink of

Rice, in the South of Rice only, it is pleasant to the sight, smell, and taste, and among them Drunkenness is accounted no shame. There are two pleasant and strange fruits, the *Sucu*, a red Apple like an Orange of excellent taste, and is preserved hung up. The *Lequias* of the bigness of an ordinary Pear, shaped like a Heart, in colour like a Strawberry, the inside Pearl colour, in the middle a core very pleasant, but not to be kept.

10. They have all sorts of Flowers, many unknown to us, and keep them all the Year, some grow in the dead of Winter, when the leaves are fallen off the Plants: these are called *Lamui*, and are more agreeable to the smell than sight, being yellow like wax.

11. Their Apparel, Beds, and other furniture, is made of Wollen, Linnen, Silk, and Cotton, of which they have abundance, and work it curiously; *China* supplies strangers with the richest commodities of the East, as Gold in thread, beaten, and in bars, Rubies, Zafires, Pearl, Musk, Silk raw, and wrought; Porcelane, Quick-silver, Copper, Tinn, Tortoise-shell, Vermillion, Salt Peter, and Sulphur, Sugar and other things of less value. Their gilding either for use or curiosity is well known; the vilest things are not lost among them. The Kingdom is rich, but not private Persons; there are not so many rich Men as in *Europe*, nor so many Poor; few possess very much, many have plenty, and scarce any want.

12. Money



12. Money is scarce as may appear by the price of all things, Servants wages, hire of Work-men, and allowances to Ministers of State. A pound of Mutton is worth a half penny, a Pidgeon not a farthing, a Man's wages not above a Crown a Year; some things alter the Prizes but all are reasonable, and much about these rates.

## C H A P. XIII.

*Of the Provinces into which China is divided.*

1. **T**His vast Empire is divided into two parts, the Northern, and the Southern, and they into 15 Provinces. To the Southern part belong 9, which are *Quantung*, *Quansi*, *Tunyan*, *Fokien*, *Kiangsi*, *Suchuen*, *Huquang*, *Chekiang*, and *Nanking*. *Quantung* is the most Southerly, and lies between 20 and 25 deg. of lat. it is large and Rich, and abounds in Wheat and Rice, of the latter, though differing in kind, the Earth gives two crops a Year. Here is much Sugar, Iron, Copper, and Tin, all which are wrought with great perfection, as also the works of *Charam* and gildings brought to us. The People are very ingenious at handicrafts, easily imitate what they see, but are not good at invention. Our Merchants repair twice a Year to the Capital City *Quangchen*.

75 Leagues distant from *Macao*, and *Macao* is 18 from the Islands, and is about 5 Leagues in circumference. This is the most frequented Port of the whole Kingdom. The *Portugues* alone export hence Yearly, 53000 Chests of Silks, 22000 Bars of Gold, each weighing 12 Ounces, 7 Picos of Musk, which is 8 Hundred and three quarters. Pearl, Sugar, Porcelane, *China* wood, Reubarb, and other lesser commodities in vast quantity. The Island *Haynan* belongs to this Province, about it is a great Fishery of Pearl, it is well Peopled on the Northern Coast, on the Southern is a Town that owns no subjection to any body. It produces several sorts of precious Wood.

2. On the N. E. side of *Quantung* lies the Province of *Quangsi*, between 23 and 27 deg. of lat. it differs not from the other in any thing considerable. That of *Yunnan* to the Eastward in the same lat. is the farthest from the Center of *China*, 'tis large but not rich, its principal Commodity being Amber for Beads, and such uses. Here contrary to the custom of all the rest of the Kingdom, the Women go abroad to buy and sell. On the other side of *Quantung* to the E. N. E. is the Province of *Fokien* between 24 and 28 deg. of lat, it is for the most part Mountainous; the Natives contrary to the general Law, travel and trade abroad: It yields Gold, Sugar, Hemp, and Paper of several sorts; the goodness, plenty, and cheapness of it very remarkable. Printing here is very cheap, and as Ancient, as shall be mentioned hereafter,

hereafter, it is not done with loose letters as among us, but cut in Wood, so that the Original remains; there are an infinite number of Printing Houses, every one may Print what he pleases without a Licence, and notwithstanding this liberty, they never publish any scandalous or immodest Book. This Province lies on the Sea, and thence are exported infinite quantities of Merchandize for *Manila*, *Japan*, and the Island *Formosa*, which is in sight; the Dutch trade here.

3. The Province of *Kiangsi* lies North of *Quintung*, between 25 and 30 deg. of lat. It is hemm'd in with great Mountains, from which fall two Rivers, one running to the Southward, all the way Navigable; another to the Northward, which after running through great part of this Province, receives another great one coming from the Province of *Huquang*, and is the famous *Kiang*. The feet of these Mountains are adorn'd with good Cities at convenient distances for travellers, and carrying of goods, which are generally on Men's backs, and the concourse is incredible; the Innkeepers give an account of all that comes in to their Houses, and are obliged to give two Meals to all such Passengers, having other ways to be payed; every Man carries his own Bed, for the lodgings find nothing but bedsteads. In the Custom-house, which is here very great, they do not visit the goods, but take every Mans word, and the Duties are very easy; a traveller that is no Merchant, is Custom-free; the strangers that come to *Macao*, pay according to

E f 4

the

the Tunnage of their Vessels without searching.

4. This Province is so populous they miscall it *Laocha*, that is little Mice, because they spread all over the Kingdom, serving all sorts of Trades, particularly Taylors; they are very Poor; the Province has abundance of Rice and Fish; it is famous for large Soles, but more for Porcelane. The Clay 'tis made of, is only found in one Village, and in another place the Water to work it, for if they use any other, it proves not so good. In this work there is none of the mystery generally represented to us, it is meer Clay, but of a most rare quality; it is wrought after the same manner, as ours, in the same time, and of all colours. This Province *Fokien* and *Quantung* meet in an Angle formed of many Mountains, among which is a small Kingdom, the King whereof owes no obedience to him of *China*; they allow the use of Physitians in sickness, but of no Lawyers in their suits. If any scarcity happen, they go a Robbing in the nature of open War.

5. The Province of *Suchuen* is much in the same Latitude, and has nothing singular; that of *Hnquang* is in the same lat. more plentiful of Rice than any; has much Oyl, and Fish in its great Rivers, and Lakes like Seas. The Province *Chekian* lies between 27 and 32 deg. upon the Sea, is plain and fruitful, and watered with many Rivers, some whereof run through the Towns; it is much Richer than the others, particularly in Silk, which is exported only from thence. *Hing-*

*chou*



*chen* is the Metropolis, the most populous of *China*, so delicious and pleasant, that it is a Proverb, *Glory in Heaven, and Hangcheu on Earth.* Three things make it most famous, the Lake called the rarest in the World, about two Leagues in compass, beset round with curious Pallaces, and they with delightful Hills, the Water runs in at one end, and out at the other, across it are set Dogs of Stone for People to go over upon, many Vessels ply about it, some very large, being built for pleasure and feasting, with Kitchens fore and aft, in the Midship rooms with Tables, above floors for Women, the windows covered with close nets, that they may not be seen, all painted and gilded; the abundance of Meat in them is wonderful, in these many spend what they have. The second thing famous, is the Silk, and manner of working it; the third, the worship of their Idols, and magnificence of their Temples.

6. The last of these 9 Southern Provinces is *Nanking*, between 29 and 36 deg. of lat. the best in the whole Kingdom. It permits no Foreign Trade, the Merchants to enhance the value of their goods, say, they are of *Nanking*; in only the Town of *Xanbam*, 'tis said, there are 200000 loomes for Cotton, which yearly yield the King 450000 Ducats. The Court long resided here, and all the tribunals and priviledges of a Court still remain in the capital City called (as my Author will have it,) *Ymbienfu*, but I find it is  
by

by all others named *Kiangning*. This City is the best in the Kingdom for sumptuous buildings, spacious streets, trade, and abundance of all things; it has twelve stately Gates well defended with Canon, without the walls runs another, at a great distance much ruined; the outward circumference will take up a Horseman two Days journey, travelling a good pace, the inward is 6 Leagues; between the two walls are buildings and tillage, the crop whereof is appropriate to the Souldiery that reside within, to the number of 40000 In one quarter of the Town is a Mount and thereon a sphear of a vast bigness, of curious workmanship, but stands not on a frame; there is also a rare Tower 7 stories high with all appurtenances made of Porcelane, a most wonderful work. The River runs by the foot of it, called according to my Author *Tamcuquiam*, by all others I find it named *Kiang*; but *Tamcuquiam* signifies Son of the Sea, because it is one of the greatest in the World, and may perhaps for brevity generally be called *Quiam* or *Kiang*; it has great store of Fish.

7. The Northern Provinces are 6, their names *Honan*, *Xensi*, *Xansi*, *Xantung*, *Peking*, and *Leantung*. The first lies between 33 and 37 deg. of lat. and produces the most delicious fruit, which is prodigiously cheap, so that One hundred of Apricocks is worth about half a Farthing. A Prince lives here in as great state as the King.

8. The Province *Xenfi* lies to the Eastward of the last in near the same Latitude; it is large but dry, as the three next to it; bears little Rice, much Barley, common and *Indian* Wheat. Their Sheep are shorn three times a Year, Spring, Summer and Autum, but the first shearing is the best. The Wool serves for Hats and such like work, but is not fit to spin. The Goat's Hair is spun, and of it they weave Stuffs richer than of Silk, but it is only of a sort of Down that grows next the Skin under the long Hair. This Province yields Musk, which grows in the Navel of a Beast like a little Deer, the Flesh whereof is eaten. The Purses brought hither are not all the same in which it grows, because the Musk mixed with other Drugs is too much to be contained by them only, and so Purses are made for it of the Skin. Scarce any Musk comes over pure. Here is also some Gold gathered, but in Rivers, for the Mines of it and Silver are not open. Most of the Rhubarb in the World seems to come from hence; for that which is brought from *Persia* cannot be of the Product of that Country, because none that have travelled there relate they ever saw this Herb grow there. It grows high and bears Leaves bigger than those of Cabbage, requires much care, and grows not wild, as some would have it.

9. This is a Province of great Trade, for the numerous Caravans, some of above One thousand Men, which repair to its two Western Cities, *Sochen* and *Xancheu*. In them  
come

come Ambassadors from the Mahometan Princes to the King of *China*, every three Years is an ordinary Embassy, and every fifth one extraordinary, they always bring Presents. The Princes are, the *Turk*, the *Arabs*, *Camul*, *Samarcan*, and *Tarsan*, but none of them, except the last, know any thing of these Embassies or Presents, the Merchants do it at their own cost for the more security of their Trade. The Present consists of a quantity of precious Stones, Three hundred and forty Horses, Three hundred small Sparks of Diamonds, some fine Blew, Six hundred Knives, and as many Files. The King returns for each Horse two pieces of Cloath of Gold; Thirty of yellow Silk, Thirty Pounds of *Cha*, Ten of Musk, Fifty of a Medicine called *Tienyo*, and Fifty of Silver.

10. *Cha* (which I suppose to be our *Tea*) is the Leaf of a Tree like Myrtle, in some places bigger than others, they dry it in Iron Pots over the Fire, and so it runs up together. There is of it from a Ducat the Pound to less than a Halfpenny, such is its variety. It is their common drink steeped in hot Water, with it they treat Strangers, and relate many Virtues of it.

11. The Province of *Xansi* lies between 36 and 42 deg. of Lat. the many Mountains make it barren, therefore bears little Wheat, less Rice, and most of *Indian* Wheat; it supplies the Kingdom with Resins. Here are Wells of Fire for the use of Houses, like those of Water in other Parts. They make



make small Mouths, and over them boil any thing. They have Coal-Pits as in *England*. The Province of *Xantung* lies between 35 and 38 deg. of Lat. it is poor, subject to Locusts, and often to Famine. It bears a sort of Apples which is carried over most of the Kingdom.

12. The Province of *Peking* between 36 and 42 degrees of Latitude, is now honoured with the Court in the City of the same name, but more properly *Xunthienfu*, or *Xuntien*; the *Moors* call it *Cambalud*. The People (as all those of the North) are not so ingenious, but more laborious and warlike. The Land dry and healthy, but barren; yields *Indian Corn*, but little Rice or Wheat. The Rice used at Court comes from *Nanking*, it is pleasant only boiled in Water without any other Addition. The King keeps One thousand Sail that trade to the South for Provisions. This Province sends abroad no Commodities but Pensils and Perfumes. The City is not so large as *Nanking*, but far exceeds it in populousness: The Walls are so thick, twelve Horsemen ride abreast on them; they are guarded with as much care in Peace as War. At the Gates are Officers to receive the Duty of all things brought in, and that belongs to the Queen.

13. The Magistrates of this City have but very little State in their Persons and Houses, only the chief of them can go in Chairs, the others on Horseback. All People have their Faces covered along the Streets

Streets to avoid the Dust, but more to save the Ceremonies to *Mandarines*. The Cold is more violent here than could be expected in that Latitude. The River and Lakes are froze over, so that they bear. They use a sort of Stoves that conveys the heat underneath which serve in their Gardens, and anticipate the Spring.

14. The last Northern Province is *Leao-tung*, famous for a precious Medicinal Root it produces, which adds strength and vigour to such as are in Health, and gives great comfort to the Sick. This being the *Tartar* Frontier, is much ruined, and in part possessed by them. Along it runs that so famous Wall for the space of Three hundred Leagues, of great Renown, but little use; for notwithstanding it the Enemy breaks in at pleasure. In all these Provinces there are Four hundred forty four Cities, and Eleven hundred and fifty Towns of Note; the others are not to be numbred. Thus much of the Soil, Product and Division of *China*.

## C H A P. XIV.

*Of the People of China, their Customs, Inclinations and Studies.*

1. **T**HE People of *China* are white, the more Northward the whiter ; both Men and Women suffer their Hair to grow to its full length ; it is generally black, and they therefore called by some Nations, The black haired People. Their Eyes are commonly black and small, their Noses little, they look upon ours as deformed, their Beards thin, the black esteemed most beautiful ; it is never cut, but they had rather it should all fall off than one hair of the head. They take great pains in dressing it, and have many Barbers who never cut but only serve to order it.

2. They are handsomest whilst very young, particularly in the South. The Women of *Quanchu* are counted the most beautiful, thence the great Men have their Concubines. The Men, as they grow above twenty-five Years of Age loose their Colour, but not so much of their Features, yet grow ugly ; they are well made, strong, and inclined to Labour. In Tillage they are very industrious, sometimes plowing with a Plow of three Coulters that makes as many Furrows, and on it carry a Tray with a hole, through which Kidneys-Beans drop, and the Ground is sowed at once ; other Grain  
is

is sowed after Plowing. Often he that drives a Beast loaded carries a burden.

3. Nothing that can be of use is lost. There are often seen many Vessels loaden with only Weeks for Candles taken out of the heart of a Rush. Others that carry nothing but Paper for Privies, which must have no Letter upon it, esteeming it a Sacrilege to put any such to that use. They are naturally Merchants. About the Street is sold by Retail, whatever is by Wholesale in Shops. Children sell small things that no Age may be idle. In matters of trust they are most faithful, but in selling the cunningest of Cheats. They will dig out the Flesh of a Fowl, make it up again, and sell the Skin and Bones as an entire Bird; they counterfeit Gammons of Bacon, so that it is hard to discover the Fraud. In fatning, colouring and patching up of old, lame and unsound Horses, none equal them.

4. They are much addicted to Chimistry, and believe he that finds the way to make Silver, has a sure Receipt for to live long. Old Men they think have found out this Receipt, and therefore some will maintain them only in hopes to learn it, and others make themselves gray only to get a maintenance that way.

5. They are affable and courteous, treat Strangers with Civility, give them the upper-hand, lend them Money upon Pawns, but without Use, though they exact it from their own Kindred and Friends, even in Prisons, where the Scam of Nations is, they shew



show Compassion towards them. All that are condemned to Death are beheaded, or strangled, any other Death is accounted Cruel; when many are condemned, only four or five die, the rest remain in Prison. Humility and Chastity are Virtues held in great account. They raise triumphant Arches in Honour of Chast Women, and bestow publick Encomiums on them.

6. Where they use Ceremony it is endless, but among Friends and Kindred none is used. They are so grave and staid, that no Accident whatsoever can discompose Men of Quality; so that mortal Enemies meet at Feasts without altering their Countenance. They lessen themselves to extol Foreigners, and commend all the Works of *Europe*, even to undervaluing their own. Their curious Workmanship may be seen by what comes from thence, which is never the best or curiousest. They are incomparable at working of Ivory, Ebony, Coral, and Amber, and most exquisite in Gold and Silver. A gold Chain of their making has been seen that had **Three hundred Links**, and did not weigh seven Ounces, their Gold thread is not so fine as ours. No Vessels of Silver are used, but only porcelane; they have learned to make Clocks to stand on Tables.

7. They are of most ready Wits, whereof I will give one Instance. A Visitor General being long in a Province without executing his Employ, a Friend of his enquiring into the Reason, found he had lost the Seal,

• G E

with

without which no Business could be dispatched; and, knowing the Governor was his Enemy, he advised him to set Fire to his own Palace at Night, and when the Governor came, as of course he must, to see it put out, then to deliver to him the Box in which the Seal is kept, saying, He could in that danger only trust him with the Royal Seal: That if it was the Governor who had caused the Seal to be stole, he would certainly restore it, because of the trust reposed in him, which if he did not, the World would believe it was lost in his Custody; this was put in Execution, and next day the Governor restored the Box with the Seal in it.

8. Their Cloaths, as was before said, are made of Woollen, Linnen, Silk, or Cotton. Two hundred Years before Christ they wore short Sleeves (as the *Japans* descended from them still do) and the fashion lasted while the famous Family of; *Honan*, for Four hundred Years, then it was altered to what is used to this Day, is the same throughout the Kingdom, and cannot be changed without the King's leave. The Habit reaches from the Neck to the feet open before, even to the inward Garments without Buttons; but folding over, the Sleeves large and open like those of a Monk's Cool. For a Band they wear a piece of white Taffety a handful broad, which the better sort as soon as soiled throw away. Young Folks wear all Colours, the Commonalty and all Servants black, old Men grave Colours, such as are or have been  
Gover-

Governors on Festivals the finest red. The rich change Apparel four times a Year, the poor sort twice.

9. Till seventeen Years of Age they wear the short Hair loose, the rest knotted on the top of the Head. After that Age it is put into a Net of Horsehair with a Cap over it; that of the Lawyers square, the others round; it is made either of Silk or Horsehair, but in Winter of Felt. Much Ceremony is used at the time they first put on the Net. The Rich wear Shoes of Silk, the Poor of Cotton, differing from ours in fashion and costly; Leather is only used for Boots, which are rare. In the same manner the Rich wear Stockings of Damask, or other soft Silk, the meaner Sort of Cotton, but all white. Breeches are common to Men and Women. The latter dress their Hair with Flowers, natural or artificial, except the common Women, who are not allowed to use them, nor to live within the Walls.

10. The Apparel of Men and Women is the same in all other Points; but these have Feet less than can be imagined, and to make them so, they swath them hard from their Infancy. The Custom was taken from a Queen, who having deformed Feet endeavoured by that means to bring them into Shape.

11. The Women are very retired, none of any Age is seen in the Street, no Men visit them in their Houses, nor presume to enter into their Apartments. Servants have admittance only whilst very young, Brother

or Father-in-law on no account. The ordinarieſt Women go abroad in Chairs. If they happen to go a foot on account of any Pilgrimage, they cover their Faces: If they travel in Boats, they paſs by each other, without ſpeaking one word. Yet in ſome parts of this great Empire, Women go abroad, but ſuch as are of Quality always after this manner.

12. The Language is thought to be one of the 72 of *Babel*; by their Books it appears to be of Four thouſand Years ſtanding. It is called *Quenhra*, or the Language of *Mandarines*, becauſe as they ſpread their Command they introduced it, and it is uſed through all the Empire, as Latin in *Europe*. It is very barren, and as it has more Letters far than any other, ſo it has fewer Words, for there are not above 326 that abſolutely differ, and of thoſe that only vary in accent and aſpiration 1228; moſt end in Vowels, the reſt in M and N: They are all Monſyllables, all indeclinable, as well Verbs as Nouns; ſo contrived, that often a Noun ſerves for a Verb, and the contrary, and ſometimes for an Adverb. Thus it is eaſier to be learned than Latin. It is moſt compendious, and therefore the moſt grateful to the *Chineſes*. It is rather ſweet than harſh, and ſpoke as they do at *Nanking* pleaſing to the Ear, very full of reſpectful Terms. To bid one take a thing in his hand, among us we repeat the Verb take, which they do not, each word ſignifies the Verb and Manner; *Nien*, is to take with two Fingers; *Tſo*, to take



take with them all; *Cbua*, with the whole hand downwards; *Tcie*, with it opened upwards. So in other Verbs: A Man's Foot they call *Kio*; a Birds, *Cbua*; a Beasts, *Tbi*.

13. They use a different Stile in Writing and Speaking; the Letters are as ancient as the Language. They all know them, but not all by the same Name. The Author of them (they say) was *Febi*, one of their first Kings; at first they were fewer in number, plainer, and in some measure like what they expressed: There are now four sorts of Letters. The ancient still used in Books and by Lawyers, but only for Titles and Seals instead of Cuts. The second called *Chicum*, the most generally used. The third *Taipie*, little practised but on Fans, in Letters and Prologues. The fourth, a sort of short hand.

14. There are Sixty thousand Letters; But they use Abbreviations, so that 'tis enough to know Ten thousand to write, read and be learned. If they meet any that is not known, they turn to a Book like our Dictionary, and find it: Only nine strokes serves to form all this multitude of Letters; but several Letters and perfect Figures are joined to signifie different things. This stroke — stands for one, crossed with another stroke it stands for ten, another stroke being drawn under the lower point it signifies the Earth; with another at the top, a King; adding a prick on the left hand between the two first points, a precious Stone; with Dashes before, a Pearl; and all Letters that

signifie precious Stones, must have this last mark ; all that signifie Trees must have the Letter that is for Wood adjoined, and so of other things.

15. Good Writing is valued above the best Painting. All written Paper is looked upon as Sacred ; if it lies on the Ground they take it up carefully. The manner of Writing is downwards from the top to the bottom, and from the Right towards the Left-hand, as the *Hebrews* and all the People of the *East*. If a word of Respect, as your Lordship, or the like, fall in the middle of a Line, they write not forward, but begin the next Line, because it is not esteemed Manners to join any word to those ; if they write the Name of God, it is set above the rest of the Line.

16. They once writ on the Rine of the Banks of Trees, with Iron points, as also on plates of Metal, which now are highly esteemed. Paper has been invented among them Two thousand Years, and is of so many sorts, and so plentiful, that there is as much in *China* as all the World besides, for goodness none to compare to it. The most usual in Printing, and plentifullest, is made of a Tree (called by them *Cbo*, by the *Indians* *Bambo*) made in the same manner as ours, but the best is of Cotton Rags. Instead of Pens they use Pensils of several sorts of Hair, but the Hares is best : There are no Ink-horns but Stones on which the Ink is ground, as Colours among us ; it is also sold in Rags in the nature as we have Spanish Wool, but the

the best is Lamp-black, and they that make it are not accounted Mechanicks.

17. Printing has been used by them Sixteen hundred Years, we said before it was all carved on Wood. The Author writes his Book in the size it must be published, and every Leaf is pasted on a Board, and graved exactly as he writ it; therefore they write and print only upon one side of the Paper, so that every Leaf consists of two, for the Books are sewed along the edges of the Paper, not the middle as we do, the Blanks remain within, and the two Leaves pass as one; the best Wood for this use is Pear-tree. When they would have the Paper black and Letters white, they are carved in Stone, because in the Stone the Letters are cut into the Superficies, and in Wood they make the Superficies. That manner of Printing is only used for Epitaphs, Paintings, Trees, Mountains, and such like things, which are preserved with respect, and are lasting Memorials.

CHAP.

## C H A P. XV.

*A Continuation of the same Subject.*

1. **F**ROM their Childhood they apply themselves to study, the first Books they read are Morals, then the classick Authors which are entirely learned by Heart, next the Masters exposition, who looks not on the Book when he teaches. The Coppies for writing are laid under the Paper, and the learner draws by it, the Paper being transparent. From letters they proceed to composition, such as are approved of are Printed every 3 Years, and learners study them. There are no Universities, every Master teaches all that is requisite for a man to know, as well in learning, as manners and behaviour. The Disciples of quality never go any where without the Master; there are many Schools for the common sort, but no Master can take more Schollars than he can teach himself, for he is not to trust to another. Their Days of recreation are the first 15 in the Year; and some others, but few in the 3th and 7th Moon. The Masters that serve in great Houses Eat at their patrons Table.

2. They have large and stately Halls, richly adorned, where they examine students, whereof there are great numbers in every City and Town, but chiefly in the Metropolis



polis of Provinces, where they take their Degrees. These buildings for the most part are all of the same form, some bigger than others, but all large; the greatest of our Pallaces is not equal to the least of them, in every one is an infinite number of little rooms, where such as are to be examined, compose each by himself, with a Soldier to attend him, that the more learned may not help the ignorant. The Hall of *Quantung* which is the least, has 6000 of these Cels and the number of students is greater.

3. There attend all the time of the examination, Presidents, Magistrates, Examiners, Clerks, and all sorts of Trades, and all that are there are maintained ind yet and lodging the whole time upon the publick charge. The Order and disposition of all things is much to be admired, formerly Gentlemen were not admitted to take any degree, because not imployed in the Government, but they perceiving that only the learned rose, obtained though with difficulty, to be admitted to both; such as are any way infamous, cannot take a degree: The degrees are 3 answerable to ours of Bachelor, Master of Arts, and Doctor; the Chancellor goes about the Towns and Cities to examine the first, the second is done in the Metropolis of each Province, once in 3 Years, in each of these Acts there are above 7000 students, and above 1500 take the degree of Master of Arts. The Doctors are only made at Court, on a sudden

den a Bricklayer or Taylor is set up in state, the marks of this dignity are given them and are a Cap, Gown, Tassels, and Boots, all put on with much Ceremony. The King defrays the whole charge, and every one that takes this degree, stands him in 1000 Ducats.

4. Of those that go to the Court to take their degree, 350 are admitted to that of Doctors; the marks of that honour (except the Boots which are the same in all) differ very much in the value, besides those mentioned, they have a girdle, they wear them all in the employments they get, and the last is still richer, as they are preferred. There is another examination at which the King used to be present, now a *Colao* supplies his place; after it they go to salute the King, who is on his Throne, and gives with his own hand, a *premiu* to each of the three first presented; the first of the 3 is superior over all the others, and has a particular name, as has the second and third; this is so great an honour, that soon after the whole Kingdom knows them by those names, and their degree of honour is equal to our Dukes. Out of the 350 are chosen 25, who have Palaces assigned them, and are subject to the *Colao* that is president of the great College, of him they learn the speculative part of Government. Hence they are preferred to employments superior to Viceroyships, only such as are of that College, are admitted to the supream dignity of

of *Colao*: when one of these 25 Doctors is made a Mandarin, (especially if he be one of the three presented by the King) there is erected to him in his own Country a triumphal Arch all of Marble, and very stately, with his name on the front.

5. Nothing can be said distinctly of their Sciences, because in reality they know no distinction. Some of their Kings were the masters of the Liberal and Speculative learning, under mystical numbers and Symbols, they were also the Legislators. Above 1000 Years before Christ, two other Kings composed the book called *Yequim*, being a comment upon those Symbols; then followed Philosophers, like the Stoicks. The most famous *Confucius* composed 9 Books, which are esteem'd (chiefly 5 of them) like our Holy writ, many Doctors comment upon them; he flourished 500 Years before Christ, and aimed at the Reformation of Mankind, and is held in veneration as the universal Master, and a Saint, with Temples dedicated to him. The Government of the City where he was born, remains in his Family; the immediate successor has the title, revenue, and state of a Duke; they are all as soon as born held in great veneration.

6. The 5 principal Books are, *Yequim* that treats of natural Philosophy, fate and predictions; the second, *Xoquim* of Chronology; the third, *Xiquim* Poetically discourses of the Nature of things and Human Affections; the fourth, *Liquin* of Divine Worship; the fifth, *Chun-icu*, Examples of good and bad Kings.

Kings. There are 4 other Books of the same Author, and another called *Mencu*, that treat of Physicks and Morals; out of these is taken a subject for the compositions of such as are examined; there are also 9 Books of Comments upon those, but only one of them is established by Law.

7. They consider 3 principal objects in the World, Heaven, Earth, and Man, and accordingly their learning is divided into 3 Sciences; that of Heaven treats of the Original of all things; that of the Earth, of its position, product and variety; that of Man, of his manners and affections, to whom they ascribe 5 Moral Virtues, Piety, Justice, Policy, Prudence, and Felicity, respecting 5 Orders of Persons in the Common-wealth, Father, and Son, Husband and Wife, King and Subject, elder and younger Brother, and friends among themselves.

8. They have rules of Grammar, understand Rhetorick, are well skilled in Arithmetick, and have knowledge of Geometry, but know nothing of Dialectica, and Algebra; Astronomy is a profession only allowed to two Persons to study, one in each Court, and they leave it hereditary to their Sons; they reckon 5 Elements, Water, Metal, Fire, Wood, and Earth, and appropriate to them as many Planets, *Mercury, Venus, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn*. The Zodiack they divide into 24 Signes, the Year into 12 Moons, and 354 Days, making a Bissextile every three Years of 13 Moons and 383 Days; it begins with the next Moon to the 5th of February. Their Musick



Musick consists all of one sound, the *Bonzes* sing after the manner of our plain Song, their Instruments are of several sorts, for the most part noisy, and some like ours, such as are played upon strings, have them of Silk.

9. Poetry was always much esteemed in *China*; all that was published of this sort, used to be sent to the King, they never write any thing reflecting, or immodest, nor have any letter to express the private parts, so that they are never mentioned in any writing, their Verses are in Rhime. Their Painting was without Oyl, or shadows, till they knew and imitated us, and draw well by the life. Their skill in Physick is the greatest, they have ancient Authors that treat of it, ours are there unknown; bleeding, Cupping, Sirrups, Ghsters, Issues, nor Potions, are not used there, but only Pills. All the Medicines are simples, as Herbs, Roots, Fruit and Seeds, all dry, and therefore their Apothecaries have no pots; the Doctors write no receipts, but bring along with them a case with all Medicines in good order, and compound them before the Patient; their judgment in the Pulse is singular, they ask no questions of the Sick, but give themselves an account of the Disease, and apply the Remedy; their Cures are singular, not but that there are some ignorant among them.

10. In ceremonies they are impertinent, the manner is to bow the Head to the ground, if to a greater Person, they kneel and bow in like manner, in some cases they rise again and repeat it at least 3 times, commonly 4.

to the King &c. Particular garments are used for visiting, unless among familiar friends; if they meet, and one has the garment on, and the other not, he immediately puts it on. for a servant carries it; it is generally black, Doctors, Magistrates, and Gentlemen that wear the habit of Doctors, are excused from wearing of it.

11. The King when he does reverence to his Idols or Mother, holds before his Face a piece of Ivory, a span and half long, and about 4 Fingers broad, all that speak to him use the same ceremony. If two Mandarines in the street cannot avoid meeting without stopping their Chairs, they joyn their hands, and carry them leisurely to their Heads bowing them, which is done as soon as they see one another, and repeated till they be passed by; if one be inferior to the other, he stops the Chair, or in case he be on Horseback, alights and makes a profound reverence; if they are not Mandarines, they make the usual compliments, if common People they joyn hands, carry them to the Forehead shaking. Servants in great Houses do not bow to their Lords, but at the new Year, or when he has been absent, their sign of respect is to stand upright with their Arms hanging down; Mandarines servants speak to them on their knees, to give or receive any thing with one hand is not courteous betwixt equals, and very rude from inferors to superiors.

12. In their visits they use the *Thie*, which is a long piece of Paper made like a Fan, the breadth

breadth is proportionable to the quality of the Person from one to 16 sheets, the *Colaer* use the least; only one line is writ upon it, and contains 9 letters between friends, among others 6, or 7, the purport of them to this effect, *Your great friend and perpetual Disciple of your Doctrin*, (here enters the name) *kisses your hand, and comes to do you reverence.* This Paper is in a purse of the same, and that in another made close and curious.

13. The visiter himself carries this Paper and gives it the Porter, who delivers it to his Master; if he receives the visit and not the *Thie*, he is not obliged to pay it, but if it is left only with the Porter, he pays the visit. Great Men, as *Colaer*, *Mandarines*, and Viceroyes seldome visit any body, but as they pass by the Doors, leave their *Thies*; when they will not receive visits, they set up a Paper over the Door specifying, they are not in Town; all visits are made in the morning, and they always treat with Sweetmeats or Fruit, or at least Drink that is *Cha*.

14. When any one is to absent himself for a time, all friends visit and present him, and he is bound at his return to send presents to all that sent him any; they never visit the Sick, but inquire at the Door of their Health; the Person visited sets the Chairs himself, and wipes them with his sleeve, all the visitors do the same with his. If there be no distinction of superiority, they take their places according to Age, the Person visited the last; as soon as seated, the *Cha* is brought and

and they all Drink. When one speaks of himself, it is with great humility, if they speak of the Son to the Father, they do not say your Son, but the Noble Son; if of the Daughter, the pretious Love; if they inquire about the Sick, they say, How goes the illustrious Sickness; speaking of themselves they do not say, I, but the Schollar, the Disciple, and Persons of mean profession, as a Carryer, they call The great Rod; the Person visited waits upon the visiter to the street, and they part with impertinent Ceremonies, then send Messages to and fro, as if they had not seen one another.

15. They often send presents of Shooes, Stockins, Linnen, Porcelane, Ink, Pencils, and Eatable things of the best. With the present goes a *Tbie*, being a list of the things sent; it is no ill manners to send back all or part; some only send the list of things they design to present, naming very many, as knowing all will not be accepted, and he it is sent to, marks down what he will accept of, others send all the things which are only hired, and so restore what is sent back and pay for the rest; he that receives is obliged to return a present.

16. They use many banquets, which are very costly and last long. There are neither Napkins nor Knives on the Tables, because they Eat as was said of the *Japoneses*, but sitting on Chairs and at high Tables and round them hang cloths in the manner of Pulpit cloths, Dinner is at 7 in the morning, Supper at Evening or Night; upon these



these occasions the Rooms are adorned as our Churches on Holidays; all the time of Eating, there is Musick and Plays acted, some will go to four or more Feasts in one Day; they seem to be of the Opinion of let us Eat and let us Drink, for to morrow we shall Die.

## C H A P. XVI

*Of the Marriages, Burials, Ceremonies, Sacrifices, and belief of the Chineses.*

1. **T**HE Chineses have used an indissoluble form of Marriage, by joynning of hands for above 3000 Years; they also allow of Concubines, which are taken after another manner, and commonly bought. They may part when they please, but till they have Children, are servants to the Wife, their Children call her Mother, and do not put on Mourning for them. When the Man dies, the Wife and Children retain the command of the House, and if she dies, the Concubine succeeds; Widdows may matry again, but are more esteem'd if they do not. In choosing Wives they have respect to good qualities, but for Concubines, beauty, or good humour.

2. They cannot marry into the Fathers kindred, though many degrees removed, nor with any of the firmans, for fear of

H h

Kindred,

kindred, but may with the Mothers, if not near related. Maids seldom marry with Widdowers; there are Matchmakers: The Bridegroom sees not the Bride till she is brought home to him, nor knows her name till made sure; Portions are not used, nor does the Husband buy the Wife, as has been falsely reported of them. On the Wedding Day the Brides goods are carryed in procession, and she at the end of it in a Chair, lock'd up, and the key sent before to the Bridegrooms Mother, for he goes on Horseback well attended to fetch her, if by Night, they carry many Lanthorns on long Poles, the Inheritance is divided between the Male issue without respect to those by the lawful Wife above the others, yet there are some noble Families where the eldest inherits.

3. The Funerals of the *Chineses* are very costly, they bury all in Coffins, according to every ones ability in value, some cost 1000 Ducats, the Coffins are made of thick planks, varnished with *Charam*, and adorned with gilding, unless some that are made of pretious Wood; most of them keep their Coffins by them in the House.

4. No body is buryed within the Cities; without there are sumptuous Temples for their use, with Country Houses about them in places appointed by their Astrologers, the Tombs are covered with polished Stones, and Beasts carved before them, especially the noble ones, as Elephants and Lions, and elegant Epitaphs upon them. Where ever a Man dies, he must be carryed to his own place

place of burial: When one is given over, they carry him into an outward room to die on a paller Bed, but some that are of great quality die in their Alcoves. The Son as raving with grief, pulls down the curtains upon the Dead body, then it is put into the Coffin with the robes of his dignity, and so closed, that no ill smell can come out. It is laid in a great room hung with Mourning and a Picture of the Dead Man, the Children sit round upon the straw and in Mourning, the Women are weeping behind Curtains, many Ceremonies are used while the Corps lies there.

5. The Coffin lies sometimes 2 Years in the House for want of Money; the Funeral Pomp is thus, First, there are carryed great statues of Men and Beasts made of painted Pastboard, Pyramids, and other things in triumphal Chariots, adorned and curiously wrought with Silk; if it be a Person of Quality, all those things are burnt when the Coffin is interred, but the common sort only hire them; after this follow *Bonzos* singing and playing on Musick, then other *Bonzos* who never cut Hair nor beard, and live single in communities; these also play on several sorts of Instruments, next another sect of *Bonzos*, who cut their Hair, praying; after them the friends and relations, then Sons and Grandsons in deep Mourning, and barefooted, with little Truncheons about half a yard long in their hands, on which they lean so, that their Heads hang down near the ground; next them

H h a

comes

comes the Coffin on a thing so big, it is carried by 50 Men, with a curious Pall over it, and about it many Lanthorns on Poles; the last is a multitude of Women in Chairs, who are heard to cry.

6. The Mourning is of such course Hemp, it makes the Men look monstrous, Sons for their Fathers wear it 3 Years, and in all that time sit not on Chairs, but little wooden stools, nor dine on a Table, touch Flesh, drink Wine, lie on Bedsteads, go to Feasts, go abroad unless in a close Chair, go to examinations, nor can officiate any publick Employ, and finally (they say) they abstain from Women; Mourning for a Wife lasts a Year, there are for relations of 5 and of 3 Months, and for friends of 3 Days. Every Town has a publick place of buryal for the Poor, some save the trouble, burning the Dead and burying the Ashes; these in the Province of *Suchue* are put into pots close stopped and thrown into Rivers.

7. The Funeral of the Queen Mother in the Year 1614, was very magnificent; to omit the Mourning, and lesser circumstances. The King with his own hand strewed on the body, Pearls to the value of 70000 Crowns, and laid on the sides of it 50 bars of Gold, and 50 of Silver; all Persons of quality of both Sexes came to worship her; all Magistrates were ordered to their Tribunals, and to fast 3 Days; the Officers of the Revenue to provide wax perfumes, Images and other necessities to be burnt, the expence in only these small things amounted to

30000



30000 Ducats; the Royal Colledge was commanded to write Poems fit for that occasion, 1000 Men were posted at each of the nine Gates of the City, thence to the place of buryal, which was 12 miles, a lane of Soldiers to be made, 3000 men carried the Coffin, 1000 accompanied it, 40000 guarded the buryal place, while the Ceremony lasted, the ways were repaired and railed in, that no body might cross them; at every 20 paces was laid a basket of yellow Earth to be spread about when the Coffin went by; many Tents were set up to rest by the way, and provisions for all that attendance that, amounted to 80000.

8. After many Ceremonies, the Coffin was placed on a Triumphal Chariot with many lights and perfumes; the King accompanied it to the 8th Gate of the Palace, great was the order and silence observed, the journey was so Ceremonious, it lasted 3 Days. At last the Coffin was removed to a more costly Chariot, they sacrificed a Bull, Aromatick Wine, Perfumes, and many Garments to the Earth, imploring its tutelär Spirits to receive the dead body graciously. The Ceremonies lasted long, the King favoured all that assisted at them, eased the Kingdom of Taxes, set open the prisons, all as an Oblation of filial Love.

9. The *Chineses* follow 3 sects which they endeavour to reconcile; the 2 first natural, the third Idolatrous. The first of the 2 followed by the Lawyers is Antient, adores no Idols, owne a superior Power, that can punish

nish and reward, but allows it no Temples, Sacrifice, Prayers, or Ministers, speak honourably of it as of a Divine Being, attribute nothing indecent to it, but being blind in their Faith, worship Heaven, Earth, and Man. Only in the two Courts, there are Temples dedicated to Heaven and Earth, where the King in Person sacrifices, and in his absence the Masters of the Rites; in all Cities there are Temples of the tutelar Spirits, where the *Mandarines* sacrifice, as they do to the Spirits of Rivers, Mountains, and 4 parts of the World. There are also Temples of famous Men, and publick benefactors in which are their Images; they ask nothing for the next life, but happiness in this, in fine, all tends to the Government, Concord Plenty, and Exercise of Virtue.

10. The second Sect is of the *Tançus*, the Author of it *Lautu*, a Philosopher who they say was 80 Years in his Mothers Womb, and lived in the time of *Confusius*; this Sect has many followers, who live together, do not marry, let their Hair grow, wear ordinary Cloaths, only instead of a Cap they wear a small Crown which holds the knot of their Hair at the top. They own one great God, and others lesser but all Corporeal, allow of Heaven and Hell, the Felicity with the body, and even in this World; they feign, that through certain exercises, Men become young again; they say and believe any thing that comes into their fancy, they have Musick and good Instruments, and are therefore called to Funerals

als and Sacrifices; they pretend to Sorcery, and promise Rain, which always fails to their shame.

11. They also pretend to lay Devils that haunt Houses, and are as successful as in the other; their chief study is a quiet and long Life, but more for the long, which they endeavour to purchase at any rate.

12. The third Sect, (as its Author) is called *Xaca*, he is said to be son of *Maga*, and a dream, for that she dreamed she conceived looking upon a white Elephant, was delivered of him through her side, and died immediatly. *Xaca* did penance for this misfortune on the snowy Mountain, and had there in 12 Years 4 Masters, became learned in the Science of the first causes, and had many Disciples who spread his Sect through all *Asia*. This Doctrine was brought into *China* about the Year of Grace 63, at the instance of the Emperor *Hamin*; the followers of this Opinion once amounted to three Millions, now they are but few.

13. Their Priests wear neither Hair nor beard, adore Idols; believe there is Reward and punishment in the next Life, and live in community 500 together; they are called to Sacrifices and Burials, and wear a sort of Copes, Eat no Flesh, Fish, Eggs, nor drink Wine, have large inclosures in Villages, and live under a superior; others live in Caves, Dens, and on Rocks, some do most rigid penance. Some lock themselves in narrow Houses, or rather boxes of Wood

fall of spikes, the points inward, and live in these a Month without being able to lean for the spikes, or Eating; only Drinking *Chia*. But others affirm, they go in provided with lumps of Beef hard baked, which they dissolve in that hot liquor, there is another sort called Vagabonds, that are generally villanous fellows, guilty of all crimes especially Robberies. There are also Nuns of these Orders, their Heads shorn, they are but few, and not enclosed.

14. They believe the transmigration of Souls, that they descend and pass through nine Hells, then return to be Men at best, or else beasts like Men, or, what is worst of all Birds. The wisest of them direct all their study toward the *Prima causa*; after the last death, they believe there is neither reward nor punishment.

15. Of Transmigration, they believe if a Man was courteous, he becomes Man again, if subject to passion, a Lion; if cruel a Tiger; if unchast, a Hog; and if given to stealing, a Bird of Prey. From these proceed many other Sects; it is a Proverb of these three Sects, that the Lawyers govern the Kingdom, the *Taucus*, the Body, and the *Bongos* the Heart.

16. In their Sacrifices are offered a beast like a Goat, Swine, Oxen, Cocks and Hens, all sorts of Fish, chiefly the Barble, Rice, Grain, and Wine. If the King sacrifice, the offering is divided among *Mandarines*, if great Men, among their Relations, if ordinary People, they Eat it among them.

All



All other things offered are burnt, as Silk, leaves of Gold and Silver, cut Paper, Candles, Perfumes, &c. there are no Priests appointed for this, every one does it for himself.

17. The *Chineses* are great admirers of virtue, and have a sort of Commandments written in their Houses, much of the same nature as ours. There are strangers in *China*, who differ in point of belief, but not considerable. We have already mentioned those barbarous Inhabitants of a part of the Island *Hainan*, and others in the Mountains of *Quantung*, *Hubeu*, and *Quiangsi*, these follow the Opinions of the rest of the Kingdom. In the Province of *Yunnan* there is a large tract of Land inhabited by a People differing in language and customs, having a King of their own, but tributary to *China*; In some parts there are Mahometans who have their Mosques, but ill observe their law. They marry their Sons to *Chinese* Women, but the Daughters only marry among themselves, because Women follow the opinion of the Husbands, and these never change. Their first coming into *China* was about 800 Years since being called in by a King to assist him in his Wars, and having served well, such as would, were allowed to settle there. There are Jews in the Province of *Honan*, and in the Metropolis of it, *Caifumfu*; they have a neat Synagogue, which shall be described hereafter. For want of Priests they are become very ignorant In their law, and many become Mahometans and Pagans.

## C H A P. XVII.

*Of the Original of the Kingdoms of China,  
the Pallace and Government of it.*

1. **T**HERE is no certain account of the Original of this Kingdom, though their Histories begin at the Universal flood. The first three Kings are esteemed Saints; since that time the succession has been in 22 families; this now reigning, has continued 300 Years; the first of it did all that was possible to secure his line; he abolished all Royalties, forbid under severe Penalties, any of the blood Royal to have any hand in Government, and gave all the power to Lawyers who were to attain it by learning and virtue; the Monarchy continues as he left it.

2. They reckon Years from the beginning of the last Reign, the first actions of it are coining of Money, Crowning of the Queen, giving her and the Concubines names, offering great Sacrifices, giving Alms, treating Magistrates, setting open Prisons, turning the Ladies out of the Court, taking in new ones; all the States acknowledging the King, giving him a new name. He is stiled Emperor, the Courtiers call him Son of Heaven, and pay him a respect more than Human.

3. The reason the Ladies are turned out of Court is because many are old, and the

the deceased may have had to do with the young, and therefore the successor must not venture coming where he has been; beautiful Maids are sought for this purpose all over the Kingdom, and the Fathers strive to marry them off, that they may not be carried to Court.

4. The Women turned out, are all sold at the Pallace Gate to the best bidders, who take them for venery; none but mean People buy them, their Faces and hands are covered, and the buyer sees them not till he carries them home, and takes them for better for worse.

5. There are about 3000 of these Women, who live in four Pallaces; one King tired with choosing, was drawn in a Chariot by Goats, and wherever they stopped, he took up, another chose by the Pictures of the beautifullest.

6. Formerly the Kings were more familiar with their subjects, and visited the Kingdom, giving publick Audience; this custom decayed by degrees, and the common way of doing business is by petition, but still the King gives some publick Audiences Monthly, and at the four seasons of the Year goes to sacrifice in a Temple without the City.

7. The first that introduced this retirement was *Vamlie* Grand-father to him now reigning, he did it because he was very gross, and would not lessen the Royal Majesty, since his time they are not so often seen as formerly. The Temple the King goes to at *Peking*,

is round, all of Marble, and a beautiful structure; that of *Nanking* is long, and has five lles, born up by many columns, all plain except the Pedestals to show the rarity of them, for that being many in numbers, very high and thick, and all exactly alike, each is made of one Tree. To these Temples there are many Gates adorned with gilded Iron, in them many Altars with Images of the Sun, Moon, Planets, Spirits, Mountains, Rivers, and other things, to signify he, to whom they sacrifice there, is Lord of all. All the rest of the Year besides the times of these sacrifices and audiences, the King continues in his Pallace, and is seen by none but particular persons.

8. Some will judge the Kings of *China* live a confined Life, but their Pallace is a City consisting of many Pallaces, Orchards, and Gardens inclosed within a wall of a vast circumference; there is one Pallace for the King, Queen, and small Children, another for the Queen-Mother, another for the Sons that are marryed, another for the Queens, four for the Ladies, another called the cold Pallace for the old Men; Apartments for Eunuchs, Servants, Mathematicians, and Priests, an infinite number of Courts, or Cloisters, and lesser Apartments for all that live within, which are above 17000.

9. The structure of the Pallace is sumptuous, much after our manner adorned with curious Carving, Painting, and Gilding. A River runs through the Gardens which are adorned with artificial Mounts, and they covered



covered with delightful variety of birds and beasts. All is encompassed by two walls distant from each other, the circumference is about 4 Miles, that of *Nanking* about five; there are 4 Gates that look to the four quarters of the World, and have strong guards of Elephants and Soldiers, of these 3000 always do duty in one of the Courts.

10. Next to the Empress, are six Queens, who upon publick occasions, sit on as many Chairs somewhat below the two Imperial Thrones; then there are 30 that have particular honours allowed them: the last in degree are the Ladies. If the Empress has a Son, he takes place of all others, if not the eldest of any of these Women; there are 12000 Eunuchs, with their proper Officers. The President who answers our Secretary of State, may come to the King without asking leave, another who is supreme Judge of the Eunuchs, is also Captain of the guard of 3000 Horse and 6000 Foot, the Eunuchs have all the best Employments, and are for the most part married.

11. In the Court most go on Horseback, few in Chairs, except the great Eunuchs. The Father of the King now reigning, had a most insolent favourite Eunuch, upon the Kings death he kill'd himself, but was drag'd and torn to pieces by the rabble, and the King seized his vast Treasure. Many Fathers geld their Sons to make them capable of this sort of preferment.

12. No Criminal can escape Justice in this vast Empire; their submission to the King  
is

is worthy Admiration ; every Body speaks to him on their Knees with the Ivory (already mentioned) before their Mouths. The King's Garments differ not from those of the Subjects in form, but in the costliness, and being embroidered with Dragons which none can wear but he, his Wives, and the Royal Family. It is not easie to know the real value of the King's Revenue, but it is reckoned above One hundred and fifty Millions of Ducats yearly ; Fifty-five are for the King's Expence, the Ninety-five for his Ministers, Examinations, Works and Presents.

---

## C H A P. XVIII.

*Of the Royal Marriages, Nobility, Counsels, and Government of China in Peace and War.*

1. **W**HEN there were many Kings in *China*, they married into those Royal Families. Now there is but one, and he is forbid by Law marrying out of the Kingdom ; he must of necessity marry a Subject. The Great Men will not give the King their Daughters, because they must be first searched, even in those Parts none but a Husband may see, and if not liked they are sent back. Therefore in the Choice, they have no regard to Birth, but Youth, Beauty,

Beauty, good Inclinations and Parts.

2. Such a one being found, two old Women strip her stark naked, and examine as well inward as outwardly the Parts not to be named, then put her into a heat to discover whether her Sweat be offensive. All things answering expectation, she is carried to Court in State, and there instructed in such manner as she may deserve to be called Mother of the Kingdom; for that is the Stile they give their Queens. Some of them have proved incomparable.

3. No such care is taken in marrying the Princes. The Princesses chuse one of Twelve Young Men of Eighteen Years of Age, placed so as they may be seen without seeing the Princesses: But the Husbands are treated so impertinently by the Princesses, that the Nobility avoid them; so that commonly their Husbands are no better born than the Kings Wives.

4. The Nobility were of another Nature when there were Titles and Lordships. Now all depends upon Learning, which makes any Mechanick a Gentleman; the want of it renders a Gentleman base. This is the reason their Nobility is not of long standing; for the Sons of Learned Men being left rich, do not study, and consequently have no Employments, and the Family perishes. Yet they have five sorts of Nobility. First, the Blood-royal thus preserved, the Prince inherits the Crown, the other Sons live in other Cities with Titles, but must not stir thence. Their eldest Sons succeed them,  
the

the others marry the best they can, and so their Children as long as the Family lasts. The Daughters (not looked upon in case of Inheritance) marry with Gentlemen. The second sort consist of those who have Titles, but no Dominions, and are inferior to some Magistrates. The third, the Magistrates. The fourth, the Students, who aim at Degrees. The fifth, those who live upon their Estates, or Merchandice, who if not very rich, are looked upon no better than the Commonalty.

5. The Government is in the Hands of six Councils, so highly respected, it is scarce credible. Each of them has a President and two Assessors, this is the next Dignity to that of the *Colaoz*. So that a Viceroy of a Province is happy, if after his Government expires, he reaches to be one of those Assessors. Many more Officers belong to each of these Courts; the first is answerable to our Counsel of State, the second to that of War, the third is of Ceremonies, the fourth of the Revenue, the fifth of the publick Works, the sixth of Criminal Causes. There are also nine other Courts; the first like our Chancery, the second the high Stewards, the third the Master of the Horses, the fourth the Master of the Ceremonies of the Court; the fifth, of particular Rites; the sixth, of the Petitions given the King; the other three of lesser Matters. Every City has its own particular Council, each Metropolis of a Province five distinct Tribunals. Each Town has a private Court.

6. The



6. The great *Mandarines* are carried about Town in Chairs adorned with Ebony and Gold by four Men, with others by to relieve them; before the Chiefest go Men by Pairs with long Staves, always crying out, two others follow these with Tables, on which is writ the quality of the Person carried, after these go six scattering Bamboes, with which they use to bastinate Offenders and others with Fetters and Chains. Near the Chair a Man with a silk Umbrello three times as big as those we use, two just before the Chair carry a small Box with the Royal Seal, on one side a great Fan that shades all the Chair, behind go the Pages and other Attendance on Foot and Horseback.

7. When one of these goes by, all things are taken from the Windows, the Images of Funerals are lowred, the People stop on the sides of the Streets, there is no noise, and he passes without moving his Eyes. When he goes to any City, the ancient Men receive him at the Gate on their Knees. The King bestows Honour on Magistrates Mothers as they rise; and when they die, buries them with Pomp, and assigns them state-ly Pallaces while living.

8. The Prisons are large, and commonly near to the Palaces of the *Mandarines* they belong to; they have no Grates to the Street; the Dungeons are terrible; the other Part is in Rows sustained by Pillars with Planks along for Beds, where every one lies with Fetters on his Hands and his Feet, as

it were in the Stocks; over them all run long Chains, so that they cannot turn. The lesser Criminals are more favourably dealt with, but all fare hard; for the Prisons serve to punish as well as to secure Men. The Prisoners have much to do at their Entrance with the Keepers about their Fees, for they pay none at going out.

9. Their Punishments differ not much from ours, but whipping is used before all other Penalties; the Lashes are given on the bare Buttocks and Thighs, as well to Women as Men, and that before the Tribunal, or in the Street when the Crime is done there; no Body values the Shame, but only the Smart. They also have several ways of Racking.

10. Military Science is very ancient among the *Chineses*. They had tedious Wars with their Neighbours, conquered the Island *Ceylon*, and subdued One hundred and Fourteen Kings. They always entertain a vast number of Souldiers; in *Nanking* there are Forty thousand, in *Peking* Eighty thousand, all over the Kingdom above a Million, but they are all Cowards. Yet of late Years they beat the *Japoneses* out of *Corea*, and the *Tartars* out of the Province of *Peking*. They use foolish Reviews, in which, like our Boys, they represent *Tartars* and *Chineses*, and the former are always beaten.

11. Gun-Powder is of most ancient standing among them; of it they make curious and costly Fire-works; they have some Cannon,

non, but no Skill in the use of it, only shoot at random. Their most usual Arms are Lances, Arrows and Cutlases. There is a sort of Back and Breast Pieces Proof against Arrows. Their Civil Government is very just, because bad Ministers are severely punished, and the King hears Complaints against them. Thus much may suffice for the Affairs of *China*.

---

C H A P. XIX.

*The Division of the Dominions the Portugueses do, or have possessed in those Parts, commonly comprehended under the general Name of India: Some Remarks on the Customs and Religion of those People, with some Account of the Christians of St. Thomas, and of the Island of Ceylon.*

1. **T**HE Portugues Dominions generally comprehended under the Name of *India*, though dispersed along the Coasts of *Asia* and *Africk* may well be divided into five Parts. The first containing the Islands of that vast Ocean, as those of *Maldivia*, the King whereof, being a Christian, with his Wife and Family resided at *Cochim*; that of *Ceylon*, in which we have the Town of

*Columbo*, and a Right to the Kingdoms of *Jafanapatan*, *Cota* and *Candea* by Donation from their natural Kings; the Island of *Manar*, with its Fort and Fishery of Pearl; Eastward, the Sovereignty of all that *Archipelago*, the *Malaco* Islands, and that of *Macao* on the Coast of *China*.

2. The Second Part lies from Cape *Corrientes* to the Mouth of the *Red Sea*, Peopled by *Moors* along the Coast, and the Island by Idolatrous and Brutal *Cafres*.

3. The Third is divided from *Persia* by the *Persian Golph*, inhabited by *Moors* of different Opinions.

4. The Fourth contains the Kingdom of *Ormuz*, and neighbouring Parts that Trade thither, especially *Baharem*, so famed for the Fishery of Pearl, that draws all Mankind thither.

5. The Fifth is called *India* within and without *Ganges*. All that lies between *Indu* and *Ganges* which is above 550 Leagues along the Coast, is inhabited by two Nations, Pagans and Mahometans, who for above three Ages have been possessed of that Tract called *Indostan*.

6. In this Fifth Part is included the principal Part of the *Portugues* Patrimony. It begins at *Diu*, a City not inferior to many famous in *Europe*; and was once the Metropolis of *Cambaya*. Almost opposite to it is *Damam*, both which almost shut up the Mouth of the Bay of *Cambaya*, and extend their Command Twenty-four Leagues, in which



which space are many Villages that yield a considerable Revenue.

7. From the River of *Agacaim* to that of *Bombaim*, are Eight Leagues, and in that space the City *Agacaim* with its Forts and Villages, as *Agacaim*, *Bandora*, *Tana*, *Cacajay*, and opposite to it the Island *Salfete*, whose wonderful Structures prove it to have been the Metropolis of that Country and Court of Princes. The Dominions of *Cambaya* once extended thither. The next is *Chaul*, a Place of Importance. Then the Capital of our Empire, that is the Island *Goemante*, which signifies, *Happy Land*, corruptly called *Goa*; and *Trissuari* (signifying Thirty Villages, for so many it contains) which on the Continent commands the Lands of *Salfete* and *Bordes*. There follow on the Coast of *Camaran* towards Cape *Comori*, the Towns of *Onor*, *Beacalor* and *Mangalor*; then in *Malabar*, *Cananor*, *Cranganor*, *Canlam*, and the chief Port of our Fleets *Cochim*. Turning the Cape, appears the Pearl Fishery, and above it the Cities *Negapatan*, *St. Thomas* and other Towns if not Subject to, at least Inhabited and defended by *Portugueses*.

8. The Exterior *India* begins at the River *Ganges*, and reaches to *China* and *Cambodia*, and is terminated by the River *Mecom*. It is inhabited by Heathens worse, if possible, than the others. Here the *Portugueses* have the rich City of *Malaca*, Metropolis of that Kingdom, and the greatest

Place of Trade of all those *Eastern Provinces*.

9. Something has been already said of the Manners of all these People, we will add somewhat in general of *India*, whereof much relates to the greatest Part of *Asia*. Those Heathens have a Book they believe in, and esteem as we do the Holy Scripture. It is writ in Verse, (as they say that understand it) pleasing and ingenious, but it seems strange to us there should be any Harmony in Verses composed of Seventy-five Syllables, for so many an Author say they contain.

10. They believe in one God Creator of all Things, yet allow other increated Gods; that there is Heaven and Hell, and that the Souls of such as die in Sin go into Beasts, and stay there till being purged, they go to Eternal Rest. They esteem Cows as properest for this Transmigration. When one is dying, they bring one to him, and put the Tail into his Hand, that when his Soul departs, it may be near the Door it is to enter at.

11. They allow no Free Will; and some are of Opinion, That the Souls return from Hell into other Bodies till they merit Heaven; and that there is an indifferent Place without Reward or Punishment for such as live indifferently. The Sins they esteem most hainous, are Murder, Theft, Drinking of Wine, taking away another Man's Wife. The First is wiped off with Pilgrimages; the second with Alms; the third with

with Fasting; and the fourth with Sacrifices; some are of Men, the greatest of Cows. Some will lie down under the Wheels of the heavy Carts of their Idols, which crush them to peices. Others wear Irons with Spikes that run into them. Others hang themselves on a Hook, and there sing Verses to their Idols.

12. They maintain Hospitals, where they look after sick Birds and Beasts, and send Men abroad to bring them in, but have no Compassion for Men, saying, Those Afflictions are sent them for their Sins. There are Men employed to buy Birds or other Creatures, only to restore them to their Liberty. They believe God has five Regents that govern the World, and every one of them a Wife, those are called *Xadaxivam*, *Rudra*, *Maescura*, *Visnu*, and *Brabema*; the Wives, *Humani*, *Parvadi*, *Maenonadi*, *Lacami*, and *Exarasvadi*. The first governs the first Heaven, where are all the Planets; the second, the Fire; the third, the Air; the fourth, the Water; the fifth, the Earth. *Brabema*, *Visnu* and *Rudra* are the Chief, and form a Body with three Heads, called *Mahamurte*, signifying, the three Chiefs. Hence it is inferred, the *Indians* had some knowledge, though imperfect, of the Blessed Trinity.

13. They are much addicted to Witchcraft and Superstition, and believe there are Fourteen Worlds, and that this we live in is an Image of that in Heaven. Their se-

veral Families touch not one another, nor eat together. Tradesmen cannot marry out of their own Trade. The most renowned Families among them are the *Raja's*, an ingenious People that rather lose their Lives than their Arms in Battle. The *Bramenes*, who contend for Precedence with the *Raja's*. The *Chatinas*, which are the richest Merchants. The *Balalas*, or Country People, held in such esteem, that Kings marry their Daughters to them, saying, *They are the Publick Substance*. From these four Roots spring One hundred ninety-six Branches divided into *Valangas*, that is, of the Right-hand, and *Elanges* of the Left, but none of these are honoured as the other four.

14. Let us say somewhat of the Christians of *St. Thomas*. Four Leagues from *Cochin*, on the *Malabar* Coast, is the City *Cran-ganor*, almost encompassed by a River, inhabited by *Christians*, *Gentiles*, *Mahometans* and *Jews*. The whole Kingdom takes Name from the City; it has a great Trade, is frequented by Merchants from *Siria*, *Egypt*, *Persia* and *Arabia*, by reason of the plenty of Pepper brought thither. At the arrival of the *Portugueses* in *India*, it was governed in the form of a Commonwealth, but subject to *Zamori*, whom they cast off, seeing him weakned by our Arms.

15. Their Heathen Rites are the same with those of the other *Malabars*. The Christians, called of *St. Thomas*, who inhabit from this City to *Coromandel* and *Melispur*, the place



place where that Apostle was buried, have Churches like ours in *Europe*; on the Altars and Walls Crosses painted, but no other Images; no Bells; the People meet on *Sundays* to hear Sermons, and other Service Their head Bishop resides in *Chaldea*, has twelve Cardinals, two Patriarchs, Archbishops, Bishops, and other Prelates and Fathers.

16. The Priests are shorn in the form of a Cross, they consecrate leavened Bread, and Wine made of Rasins for want of other, Baptize after Forty Days, unless there be danger of Death; instead of extream Unction the Priests bless the Sick, use Holy Water, bury after our manner; the Relations and Friends eat together eight Days while the Ceremonies last. If there be no Will the next of Kin inherits; the Widows recover their Portion, but forfeit it if they Marry within a Year.

17. They have all our Holy Scripture in Hebrew and Caldaick with Expositions, which they Read in Schools; their Divines interpret it well, chiefly the Prophets, which they study most. They observe the same Lent and Advent as we do. On the Eve of the Resurrection they neither eat nor drink, and keep that Day with great Solemnity; as also the Sunday of *Pasch Bonus*, in remembrance that on that Day St. Thomas felt our Saviour's side; they observe our very Festivals, as *Sundays*, the Feasts of our Lord, Lady and Apostles, and have the same *Bissexile* or Leap

*Leap Year* as the *Latines*. Both they and the *Gentiles* keep the Feast of the Apostle on the first Day of *June*. There are Monasteries of Monks and Nuns cloathed in black, and religiously observe their Rules. The Priests observe conjugal Chastity, and marry not a second time. There is no Divorce allowed between Man and Wife.

18. In the Year 1544 came to *Cochim*, *Jacob* a *Caldean* Bishop of *Cranganor*, where being dangerously sick, he sent for the Treasurer *Peter de Sequeyra*, and told him, Necessity had obliged him to pawn two Copper-Plates with Characters engraven on them, which were Original Grants and Privileges bestowed on the Apostle *St. Thomas* by the Sovereigns of those Countries, when he Preached there; that he desired him to release them, lest they should be lost if he died, for if he lived he would take them out himself. This Prelate found the only way to lose them, in trusting the *Portugueses*; for *Sequeyra* paid the Two hundred *Royals* they were pawned for, put them into the Treasury, and they were never more heard of.

19. The Governor *Martin Alfonso de Sousa*, after long search for some Body that could understand them, had found a retired Jew on the Mountain, who said they were writ in the *Caldean*, *Malabar* and *Arabian* Languages, and the Substance of them was, That the Prince then Reigning of his free Gift granted to *Thomas* at *Cranganor*, such a Parcel of Ground to build a Church; for the

the Maintenance whereof he assigned the Fifts of Merchandize.

20. Very much might be said of the Island *Ceylon*, but I will only add a little to what is already said. About Five hundred Years before Christ, a Heathen was King of *Tenagarii*, and lorded it over a great part of the East. He banished his Son and Heir *Vigia Raja* for his depraved wicked Life. The young Man took Ship with 700 Men like himself, and put into the Port of *Preature*, between *Trinquilimale* & *Iasanapatan* in the Island *Ceylon*, then not inhabited, but abounding in delightful Rivers, Springs, Woods, Fruit-trees, and sightly Birds and Beads; whence the new Planters gave it the name of *Lancao*, which signifies Paradise, and is still held the delight of all the East.

21. The first Town they built was *Monteta* opposite to *Manar*, whence they traded with *Cholca Raja*, the nearest King on the Continent; he knowing who this Prince was, gave him his Daughter to Wife, and Women for his Companions, with them he sent Labourers and Workmen to forward that Plantation; the Prince when he saw his Power increase, stiled himself Emperor of the Island. Strangers call these People *Galar*, that is banished Men, because their Original was such.

22. *Vigia Raja* dying without Children, left the Crown to his Brother, in whose line it continued 900 Years, the fruitfulness of the Island and fame of its excellent Cinnamon,

men, drew thither the *Chineses*, who marrying with the *Galas*, brought another race which to this day are called *Chingalas*, grown very powerful, and most fit for Courtiers, being most subtle and false.

23. The first line being extinct, the Kingdom fell to *Dambadine Pandar Pracura Mabago*, who was treacherously taken by the *Chineses*, after restored, and then slain by *Alagexere*, who in his absence had usurped the Crown; this usurper held it 10 Years, and dying without Issue, and two Sons of *Dambadine*, who were fled for fear of the Tyrant, being found the eldest succeeded, his Name was *Maba Pracura Mabago*, he gave to his Brother the Dominion of the four *Corlas*, and settled his Court at *Cota*, which he built to that effect, by a Daughter married to *Cholca Raja* of the ancient blood Royal, he had a Grandson who succeeded him. Afterwards the line failing, *Queta Permal* King of *Iasapaton*, inherited and called himself *Brenegaboa*, that is, King by force of Arms, for that he had overcome his Brother, King of the *Corlas*.

24. His Son *Caypura Pandar* succeeded him, and the King of the *Corlas* having killed him, possessed himself of the Crown, and took the name of *Javira, Procura Magabo*; these two Brothers were of the blood Royal, and the King *Maba Pracura* had given them those two Crowns; after the Tyrant, Reigned his Son *Drama Procura Magaba* then living when *Vasco de Gama* discovered *India*, afterwards



terwards about the Year 1500, that Empire was divided between three Brothers, into so many Kingdoms. *Boenegababo Pandar* had *Cota*; *Reigam Pandar* had *Keigam*; and *Maduze Pandar* had *Ceitavaca*.

25. In the Country of *Dinavaca* which is the Center of this Island rises that vast high Mountain called *Pico de Adam*, because some believed our first Father lived there, and that the print of a foot still seen upon a stone on the top of it, is his; the Natives call it *Amala Saripadi*, that is the Mountain of the footstep. Some Springs running down it, at the bottom form a Rivulet, where Pilgrims wash, and believe it purifies them. The stone on the top is like a Tombstone, the print of the foot seems not artificial, but as if it had been made in the same nature as when one treads in Clay, which makes it be looked upon as miraculous.

26. The Pilgrims of all sorts who come from as far as *Persia* and *China*, being washed, go up to the top, near which hangs a bell which they strike and take the sounding of it as a sign of their being purified, as if any bell being struck, would not sound. The opinion of the Natives is, that *Drama Raja* Son of an ancient King of that Island, doing Penance in that Mountain with many Disciples, when he was about to depart at their instance, left that print there as a Memorial; therefore they respect it as a relict of a Saint, and generally call him *Endam*, that is *Wisenan*.

27. Some

27. Some believe this Saint was *Josaphat*, but it is more likely it was *St. Thomas*, who has left many Memorials in the East, and in the West, in *Brasil* and in *Paraguay*. The natural Woods in this Island are like the curious Orchards and Gardens in *Europe*, and produce Citrons, Lemmons, and sundry sorts of delicious fruits; it abounds in Cinnamon, Ginger, Cordamom, Sugar, Canes, Honey, and Hemp; of Metals, Iron, whereof they make the best Firelocks of all the East; of precious Stones, Rubies, Zafires, Cats-eyes, Topaces, Chrisolites, Amethists, and Berillus; of valuable beasts, Civet-Cats, and the noblest of the Elephants of all the East; there are excellent Rivers abounding with variety of Fish. All round it are Ports fit for the largest Ships,

28. In all parts of *India* there are Prodigious Wizards. When *Vasco de Gama* sailed upon that discovery, some of them at *Calicut*, showed other People in basons of Water, the three Ships he had with him. When *D. Francis de Almeyda* the first Vice-roy of *India*, was coming for *Portugal*; some Witches at *Coehim* told him, he should not pass the Cape of *Good Hope*, and there he was buried. At *Mascate* there are such Sorcerors, that they Eat a thing inwardly, only fixing their Eyes upon it; with their sight draw the entrails of any Human body, and so kill many. One of these fixing his Eyes on a *Bateca*, or Water-Mellon, sucked out all the inside, it being cut open to try the

the experiment, was found hollow, and he the more to satisfy the beholders, vomitted it up.

29. To conclude the description of these parts of *Asia*, let us say something of the most exquisite production of Nature it affords; doubtless the most wonderful thing in the World is, a Tree there growing, of which alone are built Ships and Houses, the one loaded, the other stored with all things necessary for Human Life, and on it alone, Men may feed and cloath themselves; having seen no particular account hereof, I will be the more plain in describing it. The Tree is about 50 foot high, on the top grow the leaves like that of a Palm or Date-tree in shape, but more large and beautiful, it bears about 50 of them, and among them about 12 clusters, each containing about 50 of those we call *Cocos*, as big as good Pumpkins, so that one Tree sometimes produces 600, never less than 400 of them.

30. First on the outside is a thick tough shell or rhine, as is over the Walnut-shell, though not of that nature, then a hard shell, and within it a sweet kernel; that outward rhine is spun, and of it all manner of tackle and cordage is made, of the inward shell Porrengers, Salts, Flasks, Spoons, and other curiosities, besides being burnt, it is a pleasant sort of Cole, to this shell sticks the kernel which is hollow, white as Snow, about an inch thick, juyce and sweet as Almonds, it serves to season several things, as Milk  
and

and Sugar with us, and Eaten alone, is pleasant, strengthening, but hard of digestion; within that hollow is about half a pint of most pleasant Water, which at certain times congeals and forms a substance like an Apple, (called by the *Indians Pango*) of a delightful taste, as is the conserve of Sugar, of the same Tree, and this same is the seed that produces the Tree.

31. To make Wine, Sugar, Vinegar, and other things of this *Coco*, they suffer not the cluster to grow, but bind the branch hard, when green, with cords made of the same Tree, cut the end of the branch, and put it into a Vessel, into which it bleeds like a Vine. This liquor is called *Sura* and a great quantity of it is gathered; to make Wine they distil it, some is stronger, some weaker, as our Brandy, the hottest they call *Orraca* (and we corruptly *Rack*) to sweeten and colour it, they put in Raisins, and it is a plentiful and pretious Commodity in all that part of *Asia*; Vinegar is made only by leaving that liquor some Days in Earthen Vessels; Sugar by boyling it to a consistence, with this Sugar they make good preserves, one of the kernel of the same *Coco* grated.

32. Oyl is made of the *Coco's* prepared and ground; it serves not only to burn, but to Eat, dress Wounds, cure Colds, and purge, it is a considerable commodity; that mass of *Coco* which has been so pressed or ground, is excellent food for Cattle; so that of the Wood, Leaves and Shells of this Tree  
is



is made the Ship, Sails and Rigging, without any other material, and of the Fruit, Liquors and Preserves are made to load it; Of the Leaves are also made Brooms and Baskets; of the Wood, Darts and Lances not much inferior to Iron; it also bears a sort of Down that serves instead of Tinder. When any of these Trees is cut down, they take off the Head, called *Palmita*, which is of an excellent taste, like to that of our Cardoons. It is therefore not to be admired, that the *Indians* take much pains to raise a Wood of these Trees, and are so much troubled to have them destroyed in time of War.

---

## CHAP. XX.

*Of the Memory there is of the Preaching the Gospel of Christ in all Asia and its Islands, particularly by the Apostle Saint Thomas in those Parts mentioned in this History, and of the Extirpation and Reparation of the same.*

I. **F**OR the better understanding of what follows, it is necessary to run over the Position of these Countries. Off from the Island *Zanzibara* appears on the Coast of *Africa* the Empire of *Ethiopia*, divided on the East from *Asia* by the Red Sea, begin-  
K k
ning

ning on the North at the City *Suanquem*, and ending on the South almost at the Mouth of the Red Sea. Between that Sea and the Persian Golph lies that part of *Arabia*, which is most Fruitful and best Peopled. Ten Leagues from this Shore, and three from that of *Persia*, just within the Mouth of the Gulph, is the Island *Gerum*, and in it the City *Ormuz*, a Kingdom more famous for its Trade than extent. From thence runs along the Coast of *Caramania* subject to *Persia* for the space of Two hundred Leagues, to the City *Diul* seated on the Westernmost Mouth of *Indus*, which River makes one of the sides of that Continent which is properly called *India*, and is in the form of a Lozenge.

2. Of its most distant Angles, the one lies North between the Fountains of *Indus* and *Ganges* on Mount *Imaus*; the other South, and is the famous Cape *Comori*, the distance between these two Angles is Four hundred Leagues. The other two Angles which lie East and West, at Three hundred Leagues interval reach the Mouths of the same two Rivers. This vast Continent, called by the Natives *Indostan*, is divided into several Kingdoms and Dominions, as are (to begin at the Mouth of *Indus* where we left off) the Kingdoms of *Gurzarate* or *Cambaya*, *Decan*, *Bisnagar*; those of *Malabar*, viz. *Canor*, *Calicut*, *Cranganor*, *Cochin*, *Perca*, *Coulam* and *Travancor*, reaching to the Point of the Cape in 7 deg. 40 min. of N. Lat. From the

the Cape, the Coast runs again toward the North till the Mouth of *Ganges*, where taking a great round it makes the Bay of *Bengala*, and runs again towards the South, to the other famous Cape of *Cingapura*, the Southernmost of all the Eastern Continent. Opposite to Cape *Comori* is the Island *Ceylon*, that of *Sumatra* to *Cingapura*: But beginning at Cape *Comori*, Two hundred Leagues of the Coast belong to the Kingdom of *Narsinga*, or *Bisnagar*, the rest to those of *Orixa*, *Bengala*, *Pegu* and *Siam*. Beyond *Cingapura* are those of *Cambodia*, *Tsiompa*, *Cochinchina*, and the *Great China*.

3. The Islands of this great Archipelago are innumerable: But not to mention those opposite to *Indostan*, there are *Java*, *Timor*, *Borneo*, *Banda*, the *Molucos*, *Celebes*, *Mazacar*, *Sunda*, *Lequis*, and those of *Japan*, without speaking of many more of Note. It is certain the Gospel was in the time of the Apostles Preached in many of these Provinces, if not in all. For the *Ethiopians* value themselves upon receiving it from a Servant of Queen *Candace* baptized by Saint *Philip*, and from the Evangelist St. *Matthew*. There is no doubt but *Arabia* and *Persia* flourished with many Saints and Martyrs, and the People of *Baxora*, where *Tigris* and *Euphrates* fall into the Sea, have a Tradition that the beloved Disciple preached to them. But the most singular Apostle of those Parts of *Asia* was St. *Thomas*, the memory of whom is still preserved in *Cranganor*, *Coulam*, and

*Meliapor*, with evident Testimonies that he travelled over all those Countries, even as far as *Cbina*, whence he returned to the Kingdom of *Coromandell*, where he ended his Preaching with his Life.

4. Christianity being now utterly corrupt in some Parts of *Asia*, and quite lost in others, the *Portugues Arms*, accompanied by Apostolical Ministers, went thither to restore it. The first who Baptized in that Part of *Asia* was *F. Peter de Cubillones* of the Holy Order of the Blessed Trinity; and Confessor to the first Discoverer, *Vasco de Gama*.

5. The most successful Labourers after him were in *India* the Vicar *Michael Vaz*, and *James de Borba*, and other Religious of the Order of *St. Francis*. In the *Moluccs* Islands, Captain *Francis de Castro*, who converted five Kings in the Island *Mazacor*. Captain *Antony de Payva*, who in the same Island Baptized two Kings and their Courts in one Day. Others are named in their proper Places in this History, and will doubtless be Recorded in the Book of Life.

6. This was the Estate of Christianity in *Asia*, when its new Apostle *St. Francis Xavierius*, of the Society of *Jesus* came thither. He travelled more than is credible, and did more than human Works. He was born of a Noble Family at *Pamplena* in *Navarre* in the Year 1497, studied and taught Philosophy and Divinity at *Paris*, whence he went Companion to *St. Ignatius Loyola*, followed



lowed his Rule, and received Holy Orders at *Venice*.

7. He came to *Portugal* in order to pass into *India* in the Year 1540, and the Reign of King *John the Third*, who sent for him and a Companion from *Rome*. He had the Dignity of Apostolical Nuncio in the *East*; and during the Voyage, and in *India*, was called Holy Father. He Preached in the Island *Zocotora*, at *Goa* and *Travancor*, where he was persecuted. It cost him no less Pains to reclaim the *Portugueses*, debauched with the Riches of *Asia*, than to convert Infidels. In the Island *Ceylon* he Converted the King of *Candea*, went thence to the *Moluco's*, and gained many Souls. After several times traversing the Islands, *India*, and other Parts, he went to *Japan*, and, with the Prince's leave, Preached at *Cangoxima*, and suffered many Afflictions, then went to *Firando*, *Yamanguchi* and *Miaco*, where with great pains he planted the Faith. Then he returned to *Malaca*, after converting the King of *Bungo*, who soon after died a Christian, being called *Francis* in Baptism.

8. Next he prepared to go into *China*, and died at the Entrance of it in the Island *Sancham*, in the Fifty-fifth Year of his Age, and the Eleventh of his Preaching, having first foretold the Day of his Death, which was the second of *December* about midnight: His Body the Year following was translated to *Goa*. He had the Gift of Languages and Prophecy, and was Canonized by Pope *Gregory*

gory the 15th, in the Year 1622. He had many Disciples and Companions, who wrought and endured much, and were held in opinion of sanctity.

9. We have already spoke of the first entrance of Christianity into *Ethiopia, India, Japan, Persia, and Arabia*, and of its restoration by the *Portugueses*; now we will say somewhat relating to the same in *China*; there are still undeniable testimonies that *St. Thomas* spread the Evangelical Doctrine there, and though no footsteps of it appeared, the same had happened in all *India*, had not *Thomas* called *Cananeus* an *Armenian* Christian, about the Year 800 come to *Mogodover* or *Patana*, who renewing the Apostles Churches, and building others, resettled the Christian Religion, and gave occasion to the mistake (because both had the same name) in believing they were all the work of the former. The same happened in *China*, as shall be made appear; the time Christianity was forgot in both places, differs not much, for as it appears, *Thomas Cananeus* re-established it in *India* about the Year Eight hundred, so it is plain by what shall be said, that about the Year Seven hundred it began again to take footing in *China*.

10. Let us first speak of the antient and then of the modern testimonies. In the *Caldaick* Books of the *Indian* Christians still remaining at *Cranganor*, and particularly in a breviary, there is a lesson to this purpose;

“ By *St. Thomas* the Errors of the Idolatry  
of

“ of *India* were abolished; by *St. Thomas*  
“ the *Chineses* and *Ethiopians* were convert-  
“ ed to the Truth; by *St. Thomas &c.* by  
“ *St. Thomas* were spread in all *India*, the  
“ rays of the Doctrine of Life; by *St. Tho-*  
“ *mas* flew to the *Chineses* the Kingdom  
“ of Heaven. And again in an *Antiphon*, the  
“ *Indians, Chineses, the Persians and Islan-*  
“ *ders*, those of *Siria, Armenia, Grecia, and*  
“ *Romania*, in commemoration of *St. Thomas*,  
“ offer adoration to thy Holy Name. A-  
mong the *Islanders* may well be reckoned the  
*Japoneses*; in the summary of the Synodical  
Constitutions, and Chapter of those that  
are Canonical, there is a Canon of the Pa-  
triarch *Theodosius*, in which are these words,  
*So also the Bishops of the great Province, as are*  
*most of the Metropolitans of China.* When  
the *Portugueses* entered *India*, the Governor  
of the *Malabar* Mountains, called *Jacob*,  
stiled himself, Metropolitan of *India* and  
*China*; *Paulus Venetus* a true Historian in  
all points, that can now be proved, assures in  
his time, there were in *China* many Christians  
who had sumptuous Churches, and names  
the Cities in which they were. The Fa-  
thers of the Society of Jesus had an account  
of People who worshipped the Cross. The  
cause why the Christians and their Churches  
were quite extinct, and no footsteps of them  
remains, is that they having favoured the  
Tartar when he invaded *China* about Three  
hundred Years since, he being overcome by  
the *Chineses*, many of them were killed,  
the

the rest fled, and all that had been theirs was totally extirpated.

11. In the Year 1625, digging for a foundation near *Siganfu*, Metropolis of the Province of *Xensi*, there was found a flat stone above 9 spans in length, 4 in breadth, and one in thickness; one end of it goes off sharp like a Pyramid, on it is cut a Cross, the ends of it adorned with Flower de luces likethat found in the Tomb of St. *Thomas* the Apostle, about it are Clouds, and at the foot of it three lines, each containing three *Chinese* Letters, all the superficies of the stone is full of those Characters, and the edges, only that on these are some *Sirian* Characters, containing the names of the Bishops then in being. The Governor of the Town set it up there, under an Arch within the inclosure of a Temple. The three first lines have these words, "A Monument in Praise and Eternal Memory, of the propogating the law of light; and Truth come from *Judea* into *China*. Then over the rest of the writing is this Title; the Prologue made by the Priest of the Kingdom of *Judea* called *Quimein*.

12. The Substance of the Inscription is this: " That the most Spiritual, Incomprehensible and Eternal is without beginning or end; That the beginning is three and one without having a beginning. Lord *Olooyx*; That he formed the four Parts of the World in the figure of



" a Cross; That he framed all Creatures  
 " and Man; That Man perverted from his  
 " Innocence, fell into the Snares of Satan;  
 " That hence sprang Three hundred sixty  
 " five Sects; That some assigned Divinity  
 " to Creatures, and others believed all was  
 " a meer nothing; That all was full of  
 " Errors and Confusion; That then the  
 " Messiah, concealing his Majesty by be-  
 " coming Man, appeared to the World;  
 " That an Angel coming to declare the My-  
 " stery to a Virgin, she brought forth the  
 " Holy; That a Star appeared, denoting  
 " his Birth, and those of the Kingdom of  
 " *Pozu* went to offer him Tribute, all sui-  
 " table to what the Twenty-four Saints had  
 " said; That he proposed to the World,  
 " the most pure Law, and filled it with  
 " Light and Virtues, opening the way to  
 " Life, and shutting that of Death; That  
 " he overcame the dark Seat, and the Devil  
 " was destroyed, and Man made capable of  
 " ascending to the bright Seats; That at  
 " noon Day he ascended into Heaven, and  
 " there remained Twenty-seven Books of  
 " the Holy Scriptures; That he opened the  
 " Gate of Conversion by the Water that  
 " purifies; That his Ministers used the  
 " Holy Cross, and stayed not in one Coun-  
 " try, nor had Servants, nor looked for  
 " Riches; That they seven times offered  
 " Sacrifice of sweet Odor, wherewith they  
 " helped the living and dead; That every  
 " seven Days they offered and purified the  
 "     Heart

" Heart to receive the Holy Innocence ;  
 " That no proper Name could be given to  
 " the true Law, and for want of another they  
 " called it, *The Law of Light* ; That in the  
 " Year of *Cbinquon Kieica*, there came from  
 " *Judea* a Man of great Virtue, called *Olo-*  
 " *pneum*, with the true Doctrine ; That this  
 " was received throughout all the Kingdom,  
 " and Churches erected ; that afterwards  
 " some change of Affairs happening, it  
 " grew weak, but in the Time of the Great  
 " *Tam*, the Holy Gospel returned to *Cbina* ;  
 " That in the Year of *Ximbie*, the Priests  
 " *John* and *Paul* redressed all, and new  
 " Churches were erected ; That in the  
 " Reign of the Great *Tam*, the second Year  
 " *Kienchum*, on the seventh day of the Month  
 " of *Autumn*, this Stone was set up, *Kingin*  
 " Governor of the Church of *Cbina* being  
 " Bishop.

13. By this venerable Piece of Antiquity  
 it appears, that the Christian Faith was  
 planted in *Cbina* about the Year Six hun-  
 dred thirty-one. From it also may be inferr'd,  
 that *St. Thomas* first Preached there, but that  
 Christianity being almost forgot, those Priests  
 of *Judea* and Kings of *Cbina* restored it, as  
 has been shown it happened in *India*. So  
 that what the *Portugueses*, assisted by other  
*European* Religious Men now perform, is a  
 second Re-establishment of the Faith.

14. About the Year 1543, *Fernan Men-*  
*dez Pinto* had this following Information in  
*Cbina*. He was Travelling from the City  
*Mindea*

*Mindoo* to that of *Peking*, and seeing by the way the Ruins of another, was informed, that about Two hundred Years before it was a most flourishing Place. That a Holy Man coming thither raised some dead to life, and Preached of Jesus Christ, and his Vicar upon Earth; that the Heathen Priests designing to burn him, he quenched the fire, making the sign of the Cross over it; that they stoned him to Death, and being thrown into a River, the Stream stood still five days, the holy Body being born upon the Superficies all the time; that this occasioned the Conversion of many People, of which there was a great number in that Province. Further upon a Mountain was a Stone Cross, which this Writer saw some People Worship, pronouncing these Words: *Christ Jesus; Mary conceived him being a Virgin, brought him forth a Virgin, and remained a Virgin.* These were Disciples descended from a Weaver, called *John*, in whose House that Holy Martyr was entertained. They preserve a Book of his Life, which says his Name was *Matthew Escandel*, by Birth an *Hungarian*, and had been an Heremite on Mount *Sinci*. That History related, that he being taken out of the River and buried nine days after, the City was swallowed up with Four thousand *Bonzos*, who only durst stay in it, the People having abandoned it, by reason of the Earthquakes that happened before.

15. At the same time the same Writer found in the Cities *Sampitay* and *Quiangsi*  
of

of *Cbina*, many Christians who had been converted Twenty-five Years before, which was Sixty Years before the Jesuits entered *Cbina*, which is now One hundred and fourteen Years since. And this is the Reason those Fathers found some Monuments of Christianity, but so obscure that little could be made out by them.

16. The same *Fernand Mendez* relates, That in the City *Timplan*, the Court of the Emperor of *Caminam*, a Borderer on *Cbina*, he found most ancient Monuments of the Christian Faith, and some account of the Holy Scripture. Those People said,  
 “ That the Creation of the World was the  
 “ work of the Will of the Creator; That  
 “ he was not visible, nor to be felt; That  
 “ there were Eighty-two thousand Moons  
 “ since the Earth was separated from the  
 “ Water; That on Earth God had created a most delightful Garden, and placed therein the first Man called *Adda*,  
 “ and his Wife *Baragom*: That he forbid  
 “ them the Fruit of the Tree *Hisaforam*,  
 “ and they transgressing this Command, all  
 “ Men became liable to the Punishment of  
 “ that Guilt: That the Man broke the  
 “ Precept, being deceived by the Woman,  
 “ and she by the Serpent *Lupantoo*: That  
 “ for this Disobedience they were cast out  
 “ of that delightful Place: That by reason  
 “ of the Sinfulness of Man, God had drowned the World; That only one just Man  
 “ with his Family escaped in a Wooden  
 “ House,



“ House, and by them Mankind was resto-  
 “ red: That God would punish the Wicked,  
 “ and reward the Good: That one *John*,  
 “ a Disciple of *Thomas Modeliar*, (a Servant  
 “ of God, whom the Citizens of *Digun*  
 “ killed, because he preached that God be-  
 “ came Man, and suffered Death for the  
 “ Sins of Men) had Preached the same in  
 “ that Country, and lost his Life for so  
 “ doing. *Thomas Modeliar* is the Apostle  
*St. Thomas*. The People of *Calaminam* own  
 the Blessed Trinity; when they Sneeze they  
 say some Words that declare it, and they  
 make the sign of the Cross.

17. The last Testimony was discovered  
 in the Year 1635, but the thing in it self is  
 at least as antient as the Stone already spo-  
 ken of. Some Heathens passing through a  
 Street in a Village near the City *Civenchen*  
 of the Province of *Fokien*, by Night saw  
 Lights on some Stones that lay there, and  
 turning them up, found on that part which  
 had lain next the Ground Crosses carved.  
 A Jesuit examining into it, caused the Stone  
 on which the greatest Light appeared to be  
 fixed in a decent place, as a Monument of  
 the Miracle, and of our Religion in those  
 Parts.

18. We shall speak of what was done by  
 the Religious of the Society of Jesus in order  
 to the Reparation of Christianity in this  
 Empire in the proper place, and Third  
 Tome of this our *Asia*. They entred upon  
 this undertaking in the Year 1579, which  
 was

was the the last under our *Portugues* Princes who yet expired not without this Glory. In the Year 1583, they Founded the first Church at *Xauking*. The rest of their Proceedings we refer to the Third Tome, beginning under the *Spanish* Monarchs, as this has ended with the *Portugueses*.

---

*The End of the Second Tome.*

---



11 Library Book

~~11 Library Book~~



12517  
11. 5. 2 8 4 4  

---

**The Portugues Asia :**

---

OR, THE  
**HISTORY**  
OF THE  
Discovery and Conquest  
OF  
**INDIA**  
BY THE  
**PORTUGUES;**  
CONTAINING

All their Discoveries from the Coast of  
*Africk*, to the farthest Parts of *China* and  
*Japan*; all their Battels by Sea and Land,  
Sieges and other Memorable Actions; a  
Description of those Countries, and many  
Particulars of the Religion, Government  
and Customs of the Natives, &c.

---

**In Three Tomes.**

---

Written in Spanish by *Manuel de Faria y Sousa*,  
Knight, Of the Order of Christ.

---

Translated into English by Capt. *John Stevens*.

---

*Tome the Second.*

---

LONDON, Printed for C. Brome, at the Sign of  
the Gun, at the West-End of St. Pauls. 1695.

DW 3

---

---

DEDICATED  
TO HER  
MOST SACRED  
MAJESTY,  
CATHERINE,  
QUEEN DOWAGER  
OF  
*ENGLAND, &c.*

A 2

THE

DEPARTMENT OF

THE ARMY

OFFICE OF THE

ADJUTANT GENERAL

WASHINGTON

1864

NOV 10

1864

1864

1864



---

---

T H E

P R E F A C E.

**W**HEN Almighty G O D, the only Founder of Empires, is so pleased with a People, as to possess them of a New one, He generally Endows the first Founders with a wonderful proportion of Heroick Virtues, as *Sincerity, Magnanimity, Valour, Majesty*, and an almost more than *Mortal Staidness*: The solid Foundations to support the greatest Monarchies. Such Founders rarely exceeded Three in Number. Let the Learned (by the help of

### *The Preface.*

this not yet Vulgar Remark )  
seek Foreign Examples ; it shall be  
my Care only to shew those of  
my own Country. The King-  
dom of *Portugal* was founded by  
Three Heroes , ( *HENRY* ,  
*ALFONSO* , and *SANCHO* )  
most visibly adorned with all  
those Virtues which merit to  
erect Imperial Thrones , and  
from them to Command many  
Kings, many Princes, and many  
Nations. Their Successors began  
to decline. The Dominion, the  
same Distributer of Power was  
pleased to give them in *Asia*, was  
also founded on Three, as appears  
in the beginning of this Work :  
They were *DUARTE PACHECO* ,  
*D. FRANCISCO DE ALMEIDA* ,  
and *ALFONSO DE ALBUQUER-*  
*QUE*. Scarce had they one Suc-  
cessor who did not manifestly de-  
cline, or at least had a mixture of  
*Valour*

*The Preface.*

*Valour* and *Timerousness*, of *Moderation* and *Covetousness*, with that unhappy distinction, that still the *Timerousness* and *Avarice* were most predominant. No Living Creature puts away his Young Ones, till they can shift for themselves: So Almighty G O D, when He erects Monarchies, cherishes them with particular Care, till they gather strength, and then (tho' He does not wholly abandon) puts them into the hands of Men, that they may perceive the difference between the Divine and Human Care. Let an unbiassed Judgment here reflect upon the Exploits of the *Portugueses* in gaining this *Asiatick* Crown, and it will appear that only *PACHECO* could have forged it with that fiery Heart, which melted the Arms and Riches of the obstinate *Zamori*; That only

*The Preface.*

ALMEYDA could have filed and polished it, by applying his own and his Son's Sword, which brought it into form by humbling the *Turkish* Pride; And that only the Great *ALBUQUERQUE*, giving the finishing strokes, could have set in it the most Precious Jewels of *Goa, Malacca and Ormuz*. For they so far removed from their Country, that they had not only lost sight, but even the hopes and memory of it, entering with a few indifferent Vessels and a most inconsiderable number of Men, where scarce a Tree offered them a secure shade, amidst Numerous and well Armed Squadrons and Castles, and through showers of heavy Ball and poisoned Arrows; by the force of their Swords opened deep Trenches, raised high Walls, and secured to themselves famous Cities and



*The Preface.*

and large Countries. Let those who have since acted less, having so good a ground to perform much more, not take it ill if we say, *That the Bounds of our Dominions in India, are almost reduced to what they were in the Beginning.* It is true, some of the Successors (a few among so many) added something to the Foundation; but it was an inconsiderable Copy of the Great Original. It is also true, others valiantly defended that Foundation, but it was an indispensable Duty. Let not timorous Spirits call this a *Rash Judgment*, which the Brave will only *style Unbiaffed*; or say, *We endeavour to lessen the Merits of Hero's*; our only Design, is to shew the Ways and Means the Giver of Crowns takes to frame and deliver them to Mortals; and how far less capable they are to Maintain,

*The Preface.*

can, than He to Form them.  
The Divine Providence gave a  
sufficient Demonstration hereof  
in the erecting this Empire, and  
they no less in diminishing of it.  
Hereof we have seen much al-  
ready, and shall see yet more;  
yet not without singular Acts of  
Valour: That it may be manifest  
the Cause of our Ruin is, That  
the Souls are not always the same;  
for the Hearts always are.

T H B

---

T H E

# CONTENTS.

---

T O M. I. P A R T I.

C H A P. I.

**T**HE Government of the Vice-Roy  
D. Garcia de Noronha, from the  
Year 1538, till the Year 1540,  
in the Reign of King John the Third,  
Page 1

C H A P. II.

Continues the Government of the Vice-Roy,  
D. Garcia de Noronha, p.8

C H A P. III.

The Government of D. Stephen de Gama,  
from the Year 1540, till the Year 1542,  
in the Reign of King John the Third,  
p.16

CHAP.

## The Contents.

### CHAP. IV.

*Goes on with the Government of D. Stephen de Gama,* P.24

### CHAP. V.

*Sundry Exploits of Captain Antony Faria, from the Year 1540, till that of 1542, during the Government of D. Stephen de Gama,* P.31

### CHAP. VI.

*Continues the Exploits of Antony de Faria,* P.37

### CHAP. VII.

*Continues still the Exploits of Antony de Faria, in the Government of D. Stephen de Gama, and the Year 1642,* P.44

### CHAP. VIII.

*Concludes with the Actions of Antony de Faria,* P.47

### CHAP. IX.

*Continues the Government of D. Stephen de Gama, and contains the Actions of his Brother D. Christopher in Ethiopia,* P.54

CHAP.



# The Contents.

## CHAP. X.

*The End of the Government of D. Stephen  
de Gama,* p. 63

## CHAP. XI.

*The Government of Martin Alfonso de  
Souza, from the Year 1542, till the  
Year 1545, in the Reign of King John  
the Third,* p. 67

## CHAP. XII.

*Continues the Government of Martin Al-  
fonso de Souza,* p. 76

## CHAP. XIII.

*Continues the Government of Martin Al-  
fonso de Souza,* p. 81

## CHAP. XIV.

*The End of the Government of Martin  
Alfonso de Souza, and of the First  
Part of this Tome,* p. 86

TOM.

# The Contents.

## T O M. II. P A R T II.

### CHAP. I.

**T**HE Government of D. John de Castro, from the Year 1545, till the Year 1548, in the Reign of King John the Third, p.95

### CHAP. II.

Continues the Government of D. John de Castro, and Siege of Diu, p.103

### CHAP. III.

Continues the Siege of Diu, the Governour D. John de Castro comes in Person to its Relief, p.109

### CHAP. IV.

Continues the Government of D. John de Castro, and Reign of King John the Third, p.117

### CHAP. V.

The End of the Government D. John de Castro, p.125

### CHAP.

## The Contents.

### CHAP. VI.

*The Government of Garcia de Sá, from  
the Year 1548, till the Year 1549,  
in the Reign of King John the Third,*

P. 132

### CHAP. VII.

*The Government of George Cabral, from  
the Year 1549, till the Year 1550, in  
the Reign of King John the Third,*

P. 140

### CHAP. VIII.

*Continues the Government of George Ca-  
bral,*

P. 143

### CHAP. IX.

*The Government of the Vice-Roy D. Alfonso  
de Noronha, from the Year 1550, till  
1553, in the Reign of King John the  
Third,*

P. 150

### CHAP. X.

*Continues the Government of the Vice-Roy,  
D. Alfonso de Noronha,*

P. 163

### CHAP. XI.

*The Government of the Vice-Roy D. Peter  
de Mascarenhas, from the Year 1554,  
till 1555, King John the Third still  
Reigning,*

P. 174

CHAP.

## The Contents.

### CHAP. XII.

*The Government of Francis Barreto, from the Year 1555, till 1558, in the Reign of King John the Third,* p.178

### CHAP. XIII.

*The End of the Government of Francis Barreto,* p.186

### CHAP. XIV.

*The Government of the Vice-Roy D. Constantin de Braganza, from the Year 1558, till 1561, in the Reign of King Sebastian,* p.190

### CHAP. XV.

*Continues the Government of the Vice-Roy D. Constantin, in the Reign of King Sebastian,* p.198

### CHAP. XVI.

*The End of the Government of the Vice-Roy D. Constantin,* p.207

### CHAP. XVII.

*The Government of the Vice-Roy D. Francis Coutinho, Count de Redondo, from the Year 1561, till 1564, in the Reign of King Sebastian,* p.215

CHAP.



# The Contents.

## CHAP. XVIII.

*The Government of John de Mendoza,  
for six Months of the Year 1563, in  
the Reign of King Sebastian, p.222*

---

## TOM. II. PART III.

### CHAP. I.

**T***HE Government of the Vice-Roy  
D. Anton. de Noronha, from the  
Year 1564, till 1568, in the Reign of  
King Sebastian, p.241*

### CHAP. II.

*Continues the Government of D. Anton. de  
Noronha, 245*

### CHAP. III.

*Continues the Government of D. Anton. de  
Noronha, in the Reign of King Seba-  
stian, p.253*

### CHAP. IV.

*The End of the Government of the Vice-  
Roy D. Anton. de Noronha, p.260*

# The Contents.

## CHAP. V.

*The Government of the Vice-Roy D. Luis de Ataide, Count de Arouguia; from the Year 1568, till 1571, in the Reign of King Sebastian,* p.267

## CHAP. VI.

*Continues the Government of the Vice-Roy D. Luis de Ataide,* p.273

## CHAP. VII.

*The dangerous Sieges of Goa and Chaul; and first of the foremost, continuing the Government of D. Luis de Ataide, and Reign of King Sebastian,* p.281

## CHAP. VIII.

*Continues the Siege of Goa, and Government of D. Luis de Ataide,* p.289

## CHAP. IX.

*The Siege of Chaul,* p.296

## CHAP. X.

*Continues the Siege of Chaul,* p.304

## CHAP.

## The Contents.

### CHAP. XI.

*The Proceedings of Zamori upon this Oc-  
casion, and during the Government of  
D. Luis de Ataíde,* P. 313

### CHAP. XII.

*The Government of the Vice-Roy D. Antony  
de Noronha, from the Year 1571 till  
1573, in the Reign of King Sebastian,*  
P. 319

### CHAP. XIII.

*The Siege of Malaca, with other Occur-  
rences, and End of the Government of  
D. Antony de Noronha,* P. 325

### CHAP. XIV.

*The Government of Antony Moniz Bar-  
reto, from the Year 1573 till 1576,  
in the Reign of King Sebastian,* P. 331

### CHAP. XV.

*The Government of Francis Barreto in  
Monomotapa, beginning in the Year  
1569, in the Reign of King Sebastian,*  
P. 340

### CHAP. XVI.

*Continues the Government of Francis Bar-  
reto, in Monomotapa,* P. 349

## The Contents.

### CHAP. XVII.

*The Government of Vasco Fernandez Homem in Monomotapa, in the Reign of King Sebastian,* P.354

### CHAP. XVIII.

*Of the Vice-Roy Ruy Lorenzo de Tavora, and the Government of D. James de Meneses, from the Year 1576 till 1578, in the Reign of King Sebastian,* P.358

### CHAP. XIX.

*The Count D. Luis de Arade is the second time Vice-Roy of India; he set out in the Year 1577, and Governs till 1581, and is the last sent out by King Sebastian, p.361*

### CHAP. XX.

*The Government of Ferdinand Tellez de Meneses, who was named by the Governors of Portugal, upon the Decease of the Cardinal King Henry, in the Year 1581,* P.367



# The Contents.

## TOM. II. PART IV.

### CHAP. I.

**O**F the Gods, Superstitions and Opinions of the Asiaticks, particularly the Indians, and among them the Malabars, p. 375

### CHAP. II.

The Metamorphoses, or Transformations, p. 383

### CHAP. III.

Other Metamorphoses, and the Consequences of them; of the God Brahma, and the Foundation of Pagods; an Account of the famousst of them, p. 387

### CHAP. IV.

A Continuation of the same Matter, p. 392

### CHAP. V.

Of the Offices, Rites, Ceremonies, Burials, and other things, p. 398

### CHAP. VI.

Continues the same Subject, p. 405

### CHAP.

# The Contents.

## CHAP. VII.

*Of the Empire of Ethiopia ; and first of the Kingdoms and Provinces into which it is divided ; of the progress of Christianity therein , and of the Product of the Land,* P.412

## CHAP. VIII.

*Of the Laws, Customs and Religion of the Empire of Ethiopia,* P.421

## CHAP. IX.

*Of the Nature of the Country of Ethiopia , of its Towns and Kings it has had, and of the entrance and expulsion of our Doctrine,* P.431

## CHAP. X.

*The Islands of Japan,* P.435

## CHAP. XI.

*A further Account of Japan,* 441

## CHAP. XII.

*Of the Great Empire of China ; and first of its Situation, division into Provinces, of its Product , and Commerce,* P.448

## CHAP.

# The Contents.

## CHAP. XIII.

*Of the Provinces into which China is divided,* p.453

## CHAP. XIV.

*Of the People of China, their Customs, Inclinations and Studies,* p.463

## CHAP. XV.

*A Continuation of the same Subject,* p.472

## CHAP. XVI.

*Of the Marriages, Burials, Ceremonies, Sacrifices, and Belief of the Chinese,* p.481

## CHAP. XVII.

*Of the Original of the Kingdom of China, the Palace and Government of it,* p.490

## CHAP. XVIII.

*Of the Royal Marriages, Nobility, Counsels, and Government of China in Peace and War,* p.494

## CHAP. XIX.

*The Division of the Dominions the Portuguese do, or have possessed in those Parts, commonly comprehended under the*

## The Contents.

*the General Name of India: Some Remarks on the Customs and Religion of those People, with some Account of the Christians of St. Thomas, and of the Island of Ceylon,* P.499

## CHAP. XX.

*Of the Memory there is of the Preaching the Gospel of Christ in all Asia, and its Islands, particularly by the Apostle Saint Thomas in those Parts mentioned in this History, and of the Extirpation and Reparation of the same,* P.513

THE



---

T H E  
*Portugues A S I A.*

---

T O M. II. P A R T I.

---

C H A P. I.

*The Government of the Vice-Roy D. Garcia de Noronha, from the Year 1538, till the Year 1540, in the Reign of King John the Third.*

4. **I**N the Month of November D. Garcia de Noronha the Vice-Roy began to take upon him the Administration of Affairs in India. He had set out of Lisbon with 12 Sail, and Arrived with 11, and in them three Thousand fighting Men; many of Note. One of the Ships was never heard of, which was esteemed a Judgment; because it was full of Malefactors taken out of Gaols, whose

1538.

B whole

whose Punishment was changed into Transportation.

2. Though this Fleet was fitted out chiefly to oppose the *Turks*, who now oppressed *India*; yet the Vice-Roy suffered them to batter *Diu*, without relieving it farther, than with the hopes of Relief. *Antony de Sylva Meneses* was the second that was sent thither with 24 small Vessels, and came late; yet contended with the Great *Antony de Silveira* for the Honour of that Victory: So much he valued, having been only a Witness of it. The Vice-Roy was ready to Sail for *Diu* with a Fleet of 160 Sail of several sorts, and in them five Thousand fighting Men and a 1000 Pieces of Cannon, when the Advice came that the *Turks* had raised the Siege. Hewas overjoy'd (it is not known for what) and discharging the Merchant-Ships that were ready to attend him retained Ninety. With these he set out for *Diu*, but sailed so slowly, that it appeared as if some ill Omen threatned his ruin there, since he avoided not only seeing of it in danger, but even now in Peace. Its quiet was disturbed by *Lurcan* and *Coje Zofar*, who ranged about with Fire and Sword. The Vice-Roy heard of this at *Dabul*, and sent against them *Martin Alfonso de Melo* with his Galley, and the Vessels that went with *Antony de Sylva*. He went; but being hard set by the Enemy, was forced to take shelter under the Fort. The Vice-Roy at the same slow rate removed to *Bacaim*, nothing moved with the News he received from *Diu*.

It

It was murmured, he either consulted his Safety or his private Interest. But when least expected, he Steered thither on the first of *January*; when a Storm rising, which lasted eight days, dispersed the Fleet into several Ports; two Gallies, and some other Vessels, perished.

3. The first thing the Vice-Roy attended to, was to hear *D. Gonzalo Vaz Confino*, who came with five small Vessels from *Onor*; whither he had been sent by the late Governor *Nuno de Cuna* upon this occasion. One of *Solyman's* Gallies, that had been at *Diu*, was forced into that Port; and 'twas thought that Queen (then a Widow) violated the Peace concluded with us by protecting it. *Gonzalo Vaz* calling her to account, she Answered, *The Gally was there against her Will she not being in a condision to binder it; but should be glad it were taken by our Vessels.* The Captain attempted it, and after a sharp Engagement was forced to desist, having lost 15 Men, and among them his Son *James*. He suspected the Queen had assisted the Enemy, and refusing some Refreshment she sent for the wounded Men, returned some rash Words mixed with Threats. The Queen cleared her self, and again offered Peace, which was concluded, and some *Portugueses* left in that Port, to observe what the Queen did towards expelling the *Turks*.

4. We will conclude this Year with the memory of the Arrival of six Ships at *Lisbon* from *India*; rather for the Bones than the Riches they carried. In one of them

was the Body of the Great *D. Vasco de Gama*, which the King caused to be laid in his Tomb, with the greatest Magnificence that has been seen in this Kingdom.

1539.

5. This Year *Peter de Faria* the second time was made Commander of the famous Fort of *Malaca*. Immediately resorted to him Embassadors from the Neighbouring Kings, to congratulate and confirm Peace with us. The first was of the *Bataas* in *Sumatra*, upon the Ocean where the Island of Gold was imagined to be, and which we earnestly desired to discover; but that Design being later, we will then speak of this Embassy. The second was of *Aaru* in *Sumatra*; both demanded Assistance against him of *Achem*. *Faria* had not yet taken possession of the Command, which still *D. Stephen de Gama* held for a few Weeks. One excused himself, because his Power was expiring; the other, because he had not yet commenced. Whereas both ought to joyn in relieving that King, as well because his Fidelity merited it, as because his Kingdom lay between *Malaca* and *Achem*, and served us for a Bulwark. *Gama* was most in fault, being in possession, and much pressed by *Faria* to grant it. But we shall soon see him more blameable, refusing then what he now urged should be granted. Such the Inconstancy of Man.

6. Afterwards *Peter de Faria* sent that King some Relief; but it was inconsiderable and came late. The King of *Achem* sent against him his Brother-in-Law *Hereditum Mabo-*



*Mabomet* with 160 Vessels, all of Oars, and 12000 Fighting Men. He from the Mouth of the River *Puneticam* battered *Aaru's* Fortifications, but to no effect; so he Landed and entred the Works: But was again beaten out, with loss of Men and Canon. The Besiegers persisting some days, lose 3000 Men. They bribe an Officer of the Besieged, who treacherously led the King to a dangerous place, where he was killed by a Musquet-Ball. The Enemy enters the Works, and putting all (even the Sick) to the Sword, slew 2000. The Body of the dead King was carried to Him of *Achem*, who caused it to be cut in pieces and boiled in Oil.

7. The Queen of *Aaru*, who was in a Wood, hearing the Death of her Husband, would have burnt her self alive; but being hindred, with about 300 Men fell upon the *Achems*, who were plundering the City, and slew 200. Being too weak to proceed, she returned to the Woods, and from thence made Excursions; but not able to hold out, went over to *Malaca* with about 600 persons in her Retinue, in 16 Vessels. *Peter de Faria* sent his Son *Alvaro*, who had the Command of the Sea, to receive her upon the River with pomp and grandeur.

8. *Faria* treated her with much Respect; but kept her four Months with only Promises of Succour, till she Despairing, publickly reproached him for this Neglect, and he without any regard gave no other Answer, than Turning his Back. Private Interest drew away the Commander from

the performance of what he owed to a Royal Matron, who for her Husbands fake deserved our Aid, for her Misfortunes our Pity, and for her Merit. Respect.

9. The afflicted Widow went to the King of *Ujantana*, then at *Bintam*, who scandalized at *Peter de Faria's* Proceedings, offered Assistance, and Married her, to have the better Title to pretend to the Kingdom of *Aeru*. He sent his Embassador to *Achem*, to demand that Crown as his Right by Marriage. The Tyrant would not hear the Embassador, nor receive the Present he brought, which is the greatest Affront among those Princes; but sent a Letter full of Reproaches, saying among other things, *His Letter had been writ upon the Wedding-Table.*

10. The King of *Ujantana* provoked by this Affront, immediately set out 200 Sail under the Command of his Admiral *Lacxemena*, who Anchored before the Fort of *Puneticam*, and carried it at the first Assault, killing 1400 *Achems*, and their Commander *Morat Arraex* a Turk.

11. By this time *Heredim Mahomet* was Sailing that way with such another Fleet, and in it 12000 Fighting Men. The two Fleets met, and after a sharp Engagement, *Heredim* being killed by a Canon-Ball, his Men dismayed, and most of the Fleet was taken by *Lacxemena*, most of the *Achems* slain, and only 14 Vessels got off.

12. The

12. The King of *Achem* caused the 14. Captains to be Beheaded, because they fled, and the Souldiers Beards to be cut off, and that upon pain of being sawed alive they should ever wear Womens Habit, with a sort of Tabor in their Hands; and whenever they affirmed any thing upon Oath, they should say, *As I hope to see my Husband safe; or else, As I hope to see the Children I have bore prosper.* This was put in Execution, and let it not seem strange; for in the time of King *Sebastian*, two Gentlemen for Cowardise were Condemned either to be Beheaded, or walk the City of *Lisbon* with a Spinning-Rock at their Girdle, and one of them chose this last.

13. But above 20 years after this, in 1564, 1564. the King of *Ujantana* possessing *Aaru* without apprehension, he of *Achem* furiously fell upon and took Him and his Women, and put them all to death with barbarous Torments. The Kingdom of *Aaru* he gave to his eldest Son, who after died before *Malaca*, as shall appear in its place.

## C H A P. II.

*Continues the Government of the Vice-Roy,  
D. Garcia de Noronha.*

1. **L** Et us return to our Vice-Roy, whom we left at Sea. After the danger and loss above related, he entred the Port of *Diu* with 50 Sail. He applauded, as was due, the Bravery of *Antony de Silveyra*, repaired the Fort, and delivered it to *James Lopez de Sousa*, to whom the Command was given by the King. Let it suffice once for all to note, That these Commands are always given by the King, and so many Successors named, that many of them are in their Graves before they succeed in the Post. A Treaty of Peace was set on foot, and concluded little to our advantage; which the Common Vogue (I know not whether Infalible) attributed to Covetousness.

2. *Ruy Lorenzo de Tavora*, Commander of *Bazaim*, was close shut up in his Fort by the Forces of the King of *Cambaia*, who were Masters of the Field, after having done all that could be expected from him. The Vice-Roy sent to his Relief *Tristan de Ataide*, late Commander of *Malaca*, with a Galeon and 3 Barques well Manned. The two being joyned, repulsed the Enemy with very considerable loss of Men, Baggage and Reputation.



tation. Mean while the Vice-Roy prosecuted the Works at *Diu*, and sent *Martin Alfonso de Melo* to Command at *Ormuz*, *Peter de Faria* to *Malaca* the second time, and *Michael Ferreyra* a Gentleman of Worth, 70 years of Age, with 12 small Vessels and 400 Men, to assist the King of *Cota* in *Ceylon* against his Brother *Madune Pandar*, King of *Cenavaca*, who distressed him. *Ferreira* did great damage in several Towns, abandoned by the Inhabitants. In the Port of *Putulam* he surprized *Pate Marcar's* Fleet, consisting of 16 *Paraos*, and easily gained them; and with the same Success carried the Works and Cannon ashore, though defended by 2000 Men. He Anchored in the Bay of *Columbo* with the Ships, Cannon and other Booty. Then he marched to *Cota*; thence towards *Cenavaca* at the head of the Army of the King he Relieved, destroying all before him; and seeking *Madune*, who had 6000 Men, saw them fly to the shelter of the Woods. Thence he sent to beg Peace, which was granted upon Condition he should send the Heads of some *Morish* Officers, especially *Pate* and *Cunale Marcar*. He opposed this Condition as much as he could, but there being no other Medium to appease his Adversary, consented, and killing them two and others, sent 9 Heads upon as many Spears, a Present so acceptable to *Ferreyra*, that he presently made Peace between him and *Cota*, and went off himself with Honour.

3. The same time the Vice-Roy sent *Ferdinand de Morales* with a great Galeon, laden on the Kings account, to Trade at *Pegu*. As soon as arrived at that Port, the King won him with Promises and Favours, to aid him against the King of *Brama*, who invaded that Country with such a Power, that the two Armies consisted of two Millions of Men and 10000 Elephants. *Morales* went into a Galliot, and Commanding the Fleet of *Pegu*, made great havock among the Enemies Ships. *Brama* came on by Land like a Torrent, carrying all before him, and his Fleet covering the River, though as great as *Ganges*. With this Power he easily gained the City and Kingdom of *Pegu*. *Ferdinand Morales* met the Fleet with his, in respect of the other scarce visible, at the Point *Ginamarrecu*, where was a furious, bloody and desperate Fight. But the *Pegu's* overpowred by the *Brama's* deserted *Morales*, who alone in his Galeot maintained himself against the Enemies, performing Wonders with vast slaughter of them, till oppressed by the Multitude he was killed. But the memory of his Bravery still lives among those People.

4. The cause of this Revolt of *Brama*, who was Tributary to *Pegu*, was this: Above 30000 *Brama's* laboured in the King of *Pegu's* Works, this being one Condition of their Vassalage. The King used to Visit them with his Women, because they delighted to see Foreigners and the notable Works, and never carried any other Company.

pany. The Labourers (what Wickedness would not they in Idleness invent, who thought so much in their Labour) resolved to rob the Queens or Concubins, and suddenly murdered the King, stripped them and fled to their Country. *Dacba Rupi*, Heir to the deceased, was not only deprived of Means of Revenging this Villany, but even of maintaining himself, for many of his Subjects rebelled. *Parà Mandarà*, King of the *Brama's*, desiring to enlarge his Empire, and seeing that his Pickaxes and Shovels had opened a Way to his Cimiteres and Standards, rushes out with that Violence, and over-runs the Kingdoms of the *Lanjoers*, *Laos*, *Jangoma's*, and others, that like his were Tributaries to *Pegu*. Thus this Tyrant possessed himself of his ancient Kingdom of *Ava*, that extends two Months Travel at ordinary Journeys, and contains 62 Cities. On the N. E. a Months Journey, is that of the *Turks*, containing as many Cities, which the King of *Pegu* had taken from him of *Catbay*. The Kingdom of *Bimir* lies West of *Ava*, of the same extent, and has 27 populous Cities. North of this that of *Lanjam*, of equal greatness, has 38 Cities, and great store of Gold and Silver. On the East is that of *Mamprom*, as great, but has only 8 Cities; on the East it borders on *Cochinchina*, on the South with *Siam*, afterwards conquered by *Brama*; and East of this is the great Kingdom of *Cambodia*. All the Inhabitants of these Kingdoms are Pagans, and the most Superstitious of all the

the East. They believe in one only God; but in time of need have recourse to many Idols. Of these they have some dedicated to the secret acts and necessities of Nature, in the same form they are performed. They hold the Immortality of the Soul; are zealous in giving Alms, and bear great Reverence to their Religious Men. These are very numerous, follow a Rule, and keep a Choir much like ours; they live upon what is given them that day, without keeping any thing for the next; they eat neither Fish nor Flesh, because they kill nothing that has Life; their Cloaths are yellow Cassocks and Cloaks, with Hats of oiled Paper; they observe *Lent* and *Easter* after the Christian manner. Whence may be inferred, That these are some Remains of the Doctrine of *St. Thomas* the Apostle, though mixed with many Errors. The People are all white, the Women very beautiful. Their Bodies are all wrought Blue with hot Irons down to the Knees. In general, they are not only not Civilized, but very Brutal.

5. The Vice-Roy being at *Goa*, *D. John de Albuquerque*, a Spaniard, presented him King *John's* Patent, by which all the Conquests from the Cape of *Good Hope*, to *India*, were made subject to his Diocese, with liberty to erect the Church of *St. Catherine* of that City into a Cathedral. The Patent was obeyed, and thus a Spaniard was the first Prelate of the Conquests; as if *Spain* had now taken the Power in Spirituals, it was



was afterwards to possess in Temporals. At this time the *Guzaratus* streightned *Roy Lorenzo de Tavora* in *Bacaim*. He sallies with 350 Men, and put them to the rout. *Coje Zofar* comes on with his Men, and puts him into a dangerous condition. *George de Lima*, Commander of *Chaul*, having Notice hereof, sent 100 Men with speed, with which assistance the Enemy was repulsed, and time given to repair the damage received.

6. Four Ships arrived in *India* from *Portugal*, to return with Merchandize. In one of them the Great *Antony de Sylveyra* imbarqued. The Flag-Ship perished in her Return, and was never heard of; but *Silveyra* arrived safe at *Lahon*, and had scarce Anchored, when the Great Men of the Court came aboard to Conduct him to the King and Princes, who with Joy waited to see and honour him: And no wonder, since all the Christian Princes visited him by their Embassadors, led by the admiration of his Glorious Exploits. The French Embassador had his Picture drawn, which was hung up in the Gallery of Fame among the other Hero's. He was of a middle Stature, strong built; of a clear Judgment, ready Wit, a great Heart, and very Liberal. His Liberality did as much at *Diu*, as his Valour; for it is vain for a Miser ever to expect to purchase Glorious Victories: Yet this Virtue was prejudicial to him in *Portugal*; for the King having appointed him Governour of *India*, was dissuaded by some, who said,  
That

That Empire was too little for his Bounty.

7. The late success of our Arms, chiefly in *Cambaya*, terrified all the Eastern Princes, our Enemies; so that *Nizamaluco* and *Hidalcam* immediately sent their Embassadors to confirm the last Peace concluded with them. *Zamori*, to obtain the more favourable Reception with the Vice-Roy, took *Emanuel de Brito*, Commander of the Fort of *Chale*, for his Mediator. *Brito* promised his Interest, and accompanied the Embassador *China Cutiale*, who came to *Goa* with a splendid Retinue. The Vice-Roy received him with Courtesie and Grandeur. The Peace was Concluded much to our Credit. Had not the Vice-Roy fallen sick, he designed to go to *Calicut*, to perform the Ceremony of Swearing to the observation of the Articles; but sent his Son *D. Alvaro* to this purpose, under the Direction of discreet Men, because he was young. They came to *Panane* with a numerous Fleet, where that Prince expected them, accompanied by the Kings of *Chale* and *Tanor*. They met with great demonstrations of Joy; the Peace was sworn, and lasted 30 years, which was one of the greatest Blessings we enjoyed in *India*.

8. About the beginning of *January* this Treaty was Concluded, and the Vice-Roy sent towards *Cambaya*, *D. Peter de Castello-branco*, with 14 Sail, who returned to *Goa* without any Action of Note. *John de Sepulveda* coming from *Ormuz*, and hearing that

that *Ruy Lorenzo de Tavora* was streightned by the Enemy in *Bacaim*, relieved him with diligence; and they forced the Enemy to leave the Field. *Antony Carvalho*, with 8 small Vessels, went to seek some Pirates that coursed between *Baticala* and *Anchediva*. They fled; but being overtaken, were destroyed, their Ships burnt, and the Country laid waste. *Carvalho* returned with Honour to *Goa*, where the Vice-Roy growing so weak, he could not attend the Government, he proposed a Worthy Person might be chose to supply his place, and then said, It should be no other than his Son *D. Alvaro*. This surprized all Men, being a violation of the Publick Liberty of Choice: And might have proved of dangerous Consequence, had not his Death prevented it; for sometimes it is expedient One should dye for the good of the People.

9. The Vice-Roy being dead, the first Patent of Succession was opened, and *Martin Alfonso de Sousa* was therein named, who not long before was gone to *Portugal*. The second being opened, named *D. Steven de Gama*, who lived Indisposed without the City. All rejoyced at the Election, as few were grieved at the Death of the Predecessor, who nevertheless was honourably Interr'd. His Picture represents him in the ancient Habit of *Portugal*, all Black lined in Crimson. He was the Third Vice-Roy, and Eleventh Governor, but first of the Name, and held it a Year and seven Months. His Son *D. Alvaro* came to *Portugal*, and brought

brought with him two Embassadors of the King of *Cota*. He desired of King *John*, That in case he had no Son, his Grand-Child might be sworn King. To this effect the Embassadors brought his Image in Gold, which held in its Hand a Crown set with Jewels, for the King to Crown the Statue with. The King did it publicly, with much solemnity, and the Embassadors returned well pleased, as dispatched to their Prince's satisfaction.

---

## C H A P. III.

*The Government of D. Stepen de Gama, from the Tear 1540, till the Tear 1542, in the Reign of King JOHN the Third.*

I. **D**On *Stepen* entred upon the Government the beginning of *April*; he was Son of *D. Vasco de Gama*. The first thing he did, was to cause all he had to be publicly Valued, that it might not be thought afterwards he had got his Estate by that Government; at the end whereof it was found considerably diminished. The first Act was hard to be imitated; so the second, which was, That he advanced a great Sum to the Publick, seeing the Treasury



fury exhausted. Next, he refitted the Fleet, which was laid up. The care of Temporals did not lessen his attention to Spirituals ; so he founded the Colledge of *St. Faith*, for the Heathen Youths that are Converted: This was the second Colledge erected in that Empire, and the first at *Goa*; and the first Rector of it was that singular person the Vicar General *Michael Vaz*. He sent his Brother *D. Christopher*, young in years, but not in ability, to attend the Repairing the Ships at *Cochin*. He sent Advice to several Commanders, in order to be in a readines to oppose the *Rumes*, who, it was said, were Sailing towards our Coasts. *D. Christopher* set out with 600 Men against the King of *Porca* and a *Caymal* of his, because they had robbed *Sebastian de Sousa* coming from *Maldivia*, and refused to make Restitution. He marched up the Country, slew many of the Enemy, and routed the rest; Beheaded the *Caymal*, and laid the Country waste; which produced an advantagious Peace, and an Agreement between this King and him of *Pimienta*.

2. Being advertized, That the *Rumes* could not set out this Year, he attended other Affairs. *Emanuel de Vasconcelos* was sent with 20 Sail to the Coast of *Malabar*; and *Antony de Castelo Branco* with 30 to *Cambaya*. Scarce were they gone, when 4 Ships arrived from *Portugal*. They carried new Orders from the King, as dangerous as they were new; for whoever deprives Men of the hopes of Advancement, takes away  
C their

their Courage. Such were these, being the sullen thoughts of Ministers, who thinking all too little for themselves, think every thing too much for others. The Ships being sent to *Cochin*, to load and return home; *D.Stephen* prepared to set out for the *Red Sea*, in order to burn the Turkish Gallies at *Zues*; but first he sent some Commanders to the Post assigned them:

3. When *Badur*, King of *Cambaya*, made over the Lands of *Bacaim* to the *Portugueses*, he took them from *Bramaluco*, a brave Man, to whom he had before given them. He thought the death of the Vice-Roy *D.Garcia*, furnished him a convenient opportunity to regain them by surprize. He set out of *Damam*, in the dead of Winter, with 300 Horse and 5000 Foot. *Ruy Lorenzo de Tavora*, Commander of that Fort, considering if the Enemy once took footing, it would be hard to remove them; sets out with 650 *Portugueses*, the later number were Horse and Men of known Valour. The Foot he divided into four Battalions, and reserved to himself the 50 Horse and about 400 Blacks. Hearing the Enemy was lodged in the Village *Baylam*, two Leagues up the Country, he resolved to surprize him at Noon, when they use to Bathe. Half a League from the place he halted to Rest the Men; and the Enemy having Intelligence thereof, came on with such diligence and secrecy, that they had put them to the Sword, had not *Ferdinand de Silva*, who led the Van with much

much Bravery, given a check to their Fury. *Antony de Sotomayor* relieved him, already wounded in the Leg, was himself wounded and lost some Men; but did great Execution. This gave *Tavora* time to make ready, whose furious coming up made great havock. Our Men turning Back to Back, and facing the Enemy round, did Wonders. *Ruy Lorenzo*, with his Horse ranging about, did them great harm, till falling on their Flank many were slain, the rest fled without hopes.

4 Next, he resolved to take a Great Ship of *Bramaluco's*, that was newly finished in the Dock of *Agacaim*. He marched thither by Land, and *D. Luis de Ataide* went by Water. The latter by force of Arms made his way to the City, at such time as the other was reducing it to Ruins; breaking through a Multitude of Enemies, who endeavoured to stop his Fury, each of them lost six Men. *D. Luis* Landed, and both together cleared the Field, unpeopled the City, and then set Fire to it. The Ship was carried to the Port of *Bacaim*, and for many years Traded to *Lisbon*. *Bramaluco* sued for Peace, and he being a suspected Subject of *Cambaya*, our Governour treated with that King, and by this means secured the former Peace, and obtained a Grant of half the Customs, whereof only the Third part was offered before.

5. Let us now return to the Fleet, in which the Governour was to sail. His great Liberality brought him more Men than he desired, whereof he chose the best. The Fleet consisted of 80 Sail of sundry sorts and sizes, and carried two Thousand Men.

6. While this Fleet was sitting, the King of *Achem* falling upon the King of the *Bataas* unexpectedly, made a great slaughter of his People, killing among the rest three Sons he rather adored than loved. The King desirous of Revenge, sent his Brother-in-Law Embassadour to *Peter de Faria*, then Commanding at *Malaca*. The Embassy was to confirm the Peace before concluded, and desire assistance of Arms and Ammunition; and the better to obtain it, sent him a rich Present, and offered a free Trade in his Dominions, which abound in Gold, Pepper, Benjamin and Camphir. *Faria*, who was intent upon Profit, as well as his King's Service, plentifully supplied him with Arms and Ammunition, offering his utmost assistance, and entertaining the Embassadour with splendour. The King of *Bataa* attacked his Enemy with Resolution; but was beaten after having almost gained the Victory, and retired with great Grief to his City *Panaaju*. Here he dispatched *Pinto*, sent thither by *Faria* to Trade, who narrowly escaped being lost in the River *Parles* of the Kingdom of *Queda*, by reason of the Revolution had then hapned in the City of that Name, the Court of  
that



that Prince, who had murdered his Father and married his own Mother. The first he denied, and pretended he had done the latter in Honour to her, having refused many considerable Matches. *Pinto* brought News of the Island *del Oro*, or of *Gold*, the great motive of his Voyage.

7. But now our Governour enters the *Red Sea* with his Fleet. He found most of the Islands and Cities abandoned, the People having had notice of his coming. The chief Island was *Maçua*; The principal City *Suanquem*, in about 19 Degrees of North Latitude, well built and rich. The King, who was fled a League up the Country, entertained the Governour with shews of Peace, that he might not destroy the Island. But the greatest damage was, that hereby he prevented the burning the Ships at *Suez*, gaining so much time as carried thither the News of this Design. The Governour in Revenge, marched with his Brother *D. Christopher* and 1000 Men, made a great slaughter, was Master of the Field, and took a great Booty: Then turning to the City, it was plundered, and private Men got four or five thousand Ducats each; then it was burnt to the ground. The Waters being shoal, the Governour resolved to go over to *Alcozer*, and other places, with only sixteen Catures or Barges, the rest of the Fleet he sent to *Maçua*, under the Command of *Lionel de Lima*. There was a great dispute about who should go with *D. Stephen*, and he had much difficulty

to compose it. They set out of the Bay for this Reason called *De los Agraviados*, or *Of the Offended*. Many Gentlemen went in the Barges as private Souldiers, accepting any place so they were admitted; such was their desire to be in this Action. The number of Men was Two hundred and fifty. At *Alconçer*, which is in the Latitude of 25 Degrees, they did the same as had been done before at *Suanquem*. Crossing over to *Tor* or *Toro*, they took some Vessels of the Enemy. The Turks at first opposed the Landing, but some being slain, fled and abandoned the City, in which nothing of Value was found. The Governour would not burn it in reverence of *St. Catharine*, and a Monastery found there with Religious Men under her Invocation, which at their Instance he visited. To his great glory, he was the first *European* Commander that took that City, where he Knighted several, who held this Honour done them there in great esteem; and it was afterwards envied by the Great Emperour *Charles* the Fifth, as shall appear in its place. Our People, and those Religious testified great Regret at parting. They are of the Greek Church, and of the Order of *St. Basil*. The City is in the Latitude of 28 Degrees, and is thought by Learned Geographers, to be the ancient *Elana*.

8. The Governour went over to *Suez*, and after many brave Attempts made by several to sound and view the Harbour, which all failed, he resolved in Person and in open Day to discover the Gallies. He saw them, and desiring to do something considerable, Landed; the Enemies Shot flew from the Town, and 2000 Turkish Horse broke out of an Ambush; some few whereof were killed by our Canon; but our Men obliged to Retire, much grieved that this Voyage was disappointed. The Governour returned to his Fleet at *Madaga*, where he found the Severity of *Emanuel de Gama* had caused a Mutiny, which gave occasion to 80 Men to run away with a Ship, designing to go over to *Ethiopia*. They were met by a Captain of the King of *Zeila*, and after a vigorous Resistance, most of them killed. On a Gallows hung five, whom *Gama* had Executed, for concealing the design of the other 80; they at Execution summoned him to answer before the great Tribunal, and he within a Month run Mad, and died.

## C H A P. IV.

*Goes on with the Government of D. Stephen de Gama.*

1. **A**T this time *Grada Hamed*, King of the Country, called by some Geographers, *Trogloditis*, vulgarly *Adel*; having submitted himself to the Turk, to obtain Assistance of Men, casting off the Obedience he owed to the Emperour of *Ethiopia*, began furiously to over-run that Country with a Powerful Army. To excuse his Ambitious Designs, he laid hold of the Opportunity his Sovereigns tender years offered, and in a small time made himself Master of such part of *Abassia*, that the Emperour *Atanad Sagad*, or *Claudius*, was obliged to retire towards the Kingdom of *Goiame*, and his Mother *Saban*, or *Elizabeth*, with the *Barnagais*, got into the rugged Mountain *Dama*, a place naturally impregnable, which rising to a prodigious height over a vast Plain, on its Top forms another almost Round and about a League over, in which is an indifferent Town, with Fruit and Cattel that maintains it. On one side only is a painful Ascent, till near the Top; from thence People are drawn up on Planks with Ropes, and in like manner let down.

2. The



2. The Queen reduced to this condition, hearing *D. Stephen* was in the *Red-Sea*, sent *Barnagais* Embassadour to him, to desire his Assistance against that Tyrant, who over-running her Kingdoms destroyed the ancient Churches, and carried away Slaves the Religious Men and Priests. The Embassadour was heard, and received a favourable Answer. It was Resolved in Council to send Relief, and *D. Christopher* named Commander in Chief, of Four hundred Men it consisted of. He had with him eight Field-Pieces, many small Fire-Arms, and plenty of Ammunition. *D. John Bermudez*, the Patriarch, much desired by that Emperour to introduce the Roman Ceremonies, accompanied them. The two Brothers *D. Stephen* and *D. Christopher* took leave on the shoar, never to meet again: Let us conduct the one into *India*, and then return to the other.

3. About *July* the Governour was taken in such a violent Storm, that a Galliot sunk down right, a Barque was lost, and all the Fleet scattered. Many Religious Vows were made in the danger; but that of a private Souldier was pleasant, who Vowed he would marry *D. Isabel de Sa*, Daughter to *D. Garcia de Sa*, after Governour of *India*, and the applauded Beauty of all those parts, which afterwards gave pleasant matter of Discourse. At length the Governour arrived at *Goa*, and perceiving the Ships did not come from *Portugal*, and that he was exhausted with the charge of the last Fleets, he loaded

loaded the Goods, provided for the Ships expected, on four Galeons, and sent them away. *Peter de D. Castello Branco*, late Governor of Ormuz, Commanded one of these Galeons, and was taken by the French near the Islands *Azores*.

4. *Nizamoxa* desired to possess himself of the Forts of *Sangaça* and *Carnala*, held by two Subjects of *Cambaya*, on the Frontiers of that Kingdom, and formidable for their strength and situation. The Commanders *Nicoda Amorgin*, and *Atridican* being absent, he assaults and enters them. The Owners had recourse for the Recovery of them to *D. Francis de Meneses*, Commanding at *Bacaim*, promising to hold them of us, if restored. He went in person with Three hundred *Portugueses*, a party of the Natives, and each of the Proprietors, Two hundred Men. They scaled the Fort *Carnalia*, and the Defendants in a pannick Fear abandoned it, some throwing themselves down the Rocks, where they were beaten to pieces. Those of *Sangaça*, quitted it before it was demanded. *D. Francis* left the Moors in possession with *Portugues* Garrisons. *Nizamoxa* in a Rage sent 5000 Men, who ruined all the Country about. The Owners despairing of maintaining themselves against that Power, resigned their Title to those Forts to the *Portugueses*, and were received into *Bacaim* by *D. Francis*, who sent Supplies to the Forts, and resolved to maintain them.

5. *Niza-*

5. *Nizamoxa* sends 6000 Men more, 1000 of them Musquetiers, and 800 Horse, well Armed. They beset *Sangaça*, and gave several Assaults that Day, wherein many of them were killed. The *Portugueses* stood all Day and Night at their Arms, and with much difficulty sent Advice to *D. Francis* at *Bazaim*, who came to their Relief with 160 *Portugueses*, 20 Horse and some *Naiques*, with 2000 Indians. *Don Francis* received a Letter from the Governour of *Chaul*, giving an account of the great Strength of the Enemy; and some of his Men coming to hear the Contents of it, he read quite the contrary to what really was in it, and marched on. A small Party of the Enemy attacked the Van, to draw them into two Ambushes, each of which contained a Thousand Men. Some of the *Portugueses* fled. *D. Francis* with his twenty Horse resolved to keep a Pass, and he with some Gentlemen killed several. Those of the Ambush coming on, the *Portugueses* were forced to fight Back to Back. Those who at first fled fell into the second Ambush, and endeavouring to shun it returned to the first, with whom the others were engaged. The Moors thinking this had been a fresh Relief, fled; our Men took heart, and struck such Terrour into the Enemy, that running to *Cangaça*, they raised their Camp, leaving all the Ground about the Fort strowed with all sorts of Weapons and Ammunition. *D. Francis* returning from the Pursuit, found they had slain about 500, and

and lost 20 Men. He stored the Forts, and went back to his Command.

6. I shall relate a thing scarce Credible, but most true: In this Action a Giant-like Portugues of prodigious Strength, called *Trancofo*, seeing a Moor well wrapped in a large Veil falling from his Head, laid hold of him thereby, as if he had been a Buckler, and so carried him before his Breast, received upon him all the stroaks of the Enemies Weapons, and thus continued, making him his Shield till the Fight was ended.

7. However, considering the keeping of those Forts was of greater Charge and Danger, than Advantage could be made of them; and because *Nizamoxa*, our Confederate, offered for them 5000 *Rordao's*, besides the 2000 he paid before, the Governour resigned them up to him, to the great Regret of *D. Francis de Menezes*, who had gained and maintained them with so much Honour. The Garrisons marched out with all the usual Ceremonies.

8. When this hapned the Governour was at *Chaul*, in order to Visit the Northern Forts, he furnished them with all Necessaries. Being returned to *Goa*, he provided the Loading for the Ships that were detained at *Moçambique*, and received Embassadors from *Xequé Ismael* of *Persia*, the Kings of *Calicut* and *Cambaya*, about important Affairs, and were answered to their satisfaction.



9. *Peter de Faria*, who Commanded at *Malaca*, had received some Information of the Affairs and Seat of the Island *del Oro*, or of *Gold*, which was said to be in the Sea of the River *Calandor*, in five Degrees of South Latitude, 150 Leagues from the Point of *Sumatra*, encompassed with great Banks of Sand and strong Currents. He advertised the King, who sent to that Discovery and Conquest *Francis de Almeida*, that died by the way. One *James Cabral* of *Madera* succeeded him, and the Governour *Martin Alfonso de Sousa* displaced him, to give that Charge to *Hierom de Figueredo*. He set out in the Year 1542, with 80 Men in three Ships, and laying aside the Enterprize, through Covetousness, went in search of some Ships of *Meca* on the Coast of *Tanaugarim*, took them, and in them a rich Booty; but refusing them their shares, they tied his Hands and Feet and left him on the Sands at *Gale*, in the Island *Ceylon*. Thus for that time was the King disappointed of that Discovery.

10. The King of *Aaru*, as well as he of the *Bataas*, was first Victorious against him of *Achem*, then beaten and killed. He had also received supplies of Arms and Ammunition from *Peter de Faria*. This King of *Achem's* Design was to Conquer this Kingdom, which hindred his passage to *Malaca* by Land, being now convinced it was impossible to take it by Sea.

11. Some time after *Faria* sent his Factor *Pinto* with a Present and Letter to the King of *Patane*, desiring him to procure the liberty of five *Portugueses*, then Slaves at *Siam*, to his Brother-in-Law. He was also to deliver Goods of the Value of Ten thousand Ducats to his Factor at *Pam*. They had made up Fifty thousand Crowns in Diamants, Pearls and Gold, and were ready to Sail next day, when a sudden Confusion hapning that Night, they lost all. There resided in that City an Embassadour from the King of *Borneo*, with his Wife. He caught the King of *Pam* lying with her, and killed him. The Death of the King being noised, the People ran about, not so much for Revenge, as to Rob. About Four thousand Men were presently butchered; the two Factors being robbed, and some of their Companions killed, escaped and fled to *Patane*. They, and other *Portugueses*, asked leave of that King, to make Reprizal on three Vessels belonging to the Merchants of *Pam*, which came richly laden from *China*, and were then at Anchor 18 Leagues off in the River *Calautam*. He consented; they set out to the number of 80 in Three Ships, and after a sharp Engagement, took and brought the Vessels into *Patane*. The Prize was worth above Three hundred Thousand Ducats. The People of *Patane* pressed the King to take them from the *Portugueses*; but he urged the Fifty thousand Crowns ought to be made good. The Merchants accepted the Condition,

dition, paid the Mony, and continued their Voyage.

---

## CHAP. V.

*Sundry Exploits of Captain Antony Faria, from the Tear 1540, till that of 1542, during the Government of D. Stephen de Gama.*

1. **W**Hile what is above-related happened the Three years last past, *Antony de Faria* and *Sousa*, did Actions deserving Eternal Fame; which I shall relate without affection to our Kindred, but with my usual sincerity.

2. *Peter de Faria*, Commander of *Malaca*, sent his Kinsman *Antony de Faria* and *Sousa*, to the King of *Patane*, to treat of important Affairs, and preserve the Peace, which was very beneficial to that place. He carried with him Goods to the Value of Twelve thousand Ducats, and finding no Sale for them there, sent them to the Port of *Lugor*, in the Kingdom of *Siam*, a place of great Trade, where he was informed they would go off to great advantage. He committed this Affair to *Christopher Borallo*, who being come to an Anchor in the Mouth

Mouth of that River, was surprized by *Coja Hazem*, a Moor of *Guzarate*, in a Vessel well stored with Artillery, and Manned with 80 Turks and Moors. This *Coja* was a sworn Enemy to the *Portugueses* ever since *Hector de Silveyra* took a Ship of his in the Sea of *Dia*, killing his Father and two Brothers, and had kept his Oath, robbing and murthuring all he met.

3. *Borrallo* thought himself happy that he escaped falling into the *Pyrats* hands, leaving his Vessel and swimming ashoar. He carried the News to *Antony Faria* at *Patane*, who Vowed, never to desist till he had destroyed that Moor. This was the Motive that led him to all those brave Actions. He fitted a small Vessel with 50 Men, and sailed from *Patane* on Saturday the 8th of May.

4. He steered North-East, towards the Kingdom of *Champa*, to examine that Coast, and saw the Island *Pulo Condor*, in the Latitude of 3 Degrees, 20 Minutes, then to the Eastward rounded one six Leagues from the Continent of *Cambodia*. Entering the Port of *Bralapifam*, he found there a Vessel of the *Lequii*, that had on board an Embassadour from the Prince of the Island *Lossa*, in the Latitude of 36 Degrees, to the King of *Siam*. As soon as this Vessel spied ours, they weighed Anchor and sailed. *Faria* sent after them a *Chinese* Pylot with a Civil Message, who brought back this remarkable Answer: *We return Thanks; The time will come when our Nation shall have commerce*



commerce with that Captains in real Friendship, through the Law of the Supream God, whose Clemency is boundless, since by his death he gave life to all Mankind, and remains an everlasting Faith in the House of the Good: We confidently hold this will be when half the Times are past. He also brought a rich Cimiter in a Case of beaten Gold, the Hilt and Scabbord of the same set with some Pearls of value. The Captain would have made some Return, but the Vessel could not be overtaken.

5. Thence he Coasted to the River *Pulo Cambier*, which divides the Kingdoms of *Cambodia* and *Tsiompa*. At the Town *Catimparu*, he was informed that great River had its beginning in the Lake *Pinator* (260 Leagues Westward in the Kingdom of *Quisiruam*) encompassed with high Mountains, about which were 38 Towns, 13 of them considerable, one whereof was *Xincalen*, where was a Gold Mine which yielded yearly 22 Millions of Crowns It belonged to four Lords, who had continual Wars about it. At *Bauquerim*, another Mine of the best Diamonds. Treasures (according to the disposition of that Country) might be easily conquered by us.

6. Coasting along still, he Anchored in the Mouth of the River *Toobasoy*, fearing to go up it. Suddenly they spied a great Vessel, to which making signs of Peace, they received a rude Answer. Night coming on, it was thought fit to expect the Day;

D

but

but in the Dark they discovered first one, then three Vessels, and Counterfeiting, they leapt 40 out of the first Vessel, boarded them, who were all slain, and their Vessel taken, the others burnt. A Black that was taken declared, He was a Christian and Slave to *Gaspar de Melo*, whom (with 26 *Portugueses*) that Pyrat had taken and dashed out their Brains, and that he had left another large Vessel richly laden in the Port with only a few Sea-men. This Pyrat was found to be *Similau*, and he (with the other Prisoners) were put to the same Death they delighted to give to others. As soon as Day appeared he took the other Vessel, and found the Booty in Silver only amounted to 60000 Ducats, besides other Goods.

7. Thus increased, he goes on to the River *Tinacoreu*, or *Varela*, where the *Siam* and *Malaca* Ships, Trading for *China*, barter their Goods for Gold, Calamba and Ivory, with which that Country abounds. He Anchored off of *Tayquileu*, a small Town; the Inhabitants called them the *Bearded People*; not but those People have Beards, but theirs are short and thin, ours then were at their full growth, and some reached to the Waste. By them the Captain was informed, that River was formerly called *Tauralachim*, that is, *Great Stock*, to express its Greatness; it is deep for Eighty Leagues up to *Moncalor*, then shallower and wide, where is a Country for Eight days Journey Unpeopled, by a multitude of Birds, 40 years before the great Kingdom  
of

of the *Cbintalenbo's*. In the middle of it is the great Lake *Cunabetee*, or *Chiamay*, whence spring four great Rivers. It is 180 Leagues in compass, beset with Mines of Silver, Copper, Tin and Lead.

8. Hence he directed his Course for the Island *Hainan*, passed in sight of *Champiloo*, in the Latitude of 13 Degrees, and at the entrance of the Bay of *Cochinchina*. Farther on he discovered the Promontory *Pulocampas*, whence is seen the Point of *Hainan*: Westward is a River, up which *Borrillo* was sent in a small Vessel with 16 Men, who discovered at least Two thousand Sail, and a large Walled Town. On their Return they saw a large Vessel at Anchor. The Captain thinking it was *Coja Hazem*, fell upon and took it: But among the Prisoners he found an ancient Christian of Mount *Sinai*, who told him, it belonged to *Quiay Tayjam* a Pyrat, who had killed above a Hundred *Portugueses*, and now laid hid in the Fore-Castle with six or seven others, who were all killed there. In that Vessel were found 70000 Quintals or Hundred weight of Pepper, much other Spice, Ivory, Tin, Wax and Powder, all valued at 60000 Crowns, besides good Cannon, Baggage and some Plate. In the Hold were nine Children, the biggest about nine years of Age, loaded with Irons and starving with Hunger.

9. Coasting along the Island *Hainan*, he met some Fishers of Pearl, whom he used courteously. They told him, the Island belonged to the King of *China*. Hence he went to the River *Tananquir*, where two great Vessels suddenly fell upon *Faria*; both which, after a long Dispute, he took, having killed 80 of their Men, and lost 14, whereof one *Portugues*. After a while they heard lamentable Cries in the Hold of one of those Vessels; where they found seventeen Prisoners, two of them *Portugueses*, One of which said, those Vessels belonged to *Necoda Xicaulem*, who after turning Christian at *Malaca*, and marrying a Portugues, had killed her and many more of her Country. His Body being found, was cut in pieces. The Booty was valued at 50000 Crowns. One of the Vessels was burnt, for want of Men to sail it; in both were seventeen Brass Guns, most of them with the Arms of *Portugal*.

10. He Anchored forty Leagues farther at *C.Tilaumere*, where came up with our four Vessels four others, in which was the Bride of a Noble young Man, who had promised to meet her there with a like number of Ships, and this mistake brought them to our Vessels. Three of them were taken, and in one of them the Bride. Some Seamen were chose, the rest set ashore. They came to *Mutipinam*, and found it a most convenient place to sell their Prizes. The Governour of the City somewhat obstructed the Sale, so they were obliged to hasten



hasten it ; the Goods were paid for in Silver uncoyned, and amounted to Two hundred thousand Crowns. This was the beginning of the Year 1541.

---

C H A P. VI.

*Continues the Exploits of Antony de Faria.*

1. **A** *Ntony de Faria* sailed on in search of the Port of *Madel*, in the Island *Hainan*, and by the way took some Prizes. Here he met *Hinymilau*, a bold Pyrat and a great Enemy to Christians, whom he delighted to put to cruel Deaths. They had a bloody Fight with, and at length took him. He gave a bold Relation of the Cruelties he had exercised against the *Portugueses*, and was therefore with four more immediately killed. The Prize was valued at 70000 Ducats.

2. This Action struck such a Terroure into many of those that were there in that River, that they sent a Message to *Faria*, offering him 30000 Crowns to take them into his Protection, calling him King of those Seas, and desiring of him Passes for their safe Trading therein. He received the Mony, and gave the Passes by only  
D 3                      Writing,

Writing, of which in Twelve days time a Servant of his got 6000 Ducats. The Governour of the City offered to make him Admiral of those Seas for the King of *China*, with a Pension of 9000 Crowns, if he would serve. Such a Name had he already got in those parts.

3. They run all along this Coast without any remarkable Occurrence, only saw many, though not large Towns, and a very fruitful Country; and were informed, there were there Mines of Silver, Tin, Salt-Peter, and Brimstone. The Souldiers now weary of looking after the Pyrat *Coja Hazem*, demanded their shares of the Prizes, to be gone. They agreed, and directed their Course for the Kingdom of *Siam*. By a furious Storm they were wrecked upon the Island *De los Ladrones*, where of Five hundred Men, only Eighty six got ashore naked; of these Twenty eight were *Portugueses*. Here they were fifteen days almost without any thing to eat. A Bird flying over them with a Fish, dropt it, and afterwards they saw many others, that frightened at their Shouts, let fall their Prey; this, and a Deer they found killed by a Tyger, kept them awhile, but some died with Want. Being thus in despair, because the Island was not Inhabited, they discovered a small Vessel making to the shoar, where they cast Anchor, and presently Thirty Men landed; some carried Wood and Water, and others diverted themselves. They were *Chineses*. Our Men agreeing together upon a sign,  
run

run furiously, and possessed themselves of the Vessel, and with the same swiftness put to Sea. The *Chineses* were astonished at that unexpected Misfortune, and our Men overjoyed, finding in the Vessel good Provision and much Silk. In the Barque they found only an Old man and a Child, whose Father was left ashoar.

4. Sailing for *Liampo* in Port *Xamoy*, they took a Vessel of *Chineses*, and went to the Island *Luxitay*, where they stayed fifteen days, went over to the great Vessel, and Refitted the small one, and then went on. Upon the Coast of *Lamau* they discovered a great Vessel, which as it came near began to fire Fifteen great Guns it carried; but coming closer, they discovered Crosses and Portugues Habits on both sides; so they hailed each other, and the Vessel appeared to belong to *Quiay Panjau*, a Chinese, and great Friend to the Portugueses, whereot he had Thirty Souldiers aboard. He came to *Farias's* Vessel, and brought a present of Amber, Pearls, Gold and Silver, worth Two thousand Ducats. After other Discourse our Captain told him he was bound for *Liampo*, to furnish himself with Necessaries, in order to attempt the Mines of *Quamjaparu*, where he was told he might get a Treasure. *Quiay Panjau* offered to accompany him, demanding for himself only the Third part of what should be taken; which was agreed.

5. At the River *Anay* they Refitted , and came to *Chincheo* ; where *Faria* hired 35 Portugueses he found there. Putting to Sea again , he found eight Portugueses naked and wounded in a Fisher-Boat. They told him, the Pyrat *Coja Hazem* had taken their Ship in the Port of the Island *Cumbor* , that it was worth Two hundred thousand Ducats, and that they with difficulty had escaped in that condition. *Faria* was overjoyed to hear News of that Pyrat, and turned eight Leagues back to *Layloo* , to provide for the Fight. There he changed his Old Vessels for New , provided Arms, Ammunition and Men, paying generously for every thing. He had in his four Vessels Five hundred Men, whereof 95 Portugueses, 40 Pieces of Cannon, 160 Musquets, 6000 Darts, other Arms and much Ammunition. In a day and half he came to the Fisheries, where *Coja Hazem* had robbed those Portugueses, and was informed by Fishermen, that he was two Leagues off in the River *Tinlau*. To be sure, he sent one to discover him.

6. Before Day began a most furious Fight, and the Pyrats four Ships were reduced to great streights, when four small ones came to their relief. One of our Cannon was so well pointed, that it sank the first of them downright, and killed some Men in another. The Fight was renewed, and *Coja* encouraged his Men, till *Faria* boarding, gave him such a Cut over the Head as struck him down without sense, and with



with another stroak Ham-strung him, that he could not rise. His Men gave our Captain three Wounds; but he being relieved, the Victory was compleat; it cost 43 Men, eight of them Portugueses. Of the Enemy almost 400 died, above half drowned, leaping over to save themselves.

7. *Faria* Landed, and buried his dead. He found in a House 96 Men left there by *Coja Hazem* to be cured; these, though they cried for Mercy, he destroyed, firing the House. Here he performed a most Magnanimous act, which was, That he restored the Portugues Ship to the Owners, and gave liberty to the Slaves, paying their Masters, as he had Vowed when he went on this Design. What booty remained to him was worth 100000 Crowns.

8. Sailing hence that Night, rose such a violent Storm, that *Faria's* Ship and another were cast away, and most of the Goods of the others was thrown Over-board, to the Value of Two hundred thousand Ducats. One hundred and eleven Men were lost, the Eleven Portugueses. Thirteen that escaped drowning were carried Prisoners to *Nauday*, where *Faria* with the five remaining Vessels came to an Anchor. He offered the Governour of the City Three thousand Crowns for the Prisoners. The Answer was such, as obliged him to resolve to hazard all, to obtain by force what he could not effect with Courtesie and Mony. Our Men were fearful of the greatness of the Enterprize; but he so encouraged them,  
that

that they resolved to follow him. He had in all 470 Men, 60 of them *Portugueses*; out of the whole he chose 300 for this Action, which hapned the beginning of the Year 1542.

9. After sending another Civil Message, to which the Governour answered by hanging the Messenger, he Landed; as they marched, Twelve thousand Foot and an hundred Horse came out of the City to meet them; our Musqueteers killed at least Three hundred of them, and pursued the rest to a Bridge that led into the City. The Governour was within on Horseback with Six hundred Men, maintaining the Pass till killed by a Shot; at that fight his Men fled; *Faria* pursues them with great slaughter till they run out at the other end of the Town. The City being plundered, he that got least was Rich; the remainder was consumed to Ashes. Our Victorious Captain returned, carrying the Prisoners he had recovered, and many beautiful Women. He lost eight Men, one a *Portugues*, and many wounded. Now he prosecutes his Voyage towards the Mines.

10. The Course was to *Pulo Hindor*, an Island not inhabited, where he designed to Winter and take some Rest; it was fifteen Leagues off. About the Islands of *Commo-lem* he was attacked by two great Ships, in which were Two hundred Resolute Men, Commanded by the Pyrat *Premata Gundel*, a mortal Enemy to the *Portugueses*, to whom he had done great harm; but thought

thought now these had been *Chinese* Merchants. One of the *Pyrats* boarding one of ours, *Quiay Panjan* came to his Relief with all his Sails abroad, and run so furiously foul of the *Pyrat*, that they both sunk down right. *Quiay* and most of his Men were saved by the care of our Men. The *Pyrat* himself had boarded *Faria*, who was in danger of being lost; but at length was Victorious, killing 90 Moors that had entered his Ship. Then he boarded the Enemies, and put all to the Sword. This cost us 17 Men, five of them Portugueses, above forty were wounded, and *Faria* himself had two great Cuts and a hurt of a Spear. The Prize was valued at 120000 Ducats. They staid 20 Days in the Island *Buncaleu*, to cure the Wounded men. Thence they steered to the Gates of *Liampo*, which are two Islands three Leagues distant from the City of that Name, built by the Portugueses, who there Governed in the nature of a Commonwealth.

## C H A P. VII.

*Continues still the Exploits of Antony de Faria, in the Government of D. Stephen de Gama, and the Year 1542.*

1. **A** Ntony de Faria being Anchored at those Gates of *Liampo*, sent to ask leave of the Inhabitants to enter the Port: They returned a courteous Answer, praying him to defer it six days, till they had prepared a House to entertain him. The term expired upon Sunday Morning, when he hoisted Sail and went up accompanied with many Boats sent from the Town to receive him, with Three hundred Townsmen, who saluted and welcomed him, the River resounding with the noise of Musical Instruments.

2. About Two hundred Ships then in the Port were placed in two Lines, and made a Lane, through which as *Faria* passed, all the Cannon of the Vessels and alhoar were fired. Some *Chineses* seeing this great Reception, asked, Whether that was the King of *Portugal's* Brother, or near Kinsman; and were Answered, He was his Smiths Son; which so surprized them, they concluded the Kingdom of *Portugal* to be the greatest in the World. From his Ship  
*Faria*



*Faria* went into a Barge shaded with a Natural Chesnut Tree, the Fruit hanging on the Boughs, and was seated on a Silver Chair placed upon six Steps adorned with Gold. On the sides were six beautiful Maids richly clad, who sang and play'd sweetly; and thus he was carried to the Key.

3. Where was a richer Chair carried upon Mens shoulders, covered with a rich Canopy; about it 60 Halberdeers, and before it went 16 Men mounted on fine Horses, before these eight with Silver Maces, all in most rich Attire. *Faria* long refused to be thus carried, but was forced to submit, and in this manner came to a large Scaffold, covered with fine Tapistry. There he was placed on his Chair, and received the Complements of the Magistrates in the Name of the City, and of others for the Gentry. He received them standing, and returned their Courtesie with great Civility.

4. From the Key to the City, which was a considerable distance, was a Lane in nature of an Arbour of Chesnut, Pine and Laurel Trees, the Ground strewed with Flowers; at distances many Pertumes, several Companies of Dancers, and multitudes of People all the way. At the Entrance of the Town was a Castle built for this Occasion. On the Front of it, the Arms of the *Faria's*, which are Sanguin, a Tower Argent, in Base a Man torn to pieces. *Faria* being come hither, was received by

a Reverend Old man ( attended by four Mace-Bearers ) who after some Ceremonies made a long Speech in praise of his Family, and concluded extolling his own Actions, and welcoming him to that place.

5. The Speech ended, the old Orator in the Name of the City, offered him five Chests full of Silver Bars, to the Value of Twenty thousand pieces of Eight, which he could not be prevailed with to accept of; but returned his Thanks, and promised to endeavour in part to deserve the Honours they did him. Then he went on foot through many sightly Arches to our *Ladies* Church, where ( under a Canopy ) he heard Mass, and a Sermon of his own Praises.

6. Hence he was conducted by above a Thousand *Portugueses*, to a large place that was before the House, provided for his Entertainment. This place was shaded with variety of Trees set, as if they had grown there, the Ground strewed with Flowers and sweet Herbs. In the middle were three long Tables richly covered, and Side-boards. *Faria* being seated, all departed, but about 80 who were to Dine there, and 50 Souldiers. At a distance stood the Halberdeers to keep off the People. As soon as seated, the Musick began to play,

7. Presently

7. Presently eight beautiful Maids appeared playing on Instruments and Dancing, eight others stood by him singing. The Dishes were brought by fine Women, and set on by Men. The Plenty and Costliness was great. After Dinner they went to another place, where there was a Bull-Feast, and some wild Horses among them; at the death of every one followed Dancing, Musick, and other Divertisements.

---

## C H A P. VIII.

*Concludes with the Actions of Antony de Faria.*

1. **H**ere *Faria* continued five Months always entertained with great splendour, and had Dogs and Horses to go a Hunting, that place being stored with all sorts of Game. The time being come to set out for the Mines of *Quamgiparu*, the Chinese *Quiay Panjau*, who was to accompany him in that Voyage, was snatched away by a violent Sickness. All things were in forwardness when the Chinese, *Similau*, dissuaded *Faria* from that Enterprize, representing the great Difficulties, and proposing other Undertakings much more easie, and no less beneficial. Among  
the

the rest he said Great things of the Island *Calempluy*, where were the ancient Monuments of the Kings of *Cbina*, and in them great Treasures. To this he soon gave Ear; for Covetousness is of great force to persuade, even in a Man so generous and understanding as he was. Happy if he had returned to *India*, satisfied with his past Victories and Triumph.

2. About the middle of *May* he set Sail with *Similau* in two Galliots, in which were 146 Men, 52 of them Portugueses, and among them the Priest *James Lobato*. Next day they discovered the Islands of *Nanguitur*, and then entred Seas till then unknown to Portugueses. Crossing a Gulph of 40 Leagues, they discovered the high Mountain *Nangalaci*, and held on their Course Northward. At the end of Ten days they Anchored in a River where they saw White People, like the *Cbineses*, but differing in Language, and could never prevail to have any commerce with them. After Eight days sailing they entred the Streight of *Silcapaquim*, in which they spent five days in sight of many populous Towns. But this Course appearing dangerous, they steered another by the advice of *Similau*. This was up the River *Humbepadam*, which they entred, and to the West saw the Mountain *Fangus*, and thirteen days after the Bay *Buxipalem*, in the Latitude of 30 Degrees, which produces Fish, Serpents and Crocodils of wonderful sorts and greatness; and many Sea-Horses. Farther on they came



came into the Bay of *Calindam*, girt with high Mountains covered with Trees, from them four great Rivers fall into the Sea.

3. Next they sailed under *Botinasora*, a Mountain abounding in Lions, Abada's, Tygers, Ounces, and other wild Beasts; then *Gangitann*, the habitation of the *Gigabui*, a wild Gigantick People, some ten, some eleven Spans high, of which they saw fourteen of both Sexes: They have good Complexions, being white and red; but ill Features. *Faria* gave them some Porcelane Dishes and Silk, for which they appeared thankful, but could not be understood, and brought some Cows and a Deer. At length they came into the Bay of *Nanking*, and within six days to the great City *Pamor* whose Bay was almost hid under Three thousand Vessels. Fearing Danger here, they stood off and came to *Tanquilem*, where *Similan* and Thirty six Chinese Seamen run away for fear; because our Captain weary of the Voyage, and finding he could give no good Account where they were, had threatned to kill him. He was not so ignorant; but terrified with the ill Usage of the Portugueses he knew not what he said, and they feared either he knew not the Coast, or designed to betray them. It was a great Error, to believe him at *Liampo*, and use him ill at *Nanking*, where they had most need of him. In fine, They gave themselves for lost, not knowing where they were, till some of the Na-

E

tives

tives informed them, they were but Ten Leagues from the Island *Calempluy*, which made them repent the wrong they had done *Similan*.

4. Turning Cape *Guinaytarau* (after a tedious Voyage of two Months and a half) they discovered in the middle of the River the Island. It is plain, and to appearance four Miles in compass. It was then Night: Next Morning *Faria* went about it with his Galliots, and saw it was enclosed with a Wall of Jasper Stone, which were joyned so close, it appeared all of a piece. It rose about 19 Foot above the superficies of the Water, and was terrassed within. The Top of the Wall was a massy Twist: Upon it were Brass Rails, and at distances little Columns, on which were the Statues of Women with Balls in their Hands, all of the same Metal. At some distance from these appeared several Figures of Iron of Monstrous shape, that seemed to give one another their Hands. Farther yet were several curious Arches of Stone of many Colours: Within was seen afterwards a delightful variety of small Woods of Orange Trees; among which were 366 Chappels, dedicated to the Gods of the Year. On one side a great Building, not all of a piece, but divided into seven parts, all over glittering with Gold,

5. In

5. In the Evening the Captain entred the Island at one of its eight Gates, with sixty Men, four of them Portugueses. Enttring one of the Chappels, they saw an Old Man, in appearance an hundred years of Age, who with the fright of seeing them fell down; but recovering, and seeing the Souldiers take out the Bars of Silver out of the Tombs, he rebuked the Captain, giving him Advice to be saved. *Faria* courteously took his leave, having Information what was in the other Chappels, and resolving next day to plunder them all, he retired to his Ships with the Silver taken in this, which was a considerable quantity.

6. About Midnight there appeared Lights upon the Top of the Great Building, and Bells began to ring throughout the Island. *Faria* was advised to be gone, being they were discovered; but he returned to the Island with only six Men, and could see no more than what he had from his Vessels. Being returned aboard, all protested he ought to retire, and he no longer able to withstand the Mutiny; said, *He was obliged in Honour to see what he fled from;* and went ashore again with the same six Men. He entred a Chappel and found two Old Men, whom he brought away with some Candlesticks and a Silver Idol he found, and immediately left that place. He understood by the Old Men, that the Alarum was given, and the Island would soon be relieved; that the first Hermit had given Notice. Then *Faria* found, how

much he had erred in not bringing him away, as he was Advised.

7. He went away in a Passion, that he should lose that Treasure through his own fault; and having sailed almost a Month, one Night, being the fifth of *August*, there arose such a terrible Storm, that his Galliot was swallowed up, as was guessed by those in the other by the miserable Cries; for they could not see it. A few days after the other also perished, only fourteen of them escaping. Thus ended that brave Commander; doubtless a just Judgment for the Robbery he designed to commit.

8. No less Unfortunate was the End of the City *Liampo*, where this Captain had been so Nobly received, and was the effect of a base and insatiable Avarice. *Lancelot Pereyra*, a Judge of that City having lost a Thousand Ducats by the Chineses, went out with a Body to rob and plunder others, as if this might be done though they have been the Debtors. This barbarous, hellish Action, brought the Governour of that Province with Threescore thousand Men upon that City, which in four hours time was burnt, with Eighty Ships that were in the Port; Twelve thousand Men killed, of them a Thousand *Portugueses*, and three Millions of Gold lost. Scarce any thing was left, but the bare Memory of *Liampo*; but it appeared that whatever the *Portugueses* gained by their Valour, they lost by their Covetousness. It was admirably said of one of those we call Baroarians, hearing the  
the



the Actions of the Portugueses in *Asia* celebrated: His Words were these; *Let them go on; for whatever they gain as Courageous Soldiers, they will lose as Covetous Merchants: They now conquer Asia, Asia will soon conquer them.* Who was most Barbarous; he that said this, or they who did what he said?

9. *Liampo* had above Three thousand Inhabitants, all Catholicks, and almost half Portugueses. Those who escaped that Storm, though quite discredited among the *Chinenses*, obtained leave with great Presents, in the Year 1547, to Settle in the Port of *Chincheo*; where there was a Village, which began to flourish with a rich Trade; but came to the same End as the other, as shall appear the Year 1549.

## C H A P. IX.

*Continues the Government of D. Stephen de Gama, and contains the Actions of his Brother Don Christopher in Ethiopia.*

1. **W**Hilst this hapned in *India* and *China*, *Don Christopher de Gama* marched through *Ethiopia*, led by that *Barnagau*, who came as Embassadour from the Queen Mother, to desire favour of the Governour *D. Stephen*. The Heat the Men endured was excessive, though they lay by the Day, and marched by Night. A Week was spent in passing over a Rugged Mountain, whence they descended into a most pleasant Plain Country, watered by many Rivulets. Through this they marched in two days to the City *Barua*, Metropolis of the Province *Barnagasso*; though damaged by the late Invasion, yet of lightly Buildings, divided by a great River, encompassed with good Villages and Country-houses. At the Gates they were received by several Religious Men singing a Litany, one of which made a Speech to Welcom them, and extol their Generosity in coming to their relief; after which our Men visited the Church, and Encamped.

2. *Don*

2. *Don Christopher* sent Advice of his Arrival to the Emperour, who was far off; and to the Queen Mother, who was near. He desired of her, to leave that Mountain and put her self under his guard. *Barnagais* was sent to Conduct her with two Companies of Portugueses. She came with a great Retinue of Women and Servants. Our Men were drawn out to receive her, and the Cannon fired. The Queen sat upon a Mule, whose Trappings reached the ground, and she was hid by Curtins fixed to the Saddle; her Cloathing was white, on her Shoulders a short black Mantle with gold Fringes; and from her white Head-Cloaths fell a Veil that covered her Face. *Barnagais* led the Mule, his Arm naked, and a Tygers Skin upon his Shoulders, (a Token of Respect) a Lord on each side in the same Garb. She opened the Curtains to see the Portugueses, and lifted her Veil to be seen by *D. Christopher*. The Reception on both sides was Courteous. Afterwards *D. Christopher* went to Visit Her, and by Advice of the *Ethiopians* it was resolved to Winter there, and expect the Emperour's Answer.

3. The Answer came, expressing his Joy for the Arrival of the Portugueses, and desiring *D. Christopher* to march the beginning of Summer. It was put in execution: Some Light Horse led the Van to discover; then followed the Artillery, next the Baggage; after it the Queen, guarded by fifty Portugues Musqueteers. *D. Christopher*

brought up the Reer; *Barnagais* and his Officers made up the Flanks. In eight days they came to the Mounrain *Ganè*, of most difficult ascent; on the Top of it was a City, and on the highest Cliff a Chappel, near which a House, hung round with Three hundred embalmed Bodies, sewed up in Hides, which being rent with Age shewed the Bodies white and uncorrupt. Some were of Opinion they were Roman Conquerors of that Country; others, and among them the Patriarch, supposed them to be Martyrs. At the sight of the Portugueses, many of the People resorted to the Queen.

4. *Don Christopher* marched on to the Mountain *Canete*, well Watered and stored with Cattle, impregnable by Nature, and yet strengthened by Art. Formerly the Emperours were Crowned here; now it was held for the Tyrant by a Thousand Men, who at times came down to Ravage the Country. *D. Christopher*, contrary to the Advice of the Queen and her Counsel, resolved to assault that Den of Thieves. He divided his Men into three parts, and led the one himself, and boldly assaulted the Three Passes that led to it; but were forced this day to desist, by reason of the great Stones the Enemy rouled down upon them. Having heard Mass on *Candlemass-day*, they returned to the Assault, playing their Cannon, and lost some Men by the Stones thrown down; yet they came to the first Gates and broke them open, making their



their way with much slaughter and loss of three Men to the second Gates. Those who were within these and the third Gates, seeing so few of our Men, opened them, and the Portugueses as freely rushed in; where was a hot Dispute, till *D.Christopher* and the others coming up, pressed the Enemy so hard, that many of them threw themselves headlong down the Rocks. Many Women and Children were taken, and there was a considerable Plunder. The Queen and her Retinue went up with a general Admiration; the *Ethiopians* having always held that Fort to be impregnable. The Patriarch blessed a Mosque, dedicating it to our Lady, where Mass was celebrated with great Joy to both People.

5. The Mountain being provided, and garrisoned under the Command of an *Ethiopian*, the Army marched. As they entered the Country of the Rebel *Jarse*, he submitted himself to the Queen, and brought his Men to her Service, thinking nothing could withstand those who had conquered Nature; in such Esteem did they hold the taking the Mountain. The King of *Zeila* came on now, covering the Plains and Hills with his Numbers, and joyful to have to do with our Men. *D. Christopher* Encamped in good Order near a Mountain, both Armies in sight. *Palm Sunday* and *Monday* were spent in Skirmishing with equal Loss, only the Portugueses had so much the Advantage, that

that the Enemy retired to their Works. *D. Christopher* was forced to move his Camp for want of some necessaries, chiefly Water. The King of *Zeila* perceiving their motion from the higher Ground, came down to encompass our Men, who marched in good Order, pouring their Shot in upon the Enemy: Who pressing on, *D. Christopher* ordered *Emanuel de Cuna* with his Men to face them, who performed it so successfully, that he obliged a Body of Turks to retire, after losing many of their Men. They rallied, and coming on again had somewhat distressed him, till *D. Christopher* came in person to their Relief, fighting with such Resolution, that he felt not he was wounded in the Leg. The King himself came on, thinking to put an end to the days Action, and it turned to his loss; for our Cannon cut off many of his Men. *D. Christopher* was in danger of being slain, but still lost no Courage, and the Fight continued till the Tyrant was struck down by a shot which pierced his Thigh. His Men furled their Colours, and fled with him, as they thought dead, though he was alive. This Victory cost eleven Portugueses, two of them Men of Note. The Queen her self with great alacrity tended *Don Christopher* and all the wounded Men.

6. After a Weeks respite, the Army marched towards the Enemy, who was Encamped at no great distance, and came to meet them, carrying their King in an open

open Chair. It was Resolutely fought on both sides. A Turkish Captain with fifty Horse thinking to recover the Honour lost the other day, Charged in the midst of our Men, and was entirely cut off. *D. Christopher* mounting on Horseback, led his Men with such fury into the Heat of the Battle, that he obliged the Enemy with great slaughter to turn their Backs. The King had infallibly been taken, had there been more Horse to pursue him. Eight Portugueses were lost in this Action: The Victorious Army marching down to a pleasant River, found it possessed by the Enemy, who immediately quitted it, the King flying at the sight of our Men.

7. The King sent an Embassy to the Bassa of Zibit, acquainting him with his Distress: He mollified by Presents, sent him almost a Thousand Turkish Musqueteers. *D. Christopher* Wintered in the City *Ofar*, expecting the Emperour. Here a Jew proposed, That if he wanted Horses and Mules, he would shew him a Mountain not far off inhabited by Jews, where there was store of both. The King of Zeyla had a Garrison of Four hundred Men there. *D. Christopher* having enquired into the truth of this Information, marched with two Companies of his own, and some Ethiopians, to the Foot of the Mountain, which is twelve Leagues about. In the Ascent some Moors, who guarded the Passes, were killed. On the Top met him the Captain with all his Men. *D. Christopher*  
imme-

immediately running at, struck him down dead with his Lance. Our Shot being poured in among the Moors, they soon quitted the place and fled, leaving many dead. Great quantity of Horses and Mules were found, and about eight Thousand Jews, who lived in six or seven Villages on that Mountain, were brought under Obedience. There was a Tradition, That these Jews dispersed about *Ethiopia* and *Nubia*, are descended from some of the dispersion of the Ten Tribes.

8. The Jew, who led our Men, astonished at their Valour, was Converted and Baptized, and by common Consent appointed Governour of that Mountain, which being called before *Caloa*, was after known by the Name of the *Jews Mountain*. The second day after *D. Christopher* returned to the Army; the King of *Zeila* appeared now more bold with the increase of the Turkish Musqueteers. *D. Christopher's* Youth now transported him as well as his Valour: For whereas he ought to have retired to a Mountain till the Emperour joyned him, it being impossible to withstand so great a force, he never considered it till it was too late. On the 29th of *August* the Turks gave the Onset, and were repulsed by *D. Christopher*, who lost four Men and went off wounded in the Leg: *Emanuel de Cuna* did the like Service, with loss of three Men. *Francis de Abreu* fighting like a Lion was killed, and his Brother *Humphry* going to fetch him off, fell down dead upon him.

*D. Cbri-*



*D. Christopher* returns like a furious Tyger, and performed Wonders, till a Musquet-Ball broke his Arm ; a couragious Souldier carried him off. He was scarce drest, when he heard *Fonseca* and *Vello* were killed, and the Enemy entred the Works. He caused himself to be carried where the greatest Danger was: But the Tyrant being now undoubtedly Victorious, some of our Men fled, as did the Patriarch and the Queen on Fleet Mares, each taking a different Way, he for fear and she by choice. *D. Christopher* sent after and obliged her to come back, because her absence brought utter Ruin. But at length seeing all lost, in despair he grasped his Sword in the Left Hand and said, *Let who will follow me, for I am going to dye amidst the Enemies.* He was drawn from that Resolution by meer force, and carried out of the Field with only fourteen Men, and the Queen and *Barnagais* among them, seeking some place of Refuge. The Night being dark they lost the Way ; but the Queen and *Barnagais* hit it better, taking up a Mountain. *D. Christopher* wandring with his Companions, fell into the hands of the Enemy, who carried him to the Tyrant, who coveted no greater Prize. The Victors cruelly run, hewing those that had any Life left them, which moved one to set fire to a quantity of Powder that was in one of the Queens Tents, and blew up all that were about it.

9. The King overjoyed that *D. Christopher* was taken, caused him to be brought to his presence, and said, *What would you have done with me, had I been defeated?* He Answered: *I would cut off your Head, and divide your Body, and the Limbs should be set up in Publick places for a Terrour to other Tyrants.* The King caused him to be busfeted with his Slaves Buskins, his Body to be bathed in melted Wax, and his Beard wove with waxed Threads, which were fired, and he led through the Army. Being brought back, the King himself cut off his Head; his Body was quartered and set upon Poles. It is said, Where the Head fell there gushed out a Spring, the Water whereof drank cured many Diseases: The same hour, the Air being calm, a Tree was tore out by the Roots in the Garden of certain Religious Men; and afterwards the same Hour the Emperour having vanquished this Tyrant, caused his Head to be struck off; the Tree that was then dry, re-planted it self in the same place, and was covered with Leaves.

10. Most of the Portugueses that were taken, perished in Slavery or Dungeons. *Alfonso Chaladeira*, with Thirty, followed the Queen. *Emanuel de Cuna*, with Forty, got to *Barnagasso*, and was well received. Others followed the Patriarch; they made up in all One hundred and thirty: Whereof Ninety (because *Cuna* with his Forty Men were too far off) went to the Emperour, who then drew near, and very much lamented

mented the slaughter of that Body, and loss of such a Commander. What those Portugueses did in the Service of that Prince afterwards, does not belong to this place; because the Affairs of *India*, whence we have made a long digression call upon us.

## C H A P. X.

### *The End of the Government of D. Stephen de Gama.*

1. **T**HE Governour *D. Stephen* perceiving the Ships from *Portugal* stayed long, and guessing they were at *Mozambique*, resolved to make use of the Merchandize they brought. To this purpose he sent *Luiz de Mendez*, to *Vasconcelos*, in a Galley, to give Orders about it, and to Advertize him, Whether a Successor was sent him in those Ships. He guessed not ill; for *Martin Alfonso de Sousa* sent to succeed him with five Ships, was detained at *Mozambique* by the Weather, and a tedious Sickness.

2. This Fleet was happy, in that it brought over to *India* one of the first Fathers of the Society of *Jesus*; as well in respect of Time, as that he was one of the Chief in Piety and Virtue. This was  
the

the Famous *St. Francis Xaverius*, who laboured much, and was very successful in converting those Infidels.

3. *St. Francis* was the first that had in the East, the Dignity of *Apostolick Legate* in all *Asia*. But because we shall hereafter have occasion to touch upon his great Virtues, and wonderful Actions, let this suffice here as to the time of his coming.

4. Most of them that enter upon the Government of *India*, look upon it as no small happiness, if they can send off their Predecessor with Disgrace, and therefore endeavour to come upon them by way of surprize. *Martin Alfonso* desiring to compass that, commanded *Lewis Mendez* not to acquaint *D. Stephen*, that he had found him at *Mozambique*. But *Mendez*, who was *D. Stephens* Kinsman, and resolved to do his Duty, sent a man to carry him Advice. *Martin Alfonso* heard of it, and imprisoned him. He met with bad Weather in his Way to *Goa*, and light upon *James Suarez de Melo*, called the *Gallego*, who flying a Sentence of Death he had incurred, was passed to *India*, and with 120 Men in two Vessels, was become a Pyrat. Him *Martin Alfonso* received and pardoned, because he pretended he could say much against *D. Stephen*. Much he might have said that was honourable, very little to his Discredit. What ought to have procured him severer Punishment, was the cause of his favourable Reception. Let us remember this *Suarez*, endeavouring to Rise more than was due to him,



him, by these hellish Contrivances; and we shall hereafter see him rise to the highest pitch, and then cast down to the depth of Misery.

5. *Martin Alfonso de Sousa* being come to an Anchor in the Port of Goa, sent Advice of his Arrival to *D. Stephen* at a very unreasonable Hour, being the dead of Night, and that in such manner as well signified the Ill-will he bore him. Which obliged *D. Stephen* to send an Answer unworthy of them both, and to make him a very uneasie Visit, when he resigned up the Government to him. *Martin Alfonso* found nothing to lay to the Charge of *D. Stephen*, as those desired, who set him upon it; for he being a Gentleman of much Honour, could never desire it of himself.

6. But whereas he ought to have checked himself, finding nothing against him, he grew the more obstinate: For it is Natural to men in the wrong to persist, and believe they take Wing when they are deepest stuck in the Mire. He vented his Malice in allowing him the worst Conveniences for his Voyage, and *D. Stephen* was so disgusted at these Proceedings, that he never saw his Face after he resigned the Sword to him. At length he Arrived in Portugal; for his Enemies had no power on the Seas and Winds, and was received with general Joy of the Court, and with Favour by the King; who offering him a Wife, he refused her, and thereupon (as others for Accepting) was put out of Favour. He  
F obtained

obtained leave, and went to live at *Venice*; for *Portugal* was always ready to despise or banish Great Men. The Emperour *Charles* the Fifth persuaded him to return to his Country, assuring him of his Prince's Favour. He returned and found none; for Princes are more fixed in punishing a little omitted to please, than in rewarding much done to serve them.

7. This is what *D. Stephen* did in *India*; this the Reward he had for Governing it well. He was of a middle Stature, thick and strong, a thick Beard and black Hair, his Complexion ruddy. He was very Liberal, and not a little Positive, but not without cause: A great Horseman. In the number of Governours the Twelfth, first of the Name, second of the Sirname, and held it two years and a Month. He made an Inventory of what he was worth when he entred upon the Government, and so when he left it, and was found 40000 Crowns the worse, the full Value having been 200000. On his Tomb is only this Epitaph, *HE THAT MADE KNIGHTS ON MOUNT SINAI ENDED HERE.* So much did he value the Honour of that Action, and not without Reason.

## ● C H A P. XI.

*The Government of Martin Alfonso de Sousa, from the Tear 1542, till the Tear 1545, in the Reign of King JOHN the Third.*

1. **T**HIS Chapter must begin with what hapned in the time of both Governours, one ending and the other commencing. *Homaum Paxa*, King of the Mogols prosecuting his Ambitious Designs of enlarging his Empire, undertook the Conquest of the Kingdom of *Patane*, then possessed by *Xa Holan*, whom Fortune had once much favoured, and now seemed to neglect. Nothing withstood the Mogol, till he came to the City *Xamanea*, before which he sat down. His Enemy encamped a League off on the other side of *Ganges*, and entertained him with continual Skirmishes, generally with equal Loss. *Homaum* still pressed, and *Halon* despairing of removing him by open Force, had recourse to Stratagem, wherein he was singular. He endeavoured to protract the Time the best he could, till the Season that *Ganges* overflows, which generally drowns all the Plain for the space of eight Leagues. Mean while he dug vast Ponds to receive the

River, and then dammed it up; and as the Floods began to swell he broke the Damms, which caused the Waters to spread abroad with the greater violence. Thus all on a sudden, when the Mogol least thought of it, they gushed out upon his Army, and before he imagined it swallowed up 50000 of his Men, and an infinite quantity of Baggage.

2. *Homaum*, by the help of a Carrier, escaped upon a Mule; and the Queen, who was with Child, on an Elephant. The Queen was delivered of a Daughter, and fearing her Husband should hate her because it was not a Son, she changed it for one the Wife of a *Cornaca* had then brought forth. *Cornaca's* are the Men that govern the Elephants. Some said the Child, thought to be changed, was got on the Queen by the *Cornaca*, there being a suspicion he had had to do with her upon the Elephant. There is no need of disputing the Possibility of the thing; for on the Elephants are Castles, those Castles loanfom, and Solitude and Idleness produce wanton Thoughts. Queens are Women, and Women have ready Wits. However it was, *Homaum* esteemed the Son as his own, and he was called *Gelaldim Häbar*. As to his person, he was more like the *Cornaca*, than *Homaum*; but the Endowments of his Mind were equal with the Greatest of Men. This Prince, when he came to the Crown, being offended at the Innundations of *Ganges*, prevented them by drawing it into several Chan-



Channels, and built there a Palace of such Wonderful structure, that Ten thousand Men spent Thirty years in the Work. *Houmaun* being come to the City *Delbi*, cloathed the Carrier in Royal Robes, entertaining him with a splendid Train, and made him sit three days in the Regal Throne; during which time he enjoyed the whole Revenue of the Crown, and had the full power of Government. From this time forward a Mule was stamped upon all his Coyn, that even the Beast might not pass unrewarded.

3. About the same time *Antony de Mota*, *Francis Zeymoto*, and *Antony Peixoto*, sailing for *China*, were thrown by a Storm among the Islands of *Nipongi*, or *Nifon*; by the Chineses called *Gipon*, and by us *Japan*. In one of these they were well received, and had the Honour to be the first that discovered them, though accidentally. They lye far Eastward of all *India*, opposite to *China*, between 30 and 40 Degrees of North Latitude. They are many; the Principal, *Nipongi*, or *Japan*, in which is the City *Meaco*, the Imperial Court. According to the Natives, the Length of the Island is 366 Leagues, according to our computation One hundred less: It is divided into Fifty six Governments. The Chief Islands about it are *Cikoko*, *Tokoesi*, *Sando*, *Sisime*, *Bacasa*, *Vuoqui*, *Taquixima* and *Firando*. The *Japans* have the vain Pride to esteem themselves descended from the Gods. They say a great Giant made the World of a Cocks

Egg, and of the Earthly part a Woman, who engendring with a Crocodile brought forth a Man, from whom they descend. And the Family of the *Conguis* among them to this day wear Tails like those of Crocodiles hanging at their Breeches in token, they are the immediate Line. The truth is, they are descended from a Chinese Prince, who being banished passed thither; but they are so vain, they would rather descend from a Cock and a Crocodile, than from the Chinese. In Matters of Religion they have several Sects: That of the *Xexuni*, who deny the Immortality of the Soul, and is followed by the Nobility; it is not only in *Japan* they follow it: That of the *Foc-cenxuni*, who adore the Sun, and allow a Second Life: The *Xodexuni*, that adore the Idol which they think saves them, if they name it: That of *Xocoxu*, who believe there is a Reward for the Good, and Punishment for the Wicked, and is followed by the Country People: That of *Xamabuxu*, the Professors whereof adore the Devils, and converse with them so familiarly, that when one would be Revenged of another, he orders them to enter into him; they call them with a Horn. Their Priests are called *Bonzes*: But above all they adore an Idol called *Sento*, who lives in Heaven, and is the beginning of all things. Parricide and Treason, they hold as sins that cannot be forgiven. Pity this Doctrin should not be held among those that pretend to be Christians.

4. *Fernan Mendez Pinto*, in his Travels, appropriates this Discovery to himself; Saying, *He came to the Island Tanixuma* (which I suppose to be *Taquixima*, one of those about *Japan*) *with his two Companions Christopher Borallo and James Zeimoto; not by way of Shipwreck; but designedly, in the Service of a Pyrat, who had taken them up when cast away.* Both Relations mention three Names, one of them is the same in both, and both agree upon the same Year 1542. I will say something I find in that Author, because it is rare and worthy Admiration.

5. *Nautaquim* was then Prince of that Island, and seeing the three Portugueses he stood amazed, and uttered these mysterious words: *Let me dye, if these* (meaning the Portugueses) *be not the Chinchicogies our ancient Records speak of, who flying over the Waters, shall come to be Lords of the Lands where God placed the greatest Riches of the World; and it will be very fortunate for us, if they come as Friends.* Let us return to *India*.

6. The first thing the Governour did, was lessening the Souldiers pay; for saving of Charges is a great means to gain the Favour of Princes: And Ministers never express their Zeal, by retrenching their own large Allowances; but by cutting off the small ones of the Poor. This caused great Discontent among the Commonalty. However Two thousand Men were raised, and imbarqued in Seventy Vessels of several

forts, with which the Governour set out for *Batecala*, a City seated on the Banks of a River upon the Coast of *Canara*, well built and encompassed with a fruitful Country. The occasion of this Voyage, That the Queen refused to pay her Tribute, and entertained Pyrats in her Port to the detriment of the Publick.

7. The Fleet entred the Port, and the Queen seeing so great a force, and that the Governour demanded the Tribute, and delivery of the Pyrats Ships that had retired thither and fortified themselves; she designed to hold him in hand till the time came he must go to *Cochin*. This Artifice was soon disappointed; for he Landed with Twelve hundred Men in two Battalions, the Command of one he gave to *Ferdinand de Sousa* and *Tavora*, and ordered Twenty light Vessels to go up the River and attack the City by Sea. The Governour marching through a Wood, was met by a Body of Musquereers: Our Men made no halt, but drove them before to the Gates, and entred with them, not without great opposition, the Queen her self with much Bravery encouraging her Men. A Portugues Souldier being beset by Two hundred of the Enemy bravely defended himself, till another envious of that Honour came up to him, and both Back to Back kept their Ground; at length a Party of our Men, fell upon the Enemy, and with great slaughter of them rescued the two.



8. It was Night when our Men possessed themselves of the City. In the Morning they not only plundered the Portugueses that were there; but falling out about the Booty had such a Battle among themselves, that all were hurt, and none enriched. The Enemy who perceived this from a Hill, pours in a shower of Arrows; the Governour Orders all to march to Revenge it; but those who are grieved by the lessening their Pay, Answer, *That the Gentlemen who are Rich may march; for they only came to make up by Plunder what they are unjustly deprived of.* Garcia de Sa went out with a few Lances, and after some Retreats reciprocally on both sides, almost all the Portugueses were put to shameful flight, running to their Ships in such haste that some were drowned.

9. The Governour hearing this, run to them with Reproaches, crying out, *He did not know them, and thought they were not the same he left two years before in India.* This seemed a Reflection upon his Predecessor; but they with as loud Voices undeceived him, Answering, *That the Men were the same, but the Governour was not; that this was the fruit of lessening their Pay, to give Gratuities to those who knew better how to beg, than deserve them.* He retired to the Ships, and resolved the next day to burn the City, and destroy the Country. The City run with the Blood of all Living Creatures of both Sexes, and all Ages, before it was burnt; then the Country was laid waste, and all  
the

the Woods cut down. This caused such a general Terrour, that whereas before throughout *India*, it was commonly said, *Beware of Batecala*; they afterwards changed it to *Beware of Martin Alfonso*. The Queen no longer able to resist, submitted, and purchased Peace with a heavier Subjection; for generally they draw on themselves a greater burden, who proudly throw off that they have.

10. *Martin Alfonso* abhorred that so many Men quitting the Service, turned Merchants; to prevent this, and considering the vast Frauds of the Custom-House at *Malaca*, he sent new Orders thither. He lowered the Customs of Strangers to invite them to Trade there, and raised them to the Portugueses, to lessen their desire of Trading thither. The first succeeded well; for the Customs after that amounted to much more than before. The second took no effect. Much of the same nature was what he did at *Ormuz*, and therefore we will mention it in this place. That King was in Arrears for Tribute Five hundred thousand Ducats, which he refused not to pay, but was not able; for from Twelve thousand that *Albuquerque* at first imposed on him it was raised to almost One hundred thousand; so that the King from a Tributary was become a Slave, not having a competent Maintenance left him. *Martin Alfonso* finding he was not able to pay the Debt, proposed to him to make over the Customs for payment: He to be rid of Oppression,

pression submitted, and as before he was a King without a Revenue, now he had some he seemed no King; for the Custom-House is the support of that Crown. No doubt it was a Judgment for the Wickednesses of the Portugueses, in taking from that King what was his due, that the Persians, whose it had been, should take it from them. The oppressed King making Virtue of Necessity, resigned his Crown with Praises of him that took it from him; for the Instrument began with these vain Preambles: *I command all to obey this Supream Instrument, that it may be understood that between me and my Lord (meaning King John the Third) who in greatness reaches to Heaven, and has Power over all the circumference of the Earth, and in Grandeur is equal to the King of China, Great King of Justice (as if any Justice were now done him) Greatest of all Kings in the World; Key of the Treasure that is on Earth, that is, Vertue and Nobility, of whom is learnt the Wisdom of Reigning, brightness of the Sea of Kingdoms, &c.* Could any man wronged flatter him, that injured him more? It is certain, He who gave the Praises, deserved them better than he that received them.

## C H A P. XII.

*Continues the Government of Martin Alfonso de Soula.*

1. **A** Bout the End of this Year arrived in *India* four Ships from *Portugal*; another came out with them, but was put back. At the same time *D. George*, Commander of *Ternate*, was at Variance with the Spaniards, who under *Ruy Lopez de Villalobos* had invaded the Portugues Bounds. *Villalobos* was at *Zagala*, a Town of *Camaso*, inhabited by Renegado Christians, and from thence held Correspondence with the King of *Gilolo*. *D. George* protested against him, for intruding into what he had no right to, according to the late Capitulations. He sometimes Answered, He was forced thither by Storm: Otherwhiles, That he was within the Limits of *Spain*. *D. George* sent *Jayme Lobo* with 50 Men in two Galiots, believing this a sufficient Force, because the Spaniards were spent with Misfortunes. He had Orders to assist *Geliato de Gomo Conora*, who besieged a Fort of his own that was in Rebellion. *Jayme* went to *Momoya*, where he gathered many of the Natives, then Christians, and passed over in *Parao's*, which Landing they took up and carried about half a League to a Lake, there launched



launched them again, and waisted over to the Fort *Geliato*, besieged. The Enemy seeing the Portugues Relief, offered to Capitulate; but the Portugues, covetous of Plunder, refused. The Morning appearing, they could not Land but man by man, and that in several places; which the besieged perceiving, fell upon those who were ashoar, and with considerable damage forced them back to their Vessels. The Enemy had Hooks hanging at their Arms, one stuck in the Face of a Souldier, which drew him along till another came and with his Dagger cut it out. D. George sent 30 Men to the Relief of these, who found near the Lake three Portugueses set upon Poles. *Jayne* returns to the Fort; which the besieged abandoned, and it was dismantled.

2. Being able to do nothing against the Spaniards, he returned to *Ternate*. *Villalobos* went over to *Gilolo*, was well received by the King, fortified himself, and sent a Messenger to D. George, to tell him, *He was within the Spanish Bounds, and demand restitution of the Artillery he had taken, and the Spaniards that were with him.* D. George granted the last, and sent Advice to Goa and Portugal. *Villalobos* dexterously began to draw near, and plant himself in *Tidore*.

3. *Jordan de Freitas* set out from Goa in April, to succeed D. George in that Command, and take possession of the Island *Amboyna*, whereof he had a Grant from *Tabarija* King.

of *Ternate*, who had been unjustly sent Prisoner to *Goa* by *Tristan de Atayde*, was there Baptized, and now sent back by the Governour *Martin Alfonso* to be restored to his Crown. *Freytas* being come to *Malaca*, and considering that King would not be easily admitted by his Subjects, for having changed his Religion, left him there, designing to take his Brother, which would make his Re inthronement the more easie. At *Ternate*, *D. George* delivered him the Fort; he Treated with *Villalobos*, and they agreed upon a Truce for eight Months, in which time they might consult their Superiours; and during this time there was to be no Correspondence between them. The Spaniards fell out among themselves in such manner, that many of them went over to the Portugueses at *Ternate*. *F. Hierome* of *St. Stephen*, Confessor to *Villalobos*, affirmed, He was Excommunicated for entring the Portugues Limits; but he remained obstinate.

4. *Freytas*, sent along with *D. George*, who was going to *Goa*, *Aeiro* the present King, to make room for him he had left at *Malaca*, not knowing he was since dead, and had made the King of *Portugal* his Heir. His Mother and Father-in-Law, who had been with him, went to *Ternate* with *Ferdinand de Sousa*, who carried Reliet to that Fort. *Freytas* received them in Mourning, and then took possession of the Kingdom; the Government whereof he committed to the Father-in-Law and Mother, till other Orders

Orders came from *Portugal*. Afterwards the Governour *D. John de Castro* sent back *Aeiro* with the Title of **K I N G**, to prevent the Disorders that happen by many Heads. This last belongs to the Year 1545; but I insert it here, not to break the Series of these Affairs.

5. About this time in *Ethiopia*, the Emperour marched against the King of *Adel*, or *Zeila*. He was followed by the Portugueses who escaped the former Defeat, except 40 who were with *Emanuel de Cuna* in *Barnagasso*, who being sent for could not come time enough. Those with the Emperour were Ninety, by whose Advice he marched towards the Enemy, giving them the Van of his Army, for the great Opinion he had of their Valour. In the Province *Ambea*, at the Foot of the Mountain *Oenadias*, they met Seven hundred Horse and Two thousand Foot, led by a Captain of *Zeila*, to joyn the King. Fifty Portugueses Horse advanced to attack them, the formost *Antony Cardoso*, who killed the Enemies Captain the first stroak of his Lance; the others following his Example, slew many; when *Barnagais* first, and then the Emperour coming up Charged furiously, and killing Eight hundred put the rest to flight, who went rather to terrifie the Tyrant with this Relation, than Reinforce him.

6. He was a League off with his Army in *Battalia*; it consisted of two Bodies of Foot, Three thousand Men in each; he marched in the Front with Five hundred Horse.

Horſe. The Emperour met him with the like Number, and in the ſame Order. The Portugueſes, who were the Forlorn of this Body, Charged the Five hundred and ſlew many, loſing two. The Emperour in perſon behaved himſelf bravely, till the Enemies Horſe fled to the Wings of their Army. The King was wanting in nothing, ſhewing his Son, Ten years of Age, to ſtir up his Men to fight. The Fight was renewed, and the Emperour in great danger; but a Portugueſe ſhooting the King in the Belly killed him, and his Horſe carried him about hanging, being tied to the Saddle. Only a few Turks choſe rather to dye, than fly, and made a great ſlaughter of Ethiopians. *John Fernandez*, Page to the Unfortunate *D. Chriſtopher*, at two ſtroaks of his Lance killed the Turkiſh Commander. In ſine, Few of the Enemy eſcaped by flight, the King's Head was cut off, and his Son made Priſoner. The Emperour acknowledging how great a ſhare the Portugueſes had in this and the late Victories, did them great Favours. *Cuna* returned to *Goa* with 50 only; the reſt ſtayed and married with Women of the Country, whoſe Progeny ſtill continues there.

1544.

7. At *Goa*, the Governour heard the Complaints of the King of *Ormuz*, brought hither by *D. Pedro de Caſtellobranco*, by Order of *Martin Alfonſo de Melo Juſarte*, Commander of that Fort. The Kings Complaints againſt him were moſt juſt, having been uſed as the meaneſt of Madmen, whereas



whereas his Madnefs was no other, than the Avarice of thofe would make him fo. They endeavoured all they could to hinder his Reftauration; but feeing him Re-inthroned, they poyfoned him, and what caufed his Imprifonment and was the caufe of his death was not punifhed. After this Injuftice followed the Juftice executed upon *Hierome Diaz* a Portugues Phyfician, of Jewifh extraction; he was burnt for Heretie.

---

C H A P. XIII.

*Continues the Government of Martin Alfonfo de Soufa.*

1. **A** Bout forty Leagues off, to the Eaftward of the *Moluco* Iflands is that of *Macaçar*, rich and plentiful of Rice; Salt, Fish, Flefh, Fruit and Grain, and yields Sandal, Wax, Ivory and Gold. The People hardy and good Seamen: The Soil pleafant and well Watered, and has good Towns and Villages. Some Portuguefes hearing the Chriftian Faith was received there, went thither, and among them *Antony de Payva*, that went as a Merchant, not a Preacher; but proved more Preacher than  
G Merchant.

Merchant. He had before had some Discourse with one of the Kings of the Island about Religion, who seemed well pleased therewith. Returning now, he arrived in the Kingdom of *Supa*, and had so much Discourse with that King, who was 70 years of Age, that he was very near being Converted.

2. However, the King remained dubious, and *Payva* sailing thence went to the Port of *Sian*; the King whereof, on account of the grateful Conference they had before, received him with kindness. The Discourse of Religion was renewed, and *Payva* at large explained all Points to him, and at the same time urged the absurdness of the Adoration of Idols.

3. The Conference ended, the Sky till then being serene, there arose a Storm of Thunder, Lightning and Rain, which was esteemed as a Heavenly Confirmation of the Truth of what *Payva* had said; and he laying hold of that advantage, urged the King to embrace the Faith. He was inclinable; but his Subjects, and the Moors that Traded there, obstructed him. He demanded time to Consider. At this time arrives the King of *Supa*, and hearing he of *Sian* had desired time, said, *A work so good ought rather to be put in execution, than delayed; that he was only sorry for the Time he had lost, but would atone by being the first, and desired to be immediately Baptized.* All stood amazed, and there being no Priest, the Ancientest of the Portugueses performed the Function; and

and he was Chriftened *Luis*. Then the Queen, and many that came with him, were Baptized, which was celebrated with the Guns and Warlike Instruments of both People. He of *Sian* moved by this Example, was Baptized with his whole Family.

4. Mean while the Governour fitted out a Fleet of 45 Sail, in which were Three thousand Seamen and Souldiers. The design was kept secret, and was to rob the Pagod of *Tremele*, which is twelve Miles up the Inland of *St. Thomas Meliapor*, in the Kingdom of *Bisnagar*: For which he had exprefs Orders from King *John*, upon pretence *India* was wasted; as if any pretence could juftifie fuch a Robbery. Nevertheless the Design was discovered, or (as others fay) difappointed by contrary Weather; yet the Governour was perfuaded to plunder other Pagods, where it was thought there was no lefs Treasure.

5. He took the Advice; and by the way fent to the King of *Jafanapatan*, in the Ifland *Ceylon*, either to fubmit and pay Tribute to the King of *Portugal*, or provide to oppofe that Fleet. The King was fo unprovided, he thought it a happinefs the Governour was fo content, and agreed to pay Four thousand Ducats yearly. The King called *Grande*, near Cape *Comori*, for fear, fent him a Prefent. He went on to the Pagod *Tebelicate*, near *Calecoulam*, notwithstanding we were at Peace with that King, and entred it with a few of his Con-

fidents; they brought two Casks so heavy, they loaded many Men: It was said they carried Water; such as were not easie of belief, affirmed it was pure Gold and Precious Stones. The truth was never known. Some Writings declare, there was only a Pot of Gold found, in which the Idol was bathed, valued Four thousand Crowns, which King *John* Ordered to be restored, much admiring this Action of *Martin Alfonso*, as if it had been a greater Crime to rob at *Tebilicarè* without his Order, than at *Tremelè* with it. However it was, whilst the Portugueses marched to their Ships, the Pagod and Town flamed, and Two hundred Nayres set out to Revenge this Loss, Commanded by the Keeper of the Pagod. They appeared on an Eminence over our Men, who marched through a *Defileè*, and poured their Shot and Arrows upon them, which killed Thirty. The Governour had been in danger, had he not dismounted. Our Men being got into the open Field, put the Nayres to flight.

6. No danger terrifies Avarice. They went on to another Pagod. Out of it was taken a Chest, which was publicly opened, and some Silver Mony that was in it distributed; but of so little value, that many believed thence proceeded the Liberality. The Governour returned to *Goa*, where four Ships arrived from *Portugal*, soon after his departure, expected him. Five had set out from *Lisbon*, but one was forced back by a Storm.



7. The Governour had not returned so soon to *Goa*, if *D. Garcia de Castro* had not sent to hasten him upon a sudden emergency ; which was thus : *Acedecam*, Lord of the Lands about *Goa*, designing to depose *Hidalcan*, prevailed by dint of Presents and Promises with *D. Garcia*, to deliver up to him *Meale Can*, Brother to *Hidalcan*, pretending he held the Kingdom wrongfully. This gave *Hidalcan* just cause of Complaint, and drew on no contemptible danger. The Governour heard both Parties, and though both used equal Arguments, offering equal Advantages to the Crown of *Portugal* ; the Governour inclined more to *Acedacan*, who offered the Kingdom of *Concam*, then possessed by *Abraham*, a good Man and our Friend, whose Revenue was above a Million. It was the more valuable for being near *Goa*.

## C H A P. XIV.

*The End of the Government of Martin Alfonso de Sousa, and of the First Part of this Tome.*

1. **T**HE Governour Armed in defence of *Meale*, and to possess him of the Crown *Acedecan* offered him. This was a notorious act of Injustice, and *Martin Alfonso* being led by Interest, and naturally so haughty that none durst Advise him, *Peter de Faria* resolved to do it, encouraged by his Quality, the great Offices he had born, and his great Age, being 80 years Old. Late at Night he repaired to the Governour's Tent, and having prepared him to hear, laid before him all the Motives that could persuade, to desist from so unjust an Undertaking, with much submission, gravity and discretion.

2. *Martin Alfonso* submitted to *Faria's* Reasons. As soon as Day appeared, the Governour pretending other Causes, gave over the Design and returned to the City, securing *Meale Can*. At this time died *Acedecan*, the Promoter of this Discord; and *Hidalcan* came down the Mountain-Gate with a powerful Army, reducing his Rebels, and in few days recovered the Kingdom of *Concam*, which not long before we had hoped

hoped to possess, if not dissuaded by the Experienced *Faria*, to whom *Martin Alfonso* confessed he owed his Life and Honour: For had he gone to *Concham*, it was much to be doubted whether ever he had Returned. *Hidalcan* still fearing *Meale Can*, offered for him, if he were delivered to him, the Lands of *Salsete* and *Bardez*, valued at Fifty thousand Ducats a Year. It had been a breach of Trust, to deliver up a Man that had put himself into our protection. Therefore the Governour Answered; *If what was offered were given, he would send him where he should not disturb Hidalcan*. He admitted this Condition, and performed on his part; but had not entire satisfaction from us; for *Meale* was carried from *Goa* to *Cananor*, and from *Cananor* to *Goa*, in the Eyes of *Hidalcan*, as the Politick said, To keep in Awe; but the State Criticks said, It was a Bait to draw Presents. Some were sent soon after.

3. *Hidalcan* had moreover granted to the Governour upon this Treaty, the vast Treasure *Acedecan* had laid up when he Rebelled, and which at his Death fell into the hands of *Cojecemazadim*, and was worth Ten Millions of Ducats. He persuaded the Governour it was not above a Million, and delivered so much to him. One Record says, He sent almost half of it to *Portugal* in Bars of Gold: Another, That he applied Two hundred and fifty thousand Ducats to the Kings use in *India*; if we may not take into this Account, One hundred thousand given by *Hidalcan* upon the late Accommo-

dation. But if these did make up the Sum, he afterwards discharged a good Conscience, discharging the King of some Debts.

4. *Hidalcan* gave him Notice of the great Fraud used in delivering the Treasure, persuading him to recover the Remainder of *Cojeçemazadim*, who was at *Cananor*. He used Means to take him; but not succeeding, relolved to endeavour it in person. He fitted out Twenty four great Ships, and many Vessels to row, and without saying any thing what he intended, landed at *Cochin*. Putting to Sea again, he steered several Courses, and Anchored at *Mount Delij*. At Night, without making it known to the Fleet, he went into a Barge with five or six Gentlemen, and ordering three of the lightest Vessels to follow, came with incredible speed to the Fort of *Cananor*, where *James Alvarez Tellez* Commanded. He spoke to him without being known to any other, ordering him to endeavour to secure *Cojeçemazadim*, or *Pocarale Aderrajam*, who Governed him. Then he returned to the Fleet, and with it to *Goa*, all men admiring the Voyage and Preparations, without seeing the Design or Effect of them. *Tellez* could not take *Zemazadim*, for he was upon his Guard; but he ordered *Henry de Sousa*, Commander in Chief of *Malabar*, to take *Pocarale*. He attempted it, and many coming in to his Relief, *Pocarale* and a Brother of his were both killed. This enflamed the King and People against the Fort, and though they were



were appeased, yet the Hatred to the Portugueses for this Action was not extinguished; but raised one of the greatest Storms we weathered in *India*.

5. The King of *Xiraz* caused some Disturbance at *Ormuz*, appearing in the Neighbourhood with a considerable Power; but he soon drew off, coming to Agreement with that King. Sultan *Mamud*, King of *Cambaya*, aimed at the Recovery of *Diu*, not forgetting the Death of his Uncle *Badur*, and being troubled to have us so near Neighbours. One of the dishonourable Articles of Peace, which the Vice-Roy *D. Garcia* had admitted was, That the Kings Subjects might build a Wall between their Town and our Fort. The Wall was raising, and displeased *Emanuel de Sousa* and *Sepulveda*, who commanded there, because it looked like somewhat more than a bare Partition, which was the true intent of the Articles. He fortified himself, then beat off the Workmen, threw down the Wall, and made use of the Materials. The King was heinously offended, and at the instigation of his great Subject *Coje Zofar*, he began secretly to stir up that Great Part of the World, with Letters to the several Princes, to unite and expel the Portugues, not only *Diu*, but all *Asia*.

6. Let us see what hapned while this Storm was rising. *Hidalean* pressed the Governour, either to restore what he had given him on that score, or else to send away *Mealecan*. The Governour endeavoured  
to

to please him with Artifice, rather than Performance, and to this effect sent *John Fernandez de Negreyros* Embassadour to him. Him, and all the Portugueses that were in his Court, the King put in Prison, keeping them as Hostages for the performance of what was before agreed, and now demanded. This was a great Provocation to the hot Nature of *Martin Alfonso*; but submitting to Necessity, he began to appease *Hidalcan*, assuring him, That as soon as the Season would permit, *Meale* should be sent to *Malaca*. Three Ships Arrived now from *Portugal* of five that sailed thence; one was forced back, and another Cast-away on the Coast of *Melinde*, the Men saved.

7. This Year the *Tartar* entred *China*, and besieged *Peking*. A great part of his numerous Army, which consisted of almost Millions of Men, Threescore thousand of them Horse, marched to the City *Quamsi* and plundered it, killing above Threescore thousand persons of all Sexes and Ages, and then went on towards *Peking*. By the way, the Fort *Nixiancoo* defended it self so bravely, that the General *Nanticor* thought it impregnable, having lost Three thousand Men before it. Among the Prisoners taken at *Quamsi* were Nine Portugueses, one of them called *George Mendez*, offered, if he might have his and his Companions Liberty, to put him in a way to take the Fort. The General admitted the Proposal, and by this Man's Advice took it with the slaughter of above Two thousand Chineses and Mogols. He

He went on to *Peking*, and in pursuance of his Promise obtained of his Prince the Portugueses Liberty, and did them great Honours, endeavouring with large Gifts to detain them in his Service. *George Mendez* stayed, and was afterwards allowed a Pension of Six thousand Ducats. These Accidents often cause the Portugueses in *Asia*, to forget their Country and sometimes their Religion. This was when they came to *Tuymican*, the Tartar's Court, whither he retired after the raising the Siege of *Peking*, which lasted almost seven Months, with the Loss of Four hundred and fifty Thousand Men, most destroyed by Pestilence, besides Three hundred thousand that deserted to the Chineses.

8. Four small Vessels, with One hundred Portugueses in them, cruised upon the Coast of *Tanauzarim*, and were much dreaded, having (among other Prizes) taken three great Ships. The Maritim Towns complained to their Sovereign, the King of *Siam*; and he sent out against them *Heredim Mahomet*, a Turk, with a Royal Galley, four Galliot, and five other Vessels that Rowed, in which were Eight hundred Men, Three hundred of them Janizaries, the rest Turks, Greeks, Achems, Malabars and Mogols; all brave Men. A poor King of the Neighbouring Island, *Pulobimor*, who was newly Converted, gave our Men notice of the Danger. They left the Port and run up a Creek, both because it was more hid, and for that at the Mouth  
of

of it were some Ruins , that might serve instead of a Fort , to defend themselves. The Turk missing them in the Port, thought they were fled to some of the Neighbouring Islands; and sent the Ships and Gallions in search of them, staying behind with only the Galley. They who were upon the Watch, fell upon the Galley at Night, and destroyed Three hundred Men that were in her, and the Admiral, with loss of only One Man. Of the other Nine Vessels, three were Cast-away and six were taken by our Men; with great slaughter of the Enemy, and only two killed on our side.

9. The Governour dispatched the homeward bound Trading Ships , whereof one was Cast-away at *Zanzibar*. Those from *Portugal* arrived in *India* , and brought him a Successor, which he so earnestly desired, that a few days before being at *Mas* with *James Silveira* , who was coming for *Portugal*; he said to him at the Elevation of the Host; *Speak to the King , to send one to succeed me , for I dare not Govern India , because Men are so changed from Truth and Honour : Or else I swear by that Sacred Host , and by the true Body of Christ I behold in it with the Eyes of Faith , That I will open the Patents of Succession , and resign the Government to whoever is named therein ; and desire his Highness , not to expose such a Subject as I am , to the danger of having his Head cut off.* This was the Condition of *India*, almost past hope of Recovery : For if the Governour was tolerable, those that were governed were intol-



intollerable ; and the contrary. *Martin Alfonso* had served well in *Brasile* and *India*, in other Posts. He was Violent in his Undertakings, a great discoverour of Mens Humours, and knew better than many to save what was superfluous, and spend what was necessary. He instituted those Officers of the King's Revenue, that are called *Surveyors*, in *India*. He was of a handsom and large Stature, his Complexion white, his Beard Chestnut-colour. He Governed three years and four Months ; was the 13<sup>th</sup> had the Title of *Governour*, and first of the Name.

The End of the First P A R T  
of the Second Tome.

---

T H E



## T H E

*Portugues A S I A.*

## T O M. II. P A R T II.

## C H A P. I.

*The Government of D. John de Castro,  
from the Tear 1545, till the Tear 1548,  
in the Reign of King JOHN the  
Third.*

- I. **A**BOUT the latter end of *August*, 1545.  
or beginning of *September*, Arriv-  
ed at *Goa* six Ships from *Portu-  
gal*, Commanded by *Don John  
de Castro*, who went to Ease *Martin Alfonso*  
of the Government. Immediately (as is  
Customary in *India*) Complaints were car-  
ried to the New Governour against the Old.  
The

The chief, the Crying-down the Value of Money ; which was immediately restored to its former Value. This gave occasion to *Martin Alfonso* to go away dissatisfied , and the other to remain so upon the manner of his Discontent, falling out after having very well agreed. These Governours, and their Governments, seem to resemble the Soul and Body, which never part without great struglings.

2. *Don John* began his Government as is usual, sending Commanders and Officers to several Forts and Towns. *Bernardin de Sousa* went to succeed *Jurdan de Freytas*, at *Ternate* , carrying with him the King *Aciro*, to hold that Crown till other Orders came from *Portugal*, it being left to our King by the deceased *Tabarija*, as was said before. *Ferdinand de Sousa & Tavora* , who was sent against the Spaniards, Commanded by *Villalobos* , reduced him to a necessity of surrendering himself, and continuing at *Ternate* till the Season of sailing for *India*, where he and his Men might either remain in the Portugues Service, or return in their Ships to *Europe*. This Difficulty surmounted, *Sousa* resolved to take Revenge of *Casabruno*, King of *Gilolo*, for the Injuries he did the Portugueses and New Converts since he Tyrannically usurped the Crown, killing his Lawful Sovereign.

3. *Sousa* consulted his own Men, and the new Guests, who approved of his Resolution, and *Villalobos* offered to bear him Company. They made up Four hundred Spani-



Spaniards and Portugueses, and Fifteen hundred Ternatenses. Coming to an Anchor in the Port, they found the Tyrant ready to receive them, well fortified and provided with Cannon. The Christians began to batter them; but received more damage than they did. *Sousa* perceiving there was no way, but by giving an Assault, gave the first of the Attack to *John Galvan* and *Bernard de la Torre*, the first a Portugues, the other a Spaniard, who sticking in the Thorns the Tyrant had designedly strewed about, and scarce able to move, stood as a Mark to the Enemies Bullets and Arrows. *Catabruno* Charges them with Three thousand Men. *Sousa* comes to their Relief, and the Fight was desperate; for both Spaniards and Portugueses did Wonders. Night parted, and Morning brought them together; the Dispute was hot, till *Galvan* being killed his Men were put in disorder; all our Body came to their Relief, and brought them off, forcing the Enemy to retire to their Works. Our Captain seeing no likelyhood of prevailing, returned to *Ternate*; whence he went to *India* with the Spaniards, as had been Agreed, only *Villalobos* excepted, who died in the Fort.

4. *Coje Zofar*, at *Cambaya*, now his Princes Favourite, kept a fair Correspondence with the Portugueses; but with the natural Perfidiousness of a Moor. He persuaded the King a second time to endeavour the shaking off the Yoak of the Fort of *Diu*, and to this effect drew together a great

Number of Men ; yet had more hopes to succeed by Policy , than strength. He agreed with an Infamous Portugues , called *Ruy Freyre*, to poyson the Cistern , fire the Magazine , and upon a Sign given admit him into the Fort. An Ethiopian, a Turk and a Woman Slave, discovered the Treachery. *Coje Zofar* was astonished to see his Design discovered , and began to Complement *D. John Mascarenhas* , Commander of the Fort ; pleading , That the Cause of breaking the Peace had been , because they obstructed building that Wall, which *D. Garcia de Noremba* had so weakly allowed , and *Emanuel de Sousa* had couragiously beat down. *Coje Zofar* dissembled while he gathered a great Power, and *D. John* perceiving the Danger that threatned him, prepared to meet it, and gave Advice thereof to the Governour and Neighbouring Commanders.

5. A considerable number of Men was already drawn together in the City *Diu*, and among them Five hundred Turks , sent from *Mecha* by the King of *Zibit*. *D. John* assigned every Man his Post, and placed an Officer with 30 Men in each of the four Bastions ; his Lieutenant over the Gate with Twenty , another with the like Number in a small Work ; reserving Fifty for himself to be wherever the greatest Danger called. This was the Number of Men he had, and thus ordered, when *Coje Zofar* came on with all his Power, resolving to attack the Bastion of the Sea, with three Castles built upon a Ship of prodigious  
business,

bigness, well stored with Cannon to batter the Wall. Within the Castles were Two hundred Turks, who were to distract the Defendants by pouring in continually all sorts of Artificial Fire-works. This Design succeeded not, for our Commander having notice of it, sent *Jacome Leite* to burn that Ship. He took twenty Men in two Vessels, and though he set out by Night, was discovered; yet did not desist, but courageously went on and set fire to it; then retiring, saw a great part of it fly into the Air, with most of the Turks, the Remainder casting such a Flame, as at a distance discovered the Enemies Army running in Battalions to quench the Fire. *Jacome* seeing them in Clusters, let fly his Cannon and killed many of them. In this Action he had seven Men wounded. He went on to the Mouth of the River, and took from the Enemy some Vessels of Provision, with which he returned to the Fort, much admired of all.

6. *Coje Zofar* began to build the Wall, that had been before beat down, which could not be hindred, though our Cannon killed many of the Workmen; but was brought to such perfection, that he planted thereon Sixty great Cannon, besides many small, and one of such extraordinary bigness, that it shook the whole Island, and made pieces of the Fort fly; it was managed by an expert French Renegado. At this time arrived *D. Ferdinand de Castro*, Son to the Governour, sent by him with some

**Relief of Men.** *Mascarenbas* wanted some Intelligence from the Enemies Camp. *James de Anaya Contino*, a Gentleman of Note and Man of great strength, knowing of it, at Night putting a Helmet on his Head, with a Sword by his side and Spear in his Hand, let himself down the Wall, and lying close at some distance from the Fort, discovered two Moors, who being come up to him, he killed the one with the Spear, and taking up the other in his Arms run with him to the Gate of the Fort, and calling threw him in, to the great admiration of those that beheld it. This was much; but what follows is more: He had borrowed the Helmet he carried, and promised on the word of a Gentleman to restore it, or dye. In this Scuffle it fell off, and he mist it not till the Owner asked for it. He said nothing; but letting himself off the Wall again, went to look for, found and restored it. Nothing could be more brave; nothing more honourable.

7. The King came from *Champanel* with Ten thousand Horse, to see (as *Coje Zofar* said) that place taken. This caused an extraordinary Motion in the Army, and *D. John* desired to know the cause of it. Six of our Men sallied out at Night and fell among sixty Moors, who were all asleep, whereof they killed some, and the rest waking at the Noise, as also some that were not far off, our Men were forced to retire, leaving two dead; the four brought a Prisoner with them, who informed our Commander



mander of what he desired. This Action incensed the King and *Coje Zofar*, so that they renewed the fury of their Batteries, and did much harm. The Renegado Frenchman was struck dead by a chance Dart, and the Gunner who succeeded him being Ignorant, did more harm to his own Party, than to us, which was some Revenge. All the Neighbourhood resounded with the Noise of the Cannon and Cries of dying Men, when a Bullet of ours falling in the Kings Tent, sprinkled him with the Blood of one of his Favourites who was near him, and beaten to pieces. This so terrified the King, that he instantly fled, leaving the Command of the Horse to *Jazarcas*, a Valiant Ethiopian.

8. *Coje Zofar* pressed the Besieged, and there was great slaughter and destruction on both sides; the more visible and dangerous in the Fort, by reason of its little Compass, and the small number of Men. *Mascarenas* appeared wherever there was danger, as hoping to gain no less Honour than *Antony de Silveira* had done there a few years before. He was no less Fortunate in couragous Women; for those that were in the Fort encouraged the Men; assisted and relieved them at the work. And when the Turks entred the Walls, one of them hearing they were got into a House, run in with a Spear and fought till *Mascarenas* came and put them all to the Sword.

9. *Coje Zofar* omitted nothing that could be devised to fill the Ditches, and lay open the Fort. All industry was used on our side to repair the Breaches. The prime Gentry did the Duties of private Souldiers and Masons, the Walls and Bastions were ruined at Night, and repaired by Morning. *Coje Zofar* was astonished to see all he destroyed restored. Coming on in a Rage with fresh Men, a Cannon Ball took off his Head and right Hand, whereon he leaned it. Thus he fulfilled his Mothers Prediction, who being at *Otranto*, still persuaded him to be reconciled to the Church, and perceiving she prevailed not, superscribed her Letters to him thus: *To Coje Zofar my Son, at the Gates of Hell.* His Son *Rumecan* succeeded him as well in Wickedness, as the ardent desire of taking that Fort. He took upon him his Father's Command, and inherited his Fortune. Our Commander was obliged to send fresh Advice to the Governour at *Goa*, and the Captains of the Neighbouring places. A Priest was the Messenger, who run very great danger, the Sea at that time being scarce Navigable. But then *Portugal* had some *Decij*, and some *Reguli*: Now it has only the grief of wanting them.

## C H A P. II.

*Continues the Government of D. John de Castro, and Siege of Diu.*

1. **R**umecan now gives a General Assault, he and Juzarcan attack the Bastions of St. John and St. Thomas, where they found a most vigorous Resistance, and so many were killed that the Defendants seemed rather a raging Plague, than Men. Yet at length, Valour was forced to give way to Numbers, and the Enemy mounted St. Thomas's Bastion: But Despair administering Fury rather than Valour, the few Portugueses rush upon the multitude of Enemies, and making a wonderful slaughter, throw headlong from the Wall such as had escaped the Sword, so that the Dead lay in heaps.

2. Rumecan thinking Mahomets displeasure was the cause of this Misfortune, spent this Night in Prayers and Processions. In the Morning, thinking he had attoned, he renewed the Assault: After mounting the two Bastions he was forced to retire, having lost almost Two thousand Men, and among them the Ethiopian Juzarcan, General of the Horse: An Uncle of his of the same Name succeeded him. In this Action seven Portugueses were lost. Several other Assaults

were given with like Success. In one of these the Fire was so close and furious, that several who were clad in Cotton, which soon took flame, ran and dipt themselves in the Water, and so returned to their Posts. Those who wore Skins escaped better. Our Commander taking notice of this, caused some gilt Leather, wherewith his Rooms were hung, to be made into Coats for the Souldiers. Another time *D. John* and *D. Peter de Almeyda*, with One hundred Men, sallied to destroy a Mount raised by the Enemy to over-look the Fort, and effected it, killing Three hundred Moors. *Martin Botello* another time went out with Ten Men, to take some Body to give Intelligence, and falling upon Eighteen put them to flight all, except a bold *Nubij*, who standing all the Eleven, wrestled with *Botello*; and he finding it hard to overcome him whilst he could touch the ground with his Feet, like another *Hercules* with *Anseus*, ran with him in his Arms to the Fort.

3. The Attacks were still renewed, the Defendants spent with Labour, and above all with Hunger, feeding even upon nauseous Vermin. A Crow taken upon the dead Bodies was a Delicaty for the Sick and sold for five Crowns, the Ammunition was almost spent, and now the Enemy gives a hot Assault with fresh Men, Ten thousand having newly joyned them. They entred *St. John's* Bastion, and retired. Scarce had they left it, when it blew up, and in it 73 of our Men, ten whereof came down alive.



alive. *James de Sotomayer* fell into the Fort with a Spear in his hand; a Souldier in the same manner fell among the Enemies, and was killed by them. It was no Fable, that Armed Men were seen in the Air this bout. Our Captain *Mascarenas* foreseeing the danger, had ordered them to quit the Bastion; but one *Reynoso* protested, he would accuse them of Cowardize, if they did. The one Commanded prudently, the other Advised courageously; yet was guilty of Disobedience.

4. Thirteen thousand of the Enemy attack the Breach they had made; only five Souldiers withstood them till *Mascarenas* came with fifteen more. The Women assisted the Men, and ran even to brave Death. The Priest, who was returned from carrying the Advice to the Neighbouring places, appeared encouraging all with a Crucifix lifted on high. The Actions done here were incredible; but Night coming on the Enemy retired, having lost Three hundred Men. *Mascarenas* spent all the Night in repairing the Damages received.

5. The Enemy daily renewed their Attacks with the same success, and held out by means of their vast Numbers. *Ramecan* fell again to Mining, and pierced the very Rocks that stood in his way; but met not with such success as he had done the time before; for *D. John* perceiving his Work, countermined it, and it flew all back upon the Besiegers, killing many of them. *D. Alvaro*,  
the

the Governours Son, sent with Supplies, seemed to sail in opposition to the Seas and Winds, through Storms almost incredible: Yet they all arrived at *Bacaim*, and *Antony Moniz Barreto*, with 8 Gentlemen, got first into *Diu*, who though so few, by their Bravery were no small comfort to the besieged. One of these, called *Michael Darnide*, a Man of prodigious Strength, *Barreto* refusing to take him into his Boat, leaped into the Water with his Musquet in his Mouth and swam after him, so he was obliged to take him up.

6. Next came *Luis de Melo & Mendoga* with nine Men; then *D. George* and *D. Duarte de Meneses* with seventeen; after them *D. Antony de Ataide*, and *Francis Guillerme*, with fifty each; and lastly, *Ruy Freyre*, Factor of *Cbaul*, with Twenty four. All together fell upon the Enemy, then possessed of some of our Works, and among them the Bastion *Santiago*. The Dispute was hot; yet the Enemy set up their Colours on the Walls. *Antony Moniz Barreto* made good his Post with only two Souldiers, and was going to quench his Flames in the Water; but one of the two, who was in the same condition, detained him, and both did things worthy admiration. *Antony Correa* sallied out with Twenty Men to discover the Enemy, and saw Twelve Moors sitting about a Fire; he exhorted his Men to fall upon them, but they seeing him go on, fled; however he went on thinking to take one that might give Intelligence: He fell  
on

on and behaved himself bravely; yet he was taken and carried to *Rumecan*, who Examined him about the posture the Fort was in, which being then very miserable, he represented so powerful, as drove him into despair, and moved him to cause the unfortunate Prisoner to be dragged through the Streets, and his Head cut off, which was set upon a Pole next day in sight of the Fort.

7. The Enemy had now lost Five thousand Men; the Besieged Two hundred, and had not so many more left, and not above half them able to do Duty, when *D. Alvaro* arrives with the Supplies, which consisted of Four hundred Men, and a sufficient quantity of Ammunition, having by the way taken a Ship of *Cambaya* richly laden. The Joy of this Relief was soon allayed; for the Souldiers that came with *D. Alvaro*, fearing the Mines, proposed to meet the Enemy in open Field: But the Governour prudently refusing, they broke out into open Mutiny in contempt of all Military Discipline, scarce known, or at least not respected by the Portugues Nation. *D. John* seeing himself in danger of perishing in the Fort by his own Men, chose rather to dye in the Field among the Enemies. He sallied with almost Five hundred Men in three Bodies. At one hear they gained the Enemies advanced Post, forcing them to retire to their Works. Those who insolently forced their Commander to this Extravagancy, stood heartless at the Foot of the Trenches,

Trenches, seeing others mount who had said less. *D. John* seeing them in this posture, cried out, *Whether it was thus they had promised to fight? Where was now that Boldness that obliged him to come into the Field? Where the Threats, that they would fight the Enemy without him? Behold your Commander you accused of Cowardize, calls you to the danger: And who is there follows me of those that would have led me thither? Within the Walls you were fierce, and now in the Field timorous. Your Courage suits with your Tongues; for those who said much, always acted little. They ashamed to be thus justly upbraided, took Heart and mounted: The whole Army came down upon them, and the Portugueses having done wonders, were forced to retire in disorder. This was the time the Enemy had possessed himself of the Fort, had not *Majacenas* with his Prudence and Valour prevented *Mojatecan*, who with Five thousand attempted to enter, and was valiantly opposed by *Luis de Sousa* in *St. Thomas's* Bulwark. Threescore Men were lost in the Action: *D. Alvaro de Castro* was mortally Wounded in the Head. This was the fruit of that insolent Disobedience.*

8. The Moors had taken the Cannon of the Bastion *Santiago*, when *Vasco de Cuba* and *Luis de Almeyda* brought a fresh Relief. The latter immediately went out with *Payo Rodriguez* and *Peter Alfonso* in three Caravels, and as soon returned with two great Ships of *Meca* and some other Vessels, whose Loading was worth  
Fifty



Fifty thousand Ducats. At the Yard-Arms hung many Moors, whose Heads were then cut off, as was the Captains, who was a Janizary and offered Three thousand Ducats for his Ransom.

C H A P. III.

*Continues the Siege of Diu, the Governour D. John de Castro comes in Person to its Relief.*

I. **N**OW begins the Month of *November*, and the Siege had lasted eight Months, when the Governour *D. John de Castro* covers the Sea with a great Fleet of all sorts of Vessels for the Relief of *Diu*. All *Goa* admired the Constancy wherewith he received the News of the Death of his Son *D. Fernando*; for though he highly resented it he dissembled his Grief, and dressing himself gayer than ordinary, went in Procession, to give God Thanks, That *Diu* was still in the possession of the Portugueses; and then went to a publick Feast, which is an Imitation of a Fight, wherein they use Canes instead of Lances.

2. The

2. The Fleet consisted of above Ninety Sail, besides three of the Ships that then came from *Portugal*; and several Gentlemen that came in them, went in other Vessels.

3. The Governour being come to *Bacaim*, waited the coming up of the Vessels that were scattered, and the mean while sent *D. Emanuel de Lima* to scour the Coast. On the Coast of *Damam* he took several Ships, and cutting the Moors that were in them in pieces, threw them into the Mouths of the Rivers, that the Tide carrying them up, they might strike a Terrour in all that Coast. Entering the River of *Suratt*, after a vigorous Resistance made, he destroyed all that belonged to the Town called, Of the Ethiopians. The same was done at the City *Anfote*, not far distant, without sparing Beauty, the finest Women of the *Bramens* and *Baneans* being slaughtered. So in other Neighbouring Towns; and then *D. Emanuel* withdrew, leaving an Universal Terrour all along that Shoar.

4. The Fleet appearing in the Sea of *Diu*, the Enemy stood amazed, though they had just then received a supply of Five thousand fresh Men sent by the King. The Governour went privately into the Fort, and afterwards Landed his Men. He proposed in Council, Whether it was fit presently to march out and fight the Enemy? The Question was debated, till the Experienced *Garcia de Sa* put an end to it, saying, *They ought to fight.* They marched in this order:

*D. John*

*D. John Mascarenas*, Commander of the Fort, led the Van, consisting of Five hundred Men: *D. Alvaro* led as many: *Don Emanuel de Lima*, the like number. The Governour led the rest, which were One thousand, and a Body of *Indians*. Among the Men were some Portugues Women in mens Cloaths, to assist the Wounded. In the Fort was left the Lieutenant with Three hundred Men. That Night they fixed their Arms, and next Morning prepared their Souls. The Governour appointed Rewards for those who first mounted the Enemies Works.

5. At Break of Day, on the 11th of November, this small Army marched out to attack the numerous Forces of the Enemies, who were well intrenched and provided with Cannon. Our Men gave the Onset with much Bravery, and some fell. Two Gentlemen, who had Challenged each other, now agreed he should be owned as Victorious over the other, who first mounted the Enemies Works; both honourably strove for this Glory, and both died gloriously in the Attempt. At length our Men mounted the Works; such was each man's eagerness to be the first, that it could not be known who really was so. *Payva* having lost a Leg, fought on his Knees till he was killed. The *Tanadar* cut down a Turk, and stooping to make an end of him, was slain by another Turk. *Francis de Azevedo* was killed, after having made a great slaughter.

6. The brave *Mascarenas* and *D. Alvaro de Castro*, having taken a Bulwark, make themselves room in the Field. The Governour comes up and enflames the fight. He orders his Ensign to fix the Colours on the Enemies Works, and is immediately obeyed by him. Twice was the Ensign thrown down, and twice he remounted. Our Men encouraged by the Governour, press forward, and the Enemy gives way. The Portugueses enter their Works pell-mell with them, and *Rumecan* comes on with the whole Body of his Army; but after a hot dispute retires, leaving his Enemies Masters of his Works.

7. *Rumecan* joyns *Juzarcán*, who on the other side was worsted by *Mascarenas*. The Governour marches out of the Works to meet them, giving the Van to his Son *D. Alvaro*. The Portugueses were much distressed, when *F. Antony del Cazal* appeared before them with a Crucifix on the Point of a Lance, encouraging them with godly Words. They take Courage, and covering the Field with dead and wounded Men, put *Rumecan* to flight; but he rallying, forced the Portugueses to retire in great disorder. The Governour exposing himself to admiration, renewed the Fight, and restored good Order: At this time a Stone broke an Arm of the Crucifix, and the Priest calling upon the Men to revenge that Sacrilege, they fell on with such fury, that having done incredible Execution, they drove the Enemy to the City, who still gave way,  
facing



facing us. The first that entred the City with them was *D. John*, then *D. Alvaro*, and *D. Emanuel de Lima* and the Governour, all several ways, making the Streets and Houses run with Blood. The Women escaped not the fate of the Men, and Children were slain at their Mothers Breasts, one stroak taking away two Lives. The first part of the Booty was Precious Stones, Pearls, Gold and Silver; other things, though of value, were slighted as cumberfom.

8. *Rumecan*. and his General Officers, rally their Men, and appear again in the Field with Eight thousand. The Governour and his Son, and *D. John Mascarenas* encompass them, the Fight was bloody; in the heat of it *Gabriel Teyxeyra* killing the Bearer, took the Standard of *Cambaya* and dragged it about the Field, proclaiming Victory. *George Nunez*, from among the Dead, brought out *Rumecans* Head, and presented it to the Governour. Others took *Fuzarcán*, who was Wounded. Our Men were left absolute Masters of the Field. Of the Portugueses One hundred were killed, others say only Thirty four; of the Enemy Five thousand, and among them *Azedecan*, *Lucan* and other Men of Note. Free Plunder was allowed, some were enriched; many got much, and all were satisfied. There were taken many Colours, forty Pieces of Cannon of an extraordinary bigness, which with the lesser made up Two hundred, and a vast quantity of Ammunition.

9. Many particularly signalized themselves in this Action. The Governour played the part of a Souldier, as well as a General. *D. John Mascarenas*, after a Siege of eight Months, did more (with respect to such Merits) than all. *D. Alvaro de Castro*, of whom it is enough to say, He did like his Father. The Ensign *Barbado*, who being several times thrown down, as often mounted the Works. *F. Antony*, who with the image of Life, banished the fear of Death. And many more, as well of those who were killed, as they that survived. The Enemy confessed, that one day during the Siege they saw over the Church of the Fort, a beautiful Woman cloathed in White, from whom proceeded such Rays that blinded them; and this Day, in the Field, some Men with Lances, who did them the greatest harm. The King in a Rage for this Loss, caused Twenty eight Portugueses he had in Custody, to be torn to pieces in his presence.

1547. 10. Whilst the Governour was employed in Repairing the damage received, *D. Emanuel de Lima* by his Order scoured the Coast of *Cambaya* with thirty Ships, extirpating all the Towns on that shoar. The City *Goga*, one of the Chief of that Kingdom, was taken without any resistance, the Inhabitants flying to the Mountains. It was plundered and burnt; then pursuing the Inhabitants, they were found at Night about a League off asleep, and all put to the Sword. All the Cattle in the Fields were either



richly adorned. The Governour entred under a rich Canopy, where taking off his Cap, they put on his Head a Crown of Laurel, and a Branch of it in his hand. Before him went the Priest with the Crucifix, as he carried it in the Fight, and next to him the Royal Standard. Then *Juzarcan*, his Eyes fixed on the Ground, perhaps that he might not see his Prince's Colours dragged and ours flying, and among them Six hundred Prisoners in Chains. In the Front the Cannon, and all other sorts of Arms in Carts, very delightful to behold. The Governour walked upon Leaves of Gold and Silver, and rich Silks. The Ladies from the Windows sprinckled him with sweet Water, and threw Flowers on him. Our Queen *Catherine* hearing the Relation of his Victory and Triumph, said, *D. John had Overcome like a Christian, and Triumphed like a Heathen.*

CHAP.



## C H A P. IV.

*Continues the Government of D. John de Castro, and Reign of King JOHN the Third.*

I. Scarce was the Triumph over, when the Governour sent *James de Almeyda Freyre* with One hundred and twenty Horse, Eight hundred Foot, and a Thousand *Indians*, to drive out of the Lands of *Salsete* and *Bardes*, some Troops sent to *Hidalcan* to possess themselves of them; because the Conditions upon which he delivered them were not performed. The Enemy appeared at *Cowlij* to the number of Four thousand, who fled at the News of our approach: So the Lands were recovered without drawing Sword. *Hidalcan* sent the same Troops again, with Nine thousand more, and a Company of Renegado Portugueses, Commanded by *Gonzalo Vaz Coutino*, who flying the punishment of his Crimes, defended himself by committing greater. *James de Almeyda* marched again with the same Force as before; but being too weak, was forced to quit what before he had regained. The Governour marched in Person with Three thousand Men in five Batalions. *Francis de Melo* joyned them with about Fifteen hundred. The Enemy hearing of it, though

so numerous, retired to the Fort of *Ponda*. Our Army followed, and *D. Alvaro de Castro*, who led the Van, took a Ford defended by Two thousand Musqueteers. The other twelve or thirteen Thousand were drawn up in good Order about the Fort; but fled, after receiving our first Fire, leaving the Fort so clear, it appeared they had no design to maintain it.

2. The Victor never wants Friends. *Cidoça*, King of *Canara*, sent to Congratulate *D. John de Castro* upon this Victory. He proposed a New League with *Portugal*; which was concluded upon Honourable Terms, as always happen to those who are sent to. This Kingdom of *Charnataka*, corruptly *Canara*, had no Sovereign Prince till the Year of Grace 1200. It began then in *Boca* a Shepherd, who stiled himself *Rao*, that is, *Emperour*, a Title that continued in all his Successors. This King, as a Memorial of the Defeat given to the King of *Delij*, built the famous City *Visajanagar*, corruptly also called *Bisnagar*. The Crown continued in his Line till usurped by *Narsinga*, from whom this Kingdom took that Name, as also that of *Bisnagar*, from the City. Afterwards King *Melique* sent also to ratifie and confirm the Peace with us, rather through Hatred to him was defeated, than Love to the Conquerours.

3. *D.George de Meneses*, who was left in the Sea of *Cambaya* with six Ships, was informed that *Madremaluco*, Son-in-Law to *Coje Zofar* and Lord of *Baroche*, was gone from thence with all the Garrison. *Baroche* is a City seated in the highest part of those Plains, encompassed with a strong Wall, very populous and well built. *Meneses* marched by Night, and at Break of Day had entred the Houses, killing many asleep, and the others as they awaked. Such as escaped with the Fright, they knew not whither they ran, leaving Wives and Children behind only to save their own Lives. The City could not be maintained, and therefore was plundered and burnt, and the Cannon that could not be carried Aboard, were burst. To *D.George's* Sirname was added that of *Baroche*.

4. The Governour was informed, the King of *Cambaya* would come upon *Diu* with a greater Power than before, and with all diligence prepared to relieve it. The City of *Goa* advanced Mony for this Enterprize, and the Women again sent him their Jewels by their little Daughters, complaining he had not made use of them the last time, and desiring he would now: But he sent them back with Presents. The Fleet consisted of 160 Sail.

5. They sailed to *Bacaim*, and thence to *Suratt*, where *D.Alvaro*, who set out eight days before, had taken a Work, killed some Moors and got Cannon. Next, they entred the Port of *Baroche*, whence they discovered

vered the King of *Cambaya* covering the Plain with 150000 Men, and 80 Cannon in the Front; the Army made a Semi-circle and covered a League of Ground. *D. John* boldly leaped ashoar, not only to shew he feared him not, but with design to fight him. The most Experienced Officers dissuaded him, representing it was a rashness for 3000 to attack 150000; that it was enough that he had Landed, and drawn off with as much leisure, as if Victorious. He was forced against his Will, to submit to the Advice of his Elders. He went on to *Diu*, and giving the Command of that Fort to *Luis Falcam*, because *D. John Mascarenas* was returning to *Portugal*, he run like an inundation along the Coast of *Por* and *Mongalor*. The beautiful and strong Cities of *Pate* and *Patane* were abandoned by the Inhabitants, and by us destroyed, near Two hundred Vessels burnt in their Ports, and a rich Booty taken. The same hapned to *Dabul*, but with some opposition. This was done in revenge for *Hidalcan's* ravaging the Lands of *Salsete* and *Bardes*.

6. *Calabatecan*, his General, had lately possessed those Lands with Twenty thousand Men. The Governour went to meet them with Fifteen hundred Horse and Four thousand Foot; but the Enemy scarce heard them, when they fled to the Mountains of *Cowlj*, leaving their Tents and Baggage for haste. Our Army rested, and at Break of Day marched to give a good Morrow



Morrow to *Calabatecan*, who slept not, but came down with Two thousand Horse to maintain the Ford. But *Almeyda* passing with a few Horse, struck him down with his Lance; yet he rising nimbly had killed our Captain with his Cimiter, had not his Page again cast him down with a stroak of a Lance. He again rose, and was again beat down by *Almeyda*, and cut to pieces. His Arms, Horse and Furniture were of such value, that the share of *George Madera*, one of those that killed him (being the Cimiter, Dagger, Chain and Rings) were worth Eight thousand Crowns. The Moors and Christians fell to it desperately; but the former knowing their General was killed, soon fled, losing almost Three thousand Men.

7. Soon after the Governour marched to the Coast, where he left neither Town, Wood, nor Flock or Herd of Cattle that could be seen, but what he destroyed with Fire and Sword. He was so pleased with this Success, that he entred *Goa* in manner of Triumph, giving the best share of it to his Son *D. Alvaro*. These were rather demonstrations of Joy, than Triumphs; if otherwise, the Triumphs were too many.

8. Sometime before *F. Antony del Padron* (the first Commissary of *St. Francis* in *India*) with some Companions had entred into the Island *Ceylon*, and Preaching had wrought no small effect along the Coast. *F. Pascalis* was so well received by the King *Javira Pandor*

*Pandar* of *Candea*, that desiring to become a Christian, he was only deterred for fear of his Subjects rebelling, and therefore desired assistance of the Governour in case of any Commotion. *Antony Moniz Barreto* was sent to this effect. Mean while the King of *Cotã* persuades *Javira*, That he should no sooner be a Christian, but the Portugueses would deprive him of his Kingdom. The King giving Credit to this wicked Device, resolved to kill all the Portugueses sent to his assistance. But the better to execute it, feigned himself still of the same Mind. *Barreto* (it is not known how) had Intelligence of the Design, and finding more danger in Returning to the Ships, than going on to *Ceitavaca*, where that King was our Friend, he caused those One hundred and twenty Men he had Landed to burn all they had, except some little Provision, to let them know they were to save nothing, but their Lives. Three days they marched, fighting with Eight thousand Men so fortunately, that they arrived at *Ceitavaca* without losing one Man: To the great Honour of their Captain.

9. Our irreconcilable Enemy, the King of *Achem*, about this time sent against *Malaca* a Fleet of sixty Sail, and in it Five thousand Land-men; among which were Five hundred *Orobalones*, commonly called, *Of the Gold Bracelets*; because they wear them, and are very brave; but his best Regiment was of Turks and Janizaries.

This

This Body was Commanded by a Valiant Moor, who had the style of Dr. King of *Pedir*. He Landed by Night at *Malaca*, and found nothing but some Geese, which he took to shew his Prince, as a Testimony of his Landing: But those Fowl alarming the City (as formerly the Capitol,) caused all to be in readines, which was but little, the Town being then very scarce of Men.

10. However, the Enemy was forced to retire and imbark, having burnt two Ships of ours that were ready to sail. Without they took seven Fishermen, and cutting off their Noses Ears, and Feet, sent them to the Commander *Simon de Melo*, with a Challenge writ with their Blood. The Challenge was made a Jest of, because there was no Force there to Answer it. But the Great *St. Francis Xaverius*, who was zealous for the King's Honour, as well as the Service of God, being there then, he disapproved the Jest, and advised to meet the Enemy at any rate. The Governour and others excused themselves, urging there were in the Port but eight small Vessels, which, as being rotten and unfit for service, lay aground. This was true, but the Cause of it was the Neglect and Avarice of the Government.

11. The Great *Xaverius* took so much pains, that he prevailed with some Merchants to fit out those Vessels, prophetically promising two Galliot's would come to their Aid. The time prefixed was near expired, when

when they appeared sailing for *Patane*, and came into *Malaca*, though they had not designed it. The Saint went aboard, found they were Commanded by *James Suarez de Melo*, called the *Gallego*, and his Son *Baltasar*; he persuaded them to have a part in that Action. These Ten poor Vessels being fitted and manned with Two hundred and thirty Men, failed to find out the Enemy under the Command of *D. Francis Deça*.

12. Being about to return Home, after two Months spent in search of the Enemy, they found him in the River *Parles*, and Engaged upon a *Sunday* Morning. The Fight was desperate; our Men behaved themselves with incredible Bravery, and had a most compleat Victory, killing Four thousand of the Enemy, sinking several of their Ships, and taking most of the rest, whereof they carried away but Twenty five, for want of Men, and burnt the rest. Three hundred Pieces of Cannon were taken, and almost a Thousand Musquets. This Victory cost us but Twenty five Men, some say, only four.

13. At the time of this Fight *St. Francis* was Preaching at *Malaca*, and pausing, on a sudden related all the particulars of it to his Auditory, who were in great Care for those Ships, having had no News of them in two Months. His Prediction was verified a few days after by their Arrival.

14. In



14. In *September* arrived five Ships from *Lisbon*: Six set out, but the one was Cast-away at *Angoxa*, the Men saved and distributed amongst the other Ships.

---

C H A P. V.

*The End of the Government of D. John de Castro.*

1. **T**He Governour began this Year with the utter destruction of the Coast subject to *Hidalcan*. He had the same Fleet as before, and began in *January* at the River *Charopa*, two Leagues from *Goa*. He spared neither Living Creature, Vegetable, nor the very Stones; but burnt and slaughtered all as far as the City *Dabul*, which was reduced to Ashes, the Inhabitants being fled with the best of their Goods. Hence he ran in the same manner to the River *Cifardam*, which parts this Kingdom from that of *Melique*.

2. The King of *Campar*, who had taken the City *Adem* from the Turks, being threatned by them, had recourse to the Portugueses, submitting himself to our King; and to this effect *D. Payo de Norona* was sent to him with a Supply by the Commander

mander of Ormuz. *D. Payo* behaved not himself as he ought to have done on this Occasion; for the King marching out to fight the Turks, by whom he was beaten and slain, and having left him to guard the City, he (over-fearful of Treachery) retired to his Ship, and returned not though he saw the Town Assaulted. Some Turkish Gallies came and besieged the place, and *D. Payo* having promised the Prince assistance left him, carrying away the few Portugueses he had brought. *Emanuel Pereyra* resolved to stay there, and *Francis Vieyra*, who was raising Men at *Campar*, made his way in. Both behaved themselves bravely; but the Turks entring by Treachery, the Prince and one of his Brothers were killed; the Portugueses with another retired to *Campar*, to expect the Succours were to come from *India*.

3. *D. Alvaro* went with Three hundred Men in Thirty Vessels, loaded with Ammunition. The Governour was overjoyed with the News of the submission of *Adem*. But this Joy was soon allayed by a dangerous Fever, and a violent Mutiny raised for want of Bread. *Emanuel de Sousa & Sepulveda* prudently appeased it; and the Governour being recovered, caused his Hand to be cut off who Beat the Drum to Call the People, and two others of the Chief, to be imprisoned.

*D. John*

4. D. *John de Ataide*, or *Meneses*, sent before by D. *Alvaro* to *Adem*, entring boldly as believing it to be in the possession of D. *Payo*, lost two Vessels and all the Men that were in them, who were either killed or made Slaves by the Turks. *Noronha* met D. *Alvaro* at *Canequirim*, and earnestly laboured to represent how great the Danger was that obliged him to quit that place. But the dead Kings Embassadour and his own Silence, when accused, were Witnesses against him. He came afterwards to *Goa*, and one of his Servants having taken a Hen from a Slave, the Slave was complaining at the Door they would not restore it: When a Portugues passing by told him; *Leave off, for in that House they love Hens: If it were Adem they would soon part with it, but not a Hen.* Now in Portugues by a *Hen* they signifie a Coward, as well as the Fowl; and the word *Adem* signifies a Duck, and was the name of the place he quitted. D. *Alvaro* finding the posture of Affairs so changed, desisted from the Enterprize.

5. He had Orders, as soon as he concluded at *Adem* to go to *Caxem*, that first being laid aside, he went to the second. The King of *Caxem* impatiently expected his assistance against the Turks, who had taken his Castle of *Xael*. They assaulted it, and those within (being only Thirty) offered to surrender upon Honourable Terms. The Portugueses against the Inclination of the King and D. *Alvaro*, refused to give any Conditions, and wrongfully detained

tained them that came to Treat. Pride and Injustice seldom go unpunished. The Portugueses attack the Fort, and the Besieged turning their Submission into Rage, died courageously, killing Five hundred Portugueses: The rest returned in Triumph to Goa, which was no ways grateful to the Governour; and 'tis thought the Cowardize at *Adem*, and Rashness at *Xael*, were two great Causes that carried him to his Grave, for all he endeavoured to dissemble it.

6. The News of the Victory at *Diu* being brought this Year to *Lisbon*, the King resolved to send a greater Fleet than usual to *India*, and to Honour *D. John* with unusual Favours; for they were the first that any Governour of *India* received from his Prince, for good Service performed. The Fleet consisted of seventeen Sail. *D. John* had the Government continued to him with the Title of *Vice-Roy*, a Present of Mony, and his Son *D. Alvaro* made Admiral of the *Indian* Seas.

7. *D. John* was almost dead when these Bounties reached him, and he died of a Disease that nowadays kills no man, though it did formerly; for even Diseases dye. It was grief for the miserable estate *India* was reduced to, without any means of redressing it; and the Actions of some Gentlemen, among them that of his Son at *Xael*. He publickly begged pardon of many for Writing against them to the King, that it may appear, even Great Spirits purchase Favour by mean Whispers.

8.D. *John*



8. D. *John* finding himself unable to manage the Government, appointed a Council of select Persons to supply his place. And when he saw there was no hopes of Life, he called them before him, and some others, and said, *Though he neither hoped nor desired to live, yet while he continued in that condition something must be spent: That he had nothing, and desired that they would order something out of the King's Revenue, that he might not dye for want.* Then he ordered a Mass-Book to be brought, and laying his hand upon it, his Eyes lifted up to Heaven, swore, *That he had no way made use of the Kings, or any other mans Mony: That he had not drove any Trade, to increase his own Stock; and desired that this Act of his might be Recorded.* Soon after he gave up the Ghost in the Arms of St. *Francis Xaverius*, on the 6th of *June*, in the 48th year of his Age, having Governed two Years and eight Months. In his private Cabinet was found a Bloody Discipline, and three Royals, which was all his Treasure.

9. He was buried in the Church of Saint *Francis*. In the Year 1576 his Body was brought to *Portugal*, and laid in the Church of *Bemfica* of the *Dominicans*, on a Hill not far from *Lisbon*. He is painted Crowned with Palm-branches, and cloathed in Red. He was a great Latinist, and well skilled in Mathematicks. Being desirous to know why the *Red-Sea* appears of that Colour, he made Men Dive to the bottom and  
K bring

bring up what they found, whereof he writ a Treatise.

10. D. *John* Governed without suffering himself to be over-ruled by Pride, as others did before and after him. He asked nothing for himself as a Superiour; what the Necessities of the Government required, he asked as an Equal. He valued Men according to Merit, not Fancy. He so much loved every one should look like what he was, that seeing a fine Suit of Cloaths as he passed by a Taylors, and being told it was his Sons, he cut it in pieces, saying, *Bid that young man provide Arms.* He was the 14<sup>th</sup> in the number of Governours, and may be accounted the 4<sup>th</sup> Vice-Roy, and first of the Name.

11. It is fit something should be said of this Great Man's descent and first Actions. He was born the Year 1500, and was Son of *Alvaro de Castro*, Governour of the Chancery, and of *D. Leonor de Noronha*, Daughter of *D. John de Almeyda*, Count of *Albrantes*. In his Youth he served in *Tangier*, and returning home had a Commendary, valued at 500 Ducats a year conferred on him, which was all a man of his Birth and Merits was ever worth. In those days the Revenues were small, and Men great; afterwards the Revenues grew great, and the Men little. A Great Soul then did much with a little; now they do nothing with a great deal. The Year 1505, when *D. Francis de Almeyda* went first Vice Roy of *India*, his Salary was but 15000 Royals a year.

year. D.*Constantine* fifty years after, because he was of the Blood Royal, had 40000. Now they have 100000. See who performed the greatest Exploits in that Post.

12. He served afterwards under the Emperour *CHARLES* the Fifth, in the Expedition of *Tuniz*, and refused his part of a Present in Mony that Prince made to the Portugues Officers, saying, *He served the King of Portugal, and of him expected his Reward.* After this he commanded a Fleet upon the Coast, and was sent with another to the Relief of *Ceuta*, which joyning with that of *Spain*; the Spaniard hearing the Moors were drawing near, would draw off to Consult concerning the manner of giving Battle; but D. *John* refused to stir. The Moors not knowing the Fleets were parted, retired, and D. *John* remained with the Honour of this Action.

13. When the Vice-Roy D. *Garcia de Noronha* went to *India*, D. *John* was Captain of one of his Ships. Being ready to go aboard, the King sent him a Grant of the Command of *Ormuz*, and 1000 Ducats a year till he was in possession of it. The last he accepted, because he was poor; and refused the first, saying, *He had not yet deserved it.* He went to *Suez* with D. *Stephen de Gama*, and up to Mount *Sinai*, where his Son D. *Alvaro* was Knighted. Being returned to *Portugal*, he lived retired in a Conuntry-house he built near *Cintra*, giving himself

altogether to his Studies. Thence he was called by the Advice of the Infante D. Luis, and sent Governour to *India*.

## C H A P. VI.

*The Government of Garcia de Sá, from the Tear 1548 till the Tear 1549, in the Reign of King JOHN the Third.*

1. **T**HE first Patent of Succession being opened, named D. *John Mascarenhas* who after the long Siege of *Diu* was gone for *Lisbon*, to seek the Reward which now he missed in *India*. The second named D. *George Tello*, absent also. In the third was *Garcia de Sá*, a Person well versed in the Affairs of *India*. At his first Entrance upon the Government he gave sufficient Tokens of his Zeal for the Publick, and used some Liberality to gain the Hearts of the Soldiers, much dejected with the lessening their Pay.

2. He received an Embassadour from *Hidalcan* to Treat of Peace, which was concluded much to our Advantage. About the beginning of *August* came in eleven of the seventeen Ships sent from *Portugal* this year:  
The



The other six were arrived before. In this Fleet were the first Fathers of the Order of *St. Dominick*, that went to build a Convent at *Goa*; they were six, and their Chief *F. James Bernardez* a Spaniard, and a Learned and Pious Man.

3. The Governour sent *Martin Correa de Silva* to *Diu*; hastned the departure of the Trading Ships, and sailed for *Bacaim* with some Men in thirty Vessels, designing to gain some advantage over the King of *Cambaya*. He was disappointed; but it was some satisfaction that he had Advice there, That the King of *Tanor* being Converted, desired succour against such as should rebel upon his change of Religion. *Garcia de Sá*, the Governours Nephew, was sent with Threescore Men of Note, who had good success, as shall appear in its place.

4. At this time the Governour splendidly received the Embassadours of *Zamori*, *Canara*, *Nizamaluco*, *Cotumaluco*, and other Princes, who came to confirm the former Peace. At last *Sultan Mamud*, King of *Cambaya*, made Overtures, tired with ill success, and the Peace was established to our Credit.

5. The Spiritual Conquest was now very successful. *Xaverius* erected Churches, and Converted many among the *Patava's*, and two Kings with a multitude of People in *Malaca*. *John Soares*, Vicar of the Fort of *Chale*, converted the King of *Tanor*, with his Queen and Children. He desiring to see the Offices of the Church solemnly per-

formed at Goa, and be confirmed by the Bishop, came to the City, was nobly received, and departed well satisfied, promising to make his Subjects follow his Example. The Persuasions of *Zamori* wrought no effect upon him now; but afterwards it seems they prevailed, for we shall see him in Arms against those who received him with such Honour.

6. One *Rislala*, an Ethiopian and Favourite of the King of *Ormuz*, rebelled against him at *Manojam*. The King sent against him a good Body of his Men, supported by 120 Portugueses, to which were afterwards added 1000 of the first, and 180 of the latter; but all to no purpose, for he still kept himself out of reach. *D. Emanuel de Lima* finding he could not do any thing by open force, resolved to reach him by Craft. He agreed with a *Gallego*, That he should counterfeit he fled from him, and getting into *Baslala's* Camp, kill him the first opportunity. The *Gallego* soon performed, and all was quiet.

7. This Year we shall see a bloody War between *Pegu* and *Siam*, for an Elephant. The King of *Siam* had a white Elephant, a Beast coveted by all the Princes of the East. The King of *Pegu* demanded it by way of Superiority; and he of *Siam* refused it, not so much for the value of the Beast, as for the manner of asking. He of *Pegu* entred his Dominions, and reduced him to desire a Peace upon any Terms, so the Elephant were not comprehended. They agreed

agreed the King of *Pegu* should have the *Siam's* Daughter and a Noble Woman every year, as an acknowledgment: But the latter not performing, the other returned with 1500000 Men, 4000 Elephants, and an incredible Train; with him came the Kings that depended on him, and *James Soares de Melo* with 180 Portugueses. Above two Thousand Workmen went before, who every Night set up a stately Wooden Palace, richly painted and adorned with Gold. He made a prodigious Bridge of Boats over the rapid River *Menam*, a League over, to pass his Army. In his Way was a narrow Pass, where the *Siamite* had raised a strong Wall, guarded by 25000 Men. *James Soares* was sent to gain it with 30000, which he performed with some loss to himself, but utter destruction of the Enemy. At length he sat down with his wonderful Army before the City *Odia*, the Court of the King of *Siam*, who was within with 60000 Men, and 4000 Cannon, some of a prodigious magnitude. *Odia* is eight Leagues in compass, about it a strong Wall, and round that a wide and deep Water.

8. The Battery began. In the Town were 50 Portugueses, Commanded by *James Pereyra*, who behaved themselves to admiration. The King of *Pegu* endeavoured to corrupt them with Bribes; but they rejected all his Offers. The King astonished, despaired of gaining by the Sword, what could not be bought with Gold, and removed to the City *Camambce*, where were

the *Siamites* Treasures ; the Place strong, and defended by 20000 Men. After many Attempts this vast Power was forced to march off without doing any thing.

9. *Xemindoo* rebelled against the King of *Pegu*, who sent *James Soarez* with Two hundred Portugueses to suppress him. He followed him to the City *Cevadi*; and he slipping by, got into *Pegu*, because the City sided with him. The Queen fled to the Castle, where she was defended by twenty Portugueses, till the King came and put the Rebels to flight. The Army entred the City, and put to the Sword not only Men, Women and Children, but even the Beasts; nothing escaped, but what was within the liberty of *James Soarez*, his House, which the King had ordered should be exempted; above Twelve thousand saved themselves therein. The Plunder was unaccountable, *James Soarez* alone got above three Millions. At his Intercession the King pardoned a Portugues, who had furnished *Xemindoo* with Ammunition.

10. Though the King escaped the hands of *Xemindoo*, he could not the Villany of *Ximi de Zatan*, (*Ximi* is equivalent to a Duke, and he really was one of Satan's creating) who murdered him in the delightful City *Zatan*. The Traytor was immediately proclaimed King, and falling among the murdered Princes Men, killed three of those that belonged to *James Soarez*, who fled to the City *Ova*, and afterwards at *Pegu* was reconciled to this  
New



New King, till *Xemindoo*, who fled before, came on again with a powerful Army. *Ximi* commanded *James Soares*, and his Portugueses, to march with him against the Enemy; but before he came thither, the punishment of his great Insolencies reached him, as shall be seen hereafter.

11. *Zatan* was taken and Beheaded by *Xemindoo*, who gave out it was for the killing of *Soares*, as if the murder of the King had not been a more justifiable Motive. Thus the first Rebel possessed himself of the Crown, till *Mandaragri*, the late Kings Brother-in-Law, claimed it in right of his Wife; and coming to a Battle, gave him such a total Defeat, that *Xemindoo* fled to the Mountains, where he married a poor Fellows Daughter. He discovered himself to her, and she revealed it to her Father, at such time as great Rewards were proposed to such as should discover him. The Father-in-Law delivered him up to the King, who cut off his Head.

12. The King not throughly satisfied with the People of *Pegu*, built not far from it another great and strong City. Then he marched with an Army of 1600000 Men, and over-run many Neighbouring Kingdoms. But another Rebellion breaking out at *Pegu*, the Queen was forced to fly to the Castle, chiefly relying upon 39 Portugueses, who defended her till the King came and vanquished the Rebels. Then the King sent an Officer to bring those Men, who had defended the Queen, to his presence. He brought

brought him some Moors of Note; but the King knowing the Portugueses were the Men, said in Anger, *I sent you for Men, and you bring me Cowards; Go, bring me Men.* The Portugueses being brought, he bid them ask whatever Reward they would, and they with the Surprize doubting, the King loaded them with Riches, Praises and Honours.

13. Now were the Inhabitants of the City *Chincheo*, the second Portugues Colony in *China*, in a flourishing condition, and seemed to have forgot the sad Fate of *Liampo*, destroyed through their Wickedness and Avarice. *Ayres Coello de Sousa* came thither to be Judge of the Orphans, and Proveditor for the Dead; his Intention being to rob the Living and Dead, his Countrymen and Strangers. He committed many Villanies to lay hold of 12000 Ducats, belonging to an *Armenian* Christian, who died there, and 8000 more of some *Chinese* Merchants, upon pretence they belonged to the dead Man. These and other Insolencies provoked the Chineses to do, as they had done at *Liampo*; to wit, to raze the Town, and destroy all the Inhabitants. Only Thirty escaped of Five hundred Portugueses that lived there. These, and some others they gathered, went over to the Island *Lampazau*; and afterwards, in the Year 1557, obtained of the Chineses that of *Gaoxam*, where they built the City now called *Macao*, as shall be seen in its place.

14. Our

14. Our Governour studying some Means to relieve the great Wants of the Souldiers, was suddenly snatched away by Death, about the beginning of *July*. He was much regretted for his Prudence, Affability and Integrity ; for being Seventy years of Age, and having born considerable Offices, he was forced to give all he had to Match two Daughters, and yet the best part of their Portions was their Beauty, and that He was their Father. He had a graceful Presence ; a comly Countenance, always Smiling, without lessening his Gravity : For it is not necessary to be like a Statue, to appear like a God. He was of the first Quality of his Country : His Beard very white and full, falling upon his Breast : Governed a Year and a Month, and was the 15<sup>th</sup> in that Rank ; the second of the Name, and first of the Sirname.

CHAP.

## C H A P. VII.

*The Government of George Cabral, from the Tear 1549, till the Tear 1550, in the Reign of King JOHN the Third.*

1549. 1. **T**H E Patents of Succession being opened, there was found in the first *George Cabral*, a Gentleman by Birth, and of known Worth, who not long before was gone to take possession of the Command of *Bacaim*. He received the News with small signs of Joy, an ill token for him that expected the Recompence of carrying it: But he being a generous Man, did not lessen the Reward. It was not want of desire to Govern that made him dissatisfied; but that he feared another coming soon from *Portugal* to succeed him, he should lose the great Advantages he might have made of the Command he was in, and which he was to hold four Years. With him was his Wife *D. Lucretia Fiallo*, who had double Pretensions to be vain, as a Woman, and as a Beauty, and had now a third, in the News of being Wife to the Governour of *India*; so she laughed to see her Husband doubt, whether he should receive what was offered.

2. *Cabral*



2. *Cabral* revolved a thousand Thoughts with himself, not knowing whether to admit or refuse the Government, and these Cares so disturbed him, that he could not Rest at Night. His Wife finding him so dubious, and fearing to be disappointed of the Pride of sitting, though never so short a time in the Throne of *India*, took him one Night to task, and using all Arts of an ambitious Womans Tongue, and the Allurements of that place, prevailed with him to lay aside all Doubt, and accept of the Honour offered, which he had seemed averse to, and which she so ardently desired.

3. He admired her efficacy in Persuading, no less powerful in the beauty of her Language, than that of her Person. Though he always thought her a Woman of Sense; (for Beauty and Folly are not always inseparable) yet he could not but conclude, the desire of Greatness is a great matter of Eloquence. Who could resist a resolute Beauty? Had it been to draw on Mankind another Universal sin, he must have been an *Adam* to that *Eve*; much more to accept of a Command for which he was sufficiently qualified. In fine, The New Governour failed to *Goa*, in this only Governed by his Wife; for *India* might vie with her in the desire of seeing him possess that Throne many years: For *Cabral* deserved to have been long continued in that Post, and *India* was obliged to his Wife for the short time he held it. Women are not always hurtful: But in those days

days there were some Beautiful and Gay without being quite Mad.

4. At our Governours coming from *Cochin*, there was not a right Understanding between that King and him, because he ordered *Francis de Silva* to attempt to Plunder the Pagod of *Palurte*, which was dis-appointed, and he lost three Portugueses; and the Loss had been greater, but that the King was then absent. This was the Cause that three Ships set out for *Portugal* late, and ill Laden. Now came the News, That above 100 Sail were fitting out at *Suez*, to transport Turks into *India*. The Governour applied himself to provide for such a Storm, he acquainted the Chief of our Town. *Goa* offered much, *Cbaul* 30 Sail, *Bazaim* 20. Whilst these Preparations were making, *F. Antony Criminal*, an *Italian* Jesuit, preaching at *Cape Comori*, received the Crown of Martyrdom at the hands of a multitude of the King of *Bisnagar*'s Subjects, who assaulted him as he Preached. He was run through with three Lances, and then his Head cut off. King *John* was so mightily delighted with this Exploit, that he immediately sent Advice to *Baltasar de Faria* his Embassadour at *Rome*, to communicate it to the Pope, who received it with due applause.

## C H A P. VIII.

*Continues the Government of George Cabral.*

1. **Z** *Amori*, and the King of *Pimienta*, were joyned in a League against him of *Cochin*, which threatned that State with dangerous consequences. The Governour set out to prevent them with a Fleet of 90 Sail; but returned to *Goa* without doing any thing, because the Season was unfit. He only consulted with the King of *Cochin* about the manner of carrying on the War against those Confederates, since they could not be brought to a Peace.

2. The Weather being seasonable, the King of *Pimienta* took the Field at *Bardela* with 10000 Nayres, the King of *Cochin* did the same with his Men, and 600 Portugueses, Commanded by the rash *Francis de Sylva*, Captain of that Fort. The Armies being drawn up in sight, the King of *Pimienta*, at the Request of *Sylva*, gave him a Meeting between them. *Sylva* pressed for an Accommodation, which the King condescending to upon reasonable Terms, was broke off by our Captain; who having more natural Strength than natural Reason, acted more like a Brute than a Man. The Armies charged

charged each other Couragiously, and the King of *Pimienta* was carried off Wounded, and died before he knew the event of the Battle. His Men fled, and were pursued into their City with great slaughter; the Royal Palace was fired, which among them is the hainouest Affront; whereupon they Rallied, and fell upon the Victors with such Fury, that they obliged them to retire in great disorder. *Sylva* discharged some few that stood by him, and rushing into the thickest of the Enemies, was killed. Above fifty Portugueses were lost here, which abundantly countervailed for our Victory.

3. Five thousand Nayres, all sworn to Revenge the death of their King, or dye, entred the Country of *Cochim*, killing many, and forcing others to fly to the Fort. The Commander of the Fort, *Henry de Sousa*, marched out, and finding them engaged with the *Indians*, who fought desperately, killed Five hundred. Two strange and contrary Accidents hapned upon this occasion: One was, a Man that lay dying awoke, and taking a Lance did great Execution among the Enemies, and perfectly recovered his health: The other, a Man in perfect health, who fell down dead with the Fright.

4. All the Joy of this Success vanished at the sight of *Zamori*, who came attended by the Princes of *Malabar*, with 140000 Men. He Encamped with 100000 at *Chembe*, ordering those Princes (who were eighteen



eighteen in number , and among them the King of *Tanor*, lately so fond of us and our Religion) with the other 40000, whereof 5000 had devoted themselves to pass over into the Island *Bardela*. Our Governour, upon the first Advice, prepared to meet this Storm. He sent before *Emanuel de Sousa & Sepulveda* with four Ships, and Orders, That having joyned those that were at *Cochim*, he should shut up those Princes in the Island till he came, being resolved to follow at his Heels. *Sepulveda* did his part, and the Governour his, for he sailed immediately ; the Cities of *Goa*, *Chaul*, and *Bacaim*, furnishing what they had offered for the Expedition against the Turks, which came to nothing. The Fleet consisted of above 100 Sail, and almost 4000 Landmen. The first Execution was at *Tiracole*, where many Houses, Ships and Goods were burnt. *Coulete* suffered the same Fate, after a vigorous Resistance, which cost the Lives of many of them, and sixteen of ours. At *Panane* the same, and we lost eight.

5. Our Governour Landed at *Cochim*, and found that King with Forty thousand Men ; he had himself Six thousand , Two thousand having joyned him there. The Island being beset , and Signal given to fall on, those within began to waive a white Flag, for a Parley. It was concluded , those eighteen Princes should put themselves into the Governours hands, upon promise of Life. He finding they delayed , resolved to  
L fight

fight them the next day, but was hindred by a great Flood; yet he concluded he might put his design in execution the day after. But what security is there in human Felicity? *Cabral* was almost in possession of one of the most glorious Actions that had been seen in *India*, when the sudden Arrival of the Vice-Roy *D. Alfonso de Noronha* ravished this Honour from him, not suffering him to proceed, nor concluding himself what was so well begun. On the contrary, he suffered all those Princes to escape with their whole Army.

6. *St. Francis Xavierius* seeing how many great Enterprizes were disappointed through the Malice or Envy of the Governours, wrote a Letter to the King, acquainting him therewith, and advising to punish such Miscarriages with severity, whereby they might for the future be prevented. But Ministers serve as they please; Saints advise well, and Princes Eyes are never opened. Commonly, the want of due Punishment is the cause of publick Calamities.

7. Whilst *George Cabral* was at *Cochim*, waiting to embarque in the Ships that were bound to *Portugal*, one Night about the middle of *February* there was a Report, That Eight thousand sworn Nayres would enter the City. *Cabral* run to the Gates, with *Emanuel de Sousa & Sepulveda*, in order to march out and meet them at Break of Day; but was hindred by the Council of the City. He staid with a competent Number of Men to guard the Town, and sent

sent *Sepulveda* with Fifteen hundred Portugueses and the Natives. They found those desperate Men in a Neighbouring Town, acting all that Rage and Malice could suggest. They Charged them; the Fight was very desperate, fifty Portugueses were slain, and above a Thousand of the *Amouco's* or devoted Nayres, the rest fled.

8. Let us see what was done during this time by the Captains, sent by the Governour to several parts. The King of *Cota* had asked Succour against his Brother *Madune Pandar*, King of *Ceitavaca*, who endeavoured to expel him his Kingdom; he offered in requital for the Relief, to pay a greater Tribute than before. *Caralea Pandar*, Prince of *Candea* (not following the Example of his Father, who was bent against the Religious Men, who made him a Christian) desired to be Baptized, and fled with the Priests to a Fort, from whence he sent to beg the Governour's assistance. Both these places being in the Island *Ceylon*, he sent thither *D. George de Castro* with six hundred Men. *Madune* scarce saw him, when he raised the Siege he had laid to *Cota*, where his Brother was. The King of *Cota* and *D. George* followed him; and he so fortified the *Passes*, they were forced in some places to fight their way through showers of Bullets, Stones and Arrows, with some loss of Men, and no small slaughter of the Enemy. Being come in sight of the City *Madune* met them, and there ensued a bloody Battle desperately fought on both

sides. At length *Madune* was obliged to fly to the Mountains, and leave his Brother in possession of that great City, singularly adorned by a Pagod of wonderful magnificence. The Plunder was very considerable. *Madune* implored his Brother's Mercy, who had little reason to shew him any; yet did, and left him possessed of his Kingdom.

9. *D. George* did not meet with the like success at *Candea*, whither he went after this Victory. The Enemy came unexpectedly upon him with Forty thousand Men in a narrow Pass, whence he could not escape, and killed Eight hundred of his Men, half of them Portugueses. He got away with more grief for this Loss, than honour by the late Victory. For it is certain, we are more sensibly grieved at Misfortunes, than pleased with Success.

10. *Bernardin de Sousa*, at the *Maluco's*, continued the War against the King of *Gilolo*, and drew off with a rich Booty, after destroying some Towns on the Coast with Fire and Sword. At this time came *Christopher de Sá* to succeed him in that Command.

11. *George Cabral* imbarqued well pleased with his good success against the sworn Nayres, and was well received in *Portugal* for his great Merit, contrary to the Custom of this Kingdom. He was generally esteemed one of the best Governours of *India*. He was the sixteenth of that number, and held it a year and four Months.

His



His Person was graceful, his Countenance pleasing, of a ruddy Complexion, his Beard a dark Chesnut.

12. This Year was born at *Goa* (the Father and Mother were *Canara's*) a hairy Monster like a Monky, with a round Head and only one Eye in the Forehead, over it grew Horns, and on the sides Ears like those of a Kid. As the Midwife received it into her Hands, it cried out with a loud Voice and stood upon its Feet. The Father locked it up in a Hen-Coop: It got out, and seizing upon the Mother, had like to tear off one of her Nipples. The Father catching it again, poured scalding Water upon the Head and killed it, and could scarce cut off the Head, it was so hard. He burnt it; and the thing being known he was punished for killing it, and the Body was exposed to publick view in the City.

## CHAP. IX.

*The Government of the Vice-Roy D. Alfonso de Noronha, from the Year 1550, till 1553, in the Reign of King JOHN the Third.*

1. **D**On *Alfonso de Noronha* was taken from the Government of *Ceuta*, to be sent to that of *India*, and more Favours conferred on him than on any of his Predecessors; as if this Post of it self were not as great a Favour for him, as for others. Thus we see Princes bestow the very same Places on some as Rewards, which they give to others as a step to Merit: The fault is not in the Gift, but in him that bestows it. But it seems, the King in part ballanced this Favour by assigning him a Council, by whom he must of necessity be Advised in *India*.

2. He had Orders to send back into *Portugal* all the New Christians, that is, Converted Jews, who had gone from hence with their whole Families; and it were better they had been banished both places. He was also to take cognizance of those Ancient Christians, who disturbed such as were converted from Paganism.

3. Don

3. *Don Alfonso* set out of *Lisbon* with four Ships; one had been sent before, to give Advice why the rest stay'd, and *D. Alvaro de Gama* (Son to the Great *Vasco*) sailed so late, it was never expected he would get thither; yet he overtook the others, the Seas being favourable to all that descend from his Father; for it was never known any of them was Cast-away. The Vice-Roy was received at *Goa* with the usual demonstrations of Joy, proceeding rather from the hatred they bear him that lays down the Sword, than love to him that takes it up.

4. He immediately sent Advice of his Arrival to all Parts, and dispatched Commanders to several Forts, and for Sea. *Luis Figueyra* was sent to the *Red Sea* with five Vessels, where they met the Turk *Casar* with five Galliot. *Figueyra* attacks *Casar's* Galliot, and was slain, much admired by the Enemy for his Valour. The four subordinate Captains stood looking on and saw him killed, without coming to his Relief. One of them, *Gaspar Nunez*, ashamed of what he had done, went away with all his Men into *Ethiopia*, and was never more heard of. Several, another of them, met one of those Galliot, fought, and they parted upon equal Terms. After he met the other two, and they all returned with disgrace to *Goa*.

5. The Arabs of *Catifa* delivered up to the Turks the Fort of that City, which highly offended the King of *Ormuz*. The Turks had also expelled his Kingdom the King of *Baçora*, who yet kept the Field with Thirty thousand Men, in hopes to recover his Kingdom with the assistance of the Portugueses. To this effect he sent an Embassy to the Vice-Roy, offering leave to build a Fort in his Harbour, and other Advantages to the Crown of *Portugal*. *D. Antonio de Noronha*, Nephew to the Vice-Roy, was sent to assist these two Kings, with Twelve hundred Men in nineteen Vessels. Being come to *Ormuz*, they marched with Three thousand of that Kings Men, and set down before the Fort of *Catifa*. Four hundred Turks that were in that Garrison behaved themselves bravely; but finding it in vain to resist, fled by Night, and being discovered were pursued and routed. The Fort was taken, and the Captain of *Ormuz*, not daring to maintain it, it was thought fit to be razed. A Mine was made, which taking fire before the time, and blowing up, the Work buried 40 Portugueses.

6. After this Victory *Noronha* sailed to the Mouth of the River *Euphrates*, in order to relieve the King of *Baçora*. Here a cunning Bassa persuaded him, he was sent for to be delivered up to his Enemies; whereupon he returned Inglorious to *Ormuz*, where being come he understood the Deceit, but it was too late.

7. The



7. The Vice-Roy had sent *D. Garcia de Meneses* to Command at *Ternate*, at the Request of that King, who could not endure *Jordan de Freytas*, that sent him Prisoner to *Goa*. The Affairs of *Malaca* hindered *Meneses* from going thither. *Bernardim de Sousa*, who had scarce resigned that Post to *Christopher de Sá*, returned, with Orders to continue there, in case the Spaniards encroached upon those places. *Sá* refused to admit him, because the Spaniards were quiet, and his Order conditional; but *Sousa* pressed to be restored, because he had not made so much of that Command as he expected. At length *Sá*, to prevent Mischief, submitted. *Sousa* immediately sets out with 180 Portugueses, and sails for *Gilolo*, to destroy the Fort was raising there. The King of *Ternate*, and Prince of *Bacham*, followed with 5000 Men.

8. The King of *Gilolo* courageously expected the coming of his Enemy in the the Fort, with 1200 Men and many Pieces of Cannon. *Baltasar Velloso* led our Van; the Prince of *Gilolo* breaking out of an Ambush with Four hundred Men, fell upon and distressed him; but *Velloso*, though seventy years of Age, made such havock among the Enemies, they were forced to fly. Our Captain received some damage, continues his Battery, and sits down to besiege the place. He cut off their Water, which obliged them, after a Siege of three Months, to Capitulate, and Peace was concluded upon these hard Terms, That the  
King

King should lose this Title and be styled *Governour*, and pay Tribute. The Portugueses entred the Fort in his presence, committing many barbarous Enormities, and laid it even with the ground. It is no small Credit to those of *Gilolo*, that they held out four days after all their Provision was spent. On our side Three hundred Men were killed, eighteen of them Portugueses; there were more wounded. *Ferdinand Machado* saying, He should be killed here, said the Office of the Dead for himself; and lest it might be thought Cowardize, went Dancing up to the Enemy; he died of his Wounds soon after the Surrender. The King also died for Grief, and his Son *Cachilguzarate* succeeded him. *Bernardin de Sousa* being jealous of the Fort of *Tidore*, went over to it; and that King fearing greater damage, agreed it should be demolished.

9. Sultan *Halandim*, that King that *Peter Mascarenas* expelled *Bantam*, and *D. Stephen de Gama* from *Ujantana*, resolved now to try his Fortune against *Malaca*. He had a great Power at Sea, and was assisted by the Kings of *Pera*, *Pam* and *Marruax*, and the Queen of *Japara* in the Island of *Java*. About the beginning of *June* the Fleet of these Confederates put to Sea, consisting of above Two hundred Sail. The King of *Ujantana* had sent an Embassadour to *D. Pedro de Silva*, Commander of *Malaca*, whose chief business was to discover what Force was in *Malaca*. *D. Pedro*, on the other side,

was

was privately informed by *Laximena*, the Embassadour's Father, of the King's design, which was to surprize *Malaca* by giving out, His Preparations were against *Achem*. He had like to compass his Ends, for the time was very short to provide. The King entered the Port, and burnt what Ships were in it, and at the same time possessed himself of the Suburbs. Then he intrenched, planted his Cannon, and began to batter the Fort furious and successfully, and at length reduced the Inhabitants to feed upon such things as are loathsome.

10. *D. Garcia de Meneses* sailing for the *Maluco's*, put into *Malaca* with his Caravel, where he had a hot Dispute with *Laximena*, the Kings Admiral, who had betrayed his Masters Counsels to the Portugueses, and was then killed by them, with his Son, and his Ship sunk. But *D. Garcia* did not long survive this Honour; for attempting to gain a Gun that did much damage to the Town, he was killed, and with him above thirty Portugueses, brought by *D. Pedro de Silva* to rescue him. Mean while several Portugues Ships came into the Harbour from divers parts, the News of the danger *Malaca* was in had reached. The Enemy endeavoured to oppose them, and *Gomes Barreto* conducted them in with safety.

11. The Enemy resolved to Assault the City, and the Commander *D. Pedro* having Notice of it, provided to receive them. Scarce did they begin to mount their Ladders, when there fell on them a Storm of great pieces of Timbers, Stones and Grano's, so that in an instant above Eight hundred of them lay dead under the Wall. This obliged them to retire to their Works, and they resolved to starve the City. Our Commander fearing the Consequence of this Resolution, was advised by an unknown Souldier, (who before at the Assault promoted the throwing of Beams) to send abroad some Ships, and give out, They were going to put those Kings Countries to Fire and Sword. They believing it, left the Siege, which was prosecuted by the Queen of *Japara*, with the Men of *Java*, till *Giles Fernandez de Carvalho* coming unexpectedly with Two hundred Men, there ensued a bloody Fight; and at length the Enemies were put to a shameful flight, having lost above Two thousand Men, many Ships, and all their Cannon and Ammunition, whereof was a great quantity, and it was of great consequence to the City. What the Enemy could not execute by force when present, they did by perfidiousness after their flight. They poisoned a Well, whereof our Men drinking, above Two hundred died, to the great terrour of all, till the Cause was known.

12. The



12. The Affairs of *Ceylon* were now in a very turbulent posture; for *Madune*, contrary to the Agreement, distressed the King of *Cota*, who had recourse to *Gaspar de Azevedo*, Commander of *Columbo*, and he (with the King's Men and 100 Portugueses) defeated the Enemy. But the King of *Cota* being killed by a Musquet-shot, he of *Ceytavaca* renewed his Pretensions. The success was not answerable to his expectation; for the New Prince, assisted by the Portugueses, gave him a total Rout. At the beginning of *September* the Vice-Roy prepared to go in Person to remedy these Disorders. At the same time arrived from *Portugal* five Ships, and soon after two more. One was forced back to *Lisbon* by ill Weather. The Vice-Roy set out the beginning of *October*, with 3000 Men in 70 Sail.

13. The first thing he did after his Arrival at *Ceylon*, was to put upon the Rack some Subjects of that King he went to succour, that they might discover where their Princes Treasure was buried, as if he had been an Enemy, or had sent for him to make him his Treasurer. In the second place, he searched the Dead Man's Palace, and found 80000 Ducats. Thirdly, He demanded 200000 Ducats for his Charges, which was immediately granted. And, Fourthly, he took the Field with his Three thousand Portugueses, and Four thousand of the Kings Men. The King of *Ceytavaca* met them with a like Number; but soon fled into the Mountains, followed only by 100 Men.

His

His City was plundered, and the Booty very considerable. The Vice-Roy turned over the Earth, and dug up the Foundations of Buildings, to discover hidden Treasures. One was found, consisting of many Gold and Silver Idols of a large size, and other things. One half of right belonged to the King we pretended to Relieve, according to Agreement; but the Wants of *India* permitted no performance of Promises. Had the Indian broke his Word with the Christian, he had been a Barbarian. I know not what a Christian is, that breaks his with the Barbarian: Perhaps wiser Men know. It appeared we went in search of hidden Treasures, not to Relieve distressed Kings; when this King desiring Five hundred Portugueses might be left with him, to prevent his Enemies making Head again, he was left without any, because there was no more hopes of Treasure. But we shall soon see the King of *Cota* revenged by the King of *Portugal*, that it may appear the Actions of Kings are Divine, when they are their own.

14. Mean while *Don Antony de Noronha* scoured the Sea of *Calicut*, making great havock in it, and along the shoar. The Vice-Roy returned to *Cochin*, bringing with him a Kinsman of the King of *Cota*, who was become a Christian; went to *Portugal*, where he was received with Honour, and sent back to *India*, and died in the Faith. The Vice-Roy found the dispatch of the Homeward-bound Trading Ships, was retarded

tarded by the Prince of *Chembe*, he resolved to punish him, and set out with a Fleet that contained Four thousand Men. Thirty thousand were gathered from *Calicut* to oppose him, and some endeavoured to hinder the Landing, but were soon put to flight.

15. Our Men landed and marched to the City; the Enemy met them, and there followed a bloody Battle, in which we lost forty Men; but the Enemy was put to flight, and the Vice-Roy satisfied with ravaging the Country, returned to *Cochim*, and dispatched the Ships for *Portugal*. In them went an Embassadour from *Nautaquim*, Prince of *Tanixumaa*, or *Taquixima*, one of the Islands of *Japan*, and a rich Present; he desired Five hundred Men to conquer the Island *Lequio*, and in return offered to pay Tribute. The Embassadour was one *James Gomez de Almeyda*, who was lost in the Unfortunate Ship in which *Emanuel de Sousa & Sepulveda* was Cast-away, with his Wife *D. Leonor de Albuquerque & Sá*, who being put ashore at the Cape of *Good Hope*, endured incredible hardships, and at length died miserably, giving occasion to sundry Relations that are spread about the World, which being in part false, I will here give a brief Account of the whole Matter.

16. They

16. They got ashore at the Cape of *Good Hope*, to the number of Five hundred and thirty Souls; and at first marched in good Order, with Colours and a Crucifix on high, designing for *Mozambique*. They began their march the 3<sup>d</sup> of *July*, and about the end of it several were left behind Famished, and among them a Natural Son of *Emanuel de Sousa*. *D. Leonor* marched afoot; for those who had carried her were no longer able to support themselves. At the end of three Months and a half they came to the Cottages of *Oinbaca*, a little Prince on the Banks of the River *Del Espiritu Sancto*: This good Old Man entertained them with great kindness, offering to relieve them till some Portugues Ships came to the Neighbouring Shoars, whereof his People had always Notice. He also warned them, That further on was the Little Prince *Ofumo*, who would do them all the harm he could, if they proceeded on their Journey. *Emanuel de Sousa* following his Destiny, went on; but seeing that of Five hundred and thirty Persons, he had but One hundred and twenty left, and that his Wife *D. Leonor* could hardly go farther, taking her turn with the Slaves in carrying her little Children, he began to shew some signs of Distraction, which was an incredible Grief to his Wife, who doted on him. Being come to *Ofumo's* Country, forgetting the Warning *Oinbaca* had given, he trusted him, and resolved there to wait for Portugues Ships. *Ofumo* designed to rob him, but feared his

Mens



Mens Arms. He persuaded him to deliver them up, and he should have all Necessaries abundantly provided ; pretending his Subjects did not supply him for Fear. Notwithstanding all Persuasions to the contrary, he delivered them, and had scarce done it when he was robbed of all his Jewels, and only their Cloaths left them. At this he run quite Mad , and his Wife taking him by one hand and her Son in the other , her Slaves following, and some few Men , they went on till the *Cafres* fell upon and stripped them. *D. Leonor* endeavoured to defend her self to no purpose , and with hazard of her Life , till her Husband persuaded her to choose the lesser Evil ; but she thought it less Ill to dye , than be seen Naked by any, but her Husband. As soon as she was stripped , she made her Slaves stand about her , and sitting down on the Sand, made a Hole , where she covered her self to the Waste : Then looking upon the Pylot , *Andrew Vaz*, said, *You see how God permits, as a punishment of my sins, that my Husband, Children and I perish in this miserable manner. If you get to Portugal , or India , give an account of it.* The Pylot not able to return an Answer for grief , went whatever way Chance guided him. *Emanuel de Sousa* had run to the Wood, to gather some wild Fruit for his Wife and Children , who were perishing with Hunger , and returning found one dead , and her with the other scarce alive. He buried the dead Child , and returned for more Fruit , but too late ; for

M

when

when he came they were both dead. After pausing a while, he made a Hole and buried his Son, and then his Wife; after which he ran into the thickest of the Wood without once looking back. Three of his Slaves got to *India*, who gave this Relation, as others who reached *Moçambique* did, of other Passages. Among these was *Sebastian de Sá*, who in this Misery experienced two Notable things: One, That the Gravity even of a Portugues Gentleman (as he was) must yield to Misfortunes; for he, to oblige the *Cafres* to give him some Sustainance, played the Antick, or Buffoon. The other, That this sort of Life is the surest in the World.

## C H A P. X.

*Continues the Government of the Vice-Roy, D. Alfonso de Noronha.*

1. **T**HE Great Turk offended at what we had done at *Caxem*, or *Catifa*, and attempted at *Bacora*, studied Revenge; and to execute it set out *Pirbec*, an Old Pyrat, with Sixteen thousand Men in strong Gallies and other Vessels. *D. Alvaro de Noronha*, Commander of *Ormuz*, concluded this Storm threatned him. He sent some to discover the Enemy, and among them *Simon de Costa*, who met *Pirbec's* Son sent also before in a Galley to discover. Our Barque slipped under his very Oars so swiftly, that two of the Men were left hanging at them; the Galley pursues, but *Simon* scattering Mony among his Men, may be said to have got off with *Golden Oars*. The young Man raged that this Prize should escape him; but was somewhat appeased when he met another Barque, in which was the Wife of *John de Lisboa*, Commander of *Mascate*, and those of some other Portugueses that lived there, with two Old Men, all sent away to *Ormuz* for fear of the Enemy. The Women were secured, and the Men put to the Oar.

M 2

2. The

2. The Enemies Fleet came before *Mascate*, which held out almost a Month against that great Power ; but was forced to submit and capitulate. *Pirbec* broke the Articles, putting the Captain and sixty Men to the Oar; some of them were afterwards ransomed. This done, *Pirbec* goes on to *Ormuz*. *D. Alvaro de Noronha* had Nine hundred Men in that Fort, and in it was the King, his Wife, Children, and the Chief of their Court, who had taken Sanctuary there. He laid up Ammunition for a long Siege, and secured forty Sail that were in the Bay, among them one of those that the year before went from *Portugal*. The Turk being come to an Anchor, presently Landed and Encamped. He Intrenched, raised Batteries, planted much Cannon, and played it furiously without intermission for a whole Month. Finding he sustained much Loss, and laboured in vain, he plundered the City and went over to the Island *Queixome*, whither many considerable Men of *Ormuz* had withdrawn themselves; here he got a great Booty, and retired.

3. Before *Pirbec* departed from *Ormuz*, he offered our Commander to ransom the Prisoners taken at *Mascate*, and sent him as a Present the Wife of *John de Lisboa*, the two Old Men, and the two Souldiers that hung to the Oars of his Sons Galley. *D. Alvaro* received the two last, and sent back the others with some Presents, and this Message; *That the Present was in return for the Men he received: That the Old Men he sent, because they had not rather chose to lose their Lives,*  
than



*iban Liberty*; and the Woman (though Innocent) to punish her Husbands guilt, by seeing her return into slavery. This Proceeding was no ways justifiable; and *Pirbec* to shew he did not again receive what he had once given, ordered them to be left upon the Shoar.

4. The Governour informed of the danger that threatned *Ormuz*, but not of its deliverance, with great diligence fitted a Fleet to go in Person to relieve it. All Ranks vied in aiding him towards this Work, at such time as six Ships arrived from *Portugal*, it being the beginning of September. He sailed as far as *Diu*, and hearing *Ormuz* was out of danger, returned to *Goa*. At this time *D. Duarte Deça* sailed for *Ceylon*, to succeed *D. John Enriquez*, deceased; with him went *St. Francis Xaverius*, carried by the desire of making a Spiritual Conquest.

5. A bold Turk, by Consent of *Zamori*, scoured the Seas with fifteen large Vessels well Manned. He fell upon *Punicale*, where *Emanuel Rodriguez* Commanded with seventy Portugueses. The Fight was sharp, till *Antony Franco* taking the Enemies Colours, they fled. The Turk enraged sent again Fifteen hundred, who put all our Men to flight, except the Captain and seventeen, and these made a desperate resistance; but at last were obliged to quit the Town and fly to *Bisme Naique*, a Subject of *Canara*, who made them all Slaves. The Turk, after plundering the Town, returned to his Ships Victorious. The News being brought to *Cochim*, stirred up a general desire of Revenge. Whilst

things were debating, *Giles Fernandez de Carvalho* offered himself to go, and bear all the Charge, desiring only Shipping. All was provided with great diligence, and he set out in search of the Enemy; but by ill Luck *Lawrence Coello* fell into their hands, and was slain with all his Men, having fought bravely, *Carvalho* being no way able to come to his Relief, by reason of the contrary Wind.

6. On the 15<sup>th</sup> of *August* he fell upon the Turks with great Fury, and was received with no less Courage. The Fight lasted some hours with much bravery; all the Enemies Ships were boarded and taken, but much shattered; many killed in them, and others swimming to the Shoar. Then *Giles Fernandez* went to ransom the Prisoners, and restored *Emanuel Rodriguez*, not only his Liberty, but also Goods of great value the Turk had taken from him at *Punicalé*.

7. At this time the two Brothers, *D. Alvaro de Ataide* and *D. Pedro de Silva*, at *Malaca*, were at Variance about that Command; the former was most to blame, endeavouring to Remove the other before his time. *James de Melo Coutino* and *D. Duarte Dega* acted worse in *Ceylon*; for, after the Example of the Vice-Roy, having taken Mony of that Prince to assist him with each fifty Men against his Enemy, the King of *Ceytavaca*; the first after demanding more Mony, sent but Twenty; the other after receiving his, sent none, and because he refused, more increased the Feud he ought without any Bribe

to appease. *Melo* had secured that Princes Father by *D. Alfonso* his Order ; upon pretence of Suspicion ; in reality , because he owed him 12000 Ducats of 100000 he promised on account of being succoured. *Deça*, instead of mending this Fault made it worse, keeping the Old Man with more rigour, and much more when he heard he was converted to the Faith , which might hinder his wicked Designs. A wicked practice of many Portugueses, who hindred the Conversion of many Souls, because it was an obstacle to filling their Purses. The Prisoners Wife bribing the Guards got him out, and set him at the Head of a Body of Men she had in readiness to revenge this Outrage. He began to act successfully, till his Son appealed him. This year departed this Life *St. Francis Xavierius* , and the next was brought to *Goa* with great solemnity.

8. At *Constantinople* *Pirbec's* Head was cut off, for going beyond the Commission he received from the Turk , notwithstanding he made him a Present of all the Riches he carried. At the same time *Moradobec* set out by that Prince's Order with fifteen Gallies , to prevent the harm the Portugueses might do in revenge for what they had received. *Moradobec* was the Captain that lost *Catifa* , and desired to recover his Reputation. On the Coast of *Persia*, *D. James de Noronha* met him with his Fleet. They saluted one another with showers of Bullets and Arrows. In the height of the Engagement the Wind calming , left our Gallies without

without motion. That of *Gonzalo Pereyra Marramaque* was far distant from the rest. The Turk laying hold of this opportunity besets him with his Gallies, tears all his Rigging and pierces him in a thousand places. However *Pereyra* stood firm, and did much Execution among the Enemies, but receives more harm; for almost all that was above Water of the Galleon was torn in pieces. The Gentlemen, Souldiers and Seamen fought with incredible Courage, and appeared wherever there was occasion, though weakned with several Wounds.

9. The Captain was always where the greatest danger threatned, and the Turks never durst board him. Our Admiral raved that he could not relieve and share with him in that Honour, and after making his Vows to Heaven, without being heard, even railed at Providence, stamped and tore his Beard for madness. He sent some Boats, but they could not reach the Galleon, because the Gallies compassed it round. Towards Night the Wind began to freshen, and the Admiral to move. The Turk not daring expect him, retired. The Admiral came up to the Galleon, admired the Bravery; but scarce knew the Men, they were so disguised with Wounds, Blood and the Smoot of the Powder. He embraced every one, and bestowed due Praises on them.

10. *Pereyra*



10. *Pereyra* his Galleon and Men were not in a condition to proceed, so they were sent to *Ormuz*, with some Barques. The Admiral pursued the Galleys, which kept close in with the Shoar. Our light Vessels forced a Ship that had been taken by *Pirbec* to run aground; the Men leaped Over-board to save themselves and were killed. The Ship was taken and brought off, and our Admiral returned to *Ormuz*, having in vain endeavoured to overtake *Moradobec*, who run up the *Euphrates*, where there was not Water for our Galleons. At this time arrived in *Goa* only one Ship from *Portugal*; four set out thence, one of them was forced back, the other two came later. In the first Ship went our admirable Poet *Luis Camoens*, to try if he could advance his Fortune by the Sword, which had been so little favourable by the Pen.

11. Now comes the King of *Cota's* Revenge (as was promised before) for those Wrongs done him by the Portugueses. One of the Orders *Fernandalvarex Cabral*, Captain of the Ship newly come from *Portugal*, carried, was, *That all that had been exacted from that King, should be restored*; Which, though slowly, was executed. Another, *That Bernardin de Sousa should be Imprisoned for what he had done at the Maluco's*: He was Imprisoned, but not long. And another, *That the Vice-Roy should no way employ D. James de Almeйда Commander of Diu*; for that the King had struck him out of his Books, never to be received into Service: This also was put in execu-

execution. *Almeyda's Crime* was, *That he had seemed to undervalue the Kings Favour, refusing some Grace offered him.* The Vice-Roy was concerned, that the differences between the Kings of *Pimienta* and *Cochin* grew daily greater. Towards the End of *November*, the Vice-Roy sailed with a good Fleet to assist the latter, who was our Friend. He was met at Sea by *D. James de Noronha* and his Fleet, with whom came *Gonçalo Pereyra Marramaque*, who was received with much Joy, for his great Bravery in the late Action with the Turks. It was agreed, after some Consultation, to land in the Islands called *Alagada's*, belonging to the King of *Pimienta*. The Natives in crowds opposed our Men landing with showers of Arrows; but the Cannon made way. After a vigorous Resistance all was destroyed with Fire and Sword; only one Man was lost on our side.

12. *Gomes de Silva* was left to prosecute the War, which he did so successfully that the King sued for Peace, which was concluded to our advantage, and he was satisfied with the restitution of the Islands, his Wife, and the People taken in them. The Vice-Roy dispatched the Ships for *Portugal*. That of *Ferdinand Alvarez Cabral* was Cast away at *Aguada de S. Blas*; some of the Men got ashore in Boats. After a tedious Journey by Land, *Cabral* and *D. Alvaro de Noronha*, with his Family, were drowned in a River. The Vice-Roy sent his Son *D. Ferdinand*, with a good Fleet to the *Red-Sea*. He attempted

tempted to gain the Fort of *Dofar*, but was repulſed with loſs of ſeven or eight Men; ſo he returned without any effect.

14. At *Diu* aroſe New Troubles on account of the death of the King *Sultan Manaud*. He was bred with Poiſon (like *Mitbridates*,) that none might hurt him. When his Women were near their time, he opened them to take out the Children. He was one day hunting a Deer with ſome of them, and falling off from his Horſe hung by the Stirrup; the Horſe dragged him, and one of the Women running cut the Girts with a Cimiter; in requital he killed her, ſaying, *A Woman of ſuch courage, had enough to kill him.* A Page, in whom he had great confidence, murdered him; for Tyrants always dye by the hands of thoſe they truſt. A Child, accounted his Son, ſucceeded him. The Nobility offended at the Inſolence of *Madre Maluco*, who with the Title of Governor managed the Affairs of the Crown, rebelled in ſeveral parts. One of theſe was *Abixcan* at *Diu*, who ſuffering his Men to Affront ours, obliged *D. James de Almeyda* to enter the City with Five hundred Men, killing a great number, and plundering their Houſes. *Abixcan*, though late, ſaw his Error, and came to Composition; and was afterwards more ſubmiſſive than had been at firſt deſired of him.

14. *D. James de Noronha* succeeded *Almeida* in that Post, in pursuance of the Kings Order before-mentioned. The Moors forgetting their Fault, and the Punishment they had incurred, relapsed again. *Noronha* with Six hundred Men so refreshed their Memories, that they abandoned the City. *Cide Elal*, who Commanded in the Castle that was in the City, offered to defend himself; but seeing our Men begin to scale it, submitted to march away without Arms. The Castle was demolished. Scarce was it done, when *Abixcan* appeared with Four hundred Men. *Ferdinand de Castanoso* advanced to meet him with One hundred and twenty; but Three hundred of the Enemies Horse obliged him to retire in such disorder, that on a sudden he found he had but seventeen Men left. He posted himself where the Horse could not come, and the Three hundred Enemies dismounting beset the 18, who back to back defended themselves till they were all killed, their Hearts cut out, and carried to the General.

15. *D. James de Norona* marched on with the rest of the Men, ignorant of what had happened; but so impatient to engage with *Abixcan*, that he could no way be dissuaded from pressing forward. Meeting the Three hundred Horse, he fell on furiously and put them to flight; but *Abixcan* coming on with his Cannon, *D. James* was forced to retire, rather losing than gaining Reputation in this Action. Common Conveniency brought them to an Accommodation. *Noronha* this day



day lost by his Rashness, what he often deserved for his Valour; for the Factor endeavouring to stop his fury, and saying to him, *He ought to consider the King's Fort would be lost.* He Answered in a Passion, *No matter, when I am gone, all is gone.* This saying was remembred when he was in election to be Vice-Roy of *India*, and deprived him of that Post; because it was thought, so great a Trust could not with safety be reposed upon so rash a Man.

16. The Great Turk hearing *Miradobec* was come off worse than the Unfortunate *Pirbec*, and *Alecbelubij* making great boast of what he would do, gave him the Command of fifteen Galleys. *D. Ferdinand*, who was come out of the *Red-Sea*, went after them. On the 25th of *August* he had fight of them near *Mascate*. *Alecbelubij* not daring to give Battle, endeavoured to get off with all his Galleys; but six of them could not escape, being taken by our Caravels.

17. *D. Ferdinand* put into *Mascate*, refitted the Galleys, bought the Slaves, and appointed them Captains. *Alecbelubij* pursued by some of our Vessels was drove into *Swatt* with seven of his nine Galleys, and there shut up by *D. Hierome de Castello Branco*, *Nuno de Castro* and *D. Emanuel Mascarenhas*. The other two were pursued by *D. Ferdinand de Monroy* and *Antony Valadares*, till they were beaten to pieces on the Coast of *Damam* and *Daru*.

18. But

18. But because one is coming to succeed our Vice-Roy, let us say somewhat of him. He was modest, easie, and not active, which was the Cause his Government answered not expectation. As to his Person, he was of a middle Stature, a graceful Countenance and agreeable Behaviour; his Complexion swarthy; his Hair black. In the number of *Vice-Roys* he was the 5<sup>th</sup>, in that of *Governours* the 17<sup>th</sup>, and held it four years, the second of the Name and Sirname.

---

## C H A P. XI.

*The Government of the Vice-Roy D. Peter de Mascarenhas, from the Year 1554 till 1555, King JOHN the Third still Reigning.*

1554. 1. **D**On Peter de Mascarenhas was of one of the best Families of Portugal, and had born the most considerable Offices in the Kingdom, and was 70 years of Age when named Vice-Roy of India. He set out of Lisbon with six Ships, one of them was drove back, and that in which he went, as soon as he Landed at Goa, sunk downright. In these Ships were Two thousand Landmen. The first thing the Vice-Roy did, he

he appointed his Nephew *Ferdinand Martinez*, Admiral, to the great dissatisfaction of all Men. *Martinez* had 32 Sail given him, and Orders to bring to *Goa* the 7 Turkish Gallies that were blocked up at *Suratt*. *Caraçen*, Commander of that place, would not permit it, and gave good sufficient Reasons for his refusing; so by consent of both sides they were taken to pieces, and the Turks fled into the Woods and Mountains: The late Vice-Roy *D. Alfonso de Noronha* now sailed home with the Trading Ships; whereof that Commanded by *Belchior de Sousa* was lost, with all the Men.

2. The Great Turk (as it were) foreseeing the Fate of *Alecbelubij*, immediately sent after him *Zafar*, a Janizary, to take upon him the Command of the Gallies: But too late; for he only came time enough to hear the News of their Destruction. He took four Merchant Ships of ours bound for *Ormuz*, and returned rich to *Suez*. About the same time *Gemes de Silva* took several Prizes in the Sea of *Calicut*.

3. The Vice-Roy sent *F. Gonçalo Rodrigues*, and *Bro. Fulgentius Freyre*, of the Society of *Jesus*, to persuade the Emperour of *Ethiopia*, to redress the Abuses introduced among his People in Matters of Religion, and with them went *James Diaz*, well versed in the Affairs of that Empire. The Emperour could not be moved to admit our manner of Baptism, and abolish Circumcision; the Priest continued at his Court, but to no effect. In February set out *Emanuel de Vasconcelos*

*concelos* with three Galleons, and five small Vessels, to discover what *Zafar* was doing at *Suez*. He spent some time under Mount *Felix*, and returned without doing any thing. With him went the Famous *Luis de Camoens*, who finding no employment for his Sword, exercised his Pen.

4. Some great Subjects of *Hidalcan* at this time, Treated with the Vice-Roy about making *Mealecan*, who had lived long at *Goa*, King of *Visapor*; and assisting to support him in that Title. In Return, they offered to make over to the Crown of *Portugal* the Lands of *Concan*, worth a Million of yearly Revenue. A great Bait for our Avarice. The Profit was considered, but not the Difficulties, and *Peter de Faria* his Advice to *Martin Alfonso* on the same occasion was now forgot. We shall see in its place, how much more proper it had been to consider the Difficulties, than the Profit. The Offer was admitted, and *Meale* immediately Proclaimed King of *Visapor*; and his Wife and Children left at *Goa* as Hostages for the performance of our Hopes. Three thousand Portugues Foot, and Two hundred Horse, marched with a Body of the Natives of the Island. After a small Resistance they took the Fort of *Ponda*, and sent Advice to the Vice-Roy, who set out with the New King, and at *Ponda* delivered him to his People that there waited for him. He left *D. Antony de Norona* to Command the Fort with 600 Men.

5. The



5. The Vice-Roy returned so sick to Goa, that he died in a few days; and it was believed if he had continued in that Government some years, he had re-established Truth, Justice and Honesty in *India*. It is a mark of his Justice, That he gave no Employment to any of his Servants; because he would not deprive them of it to whom it was due by Merit. A Friend of a Court-Favourite, complaining he did not dispatch him after serving Three years; He Answered, *I am now busie about those that have served twenty, fifteen, ten or five years; as soon as I come to those that have served three, I promise I'll remember you.*

6. D. Peter Mascarenas had such an awful Presence and majestick Deportment, that no Body before him durst do or say any thing undecent. He is famous on six several accounts, any one whereof might give another a Name after death: He was a Valiant Souldier, a Wise Commander, a Magnificent Embassadour, a Singular Tutor, a Just Vice-Roy, and what is best of all, a very Good Christian. He was Tall, and though lean, Graceful; his Complexion brown: His Gravity no ways made him intractable. Of Vice-Roys he was the 6<sup>th</sup>, of Governours the 18<sup>th</sup>; held it ten Months, and was the second of the Name and Sirname. He is Buried in the Church of *Alcazar do Sal*, where he had built a Tomb worthy of him.

## C H A P. XII.

*The Government of Francis Barreto, from the Year 1555, till 1558, in the Reign of King JOHN the Third.*

1. **F**Francis Barreto succeeded D. Peter Mascarenas with the Title of Governour. He was a Gentleman of Merit, and qualified for this Post, and had gained much Esteem, being Commander of *Bazaim*. His Government began with a Fire kindled by a Squib, which burnt Ten the finest Vessels in *India*, notwithstanding he used the utmost diligence, and promised great Rewards to save them: Yet this Care saved the rest of the Fleet. He soon repaired this Damage, building others no less beautiful.

2. He went to *Ponda*, to carry on what his Predecessor had began, by Installing *Mealeacan* King, and appointed Officers to receive the Revenues about *Ponda*, leaving D. Ferdinand de Monroy in that Fort, and sending D. Antony de Noronha, who had it before, to receive the Revenues at *Concam*. *Xacolim* Aga, who was gathering the same for *Hidalcan*, with Seven thousand Men prevented him. The Governour sent a supply of Ammunition to *Noronha*, which he no sooner received, but he marched to *Curell*,  
of

of which he took possession, (the Commander of it being fled) and with Kindness attracted the Natives to come and inhabit the Town and Country, leaving Portugues Officers to look to the Revenue. Then hearing that *Xacolim* continued gathering the Rents, he went to find him. By the way he met two Ships, in which was *Xacolim's* Wife, Children, and Goods of Value, which he fearful of some danger sent to *Cambaya*. *Noronha* easily made himself Master of all.

3. Not far from *Achava* he halted, and designed to pass the Night. *Xacolim* sent a Thousand Men to surprize ours; but they were upon their Guard, and *D. John* the *Morisco* falling upon them killed Seventy, and put the rest to flight; after the Pursuit he returned to *D. Antony*. They marched together to meet *Xacolim*, who was drawn up in good Order on the other side of a River. After a vigorous opposition our Men forded it, and there ensued a bloody Battle, in which *D. Antony* and *Xacolim* met, and having tryed each other parted. In this Action were lost 24 Portugueses, above 1000 of the Enemy were slain, the rest fled. Our Men proceeding, gathered the Revenue.

4. Mean while *Meale* was solemnly Proclaimed King at *Visapor*. He enjoyed it not long; for there were some of those who set him up, that designed to betray him to *Hidalcán*, who offered great Rewards for him. He succeeded not this way; but did,

purchasing Fifteen thousand Men of the King of *Bisnagar*, that were so successful, they killed the Chief of those had made *Meale* King, and took him Prisoner. *Hidalcan* immediately sent Forces to recover the Lands where *D. Antony* was employed. The Governour hearing of it sent him Orders to withdraw, as also to *Ferdinand de Monrey*, who was at *Ponda*. They unwillingly obeyed, remembring how prudently *Peter de Faria* had before dissuaded this Undertaking.

5. This year sailed from *Lisbon* five Ships, one of them was Cast-away at the Island *Tercera*, and another at the Islands beyond *Madagascar*. The Captain of this last left about Four hundred of his Men on that Shoar, and in his Long-Boat got to *Goa*. These Four hundred who were left, built a small Vessel and arrived at *Cochim*. In the other Ships went the Bishop *D. Belchior Carnero*, a Jesuit, and some other Religious Men, sent by the Pope to the Emperour of *Ethiopia*. *D. Alvaro de Silveyra* was now made Admiral of a Fleet of 21 Sail, provided for the Sea of *Calicut*, and against the Queen of *Olala*, who refused to pay her Tribute. He over-run all those Coasts with Fire and Sword, destroying many Towns and Ships, and all things that stood in the way; particularly the City *Mangalor*, and a sumptuous Pagod. *Zamori* sensible of his Losses, desired Peace, which was concluded. *Silveyra* returned Victorious.

6. Let



6. Let us return to *Ceylon*. *Tribuli Pandar* having made his Escape (as was related) out of Prison, fled to *Balande*. *Madune* subtilly exasperates him against the Portugueses, and sent him Six hundred Chingala's, with whom and his other Men he was so successful, that he reduced the Towns of *Paneture*, *Caleture*, *Maça*, *Berberi*, *Gale* and *Beligam*, to the last Extremities, destroying our Churches, and killing many Christians, Converted by the Religious of *St. Francis*, who first Preached there. Now comes *Alfonso Pereyra de Lacerda* to take upon him this Command: *Madune*, who before had assisted *Pandar*, now offers to aid *Lacerda* against him. He accepts the Offer. The King sent his Son *Raju* by the way of *Caleture* with an Army. *Lacerda* sent *Ruy Pereyra* with Two hundred Men, and *Antony de Spinola* with One hundred two other ways to assault the City *Palandu*, where *Tribuli* was. They beset the Town at one time, and after a vigorous Resistance the Portugueses entred it; the King fled, his Wife was taken, and many of his Men killed. The Portugueses returned Victorious, and *Madune* obtained one of the Ends he had proposed to himself, which were either, That the Portugueses should destroy *Pandar*, or he them.

7. The beginning of this Year failed 1556. *John Peixoto* with two Gallies for the Red-Sea, to discover what was doing at *Suez*. He found all quiet, and being loath to return without doing something, he Landed

before Day in the Island *Suanquem*, with the King whereof we were at Variance. In being a dead time of Night, he found all asleep, and might say (as a Prince who killed a Man that was sleeping) that he left those Islanders as he found them; for many were killed before they awaked, others after. The same fate befell the King in his Palace. *Peixoto* returned to his Gallies, carrying Slaves and Boory without receiving the least damage. Next day, keeping along the Coast he destroyed several Towns, and returned to Goa, having purchased as much Honour with two small Vessels, as others with many. He brought away *F. Gonçalo Rodriguez*, whom he found at *Arquico*, much dissatisfied that he had not prevailed with the Emperour of *Ethiopia*, to admit of the Rites of the Church.

8. The King of *Bafora*, oppressed by the Turks, made now the same Offers to the Governour, he had done before to the Vice-Roy *D. Alfonso de Noronha*, in case he would assist him to throw off the Turkish Yoke. The Conditions were admitted, and neither this time did it succeed; for *D. Alvaro de Silveira* going upon this Design with twenty Sail, met not with the success he had the year before against the *Malabars*. A terrible Storm so disabled him in that Port, that he was not in a condition to attempt any thing a second time. *Michael Rodriguez Coutino* prospered better, going to the Lands of *Salsete* and *Bardes* against some Parties of *Hidalcan*, who sought Revenge  
for

for our favouring *Meale*. All the Sea-Ports were destroyed with Fire and Sword, and many Ships perished. He killed and took many Prisoners, and returned with Honour and Riches to *Goa*. The chief of the Booty was a great Ship of *Meca*, taken at *Dabul* after a sharp engagement; for there were Two hundred Moors in her, who killed eight of our Men.

9. This Misfortune the more enraged *Hidalcan*; and to mend it, he sends a numerous Army into those same Lands. The Governour set out with a strong Body to oppose him. The War lasted all the Winter, without any Action worthy relating. In September arrived four Ships from *Portugal*; in them went *Ferdinand de Sousa* and *Castellobranco*, Embassadour to the Emperour of *Ethiopia*, and *F. John Nunes Barreto*, Patriarch of that stubborn People. His Companion was the Bishop *Andrew da Oviedo*, who did nothing, because the Emperour could not be reduced to change his Old Rites. With these came to *India* *F. Gonçalo de Sileyra*, to be Provincial; he afterwards received the Crown of Martyrdom in *Monomotapa*. All this shall be related in its proper place.

10. The Governour set out to Visit our Forts in the North, with a Fleet consisting of One hundred and fifty Sail of all sorts. He gained the Mountain and Fort *Azarim* for a small purchase, by the means of *Cose Mahomet*, a Trusty Moor, living at *Bazaim*. This Mountain is not far from the City,

and rises very upright for the space of a League; a little below the Top it is girt with a sort of Border standing out, which renders it almost inaccessible, the rest being very difficult of ascent. It is kept by Three-score Men, who need no other Arms to defend them but the Stones that lye there, which rolled down the Passes, must carry before them all that is in the way. The Garrison lives upon the Top, which is plain and almost round. They light themselves with sticks of Wood that grow there, and burns like a Torch, with that odds, that they cannot be quenched by Wind or Water.

11. *Antony Moniz Barreto* was sent to take possession of this place; he left there a Captain and 60 Portugueses, and went on to take the Fort of *Manora*, not far distant, which the Inhabitants abandoned; he left there *George Manbans* with 120 Men, and returned to *Baxaim*, where he found the Governour receiving an Embassy from the King of *Cinde*, who desired Succour against a Tyrant that infested him. We were desirous of this Prince's Friendship, and thought fit to purchase it by Relieving him. Seven hundred Men were sent to him in Twenty eight Vessels, all Commanded by *Peter Barreto Rolim*.

12. The Fleet arrived safe at *Tatá*, the Court of the King of *Cinde*. The Prince, who was there, visited *Barreto*, and sent word of his Arrival to his Father, who was absent in the Field: He Answered, desiring  
our



our Commander to wait till he Advised what was fit to be done. *Barreto* stayed, and soon after hearing the King was agreed with his Enemy without giving him notice; he asked of the Prince leave to depart, and that he would pay the Charge of the Fleet, as was promised by the Embassadour. The Answer was so little to satisfaction, that *Barreto* landed his Men, entred the City, and in the Fury killed above Eight thousand Persons, and destroyed by Fire the value of above two Millions of Gold, after loading the Vessels with one of the richest Booties that had been taken in *Asia*. He lost not one Man in this Action. He spent eight days, destroying all on both sides *Indus*. The Fort of *Bandel* made some Resistance, but being taken was demolished.

13. *Gaspar de Monterroyo*, a Souldier of Note, going accidentally into a Wood, met some Blacks, who bid him go no farther; for hard-by there was a Serpent had just then devoured a Bullock. He desiring to see such a Monster as they described, went on till he discovered the Head, which was of a wonderful bigness; and not satisfied, came so near as to touch it with the Point of his Sword, and the Monster lifted up its Head; and he gave it such a fortunate stroak on a soft place, that it soon after died. It was thirty Foot long, and proportionable in bigness. *Barreto* returned thus Victorious over Men and Monsters to *Cbaul*. There he found Orders to go to *Dabul*, where he would find *Antony Pereyra Brandavi*

*dam* Admiral of that Coast. They were to joyn in order to destroy that City in part of Revenge, for the damage *Hidalcan* did us. Being joyned they attacked the City, and though vigorously defended, it was taken, and wholly reduced to a heap of Rubbish. Then they did the same to all the Villages upon the shoar of that River.

---

### C H A P. XIII.

#### *The End of the Government of Francis Barreto.*

1557. **H**idalcan's General, *Nazer Maluco*, entered the Lands of *Salsese* and *Bardes* with 2000 Horse, and 18000 Foot. The Governour with 3000 Portugueses, 1000 Canara's, and 200 Horse, met him in the Fields of *Ponda*, having there but 17000 Men, and a Mountain on his back. He furiously attacked, put him to flight, and returned victorious to *Goa*. *D. Peter de Meneses*, who Commanded the Fort of *Rachal*, did what he could, which was not much, because the Enemy was too numerous. *John Peixoto* vigorously opposed *Moratecan* in the Lands of *Bardes*. A Renegado Portugues, who had fortified himself, doing him much harm, he assaulted and routed him twice, killing 200 of his Men,

Men, and a Captain. *Nazer Maluco* intrenched himself again at *Ponda*.

2. Five Ships arrived now from *Portugal*, three of them were Cast-away in their Return home; one at *Tierra del Natal*, another at the Island *St.Thomas*, and the third at *Madagascar*. The arrival of these Ships, and some damage we had done *Hidalcas*, obliged him to conclude a Peace, which we sued for, yet was not dishonourable.

3. *D.Duarte Deça*, Commander of *Ternate*, was not idle. He was harsh and covetous, so easily falling out with the King, he Unchristian-like Imprisoned him, his Mother and Brother *Cachil Guzarate*, using them very unworthily, and to compleat his Cruelty, ordered they should have nothing to eat. Publick Complaints obliged him to consent the Hospital of *Misericordia* should maintain them; and his desire of killing them made him so base as to poison their Water, which was discovered by a Stone the King had in a Ring. The *Ternatenes* took Arms, and called in the *Tidores*, so that the Fort was in great danger.

4. *D.Duarte* having received Relief, ventured to fight at Sea with as good success, as if Justice had been on his side: But the Portugueses themselves no longer able to endure his Obstinacy, put him into Custody, and discharged the Prisoners, which put an end to that Discord. No Man would take upon him the Command of the Fort, till *Antony Pereyra Brandam* was forced by the People to accept of it in Trust, till the Governour disposed

disposed of it. Whilst some Portugueses in the *Maluco's*, by their Actions, appeared most barbarous Heathens, some Infidels became Christians; a thing to be admired, having such ill Examples before them. The King of the Island *Bacham* was converted by *F. Antony Vaz*, a Jesuit.

5. The War continued at *Goa*. A Moor with Five hundred Men waded over the Ford of *Zacorla*, in the Island *Choram*, and surprizing those few Portugueses that were in it, gained some advantage, till others coming in from several Parts, drove them headlong into the Water, where many of them were drowned. The Governour hearing of this, marched to their Relief, and sent before *George Mendoca*, Commander of the City, with some Gentlemen, who behaved themselves well, and brought many Heads of Moors to the Governour. All was kept quiet afterwards by *D. Francis Mascarenhas*, who was left in the Island with 300 Men.

6. The Governour desiring to secure the Promontory of *Chaul*, asked leave of the King *Nizamuxa* to fortifie it. He not only refused it, but secured the Messenger, and sent 30000 Men, who began to build an impregnable Fort there. The Governour sent *Alvaro Perez de Sotomayor* with some Ships, to keep the Mouth of the Port till he came, which was soon after. He brought 4000 Portugueses, besides Natives. The Enemy better advised, proposed a Peace, which was concluded to our content, on Condition



Condition the Work of the Fort should not advance. The Governour returned home. A Miracle was seen here, which was, That the Moors could never cut down, or remove with force of Elephants, a small Wooden Cross, that was fixed upon a Stone.

7. The Governour having settled Affairs at *Goa*, was wholly employed in fitting out a mighty Fleet against the King of *Achem*, who is the only Terrour of *Maiaca*. In a few Months he provided 25 Galleons, 10 Gallies, and 80 Galliot, all so well furnished, it renewed the hopes of fixing our Empire in *India*. But all this Industry falls to nothing; for now a new Governour comes, and the New ones never prosecute the designs of the Old. However this Force was well employed, though not as our Governour designed.

8. *Francis Barreto* brought to *Lisbon* a Jewel wrought by the hand of Nature. A Portugues Souldier on the Coast of the Island *Ceylon*, met a *Jogue* (that is, a sort of Penitent Heathen,) who among other things had picked up a brown Pebble, of the shape and bigness of an Egg, on which were represented the Heavens in several Colours, and in the midst of them the Image of our Blessed Lady with our Saviour in her Arms. The Souldier gave him some small thing for this Stone; and afterwards it came to the hands of *Francis Barreto*, who presented it to *Queen Catherine*, and by virtue of it God wrought several Miracles in *India* and *Portugal*.

9. *Francis*

9. *Francis Barreto* was a couragious , discreet and generous Gentleman , and such a Governour as *India* now mourns for. He afterwards returned as Governour and Conquerour of the Empire of *Monomotapa*, where he died , as shall be seen in its proper place. He had a stately Presence, his Complexion tawny, and black Hair. He Governed three years, was the 19<sup>th</sup> Governour, and second of the Name.

---

#### C H A P. XIV.

*The Government of the Vice-Roy D. Constantine de Braganza , from the Year 1558, till 1561, in the Reign of King SEBASTIAN.*

1558. 1. **A**Bout the End of the Government of *Francis Barreto*, died King *John the Third*. In him ended the good Fortune of *Portugal*, as did that of *India* in the Vice-Roy sent thither , after his death , by those who managed the State during the Minority of King *Sebastian*. *D. Constantine*, Brother to *Theodosius*, Duke of *Bragança*, was 30 years of Age when he accepted this Charge. What he wanted in Age for so great an Employ , was made up by being of the Blood Royal, and by his great Parts and natural Endowments.

2. He

2. He sailed from *Lisbon* on the 7<sup>th</sup> of *April*, with four Ships and two Thousand Men, and arrived at *Goa* about the beginning of *September*. Three things remarkable happened in his Voyage and at his Arrival; the first, that he had not the least bad Weather in his Passage; the second, the great demonstrations of Joy wherewith he was received; and the third, that he no way affronted the Governour that went off, as was always used in *India*.

3. Our Vice-Roy commenced as usual, by sending Commanders to Forts. *D. Payo de Neronha* went to *Canawor*, and by his Ingratitude in receiving some Presents sent by that King (though not with sincere meaning) gave occasion to his resentment, signified by not suffering the Portugueses to resort to the City. The Vice-Roy sent fourteen Sail to their assistance, and gave the Command of them to *Luis de Melo de Silva*. The Vice-Roy was bent upon possessing himself of the Town of *Damam*, a place of consequence, to secure the Lands of *Baqaim*, and whereof *Francis Barreto* had obtained a Grant from the King of *Cambaya*. The difficulty lay in wresting it out of the hands of *Cide Bofata*, who was in Rebellion against his Prince, which was the chief Motive why he so freely gave what he could not get for himself. *Bofata* was well provided, and with a Resolution not to sell the place at an easie rate. The Vice-Roy having held a Council about it, the result was, he should go thither in person.

4. He

4. He first dispatched the Trading Ships for *Portugal*, in which went his Predecessor; the Ships were seven, and only three of them came to *Lisbon*. One was lost at the Island *St. Thomas*: Two were forced back to *Mozambique*, in one of which was the late Governour *Francis Barreto*: The Captain of a fourth finding her sinking, got into a Long-Boat with 60 Men, and came to *Goa*, the rest of the Men all perished. *Francis Barreto*, at *Mozambique*, spent 20000 Ducats of his own in refitting the two Ships. They set out again, and being in distress, the other Ship ungratefully forsook him; yet he afterwards seeing her perishing saved all the Men, so that he had 1137 Persons aboard. In this condition, not able to go forward, he almost miraculously returned again to *Mozambique*. This year ended with the Foundation of that Fort, and return of *Barreto* to *Goa*.

5. *Luis de Melo*, at *Cananor*, being assaulted in his Trenches by 3000 Moors, put them to shameful flight; and while he sent for Succours to the Vice-Roy, followed Fortune that now seemed to Favour him. Mean while the Vice-Roy set out with the Fleet, had been fitted out by *Barreto*, having increased it to 100 Sail.

6. The Vice-Roy arriving at *Damam*, sent *D. James de Noronha* to take a view of the Works; he found them strong, and defended by 4000 Men. Notwithstanding all this Preparation, no sooner our Men landed but the Enemy fled, abandoning both City and Fort. The Vice-Roy entred, and giving  
Thanks



Thanks to Almighty God for this Bloodless Victory, blessed the Mosque under the Invocation of the Purification of the Blessed Virgin, on which day it was taken.

7. The Enemy, after their flight, encamped at *Parnel*, two Leagues off, and thence with 2000 Horse infested the Vice-Roy. *Antony Moniz Barreto* offered with 500 Men to remove them. He marched all Night towards the Enemy, and being come up with them, found that he had but 120 Men, the rest wandering in the dark through unknown ways; yet thus he attacks and puts them to flight, as believing the Vice Roy was there with his whole Force. The Morning discovering from how small a number they had fled, *Bofata* and his Men come down from a Hill, whither they had retired, and falling upon *Barreto* pressed him hard, till those that were scattered coming up, he again routed the Enemy, killing 500 of them. In their Camp were found 36 good Pieces of Cannon, some Cart Loads of Copper-Mony, and other Plunder.

8. The Vice-Roy with Liberality and good Usage attracted the Country People, who were fled for fear; and confirmed to the Neighbouring King of *Sargeta* the Duties he had in *Damam*. For the more security he resolved to possess himself of the Island *Balzar*, not far distant. He intended to go thither in Person, but sent before *D. Peter de Almeyda* with 150 Horse, and as many Foot. The People of *Balzar* abandoned the Town, which *D. Peter* entred, and the Vice-Roy  
O being

being come, left *Alvaro Gonzales Pinto* to Command there with 120 Men, and some Cannon. Being returned to *Damam*, he sent *D. Alvaro de Silveyra* with 20 Sail to the *Red-Sea*, being informed *Casar* was fitting out his Gallies. This Fleet was disperfed by Storms, and put into several Ports of *India*, without effecting any thing.

9. *D. James de Noronha* was appointed Commander of *Damam*, and had 1200 Men given him under five Captains, who were to keep Tables for them. Tables are kept in *India* for fuch as have not any thing of their own; or if they have, yet will accept of this Liberality. I admire there are men that will stoop to receive this, but much more there are any that give it; for the same Men when they come to *Spain*, have not the Heart to give a stick of Wax, which there is worth nothing, and here a Half-peny. The Vice-Roy after this success returned to *Goa*.

10. In the City *St. Thomas*, or *Meliapor*, a Portugues, one of those who more religiously worship their Interest, than the Heathens their Idols, and of those there are many in *India*; persuaded *Rama Rajo*; King of *Bisnagar*, to march against the City, telling him the Plunder would be worth two Millions, and it would be a great Service to the Idols he worshipped, which were there thrown down by the Christians. He was a good Christian, that was so zealous for Idols. The King hearkning to the hopes of Gain, set out with 500000 Men. *Pate*  
di

*de Ataide* encouraged the Inhabitants to defend themselves; but they, to palliate their Fear said, *It was but Reason the King should be admitted to what was his own.* *Ataide* went away to *Goa*; the Townsmen prepared for the reception of the King, and sent him a Present of 4000 Ducats, where-with he was somewhat appeased. He Encamped and would not enter the City; but ordered all the Inhabitants of both Sexes, and all Ages, and all their Goods, to be brought to his presence. Which being performed, he found the whole Value did not exceed 80000 Ducats. Enraged at the Wickedness of the Informer, he ordered him to be thrown to the Elephants, who tore him to pieces. He discharged the Citizens, and restored all their Goods so punctually, that only a Silver Spoon being missing among them all, it was sought and restored.

11. *Luis de Melo de Silva*, who sailed last year for the Coast of *Malabar*, did much harm there, and ruined the Trade of the Moors. At *Mangalor* he ordered two Captains to bring him a Vessel belonging to our Enemies of *Cananor*, that was in the River, but the Owners and some of the Townsmen coming to defend it, our Men were worsted. *Melo* enraged hereat assaulted the Town, and put all Living Creatures to the Sword; then fired it. An old Moor leading a Company of the Inhabitants that fled, with a Dagger in his hand met our Commander, and struck him through the Arm.

He laying hold of his long Hair, delivered him to those that were near, saying, *Take away that Devil.* He had scarce said it, when the Moor was cut in pieces. *Melo* having burnt the City with loss of some few Men, returned to his Ships.

12. Thirteen Ships of *Calicut* and *Cananor* were coming up to attack *Melo*; but he went out to meet them with only seven. He was formost in his Galliot, and the Admiral of *Calicut*, a Turk, advanced before the rest to meet him. As soon as they came within Cannon-shot, our Gunner made one so fortunate, it swept him from Stem to Stern, and in a Minute the Keel of the Ship appeared above Water, all the Men perishing. Three other Ships board the Galliot, and kill many of the Men; but *Melo* stepping forward, not only cleared his own Deck, but pursued into the Ships, in which not one Man was left alive. Our other Vessels took the other three Ships of *Calicut*, so that not one of them escaped; and the Admiral of *Cananor* fled with his seven, having only stood by as a Witness of what the others did. The Enemy lost above 400 Men. For a long time after the People along that Coast would not eat Fish, because a man's Fingers were found in the Belly of one.

13. *Luis de Melo* went thus Victorious to *Goa*, and the Vice-Roy confined him; because he had done those Actions when his Presence was required at *Cananor*. His Confinement was censured, and the Vice-Roy being



being none of those that will obstinately persist in their Opinion, though it do never so much mischief; he went in person to be Friends with *Melo* at *Pangim*, where he was in Custody. *Melo* knowing well how to esteem such Favours from Superiours, was abundantly satisfied, and returned with his Fleet, by the Vice-Roy's Order, to *Cananor*, because *D. Payo de Noronha*, was in some distress there. *Emanuel de Vasconcelos* went to *Ternate* with three Ships, and other small Vessels.

14. *Luis de Melo* was the Life of *Noronha*: who was in great danger at *Cananor*, being threatned with a Siege by all the Princes of *Malabar* stirred up by *Ade Rajao*, not without some provocation given by *Noronha*. *Rajao* with 100000 Men attacks the Fort, and enters the Trenches. *Melo*, who was in them with 60 Men, flew about like Lightning; *Antony de Villena*, with Fifty, did Wonders among the Moors, who had entred his House. In fine, the whole number, which was 500 Men, did more than human Actions among that multitude of Enemies. It is said, *A Religious Man at his Prayers saw the Holy Ghost in the form of a Pigeon on a Beam of the Church, and shewed it to many others*. Our Men hearing of it fell on with new Vigour, and so effectually that they put the Enemy to flight, having killed 15000 of them. Of the Portugueses 25 were lost. The fight lasted 12 Hours. *Luis de Melo* played the part of a Souldier as well as Commander. *Francis Riscado*, a Man of ordinary Extra-  

O 3
ction,

tion, performed extraordinary acts of Valour. The Enemy went home admiring the Valour of our Men, and Peace was restored to *Cananor*.

15. It is strange, that among all the Churches erected in *India*, none till this time had been dedicated to its Apostle *St. Thomas*. Our Vice-Roy taking this into Consideration, began to build at *Goa* a sumptuous Church to him, which was not finished, because the time of his Government expired, and remains to this day as a heap of Ruins, none of his Successors having put his Hand to advance so good a Work.

## CHAP. XV.

*Continues the Government of the Vice-Roy D. Constantin, in the Reign of King SEBASTIAN.*

I. **A**T this time the Emperour of *Ethiopia* was much molested by the Turks and Moors, and obtained some Victories over them, having some Portugueses in his Service. Our Bishop could not work upon him to leave his Heretical Customs, and therefore resolved to leave him; but stayed at the Request of the Portugueses.

The

The Emperour being Invaded by the King of *Mallaſſays*, contrary to the Advice of the Portugueſes, marched to meet him, and they followed. He was ſlain by *Malaſſays*; and they ſeeing his Subjects fly, caſt themſelves among the Enemies, and after doing more than is credible, were moſt of them killed.

2. The Turk deſiring to poſſeſs himſelf of the *Arabian* Ports on the ſide next *Persia*, ſent this Year an Officer with two Gallies and ſeventy Barques, with 1200 Turks and Janizaries, againſt the Fort of *Babarem*. *Rax Morado*, a reſolute Commander, was in it, who provided the beſt he could, and ſent Advice of the danger he was in to the King of *Ormuz*, and *D. Antony de Noronba*, then Commanding that Fort. *D. John de Noronba* went to relieve him with ten Ships; he was near taking the Turkiſh Gallies, but miſſed for want of purſuing, and the next day they obliged him to take ſhelter in the Creeks along that Shoar. *D. Alvaro de Silveira* receiving Advice from *Ormuz*, came up, and joyning *D. John* took the Gallies. The Baſſa having loſt them, concluded he was alſo loſt, if he took not the Fort, and therefore preſſed on his Attacks. *Rax Morado* and *D. Alvaro* had a Meeting, and agreed it was not convenient to fight, but beſiege the Beſiegers; yet ſuch was the Inſolence of the Sou diers, that Mutinying they obliged them to give Battle. *Rax* joyned the Portugueſes with 300 *Persians*, well Armed, they attacked the Turks, who purpoſely (though with loſs) gave way, till they drew them to

an Ambush, which put them into disorder in spight of all *D. Alvaro* could do, till he fell by a Musquet-Ball that hit him in the Throat. The Portugueses fought desperately, some to defend, and others to bring him off, but to no purpose, for the Turks cut off his Head. Above 70 of our Men were killed, and several taken. *Rax Morado* retired with many to the Fort, after behaving himself in such manner as might be envied by the Portugueses. Thus was the rashness of those that were so hot for fighting punished.

3. *Peter Peixoto* succeeded in the Command of our Men, and following the Advice before despised, besieged the Island, and so streightned the Turks they sued for Mercy; whereby it appeared how great a Fault it was not to take this course at first. *D. Antony de Noronha* receiving Advice at *Ormuz* of our loss, presently set out to revenge it. The Siege continued, and in conclusion the Turks surrendred on Condition to return our Prisoners (they were about Thirty,) and deliver up their Cannon, Arms and Horses, and 10000 Ducats. They were to be carried to *Bağora*, but were so weak with Hunger and the Pettilential Fever, which about that time rages at *Babarem*, that only two hundred of them lived. Many of our Men died of the same Disease.

4. About the end of this Year arrived in *India* five Ships from *Portugal*; six sailed thence, but one was drove back. In them went *F. George* of *St. Lucy*, and *F. George Temudo*, the first was Bishop of *Malaca*, the latter



latter of *Cochim*, both Dignities new Created; for Queen *Catherine* seeing the See of *Goa* was over-burthened, had obtained of the Pope the Instituting these Bishopricks; but subordinate to *Goa*, as were to be all others that should be Instituted.

5. The Vice-Roy understanding the Enemy was fitting out Ships on the Coast of *Malabar*, where *Luis de Melo* was, sent to his Aid 17 Sail with 600 Men. *Melo* distributed them about the Mouths of the Rivers, and he himself ran along destroying the Towns and Woods. Seven strong Parao's, well manned and equipped, came down the River *Maim*, where *Gongalo Perez de Alvelos* was, firing their Cannon upon him, and he answering sunk one of them: But the Powder taking fire in one of our Ships, blew it up and all the Men in it; so the Enemy escaped. *Melo* continued the War this Year and the next with success, and utter desolation of all that Coast.

6. *Bofata*, not long since defeated, now marched towards our Fort of *Balzar* with 600 Horse, and a great Body of Foot. Our Commander *Alvaro Gonzalez Pinto* boldly meets him with 20 Horse, 100 Portugues Foot, and 500 Natives. The first Charge they killed 50 of the Enemy; but being overpowered by the Multitude were routed, the Captain and most of the Portugueses killed, and 150 of the Natives, the rest fled. *Bofata* immediately attacks the Fort, not at all doubting to carry it; but was vigorously opposed by the Valour of *Gomez de Silva*,

*Silva*, who though not born a Gentleman, in this Action shewed how Gentlemen are Created. The Enemy encamped, and *Silva* did great Execution on them, till *Tristan Van de Vega* came to his Relief, from *Damam*, with ten Vessels well furnished. In spite of all opposition he Landed and got into the Fort, and *Bofata* seeing no hopes of prevailing drew off. Not long after he returns, and our Commander *Alfonso Diaz Pereyra* meeting him in the Field, had the same success as *Pinto*, and was killed as well as he; all the difference was, that the Enemy now entered the Fort pell-mell with our Men; but *Vincent Carvalho* drove them again out headlong. *Calisto de Sequeyra* killed 20 with his own hand. They were quite spent with continual Fatigue when *Luis Alvarez de Tavora* brought Relief from *Damam*, at sight whereof the Enemy retired.

7. However, by the Vice-Roy's Order, the Fort was abandoned, and the Enemy returning razed it; then went on doing great harm in the Villages, till they came to *Tarapor*, where *Martin Lopez de Faria* was with 40 Men; they attacked his Works and were repulsed with such loss, that they desisted and went on. This Action cost *Lopez* his Life, being mortally wounded, whereof he died at *Damam*. *D. James de Noronha* marched after the Enemy, and found them in the Country of *Vaypim*, being 600 Horse and 1000 Foot; with him were 150 of the former, and 350 of the latter. He fell on with such Fury, that 60 of the Enemy fell the

the first Charge, and after a sharp Dispute they all fled, leaving him many Prisoners, their Women, Mony, Baggage, Horses, Arms and Ammunition, with which he returned triumphant to *Damam*, notwithstanding the Enemy rallying attacked him in the Rear; but at last fled to lament his Loss in the Woods, whilst it was celebrated in the Town.

8. *Christopher Pereyra Homem* sailing for *Ethiopia* with three Vessels, only to set ashore there *B. Fulgentius*, a Jesuit, sent by the Vice-Roy to the Bishop with some Church-stuff, near *Arquico* met *Casar* his four Gallies, and with difficulty escaped them. But the Admirals Galley coming up sometime after, the Fight could not be avoided, and *Pereyra* boarding her with 30 Men, the Turks who were 150 killed every Man of them. The other two Vessels leaving him in the danger got to *Goa*, where *Vincens Carvalho* and *Rock Pinbeyro* were put in Gaol for their Cowardize; for had they done their Duty, *Casar* had been taken.

1560.

9. *B. Fulgentius* was taken, and afterwards ransomed; the loss of him and what he carried, was lamented by the Portugueses in *Ethiopia*. *Adamas Sagad* succeeded the Emperour that died, and defeated many Rebels, in which Victory the Portugueses had a considerable share. The Turkish Bassa returning with a greater Power, defeated *Sagad* with the assistance of some Portugueses; for they can be Turks when they please. This was the cause that Emperour never after trusted them.

10. *Bisminaique*, Lord of the Pearl-Fishery, seeing those of *Punicale* would pay no greater acknowledgment than One days Fishing, resolved to right himself by force. He marched with 1000 Men, *Melrao* lead the Van, doing much harm. *D. Duarte de Meneses* after several Skirmishes killed him, and stopped the current of his Men, till the useles People, as Aged Men, Women and Children, with the best of their Goods, got off in a Ship, where they suffered much Hunger, and such Thirst that they drank their own Water. The Commander of the Fort, *Emanuel Rodrigues Coutinbo*, Charged a Body of those that *Melrao* had Commanded, and did good Execution; but *Bisminaique* coming up with his Army, *D. Duarte* was forced to retire to his Ship, and *Coutinbo* to another, where he was taken with all his Men, and after ransomed. The Enemy entered and plundered the Town.

11. Four Ships arrived now in *India*, of six that sailed from *Lisbon*: In them went the first Archbishop of *Goa*, and the first Inquisitors, sent to suppress the Jews. One of the six Ships was forced back to *Lisbon*. Another Commanded by *Ruy de Melo*, was drove to *Brasile*, and thence set out again so unsuccessfully, that she was lost beyond the Cape of *Good Hope*. The Men got ashore, and part of them Coasted along in the Long-Boat and two Barques they made, the rest marched along in sight of them, till they took three little Ships which held them all, and so went up a River in the King of  
Menan-



*Menanchabo's Country.* Their neglect, and the Beauty of *D.Francisca Sardina*, Wife to *James Pereyra de Vasconcelos*, gave courage and opportunity to those Barbarians to assault them, and steal her. They fell on our Men on a sudden and killed 60, carrying away this Portugues *Hellen* or *Proserpine*. The rest arrived in *India*.

12. The late Governour *Francis Barreto* put to Sea the third time, and arrived safe at *Lisbon* with *D. Luis Fernandez de Vasconcelos*, who had before lost his Ship. The Kings of *Cochim* and *Cananor* were now at War, and the Portugueses intermeddled not, because they were both Subjects to *Portugal*; in the end he of *Cochim* had the better. Those of *Cranganor* committing some Outrages, *John Pereyra* chastized and reduced them.

13. The Vice-Roy was now preparing to make War upon the King of *Jaschatapan*, and Lord of the Island *Manan*, because he persecuted the Christians, and had usurped that Crown from his Brother, who fled to *Goa*, and was Baptized by the Name of *Alfonso*. He Landed near the City *Jasnapatan* with 1200 Men, forcing the Prince to retire, who with 2000 opposed him. The Portugueses entred at a large Street in which were some Pieces of Cannon, which killed *N. Sardina*, Ensign to *Luis de Melo*. *John Pessoa* took up the Colours, and marched up to the Canon. *Luis de Melo* and *D.Philip de Meneses* were both Wounded.

14. The

14. The Vice Roy came on, and six or seven Men were killed about him. The Prince coming down another Street made some resistance, but to no effect. Night coming on the King retired to his Palace, and not thinking himself safe there, set fire to it and withdrew to a Fort a League off. Thus the Vice-Roy was left possessed of that beautiful City. He marched after the King, who thinking that Fort too weak, was fled farther off. *D. Constantin* took possession of it, and sent several parties to pursue the King, the first of them Commanded by *Luis de Melo*, the *Achilles* of those times. They pursued him till he cried for Mercy; and to purchase an Accommodation, offered to restore the Treasure taken from *Tribulis Pandar*, and his Mother-in-Law, Wife to the King of *Cota*, to pay an Acknowledgment to the Crown of *Portugal*, and give up the Island *Manar*. The Vice-Roy accepted the Conditions, considering how difficult it was wholly to deprive him of that Crown, and restore it to his Brother, though he had never so much right.

15. Fortune is as quick in over-turning, as bestowing her Favours. Whilst the Conditions were putting in execution, the Natives falling upon the Portugueses, who were secure in their Submission, killed many. The Vice-Roy escaped narrowly and got aboard the Fleet, whence he sent *D. Antony de Naranha* with 400 Men to relieve the Fort, where *Ferdinand de Sousa* was, and had killed many of the Natives in defence of it. They

They two being joyned made themselves way and marched to the Shoar, carrying all that was in the Fort, and killing all that opposed them. The Vice-Roy thus successful at first, and afterwards unfortunate, set Sail, carrying with him the Prince, given as an Hostage for performance of the Articles of Peace. He sailed to the Island *Manar*, where he built a Fort, and translated thither the Inhabitants of *Punicale*, to redeem them from the Tyranny of that Nayque who would fleece them. *Emanuel Rodriguez Coutinho* was left to Command there, and with him some Franciscans and Jesuits, all satisfied with the equal distribution the Vice-Roy made of all things. Then he sent *Balthasar Guedes de Sousa* to Command in chief in *Ceylon*, and with him the King of *Cota*, his Grandmother and Kindred, whom the King of *Jafanatan* had delivered to him, being one of the Conditions of that unfortunate Treaty.

---

## C H A P. XVI.

*The End of the Government of the Vice-Roy D. Constantin.*

1. **A**mong the Treasure lately taken from the King of *Jafanatan*, was an Idol adored throughout all the Coast of *Asia*, and so highly esteemed by all those Princes, particularly the King of *Pegu*,  
that

that he every year sent Embassadours with rich Presents, to get a Print of it. This so much worshipped Relick was nothing but a Tooth of a white Monkey. Some say, the rarity of the Colour was the cause of his being so much admired, as the King of *Siam's* white Elephant: Others affirm, besides his Whiteness, he came into such esteem by finding out the Wife of an ancient Indian King, that was run away from him, and had been sought for through all parts to no purpose, the King loving her beyond expression. The King in requital made much of the Beast while it lived, and after its death erected Altars to it: Others are of Opinion, it was a Mans, not a Monkeys Tooth, and perhaps the Man had the same Employ as the Monkey; for all was no better than Pimping, a great step to Preferment with Princes. However it was, the King of *Pegu* hearing our Vice-Roy had the Tooth, sent to offer him 300000 Ducats for it, and it was not doubted his Zeal would extend to give a Million, if the Bargain were well drove. Most of the Portugueses were for taking the Mony, and some wished they might be employed in carrying the Tooth to *Pegu*, not doubting but they should gather a Treasure by shewing it by the way.

2. The Vice-Roy doubtful whether he should accept, or reject the Offer, and to throw the blame of either Resolution from himself, had a meeting of the Chief of the Clergy and Laity, where the Question was discussed long, and with much heat.



## Chap. XVI. *The Portugues Asia.*

heat. The Resolution was, That the Tooth should not be sold, but consumed to Ashes. The Vice-Roy accordingly, in the presence of them all, caused it to be beaten to dust in a Mortar, and then burnt. All men at that time seemed to applaud the Act; but not long after, (two Teeth being set up instead of that one, as shall be related in the Government of *D. Antony de Noronha*) they as much condemned and railed at it.

3. *D. George de Melo* at this time did much in *Ceylon* in defence of the King's *Cota* against his Brother *Maduro*. *D. George* was hard to please, because he loved to endure hardship; he hearing one Morning, in his Galley, a Soldier asking an Oason for Breakfast, said to him; *What do you ask for Dainties? There is no provision in this Store, but Powder and Ball.* A good Example for our Times, when a Portuguese loads half a Gal-  
leon with Hen-Coops, and Cheeses of Sweet-  
Meats.

4. This Severity in *D. George* caused some Soldiers to desert to *Cora*; he went to bring them back, and at his return found that *George de Melo* his Lieutenant had fallen upon the Enemy so successfully, that he cut off a number of them. *Berco* envious of this Honour, attacked them in another place and killed 200, and with the same boat run up a River after *Maduro*, till a Cannon Ball killed 20 of his Seamen at once, he retired a little. Then marching by Land, after *Raja* who had above 3000 Men, he put him to flight, killing 150,  
P without

without losing one Man. The Enemy fortified himself in a convenient place, and *D. George* going on to attack him, was told there was no Powder; then says he, *Load your Muskets with Sand.* He advanced unfortunately; for what with an Ambush, and what with the assistance of the Elephants, he lost above 70 Men. *D. George* was in danger of being killed by an Elephant, had not *Padralvarez Freyre* fortunately shot it. He retired in such a Rage for this ill success, that he bit the Sand, perhaps because it had not served him instead of Powder.

5. *Madre Maluco*, King of *Cambaya*, taking the advantage of the Vice-Roys absence from *Damam*, resolved to recover that City, and was ready to march with a formidable Power. *D. James de Noronha*, who spent much Mony in Intelligence, soon understood his design, and finding he could not oppose him with open Force, had recourse to Artifice. He dexterously persuades *Cedemecan* Lord of *Suratt*, his Neighbour and Friend, that his Brother-in-Law, *Madre Maluco*, was coming to expel him that City, and therefore gave out his design was upon *Damam*. *Cedemecan* gave credit to the Fiction, and going to Visit his Brother-in-Law in the Camp, persuaded him to Sup with him in the Town, and carry with him the principal Heads of his Army. Scarce were they in his House when he killed them all, and falling upon the Camp put the Army to the rout with great slaughter. Thus *Noronha* avoided this Danger without drawing Sword, and *Cedemecan* drew on him-  
self

self another, to shun that which did not threaten him. The Manager of this Intrigue was, *D. James Pereyra*, a Gentleman of great Prudence and Vigilance, who performed it very dexterously, not without great danger to himself.

6. *Chinguiscan* with a prodigious Power marches to *Suratt*, to revenge the Death of his Father, and enters the City; *Cemedecan* retiring into the Fort, *Chinguiscan* sets down before, and begins to batter it furiously, and *Cedemecan* omitted nothing towards his defence, when 10 Ships arrive, sent by *D. James* under the Command of *Luis Alvarez, de Tavora*, with Orders so to manage himself, that either of the two Enemies might believe he came to their assistance. *D. James* under-hand writ to *Chinguiscan*, acquainting him he had sent those Ships to his Aid; *Tavora* had a Letter from him to *Cedemecan* of the same purport. All this Preparation vanished; for the Besieger hearing another Enemy invaded his Kingdom, agreed with the Besieged and returned home. So did *Luis Alvarez*, having given much Content to our Neighbour, who had he known all, had more cause to be highly dissatisfied. *Alvarez* coming to *Damam* found *D. James de Noronha* at Death's door, and he soon after expired at the Age of 44. He died Poor, having spent all he got in the Service of his King and Country. *D. Antony de Noronha*, after Vice-Roy, used to say, *That a man must be mad to practise this sort of Liberality.* After that rate now-adays all Men are very Wise.

1561.

7. The Vice-Roy being at *Cochim*, dispatched three Ships for *Portugal*, two of them arrived safe, the other was forced back. Then he had a meeting with the King of *Pimienta*, with whom he was at variance, and they agreed. The Princes of *Calicut* being sent to be bred at *Cananor*, and thole of *Cananor* at *Calicut*, caused such a Confusion, that *John Pereyra*, Commander of *Cananor*, was in some danger, attempting to hinder the Passage of the *Malabars*, who had possessed themselves of the Island *Primbalam*, belonging to *Cochim*, which might prove the los of our Fort. The Vice-Roy sent first *D. Francis de Almeyda* with ten Ships, and after him *Luis de Melo de Silva* with 500 Men, and the King of *Cochim* assisted with his Forces. There was a great Fight, many of the Enemies were killed, and the rest expelled the Island. *Martin Alfonso de Melo* afterwards cleared all the Passes, and restored the Island to the King. *D. Constantin* returned to *Goa*.

8. He sent Commanders to several Forts; and a Fleet of 21 Sail under the Command of *Sebastian de Sá*, to assist the King of *Bacora* against the Turks, for which he offered to permit us to build a Fort there. This Fleet was by bad Weather scattered and put into several Ports. *Cedemecan* lent to acquaint the Vice-Roy, That *Chinguisca* was again marching towards him, and he being in no condition to oppose him, would deliver up that Fort to the Crown of *Portugal*, only upon Condition to be carried with his Family and Treasure where he should appoint.

Don



*Don Constantin* immediately fitted out fourteen Ships, the Command whereof he gave to *D. Antony de Noronha*. With him went *Luis de Melo*, to receive the Command of *Damam* from *James de Silva*, who held it by the Death of *D. James de Noronha*. There they found four Gallions of *Sebastian de Sá* his Squadron that was dispersed, and so made up 500 Men, and passed to *Suratt*. They went up the River through such showers of Bullets, that there was scarce a Vessel but lost some Men. Then they Landed, and immediately entred a Work, and after a tedious Engagement *Cbinguiscan* with above 20000 Men, was beaten by 500 Portugueses, and our Captain remained Master of the Field.

9. In the same Heat he entred the City, where *Cbinguiscan* was, and retired honourably, though not without danger: But coming to Treat with *Cedemecan* about delivering up the Fort as he had promised, found him quite estranged from it. Some say, he durst not do it for fear his own Men should kill him; and 'tis likely it was so, for *D. Antony* being gone to *Goa*, they would have murdered him only for the Intention; so that he was forced to make his escape from them, and being taken by *Cbinguiscan* had his Head cut off. *Caracen* his Brother-in-Law succeeded him in *Suratt*, and found the means of obliging *Cbinguiscan*, so that he left him in peaceable possession.

10. *Emanuel de Vasconcelos* being arrived at the *Molucco's*, prevailed with the King of *Ternate*, to quit his claim to that Kingdom, as being left by the rightful Possessor, who died a Christian at *Malaca* to our King. Accordingly King *Sebastian* was Proclaimed in all the Neighbourhood, he that Resigned still keeping the Title and Government. *Vasconcelos* having made War against the King of *Tidore*, soon after died. *Sebastian Machado* his Lieutenant succeeded him, and sent *George Ferreyra* against the *Sangaje* of *Gilolo*, who brought him to Submission. The Christian Faith was now very much propagated in these Parts by the labour and industry of the Jesuits.

11. The Year ended the Government of *D. Constantin*, applauded by all lovers of Truth, though censured by the Vile Portugueses in *India*. He was endued with all those Parts that make a man Great, and was fortunate in his Undertakings; his Government such, that King *Sebastian* offered it him for Life, and he refused; and when that Excellent Vice-Roy *D. Luis de Ataide* returned thither the second time, he bid him Govern like *D. Constantin*.

12. His Countenance was beautiful and majestick, his Complexion white, his Beard thick and black. In the number of Vice-Roys he was the 7th, in that of Governours the 20th, and held it three years.

## C H A P. XVII.

*The Government of the Vice-Roy D. Francis Coutinho, Count de Redondo, from the Year 1561, till 1564, in the Reign of King SEBASTIAN.*

1. **I**N the beginning of September arrived 1561.  
at Goa D. Francis Coutinho, Count de Redondo, no less known for his witty Sayings, than his Actions in Peace and War. He brought five Ships, and sailed from Lisbon the beginning of the Year. The Count having sent Commanders to several Forts, dispatched five Ships for Portugal, in one of which went D. Constantin. Next he sent D. Francis Mascarenhas with 650 Men in 23 Ships, to seek out Casar's Gallies that were abroad a pilfering; but he missing of them through neglect, returned to the Coast of Malabar, where he secured the Trading Ships for the term of three Months, and then went into Port.

2. In February the Vice-Roy sent George de Moura with three Galleons, and some small Vessels, to secure our Ships that were to come from Ormuz against Casar's Gallies. On the Coast of Caxem he met a Ship of Achem of great strength and value, it carried 500 fighting Men and 50 Pieces of Brass Cannon. Towards Night Peter Lopez de Rebelo stood up with and boarded her, whereupon ensued a bloody Fight. The

Enemy fired the Galleon, and *Antony Cabral* coming up in the Night with another, thinking it was the Ship, attacks the Galleon. Perceiving his Mistake he drew off, and the Ship taking fire both were inevitably lost. *Cabral* saved *Rebelo* and his Men. Of the Enemy only a few escaped in the Long-Boat. *Moura* was coming on with the rest of the Ships, when discovering a Sail he gave it chase, but in vain. He cruized there some time and saw several Ships, but could not fetch up any.

3. In September arrived in India 6 Ships from Portugal, with 3000 Land-men. The Vice-Roy was preparing to set out for the Sea of Calicut, whilst *Cide Meriam* was marching to besiege *Damam* with 800 Horse and 1000 Foot, after doing much harm in the Neighbouring Villages. Our Men went out to meet them, a *Dominican* carrying a Crucifix before them; at the first Charge several of our Men fell, and among them the *Dominican*; a Souldier took up the Crucifix and marched before till a Ball broke the Arm of it, which much stirred up our Men to revenge. In the heat of the Action *Cide* appears, calling upon *Garcia Rodriguez*, who spurring his Horse met, and with a stroak of his Lance dismounted him; but *Garcia* fell too, and *Meriam* recovering came at him with his Cimiter; *Garcia* embraces him fast, and so they struggled till one of our Souldiers run *Meriam* through with a Pike. Our Captain mounted again, and running into the thickest of the Enemy, they were disor-



disordered and fled ; many were killed, many taken, and a considerable Booty.

4. About the beginning of *December* the Vice-Roy set out of *Goa* with 140 Sail, in which number were ten very large Gallies ; in this Fleet were 4000 Men. All this Preparation was only to meet *Zamors*, and Swear to the Peace already concluded. They met at *Tiracole*, the Vice-Roy walking through a Lane made by his 4000 Men, and the King through another of 40000. After the usual Ceremonies the Articles were read, and then sworn to by each after his own manner.

5. The Count returning to *Cochim*, dispatched the Ships for *Portugal*, which arrived safe, except one that was never heard of. The Portugueses of this great Fleet having no other employments for their Swords, fell to Challenging one another, by which means above 50 were killed. The grounds of these Quarrels are commonly so idle and ridiculous, that it is not worth time to mention any of them.

6. The Vice-Roy began this Year, sending some Commanders to several Parts: But there was nothing of moment, but the Business of *Amboina*, one of the *Maluco's*, whither he sent *Henry de Sá* with some Relief. *Amboina* is an Island in that Eastern Sea, about 16 Leagues in compass; but contains in that little Space many good Towns. *Jordan de Freytas*, Commander of *Ternate*, got a Grant of it for himself (as is before laid) from the King of it, who being converted

1563.

verted by his means repayed him with that Gift, which afterwards fell to the Crown of Portugal. Sá sent his Nephew *Vasco* thither to build a Fort; but he behaved himself so ill, that he estranged the Hearts of all the People, chiefly the Inhabitants of *Aiue*, where he was; and those of *Aito*, not far distant. The better to compass their Revenge, they offered Subjection to the Queen of *Japara*, in the Island *Java*, that she might assist them with her Shipping. The other Islands also sent a Fleet, and joyning with those that were in Arms, killed many of the Christians newly converted by St. *Francis Xaverius*. One of these called *Emanuel*, gathering a Number, put a stop to this Current, till *Henry de Sá* joyning they totally defeated all those Enemies, with a great slaughter of them. Then *Sá* took in hand the punishing the Rebels, among which were two Infamous Portugueses, who had laid the muzzles of their Musquets to *Emanuel*, because he defended the New Christians; that it may appear, there are many New Christians better than the Old. Peace being settled, the Spiritual Conquest was carried on.

7. In *Ceylon Madure*, always aiming to deprive his Brother, the King of *Cota*, of his Kingdom, kept his Son *Raju* in the Field with a good Force. *Raju* with 30000 Men besieges the Fort of *Columbo*, Commanded by *Baltasar Guedex de Sousa*. He battered it several days with great Fury, but found such opposition he was forced to draw off, and  
marched

marched to the City *Cota*, two Leagues distant, not doubting to carry it, having been reinforced and believing the Portugueses were not in condition to Relieve it. Yet *Baltasar Guedex* was there as soon as he with 400 Men. The City was besieged, and the Attacks carried on vigorously, and backed with Elephants. Many Portugueses were here seen fight with those Beasts single, and with many Wounds drive them back upon their own Men.

8. Though bravely defended, the Town was in great danger by reason of the Enemies great number, had not *James de Melo Coutinho*, Commander of *Manar*, come opportunely with 400 Men and Provisions. *Raju* seeing this Relief raised the Siege, having lost 2000 Men. On our side twenty were killed, and three *Franciscans*. The King repaired his Works, and *Coutinho* returned to his Command, leaving the Men he brought.

9. This Year sailed from *Lisbon* four Ships, one of them was forced back, three arrived at *Goa*, one whereof sunk there. The Vice-Roy sent *D. Francis de Mascarenhas* to *Cananor* with fifteen Sail, we being then at War with that King. *Hierom Diaz de Meneses* staid behind with his Ship, in which were forty tried Souldiers. He met three *Parao's* of *Malabars*, and could not with Honour avoid them; so making up to the formost layed it aboard, and killing most of the Moors, had taken it, but that the other two coming up forced our Men to defend

defend their own Ship, and though they behaved themselves with great bravery, were by the multitude of Enemies drove into the Poop, whence breaking out again they cleared their Decks, killing 60 Moors. They parted, and *Diaz* pursued his Voyage.

10. The Vice-Roy dispatched two Ships for *Portugal*, which after a dangerous Voyage arrived safe. Hearing what had hapned, *Hierom Diaz* with the Malabars, who continued their Piracies contrary to the Peace so lately sworn, he complained to *Zamori*. He Answered coldly, because his Intentions were never sincere, *That those were some Rebels, and whosoever met them might punish them.* The Count meditating Revenge, heard above 80 Vessels of Malabars were sailing for *Calicut*; these he resolved to destroy, and if *Zamori* complained, to Answer after this manner, *That they were some Rebels had done it, whoever took might punish them.* To this he sent *Dominick de Mesquita*, a Man of Valour and no nice Conscience, as was requisite for such an Action, with 120 Men in three Ships. He cruised upon the Coast of *Carapatan*, and took by two and three at a time twenty four Sail. The Vessels he sunk, some of the Men he beheaded, others he sewed up in their Sails and threw them into the Sea. Above 2000 died after this manner, so that all the Coast of *Malabar* was filled with Cries for the loss of Friends and Goods. This Action soon after produced a very tedious War.

11. This



11. This was the Vice-Roys last Action, and scarce came to his knowledge; for he died very suddenly about the end of *February*. His Death was lamented, because he was beloved. He was neither Prodigal, nor Covetous, a great lover of Justice, and so happy in witty Expressions, that all pleasant Sayings were Fathered upon him. His Countenance was jovial, his Eyes lively. In the number of Vice-Roys he was the 8<sup>th</sup>, and the 21<sup>st</sup> of Governours, and held it two years and five Months; the third of the Name, first of the Sirname, and second that had the Title of Count, for *D. Vasco de Gama* was the first.

12: At this time our Famous Poet, *Luis de Camoens*, was at *Goa*, and had been well looked upon and favoured by the two last Vice-Roys. The Governour *Francis Barreto* had Imprisoned, and then banished him for Debts, and some youthful Extravagancies; and the Count towards the End of his Government, had again given him up to the Law, and he was cast in Prison. We shall hereafter see him deceitfully carried to *Zofala*, and there sold. Such is the hard Fate of great Wits.

## C H A P. XVIII.

*The Government of John de Mendoza,  
for six Months of the Tear 1564, in  
the Reign of King SEBASTIAN.*

1564. 1. **J**ohn de *Mendoza*, late Commander of *Malaca*, succeeded the Vice-Roy with the Title of Governour. As soon as he had taken the Sword, there came to him Embassadours from *Zamori*, complaining of the Harm *Dominick de Mesquita* had done the beginning of the year to his Subjects, contrary to the Peace so solemnly sworn. The Governour answered as the Count designed to have done; *That it was perhaps some Portugues who was in Rebellion; that they might punish him if taken, and he would do the same.* The Embassadours had nothing to say; but before their departure came in *Dominick de Mesquita*, and the Governour (not to carry on the Shew too far) caused him in their presence to be apprehended. As soon as their backs were turned he released, and rewarded him as his good Service deserved.

2. A Woman of a bold Spirit, and of good Repute among her People, Wife to one of those killed by *Mesquita*, running about the City of *Cananor* with loud Cries and Complaints, stirred up the Moors to revenge

revenge that Action. They all run to Arms, swearing not to lay them down, till they had rooted out the Portugueles from among them. They beset the Fort where *D. Payo de Noronha* Commanded, and the King unexpectedly set fire to above thirty Ships that rode under the shelter of it. The Governour sent immediately *Andrew de Sousa* with six Sail to the relief of that Fort, where *Ade Rajao* already was with a great Power. Thus began the War of *Malabar*, and went on slowly.

3. It being now the beginning of September, the Ships arrived from Portugal, in which went the Vice Roy *D. Antony de Noronha*, to whom the Governour delivered the Sword, and went out of *India* poor, after bearing honourable and advantageous Employments. He was the 22<sup>th</sup> Governour, and held it half a year, was the second of the Name, and first of the Sirname.

4. Since the short time of his Government afforded not Matter enough for a Chapter, I will give some Account of the *Zamorries* and Preaching of *St. Thomas* the Apostle. It is before related how *Perimal*, who divided the Empire of *Malabar* into several Kingdoms, was persuaded to Mahometanism, and went to end his days at *Meca*. This was a false Invention of the Moors; for there were several Sovereign Princes in *Malabar* 500 years before the Birth of Christ. *Malabar* lies between the Points of *Cananor* and *Cape Comori*, 150 Leagues in length, and about 15 in breadth up the Inland,

land, expiring at the Foot of a Mountain that runs through all that length. The chief Sovereignities therein are *Cananor*, *Tanor*, *Moringue*, *Cranganor*, *Parum*, *Mungate*, *Repelim*, *Cochim*, *Diamper*, *Pimienta*, *Turungule*, *Maturte*, *Porca*, *Marta*, *Pitimene*, *Calecoulam*, *Coulam*, *Changernate*, *Gundra* and *Travancor*.

5. The differences that often arose between these Sovereigns, obliged them to chuse an Arbitrator, who was to be but of indifferent Fortune, to prevent his growing too powerful; and the Office was not to be hereditary, but he always chose by consent of those Princes. This Arbitrator they called *Xara Perimal*, and appointed his residence to be in the City *Calicut*; so ancient is this Employment. The great concourse of Merchants from all parts to that City, caused it in time to rise to an Empire, though such care had been taken to prevent it. This Dignity of Emperour (which is signified by the word *Zamori*) continued till the Year of Grace 347, according to the Records of *Calicut*; but according to those of *Cochim*, till 588. Whensoever it was, *Xara Perimal* then Reigned, who tired with the Cares of a Crown, and having some knowledge of the Evangelical Doctrine, as being a great Favourer of the Christians of *St. Thomas*, inhabiting at *Cranganor*, he resolved to end his days at *Meliapor*, serving in that Church. By Consent of all his Princes he resigned the Crown to *Manuchem Herari* his Page, esteemed worthy and able



to Govern that Empire. *Perimal* died at *Meliapor*, and it is thought one of those Bodies found with the Apostles was his. Since his time till now have been above 110 *Zamories*, of whose Names we do not make a Catalogue, because they are all called *Manuchem* and *Zamori*, in memory of that first Successor of *Perimal*. Another Relation says; This *Perimal* was one of the three Kings that went to adore our Saviour, new Born at *Betlehem*, and perhaps that might be the Reason of his following the Apostle *St. Thomas*. In an ancient Manuscript of two hundred years standing, I have found what follows: *Melchior* was King of *Nubia* and *Arabia*; *Baltasar*, of *Goli* and *Saba*; *Gaspar*, of *Tharsis*, *Insula*, and *Grisola*, where the Body of *St. Thomas* lies, and they were afterwards by him made Bishops, and suffered Martyrdom with him.

6. In this Empire (so in all the Kingdoms of it) the Sons do not Inherit, but the Nephews born of Sisters, by reason of the ill conceit they have of the Mothers, believing this way they secure the Royal Descent. The Princesses that bring forth these Heirs, get them in this manner: The Princess is Married to a Neighbouring Prince, who leaves her untouched; a Naye of the Family of *Naburiis*, destined for this Employ, gets her Maidenhead, and then departs, never more to be seen in the Country upon pain of Death. The Princess afterwards chooses others among the *Naburiis*, of whom she makes use till she has Conceived.

(P)

She

She has liberty to chooise among them all, but none of them can court her upon pain of Death. The Nayres are very poor, few of them can maintain a Wife; and he that can, need not fear another corrupting of her. For this Reason three or four of them joyn to maintain a Woman, and that is their manner of Marriage: When one goes to the Wife, he leaves his Buckler at the Door, which is a sign one is within; and if another comes, he must stay. The Kingdom of *Cochin* was subject to this Empire, though without paying Tribute, and made free by the Portugueses in requital, for the fidelity of the King *Uniramacoul*, who Reigned when we first discovered *India*, and exposed himself to utter danger of being ruined, rather than deliver up the Portugueses to *Zamori*. King *Emanuel* sent him a Crown of Gold by the Vice-Roy *D. Francis de Almeida*, which he received, submitting himself as a Subject to *Portugal*, without any other acknowledgment; but is yearly presented with two pieces of Gold; the one a Portugues, being a Coin worth 18 Ducats, on the 1<sup>st</sup> of *January*; the other on the day of the *Epiphany*, is a Cup worth 640, Thus much of the Empire of *Malabar*.

7. As to *Meliapor*, for what relates to the Apostle: It is the received Opinion he was killed at *Antenodur*, a Mountain a League distant from the Town, where he had two Caves, whither he retired to Pray. The nearest now belongs to the Jesuits, the other is the Church of our Lady of the Mount.  
He

He being one day at Prayer in the former, opposite to a Clift that gave Light to it, one of the Bramens, who was watching, thrust a Lance through that Hole in such manner, that a piece of it remaining in his Body, he went to the other Cave, and there died, embracing a Stone on which a Cross was carved. Hence his Disciples removed and Buried him in his Church, where he was found by *Emanuel de Faria*, or *Frias*, and the Priest *Antony Penteado*, sent thither on purpose by King *Emanuel*.

8. In the Year 1547, being about to repair that Oratory where the Apostle died, digging they found a Stone, which seems to be the same he held then. It is about a yard long, and three quarters wide, the Colour grey, with some red spots. In the middle of it is carved a Portal round at the Top, with Letters between the two Borders; within two Banisters, rather than Pillars; being turned, on which are two twisted Figures, like Dogs sitting, from whose Necks rises a graceful Arch of five Borders, and between every two are knots like Beads. In the hollow of this Door is a Pedestal of two Steps, from the uppermost of which rises a Branch on each side, and over them, as it were in the Air, is a Cross, the ends of it like to that of the Military Order of *Alcantara*, as the History relates; but the Print shews them like three half Moons, the Convex sides outwards, and the Points meeting, as commonly we see in many ancient Churches in *Europe*. Over all is a  
(P 2) Dove

Dove flying, as it were descending to touch the Cross with its Beak. There are ancient Pillars in the East with Doves after this manner. One preserved in the Pagod of *Negapatan*, has carved on it a Cock, a Rope and a Candle. There is a Tradition, it came of it self to those parts by Sea, with a Candle burning.

9. The Chappel being repaired, or beautified in the Year 1551, the Stone was solemnly set up in it, and at the time the Priest pronounced those words of the Gospel; *Missa est Angelus Gabriel, &c.* it began to change colour, and became black and shining, then sweating turned to its own colour, plainly discovering the spots of Blood which before were obscure. The Letters about it could not be understood till the Year 1561; a Learned Bramen said, they were 36 Hieroglyphicks, every one containing a Sentence, and were to this effect: 'In the time of  
' the Son of *Sagad* the Gentile, who Reign-  
' ed 30 years, came upon Earth one only  
' GOD, and was Incarnate in the Womb  
' of a Virgin: He abolished the Law of  
' the Jews, whom he punished for the Sins  
' of Men, after he had been in the World  
' 33 years, and taught Twelve Servants the  
' Truth he preached. A King of Three  
' Crowns, *Cheralacone*, *Indatacone*, *Cuspandiad*;  
' and King *Alexander* of the Kingdom *Erti-*  
' *nabarad*, with *Catherine* his Daughter, and  
' many Virgins and six Families, voluntarily  
' followed the Law of *Thomas*, because it  
' was the Law of Truth, and he gave them  
' the Sign of the Cross to adore. Going up  
' to



‘to the place of *Antenodur*, a Bramen run  
‘him through with a Lance, and he em-  
‘braced this Cross, which was stained with  
‘his Blood, and his Disciples carried him to  
‘*Maiale*, and Buried him in his Church  
‘with the Lance in his Body. And because  
‘We the above-named Kings saw this, we  
‘carved these Letters here. Hence, besides  
the Story, is gathered, That *Maiale* was the  
ancient Name of the City *Meliapor*, now  
called *St. Thomas*. This Stone afterwards  
sweated sometimes: Till the Year 1561 it  
was a good Omen; since then a bad one.

10. In the time of the Priest *Penteado*  
were also found three Brass Plates about a  
Span long, and half as broad, in shape like  
a Scutcheon, on the top a Ring. On the  
one side was a Cross and Peacock, the  
ancient Arms of *Meliapor*; on the other,  
Characters which were explained by another  
Learned Bramen. The first part was Titles  
of the King; ‘*Boca Raja*, Son of *Campula*  
‘*Raja*, and Grandson of *Atela Raja*. He  
‘begins confessing, One God without begin-  
‘ning, Maker of all things. And says of  
himself, ‘That he is as Great a Gentleman  
‘as the Beast *Chirisan*, and as one of the  
‘five Kings who conquered 99: That he is  
‘as strong as one of the eight Elephants  
‘that the World stands upon, and that he  
‘Conquered the Kingdoms of *Ora*, *Tulcan*  
‘and *Canara*, cutting his Enemies to pieces  
‘with his Sword. The other Plates con-  
tained Grants of Lands to *St. Thomas*, di-  
rected to himself, and calling him *Abidarra*  
*Modeliar*,

*Modeliar*. Whence may be gathered, these Princes Reigned at the time that Christ suffered. One of them begins thus: 'After the Year 1259, in the first Year called *Icarrana Rachan*, on the 12th day of the New Moon of the good Year, I give in Alms to the Saint *Abidarra Modeliar*, &c. Thus Another: 'This is a Token of Alms-deeds to purchase Paradice, and all Kings that perform them shall obtain much more, and he that disannuls them shall be 60000 years with the Worms in Hell, &c.

11. It has always been controverted, which way *St. Thomas* came into *India*. The Heathen History says, 'That *St. Thomas* and *St. Thaddens* being in *Mesopotamia*, they parted at the City *Edeffa*; and the former sailing with some Merchants came to the Island *Zocotora*, and after Converting the People, passed to *Mogodover Patana*, a City of *Paru* in *Malabar*, where he built a Church. The King keeping there the Wedding of his Son, some Jewish Women came to sing, and their Musick was Texts of Scripture, many of them fulfilled by the Life and Death of our Saviour. *St. Thomas* being present, was so rapt, hearing those Prophecies from them People, that a Heathen observing it gave him a Box on the Ear. Soon after going to fetch Water, a Tiger bit off his Hand. He came running to tell his Misfortune, and after him a Dog with the Hand in his Mouth. The Apostle took, and set it on again, so that no Mark remained. Then he went to *Calicut*, and con-  
verted

verted *Xa Perimal*. There is an Account, That he went to the Mogol's Country, where *Chefetrigal* then Reigned, and after being in *China* returned to *India*, visiting the Province of *Tibet*, and settled at *Meliapor*, where he ended.

12. In the Year 800 arrived at *Mogodover*, or *Patana*, a rich Christian *Armenian*, called *Thomas Cananeus*, who with his Company presented himself to the King: He received him with Kindness, and soon after won by his Presents, gave him the Lands of *Cranganor* and City *Patana*, where there was scarce any Footsteps of *St. Thomas* his Church. On those Foundations he built another; another at *Cranganor* by the name of *St. Thomas*, now standing within our Fort; another of our Lady, and another of *St. Ciriacus*. These being the Works of *Thomas Cananeus*, made them erroneously be believed the Apostles. Afterwards were found other Plates containing Grants of Lands to the Disciples and Successors of the Apostles.

12. It may reasonably be believed, that Pagod where *Gama* entred, as he went from *Calicut* to *Zamorie's* Palace, was of this Foundation, because the Image of our Lady was there called *Mary* by the Heathens; and it being believed one of the three Kings that went to *Betlehem* was of *Malabar*. The Heathens yearly celebrate a Feast to *St. Thomas*, to preserve their Ships; because formerly many of them used to be Cast-away sailing to *Parvi*.

*End of the Second Part.*

T H E





T H E  
*Portugues Asia.*

T O M. I.      P A R T III.

C H A P. I.

*Conquests under King Emanuel, from the  
Year 1515, to the Year 1518. Lope  
Soarez de Albergaria, being Governor.*

1. **T**HE great *Alfonso de Albuquerque* was drawing to-  
wards the last Period of  
his Life, when King E-  
manuel, as if he had fore-  
seen it, sent a new Governor with a Fleet  
for India. The Governor was *Lope Soarez  
de Albergaria*, the Fleet consisted of thirteen  
Ships, and in them fifteen hundred fighting  
Men, many Gentlemen by Birth, most  
such by their Actions. Among them was  
*Duarte Galvam*, a Person of Learning, Au-  
thority and Judgment, who went Embassa-  
dor

dor to *Prestor John*, with rich Presents; some for him, some for the Church. The Governor being arrived at *Cochin*, by his (perhaps rather affected than natural) reservedness became disagreeable to many, and particularly to the King, who was used to *Albuquerque's* discreet Civility. *D. Garcia de Noronha*, who took Charge of the Dispatch of the homeward bound trading Ships, went away with them after no small Disagreement with *Lope Soarez*. Till this time the Gentlemen had followed the Dictates of true Honor, esteeming their Arms the greatest Riches; from this time forwards they so wholly gave up themselves to trading, that those who had been Captains became Merchants, so that what had been Command became a Shame, Honor was a Scandal, and Reputation a Reproach. *Lope Soarez* entred upon the Government. He visited the Forts, placed in them new Captains, gave out Orders and such other Affairs of small moment, which rather serve to fill Paper than increase the Substance of a History.

1516.

2. This year sailed from *Lisbon* five Ships under the Command of *John de Silveira*, three of them arrived in *India*, the other two were lost on the Sands of *St. Lazaro*. The Governor prepared, according to the King's Order, for the *Red Sea*; and being informed, that the Soldan was fitting out a great Fleet at *Suez*, he sailed in search thereof from *Goa*, on the eighth of *February*, with twenty seven Sail of several sorts and Sizes.

In

In this Fleet were twelve hundred *Portugueses*, eight hundred *Malabar* Soldiers, and eight hundred Seamen of the same Nation. He arrived before the City *Aden*, the Commander whereof *Miramirzan*, finding himself defenceless, by reason a piece of the Wall was beaten down by *Raez Soliman*, Admiral of the *Suez* Fleet, *Lope Soarez* went in search of, he made a Virtue of Necessity, and offered the Keys to *Lope Soarez*, affirming he would have done the same to *Albuquerque*, had not he begun by Acts of Hostility. *Lope Soarez* pleased with this Flattery, trusted to him, and took not possession of the City, but went away in search of *Raez Soliman*, thinking first to find out him, and then take the City; and neither did he take *Aden* at his return, nor meet *Soliman* as he went. He went up the *Red Sea*, in quest of *Solyman*, but with bad Fortune; for *D' Alvaro de Castro* was lost with forty Men through Covetousness; for having taken some Vessels, he so overloaded his own with the Goods, that it sunk down to rights. Other Ships sustained much damage. Hearing that *Solyman* was drove by stress of Weather to *Joda*, and had no Defence, he resolved to sail thither.

3. *Joda* ( or as the *Arabs* call it ) *Gidda*, is seated in *Arabia Felix* in twenty one Degrees and half of North Latitude, in a most barren Soil, being all a deep Sand. It was a Colony of *Moors*, who attended more to Trade, than Delight. The Buildings are good, but not the Harbour; the Inhabi-

tants of two sorts, the native *Arabs*, and foreign Merchants. The Town was fortified by *Mir Hozem*, after he was defeated by *D. Francisco de Almeyda*, for his own Security, being afraid to return to the Soldan, but upon pretence of the Defence of the Sepulchre of *Mahomet* and his Prince. When *Hozem* was busie in this Work, came to the Soldan *Raez Solyman*, a *Turk* of base Parentage, but a powerful and bold Pyrate, born in the Island *Mitylene* of the *Archipelago*. He offered himself to command the Fleet of twenty seven Sail, that was preparing at *Suez* to fall upon *Aden*, an employ *Mir Hozem* had set his Heart upon. The old Servant was laid aside, and the Stranger received. The punishment of this Inconstancy soon fell upon *Joda*. For *Solyman* after repairing the Loss sustained at *Aden* (where many of his Men were killed) and taking a great Booty in the City *Zeibid*, returned to *Gidda*, where he slew *Mir Hozem*, and then delivered the City to the *Turk*, who not long before had killed the Soldan in Battel. This was the occasion that *Lope Soares* found *Solyman* at *Gidda*.

4. The Port being dangerous, *Lope Soares* anchored a League from the City, in which there was so good Cannon, that three or four Peices reached the Ships at that distance. There came a Messenger from *Solyman*, offering a private Combat between Man and Man, or as *Soares* should propose. The Challenge was received by *Gaspar de Silva*, and *D. Antonio de Meneses*, but the Governor



Governor would not permit, saying he would answer ashore. He sounded a Channel that goes up to the City, which was terrified by the firing of a Galeon. *Solyman* appeased the Tumult, and appeared with some Men without the Walls, whilst multitudes appeared on them, filling the Air with loud Cries. *Lope Soarez* delayed the landing two days, till his Men began to complain of the delay. He appeased them by shewing his Instructions, wherein he was ordered to fight the Fleet, which he could not compass, not to attack that City where there might be much danger and little profit. Tho Votes differed, it was resolved in Council to desist. He retired to the Island *Camaran*, whence he sent some to several parts of that Sea. Here died *Duarte Galvam*, a studious and ingenious Man, who had been Embassador in several parts of Europe, and was going now in the same quality, being above seventy years of Age, to *Prestor John*. At his death he said, that his Son *George Galvam* and all his Men were cast away in their Vessel, and that in the Island of *Dalaca* they had cut off the Heads of *Laurence de Cosme* and others that were sent thither. It being impossible this News could be brought to the Island where he died, yet was afterwards found true.

5. After suffering much through Famine, whereof some Men died, and losing seventeen *Portugueses*, taken by the *Moors*, and carried to *Gidda*, *Lope Soarez* set sail, and appeared before the City *Zeyla*, on the

Mouth of the *Red Sea*, and the *African Shoar*, called by *Psolomy*, *Emporium Avalite*, being the great Market of those parts. The Town was easily taken, being unprovided, and burnt, and then the Fleet bent its course to *Aden*.

6. Here *Soarez* found how much he had been to blame in not taking possession when offered by *Miramirzan*; for he finding his Enemy now weaker, and the Wall repaired, refused by forming Delays what afore he offered with haste. *Lope Soarez* fearing to lose time, durst not call *Miramirzan* to account, but set sail, designing to do the same at the City *Barbora*, as he had done at *Zeyla*. But the Fleet was scattered by Storms, and drove to several Ports, and when they came aser to hear of one another, it was found above eight hundred Men had perished by Hunger, Sicknels and Shipwrack. All which Misfortunes made the loss of the most fortunate *Albuquerque* be the more lamented.

7. Whilst these Distasters attended *Lope Soarez*, another threatened the City *Goa*, where *D. Gutierre de Monroy* commanded. According to the Orders left him by *Soarez*, some Ships of the Enemy were taken of more Value than Reputation, and with more Danger than Profit. One *Alvaro Madureira*, who was married in *Goa*, fled to the Enemy, and turned *Moor*, then was reconciled, and falling again, brought the *Indians* to attack our Ships, putting them in great danger. And because Troubles seldom

dom come alone, it happened that one *Ferdinando Caldera*, who also was married there, flying the punishment of Crimes, followed the Example of *Madureira*, or (as was said) terrified by the Threats of *D. Gutierre*, who desired his absence, being in love with his Wife. This is likely, since there was scarce ever any great Mischief without a Woman at the end of it. *Caldera* went to serve *Ancostan*, an Officer of *Hidalcans*. *D. Gutierre* demanded him, because he desired not his absence that way. *Ancostan* refused to deliver him. The other challenged him, but he accepted not. *D. Gutierre* sent one who pretending to be a Deserter should kill *Caldera*, he executed it, and was killed upon the Body by the *Moors*. *Lope Saarez*, arriving at *Goa* was informed by *D. Gutierre* what had passed, and left it to him take the revenge he thought fit of *Ancostan*, which produced the loss of Men and Reputation, and brought upon the City a dangerous Siege. It fell out thus.

8. As soon as *D. Gutierre* had this leave of the Governor, he prepared to put his Designs in execution, and when he thought time, sent out his Brother *D. Fernando* with one hundred and fifty *Portugueses*, whereof eighty were Horse, and a great number of *Canaras*, against *Ancostan*. At *Ponda* they routed the *Moors*, who rallying, obliged *D. Ferdinando* to retire, having lost two hundred Men, killed and taken. This caused all the Country to rise in Arms against the *Portugueses*, and *Hidalcans* pre-

tending the Peace was broke, to order his General *Suso Lari* to besiege Goa. *Suso Lari* appeared with four thousand Horse and twenty six thousand Foot, and attempted to pass into the Island, but was repulsed. Hunger began to press the Besieged, till three Ships arrived, one from *Portugal*, another from *Quiloa*, and another from *China*, so *Lari* raised the Siege, and the former Peace was confirmed.

9. The same Misfortune attended *Malacca*, through the ill Government of *George de Brito*, and Animosities of others. The People fled from *Malacca*, because of their tyrannical Usage, and the King of it that had been prepared to recover it, sending before to this effect his General *Cerilige de Raja*, with considerable Forces, and some Cannon. He intrenched himself, and so pressed the Besieged, that had not *D. Alexius de Meneses* come to take the Government with three hundred Men, then had ended the Portugues Possession of *Malacca*.

1517.

10. *Anthony de Saldana* arrived now in *India* with six Ships from *Portugal*. In this Fleet went one *Alcacova* as Surveyor of the King's Revenue, with such a Power as lessened that of *Lope Soarez*, and with a will to take it all away. There soon broke out the Flame of Contention between these two. *Alcacova* bore down by such as envied him, took revenge on himself by returning to *Portugal*, and on them there by causing them to be called to account for their Proceedings. Hence began the hearing Complaints



plaints against the Governors and Commanders of *India*, and hence it was that many took more care to heap Riches than Honor, knowing them to be a protection against all Crimes. *Lope Soarez* sent *D. John de Silveira* to the *Maldivy* Islands, *D. Alexis de Meneses* to *Malaca*, *Manuel de la Cerda* to *Diu*, and *Antony de Soldana* with six Ships, by the King's Order to the Coast of *Arabia*. They arrived at the City *Bat-bora* near to *Zeyla*, and not unlike to it, but much less. It was taken without resistance, the Inhabitants being all fled. It was burnt, and the Fleet, without doing any thing remarkable, returned to *India* at such time as *Lope Soarez* was sailing for the Island *Ceylon*.

---

## C H A P. II.

*A Continuation of what was done in India the same Tear 1517, during the Government of the same Lope Soarez de Albergaria.*

1. **T**HE Island *Ceylon* is opposite to Cape *Comori*, and is the Southermost Land of *India*, within *Ganges*, distant from the Continent sixteen Leagues, once, as some imagine, join'd to it, in length about eighty Leagues, and forty five in breadth. The Southermost Point is in the Latitude of six

six degrees, the most Northerly in about ten. In this Sea is a Fishery of precious Pearls. The ancient Inhabitants of it called it *Ilanare*. The *Persians* and *Arabs*, *Seradib*. It took the Name of *Ceylon* from the Sea that parts it from the Continent, because being dangerous, and the *Chineses* having lost a great Fleet there, called it *Chilam*, that is to say, Danger (it somewhat resembles *Scylla*) and corruptly it was called *Ceylon*. This is the ancient *Trapobana*, and not *Sumatra*, as some have imagined. It produces many things, Cinnamon better than that of all other places, Rubies, Sapphires and other precious Stones, much Pepper and Cardamum, Brasil Wood, and other Dyes, great Woods of Palm-trees, the Elephants bred there the most sensible, much Cattle, has good Ports, and several Rivers of good Water. The Mountains are covered with pleasant Woods, one particularly rising the space of seven Leagues, on the top whereof is a round plain of about thirty paces Diameter, in the Center whereof rises a smooth Rock about six spans above the rest, on the Superficies whereof is the Print of a Mans Foot about two spans in length. This Footstep is held in great veneration, being thought to be of a holy Man born at *Delbi*, who lived many years on that Mountain, preaching to the Inhabitants the Belief of one only God, who afterwards returning to his own Country, sent one of his Teeth to the Kings of that Island, as a Token to remember him, and they keep it as a Relict where-  
on

on they repose much Confidence in time of Danger. On this account resort thither many Pilgrims from places a thousand Leagues distant. The Island is divided into nine Kingdoms, the chiefest *Columbo* on the West. The others *Gale* on the South; *Faula*, *Tanavaca*, *Cande*, *Batecalon*, *Vilacem*, *Triquimamale*, and *Jasanapatam*.

2. The King of *Columbo* in *Ceylon* had a Trade with the *Portugueses*, desired their Friendship, and furnished them with Cinnamon from the time of *Albuquerque*. *Lope Soarez* went thither now with a Design to oblige him to pay Tribute, and to build a Fort as King *Emanuel* desired. He had with him seven Gallies, two Ships, and eight small Vessels with the Materials and Workmen for the Building, and 700 *Portugues* Soldiers. They had bad Weather, but arrived safe. The King presently granted leave to build a Fort, and the *Moors* as soon altered his mind, and he received *Soarez* going to begin the Work in such manner as put him to a streight; but in the end the Enemies were put to flight. They had fortified themselves to hinder the Work, and *Lope Soarez* did the same now to begin it. The King came to composition, the Articles were that he should be a Subject to *Portugal*, paying a yearly Tribute of twelve hundred Quintals of Cinnamon, twelve Rings of Rubies and Saphires, and six Elephants, for *Soarez* would not admit his Excuses, wherein he blamed the Foreign Merchants.

3. At this time arrived from the *Maldives*, *John de Silveyra* with four Sail; in his way he took two Ships of *Cambaya*, and the King of the Island granted leave to erect a Factory. He went with the same Design to *Bengala*, where he was in great Danger, for there a *Bengalian* young Man that sailed with him, discovered the taking of the two Ships which were sent to *Cochin*, and so he was looked upon as a Pyrate not worthy to be heard. It had been worse with him, had not *John Coello* arrived then with his Ship from *Pacem*, being sent on the same Errand by *Ferdinando Perez de Andrade*, to the King of *Bengala*. *Don John de Silveyra*, let Sail hence after passing the Winter with great hardship, especially through Famine. He was invited by the King of *Aracam* to his Port, who, with the Messenger sent him a Present, but all his Kindnesses tended to destroy him at the instigation of the Governour of the other Port. This Treachery took no effect, and he arriv'd at *Ceylon* at the time that *Lope Soarez* finished the Fort, who gave him the command of it, and left *Anthony de Miranda de Azevedo* with four Ships to cruise in that Sea.

4. Whilst these things were acted at *Maldivia*, *Chatigam* and *Columbo*, *D. Alexius Meneses* secured *Malaca*, being arrived with Men and Amunition, and putting an end to the Divisions of the *Portugueses* about succeeding the Governour who lay dying. *Alfonso Lopez de Costa* had the government, and *Duarte de Melo* the command of the Sea.



Sea. *Duarte Coello* was sent with an Embassy and Present from King *Emanuel* to him of *Siam*, the substance of it was to confirm the Peace, and as a token of it, that he would send People to inhabit *Malaca*, that so the *Moors* whom he hated as much as we, might be totally expelled: He granted all with great satisfaction, and as a testimony of his Sincerity, caused to be erected in a remarkable place of the City *Hudia*, where he then was, a Cross with the Arms of *Portugal* on it. *Coello* having thus succeeded was thrown by stress of weather upon the Coast of *Pam*, the King whereof received him friendly, and voluntarily submitted himself to the Crown of *Portugal* with an yearly tribute of a Gold Cup. This action was done rather in hatred to the King of *Bintam* than of any love to us.

5. The Kingdom of *Siam* where *Coello* had now been settling Peace, is one of the three greatest of *Asia*, the others are that of *China* and that of *Bisnagar*. The great River *Menam* runs through the middle of the Kingdom of *Siam* as it lies in length, the River has its spring in the great Lake *Cbiamay* in the Latitude of 30 Degrees, and falls into the Sea in 13 Degrees, so that the length of this Kingdom is 330 Leagues. On the West of it is *Bengala*, on the South *Malaca*, on the East *Cambodia*, and on the North *China*. It contains much Mountain and Plain, and in both sundry sorts of People, some most barbarous and cruel, who feed on human Flesh, as the *Guei* who for ornament

nement make figures on their Bodies with hot Irons. Here are bred many Elephants, black Cattle and Buffaloes. It has many Sea-port Towns and populous Cities. *Hu-dia* is the Metropolis or Court. The Faith of the *Siamites* agrees in many considerable points with the Christian, as one God, Heaven and Hell, Good and Bad Angels attending each body. They build sumptuous Temples, in which they place Idols of vast bignets. They are very religious, sparing in Diet, much given to divination, studious, particularly in Astrology. All the Land is most fruitful, abounds in Gold and Silver, and other Metals. The memorable services of Subjects are recorded to be read to the Princes, not the favours of the Kings. Against this King takes the Field, he has in a readiness almost 300000 Men, 10000 Elephants, and other Beasts of burthen.

6. About this time *Fernan Perez de Andrade* (sent by the King to several discoveries) sailing towards the Bay of *Bengala*, arrived at *Pacem* the Metropolis of one of the Kingdoms of *Sumatra*, where he found *Portugueses* trading, and was well received of that King. Here he lost his biggest Ship, burnt by a Candle carelessly set up, and was thereby obliged to return to *Malaca*, sending away *John Coello* in a Ship of *Bengala* to expect him there with what Intelligence he could get till he returned from *Malaca*. Hence *Coello* set out with fresh Instructions for *China*, and met with furious Storms and other Dangers. On the Coast

Coast of *Champa* taking in fresh Water, had like to cost him his Life. At *Patane* he established Peace and Commerce with the Governour, the same at other places, and thus spent the Winter without reaching *China*. He returned to *Malaca*, and refitted himself for his Voyage, to which he now sets out with eight Ships.

7. The Empire of *China* is the most Eastern part of *Asia*, as *Spain* the most Western of *Europe*. Opposite to it is the Island *Hainan*, as that of *Cadix* to *Spain*. It is almost as big as all *Europe*: Divided from *Tartary* by a wonderful Wall running from East to West above 200 Leagues, and ends at a vast Mountain that like a Promontory is washed by the Eastern Sea. This large Empire is divided into fifteen Provinces or Governments. Along the Coast *Quantung*, *Fokien*, *Chekiang*, *Nanking*, *Xantung*, *Leaotung*. The inland, *Queicheu*, *Funnan*, *Quangsi*, *Szechuen*, *Huquang*, *Xensi*, *Kiangsi*, *Honan* and *Xansi*, in which are 244 Cities. Its Riches are prodigious, its Government to be admired above all others. They say they have two Eyes, *Europe* one, and all the rest of the World is blind. They had Printing and Cannon long before us. The City *Quantung*, which is the Chief on the Coast, is remarkable for its Greatness, Strength of its Wall, and resort of Strangers most Merchants.

8. *Fernan Perez* arriving here after some dangers and difficulties, had a conference with the three Governours of this City,  
and

and sent to them one *Thomas Perez* with an Embassy and Present from our King to theirs, to be sent forward to him. He settled a Peace with that City and traded in it and the neighbouring Parts, and then sailed for *Malaca*, having received advice of the dangerous condition it was in, by reason of the War with the King of *Bintan* and the Discord between the *Portugueses*.

9. *Fernan Perez* loaded with Riches, Ammunition, and good Success in *China*, was no less welcome at *Malaca*, than *D. Alexius de Meneses* had been not long before. What followed shall be seen hereafter. Now let us turn to behold *James Lopez de Sequeyra* newly possess'd of the Government. *Lope Soarez de Albergaria* was the third Governor. He was a comly Man, very red hair; he is pictured with crimson Breeches and Doublet, and black Coat lined with the same, his Armour white adorned with Gold.

### C H A P. III.

*From the Year 1518, till the Year 1520, ending the Government of Lope Soarez de Albergaria, and beginning that of James Lopez de Sequeira, King Emanuel still reigning.*

1518. 1. **A** Bout the end of *March* sailed from *Lisbon* nine Ships bound for *India*, with 1500 fighting Men, all under the command



command of *James Lopez de Sequeyra*, to whom the King gave the Government of *India* as a reward of his good Service in *Africk*, his discovery of *Malaca*, and worthy Qualities. At the *Cape of Good Hope*, one Ship was in danger of perishing by means of a great Fish, which running against her, stuck the length of two spans of a long Beak it has into her side; this was afterwards found to be the Fish called the *Needle*. *Lope Soarez* presently resigned the Government to *James Lopez*, and set Sail for *Portugal* with nine Ships. *Sequeyra* began to act. *D. Alonso de Meneses* was sent against *Baticala*, because it refused to pay. *John Gomez* went for *Maldivia*, where he was to command and build a Fort. These things dispatched at *Cochin*, *James Lopez* went away to *Goa*, whence he dispatched others, *Anthony de Saldana* to the Coast of *Arabia*, and *Simon de Andrade* to *Cbina*.

2. The King of *Bintam* who had treacherously concluded a Peace, only that *D. Alexius Meneses* and *Fernan Perez* might depart for *Cochin*, as soon as they were gone, attacked *Malaca* with 1500 Men, and many Elephants, and with 60 Vessels by Sea. In the City were only 200, many sick, and most unprovided. But this surprise cured many of their Feavers, and all Men running to oppose the danger, on both sides there was a sharp engagement for the space of three hours with great loss to the Enemy, and some on our side. Twenty days the King lay before the Town, and

Q

then

then retired having lost 330 Men, of ours 18 were killed. Then he lay to hinder the bringing of Provisions till the Governour sent relief, and the *Portugueses* perceiving the damage they received from the Fort of *Muar*, whence *Sansotea Raja* made inroads, they resolved to gain it, and accordingly gave the assault, and after a vigorous resistance entered, having killed most of the Defendants, which were 800 *Moors*, and then burnt it after securing the spoil, in which were 300 Cannons, some of Brals. Thus *Malaca* was for a long time delivered of a dangerous Enemy.

3. The King of *Bintam* still persisting in his resolution of taking *Malaca*, the Inhabitants were reduced to great extremity, having but few Men, many of them sick, and their Commander *Alfonso Lopez* ready to die. He delivered the City from this last danger by resigning his command to *Garcia de Sa*, who was newly arrived with 60 Men. Nothing of note happened at this time, only that *James Pacheco* going with two Ships in search of the Island of Gold was lost, and most of his Men.

1519.

4. Now arrived at *Malaca*, *Anthony Correa*, who came from the City *Mariavan*, where he had been concluding a Peace with the King of *Pegu*, at the swearing of the Peace assisted with the King's Ministers, the Priests of both Nations, Catholick and Gentiles. The Heathen was called the Great *Raulim*, who after the Capitulations made in the Golden Mine, as is the Custom

from of those People were publicly read, began to read in a Book, and then taking some yellow Paper ( a colour dedicated to their holy uses ) with some sweet Leaves of Trees, whereon were certain Characters, set Fire to it all, and then taking the Hands of the King's Minister and holding them over the althes, said some words, which rendered the Oath inviolable. *Anthony Correa*, to answer this Solemnity, ordered his Priest to put on a Surplice and bring his Breviary, which was so tottered and torn, that it was scandalous those Heathens should see how little respect was paid to our sacred Books. *Correa* observing this, ordered to be brought instead of it a Book of Church-Musick, which was more creditable, being bigger and better bound, and opening it, the first Verse he met was *Vanity of Vanities*. This passed among those People as well as if it had been the Gospel. The Metropolis of this Kingdom is *Bagou*, corruptly called *Pegu*. On the West of it is the Bay of *Bengala*, on the East the Kingdom of *Siam*, on the South that of *Malaca*, and on the North that of *Arracam*. The length almost a 100 Leagues, and in some places the same bredth, not including its Conquests. The Land is plain, well watered, and therefore fruitful, producing several Plants and plentiful of Provisions, as well of Cattle as Grain. In it many Temples with multiplicity of Idols and much variety of Ceremonies. The People believe themselves to be descended from a *Chinese Dog* and Woman, who only

Q 2

escaping

escaping from shipwrack on that Coast ingendred, and thence they say it is that the Men are very ugly and not the Women, those taking after the Father, and these after the Mother. *Sodomy* being grown much in use among them, a Queen called *Canane* endeavouring to banish it, ordered that all should wear small Bells on the private Parts, thereby to incite them to the use thereof neglected by that horrid vice.

5. *Garcia de Sa* encouraged with the relief brought by *Anthony Correa*, resolved to shew himself to the King of *Bintam*. He fitted 30 Ships, and in them 500 Men, whereof 150 were *Portugueses*, and gave the command of all to *Anthony Correa*. They sailed to the place where the King was lodged, which was defended by a Fort well mann'd and with much Cannon. The access to it was guarded by many difficult Passes and Vessels well provided. Our Men fell on, and the *Moors* stay'd not for a second attack, so the Fort was taken and in it 20 pieces of Cannon. The King retired to the Town and the *Portugueses* followed, and found him with 2000 Men and some armed Elephants. Mean while our Ships cleared all that hindred their going up the River, and then landing killed many and put the rest to flight, the Town was first plundered and then burnt. The King flying on an Elephant, stopped not till he came to the Island of *Bintam*, where he continued long, wanting Courage and Necessaries to prosecute his hopes.

6. His



6. His success in the beginning of this War encouraged the Kings of *Pacem* and *Acber* to commit some outrages against the *Portugueses*. *Garcia de Sa* being now victorious, let out a Ship commanded by *Manuel Pacheco* to take revenge of the harms sustained. After some success he sent out a Boat for water, rowed by *Malayes* with only five *Portugueses* in it, on a sudden they espied three Ships of *Pacem* with each 150 Men, the Commander made up to them before the others, and they finding it impossible to escape, boarded the Ship, and laid about them with such fury that they soon covered the Deck with dead Bodies of the Enemy, the rest leaped over-board, and after them the Captain, rather to punish them than save himself, being seen to hue them with his Cymater as he swam. The five *Portugueses* were left in possession of the Ship, which the other two perceiving fled. The King of *Pacem* terrified with this action offered Peace and Satisfaction for all the damage he had done, and so *Emanuel Pacheco* returned to *Malaca* with Honor, where the Ship taken was preserved as a monument of so notable an action. *Duarte Coello* was then ready to sail for *China*. More of him in its proper place, let us see what was done by the Commanders sent abroad by *James Lopez de Sequeyra*.

7. *John Gomez* went to *Maldivia* to build a Fort there, but behaved himself with so much pride, that the *Moors* offended at it, fell upon and killed ten or twelve *Portugueses*

*tugueses* he had with him. This is the Chief of a thousand Islands that lye in clusters in that Sea, and such is the signification of *Maldivia*. They lye like a long ridge of Mountains, and about the middle of them is this great one, where the King resides. The Natives are Gentiles governed by *Moors*, and the distance between some of them so small that the Yard-arms grate against the Shoars, and Trees. They are stored with *Coco-Trees*, the inside whereof is pleasing Food, and the outward rine of use to make Cables. There is another sort of these Trees growing in the bottom of the Sea, the Fruit whereof is bigger than the *Coco*, and a greater antidote against Poison than *Bezoar-stone*.

8. *Christopher de Sousa* sent to the Coast of *Dabul* did much execution, not without some loss. *Christopher de Sa* in the Bay of *Cambaya* gave some trouble to *Melique Az*, obliging him to lay up his Fleet of Boats.

9. This year King *Emanuel* sent a Fleet of fourteen Ships to the relief of *India*, which was dispersed to several parts. The Commander in Chief *George de Albuquerque* and four more arrived in *India*. Six stay'd at *Mozambique*. Some fell into the Coast of *Brasil* where fifty of the Men were killed, and one of the Captains *D' Luis de Guzman* wickedly slew others and turned Pyrat, whereby he grew very rich and at last died as he deserved. One was drove back to *Lisbon*, another watering at *Matira* lost some Men, and six more at *Oja*, that King keeping them long wth kind entertainment, the  
Ship

Ship sailed and left them, and was lost upon a Bank off of *Quiloa*, and the *Moors* of that Island, *Monfia* and *Zanziber*, slew all but one young Man. *George de Albuquerque* passed with much difficulty from *Mozambique* to *India*, not able to follow *James Lopez de Sequeyra* to the *Red-Sea*, as he had sent order by *Gonzalo de Louli*, who by the way took up the Men that had been cast ashoar in the late Storms.

10. *Jame Lopez de Sequeyra* having dispatched the trading Ships homeward-bound, commanded by *Ferdinando Perez de Andrade*, and settled other Affairs, sailed from *Goa* on the 13th. of *February* with a Fleet of 24 Sail, and in it 1800 *Portugueses* and almost as many *Malabars* and *Canaras*. On the Coast of *Aden Lopez*, his Ship struck upon a Rock and was broke in pieces, the Men were saved and he went into the Galeon of *Peter de Faria*. At the entrance of the *Red Sea* they took a *Moorish* Ship, who informed them there were six *Turkish* Gallies at *Gidda* with 1200 Men designing against *Aden*. The weather hindered going in search of them, and it had been to no purpose, for they hearing of our Fleet had haled in to the shoar. *James Lopez* designed for the Island *Maçua*, when by the way, on the 9th. of *April* being *Easter-Sunday*, there was seen by all in the orb of the Sun about the time of its setting, a little black Flag with some motion. Being arrived at the Island, they found the Inhabitants were fled, yet they found some Booty and Vessels

sels in the Port, and some Prizes in the Neighbourhood. The Inhabitants of *Magua* were fled for refuge to the Port of *Arquico* belonging to *Prestor John*; the Governour of the Town sent a Messenger with a Letter to *James Lopez*, desiring he would make Peace with those People that had fled to his Protection. He asked nothing in behalf of the Town because they were all Christians, and because there was a Prophecy among them foretelling the coming of foreign Christians to settle a correspondence with them, which he seeing the Christian colours looked upon to be fulfilled. *James Lopez* returned a courteous answer, and stood in to the shoar, where some Christians came abroad to him. They told him their Prince *Prestor John*, had some years since, sent an Embassadour whose name was *Matthew*, to a King of the end of the World, whose Fleet then conquered *India*, to inform him of those remote Christians, and demand succour against the *Moors*, but that he never returned. *Sequeyra* hearing this, was convinced those Men dealt ingenuously, because he brought that Embassadour with him, and had orders from King *Emanuel* to land him safe in his Prince's Dominions. The Embassadour was placed before them, who received him with great respect and joy, which was no less in him for being restored to his Country after ten years absence. Next day came ten Religious Men from the neighbouring convent of the *Vision* with the same gladness to see him, they were



were received by the Priests of the Fleet in their Surplices. There were great demonstrations of Joy for the Union of two so distant Nations agreeing in the same Faith, and the fruit of this meeting was, that those who from the beginning had not acknowledged the Supremacy of the *Roman Church*, now submitted to it.

---

## C H A P. IV.

*A continuation of the Government of James Lopez de Sequeyra, from the Year 1520 till the Year 1521, and reign of King Emanuel.*

1. **T**HE Kingdom of *Prestor John*, now discovered, is most known by this name, though improper, and is properly called the Kingdom of *Abassia*, or Empire of the higher *Aethiopia*. It was so called from that great *Jovarus* (corruptly *Prestor John*) who came to it from the Christians of *Tartary*, with a Cross before him like our Bishops. And this King carried a Cross in his hand, with the Title of *Defender of the Faith*, as being a *Jacobite* Christian. The Dominions of this Prince lyé between the Rivers *Nile*, *Astabora* and *Astapus*. On the East it runs along the *Red-Sea* 120 Leagues, this being the least side, which in all contain 670 Leagues. On the West it borders on those *Blacks* who possess the great Mines  
of

of Gold, for which they pay him Tribute. On the North divided from the *Moors*, by a Line drawn from the City *Suanquem* to the Island *Meroe*, or *Noba*. On the South it borders on the Kingdom *Adea*, from whose mountains falls the River *Obi*, that loses it self in the Sea at the Town of *Quilmance* in the Kingdom of *Melinde*.

2. The Kings of *Abassia* pretend to be descended from *Solomon* and the Queen of *Saba*, she being delivered on the way, called the Child *Meilech*, and sent him to his Father to be by him declared King of *Ethiopia*, who when he anointed gave him the name of *David* his Grandfather. He ordered his Household, and gave him Officers of his own, and for High-Priest *Azaria* the Son of *Sadoc*, who stole the Tables of the Law out of the Temple, and carried them with his new Prince. They affirm, that the Descendants of those same Officers still possess the same Employes. They had knowledge of the Law of Christ by the means of Queen *Candace*, in whom they glory as being of their Country. But their true Apostles were *S. Philip*, and *S. Matthew*. The King, in memory of his Descent, begins his many Titles thus: *David* beloved of God, Pillar of the Faith, of Kin to the Stock of *Juda*, Grandson of *David*, Son of *Solomon*, Son of the Pillar of *Sion*, Son of the Progeny of *Jacob*, Son of the Hand of *Mary*, &c. Emperor of the great and high *Ethiopia*, &c. The People are very religious, have many Churches,

Churches, and many Monasteries of only two Religious Orders, the one of *S. Anthony*, the other the Canon Regulars. They have no considerable Towns, little practice of Learning, no skill in Mechanicks, and so are very rude in their Diet and Cloathing. In such Houses as use more Grandeur, all the Furniture is of other Countries. There are as expert Thieves among them, as our Gypsies in *Europe*. The Religious Men who live in Convents wear long Habits of Cotton; the others and their Priests and Nuns, Skins, which does not cover as much as Modesty requires. Their Prince for the most part lives in the Field in a populous City of Tents, often removing. In his Messages he uses that style of *Portugal*; I the King greet you. This was what our Discoverers could then gather; let others say what is since found, and what Alterations have happened.

3. Now came the *Barnagax* or Governor of that Province, having received the News of the arrival of *Matthew* the Embassador, and our Fleet. He appeared on the Shoar with two hundred Horse, and two thousand Foot. After some difference about the place for him and *James Lopez* to meet, they met on the Edge of the Water, and were seated on Chairs upon the Sand, which then burnt with the heat of the Sun; there *Matthew* the Embassador was delivered, and with him *D. Rodrigo de Lima*, sent Embassador by King *Emanuel* to *Prefter John*. There they treated of building a Fort

Fort either on the Island *Camaran*, or that of *Maçua* against the *Moors*. Lastly, they both swore the Sincerity of this Agreement on a Cross, and after they parted, sent some Presents on both parts. *D. Rodrigo de Lima* set forward on his Journey without *Matthew*, who soon after died in the Monastery of the Vision, which he had earnestly desired to reach. *James Lopez* erected a great Cross in that Port in memory of the arrival there of our Fleet, and caused many Masses to be said in the Mosque of *Maçua*. Hence he went to the neighbouring Island of *Dalaca*, and having burnt the City, deserted by its Inhabitants, stood over to the Coast of *Arabia*. One Galley and most of the Men were cast away by bad Weather, and he came to an Anchor at *Calayate*, where he found *George de Albuquerque*, who waited his coming, and going on to *Mascat*, left him to winter there with the Ships, and he went on with the Gallies to *Ormuz*.

4. Whilst our Governor was in the *Red Sea*, *Chrisnarao*, King of *Bisnagar*, covered the Hills and Plains, and drank up Rivers, with an Army of thirty five thousand Horse, and seven hundred thirty three thousand Foot, five hundred eighty six Elephants, loaded with Castles, in each of which were four Men, and twelve thousand Water-carriers, to supply all parts, that the Men might not dispease to seek it. The Baggage was numberless, and there were above twenty thousand common Women. He led all this power to take the City *Rachol*,



*cbol*, belonging of right to his Ancestors, who still left the Recovery of it as a Charge to their Successors, and was possessed by *Hidalcan*, with whom to this effect he waged War.

5. The City *Racbol* was naturally almost impregnable, seated on a high Mountain, fortified with several Walls, and large and deep Ditches, strong Towers, stored with Artillery, and all other Defence, garrisoned by four hundred Horse, eight thousand Foot, and twenty Elephants, with Provision and Ammunition enough to tire the most patient Besiegers. *Cbrisnarao* encamped about it, and gave many Assaults to no effect for the space of three months, when *Hidalcan* came to the Relief with eighteen thousand Horse, one hundred and twenty thousand Foot, one hundred and fifty Elephants, and much great Cannon. After many Preludes these two Princes came to a Battel, wherein at first *Cbrisnarao* received great damage, but recovering himself, made such havock among *Hidalcan's* Men, that only those escaped the Sword, or Captivity, who at last moved pity in the very Enemy. The principal Booty consisted of four thousand Horses, one hundred Elephants, four hundred great Cannon, besides the small, and other Riches. Here died valiantly forty *Portugueses* who were in the service of *Hidalcan*, who saved himself by flight. As *Cbrisnarao* returned in a rage against the City, there came to his Camp *Christopher de Figueredo*, with twenty *Portugueses*, who brought

brought some *Arabian* Horses to sell to the King. They discoursed about the Siege, and he asked leave to view the place which was granted. He gave two Assaults, and being backed in the second by *Crisnarao*, the Town was enter'd. *Crisnarao* was puffed with this Victory when *Hidalcan's* Officers came to beg the Booty taken in the former. He answered, It should be restored, if *Hidalcan* came to kiss his Foot, as supreme Lord of the Empire of *Canara*. The base Condition was accepted, but the execution prevented by several Accidents. *Ruy de Melo*, who commanded at *Goa*, laying hold of this opportunity, possessed himself of the neighbouring part of the Continent, with only two hundred and fifty Horse, and eight hundred *Canara* Foot.

6. About this time *Lope de Brito* had succeeded *John de Silveyra* in the Command of the Fort in *Ceylon*, and carried with him four hundred Soldiers, and many Workmen, wherewith he made the Fort so strong, that it raised a Jealousie in the People of *Columbo*, who, at the instigation of the *Moors*, refused to trade with him. *Brito* sent them some Threats, which brought on him twenty thousand Men, who besieged him five months, during which time the besieged suffered great Hardships, till *Anthony de Lemos* arrived with fifty Men, with this small relief they ventured to fall upon that multitude, and putting all to the rout, the place was restored to its former quiet.

7. The

7. The season being fit to sail (which in those parts is very uncertain) *James Lopez* set out from *Ormuz*, and went to meet *George de Albuquerque* at *Calayate*, where he found one Ship arrived from *Lisbon*, of nine that sailed thence together, all the others afterwards came safe. One of these Ships sailing before the Wind beyond the *Cape of Good Hope*, stopped all of a sudden, the Sails, tho full, giving her no motion. The Cause being examined into, it appeared that a great Sea-Monster bore the Vessel upon its back, the Tail about the Rudder, and Head up with the Bolt-sprit, casting up Streams of Water. It was removed by Exorcisms, no human means being thought sufficient. The Sailers said it was the Fish called *Sambrero* or Hat-Fish, because the Head resembles it, and such a one, tho less, had been seen on the Coast of *Portugal*, doing great harm about *Atouguia*. The King ordered the Governor to build Forts in *Maluco*, *Sumatra*, *Maldivia*, *Cbaul*, and *Diu*. *James Lopez* resolved to attempt the last first. To that effect he treated with *Melique Az*, but was put off with delays, and he dissembling, sailed for *Cochin*, to provide for his return thither, in order to gain by Force what the *Moor* endeavoured to put off by Art.

8. He dispatched the homeward bound trading Ships under the Command of *Antony de Saldana*. Being eased of this Care he applied himself to that of the Attempt upon *Diu*. In order thereunto he gathered the

the greatest Fleet of ours that had been seen on those Seas, consisting of forty eight Vessels of all sorts and Qualities, and in them three thousand *Portugueses*, and eight hundred *Malabars* and *Canaras*. A great Power lamentably disappointed as will appear in the Sequel

9. On the ninth of *February*, *James Lopez* appeared with all his pomp before *Diu*, *Melique Az* was then absent, being gone to the King of *Cambaya*, to prevent him granting the leave he perswaded us to ask for building the Fort. And being suspicious this preparation was made against him, had fortified and intrenched the City in wonderful manner. He had left in it against all Accidents his Son *Melique Saca*, and three stout Commanders with a strong Garrison. Our Governor having observed the Difficulties, had it debated in Council what was fittest to be done, and all agreeing the City should not be assaulted, they all afterwards accused him because it was not done. And tho they allowed his Prudence in private, yet in publick accused him of Cowardise, but his Valour was well known. Besides they laid several Imputations upon him, so that the innocent *Sequeyra* suffered for their Crime, having acted nothing with that great Power, but only lost much Reputation. A misfortune (if it be lawful to say so) well deserved by Princes, who wink at such Crimes, and do not punish Faults committed through malice. *James Lopez* went to winter at *Ormuz*, some of the Captains to  
several



several Markets, and *D. Alexius de Meneses*, with the rest of the Fleet, retired to *Cochin*, with power from the Governor to act as should be expedient in those parts.

10. *D. Alexius*, at his arrival at *Cochin* dispatched the trading Ships for *Portugal*, and others appointed for several places. But their chief Business being Merchandise, their Names are more proper for the Custom-House Books. But because some of them were at *Sumatra*, it will be fit to give some short account of that Island.

## CHAP. V.

*A Continuation of the Government of  
James Lopez de Sequeyra, the Year  
1521, and Reign of King Emanuel.*

1. **T**HE Island *Sumatra* lying North-West and South-East is in length two hundred and twenty Leagues, its greatest Breadth being but seventy, the Equinoctial Line cuts it into two equal parts. It is divided from *Malaca* by a narrow Channel, by a less its most Southern Point is parted from *Java*, which is above one hundred Leagues in length, and but twelve in breadth. East of it lies *Borneo*, cut by the Equinoctial, so that two Thirds are on the North-Side the Line. *Sumatra* is plain about

bout the Coast, the inland mountainous, watered by great Rivers, covered with vast Woods so condensed with Fogs, that all the Force the Sun has there cannot pierce them. For this reason it is very unhealthy, yet resorted to for its Riches, and chiefly plenty of Gold. There is in it a Spring of Oil, a burning Mountain like *Aetna* in *Sicily*, it produces white Sandal, Benjamin, Camphire, Pepper, Ginger, Cinnamon, abundance of Silk, much Fish and Cattle of sundry sorts. The Natives are Pagans; the *Moors* first came in as Merchants, then possessed themselves as Lords, since the year 1400. Of the Natives those they call *Batas* who inhabit the inland are most brutal, eating human flesh. The *Moors* dwell on the Coast. They use several Languages, but chiefly that of *Malaca*. Their Weapons were poisoned Arrows like those of *Java*, from whom they are descended; afterwards they used our Arms. The Island is divided into nine Kingdoms, that of *Pedir* was once the greatest, now that of *Pacem* whose Kings are no longer lived than the Rabble pleases. *George de Albuquerque* now carried one of their Princes expelled, to restore him to his Crown, either by persuasion or by force, he having to this effect fled to the protection of the *Portugueses*, when *Alonso de Albuquerque* took *Malaca*.

2. *George Albuquerque* arriving at the Island, and assisted by the neighbouring King of *Ara*, proposed to the Usurper to quit the Kingdom to the lawful Prince, who

who had submitted himself to the King of Portugal. Genial the Usurper offered the same submission to keep his possession. The Offer was refused, and *Albuquerque* went to attack him in his Fort, which was scaled, and the Gate broke open, but valiantly maintained by thirty Men who were in a Tower over it with the Usurper himself, till *Cid Cerveyra* with a Musket Shot, which went through his Forehead, brought him down, whereupon the thirty Men dismayed and fled. The Flower of three thousand *Moors* (assaulted by three hundred of our Men) courageously defended a large Court or place of Arms, assisted by the Elephants. *Hector de Silveyra* directing his Lance to the Trunk of one, the Beast put it by, and laying hold of his Body threw him into the Air, but so fortunately, that he lived. Two others succeeded better, one killing the Rider, the other wounded the Elephant, so that he flew back, making great havock among his own party. The *Moors* retired to a lesser place, and being close pursued, the King of *Aru* coming on to our assistance in due time, two thousand of the Enemy were slain. Four or five Men of Note were killed on our side, many wounded, *George de Albuquerque* twice in the Face. Next day the dispossessed Prince was restored with great state, and made tributary to King *Emanuel*, and a Fort raised there as in other places.

3. At this time arrived at the same Port *Antony de Brito* with the Fleet that

had been commanded by his Brother *George*, who with the choice of his Men was killed on the shoar of *Achem*, twenty Leagues distant from *Pacem*, and was sent thither with six Sail, and three hundred Men. Behold an example of Avarice and Ingratitude. *John de Borba*, after suffering Shipwrack, having been tossed nine dayson the Waves with nine Companions, and cast upon the shoar of *Achem*, was received and relieved by that King, as if he had been in his native Country. But *George de Brito* arriving, he informs him there was great store of Gold in the Tombs of the Kings, and the more to induce him to commit the Robbery, said the King had taken away the Goods of some *Portugueses*. *Brito*, after some inquiry into the Business, began to pick a quarrel with the King, and seise upon that Gold. He landed with two hundred Men, and finding a Fort in his way, took it. Two Drunken Men issuing out after the taking were killed by the Enemy, and several succeeding to relieve or revenge them, *George de Brito* was at last obliged to come to their Succour at such time as the King came on with a thousand Men and six Elephants. Here *Brito* and most of his Men were killed, among them fifty of Note. This is the just Reward of Injustice, Ingratitude and Avarice. The sad Remainder retired to their Ships, the Command whereof fell to *Antony de Brito*, (Brother to him slain) who now joined *Albuquerque* in the Port of *Pacem*, where he left some



some Men, and three Ships which were afterwards of use against a *Moor* who infested that Coast.

4. *George de Albuquerque* returning to *Malaca*, and taking possession of that Command, prepared to make War upon the King of *Bintam*, who was forty Leagues distant from *Malaca*, in the Island *Bintam* of forty Leagues circumference. The Island was well fortified, having two strong Castles, and the Rivers staked, so that it seemed almost inaccessible. *Albuquerque* set out from *Malaca* with eighteen Sail, and six hundred Men. Finding it impossible for the Ships to come up, he landed his Men in Boats to attack a Fort, but the Water being up to their middles, and the Enemies shot very thick, they were forced to retire without doing any execution, and having lost twenty Men, and many wounded.

5. Hence *Antony de Brito* set sail for the *Maluco* Islands, which are in the midst of many others under the Equinoctial, about three hundred Leagues from *Malaca* Eastward. The principal of them are five, about twenty five Leagues distant from each other. Their Names (tho in general called *Malucos*) are *Ternate*, *Tidore*, *Mouzell*, *Maquien*, *Bacham*. The biggest not above six Leagues in circumference. They are covered with Woods and Fogs, therefore unhealthy. These five produce Cloves, but no manner of Food, and the Island *Batochina*, sixty Leagues in length, produces

duces Food but no Cloves. In some there are flaming Mountains, chiefly in *Ternate*. Their chief Sustenance is Meal made of the Bark of Trees like to the Palm, from these and others they have Wine and Vinegar. There is a sort of Canes that in the hollow have a Liquor delightful to drink. The Inhabitants are not great Lovers of Flesh, though they have plenty; more of Fish, of which there is an infinite quantity. They are not affable, but warlike, and most swift either in running or swimming. Idolaters as to their Religion. Of their Origin there is no account. They were in process of times possessed by *Moors*, since whose first coming to them there was yet living an old Master when *Brito* arrived.

6. To these Islands, and particularly *Ternate*, *Brito* was sent to build a Fort, which long since *Boylese* the King thereof had desired. Others had gone before but to no effect, as in the time of *Albuquerque*, *Antony de Abreu*, who lost one of the three Ships he carried, but saved the Men. He arrived in the Island *Banda*; five go under this name, but it is most proper to the chief, which is like an earthly Paradise, one great Ornament of it being the Plant which produces the Mace. *Antony de Abreu* returned to *Malaca*, but his other Captain *Francis Seram* was drove to *Ternate*, the King whereof seeing him, and some of his Men in Armour, concluded a Prophecy was fulfilled, which foretold, that Men of Iron should

should come to that Island, who would make it famous. *Anthony de Miranda* went thither afterwards, *Francis Serram* staying there to expect an answer from King *Emanuel*, to the Letters of the Kings of *Ternate* and *Tidore* each striving to have the Fort built in this Island. *D. Tristane de Meneses* afterwards carried this answer. Because the difference increased about the same thing between the two Kings and the King of *Bacchan* who desired the same, *Tristan* deferred the work to avoid the danger, and get loading for five Ships he had with him. This was what happened from the taking of *Malaca*, till this time when *Anthony de Brito* undertook the Affairs of *Maluco*.

7. He had six Ships and above 300 Men. At the Island *Agacim* he met *D. Garcia Enriquez* with four Sail. They set out together, and *Brito* arrived at *Ternate* at such time as the King *Boleyse* was dead, and he of *Tidore* had admitted to the Spaniards, thinking himself as happy in them, as *Ternate* could be in the *Portugueses*. Yet seeing the Queen of *Ternate* Governess of her Son, received *Brito* with great Joy, he visited and finding him displeased on account of the new Guests he had entertained, offered to deliver them up to him. This he thought would oblige him to build the Fort at *Tidore*, which at length was done at *Ternate* as the most convenient, *Brito* laying the first Stone, and after him all the Captains and Men of note crowned with Garlands, it being upon the Feast of *St. John* the Baptist.

R 4

8. At

8. At this time a Correspondence was held between *Francis Serram* at *Ternate* and *Ferdinando de Magallanes* in *Portugal*, which turned to the advantage of *Spain*, and trouble of *Portugal*. *Magallanes*, or as he is commonly called among us *Magellan*, was a Gentleman of good Note, a Man of Valour, and Knight of *Santiago*, and had served well at *Azamora* in *Africk*, and in sundry parts of *India*. He solicited for a sort of allowance (given usually to Men of service in *Spain* and *Portugal*) very inconsiderable for the value, but of much esteem for the honour of it. With much Justice he might pretend to it, and therefore finding a refusal, proceeding from the malicious accusations of some Men, which found more Credit than his Service, he resolved to quit the Kingdom, and go over to the Emperour *Charles* the V. his Service. By his skill in Sea-Affairs, and the Correspondence he held with *Serram* at *Maluco*, he guessed there might be another way to *India*, and this at such time as the *Spaniards* had began to taste the Fruit of those Islands, and accordingly he writ to *Serram* that he hoped soon to be his Guest at *Ternate*, going thither a new way. In order hereunto he went and offered his Service in *Spain*, was admitted, and the command of five Ships given him, with 250 Men, some of them *Portugueses*. He sailed from the Port of *St. Lucar de Barrameda* on the 20th. of September 1519. Many at this time took the liberty to rail and cast reproaches upon him,



him, but he to take off the occasion, had by a solemn act unnaturalized himself. Princes should be cautious of forcing to desperate actions by injustice, such Men as have deserved rewards.

9. These Ships being past the *Rio de Janeiro* on the Coast of *Brasil*, the Men began to be mutinous, but much more when having passed the River *S. Julian*, they found not the Streight they looked for, and began to be pinched with the great cold of that Climat. Hence proceeded some disrespectful discourses against *Magellan*, not only reflecting on his Knowledge, but also his Fidelity. He finding it run high, and that of necessity he must give them some satisfaction, suppressing the best he could the anger that began to swell his Breast, called together the Principal Men, to whom he made a large and learned discourse. He spoke of Navigation in general, then of Discoveries, and the Pains and Hardships that great Undertakings are subject to, he encouraged them by the example of all the great Discoverers that had been before them, he put them in mind that the World would say the *Spaniards* were less daring than the *Portugueses*, and after proposing many motives of Honour and Glory, concluded with threatening to put in execution the Power of Life and Death the King had given him, and accordingly to punish such as were refractory. This, instead of a Compliance, produced fresh Disputes, more Disagreement and finally a Conspiracy to kill

kill *Magellan*, thinking no other means were left to prevent the prosecution of this Voyage. The Chief Conspirators were three Captains *Cartagene*, *Quixada*, and *Mendoza*. The Design was discovered, and *Mendoza* immediately stabbed, and after quartered, the other two were taken, and *Quixada* quartered alive, both as Traytors. *Cartagena* with a Priest who had a hand in the Design were set ashore on that barbarous Coast: most of the Men were in the Conspiracy, but it was necessary to pardon them, least he should want them to prosecute the Voyage. Whilst they wintered there, he sent some Men into the Country, who went up about twenty Leagues, and brought some of the Natives of the stature of Giants, being above three yards high. After suffering much through Cold and Hunger, and continual Labour in the Ships, being almost spent, they reached the Cape they called *De las Virgenes*, or, *Of the Virgins*, because discovered on the Day of the 11000 Virgins. It lies in 52 Degrees of South Latitude. Below it they discovered the mouth of the Streight they looked for, being a League wide. Being entred, they found within in some places the same breadth, in others somewhat more, and in others much less. The Land high on both sides, part bare and part covered with Woods, many of Cypress, and much Snow which made the tops of the Mountains appear the higher. Having run about 50 Leagues in this Streight they spied another, and *Ma-*  
*gellan*

*gellan* sent one Ship to discover it, but having staid much beyond the limited time for her return and no news of her, he ordered the Astrologer *Andrew Martin* to erect a Figure, and he answered they were gone back to *Spain*, and that the Captain *Alvaro de Mesquita* was carried as a Prisoner for opposing that resolution. It proved so, and they spent eight Months in the Voyage. *Magellan* somewhat troubled at this action, called the Chief Men to Council, and contrary to the Opinions of all resolved to proceed. Which he put in execution and came out into the South Sea with only three Ships of the five, that which *John Serrano* commanded being lost, but the Men though with much difficulty all saved.

10. To shun the Cold which tormented them, he sailed towards the *Equinoctial*, steering W. N. W. and being 1500 Leagues from the mouth of the Streight, found an Island in 18 Degrees of South Latitude, and 200 Leagues farther another. Having lost his computation for the *Malucos*, he found several Islands in 15 Degrees and a half of North Latitude, and at last came to that called *Subo* in 10 Degrees of North Latitude, being about 12 Leagues in circumference. He was well received by the King and the Natives, and so good a disposition he found among them, that the King, Queen, their Children, and above 800 Persons were baptized. This Prince was at War with a Neighbour, and made use of  
*Magellan's*

*Magellan's* Assistance against him. After two Victories he was killed in a third Battle, together with the Astrologer and some others, on the 27th. of *April* 1521. The King who in Baptism was called *Ferdinand*, seeing that slaughter, agreed with his Enemy to kill all the Christians that were ashore, and inviting them to Dinner poisoned them all. They who were aboard being too few for three Ships, burnt one, and set sail with the other two, one of them the famous *Victory* commanded by *John Sebastian Cano*. They arrived at the *Malucos*, and were received at *Tidore* by the King, in hatred of the *Portugueses* and *Ternatenses* for their late Differences. There they loaded with Spice, and went thence to *Banda*, where they took in more with the Assistance of *John de Lourosa* a *Portugues*. The second Ship returned to *Ternate*, some of the Men being dead, and the rest spent by a contagious Disease. *Antony de Brito* treated them as if they had been his Countrymen, not intruding Strangers, relieved and sent them to *India*, whence they returned in our Ships to their Country. The famous Ship the *Victory* returned with triumph to *Spain*, after performing that wonderful Voyage about the World. Their arrival raised new Contests between the Emperour *Charles* the V. and our King *John* the III. because the *Maluco* Islands belonged to *Portugal*, according to the former agreement. The Year 1524. there was a meeting of Civilians and Geographers, about



bout this Affair between *Badajoz* and *Elvas*, which fell to nothing. But was afterwards sealed in the Year 1525.

C H A P. VI:

*Continues still the government of James Lopez de Sequeyra and reign of King Emanuel.*

I. IT is absolutely necessary something be said of those Captains who the foregoing years were sent to several parts, tho' what they did was in relation to Trade, a subject unbecoming a grave History. *Fernan Perez de Andrade* had secured the Trade of *China* in the City *Quantung*. The profit was exceeding great, and all Mens desires were directed thither. His Brother *Simon de Andrade* obtained leave of the Governour to undertake that Voyage with five Ships. They anchored in the Port of the Island *Tamou*, opposite to *Quantung* where the other had been. Our Embassadour to the King of *China* was not yet gone thence, but went soon after up a large River with three Vessels richly furnished with *Portugues* Colours, it being a received Custom that none but those of *China* should be seen there, which are *Gules* a Lyon Rampant. In this manner he came to the foot of the Mountain, in which are the Springs of the River he sailed. This Mountain is called *Malax-*

1521.

am, which beginning at the Bay of *Couchin* china in the Province of *Fokien*, divides three Southern Provinces, that is, *Quangsi*, *Quantung* and *Fokien*, as the *Perineans*, *Spain* and *France*. In one of the only two Ports there are in this division *Thomas Perez* landed, and travelled Northwards to the Province and City *Nanking*, where the King then was, having spent four Months in the Journey without staying at any place. So large is that Empire. That Prince designed to give him audience at *Peking*, a City farther distant. The Embassadour followed. But now appear the effects of trading avarice, for whilst he travelled, *Simon de Andrade* behaved himself after such a manner in the Island *Tamou*, that an account of his bad proceedings was sent after *Thomas Perez*. The Embassadour set out, but the Information reached the King first, and was fully credited. He and his Companions were condemned to death as Spies. The rigour of the Sentence was mitigated, but the Embassy not received, and they sent back Prisoners to *Quantung*, with order, that in case the *Portugueses* would restore *Malaca* to its King, who was a subject to *China*, they they might be restored and heard, otherwise these should be punished, and none ever admitted, but treated as Enemies.

2. *Simon de Andrade* was proud and conceited, and thought by high Hand to authorize his unjust dealing. To this end, as if he had been King of that Island, he raised a Fort, and set up a Gallows to terrify the People

People. He committed violence upon the Merchants who resorted thither, contrary to their Privileges, and bought young People of both Sexes without the usual precautions, giving occasion to Thieves to steal them from their Parents. These extravagancies which lost nothing by the carriage, were heard by the King before *Thomas Perez*, and had the effect above related. • At this time arrived there *James Calva* with one Ship from *Lisbon*, and others from *Malaca*. The *Portugueses* agree in acting more insolently, which wholly exasperated the Governours of *Quantung*, who to punish them, secured some, and contrived to take the Ship arrived last. They began to act when *Duarte Coello* arrived with two Vessels from *Malaca*, well manned and provided. The *Itao* or Admiral of that Sea, attacked them with fifty Sail, did some, and received greater damage from our Artillery, was forced to retire, and lying off, kept them besieged. Forty Days he had kept them in, when *Ambrose del Rego* came with two Ships more from *Malaca*, and it was resolved to force their way through *Itaos's* Fleet, and get out of the Island. The Fight was bloody, but a Storm rising dispersed the Enemies Fleet and left ours in safety. The *Itao* revenged this Disaster upon some of our People that arrived there, and upon the Embassadour, *Thomas Perez* and his Companions who being returned to *Quantung* were all slain and robbed of the Present sent to that King, and what *Perez* had gained. We will not pass

pass it in silence to show how great was the return of this Trade, for this Man being of base Parentage, and by Trade an *Apothecary* (though chosen for Embassadour for his good Parts) yet at this time there was found with him 2000 weight of *Rhubarb*, 1600 pieces of *Damask*, 400 of other Silks, above 100 ounces of Gold, and 2000 of Silver, three quarters of a hundred of loose Musk, and above 3000 Purses of it, at first called *Papos*, and much other Merchandise.

3. *Mocrin* King of *Lasab* refused to pay the tribute due to the King of *Ormuz* for the Islands of *Babarem* and *Catifa*, on the Coast of *Arabia*; and he of *Ormuz* was backward in paying us, excusing himself with the failure of the other. He had already sent a considerable Force with some Assistance of *Portugueses* to reduce him, but to no effect. He now resolved to do it effectually, and treated about it with *James Lopez de Sequeyra*, who to secure our tribute, consented to assist him against his Enemy. The King of *Ormuz* set out 200 Vessels with 3000 *Arabs* and *Persians*. The *Portugues* party consisted of seven Ships and 400 Men, commanded by *Anthony Corea*. All our Ships arrived at *Babarem*, *Raex Xaraso* commanded the *Ormuzians*, some whereof came not up. *Mocrin* was well prepared to receive them with 300 *Arabian* Horse, 400 *Persian* Archers, 20 *Turkish* Musquetiers besides Natives, and above 11000 armed with several Weapons, strong Intrenchments and other Works, the Wall well furnished with Cannon,



Cannon, all under the Care of tried Commanders.

The *Persian* Gulph lies between *Arabia* and *Persia*, from which last, as the noblest, it takes its name. This most famous Part begins at *Cape Fasque*, or *Carpela*, in twenty six degrees of Northern Latitude, and ends at the Mouth of the River *Euphrates*; along this Coast are many Cities, Rivers, Woods and Islands. It is not so on the other side, which beginning at *C. Mozandan*, or *Assaborum*, and ending where it meets with *Persia*, yet in all that distance has but four Towns, in which is a Fishery of Pearl. *Catifa* is opposite to *Baharem*, and is thirty Leagues round, and seven in length, distant from *Ormuz* one hundred and ten. Its greatest product is Tamarins, but has all other Fruit that is usual in *Spain*. The greatest Town is of the same Name, there being in the Island about three hundred Villages. The Inhabitants are *Moors* and *Arabs*, the Air unhealthy. The Pearl found here, tho not so much in quantity, is of more value than that of *Ceylon* in *India*, or *Hainan* in *China*. Opposite to the Island on the Continent is the City *Lasab*, where of *Mocrim* was King, who now was provided against us at *Baharem*.

5. *Raez* *Zaraso* was ordered to relieve where he should see the greatest need, whilst *Correa* landed with one hundred and seventy *Portugueses*, to which his Brother *Ayres* carried the Van with fifty, all of them knee-deep in Water. The Trenches assaulted,

faulted, the Fight was hot, the King encouraging his Men at the Head of them, till Weariness and Heat obliged both parties to take breadth. Being recovered, they return to the Attack, and the King being shot through the Thigh, whereof six days after he died, his Men fainted, and great numbers being killed, and wounded, they left us a complete Victory. *Raez Xarafi* from his Vessel looked on all the time. But after knowing the dead Body of the King was carried over to be buried at *Lasab*, he obtained leave to go take it, and having performed it, cut off the Head which was carried to *Ormuz*. We had many wounded, seven killed, and the Island in two hours was restored to our Homager. For this reason *Antony Correa* had the Title of *Babarem* added to his Name, and the Head of a King to his Arms, which continues in his posterity.

6. Whilst our Arms were exercised at *Babarem*, they were not idle in *India*. They assisted the King of *Cochin* against him of *Calicut*, who braved it with two hundred thousand Men, the other having but forty thousand. The *Portugues* Aid being but forty Men, thirty of them Musquetiers yet so terrified the Enemy, that they retired. *James Fernandez de Beja*, who was left by the Governor before *Diu*, now came to him to *Ormuz*, ill treated by the Vessels of *Melique Az*, whose double dealing was now visible. *James Lopez* thought to mitigate the Grief of this Accident, by another more grateful,

grateful, and brought new Trouble upon himself at Ormuz, thinking to prevent the Frauds of that Custom-House. To this effect he placed *Portugues Officers* in it, which so exasperated the Natives, who were concerned, that they endeavoured to shake off our Yoke, as shall appear in its proper place.

7. Now *James Lopez* designed to reassume the Business against *Din*, and therefore sent before *James Fernandez de Beja*, with four Galeons, to hinder any Ships entering that Port, he executed it effectually, and took some. But *Melique Az* his Vessels coming out with much Cannon and better Fortune, they sunk one of our Ships, and did much damage in the others, till the Wind, which had failed, favouring, they were obliged to retire. With like Fortune *James Lopez* drew near for having taken a Ship by the way, and divided the *Moors* were in her among his, those who were allotted to *Antony Correa*, set fire to the Powder, which blew the Poop into the Air, and sunk the Vessel, so miserably ended that brave Captain who had triumphed over King *Mocrin*. These Misfortunes obliged *James Lopez* to desist from the Enterprize, and go over to *Chaul*.

8. Here he found *Ferdinando Camelo*, who came from the Court of *Nizamaluco*, with leave for us to build a Fort there, for his own ends, and chiefly for the importation of Horses, which at that time was the Trade of *Goa* only. The Work was begun,

and *Melique Az* fearing it would lessen the Trade of *Diu*, and encrease our Power, resolved to obstruct it. He appeared in the Sea of *Chaul*, with above fifty Vessels of his own and Confederates, and presently sunk a great Ship in which *Peter de Silva de Menezes* was newly come from *Ormuz*, and for the space of twenty days did much damage in the Ships and Gallies, wherewith *D. Alexius de Menezes* opposed them. Notwithstanding all dangers the Work was carried on with good success.

9. But it being necessary for the Governor to repair to *Cochin*, because his Successor was arrived, and he must prepare to return home, he set out of *Dabul*, rushing through the Dangers that surrounded the Work. He left his Nephew *Henry de Menezes* to command the Fort, and *Antony Correa* at Sea.

10. Whilst *James Lopez* sailed to *Cochin*, *Agas Mabamud*, who commanded *Melique Az* his Fleet, came to hinder the Work of the Fort. To secure the Entrance of the River there was raised opposite to the Work a Bulwark, which was committed to the Care of *Peter vaz Permeo*, with upwards of thirty Men, *Mabamud* sent three hundred by night to surprize this Bulwark, whilst he on the other side gave a Diversion. They reached the place by morning, and the three hundred unexpectedly assaulted the thirty, and the thirty fought as if they had been three hundred; for tho the Captain and some others were killed, they maintained



tained the place till *Ruy Vaz Pereyra* came with sixty Men, and put to flight about two hundred of the Enemy, the rest being killed. This Success daunted our Enemies, and among them *Xeib Mamud* a great Man in the City, who feigning himself our Friend, sought our Ruin, and now sent a Present, and to congratulate for this good Fortune with *Antony Correa*. *Correa*, who knew his Designs, sent him for an Answer the Heads of the chief Men who carried the Present, and hanged the Bodies along the Shoar. The *Barbarian* was astonished, but began to act openly what before he had done underhand, encouraging the *Aga* by giving him intelligence of our Scarcity of Ammunition, but then arrived *D. Luis de Meneses*, to whom *Correa* gave up the Command. Mean while *James Lopez de Sequeyra* with his Ships set out from *Cochin* for *Portugal*. He governed three years, was of a ruddy Complexion, a white Beard, is painted with a Truncheon in his Hand, a Coat of Mail, his Cap and upper Garment black, the Sleeves, Lining and Breeches blew. He was the fourth Governor.

## C H A P. VII.

*The Government of D. Duarte de Mene-  
ses, in the Year 1522, when began  
the Reign of King John III.*

1522.

1. **D.** *Duarte de Meneſes*, now Governor of *India*, tho sent the year before by King *Emanuel*, entered not upon the Government till the twenty second of *January* of this year, King *John III.* being on the Throne, whose Father died the thirteenth of *December* foregoing. He brought with him twelve Ships. Having taken the Government, and sent the Commanders to their Posts, he began to feel the effects of his Predecessors, putting *Portugues* Officers into the Custom-House of *Ormuz*. He received advice the *Moors* had taken Arms, killed some Men, and besieged the Fort. *D. Luis* his Brother was immediately sent with relief, and *Simon de Andre* made Commander of *Chaul*, who began his Charge with taking two *Turkish* Gallies, and a Victory in *Dabul*, which reduced that City to pay Tribute. *Melique Az*, terrified with this Success, and the arrival of *D. Luis*, of whose Actions in *Africk* he was informed, withdrew his Vessels from before *Chaul*.

2. The

2. The Cause of *D. Luis* his going to *Ormuz* was the Infurrection which was occasioned by the avarice of the *Portugues* Officers there. *James Lopez* had placed them there against his Will in Obedience to the King's Commands, and at the persuation of Men who loved Novelties, and said the reason the Tribute of *Ormuz* was not well paid, was, that the Officers cheated the King, to prevent which it was convenient to place *Portugueses* in their stead, To the avarice used by the *Portugueses* was added, the Violence they offered to the persons and honor of those people, forcing their Daughters, and Wives from them. *D. Garcia Coutino* then commanded that Fort, with whom that King conferred about sending a Present and Embassy to our King to obviate the Inconveniences that Innovation produced. This Means was prevented, and so it broke out to the great loss of the *Portugueses*. For sudddenly by night they were attacked by Sea and Land with Fire and Sword at *Ormuz*, *Babarem*, *Mascate*, *Curiate* and *Soar*, by private Order from the King, and above one hundred and twenty of them killed. *Ruy Boto* was put to great Torments by the *Moors* in defence of the Faith. At morning some of our Men died, endeavouring to relieve others. All things being disposed the best the time would permit, and the Ships secured under the shelter of the Fort, *D. Garcia* sent advice to the Governor. Mean while he was besieged, had two Vessels burnt, and feared Hunger and Thirst.

Thirst. *Tristan Vaz de Vega*, and *Manuel de Sousa* received advice hereof at *Mascat*, and prepared to carry Relief. *Tristan Vaz* arrived first, and made his way to the Fort through one hundred and sixty Sail that lay before it. Two days after appeared *Manuel de Sousa's* Ship at an anchor two Leagues off. It was dangerous for the Fort to relieve him, and dangerous for all if he was not relieved. *Tristan Vaz* with his Ship ventured to his Aid through the hundred and sixty Sail of Enemies; eighty of them pursued him, making way with full Sails, and *Manuel de Sousa* thinking him an Enemy did some harm, till undeceived. he was taken into the Ship. The King of *Ormuz*, in a rage lays a heap of Gold on one side, and a heap of Womens Attire on the other, the one for such as should take *Tristan* and *Emanuel* Prisoners, the other for such as behaved themselves not courageously. Some being covetous of the Reward, and others fearful of the Disgrace, they manned one hundred and thirty Vessels, and set upon that one, which through Showers of Bullets and Arrows made its way to the Fort, and brought new Life to the besieged with the Relief it had on Board.

3. The King of *Ormuz* began to despair of shaking off the *Portugues* Yoke, and fearing the punishment of his Revolt, executed one more grievous upon himself than he could have received from those he had offended. He resolved to quit the City, and  
go



go over to the Island *Queixome*, which lies fifteen Leagues in length, close to the *Persian* Shoar, and three Leagues from *Ormuz*, is fruitful, but not healthy. Privately he commanded all the Inhabitants to follow him, and then barbarously set fire to that beautiful City, which was four Days and Nights burning. And yet some Gentlemen from our Fort held intelligence with the King, advising how he should behave himself with the next Governour to be restored, and this they did in hopes to be enriched by him. Our Men, tho astonished at this brutal Action were delivered from the danger of the Siege, and going out to see if any thing were left in the City, only found Water in Cisterns, and Fire in all the Houses. Soon after came in a Ship from *India* with Provisions, and another with Ammunition.

4. *D. Luis de Meneses* sent by the Governor his Brother to *Ormuz*, did nothing of Note by the way, but arrived at the Town of *Soar* with ten Sail. This Town they destroyed with Fire and Sword, and then gave it to *Xech Hoxem* to hold of the King of *Portugal*. Mean while his own Favourites murdered the King of *Ormuz* at *Queixome*, and crowned *Mamud Xa*, a Youth of thirteen years of Age, Son to the late King.

5. *D. Luis* arrived at *Queixome*, and after several Designs that took no effect, came to a Treaty with the new King. It was agreed, that the King should return to *Ormuz*, that he should pay the former Tribute

bute of twenty thousand Xeraphins, and the Arrears due, that the *Portugues* Commanders should not meddle with the Government of his City, and to conclude all that King sent *D. Luis* a Present of Pearls, Gold, Jewels and Silks for our King, and another for himself, which he accepted not but to be sent with the other, as was publickly done. Then *D. Luis* dispatched three Ships for *Goa*, which were to take lading there for *Portugal*. One of them perished in a violent storm on the Coast of *Mascata*. *D. Luis* followed soon after, and came to *Goa*.

6. He found the Governor his Brother, and all the City, in Tears, for the Death of King *Emanuel*, the News whereof was brought by one of three Ships that came from *Portugal* this year, whereof two had wintered at *Mozambique*. The Governor went over to *Cochin*, to dispatch the trading Ships for *Portugal* and other parts. At this time *D. Pedro de Castro* was not idle at *Mozambique*; for being informed by *John de Mata*, who commanded that Fort, that the Island *Querimba*, and the adjacent, denied the Tribute to those of *Zanzibar* and *Pemba*, whereby they were disabled from paying theirs to us, he went to *Querimba* with an hundred Men, and after a sharp Fight burnt the City, and obliged the Lord of it to pay the Tribute, the others terrified by this Example submitted. At his return he was in great danger by Storms and Hunger, and his Cousin *D. Christopher* killed by the Blacks who

who defended the Fruit of certain Trees, which our Men were carried to taste by Hunger, not Curiosity. *D. Diego de Melo* went now with him to *Goa*. *D. Pedro's* Ship being at an Anchor in that Port, suddenly sunk down right, being very old, whereby it appears there is no Security in things that are aged.

7. *D. Duarte* set out for *Ormuz* with six Sail, two of them Gallies, which on the Coast of *Diu* took a rich Ship coming from *Pegu*. Which lying between them in the night, the *Moors* perceived her sinking, and the Men in our Gallies asleep, so they furiously rushed into one of them, and our Men fled to the other, who seeing the *Moors* flie with their Vessel, and the other sink, took no notice, so that more Credit was lost by this Action than had been gained before. *Melique Saca*, Lord of *Diu*, afterwards had this Galley laid up, as if taken by his Vessels. About this time *John Rodriguez de Noronha*, who commanded at *Ormuz*, pressed that King to come thither from *Queixome* to live, as he had agreed with *D. Luis de Meneses*, it was effected with the Death of one of his Favourites, killed by a bold *Moor*, whom *D. Luis* had hired before his Departure.

8. *Don Duarte* being arrived at *Ormuz*, examined who were the deepest in the late Rebellion; and it appeared they were found most guilty who had the least Power. For *Raez Xaraso* a mighty Man, and the very Soul of those Troubles was rewarded; and  
*Raez*

*Racz. Xamexir* who (according to agreement with *D. Luis*) had killed *Racz. Xabdim*, another Tyrant over those Kings, was banished instead of receiving the promised Reward. The young King not protected by the Innocence of his Years, had the Tribute laid on him of thirty five thousand Xeraphins besides the former twenty five thousand, which he could not pay when the City flourished, and must now pay so much more when it was ruined. Whilst this was acted at *Ormuz*, *D. Luis* sailed towards the *Red Sea*, whither his Brother sent him with nine Ships, one whereof perished at *Zocotora*. On the Coast of *Arabia* he took and plundered the Town of *Xaer*, because they refused to restore the Goods of a *Portugues* who died there. At *Verruma* he burnt some Ships, then battered the City *Aden*, he entred the *Red Sea*, but did nothing considerable, and so returned to *Ormuz*, where he found his Brother the Governor, with whose Proceedings there he was so much dissatisfied, that he left him, and sailed for *Diu*, but being forced back by the Weather to *Ormuz*, kept him company to *India*. There they found two Ships of nine that came out this year from *Lisbon*.

9. That part of the Continent about *Goa*, which belonged to *Hidalcan*, and was taken from him by *Ruy de Melo*, whilst he was busied with the War of *Narsinga*, was now lost by *Francis Pereyra Pestana*, *Hidalcan* having no other Care but the Recovery thereof. *Pestana* was brave, and opposed the



the Enemies Power. *Ferdinando Rodriguez Barba* obtained a signal Victory over them. Five thousand Foot and four hundred Horse of them were after defeated by *Ferdinando* and *Anex Sotomayor*, with few Foot and only thirty Horse. Nevertheless by degrees the Country return'd to the Obedience of *Hidalcán*, and was confirmed to him by the late Treaty of Peace.

10. *D. Duarte de Meneses* began to inquire into such things as related to *S Thomas* the Apostle, a particular Care of our Kings. This was what could now and some time after be discovered. In the year 1517, certain *Portugueses* sailed with an *Armenian*, and landing at *Paleacate* of the Province of *Coromandel* in the Kingdom of *Bisnagar*, he invited them to go visit the place where were the Ruins of many Buildings, the Stones of several Colours, still retaining the Footsteps of Grandeur and Art. In the middle was a Chappel entire, of indifferent Structure, on the inside and outside whereof were carved many Crosses, like to the antient ones of the military Order of *Alcantara*, which is Fleury Fitched. A *Moor* resided there, who coming thither blind, miraculously recovered his sight. He said, That his Forefathers lighted that holy Body: that there was a Tradition that Church (whereof only this part was standing) was built by the same Saint when he preached the Christian Faith there, and that there were buried with him two of his Disciples, and a King converted by his Miracles.

Miracles. Upon this Information D. Duarte sent thither *Emanuel de Faria* or *Fria*, and a Priest and Mason to repair the Chapel, opening the Foundation of one side that was like to fall about the depth of an Ell they found a Stone-Tomb with an Inscription, containing, That when *Thomas* built that Church, the King of *Meliapor* gave him the Duties of all Merchandize imported, which was the Tenth. Going deeper they found a Hollow in which it was reported the Saint lay. Here they found between two Stones a Body and the two ends of a Lance, the But and Spear. These were believed to be the Bones of the Apostle, because those of the King and Disciple also found were not so white. They were put into a *China* Chest, and the others into another, and hid in the Altar. Inquiry being made, it appeared by the ancient Records of the Kingdom, that it was above fifteen hundred years since the Saint came to that City called *Meliapor*, then in a flourishing Condition, in and about which there was a Tradition there had been three thousand three hundred stately Churches, that it was then twelve Leagues from the Sea, the Ruins being now upon the very Shore. That the Saint had said, When the Sea should reach thither, a People would come from the West, and preach the same Faith he did. That he converted the King and all his Family, dragging out of the Sea a vast piece of Timber, which all the Force of Elephants, and Art of Men could not move,

move, the King covering it for his Buildings, and the Apostle for the Church. That a *Bramen* chief Priest to the King, envious of his Miracles, had killed his own Son, and accused the Saint of the Murder, but he restoring the Child to life caused him to say who was the Murderer. An *Armenian* Bishop who had spent twenty years in visiting the Christians of the inland of *Coulam*, swore he found what follows in their Writings, That the twelve Apostles being dispersed through the World, *Thomas*, *Bartholomew*, and *Judas Thaddeus* came together to *Babilon*, and there parted. That the last preached in *Arabia*, since possessed by the *Moors*, the other in *Persia*, and was buried in a Convent of *Armenian*, religious Men near the City *Tabris*; and the first embarking at *Bagora*, on the Banks of *Euphrates*, crossed the *Persian* Gulph, preached at *Zocotora*, came to *Meliapor*, passed to *China*, where he built Churches, and returned to *Meliapor*, where having done what is said, he at last suffered Martyrdom through the malice of the *Bramens*, who, to execute their Design, counterfeited a quarrel whilst he was preaching, to find an opportunity of stoning him, and was at last by one of them run through with a Lance, and buried by his Disciples in that Church of his own Building. Another Learned Man, a Native of *Coulam* affirmed, That there and at *Cranganor* were two Houses built by the Disciples of *Thomas*, who were buried in them, and that in that of *Coulam* was

was the burying place of *Sibila, Indica*, by whose advice King *Perimal* of *Ceylon* went to the Coast of *Mascate*, to meet the other two Kings that were going to adore Christ, newly born at *Betlehem*. That the same King at the Intreaty of the *Sibil*, brought her the Picture of the Blessed Virgin which was kept in the same Tomb. This was the Invention of the Relicts of that Heavenly Messenger in *India*. And gave occasion to build the City, at this time called *S. Thomas*, a Portugues Colony in the Port of *Paleacate*, seven Leagues from the Ruins of the most ancient *Meliapor*.

---

## C H A P. VIII.

*Continues the Government of D. Duarte de Meneses from the Year 1522, till the Year 1524, King John then reigning.*

1. **A** *Ntony de Miranda de Azevedo* was this year Commander of the Fort of *Pacem*, in the Island *Sumatra*. On the Western Coast of this Island are six *Moorish* Kingdoms. The chief was that of *Pedir*, to which were subject those of *Acbem* and *Daga*. But falling to War, that of *Acbem* gained the Superiority. He of *Pedir* took the protection of our Fort against his ill Fortune.



Fortune. *D. Andres Enriquez* then commanded it, sent to that Post from *Portugal* with *D. Duarte de Meneses*.

2. The Tyrant of *Achem* scoured the Sea and Land with a great Power, till coming to the City *Pedir*, he endeavoured to draw to his snare the King who had taken the *Portugues* Protection. To compass his Design, he prevailed with the Men of that City to write a Letter to the King, telling him he might safely come thither, his Enemy being already expelled, and that he might easily destroy him with the assistance of the *Portuguses*. He gave credit to the letter, desired the assistance of the Commander, who gave him eighty *Portugueses* and two hundred *Moors*, commanded by his Brother *D. Emanuel* in small Vessels of Oars. The King marched along the Shore with above a thousand armed Elephants. He was received at *Pedir* with feigned Joy, and a Design to take him Prisoner that night, which was deferred to secure the *Portugueses*. The King being informed of the danger, next day fled with two Elephants and some Men. The *Portugueses* were left on the Shore exposed to the Enemies Darts and Arrows. *D. Emanuel* and thirty five of them were killed, the rest fled. With this loss *D. Andres* lost also the hopes of maintaining the Fort. He asked Provisions of *Raphael Peresteller*, who was at *Cbarigam*, the chief Port of *Bengala*. *Dominick Seixas* was immediately sent with a Ship, who was stopped by thirty *Portugueses*, who were turned Pirates in that

T

Sea,

Sea, commanded by *Games Fago*: *Seixas* landed at *Tenacari* to get Provisions, and one *Brito* making himself Captain of the Pyrats (*Gago* being dead) and flying with a Vessel that was laden in the Port, left *Seixas* and seventeen *Portugueses* ashore, who were afterwards Slaves in the Kingdom of *Siam*, Such is the Fate of those who trust them that have violated all human and divine Laws.

3. *D. Andres* advertised the Governor of the Condition he was in, desiring a Successor to command the Fort, *Lope de Azevedo* was sent, to whom he would not deliver the Post through Covetousness of acquiring more, having already gained much there. *Azevedo* returned to *India*. The King of *Achem* over-runs all that Country with Fire and Sword, enters the City *Pacem* with fifteen thousand Men, and summons *D. Andres* to quit the Fort. He after sustaining three Assaults to save the Riches he had there, withdraws, leaving the Command to his Brother-in law *Ayres Coello*, who courageously took upon him this danger he saw the other shun. But the Sea forced back *D. Andres* to the danger he avoided.

4. *D. Andres* sailing for *India*, met *Sebastian de Sousa*, and *Martin Correa*, with two Ships bound for the Island *Banda* to load Spices. *Sousa* came from *Madagascar*, whither he was sent by King *Emanuel* to build a Fort in Port *Matatane*, which was not executed, because the Ship wherein were the Materials for the Work was cast away. These

two Captains hearing by *D. Andres* the Condition of *Pacem*, went directly to that Port. *Ayres Coello* had then stood a furious Assault with loss of a Post. The Enemy seeing this Relief, abated of their heat; and *D. Andres* after eight days resisting was forced back by the Weather. Above eight thousand Enemies one night encompassed the Fort, in which were three hundred and fifty *Portugueses*, some sick, some wounded, and all spent with labour and watching. With great silence they applied above seven hundred scaling Ladders, and mounted with great Shouts. The Dispute was hotly maintained on both sides, till some Ships being fired, gave light to each other, and to level our Cannon, which killed many of the Enemy and two Elephants. The morning discovered two thousand Men slain about the Fort, on our side only one Woman killed by an Arrow in her Chamber. The remaining six thousand retired, leaving half their scaling Ladders and Fireworks. Nevertheless the Difficulties of maintaining the place considered, it was resolved in counsel to abandon the Fort, shipping all the Men and Goods, and then giving fire to the rest. The great Cannon were left full of Powder, that when the Fire reached them they might burst. Most of the Fort was destroyed, but the Enemy coming in saved some Cannon, which afterwards did us great harm. The *Portugueses* lost some Goods in shipping, and embarked up to the Necks in Water with the

Fright, losing more Reputation by this Action than they had gained by the former. This they were more sensible of when they met at Sea a more powerful Relief sent by our Friend the King of *Aru*, who marched by Land with four thousand Men; and *Lope de Azevedo*, from whom *D. Andres* ill deserved it, embarked at *Malaca* with Ammunition to come to his Succour. *Sebastian Sousa* prosecuted his Voyage to *Banda*, and the Tyrant *Achem* followed the Fortune which had raised him above his own Hopes.

5. At this time *Martin Alphonso de Melo Coutino* was gone for *China*, not knowing what had been done by the *Portugueses* at *Quantung*. He had four Ships, and two joined them by the way. They sent ashore for fresh Water, and returned with Blood, the *Chineses* being in Arms to receive them. This drew them to a Battel, in which most of the *Portugueses* perished, some drowned, some torn by the Cannon, and some taken, part whereof died miserably in the Prison at *Quantung*, and twenty three were cut in peices as Spies and Robbers, the last part of the Accusation being the truest. *Martin Alphonso* and *Duarte Coello* returned to *India*.

6. All things cannot be exactly related in order as they happened. *Malaca* was streightned by the King of *Bintam*, who sent a greater power against it, and *George de Albuquerque* what he could against him under the Command of *D. Sancho Enriques*, whilst they prepared for a Sea-Fight there arose



arose a violent storm which destroyed seventy *Portugueses*, the whole being two hundred, the Remainder escaped. Let us see how Misfortunes when once they break out overflow.

7. Till now the King of *Pam* had been a Friend to our good Fortune, but at present seeing she favoured him he turned against us. *George de Albuquerque* (ignorant of this change) sent three Ships to his Port for Provisions, where two of the Captains and his thirty Men were killed, the third flying this danger met it at *Java*, he and all his Company perishing there. *Simon de Abreu* and Crew were killed in another Action, and in another *D. Garcia Enriquez* sent to hinder Provisions coming to *Bintam*, lost two Vessels.

8. At *Surubaya* in *Java* ten or twelve *Portugueses* were killed. *Sebastian Sousa* and *Martin Correa* found *Alfonso de Melo Fusarte* in great danger at *Banda*, having offended the Inhabitants of *Cantor* through Covetousness.

9. Such was the posture of Affairs at the *Malucos*, whilst these things happened. *Antony de Brito* had put the Fort into a very good Condition, when two Bastard Sons of the late King of *Ternate* disagreeing, and the King of *Tidore* seeking revenge because the *Portugueses* had not built in his Island; he agrees with his Daughter the Queen Dowager of *Ternate* to carry on his Design, at the same time that she had consented to make war upon him. But all the Contrivance was discovered, the young King and

his Brothers brought to the Fort, and the Queen fled to the mountain. The War began, and *Tidore* was besieged. There *George Pinto* was killed with six *Portugueses*, and forty Seamen.

10. The Siege continuing, some places were assaulted. At *Mariaco* was a Fort on a high Ground well garrisoned, *Martin Correa* first, and after him *John Mendez* entered it with twenty Men. *Leonel de Lima* relieves them, and at last the Governor of *Ternate*, Bastard Son to the late King, coming on with his Men, the *Tidores* were put to flight, and most of them slain. Several other places being taken, the King of *Tidore* begged peace, which was not granted him. But because there now comes a Successor to *D. Duarte de Meneses*, let us take leave of him, he was of a ruddy Complexion, his Beard black, his Cap, upper Garment and Breeches black, the Doublet Crimson, and the Linings. He governed three years, and was the fifth Governor.

## C H A P. IX.

*The Government of the Viceroy D. Vasco de Gama, and of the Governor D. Enrique de Meneses, the Year 1524 till that of 25, in the Reign of King John the Third.*

1. **N**OW the manner of receiving and delivering up the Government seems to be settled, it will not be amiss with our usual Brevity to give some account of it. At first the Wisdom and Experience of the person to be chose, were considered as well as his Birth. Afterwards the Birth was thought a sufficient Qualification. Gentility among *Portugueses* being of more account than Virtue and Merit, which has been the ruin of our first acquired Reputation. The Viceroy or Governor (for the Office is the same, tho the Title differ) solemnly swears, That he made no Interest to procure that Employ (how needless the Question, and false the Oath) that he will do Justice and follow his Instructions, that in bestowing Employments he will not have more regard to his Kindred and Servants, than to the Kings and such as deserve, that he will take no Bribes. All Vows made in storms all  
T 4 forgot

forgot as soon as out of danger. Can any thing be better swore, or any thing less observed. In *India* the succeeded delivers the Government to the Successor in the condition it is, and a publick Instrument thereof is made. There are always three or four sealed Patents ( called Successions ) in case the Governor should die. He sailed this year for *India* with the Title of Count de *Vidigueyra*, and fourteen Sail, and in them three thousand fighting Men. Two Vessels perished with all the Men, a third was lost, and the Men saved. *Mosslem Gaspar* was basely killed by his Caravels Crew, only because he was no *Portuguese*. These Ships being in the Sea of *Cambaya* in a dead Calm, on a sudden they tossed so, that all thought themselves lost, every one thinking how to save himself, *D Vasco* the Viceroy perceiving it was the effect of an Earthquake, he cried out with a loud Voice, *Courage, my Friends, for the Sea trembles for fear of you that are upon it.* One Man who leaped overboard to save himself was lost, such as lay sick of Fevers were cured with the Fright. *D. George de Meneses*, one of the Captains, took a great Ship of *Meca* worth sixty thousand Crowns. The Fleet arrived at *Goa*.

2. The new Viceroy visited some Forts, gave necessary Orders, and from *Cochin* sent three Vessels of Oars towards *Calicut* to curb those *Indians* who began to be outrageous. One of them fought three hours with fifty *Paracos*, large *Indian* Vessels, lost three Men, and had been lost had not his  
Companions



Companions relieved him, and put them to flight. *Hierom de Sousa* was ordered with six Vessels against the *Malabars* of that Coast, who defeated forty *Catures*, *Indian* Vessels, commanded by *Cotiale*, a valiant *Moor*, who hindered the carrying Provisions to the Fort of *Calicut*. Two Gallies having joined him afterwards, he fought eighty *Paraos* in the River of *Bracalor*, bound for *Cambaya* with Spice, he took twelve of them with the loss of four Men. He ordered the Commander of the Fort in *Ceylon* to quit it, as not worth the keeping, and had the same Orders for that of *Pacem*, but necessity had before caused it to be executed. *Simon Sudre* was sent to *Maldiva* with four Ships to oppose the *Moors*, who infested us. He fought a *Moor* of *Cananor*, who had six Vessels, took two, and the four narrowly escaped. The Viceroy, tho sick, had greater Designs in hand, but Death drawing on, he named *Lope Vaz. de Sampayo* his Successor, till such time as *D. Enrique de Meneses*, who was at *Goa*, and the next named in the Patents came. He died upon *Christmas-Eve*, having been Viceroy three months, was of a middle stature, somewhat gross, ruddy Complexion; he is painted with a black Cap, Cloak and Breeches, edged with Velvet, all slashed, through which appears the Crimson Lining, the Doublet of Crimson Sattin, and over it his Armour inlaid with Gold. *D. Vasco* had a natural Boldness for any great Undertaking, angry he was terrible, a great sufferer of Labour, and

and hasty in execution of Justice. In fine, fit for all that was intrusted him, as Captain, as discoverer, and as Viceroy. He was the sixth in the number of Governors, and second of Viceroyes.

3. *Lope Vaz de Sampayo*, sent *Francis de Sa* to carry the News of his access to the Government to *D. Enrique de Meneses* at *Goa*. He delivered that Command to the said *Francis de Sa*, and came away immediately. First he sent his Nephew *D. George Telo* with a Galliot, and five *Paraos*, against a Fleet that infested the Coast. They met thirty eight Vessels laden with Spice, under the Command of *Cutiale*, took four, and forced the rest ashore. The four were brought to *Goa*, with many of the Enemies hanged upon the Shrouds, the *Canaras* who rowed carried thirty Heads, and twelve alive, who were delivered up to the Boys, and by them stoned to death, the Sea threw up above sixty upon the Shore. Afterwards the same *D. George* had the like success against a Ship and nine *Paraos*, and then sailed to *Cochin* with his Uncle, who by the way being accidentally joined by *D. George de Meneses*, defeated thirty six *Paraos* of *Diu*, and took seventeen. At *Cananor* he hanged a Moor of Quality, which occasioned many of his Relations for shame to leave the City, and go live upon robbing along the the River. By the King's Consent *D. Enrique* sent *Hector de Silveyra* against them with two Gallies and a Brigantine; in two days he burnt four Towns with much difficulty,

culty, and took their Cannon. *Christopher de Brito* set out with fourteen Gallies, and about one hundred Men. They scoured the Sea, destroyed some *Moors*, and at *Dabul* came out to them two Galiots, and seven other Vessels with above three hundred Men. At the first shock they killed our Commander, *Christopher de Brito*; to revenge whom, our Men falling on furiously, in four hours time killed most of them, and took the rest and their Captain in Chief, who afterwards died of his Wounds at *Goa*, being first converted to the Faith. The Commander of *Calicut* being streightened by a great number of *Nayres* and other people that frequented that City, forced them to retire with only fifty *Portugueses*. *D. Enrique* made little haste to *Cochin*, because his Kinsmen *D. Duarte* and *D. Luis de Meneses* were there, and dissatisfied with what *D. Vasco de Gama* had done in their Business, and he had no mind to undo what the Viceroy had done to oblige his Cousins. He sent a Message before, that they should not receive him with any publick Joy, in respect to the death of *Gama*; this being the only Successor till then that shewed respect to his Predecessor. Another part of his Message was, that they should not give him the style of Lordship, because good Men had rather deserve Honor, than make use of its Titles. Afterwards the Viceroys took the Title of Excellency, and the Captains of Lordships. With such modesty did the new Governor enter upon his Command.

4. Soon

Soon after he set out from *Cochin* with fifty Sail, besides some belonging to the Inhabitants of the Town, and *Arel de Porca*, a Subject to our King with twenty seven, making fifty more, and two thousand fighting Men, thus he arrived at *Panane*. This is one of the principal Towns subject to *Calicut*, seated on the Banks of the same River. It was well fortified and stored with Cannon, commanded by a *Portugues* Renegado. In the River were many Vessels in order of Battel. The Fight began furiously by Sea and Land, the Fortifications were entred, the Cannon taken, and the Enemy fled to the Woods. The Town and Vessels in the Port were burnt, many killed, of our Men nine. Next day twelve Ships were burnt in the Port of *Calicut*, and *D. John de Lima* did the same in the Skirts of the City. Hence they went to *Coulete*, where was the same Fortification, number of Ships, and Artillery as at *Panane*, and twenty thousand Men in Garrison.

5. A Council of War being held, it was generally voted to desist from so dangerous an Enterprize, but *D. Enrique* prevailed for going on. *D. Simon de Meneses* was to command one Attack with 300 Men, *D. Enrique* another with one hundred and fifty, and the Fleet to engage one hundred and fifty Ships that were there. Great Valour was shewn on both sides; at last many of the Enemy being slain, the rest fled; of the *Portugueses* fifty four were killed, and many wounded. The Booty contained  
three



three hundred and sixty pieces of Cannon, a vast number of Musquets, fifty three Ships, most of them loaden with Spice; the rest being shattered were burnt, as was the Town. *D. Enrique* returned to *Cochin*, leaving *D. Simon* with twenty Sail, and five hundred Men to cruise upon that Coast.

6. During the time that *Lope Vaz de Sampayo* held the Government by reason of the Viceroy's Death, and Absence of *D. Enrique*, he sent *Antony de Miranda* with four Vessels, and three hundred and fifty Men to the *Red Sea*. He was come now to *Cape Guardafu*, where arrived before him *Antony de Macedo*, with a Galeon, and two Caravels, tho sent later. They had taken the Vessel of those mutinous *Portugueses* who had killed their Captain, and now practised Pyracry by this Crime to shun the punishment of the former. One *N. de Aguiar* commanded them who was beheaded at *Cochin*, and the rest impaled or banished according as they were found guilty. The two *Antonies* agreed to spread themselves cross the Mouth of that Sea, that so no Enemy-Ship might escape them. This Mouth reaching from *Cape Guardafu* in *Africk*, to *Cape Fartaque* in *Arabia* is fifty Leagues over. Here they took ten *Zambucos* and three Ships. Thence they went to the City *Xael*, and burnt many *Moors* in seven Ships, and took five. Mean while *D. Simon de Meneses*, assisted by *Fernan Gomez*, burnt the Town of *Mangalor*, and ten Ships in the Harbour. They scoured the Coast, had some Rencontres

counters, one with seventy *Paraos*, whereof they took twenty, the rest being shattered and disperled. Another time the *Moors* killed *Gomez Martinez de Lemos*, who going to assist *Dominick Fernandez*, struck upon a Bank, where died also *Manuel de Lima*, with seven Gentlemen, and all the Boats Crew.

7. Now the King of *Calicut* resolved to besiege that Fort in which *D. John de Lima* commanded with three hundred Men. Twelve thousand Men broke ground to draw a deep Trench about. *D. John* did all that was possible to hinder the Work, but the multitude prevailed and finished it. Then they planted many pieces of Cannon, some so large the Ball was two spans diameter. The Work being finished, *Zamori* came on with nine thousand Men. This Power was enough to terrifie any Resolution; yet *D. John* was not moved, but ventured to make a Sally, which had like to have cost him his life, so he resolved to stand firm against all their Assaults.

8. The Battery began furiously at break of day on the thirteenth of *June*. Our Cannon was more dexterously played, and did great harm, but it appeared not so much in the multitude. Next day advice was sent to the Governor, who immediately sent to their Relief two Caravels, with one hundred and fifty Men, commanded by *Christopher Jusarte* and *Duarte Fonseca*. The former arrived first, and there was a sharp dispute by Sea and Land about their entering the Fort, in which three Gentlemen were killed.

killed. The Enemy immediately applied scaling Ladders, but were repulsed with great slaughter. *D. John* sent *Duarte de Fomseca* back to *Cochin* to demand more succour, five hundred Men were sent him. Whilst they sailed, all the military Arts then in use were practised against the besieged, and above fifty of them killed.

9. This Relief could not reach *Calicut*, but was forced back to *Cochin*. The Governor joined two Squadrons he had prepared, and they both appeared to the distressed Fort, when Rage and Despair acted more in its Defence than Valour or Conduct. *Hector de Silveira* commanded one of the Squadrons containing seven Ships, and *Peter de Faria* the other of twenty five, and three hundred and thirty Men. They encouraged our Men, and did harm to the Enemy from the Water, because they could not land till the Governour arrived with twenty Sail, and 1500 Men, besides some Catures or small Craft; and *Antony de Miranda* coming at the same time, all the Sea of *Calicut* was covered with Ships. A Council was held about landing, all the Votes were in the negative. *D. Enrique* spent four days in considering what to do, then came to this Resolution.

10. One night he put one hundred and fifty Men into the Fort under the valiant *Hector de Silveira*, and the next as many more under *D. James de Lima*. By break of day he landed, clearing the Shore of throngs of Enemies with Shot, Granados, and

and all sorts of Weapons. In some Intrenchments they burnt two hundred, in others three hundred *Moors*. Many Gentlemen particularly signalized themselves upon this Occasion. *Hector de Silveira* did wonders. *D. George de Meneses* with a two handed Sword made great slaughter, till losing the Right Hand, he took a less Sword in the Left, and went on without losing the Cutlace. But who can recount the Actions of this day. In fine, three thousand of the Enemy were killed, of ours thirty, none of Note. *D. Enrique* remained Master of the Field, and pitched his Tents to give there the necessary Orders. *Zamori* sent to desire peace, the Treaty held four days, and broke up without any effect. The Fort was demolished (as King *John* had commanded) because it was of no importance. Having shipped all that was in it of Value with great care and privacy, they laid Trains to blow it up, and all drew off to the Ships. The *Moors* finding the Coast clear, and no Body in the Fort, run in Clusters to pillage; but the Powder suddenly taking fire, blew up the whole Fabrick with great slaughter of them. This shews how much must be ventured rather than hazard Reputation; since all this Labour and Preparation served only to raze that Fort, because it should not be thought it was rather Fear than Conveniency forced us to quit it.





sent by *Prester John* to *Portugal*. They went to rest at *Ormuz*.

2. *Peter Mascarenas*, who the foregoing year went to succeed *George de Albuquerque* in the Command of *Malaca*, found it in some distress, after performing honorable Actions. *Martin Alfonso de Sousa* scouring that Coast with six Ships and two hundred Men had done great execution among the Natives. After returning to *Malaca* he again went out to meet *Lacxemena*, who ravaged the Neighbourhood with thirteen hundred *Moors*, after a bloody Fight they were defeated, and *Martin* being mortally wounded, died in the City. The King of *Linga* our Ally had asked relief of *George Albuquerque*, against the King of *Bintam*, by whom he was besieged. Eighty Men were sent, who falling upon the Besiegers killed six hundred, the rest fled. This Victory cost but one Man.

3: Here *Peter Mascarenas* heard of a *Renegado Portugues*, who commanding three thousand Men of the King of *Bintam*, had done much harm to the City, in which there were but a hundred, yet obliged him to retire with shame. Two hundred and fifty solemnly vowed to carry the Head of *George de Albuquerque*, or that of the Factor *Garcia Chaino*, to the King of *Bintam* (all Vows are easier to make than perform) they lay in ambush in a close Wood, six *Portugueses*, whereof one was *Francis Correa*, fell into it. He seeing no possibility of escaping, encouraged the other five, and falling

falling desperately upon the two hundred and fifty killed fourteen, the others fled. One of the six died.

4. *Antony de Brito* at *Maluco*, seeing he was not relieved, desired ( the last year ) a Successor might be sent him, *D. Garcia Enriquez* who then commanded the Cruisers upon the Coast of *Malaca* went thither.

5. He arrived at *Ternate* , where some Differences arose between him and *Brito*. They agreed among themselves, and by consent sent a *Portugues* with a small Vessel to discover the Islands called *Celebes*, where they heard was great plenty of Gold. The Discoverer found the Islands, but not the Gold; and being upon his return, was carried away by a storm to the Eastward, till he lost his Account, and unexpectedly fell into a great and beautiful Island. The Inhabitants most simple, and treated them with great affection. Of Colour more inclined to white, of Body strong and comly, lank Hair, and long Beards, their Cloaths of very fine Mats; their Food, Roots, Cocos and Figs. Their Language was not understood, but they dealt by signs. By tokens they gave to understand that in the mountain there was Gold, whereof they made no use; they had no knowledge of Iron, or any other Metal. They left this Island, which they called of *James Lopez de Sequeira* the Name of the Pilot, and returned to *Ternate* after eight months, whence *Antony de Brito* was then departed, leaving *D. Garcia* the Command of the Fort.

6. *Peter Mascarenas* at *Malaca* considering how much had been done by his Predecessors in defence of that place, and that it was no less insupportable than dangerous, to suffer the King of *Bintam* to lie safe in his Works, and continue his hopes proposed to deprive him of both. He immediately began to put in execution his Designs, tho they proved unsuccessful.

7. *George de Albuquerque* sailing from *Malaca* towards *Cochin*, with only one Vessel, met *Arel de Porca* with twenty five Barques of *Calicut*, who was seeking Revenge, for that *D. Enrique* had treated him as he deserved for his Cowardliness at the Assault of *Coulete*. The Case was that *D. Enrique* at that Engagement perceiving him stand only as a Looker on, watching the opportunity of sharing the Plunder, caused a Cannon to be levelled at him so dexterously, that it broke his Leg. Now he sought Revenge, and drew on himself farther punishment, for *Albuquerque* not able to avoid the twenty five Barques, to lose no time of playing his Cannon, levelled among them all, they answered with Showers of Ball and Arrows. But our Artillery was so well managed, that *Arel* was forced to retire with considerable loss, having done no other damage to *Albuquerque*, than the killing one of his Slaves.

8. The Governor *D. Enrique* still continued his Preparations against *Diu*, giving out they were for *Aden*. In all things he acted the part of a wise Captain.



9. He set out with seventeen Sail of several sorts all large, with a resolution to clear that Coast of Pyrats, that always abound there. At *Chale* two Leagues from *Calicut* he set ashore *D. George de Meneses* with five hundred Men, who reduced the Town to Ashes. At *Bacanor* he found *D. George Telo* and *Peter de Faria* entering that River, in which they shut up above one hundred *Paraos*, bound for *Cambaya*, laden with Spice. He sent to their assistance *D. George de Meneses*, with four hundred Men in two Ships. The *Moors* by Land and Sea were four thousand strong. *Peter de Faria* was left to keep the Mouth of the River, the other went up to the *Paraos*, and saw the Shore covered with Men and Cannon. At length they engaged, the Fight was bravely maintained, but the multitude, the disadvantage of the place, and ill Fortune, obliged our Captains to retire, after losing forty Men. Victory cannot be always tied to one side, and it is wonderful, that in so many Encounters our Party should scarce ever be worsted, never quite defeated.

10. This was not the greatest Loss then happened to the *Portugueses*, for at this time *D. Enrique* fell sick of an Inflammation in two Issues he had upon one Leg, and finding Death came on, he gave the necessary Orders, and expired with that Calmness he had practised living. This happened at *Cannanor*, (where he is buried) about the end of *January* in the thirtieth year of his Age.

He was Son to *D. Ferdinand de Meneses*, called the *Red*, of a pleasing Countenance, a large Stature, an awful Presence, of a free Mind, his Actions just, free from Covetousness, continent, a true Patron of Merit, and Professor of Honor. It may appear how free from Avarice in that after his Death all his Treasure was but thirteen Royals and a half, not a Crown in all; not but that he had an Estate before, but spent it during his Government on such as deserved well. He accepted not one Jewel of all that those Eastern Princes presented him. Let us give one Example of his ready Wit, which will shew the Beauty of his Person. A Gentleman whose person was contemptible, but had served well, and was dissatisfied with the Governor, one day talking with others, lashed out and said, *I am as good a Gentleman as any in India, and better than some, as much a Soldier as the best, I have served the King as well as any man; and in fine, I fear no man, nor yield to no man.* The Governor finding all this passion aimed at him, to shew he understood it, and was not disturbed, answered very calmly: *Sir, I confess you are a better Gentleman than I, and more a Soldier than I, that you have served better, and better deserve to be Governor; but since I yield so many Points, you cannot but grant me one, and that is that you are not so genteel a man as I.* So the Anger was turned into Laughter, and he doubly shamed. The most renowned Governors hitherto were *D. Francisco*  
de

*de Almeyda*, *Alfonso de Albuquerque*, and *D. Enrique*. His Complexion was white, his Beard Chesnut Colour, his Cap, upper Garment, and Breeches, black, slashed with Crimson Lining, the Doublet Crimson, over it a Coat of Mail, and upon that the Breast plate. He held the Government a year and a month, and was the seventh Governor.

---

*The End of the Third Part of the  
First Tome.*

---

---

T H E

*Portugues Asia.*

---



---

T O M. I.      P A R T IV.

---

C H A P. I.

*The Government of Lope Vaz de Sampaio, from the Year 1526 to the Year 1527, and Reign of King John the Third.*

1526.

I. **T**HE Governor D. Enrique de Meneses, when he died, left a Paper sealed, wherein was named who should succeed him, in case the person appointed by the King was absent, requiring all there present to give Obedience to him, this Paper was lost, but the person therein named known to be *Francis de*



*de Sa*, then commanding at *Goa*. The second Patent of Succession being opened (because the first was fulfilled in *D. Enrique*) it named *Peter de Mascarenas* then commanding at *Malaca*. The distance was great, and the Season not fit to sail, after some Debates they chose the worst Expedient, which was to open the third Patent, in which was named *Lope Vaz de Sampayo*. The Government was put into his Hands, having sworn to deliver it to *Peter de Mascarenas* as soon as he came from *Malaca*. He immediately dispatched Captains to several places, and went out himself to scour the Coast with seven Sail. Advice was brought him from *D. George Telo*, and *Peter de Faria*, that they lay upon the Bar of *Cananor*, to keep in a Fleet belonging to *Zamori*. He sent immediate Orders to *D. Antonio de Silveira*, and *Christopher de Sousa*, who were at *Goa*, to go join the other two, and secure the prize till he came. They performed it.

2. *Cutiale*, Admiral of that Fleet, perceiving the danger that threatened him, disposed all things to meet it by Sea and Land. He had ten thousand Men at Command, *Lope Vaz* went in person through Showers of Bullets to view the Fortifications, which done, he returned and prepared for the Assaults, contrary to the Votes of most of the Captains, who rather envied him the Glory of that Action, than feared the Danger, as if each were not to share with him in it. Nevertheless all obeyed, and

and three Vessels were provided with one one hundred Men each to land first. *Lope Vaz* followed with a thousand Men in Vessels that rowed. *Peter de Faria* was to fire the Enemies *Paraos*. They all at once courageously undertook the Charge assigned them, and at the same time mounted the Trenches with great Slaughter on the one side, whilst above seventy *Paraos* were fired on the other. At length our Men remained victorious, above eighty Brass Cannons were taken, *Lope* spared the Town, because it belonged to the King of *Narsinga*, with whom we were then at peace.

3. *Lope Vaz* sailed victorious to Goa, where *Francis de Sa* refused to receive him as Governor, on account of the Title he had to it himself by *D. Enrique's* appointment in the absence of *Peter Mascarenhas*. But the Council of the City siding with *Lope Vaz*, he was admitted as Governor, and began to act as such. The first thing he did was to send Advice to *Peter Mascarenhas* of his Election, either that he was not yet so fond of the Government, or rather to dissemble how fond he was of it. Next he gave the Command of Goa to *Antony de Silveyra de Meneses*, and sent *Francis de Sa* to the Island of *Sunda*, whether he had been designed from *Portugal*, giving him four hundred Men in six Ships. *Antony de Miranda Azevedo* had fourteen to guard the Coast of *India*. *Manuel de Gama* had nine for the Coast of *Coromandel*, which he cleansed from Pyrats, and retook a Ship of  
ours

ours taken by them. *Martin Alphonso Fustate* was sent to *Maldiva* with six Vessels, and took a rich Vessel of *Meca*, in which were three hundred *Moors*. Having given other necessary Orders, he sailed for *Ormuz* with five Ships, and three hundred Men.

4. They suffered much by the way, chiefly through Thirst. In his Passage he reduced the Towns of *Calayate* and *Mascate*, which had revolted, being exasperated by the avarice of *James de Melo*; for it is certain the King and publick suffer for the Interest of private Men, a thing *D. Enrique* was so sensible of, that this *Melo* being then Commander at *Ormuz*, he writ to him to be more moderate, and not provoke thirty years to go from *Goa* to reach sixty at *Ormuz*, for those were the Ages of them both. *Lope Vaz* did nothing at *Ormuz*, but compose the Difference between *James de Melo* and *Raez Xaraso*, which had occasioned the Revolt of those two Towns, receive the Tribute of that King, and *Prestor John's* Embassador, who came with *D. George de Lima*, both brought by *Hector de Silveira*.

5. Who was sent to lie off of *Diu* in wait of the Ships of the *Red Sea*, that trade for *Cambaya*, whereof he took three. They went to *Diu* where he continued many days at the request of *Melique Saca*, who made use of him to secure himself against the King of *Cambaya*, feigning he intended to deliver the City to *Silveira*,  
being

being weary of the Tyranny of that King. *Lope Vaz* was then at *Chaul*, giving Orders for fortifying several places, fearing the *Rumes* or *Turks* were coming with a great Power, whereof he sent advice to King *John*, and sailed for *Goa*.

6. At the same time arrived in *India* two Ships of five that set out this year from *Lisbon*, the other three came afterwards. These two brought fresh Orders from the King, relating to the Succession in the Government, wherein *Lope Vaz* was before *Mascarenas*, the former having been the contrary. The Surveyor of the Revenue *Alfonso de Mexia*, to whom they were directed, desirous to kindle Broils, caused them to be opened, to the great danger of the publick Peace.

7. The News hereof met *Lope Vaz* on the way, and arriving at *Goa* he was a second time received as Governor, and went thence to *Cochin*. He dispatched the trading Ships home, and sent in them *Prefter John's* Embassador, who went to *Rome*, where he gave entire submission to the Church of Christ, through the means of the *Portugueses*; and having received several Favours from Pope *Clement* the Seventh, returned to his Prince. These Ships being gone, *Lope Vaz* designed to go to the *Red Sea* against the *Turks*, who (it was said) fortified the Island *Camaran*. Some loole Tongues said it was a policy to strengthen himself at *Cochin*, in order to resist *Mascarenhas*, who came to take upon him the Government.



Government. Others said he really intended to go to deprive *Mascaremas* of all Power, and gain the Affections of the Soldiers by giving them plunder. The certainty is, he studied to secure himself, for to resign a Command voluntarily is a thing not practised since those times.

8. *Raez Solyman the Turk*, who killed *Mir Hozem* at *Gidda*, recovered his Princes Favour by delivering up to him this City he had gained in the Service of the Soldan, and by means of a considerable Present; for Gifts are of force even with Princes, who have no need of them. *Selin*, who was then at *Grand Cayre*, converted his Hatred to Love, because *Solyman* promised him great Advantages in *India*, if he would furnish him with a competent power to act there. He gave him twenty Gallies, and five Galions that were then at *Suez*. *Solyman* succeeding his Father *Selin*, sent *Haydarin*, to deliver this Fleet to *Raez*, who was then fortifying the Island *Camaran*, where the said *Haydarin* upon some disgust killed him. *Mustapha*, Nephew to *Raez*, succeeded him, and slew *Hydarin*, then sailed to *Aden*, and thence to *Diu*, seeking the protection of the King of *Cambaya*, as fearful of the Great *Turk*, whom he had offended with that Murder and other Actions; and having but few Vessels with him, for most of them refused to obey him, and returned to *Suez*. *Antony Tenreyro* carried an account of the Success of this Fleet to King *John* by Land, with  
general

general admiration, being the first that performed that Journey, till then thought impossible.

9. Let us now return to *Peter Mascarenhas* at *Malaca*, where the News being come of his Succession to the Government, he was immediately proclaimed and obeyed as such. As such he gave Orders, and bestowed some Commands. The Season was not yet proper to sail from *Malaca* to *Cochin*. But the Desire of Command wais no season so he set out without it. A storm forced him back to *Malaca*, and he making a Virtue of Necessity complied with Fortune, concluding it was Providence brought him to that City, which he had left in great distress, and taking it as an Omen of the Honor he thought to gain over *Bintam*, whose King entertained no small hopes of recovering *Malaca*, which was wholly unprovided *Mascarenhas* disposed the Minds of the few Gentlemen that were there, and prepared to fall upon that King, giving out all was for the Island of *Sunda*, whither it was known *Francis de Sa* was designed. He set out with twenty one Ships, in them four hundred *Portugueses*, and six hundred *Malayes*, commanded by *Tuan Mahomet* and *Sinai Raja*.

10. Great Labour was employed in clearing the Mouth of the River, when thirty Barques appeared, sent by the King of *Pam* to the Relief of our Enemy. *Duarte Coello* and *Ayres de Cuna* went to meet them, battered some, dispersed others, and took  
twelve

twelve loaden with Cannon and Provisions. They return to the hard Labour of clearing the Mouth of the River, in which Work *Ferdinando Serram* consumed twelve Days, wherein his Men were spent with toil, and his Ship pierced with a thousand Cannon Shot. Yet he obtained his end, tho not without danger of perishing, for *Laxeriena* fell upon him with such fury, that *Ferdinando* was left for dead, and both sides fought with great obstinacy. *Peter Mascarenas* perceiving this Action, pressed forwards in small Vessels that rowed, and coming upon the *Moors* made them retire with a great slaughter. Being returned to his Post, he considered the City, which was formidable for its Walls and opposite Fort, flanked with Bulwarks, stored with Men and Artillery. He ordered the manner of the Assault, assigning every Man his Post, and diverting the Enemy from the place where he designed the chief Attack.

11. Our careful and almost rash Commander in the dead of night, marched his men through a close Wood and unknown way, very difficult for the Roots of Trees that crossed it, and streams of Water that spread the Superficies of the Grounds, yet before day they reached the City. The warlike Instrument sounding on a sudden from all sides, put the *Moors* into a Confusion, at last they resort where they thought was the greatest danger, and that was where *Mascarenas* had posted the *Malayes* to give a diversion, whilst he entered on the other side.

side. All was full of Confusion, tho the Enemies behaved themselves gallantly. The first that mounted a Bulwark was *Ayres de Cuna*. Then they entred the City, and furiously run through it; *Peter Mascarenas* ran to the King's Palace, where *Laja Raja* who commanded fell upon him, and the Fight was couragiously maintained till they understood the King was not there, for he perceiving the City was entered, mounted on an Elephant, and fled to the Woods and Mountain. This being known, the *Moors* gave way, some were killed, the rest fled. The Garrison consisted of seven thousand, four hundred were slain, two thousand taken. The Town was plundered, the Booty great, and almost three hundred pieces of Cannon, no inconsiderable part of it. We had not above three killed in this Action, which was one of the most glorious we performed in *Asia*, to the immortal Honor of *Mascarenas*, and Peace of *Malaca*. For the King dying with grief, tho his Son *Alaudin* undertook the same Task, he had no power to annoy us much. The Proprietor of this Island from whom the King had taken it, begged of *Mascarenbas* to be restored to it, which was granted, he owning himself a Subject of *Portugal*. At this instant arrived the King of *Linga*, our Ally, with Succour. He was an honourable Witness of our Victory, and after congratulating, returned home.

12. *Francis de Sa* now prepared to prosecute his Voyage to *Sunda*. This Island is divided



divided on the South from *Java* by a very narrow Channel. It produces pale Gold, and abundance of Pepper and Provisions. The Natives are many, unfit for War, but curious in adorning their Arms. They worship Idols, sell their Children to supply any want. The Women are beautiful, those of Quality chaste, contrary to what is usual in most of the other parts of the World. They have Convents into which they enter to preserve their Virginity as in *Spain*. The married Women kill themselves when their Husbands die; a good Custom to shew their Duty, and to prevent their killing them, were it not against the Law of Nature, and therefore a brutal Error.

13. Hither came before *Henry Leme* drawn by the Plenty and Goodness of the Pepper it produces, he was well received by the King *Samiam*, who offered a place to build a Fort, and three hundred and fifty one Quintals of Pepper, as a yearly Tribute to purchase the Friendship of the King of *Portugal*, in order to his support against the *Moors* who infested him, and were now much inferior to the *Portugueses* in those parts. But he attained not then the effect of his Desires; for when *Francis de Sa* came to raise the Fort in the place marked out by *Leme*, he met such opposition from the *Moors*, that he was obliged to return to *Malaca*, without doing any thing.

14. Mean while *D. Garcia Enriquez* did something at the *Malucos*, which had been glorious, if just. A War being left on foot by *Antony de Brito* with the King of *Tidore*, *D. Garcia* made peace with him only to undo what the other had done. This produced some difference between *D. Garcia* and *Cacbil de Aroez*, who to revenge himself joined now with the King of *Tidore*. *D. Garcia* fearing this Union might prove dangerous, suddenly fell upon that City, then busied with the Funeral Ceremonies of the dead, and entring it, took away the Cannon, and burnt the rest. Thus the Peace rashly concluded was more rashly broke and the *Portugueses* throughout all those Islands were esteemed Men of no Faith or Reputation, for commonly a whole Nation suffers for the Faults of a few.

15. *Martin Iniguez de Carchisano* arrived at Port *Camase* in the Kingdom of *Tidore* with one Ship of fix the Emperor *Charles V.* sent the year 1525 to those parts that belonged not to him. The other Ships came before to an Island in three degrees of North Latitude, which they called *S. Matthew*, where, on the Trunks of Trees they found Inscriptions denoting it to have been inhabited by *Portugueses* eighty years before. As soon as *D. Garcia* understood the new comers were *Spaniards*, he endeavoured to compose the Affair, but to no effect, and perceiving they caused an alteration in the price of Spice, he sent first, then went in person to expel them, but were

were all obliged to retire after much damage sustained by the *Spaniards* Cannon, yet their Ship, tore by the *Portugues* Shot, afterwards sunk. Our Men had the like success at another Town on the Shore where the *Spaniards* were. *D. Garcia* sent *Martin Correa* to *Malaca*, where he understood that the Inhabitants of *Labu*, a Port of *Sumatra*, had slain *Alvaro de Brito* and seventy Men, he carried to revenge the Death of others killed there. As soon as he arrived, *George Cabral* recommended this Business to him, which he performed, reducing the City to Ashes, after putting all the Inhabitants to the Sword, taking all their Cannon, *Brito's* Galley and some others, the rest were burnt.

16. At this time came to the *Malucos* that renowned Gentleman *D. George de Meneses*, who lost his Hand at the glorious Action of *Calicut*, being the first that went thither by the way of *Borneo*, passing through many Islands, and giving his Name to some of them. The known way being five hundred Leagues, he made it a thousand, and spent eight months in the Voyage, by reason of the Difficulties of that Sea, which is a meer Labyrinth of Islands and Banks of Sand. *D. George* and *D. Garcia* fell presently at variance, because the latter would not return the way the other came, but by *Banda*, which was more easie and advantageous, on the contrary of that by *Borneo*. It seem'd *D. Garcia* sought not the same that *D. George*; and *D. George* in all obeyed

*Peter Mascarenas* as Governor of *India*. The Dispute came to words ill becoming such Men, and the words to actions of the same nature. *D. George* puts *D. Garcia* in Irons. And *D. Garcia* being set at liberty, puts *D. George* into them. Being threatened by some he set him loose, and *D. George* being at liberty, sent after him to *Banda*, in case he came thither to make him Prisoner, and take his Ship. *Vincent de Fonseca* carried the Message. He also sent *Vasco Lorenzo*, *James Cam*, and *Gonzalo Velloso* to *Malaca*, by the way of *Borneo*, and with them a Present for that King. One part of the Present was a Piece of Tapestry with Figures of Men, which the *Barbarian* no sooner beheld, but he cryed out, *They were men incanted that would kill him in the night*. And no persuasions being of force to convince him of his Error, ordered the Tapestry should not remain in his House, nor the Messengers in his Port.

17. *Fonseca* was so diligent, that he arrived at *Banda* before *D. Garcia*. They both armed, but *Fonseca* by craft took his Ship, and *D. Garcia* endeavouring to regain it, had two of his Men killed, and was forced to retire. He embarked in a Vessel laden with Goods for *Malaca*, which was there seized upon, yet restored to him; yet afterwards at *Cochin* the Vessel sunk, and the Sea swallowed to the value of fifty thousand Crowns he had in her. *D. Garcia* was left ashore with only the Cloaths he wore, and *Nuno de Cuna*, then Governor, imprisoned and



and sent him to *Portugal*, to answer what he had done at *Maluco*. This was the end of those violent Courses wherewith he endeavoured to enrich himself, and of the rashness with which he durst say, *That in spite of Sea and Winds he would reach Goa*.

18. Whilst *D. Garcia* struggled with his ill Fortune, the *Spaniards* at *Tidore* were at variance who should succeed in the place of their Captain who died. They agreed, and another *Spanish Ship* arrived, commanded by *Alvaro de Saavedra*. *D. George* modestly required them to desist, but to no purpose. *Ferdinando Baldaya* went against them in a Galliot. *Alfonso de los Rios* met him in another Vessel, they fought courageously, the *Spaniards* remained victorious, having killed our Captain and others. *Saavedra* set sail for *New Spain* to bring assistance to prosecute this Act so well begun, and carried with him some of the Prisoners in the Galliot he had taken. They fled with his Long-boat from certain Islands where he touched, and being afterwards taken at *Tidore*, and brought to the *Spaniards*, they condemned them as Traitors to the Emperor (as if they had owed him any Allegiance) and hanged *Ferdinando Moreira*, *Simon de Brito* was dragg'd and beheaded. After this *D. George de Castro* (who accidentally came to *Ternate*) by order of *D. George de Menezes* went against the City *Camafo*, and the Inhabitants being fled, burnt it to the ground. But this belongs to next year, let us see what is doing in *India*.

## C H A P. II.

*Continues the Government of Lope Vaz de Sampayo, from the Tear 1527, till the Tear 1529, King John the Third Reigning.*

1527. 1. **L**ope Vaz de Sampayo understanding at Cochín, that Peter de Mascarenas was coming from Malaca to take upon him the Government, held a Council, where it was resolved not to admit him as Governor. This done, he went away to Goa, leaving Alphonso Mexia to put in execution what had been resolved. At his departure Lope Vaz paid off the Soldiers, who presently concluded, that Action proceeded not from his Bounty, but was to gain their Affections. Mascarenas arrived the last day of February, and after some difference with Mexia, resolved to land unarmed, thinking thereby to disarm the other. On the contrary, as Mascarenas landed, he was met by Mexia, well armed, and mounted with armed Men, who fell upon Mascarenas, run him through the Arm with a Lance, and wounded others of his Company, so that to avoid more harm he was forced to return to his Ship.

2. The

2. The News of this Exploit being brought to *Lope Vaz* at *Goa*, it so highly pleased him, that as a Reward to the Messenger he gave him the Command of *Coulam*, taken from *Henry Figuera*, because he had treated *Peter de Mascarenas* with Civility. In this one Action he committed two Crimes, one in rewarding Insolency, the other in depriving Modesty of its Reward. Now being informed, that *Mascarenas* was on the way to *Goa*, he sent out to take and put him in Irons, which was executed by *Antony de Silveyra*, who delivered him at *Cananor* to *D. Simon de Menezes*, Commander of that Fort. The People of *Goa* were so weary of these Proceedings, that they broke out into open Railing. And *Christopher de Sousa*, Commander of *Cbaul*, gravely reprov'd him for it by Letter, comforting *Mascarenas* the same way, affirming those Affronts redounded more to his Honor than the Government could have done.

3. *Hector de Silveyra*, a Gentleman in all his Actions great, fell at variance with *Lope Vaz*, upbraided him with his ill usage to *Mascarenas*, and particularly with refusing their pretensions to be brought to Judgment as *Mascarenas* desired. *Lope Vaz* resented it, *Hector* withdrew, and gathering his Kindred, Friends, and the Council of *Goa*, they sent a Letter signed by three hundred to *Peter Mascarenhas*, desiring him to come to *Goa*, where they would obey him as Governor. Then agreed to imprison

*Lope Vaz*, but he knowing it, sent *Peter de Foria*, Commander of *Goa*, to secure *Hector de Silveyra*, and all that were with him. *Hector* refused to deliver himself up, and *Lope* in a rage arming himself, entered the House where these Gentlemen were, then *Silveyra*, to prevent any publick Disturbance suffered himself to be taken

4. *D. Simon de Meneses*, who held *Mascarenas* Prisoner at *Cananor*, and was no less offended at *Lope Vaz*, his Proceeings, hearing what passed at *Goa*, set him loose, and together with all that were there, swore him Governor. At this time arrived three Ships of five that set out of *Lisbon*, and in them *D. John Deca*, Brother-in-law to *Lope Vaz*, of whom he asked whether he had not a good Title to the Government, and remained satisfied of the Justice of his Cause, because approved by him and Friends. The other two Ships were cast away on the Island *Madagascar*. *Christopher de Sousa* acknowledged *Mascarenas* as Governor, which much enraged *Lope Vaz*, but his anger was not of force to take place.

5. *Antony de Miranda de Azevedo*, Admiral of the Indian Sea, desiring as well as *Christopher de Sousa* to prevent Distractions, joined with him, the Result of their Agreement was, that *Lope Vaz* was reduced to put the business to arbitration. It was articulated, that the Competiours should stand by the Verdict, that neither should act as Governor in the interim, that all who were imprisoned on this Account should be released,



released, that the two who had procured this Accommodation might come freely to *Goa*, without any danger of *Lope Vaz* his anger. He at first opposed this Agreement, but liking the Arbitrators, consented, adding some Conditions, the chief about *Alfonso Mexia*, in case *Mascarenas* had the preference.

6. *Christopher de Sousa* perceiving the Judges were all of *Lope Vaz* his Faction, to his great regret, caused one of them to be removed, and five others to be added. The Arbitrators being declared, many resorted thither, and chiefly the Inhabitants of *Cochin* who, conscious, of what they had done against *Mascarenas*, declared, if he were preferred, they would fly to the *Moors*. In fine, those who before solicited for *Mascarenas* were now against him, and Sentence was accordingly given against him, the twenty sixth of *December*. It is not much that *Lope Vaz* should rejoice, but strange that *Mascarenas* should not be at all concerned. He embarked in one of the Ships that came this year for *Portugal*, was well received by the King, who gave him the Command of *Azamor* in *Africk*, on his return from thence he was lost at Sea.

7. As soon as *Lope Vaz* was quietly settled in his Government, he dispatched Commanders to some Forts, and among them *Peter de Faria* to *Malaca*. *Antony de Miranda de Azevedo* was sent with a Fleet to burn the *Turkish* Gallies that were left at *Camaran*, after the death of *Raez Soliman*.

*Martin*

*Martin Alfonso de Melo Jusarte* went to build a Fort at *Sunda*, with eight large Ships and four hundred Men. He touched at *Columbo* in the Island *Ceylon*, where *Pate Marcar* of *Calicut* oppressed the King of *Cota* our Ally; but hearing of these Ships he fled up the Rivers, and *Madune Pandar* the King's Brother who joined with his Enemy, and pretended to the greatest part of the Kingdom, raised his Siege. *Martin Alfonso* went thence rich, having taken some Ships of the *Moors*, and agreed at *Calecare* with the Lord about the price of Pearls, whereof there is a Fishery. Further on he destroyed the Town of *Core*, because the Inhabitants had killed *John de Flores*, who guarded that Fishery.

8. Going on his Voyage, a sudden and fierce storm drove all his company out of sight, and set him upon a Bank of Sand near the Island *Nagamale*, opposite to the City *Sodoe*. He went into the Long-boat with fifty Men, and with great difficulty came to the City *Chacuria* in the Kingdom of *Bengala*, the Lord whereof, after making use of them against his Enemy, made them all Slaves. Hence they were carried to *Sore*, where two of his Captains arriving, thought to have stoln them away by night, but were discovered and disappointed. The *Indians* had made a Vow to sacrifice to their Idols the handsomest Portuguese they should take, they judged one *Gonzalo Vaz de Melo* to be such, and accordingly sacrificed him, notwithstanding his Uncle *Martin Alfonso* promised

promised a great ransom for him. The others were afterwards redeemed by a *Moor*, for three thousand Ducats.

9. One of the Captains *Lope Vaz* had sent out, was *D. John Deça*, to scour the Sea of *Calicut*. He behaved himself bravely in several Rencounters, and took this year fifty Prizes, laden with all sorts of Goods. He burnt the Town of *Mangalor*, and meeting afterwards the Fleet of *Calicut*, consisting of seventy *Paraos*, well equipped, under the Command of the *Chinese* Captain *Cutiale*, he fought them, took *Cutiale*, and most of the Vessels, killed fifteen hundred *Moors*, and had almost as many Prisoners. In these Rencounters he lost twenty *Portugueses*.

10. *Antony de Miranda de Azevedo* sailed the latter end of *January* for the *Red Sea*, with twenty Ships, and above a thousand Men. After taking some Prizes, he met in the Mouth of that Sea *Henry de Macedo*, engaged with a great *Turkish* Gallion. They boarded him, and the *Turks* threw a burning Dart which stuck in the main Sheet, and began to fire it, but a strong Gust of Wind shaking the Sail, cast it back into the *Turkish* Gallion, where falling among the Powder, it blew all up, so that only eight Men escaped, and those escaped only the Fire, not the Sword, being killed as they swam. *Antony de Sylva* took a great Ship of *Diu*, and killed all the Men. *D. Antony de Miranda* fought another two days, and she got off. Several Captains had other Rencounters

Rencounters. The chief Design, which was fighting the *Turks* in the *Red Sea* at the Island *Camaran*, took no effect, the Winds being contrary. They burnt the City *Zeylan*, the Inhabitants having saved themselves and Goods by flight.

II. They went thence to *Ormuz*, and next to *Diu*, and were disperſed by a ſtorm. *Lope de Meſquita* met a great Ship wherein were 200 reſolute *Moors*, and boarded her with thirty Men; no ſooner were they in her, but his Gallion fell off. Being left thus they furioſly fell upon the two hundred, kill moſt of them, and take the Ship, which being much battered by the Gallion, was ſinking. *Meſquita* with all ſpeed ſends his Brother *James* with ſixteen Men in the Long-boat to ſave the Mony taken in the Ship, and return for thoſe that were behind. Thoſe who thought to eſcape fell into the greateſt danger, for not reaching the Gallion, they were taken by the Fleet of *Diu*, and carried to the King of *Cambaya*, who would force them to turn *Moors*, but they remained conſtant. The King in a rage cauſed *James de Meſquita* to be put into a Cannon, in order to be blown in pieces, but admiring the reſolution with which he entred, was appeaſed, and ſpared him. They were all put into Priſon, and afterwards releaſed. *Lope de Meſquita*, the Gallion and *Antony de Miranda* met at *Cbaul*. *Antony de Macedo* came with his Ship ſo battered, it was almoſt a miracle he eſcaped, and his Face ſo monſtrous no body knew him,



him, that cauled by the Cannon, the latter by Fire, having been beset by fifty Barks and three Galliot's off of *Diu*. He fought them a whole day, and was reduced to only six Men and a Woman, who supplied them with Powder, till accidentally *Antony de Silva* came up with him, and the Enemies Commander being killed they fled.

12. The *Moors* had improved our Divisions to do us much harm, *Lope Vaz* prepared to be revenged. He left *Antony de Miranda* to command at *Goa*, and went to *Cochin* where he fitted out eighteen Ships. At *Cananor* met him one hundred and thirty *Paraos* of *Malabars*. He could not attack them with the great Ships by reason of the contrary Wind. But resolving not to slip the opportunity, advanced with thirteen *Paraos* against the hundred and thirty. He came up with and did them much harm with his Cannon, and they spared not theirs, but seeing two *Parâos* come out of *Cananor* to the relief of the thirteen, and the great Ships spread their Sails to come up, they fled, eighteen of them were sunk, twenty two taken, and in them fifty pieces of Cannon, eight hundred killed, and many Prisoners made. Those that fled, and others who joined them fell into the snare near *Cochin*.

13. *Lope Vaz* set out again with the same Fleet in search of *Arel*, Lord of *Porca*, who was seeking revenge for what had happened between him and *D. Enrique* at the destruction of *Coulete*. *Lope Vaz* scoured the

the Coast as he went. *Simon de Melo*, who commanded the *Brigantines*, burnt twenty six Ships, and razed the Town of *Cbatua*. The Fire ran as far as *Cranganor*. He ordered the Fleet that was there to follow him, that all might share in the plunder of *Porca*, which he thought secure. He had a thousand Men with him, and with them he assaulted the City. *Arel* was not within it, and the *Moors* fought courageously in defence of their Wives, Children and Goods. But the greatest part being slain, the rest fled, and the Town was plundered. The Wife of *Arel* and other persons of Note were taken, with much Gold, Silver, Jewels, Silks and other Stuffs, good Cannon, and thirteen considerable Vessels, all was put to the Sword first, and then delivered up to the Flames, without the loss of one Man. The Governor returning to *Cochin* found there two Ships that came from *Portugal* with *Nuno de Cuna*, who came to take upon him that Government, and was behind with most of the Fleet. *Lope Vaz* desired to deliver up *India* to him, cleansed of Pyrats, and so prosecuted his Undertakings. He went to *Cananor*, and sent his Nephew *Simon de Melo* against *Marabia*, a Town not far distant, who burnt twelve of the *Paraos* that guarded the Port, and landing, fired the Town. The same he did at mount *Delii*. *Antony de Silva de Meneses* acted in the same nature at other places. There was nothing every where but Fire and Sword, Ruin and Destruction.

14. The King of *Cambaya* at this time had fitted out eighty Barques against *Nizamaluco*, Lord of *Chaul*, and did harm to the *Portugueses*: *Alexiath*, a valiant Moor, commanded that Fleet; and our Commander at *Chaul* and *Nizamaluco* both demanded aid of *Lope Vaz*. He set out with forty Sail, in which were above a thousand *Portugueses*, besides the Natives, who bore Arms. *Hector de Silveyra* had the Command of the Vessels that rowed. *Lope Vaz* being arrived at *Chaul*, sent eighty *Portugueses* under the Command of *John de Avelar* to *Nizamaluco*, then sailed towards *Diu*, understanding the eighty Barques steered that way. Off of *Bombaim* he had sight of them. Some Vessels run to secure the mouth of the River *Bandora*, lest the Enemy might escape that way. *Hector de Silveyra* with his Brigantines fetched up *Alexiath*. The Cannon began a furious Charge, and the Smoak being dispersed, there appeared in the Air showers of Bullets and Arrows. Then they boarded, and after a vigorous Engagement *Alexiath* fled with only seven of his eighty Barques. Thirty three of them were of use, the rest burnt, the Prisoners were many, much Artillery taken, and abundance of Ammunition. *Hector* lost not one Man in this glorious Action to which *Lope Vaz* was a joyful Spectator, tho envious of *Silveyra's* Glory. *John de Avelar* acted no less, for scaling an almost impregnable Fort of the King of *Cambaya*; he was the first that entered, and having slain

slain all the Defendants, delivered it up to *Nizamaluco*. Here three *Portugueses* were lost: They were all assisted by a thousand of *Nizamaluco's* Subjects. That Prince honored and rewarded the Bravery of the *Portugueses*.

1529.

15. *Lope Vaz* overjoyed with this success, thought *Diu*, now weakened, would surrender, if he appeared before it, and he judged right, as afterwards appeared. But all the Captains, except *Hector de Silveira*, being of a contrary opinion, he was forced to desist, and went back to *Goa*, leaving the famous *Hector* with twenty two Vessels that rowed to scour that Coast of Pirates. *Antony de Miranda* on that of *Malabar* drove all that came in his way. He had destroyed twelve *Paraos*, when *Christopher de Meló*, the Governor's Nephew, joined him with a hundred choice Men in six Brigantines and a Gally. Then they took in the River *Chale* a mighty Ship of *Calicut*, laden with Pepper, and bravely defended by much Artillery and eight hundred Men. Near *Monte Hermoso*, or *Mount Beautiful*, they defeated fifty Sail of *Calicut*, and took much Cannon and many Men in three *Paraos*. But the Winter coming on, they retired.

16. *Hector de Silveira* who was left with his Brigantines on the Coast of *Cambaya* did much execution. He run up the River *Nagotana* of *Bacaim*, and landed, the Natives, with the Terror of his Actions, deserting the Towns, whereof he burnt six.

At



At the last the Commander of *Nagotana* appeared in the Field with five hundred Horse, and a great number of Foot. *Hector* knowing it was a rashness to encounter him, retired towards his Brigantines, but the Horse coming on hindered any from imbarquing. *Hector* faced them, and killing three, made some room. *Francis Godino* dismounting one of the Enemy, got upon his Horse, and killing another, brought that Horse to his Captain, who encouraging his Men, made the Enemy give back, and so gained time to imbarque. *Hector* went hence to *Bacaim*, seated on the Banks of the River of the same name, found it well fortified, and stored with Cannon, through whose Mouths he must force his landing. Behind the Town lay *Alixiatb* with five hundred Horse, and three thousand Foot. *Hector* entered the River by night, and in the morning in despite of their Cannon forced the Works, killing many of the Defendants. As he marched to the Town, on a sudden *Alixiatb* fell on him with his three thousand five hundred Men. *Silveyra* drew his Men into one Body, and bravely put all that number to flight, killing many. Whilst they fled, *Bacaim* was plundered and burnt. The Lord of *Tana*, a great City, not far distant, terrified at this success, submitted himself as Tributary to *Portugal*, and was received by *Hector*, who now retired to *Chaul*.

17. Let us now see what was done during this time at *Maluco*. *Simon de Sousa Galvam*

Y

was

was going in a Galley with seventy Men, to take the Command of that Fort of *D. George*, a most violent storm brought him in a miserable condition to the Port of *Achem*. Immediately flocked about them several Vessels upon pretence of assistance, but being come aboard they fell upon the seventy *Portugueses* with all manner of weapons, but they recovering the Fright, bravely drove them all from their Ships sides, but not above twenty of them were left that could stand upon their Feet. The King in a rage that the Ship was not taken, ordered his Admiral to attack her in the morning. He came, and *Simon de Sousa* encouraging those Men that could scarce support themselves, did Feats like to those related in Fables, and repelled with great slaughter that Inundation that came upon them. But a *Moor*, who was in the Galley, leaping overboard, gave the Enemy an account of her miserable condition. With a fresh supply they came on again and boarded her, killing most of our Men, *Simon de Sousa* was cut in pieces. Only such as had not life enough to seek their death remained alive, and were carried to the King with the Galley, and afterwards served in the execution of his wicked Designs, as shall appear in its proper place.

18. Thus *Simon de Sousa* sailing by the way *D. George de Meneses* continued his Command at *Maluco*. He sent some *Portugueses* against *Tidore* and the *Spaniards* that were there, but they being put to the rout, *D. George* gathered

thered the *Ternatenses*, they their Allies the chief whereof were *Cacbil de Aroex*, the King of *Bacham* and the *Sangages*. They fell upon *Tidore* in the morning, those of *Tidore* and the *Spaniards* fought courageously, but were obliged to give ground and retire, the *Spaniards* to their Fort, having lost six Men, two killed, and four taken, the *Tidores* to their City, whence they were forced to fly by *D. George*, who burnt and plundered it. Then he returned to the Fort, and summoned *Ferdinando de la Forre*, the *Spanish* Captain to surrender. He no longer able to hold out, accepted the Capitulation, the Heads of it were, that he should immediately go over to the City *Camaso*, that he should commit no Hostilities upon the *Portugueses*, *Ternatenses*, or any of their Friends, that he should go to no Islands that produced Cloves. The King of *Tidore* was made Tributary to *Portugal*, and obliged not to aid the *Spaniards*. Then *D. George* returned victorious to *Ternate*.

19. Mean while *Bobaat*, King of *Tidore*, died in the Fort, not without suspicion of Poison given by *Cacbil Daroex*. His Brother *Cacbil Daialo* succeeded, who was no less suspicious of *Cacbil Vaiaco*, whom he accused of heinous Crimes, but being afraid of his Life fled to the Fort, and suspecting *D. George* would deliver him to his Enemy, chose rather to die, by throwing himself out of a Window. All *Ternate* now mutined against *D. George*, and he imagining that

*Cacbil Vaideca* had caused to be killed a *China Sow* he much esteemed, having more respect to that foul Beast than that noble person imprisoned, and after set him at liberty, anointing his Face with Bacon, which among that People is the most heinous affront, and had been as highly revenged upon the *Portugueses*, had not the Prudence and Modesty of *Antony Galvam*, who succeeded in the Government, appeased the rage of the People.

20. *D. George* not content with this violence, sent to rob the Houses of the *Moors* of their Provisions. In fine, this Gentleman became on a sudden most wicked and outrageous. The *Moors* stood upon their Defence, and treated some *Portugueses* as they now deserved. In the Town of *Tabona* *D. George* took the chief Magistrate, and two *Moors* of Note, these two he sent back after cutting off their Hands, upon the other he set two Dogs on the shore, who tore his Flesh till he fled into the Water to shun them, but they pursuing, he defended himself with his Teeth, till the water coming up he was tore to pieces and drowned. This made *D. George* odious to all, and moved *Cacbil de Aroez* to stir up the People to rise and expel both *Portugueses* and *Spaniards*. *D. George* caught him in the Contrivance, and beheaded him publickly in *Ternate*, to the terror of all People, which occasioned the City to be unpeopled, the Inhabitants and even the Queen flying from this storm to other places. *D. George* was imprisoned for these inhuman



human Barbarities, and sent to *India*, and thence to *Portugal*, where he was condemned to Banishment. Any Reward was too small for his former Actions, and this Punishment too slight for the latter. But because *Nuno de Cuna* now enters upon the Government of *India*, let us conclude this Chapter, and hereafter we shall see *Lope Vaz* return to *Portugal*, and his Punishment there for the Extravagancies committed against *Peter de Mascarenas*, and usurping the Government, which deprived him of the Reward, if not the Glory of those notable Exploits which might have rendered him deserving of it. He was Governor of it three years and ten months, his Complexion fair, and Countenance venerable, his Beard grey, Cap and upper Robe black with Crimson Lining, Breeches and Doublet of the same Colour, over all his Armour. I will reckon *Peter Mascarenas* the eighth Governor, both because he executed the Power some time, and because the condemning of *Lope Vaz* confirmed his Right. So *Lope Vaz* will be the Ninth in order.

## C H A P. III.

*The Government of Nuno de Cuna from the Tear 1529 to the Tear 1538, in the Reign of King John the Third.*

1. **I**N May this same year arrived at Ormuz, Nuno de Cuna, who came the year before from Lisbon with eleven Ships. Because setting out late he had a tedious Voyage, and by the way did considerable things, we will say somewhat of him before his arrival in India. One of his Ships was lost near Cabo Verde, the Captain and some Men saved, one hundred and fifty perished. After passing the Line they were dispersed by a storm, some met again afterwards. Nuno put into the Port San Tiago on the Hland Madagascar, where he found a naked Portuguez, no less wild in appearance than the Blacks, but they were somewhat civilized. By him he understood the loss of two Ships of five that came from Lisbon the year 1527, commanded by Manuel de Lacerda and Alexius de Abreu.

2. This Man was a Soldier belonging to Abreu, they were cast away upon the Sands before that Port. They fortified themselves in hopes some Ships passing by would take

take them up. After waiting a year one Ship passed but could not come to them, and they no longer able to subsist there, marched up the Country to seek their Fortune in two Bodies, and this Man was left behind sick. *Nuno de Cuna* having advertised the King hereof. *Duarte* and *James Fomseca* were sent from *Portugal* to find these Men. The first perished in that Island, the other found but four and a *French* Man, and was cast away with them sailing for *India*. The *French* Man belonged to one of three Ships that came that year from *France*, and perished in that place. The four said many of their Companions lived in the Inland, but 'twas impossible to find them. From these it is thought sprung those People that the *Hollanders* there found eighty years after. They said, that a *Portugues* Captain suffering shipwrack there, conquered that place, and became Sovereign, and all his Men marrying Natives had numerous Issue, that they erred much in matters of Faith. Great were their Errors that could be perceived by the Atheistical *Hollanders*! But doubtless these People could not descend from only that Shipwrack, they might be some of the first Discoverers that were never heard of, and among others the three that sailed from *Cochin* with *Francis de Albuquerque*, the Year 1520.

3. *Nuno de Cuna* being in this Island, inquiring into the Affairs of it, his Ship perished in a storm. The Men were saved in the other two, much Goods and Arms lost;

and thus he reached the Island of *Zanzibar*, where he eased the Ships over-burdened with Men, setting ashore (the King being our Friend) two hundred sick, under the Care of *Alexius de Sousa Chicorro*, with orders to go to *Melinde* as soon as recovered.

4. *Nuno de Cuna* went thither, he tried to pass to *India*, but could not. Therefore not to lose time he resolved to take revenge on the King of *Monbaga*, who, in hatred to us, infested those of *Melinde* and *Zanzibar*. If the City was taken he purposed to make *Munbo Mabomet*, Son of him that so kindly received *Gama* the first time, King of it. Which he understanding, and returning thanks, said, *That he was incapable of that honor, being begot on a Caffre Slave; but since he would gratifie his Father's Kindness to the Portugueses, he might do it in the person of his Nephew, who, tho younger, was of the Blood Royal of the Kings of Quiloa.* *Nuno* rightly judged, that none better merited a Crown than he that covered it not, and reserved his Answer till he saw the Event of the Enterprize. He set out with eight hundred Men, and *Mabomet* with sixty, and as many with *Cide Buhac* the King's Nephew, the other had proposed to be King.

5. As he drew near there met him the Lord of *Otondo*, a neighbouring Town, offering to accompany him with a well furnished Vessel, being admitted, shewing Silver Chains upon his Legs, he said, *He wore them in remembrance that he had been wrongfully imprisoned by that King, and had*  
*swore*



*swore never to take them off till revenged; that all the motive his Enemy had to use him so, was for his affection to the Portugueles, tho he never was so happy as to serve them.* The King of *Monbaça* knowing *Cuna's* Design, prepared, planting Guns on a Bulwark that kept the mouth of the River, and bringing six hundred expert and resolute Archers into the City. *Nuno* entred the River through Showers of Bullets that flew from the Bulwark, which killed some Men, and battered some Vessels. Yet he anchored the Evening near the City, all the Night the Enemy poured Arrows upon the Fleet, which answered with their Cannon. Day appearing, the Attack began, and *Peter Vaz*, Brother to *Nuno*, driving all before him, was the first who set up the *Portugues* Colours in the highest place of the City, which being seen far off, the Ships began to celebrate the Victory. Many *Moors* were killed, the rest left the City. *D. Ferdinand de Lima* was suddenly clasped by a stout *Moor*, but his own Men coming in the *Moor* was slain, fulfilling a Vow he had made to the King's Neece whom he loved. For this Woman going out with others, said to him: *Are these the brave men of Monbaça, who suffer their Wives and Children to lose the City, and go for refuge to the Cafres?* And he answered: *Since you affront me thus, I swear by the Love I bear you, before two days, those who love shall weep for me, and you, if you value me, shall not see me to reward my Love.* He fulfilled his Vow, as did many

many more, not one *Portuguese* was lost.

6. The City was plundered, twenty great pieces of Cannon taken. *D Ferdinand de Lima* going to secure the Bulwark, some *Moors* issued out of a Wood, did harm, for a few of our Men died of their poisoned *Arrows*. Many of the Enemy were afterwards slain. Hither came News of some of *Cuna's* Fleet who had been separated from him.

*Nuno* the better to secure and people the City, which was great, sent to *Melinde*, whence presently came a Nephew of that King with five hundred Men, many of Quality, and he of *Montangue* with two hundred. By this means the Natives were drove out of the Island, tho Hunger afterwards forced back many. The King of *Monbaga*, sensible of his Ruin, sent a Man of Note to treat of an Accommodation with *Nuno*, offering to become Tributary, and pay a Ransom for the City. They came to Agreement.

8. The King presently began the Payment, and as soon fell off, finding the *Portugueses* sickened and died. Two hundred were already dead, among them some Gentlemen, and *Peter Vaz de Cuna*. This and other Misfortunes pressed the disposing of the City. The King of *Melinde's* Sons durst not undertake to maintain it without a number of *Portugueses*, which could not be afforded after such a loss. *Nuno* consumed the City to Ashes, and returned to *Melinde*, bringing with him those who were

were left before at *Zanzibar*, and other places, who joined him after the City was taken.

9. At *Melinde* he left eighty sick Men to be carried to *India* by *Tristan Homem*, who afterwards with them defended that King against him of *Monbaga*, who sought to revenge there the harm done him by the *Portugueses*. In *May* the Governor began to visit the neighbouring Places to *Ormuz*, making Proclamation, *That all persons who had any Cause of Complaint against Portugueses should appear before him.* Many appeared with much Cause, and the Offenders were obliged to make restitution, to the great astonishment of the *Moors*,, not used to see such Justice executed. At *Ormuz* he made a solemn Entry, which being unusual, was much admired by those People.

10. He found that *Raez Xaraso* great *Guazil*, or rather Tyrant over that King, tho restored by *Lope Vaz*, was not clear of those great Crimes he stood accused of. The chief were Rapin and Murder. and the Circumstances such, that King *John* had sent after *Nuno de Cuna*, *Emanuel de Macedo*, with Orders independent of the Government, to take and bring him to *Portugal*. They both had a Hand in securing him. *Nuno* visited the King, and gave him Letters from ours. He qualified the King's Displeasure for imprisoning *Xaraso*, and his fear for his own Offences, received his Excuse, and took leave. The King presented him with rich Jewels, Pieces of Cloth of Gold,

Gold, Silks and a stately Horse with fine Furniture after the *Persian* manner. *Nuno* refused to accept, but seeing the King was affronted at it, received it in his King's Name. The Gentlemen with him received rich Gifts.

11. *Nuno* made some Inquiry into *Xaraso's* Crimes, and sent him to *Portugal*. The King for the Murder of *Mabomet* was sentenced to pay forty thousand Xeraphins over and above the sixty thousand he paid yearly. It is true, this Crime served only as a pretence to overload him with this Tribute, being the third part of the Revenue of *Ormuz*. *Raez Xaraso*, tho guilty of heinous Offences, carried enough Riches with him to purchase Favour in *Portugal*, and be restored to his Employ.

12. Whilst the Governor was thus employed at *Ormuz*, *Belchior Tavares de Sousa* came thither, he had been to assist the King of *Baçora* with forty Men against him of *Gizaira*. He was the first *Portuguese* that went up the Rivers *Tigris* and *Euphrates*. *Baçora* is thirty Leagues from the mouth of these Rivers, in thirty degrees: somewhat more of Northern Latitude. It is a new Foundation in memory of the ancient *Baçora*, eight Leagues distant from it, the Ruins whereof are still to be seen, and in the opinion of a person of Judgment who did see them, are twice as big as *Grand Caire*. The Island *Gizaira* is formed by the two Rivers, *Tigris*, whose Springs are in *Curdi*, of the greater *Armenia*; and *Euphrates*,



ses, whose Fountains are in *Turkomania*. The Circuit of it forty Leagues, it contains forty thousand Archers.

13. The King of *Bağora* had received *Soufa* with State, and Joy in a Court of his Palace, so large, that it contained two thousand Men without any Throng. Next day gave him an account of his Condition, desiring he would either bring the King of *Gizaira* to an honorable Peace, or recover some Forts he had taken from him. The King of *Bağora* set out with two hundred *Dalacas*, or large Barques, in them were five thousand Men, six hundred whereof were Musqueteers, seven Vessels full of *Turks* with good Cannon, his Nephew marched by Land with three thousand Horse. He planted himself on the side of *Arabia*, opposite to where he of *Gizaira* was posted with twelve hundred Men. By order of the King of *Bağora*, *Soufa* writ to his Enemy, telling him, He was sent by the Commander of *Ormuz*, to make peace between them, or to stand to the Event of War, The King of *Gizaira* answered, That being the first Request of the Captain of *Ormuz*, and he the first *Portuguese* that had come to those parts, he granted all.

14. The King of *Gizaira* sent persons with power to treat, and Peace was concluded to the satisfaction of him of *Bağora*, who seeing all safe, refused to perform what he had promised *Soufa*, which was to deliver up the seven *Turkish* Vessels, and not admit them into this Kingdom again

as

as being our Enemies. *Soufa* embarked, took one of his great Barques, and landing with thirty six *Portugueses*, burnt a Town of three hundred Houses. Another, tho not so big, he fired on the *Persian* side. He again appeared before *Baçora*, but wanting Provisions, returned to *Ormuz*.

15. *Nuno de Cuna*, to reward *Soufa*, gave him the Command of that Sea, sending him at the King's Request to the Island *Babarem*, to secure *Raez Barbadim*, who was revolted. But he having good intelligence baffled the Contrivance, and obliged *Nuno de Cuna* to send his Brother *Simon* with eight Vessels, and four hundred Men, besides some of the Natives in their Barques. They set out.

16. Mean while *Nuno de Cuna* prepared to go for *India*. He arrived at *Goa* the latter end of *October*, where were before him four Ships come from *Portugal* the most fortunately that any had done yet; for of above fifteen hundred Men they brought, none died but our Captain, and they came all in perfect health. *Nuno* made a very solemn Entry into the City. There were at this time ready almost one hundred and forty Vessels, provided by the care of *Lope Vaz*, many considerable, as six Gallions, eight Royal Gallies, six Caravels, and fourteen Galliot, all well stored, with Arms and Ammunition. The Forts were also well provided. For tho *Lope Vaz* usurped the Government, he managed it better than many that were named for it. The Governor's

Governor's presence was required at *Cochin* for the Dispatch of the homeward bound trading Ships and other Affairs.

17. Whilst he sailed to *Cochin*, *Simon de Cuna* came to *Babarem* with his Ships, and joining *Belchior de Sousa*, landed. He battered the Fort three days, and lost it for want of Powder, for whilst he sent for more to *Ormuz*, his Men so sickened, that above one hundred *Portugueses* died, and many were in danger, and the very *Persians* used to that Clime were in no better Condition. With this loss he drew off. This seemed an effect of Divine Justice, for *Barbadim* offered to deliver up the Fort upon condition he might go away in safety, but our Gentlemen would not hearken to him, fearing to lose the Booty.

18. *Simon de Seusa* found no less a Pestilence had raged among his Seamen. Thus they set sail, but being becalmed not far from *Ormuz*, many of the sick died, and among them some persons of good Note, and *Simon de Cuna* himself. A great Grief to his Brother *Nuno*, who had already lost his other Brother at *Monbaga*.

## C H A P. IV.

*Continues the Government of Nuno de Cuna, from the Year 1529, in the Reign of King John the Third.*

I. **N**UNO de Cuna sailing to Cochín, put in at Cananor, and the King sent to welcome him. Cuna excused himself that he did not go ashore to see him by reason of his haste, and the King for not going aboard the Gallion, because he was indisposed. After these Complements came the Guazil, a great Friend of the Portugueses, and to gain the favour of Cuna, as of other Governors, privately offered him a Collar, which he refused to receive. Don John de Deca at that time had the Command of the Fort, he visiting the Governor aboard, brought him a Message from Lope Vaz then there, desiring him to come ashore, and he would there resign the Government to him. Nuno sent to desire him to come and resign aboard. He came, and the Resignation was performed with the usual Solemnities. As he was in the Vessel ready to return, he was ordered by Cuna to bear him company to Cochín. Then the Governor made Proclamation, That any  
who



who had been wronged by *Lope Vaz*, should repair to him, and he would do them Justice. This troubled *Lope Vaz*, and he sent him word, That those were rather Libels than Proclamations; for no Man that had cause of Complaint against him, needed to be stirred up by sound of Trumpet. At *Cochin*, *Nuno* ordered *Lope Vaz* to be imprisoned, and an Inventory of all his Goods to be taken, and all deposited in safe Hands to be delivered at *Lisbon*, as the King should direct. *Lope Vaz* said to the Officer that took him, Tell *Nuno de Cuna*, that I imprisoned, he imprisons me, and one will come who will imprison him. *Nuno* being told it, said, I doubt not but I shall be imprisoned, but the difference between us will be, that *Lope Vaz* deserves it, and I shall not. Neither was he deceived, for he had been close laid up in *Portugal*, had he not died at Sea: we shall see it at the end of his Government. *Lope Vaz* was less afflicted for his Confinement, than the insolent Reproaches of the Rabble, that the worst Ship was allotted him to imbarque, only two Servants allowed him, and barely so much of his own as would maintain him the Voyage. An unjust proceeding with a Man of his Worth, whose person ought not to be indecently used whilst his Crimes were inquired into.

2. *Nuno de Cuna* found nothing in readiness at *Cochin*, of what he ordered from *Melinde* should be provided to make war upon *Diu*, which was the principal point of his

Z

Instructions.

Instructions. Perceiving the year was too far gone for that Undertaking, he applyed himself to other Affairs, and fitted a Fleet of thirty Sail to scour the Coast of *Malabar*, under the Command of *James de Silveyra*, who commanded the four, came last from *Portugal*. *Antony de Silveyra Meneses* had a Squadron to cruise in the Sea of *Cambaya*. And *Hector de Silveyra* another for the *Red Sea*. Whilst these Commanders sailed on the Coasts assigned them, our homeward bound Fleet arrived at the *Terceras* Islands, where an Officer was waiting to put *Lope Vaz* into Irons. Loaded with them he landed at *Lisbon*, and was set upon a Mule, on which he was carried, accompanied by the rude Rabble up to the Castle, and put into a Dungeon, with Orders, that not even his Wife should be permitted to see him. He was accompanied in this miserable state by *Raex Xaraso Guazil* of *Ormuz*, brought by *Emanuel de Macedo*. After two years *Lope Vaz* his Crimes began to be taken into consideration and examined, the King having ordered him to be prosecuted with the utmost rigor. The principal Article against him was his unjust Proceeding with *Peter de Mascarenas*. The Duke of *Braganca* pityng the Misfortunes of this brave Gentleman, prevailed with the King to give him a hearing in Council. Accordingly his Majesty being seated in Council with all his Judges about him, *Lope Vaz* was brought in, venerable for his person, his Face covered with a thick and long

longe white Beard, and with such tokens of the Miseries he had endured in almost three years imprisonment, reckoning from *India*, that had *Peter Mascarenas* or any of his Enemies seen him, they might think themselves sufficiently revenged of all the Extravagancies he had been guilty of towards them. Being placed at the Bar as a Criminal, after the King's leave obtained, he with an undaunted Constancy made a learned, comprehensive and copious Speech. In which after running over his Forefathers Services to the Crown, he particularized his own from his infancy till that time, reflected upon his Sufferings and Wrong done him since Imprisoned, and in general to several other brave Governors his Predecessors, exposed the Malice of his Accusers, justified his own Proceedings, illustrated by Examples how others guilty of greater Crimes than he was accused of, were pardoned in respect of their Services, then made a parallel between them and his Sufferings, and concluded, throwing himself upon either his Majesties Justice, or Mercy, from one of which he hoped such a Discharge, that he might have more cause to return thanks for the future, than he had till then to lament his hard Usage. The King having heard with attention, examined him upon every Article of his Impeachment, and he answered to each. The Articles were in all forty three; the principal, as was said, such as related to *Peter Mascarenas*, the others such as would

never have been thought of, had not those brought them in to fill up the number. In fine he was carried back to the Castle, whence he sent his Defence, as is usual in such Cases, and in conclusion was sentenced to lose all his Allowance as Governor, and to pay to *Peter Mascarenas* ten thousand Ducats, which confirmed the latter, not him, to have been the real Governor, and justified those who had obeyed them as such. He was also banished into *Africk*. But he resenting this hard Fortune, resolved to change his Country and his Prince, as the famous *Ferdinand Magallanes* had done before. And getting into *Spain*, he unnaturalized himself; and from *Badajoz* writ a Letter to the King, affirming his usage had been highly unjust, and that he was resolved to try whether changing his Country he could change Fortune, and restore his Honor. This had such effect, that he was restored to his Country. *Alfonso Mexia* being likewise brought prisoner to *Portugal*, had the same success; he was also accused of Crimes committed at *Ormuz*, the Commander of which Fort *James de Melo* was under the same Circumstances. Let us now return to *India*.

3. *James Silveira* on the Coast of *Calicut* carried so heavy a Hand upon those People, that their King was obliged to send Embassadors to *Nuno de Cuna*, desiring Peace. He granted upon such Conditions as they deserved who had never kept any. They were willing to accept part, but re-  
jected



jected the rest, so *Silveyra* reduced them to extreme Famine, hindering the Importation of Provisions. They received some Relief from *Cananor*, and *Simon de Sousa* being forced upon that Shoar, after valiantly repulsing the *Moors*, his Powder took fire, and blew up the Brigantine.

4. *Melique Saca* being expelled *Diu*, found it convenient for the compassing his Ends with the King of *Cambaya*, to use those Artifices with *Nuno de Cuna* he had done with *Hector de Silveyra*, when he offered to deliver up that City to him. He writ to *Nuno*, that tho he could not deliver *Diu*, at least he could assist him in the taking of it; to this end it was convenient they should have a meeting, and in order thereunto he might send him a Pals and Ships for himself and Retinue, commanded by *Gaspar Paex*, whom he had known at *Diu*. The Governor granted all, and he made use of it to be restored to the King of *Cambaya's* Favour, receiving and putting off *Gaspar Paex* with Subleties and Impudence, pretending the Pals was not securely worded, and the Ships were too few. *Paex* told him he had by the way with those Vessels taken a great Ship, and put to flight fourteen Barques in the River *Pormeane*, and that he might go with all safety. But no Reason is of force against Craft and Falshood.

5. *Gaspar Paex* would have taken some Revenge, but could only burn nine Barques. The Governor enraged hereat, suddenly began to make such Preparations against

*Diu* as should not easily be disappointed: He had not yet seen the King of *Cochin* who was sick of the Small Pox. *Nuno* being less fearful of the Infection than the King, who sent him word, That he did not desire to see him, for fear he might catch the Disease, tho he believed his sight would cure him. *Nuno* went to visit him, and it was much he was received, for those Princes suffer not themselves to be seen in any Sickness. The whole Conference contained nothing but Complaints of Injuries done by *Lope Vaz* and *Alfonso Mexia*. *Nuno* left him well satisfied with his Courtesie, so that he began to look upon himself as a King, having till then been treated as a Slave, and found himself better in health.

1530.

6. It was requisite *Nuno de Cuna* should now go to *Goa*. At *Chale* he visited the King, and gave him content. About Mid-February he came to *Cananor*, and saw that King, whom he much obliged by conforming to his own Ceremonies at the Interview. This Prince offered him some Jewels, which he fearing to affront him received, but delivered to the Officers of the Revenue as belonging to the King.

7. He ordered *James de Silveyra* to punish a rich Merchant of *Mangalor*, who did great wrong to the *Portugueses*. He scoured the Rivers along that Coast, with sixteen Ships, and four hundred and fifty Men. Then entered the River *Mangalor*, on whose Banks is the Town of that Name belonging to the King of *Narsinga*, our Friend,

Friend, but that Merchant favoured Calicut, our Enemy. This Merchant knowing the Design was against him, was well fortified. *James Silveira* chose the lesser Vessels with two hundred and forty Men to go up the River, who were met by a great Squadron, which after some contest was put to flight. The Town was immediately entred, all the Defendants quitting it. *James Silveira* then turned to the Fort, and after some resistance took it. The Merchant fled in despair, but was overtaken and killed by a Musquet Ball. Those who fled sought refuge in the River, and our Swords there made it run bloody. Nothing was taken but some Cannon, for Booty being very great, the Captain caused it all to be burnt, lest he might endanger his Ships by overloading them. There were also burnt thirteen Vessels that waited for loading. Winter coming on, he thought so great a Force was not requisite, and dismissed half the Fleet. But there had been use for all when he met *Pati Marcar*, a Commander of Calicut sailing for *Mangalor* with sixty *Paraos*. The Weather prevented fighting then, so he waited their Return, and gave Battel at Mount *Delii*, where six *Paraos* were sunk, then went to *Cochin*.

8. *Antony de Silveira*, to whom the Coast of *Cambaya* was allotted, had now under his Command fifty one Sail, whereof three were Gallies, and two Galliot, and in them nine hundred *Portugueses*. He went up the River *Taptii*, on whose Banks are two Cities,

the chiefeft of that Coast. On the one fide, *Surat*, containing ten thousand Families, moft Handycrafts, and all of no Courage, called *Bancanes*. On the other fide, *Reyner*, of fix thousand Houfes, but war-like Men, and well fortified. The River being founded, it was found there was not Water enough for the greater Veffels, which were left at the Barr under *Francis de Vafconcellos*. With the reft *Antony de Silveyra* returning to the Mouth of the River, and having failed four Leagues, difcovered *Surat*. Three hundred Horfe, and almoft ten thousand Foot opposed the Landing, armed with Bows and Mufquets, they fpent their Shot, and fled without expecting an Answer. The City was entred without any farther refiftance, and nothing left in it that had life, or was of Value. Then the City and fome Ships that lay in the Arfenal were burnt. A little higher on the other fide was the City *Reyner*, inhabited by the *Nayrens Moors*, of more Courage and Policy, who nevertheless fcarce effayed our Fire, when they fled, leaving all in the Hands of the *Portuguefes*, who had all been rich, could they have carried away all the Plunder. They carried what they could, the reft was all burnt, with twenty Ships and many leffer Veffels that were in that Port. *Emanuel de Soufa* was in both Actions the foremoft at landing, not without great danger, efpecially in the latter, the Enemy playing much great Cannon at him.



9. *Antony de Silveyra* returning to the Mouth of the River, found that whilst he burnt those Cities, *Francis de Vasconcellos* had not been idle, but taken six Vessels laden with Provisions bound for *Diu*. Now they sailed together to *Damam*, a Town great and strong, yet terrified by the Disaster of the others, quitted by the Inhabitants, and burnt by our Men. On the contrary the Town of *Agacaim* fourteen Leagues from *Cbaul*, dared the Portugues Fury with four hundred Horse, and five thousand Foot. At first shock they killed five Portugueses, and the rest began to flie, but being rallied by the Captains, the Town was taken, and in it much Cannon and Riches. Many were killed, above two hundred taken. The Fire of the Town took hold of the Vessels which were three hundred.

10 Whilst *Antony de Silveyra* was thus employed, *Francis Pereyra de Berredo*, Commander at *Cbaul*, overcome by the Intreaties of the Inhabitants, oppressed by *Badur*, King of *Cambaya*; who was Master of the Field, marched with fifty Horse, and one hundred and fifty Foot, till he met *Popate-rao* with five thousand of the former, and twelve thousand of the latter. The multitude, weariness and heat so disordered the Portugueses, that most of them were slain, *Francis Pereyra* seeing the Fort in danger, called *Antony de Silveyra*, who instantly with care relieved it in person, which preserved it from falling into the Hands of King *Badur*, which it must have done, if assaulted.

assaulted at that time. *Francis Pereyra* was punished for that loss and rashness by being deprived of his Command, and imprisoned by the Governor, who gave that Post to *Antony Silveyra*, whose Diligence had saved it.

. II. *Hector de Silveyra*, who sailed from *Goa* on the twenty first of *January* with ten Sail, and six hundred Men, for the *Red Sea*, spread his Ships cross the Mouth of it from *Cape Guardafu* on the Coast of *Asia*, to *Xael* in *Arabia*, that no Enemy might escape him. Most of them had some Success, chiefly *Hector* and *Martin de Castro* who took two great and rich Ships, killing the Defendants who made a brave resistance. A Brigantine of twelve Men that accompanied the Ship taken by *Hector* to *Mascat*, made up to a great Barque, supposing her a *Portuguese*, and discovered not the mistake till it was not possible to avoid fighting thirty valiant *Turks* that were in her. They fought till both parties tired, were forced to rest, and having recovered Breath all the *Turks* were slain. Of the *Portugueses* three died, the nine carrying off the Barque as a Trophy of this brave Exploit. The Fleet being joined, appeared before *Aden*, where *Hector* managed that King with such Dexterity, that he consented to pay a Tribute of twelve thousand *Xeraphins* yearly to the Crown of *Portugal*, offering him immediately a Crown of Gold. The Agreement was solemnly signed on both sides, and *Antony Botello* left in that

that Port with a Brigantine and thirty Men. In the same manner the King of *Xael* submitted, who not long before had accompanied *Mustapha*, a *Turkish* Captain, with twenty thousand Men to make war upon *Aden*. In the Month of *September* arrived at *Goa* six Ships from *Portugal*.

12. Let us look upon the *Indian* Sea now 1531.  
covered with a Wood of Ships, the product of the Governor's great care, now full of his Design upon *Diu*. This Fleet consisted of above four hundred Sail, many large, more indifferent, and the greatest number small, several of them were only Sutlers, fitted out by the Natives for private Gain. In the Island *Bombaim* was made a general Review of the Fleet, and found to contain three thousand six hundred Soldiers, and one thousand four hundred and fifty Seamen, all *Portugueses*, above two thousand *Malabars* and *Canaras*, eight thousand Slaves fit for Service, and almost five thousand Seamen. The Governor landed at *Daman*, a Fort of *Cambaya*, which was immediately quitted by the *Moors*. Mass was said there and the general absolution given. Then three Rewards were proposed to the three first that should mount the Walls of *Diu* at the scaling of it. Hither came the News, that the *Arabs*, *Turks* and others, to the number of two thousand fortified themselves in the Island *Beth*, seven Leagues from *Diu*. It was by Nature and Art so begirt with Rocks and Walls, and stored with Cannon, that *Nuno de Cuna* gave no Credit to the Relation till he saw it. 13.

13. On the seventh of *February* he came to the Island, and having in person viewed all Difficulties besieged it. He summoned the *Barbarians* to surrender; but they were so resolute, that many of them shaved their Heads, a Token that they fear not death, but are devoted, which they call making themselves *Amoncos*. Their Commander gave them a brutal Example of Resolution, making a great Fire, and throwing into it his Wife, Son, Goods and Family, that if the *Portugueses* overcame, they might find nothing but a heap of Ashes. Others followed the Example. *Nuno* ordered the Island to be attacked at once in six several places. At Break of Day each Officer courageously fell on the place appointed him. The Enemy received them with desperate fury. Many were killed, and among them the brave *Hector de Silveyra*, who in so many Occasions had notably signalized himself. This to us was a great loss. Our dead in all were twelve. A *Portuguese* ran through an Islander with his Lance, and he pressing forward upon it, with his Cymiter cut off the *Portuguese* his Leg, and they both fell down dead. One stood upon a Rock with four Women, and seeing our Men come on, killed two of the Women by their free consent, but a Bullet preventing him from killing the other two, they both leap'd into the Sea to prevent being made Slaves, but to no effect, for they were taken in the Sea. Eighteen hundred of the Enemy were killed, and sixty Cannons taken.

14. *Nuno*



14. *Nuno de Cuna* parting from *Beth*, appeared no less formidable to *Diu*, than that City did to him. The City considered the Sea covered with that Fleet. The Fleet, a City built upon Rocks, and encompassed by them and Water, the Mouth of the River crossed with massy Chains sustained upon Vessels, and eighty filled with Archers and Musqueteers to defend them; within ten thousand armed Men, and an infinite number of great Artillery. The tops of Houses, Walls and Rocks covered with multitudes of People of both Sexes and all Ages, rending the Air with Shouts. Our Governor viewed the danger, consulted the Captains, and ordered the Assault.

15. On the sixteenth of *February*, the signal being given, the Sea and Land were covered with Clouds of Smoak and Dust of the Destruction our Guns made in the City. *Nuno* standing in a Boat cloathed in red, to be the better seen, flew to all parts where there was occasion, and being known, was all the Mark the Enemies Shot was directed to. Which *Sebastian de Sa*, who, by favour, was taken out of another Boat into his, perceiving with some concern, said to him, *Alas, Sir, was it for this you brought me hither!* And he pleasantly, as if no danger had been near, replied to him and others, *Humilitate capita vestra.* *D. Vasco de Lima* had not lowered his Head, for a Ball took it off his shoulders. Our Cannon began to burst with the continual Fire. *Cuna* perceiving this loss, and that twelve Men were

were killed without doing any considerable Execution upon the Enemy, the day being spent, consulted with the principal Men, and it was agreed the Enterprize was not practical. He desisted, leaving *Antony de Saldana* with sixty Vessels in the Bay of *Cambaya*, to do what damage he could to the Enemy. It was agreed on all Hands, that had not the Governor stayed to take *Beth*, he had carried *Diu*; for the *Moor Mustapha* was the only cause of its holding out, who entered but three days before with considerable Relief. We lost never a Vessel, and that part of the Fleet which went with *Nuno de Cuna* arrived at *Goa* the fifteenth of *March*, where it stayed till two Ships came in of six that sailed this year from *Lisbon*. Of the other four, one returned to *Portugal*, another perished in a storm at *Cape Comori*, the Captain *Manuel de Macedo* and all the Men being saved ashore, where they defended themselves against a great number of *Moors*, till relieved from *Cochin*. A third was never heard of. And the fourth came afterwards, but returning home with another, it was never known of what became of both.

16. *Mustapha* as soon as the *Portugues* Fleet was gone, went to offer himself to King *Badur*, carrying great Presents, and was received with Honor, and rewarded. He gave him the Command of *Baroche* in the Bay of *Cambaya*, and other considerable Revenues with the Title of *Rume*, because he was a *Grecian*; for the *Indian Moors* being

ing ignorant of the Division of the Provinces of *Europe*, called all *Thracia*, *Greece*, *Sclavonia*, and the adjacent Countries *Rum*, and the Natives thereof *Rumii*, this Name being proper only to those of *Thracia*, called *Romania*. Therefore the *Turks* and *Rumes* are different Nations, those being originally of *Turcheſtan*, and these of *Greece* and *Thrace*, and the *Rumes* esteem themselves more honorable than the *Turks*. He also gave him the Title of *Cham*, a Dignity among the *Tartars*, like a Duke with us, and among the Eastern People is given to Persons of great Merit. So *Mustapha* from hence forward was called *Rume Cham*.

17. *Antony de Saldana*, who was left in the Sea of *Diu* with sixty Sail and fifteen hundred Men, went to the City *Madrefabat*, five Leagues distant towards the Island *Beth*, and burnt it with small opposition. Then he went to *Goga* twenty four Leagues distant from the last, a place of great Trade, formerly populous and strong. In the Port were fifteen of the best *Paraos* of *Calicut*, laden with Spice, who fled up a Creek, and were followed by *Saldana*, with eight hundred Men in the smaller Vessels. It was found necessary to land, and three hundred Horse and eight hundred Foot coming down to the Relief of the *Malabars*, there was a sharp Engagement, till above two hundred of the Enemy being killed, they quitted the Field and Vessels which were all burnt, as was the Town and eight Ships in the Port. We lost some Men.  
The

The chiefeft Booty was much good Cannon. The same happened to the Towns *Belfa*, *Tarapor*, *Maii*, *Quelme* and *Agacim*, and lastly *Surat*, then rising after the last Fire, and some Vessels in that River. *Sal-dana* having thus terrified all that Coast retired to *Goa*. About this time came into *Nuno de Cuna's* power a Brother of the King of *Cambaya*, who was the rightful Heir of that Crown, and through him our Governor hoped to compass some considerable advantage. *D. Antony de Silveyra* who parted from *Chaul* with six Ships arrived at *Aden*, and found that King who not long before submitted to the *Portugueses*, had killed such as had stayed there, for Covetousness of a Ship laden with Spice that came to his Port. *Silveyra* being too weak to revenge this, sailed to *Ormuz*, where he died, *George de Lima* succeeded in his Command, and took two rich Ships in the Bay of *Cambaya*.

18. Our Cruisers had about this time taken twenty seven Ships of the King of *Calicut* richly laden. He being perplexed with these Losses, and fearing greater, proposed an Accommodation. *James Pereyra* was sent to treat, and obtained what he desired, which was leave to build a Fort at *Chale*. *Chale* is an Island in a River that falls into the Sea three Leagues from *Calicut*, navigable in Boats up to the Mountain Gate. *Urinama*, a Heathen, was a King of it, and next to him he of *Tanor*, both Subjects of *Calicut*. Both coveted the Friendship of the



the *Portugueses*, as well to cast of that Yoke as in hopes to grow rich with our Trade. As soon as *Nuno* had obtained consent to raise the Fort, he set out from *Goa* with one hundred and fifty Sail, three thousand *Portugueses*, and one thousand *Lascares* of the Country. Such diligence was used in the Work, (the Gentlemen not sparing their Labour) that in twenty six days it was in a posture of Defence, the Wall being nine Foot broad with Bulwarks, Towers, a Church, a House for the Commander, and Store-houses. The Command of it was given to *James Pereyra*, who had forwarded the Work, with two hundred and fifty Men; and to secure it by Sea *Manuel de Sousa* with twenty two Ships. The King of *Calicut* repenting he had given leave for that Work, made War upon the Kings of *Chale*, *Caramanlii* and *Tanor*, at the same time making Overtures to draw them to break with the *Portugueses*: but to no effect.

19. About the end of *February Emanuel de Vasconcellos* set out for the *Red Sea* with two Gallions, and some Brigantines. At *Xael* with the loss of one Man he took some *Turkish* Vessels laden, and among them a great Ship called *Custurca*, which was sent *Mascate*. The King of *Xael* fearful of some danger, made his Peace with Submission and Presents. After *Vasconcelos*, came thither *Antony de Saldania* with ten Ships, and the King seeing he would not allow of the submission he made to *Vasconcelos*, began to secure himself, sending out of the

A a

Town

Town all the Riches, Women and Children, which were seen from the Ships, crossing the Mountain upon Camels. But the Weather obliged *Saldana* to leave that Sea.

20. He sailed to *Mascate*, thence to the Coast of *Diu*, seven or eight Ships of that City came out and engaged him, he took three, and stranded the rest. The same happened to a *Turkish* Gallion that was in Port, and endeavoured to flee. A storm rising there dispersed most of the Brigantines. *Saldana* had three Gallions with him, and they suffered Hunger and Thirst, when the Sea driving them towards the Bar, twenty seven Ships of the Enemy that watched the opportunity fell upon them, but drew off without any considerable Action. He dispatched two Vessels to view *Pate*, on which he had some Design, they meeting a rich Ship bound for *Diu*, after a very sharp Engagement took her. The Ship had only in Gold Coin above sixty thousand *Venetian* Chequins. Sailing to *Goa* with Prizes worth above two hundred thousand Ducats, he met short of *Chaul*, *James de Silveyra*, to whom he delivered the Vessels the Governor ordered. At this time arrived four Ships that sailed from *Portugal* the beginning of this year, *Antony de Saldana* returned home with them.

21. *James de Silveyra* sailing to *Patam*, twelve Leagues from *Diu*, plundered and burnt that City with four Ships in the Harbour, The very same was done to *Pate*, and *Mangalor*.

*Mangalor.* This was no new thing in *James Silveira*, for he had before the same success at *Bandora Tana*, and other Towns, and on the Coast of *Diu* at *Castelete*, *Tolaja* and *Madresabat*, by which means he came to Goa with above four thousand Slaves, and an infinite Booty, having killed a great number, and spread an universal Terror.

22. All this encouraged *Nuno de Cunha* to streighten *Diu*, and the King of *Cambaya*, that he might be obliged to consent to the raising a Fort in that City. And because the Growth of *Bacaim* might be an Obstacle to our Designs, he resolved to destroy it. Thither he went with a Fleet of above one hundred and fifty Sail, three thousand *Portugueses*, and two hundred *Canaras*. *Melique Tocam* Lord of *Diu* was then fortifying the City, and hearing of the Power that was preparing against it, put in a Garrison of above twelve thousand Men. *Nuno* divided his Men into three parts to give the Attack, the Landing was dangerous, and the Enemy so numerous, it seemed a rashness to go on, but our Men despising all danger, the Enemy fled first to the Fort, and then to the Mountain, six hundred of them being killed, of ours only eight or nine. Here were taken above four hundred Pieces of Cannon, and much Ammunition. The Country about was all ravaged, and the Fort razed. After this Victory the Governor sent *Emanuel de Albuquerque* with twelve Vessels and three hundred Men, to destroy the Fort of *Damam*;

A 2 2

but

but he not able to effect it, burnt all the Towns from *Bacaim* to *Tarapor*, and bringing under Tribute *Tana*, *Bandora*, *Mais* and *Bombaim*, then retired to *Cbaul* with much Riches, and many Vessels taken in those Rivers. *James de Silveyra*, who sailed from *Bacaim* with four Gallions and fifteen Brigantines bound for the *Red Sea*, took off Cape *Guardafu* a rich Vessel. *Vasco Perez*, about *Zocotora* took a yet richer Turkish Ship, most of her Men being slain, and near Cape *Fartaque* another. *James Silveyra* afterwards burnt two at *Aden*, and did a very generous Action, which was thus: He discovered a very rich Ship of *Gidda*, which spying him, lay by, and her Captain coming aboard, shewed him a Letter from a Portuguese, who was Prisoner in that City, which the Moor thought to be a secure Pass, being given him as such, *Silveyra* opened and found in it these Words: *I beseech such of the King of Portugal's Captains as shall meet this Ship to make prize of her; for she belongs to a very wicked Moor.* *Silveyra* perceiving how the Moor was imposed upon, took no notice of the Deceit, but discharged him, chusing rather to lose the Riches of that Ship, than bring into question the Sincerity of the Portuguese. At the latter end of *April* he returned to *Goa*.

23. At the same time arrived in *India* six Ships from *Portugal*, a seventh perished by the way. These Ships brought new Orders, that the Commanders of Forts should be



besworn by the Governor-General, by which it appears, they were till then independent of them. *Nuno de Cuna* had always his thought fixed upon *Diu*, when *Melique Tocam*, Lord of that City, desired him to send a fit person with whom he might treat about an Affair of Importance to the King of Portugal's Service. He then was apprehensive of his own King. It was therefore thought, he would for his own security deliver up the Town to us. This was the intent; but *Vasco de Cuna*, a Gentleman of parts, being sent, and having done all that could be expected in it, returned without concluding any thing, but not without hopes.

24. At the same time *Tristan de Ga* at *Cambaya* pressed that King to consent to the raising a Fort at *Diu*. The Result was, that the King would have a Conference with *Nuno de Cuna*, and his Design was rather to kill him, than grant the Fort. *Nuno* went thither with an hundred Sail, in which were two thousand *Portugueses*. The King was already at *Diu* when the Governor arrived, and delayed the Interview, desiring, he would send him some of his principal Captains, for that he desired to see them. They went richly cloathed, and were splendidly received. Discoursing, *Emanuel de Macedo* took the liberty, tho in a respectful manner to tell the King, That he justly admired he would take the Command of that City from *Melique Tocam* his Subject, who had served him well, and

was Son of one who had done so before, to give it to *Mustapha*, now called *Rumi Cham*; whose first merit was his Disloyalty to the *Turk*, his natural Prince; that if he denied this, he challenged to fight either single, or as he should think fit. *Rume Cham* was present, and gave no answer, till the King looking angrily upon him for his silence, he said it proceeded from Contempt. *Macedo* repeated the Challenge, and the *Turk* no longer able to shun it, accepted the Challenge to be fought at Sea. *Macedo*, according to appointment waited for him, but he came not. The Interview took not effect for the differences about the manner of it. *Nuno* taking another Course, joined in League with *Omaum Patxath*, King of the *Moguls*. Then *Nuno* returned to *Goa*, and before and after dispatched several Captains, *Antony de Silveira* went to *Bengala* with nine Vessels, *Vasco Peres de Sampaya* to the *Red Sea* with sixteen, thither also *James de Silveira* with five Gallions, *D. Stephen de Gama* to *Malaca*, the two that were for the *Red Sea* made some Prizes.

25. *Cunale Marcar*, a bold Pyrat, about this time scoured the Sea of *Calicut* with eight Vessels well equipped. At *Cape Comori* he found at night a Brigantine with eighteen *Portugueses*, and three Gunners, all so fast asleep, that they were all bound before they waked. Having awaked them, he caused their Heads to be bruised to pieces, saying, *It was to punish them for daring to sleep, knowing he was abroad.* A pleasant Cruelty.

Cruelty. Thence he went to *Negapatan*, where were forty *Portugueses* who defended themselves, but to no effect, for the *Degar*, or Governor, who they thought their Friend, agreed with *Cunale* to rob them. *Coje Marcar*, tho of kin to *Cunale*; desirous to deliver them from this danger, did it by art, speaking to each of the two apart, and so making them suspicious to each other. Yet *Cunale* took some *Portugues* Vessels in that River, and shot to death eight of the Men. The first died for sleeping, these, I suppose, because they were awake. *Antony de Silva* set out of *Cochin* with two hundred Musqueteers, in fifteen small Vessels. *Cunale* hearing of it, run up the *Canamera*, a Bay on this Coast, and fortified himself, but *Antony* obliged him to make his escape in the Habit of a Beggar to *Calicut*, leaving his Vessels and Cannon, with which *Silva* returned victorious to *Cochin*.

26. The King of *Razet* was revolted from him of *Ormuz*. *Antony de Silveira* who commanded the Fort at the request of the latter, sent *Francis Govea* with two hundred Men and eight Sail, to reduce him. *Razet* received them with Fraud, designing to kill them. But it succeeded not, for *Govea* was upon his Guard, knowing his ill Designs, and that he had with his own Cymiter killed the Officer he sent to treat with him. Our Captain sailing over to a small Island to water, met a Fleet of this Kings, and took a Vessel wherein was the King's Nephew, for whose Ransom *Razet* restored.

restored the Prisoners he had, and submitted to him of *Ormuz*, ratified the Peace made by him he had killed, and excused what was past.

1534.

27. King *John* his Care was upon the Affairs of *India*. He had understood the event of *Nuno de Cuna's* attempt upon *Diu*, and that the common Enemy prepared to disturb our Progress, so he continually sent relief. This year arrived there twelve Ships with fifteen hundred fighting Men, commanded by *D. Pedro de Castilobranco*, who set out from *Lisbon* the last *November*. The latter end of this year came also five Ships more, which set out the beginning of this same year, they were commanded by *Martin Alfonso de Sousa*, who had a Commission to be Admiral of the *Indian Sea*. The Governor immediately put him in possession of the Post, sending him against *Damam*. At *Cbaul*, *James Silveira* delivered him his Squadron, and *Vasco Periz* his. Now *Martin Alfonso* had five hundred Men in forty Vessels. He found *Damam* destroyed by its own Commander, who was retired to the Fort with five hundred *Turks* and *Resbutos*. *Martin Alfonso* attempted to scale it, and received some damage, one of his Ladders breaking, when the Enemy on the other side opening a Gate to fly, our Men stopped them, and entring, found a large Court full of Men, and fifty Horse, most of them were put to the Sword, and the Fort razed. The King of *Cambaya* fearing greater loss, desired Peace, which *Nuno de Cuna*



*Cuna* granted, and 'twas sworn upon the following Conditions. That he should give to the King of *Portugal* for ever *Bacaim*, with its Dependences by Sea and Land. That all Ships bound for the *Red Sea* from that Kingdom should set out from *Bacaim*, and return thither to pay the Duties. That none should go to other places without leave from the *Portugueses*. That no Ships of War should be built in any of his Ports. That he should no more give assistance to the *Rumes*. There were other Articles in favour of the King to sweeten the harshness of these, which were afterwards moderated when he gave leave to raise the Fort at *Diu*. Now we have some footing in this Province, something may be said of its situation, people and other affairs with our usual Brevity.

---

## C H A P. V.

*Continues the Government of Nuno de Cuna, and Reign of King John the Third.*

1. **T**HE Kingdom of *Guazarata* (commonly called *Cambaya*, from its Metropolis of that Name) extends from Cape *Faquete* in the West to the River *Nagotana* near

near *Chaul*. It makes a great Bay of the same Name. The Sea ebbs and flows with such violence in this Bay, that in swiftness it exceeds the fleetest Horse; and if in this fury it meets any Ship, it certainly perishes. To avoid this danger there is always a Man on an eminence, who when he sees that Torrent coming, gives notice with a Horn. The distance between Cape *Jaquette* and the River *Nagotana* is above two hundred Leagues. On the West it borders upon the *Resbuti*, a mountain people; on the North with the Kingdom of *Cbisur*, and the East with that of *Pale*, all the Coast is covered with many Towns and Cities. It is watered by two famous Rivers, *Taptii* and *Tapetii*, besides many Creeks that form several Islands. It breeds abundance of Cattle, and is plentiful of other Provisions. The Country is all plain, so that they generally travel in Waggon after the manner of *Flanders*, but lighter, and easier drawn by Oxen somewhat less than those of *Spain*. The Natives are of four sorts; one called *Baneanes Bagançariis*, that feed after our manner; another called only *Baneanes*, who eat nothing that hath life. Their Priests are called *Vertias*, who cloath themselves in white, and never take those Cloaths off till they fall to pieces. They live upon Charity, and (like the Children of *Israel* in the Desert) can keep nothing for the next day. They place their greatest hope of Salvation in killing no Creature, they use no light at night lest any Butterfly

Butterfly should die by it; they always carry a Broom wherewith they sweep the Ground they are to tread on, lest they tread any Worm or Insect to death. The other two sorts are the *Resbuis*, who are good Soldiers, formerly the chief of this Kingdom. They acknowledge one God and three persons, and worship the Blessed Virgin, a Doctrine preserved from the time of the Apostles. The last are *Mabometans*, called *Lauteas*, that is, Natives who embraced that Sect, and those who came to conquer the Countrey. The common people are very ingenious in Mechanicks, in Works of Silk, Gold, Ivory, Mother of Pearl, Tortoise-shell, Crystal, Ebony and other things of Delight. They follow the Rules of *Pitbagoras*, killing no Creature, but rather buy all, tho venemous, from those who take them, and set them loose again. They entertain men whose only Business it is to look about the Towns and Fields for Beasts that are sick, which they cure with great care in Hospitals erected for that purpose. Notwithstanding all this Beastly Charity, they have none that may be called human, for they will not reach their Hand to assist any person in the greatest necessity.

2. In the year 1292, and according to the *Mabometan* Account 700, the *Pagan Galacama* was in quiet possession of this Kingdom, and disturbed it to deprive his Brother of the Kingdom of *Champanel*, left him by his Father. *Galacama* employed two Brothers as Generals upon his Frontiers,

tiers, *Madana*, one of them had the most beautiful Woman of that Country to Wife. She was of the Race of *Padaminii*, who are affirmed, besides their comely Shape, to have so sweet a Scent in their Skin, that they communicate it to their Cloaths, which makes them esteemed above all others. With much reason, for it is a wonder to find a Woman that has a good smell. Yet not impossible. They say there are scarce any of these Women in this Kingdom, but many in *Orixa*. There is no mischief without a Woman, even where they have an ill savour; how much more where one smelt well! The King in love with this Wife of *Madana*, tried all means to gain her; but she being chaste (which was doubtless the sweet Smell) acquainted her Husband and Brother, who joining with *Xiatb Nosaradim*, King of *Delbi*, on whom the Covetousness of that Kingdom prevailed, they wasted the Kingdom of *Cambaya*, till *Galacarna* was at last slain in Battel. *Nosaradim* left *Habedxiath* his General to conquer the Remainder. He rewarded the two Brothers who brought him to this Conquest, and returned home, having made the Kings of *Mandou* and *Chitor* tributary. *Nosaradim* soon after being killed by his Nephew, Civil Wars ensued, and several Governors revolting, called themselves Kings, as did *Habedxiath*, to whom *Moors* succeeded. Thus,

3. The year 1330, *Hamet* the *Mabometan Tartar*, who lived in the City *Cambaya*,  
with



with the assistance of *Arabs*, *Persians*, *Greeks* and *Rumes*, or *Turks*, usurped great part of this Kingdom, then possessed by *Desingue Rao*. What he had tyrannically gained, he prudently maintained. *Ale Cham* succeeded him, and had forty Sons, and three of them were Kings. The first *Peruxiath*, who succeeded him, the second *Azeide Cham*, who by his Wife got the Kingdom of *Mandou*, and the third *Ale Cham*, who with his Wife had the Kingdom of *Agimar*, bordering on that of *Cbitor*. *Peruxiath* followed his Father's Example in securing his Government, and built the City *Diu* in memory of a Victory gained over a *Chinese* Fleet. *Sultan Mahomet* his Son succeeded him, and reigned at the time that *D. Vasco de Gama* discovered *India*, he left the Crown to his Son *Madasor*, as worthy of it for his Actions, as Birth. Not to his Son *Scander Cham*, who gave occasion to his Subjects to kill him, and set up his youngest Brother; *Mahomet Cham*. But the second Brother *Latifa Cham*, to whom of right the Crown belonged, made War, but without success, and it remained in the third, his Name was *Badur Cham*.

4. *Modasar* divided the Possession of *Melique Az*, the Lord of *Diu*, among his three Sons. This Distribution enraged the King's own Sons, who coveted those Lands. But chiefly *Badur*, who poisoned his Father by whom he was as much hated as loved by his Mother. After this Murder he fled to the King of *Cbitor*, and killing one there in the  
King's

King's presence in a Ball made to entertain him with the assistance of *Clementii* the Queen he fled to *Delbi*.

5. There he made himself a *Calandar*, or Religious Man, to shun the punishment of his Crimes. These *Calandars* go loaded with Iron Chains, and feed very hard: with this outward rigor they practise privately all sorts of Wickedness and Uncleaness. They enter into no Towns, but blow a Horn without, that people may bring them Alms. Sometimes they go together to the number of two thousand: *Badur* was one of these. Hearing of the Distractions of the Kingdom of *Cambaya*, he repaired thither with his Chains in search of the Crown. In that manner he entred *Cambaya*, and was proclaimed King by favour of the people, who were pleased with those Tokens of Religion. His Brother *Destor Cham* thought to escape by submitting, but he caused his Head to be cut off as a Traitor. Then he gave the Cities of *Reyner* and *Surat* to two rich Merchants, and afterwards overcame in battel his Brother *Latifa Cham*. He caused *Madremaluco* to be fley'd alive, because he had settled his younger Brother in the Kingdom, in hopes to have the Administration of it, then with his own Hand beheaded the Brother, and two others that reproved that Act.

6. *Badur* desiring to take off *Melique Saca*, Commander of *Diu*, sent for him upon pretence of Business, but he excused himself upon other pretences, and so stopped

ped the Execution; and being pressed, endeavoured to escape with his Riches, but being disappointed, went off poor, and not without danger. His Friends at *Diu* brought thither from *Madrefabat* his Brothor *Melique Tocam*. *Badur*, the other being fled, had like to have killed this, but for some Reasons was obliged to pardon him and others, but he destroyed many. He set out for *Champanel* the year 1527, where were brought to him forty *French* Men, and one *Stephen Dias Brigas*, a *Portuguese*, who for some Crimes done in his Country, fled into *France*, and came to *India*, Captain of a Ship of that Nation; at *Diu* they were all taken, and sent to *Badur*, by whom they were all miserably put to death.

7. At *Champanel* came to *Badur* Embassadors from *Babor Paxiatb*, King of *Delbi*, demanding homage for that Kingdom, as part of the Dominion of their Prince. *Badur* at first would have killed them, but replied, he would himself carry the Answer; and instantly composed an Army of one hundred thousand Men, four hundred Elephants, and a great Train of Artillery. His Design was disappointed, being forced to turn himself to *Doitabad*, a great Town, taken by *Nizamaluco*, and tho he recovered it, it was with great loss, some by the Weather, as being Winter, and some by a Shower of Stones as big as Oranges. At *Champanel* he found certain Men of the Kingdom of the *Colii*, who said they came to receive Tribute, which he paid by fleying them alive.

alive. The year 1529 he marched with seventy thousand Horse, and two hundred thousand Foot, and did great harm in the Territories of *Nizamaluco*.

8. Mean while *Babor Paxiath*, King of the *Mogols* and *Delbi*, marched upon account of the Answer given to his Embassadors the year before. The King of *Cbitor* denied him passage, and in a Battel there was such a slaughter, the *Mogol* was forced to go back to raise new Forces to prosecute his first Design. But the King of *Cbitor* pursuing and doing him great damage in his own Country, he desisted.

*Badur* fell upon the King of *Mandou*, whom he treacherously slew. Then imprisoned the Sons, giving the Mother and Daughters to his Favourites. Next he killed some Officers of that Kingdom who had helped to bring him in.

10. *Salabedin*, one pardoned by *Badur*, fearful of his favour, getting away, secured himself in a strong Castle, whence *Badur* drew him by policy, and forced him to turn *Mahometan*. Then he prepared to take the Fort and mountain *Raosinga*, where *Salabedin* left his Son when he was deceived by *Badur*'s promises; and by the way designed to expel the King of *Cbitor*, Son to him, who kindly entertained him when he fled for the Murder of his Father. This young King bravely resisted *Badur*, disappointed his Design, and made him return to the other against *Raosinga*, a place almost impregnable by art and nature. Here eight *Portugueses* who followed



followed him, shewed their usual Valour, *Francis Tarares* being the first who scaled a Bulwark.

11. *Botiparao*, the Son of *Salabedin*, fearing his resistance might occasion his Father's death, left that City, and went to recover another, the Besieged surrendered. *Badur* perceiving *Salabedin's* Women came not out, asked the cause of him, and sent in to know it, they answered, *They would not come out unless with him.* He was sent to that effect by the King. His Wives and Slaves (above five hundred in number) as soon as they saw him, exclaimed against his turning *Mahometan*, and shewing him a heap of Wood, said, *They would sooner burn themselves with it, than be delivered to their Enemy.* So *Salabedin*, with one hundred and twenty that were their Guard, killed them all upon the Pile, where they were burnt with their Riches. *Badur* hearing of this, hastened to save the Treasure, but was stopped by *Salabedin* and his Men, till all was consumed to Ashes, and they all slain. Yet *Badur* saved almost a million and half of the Remainder of this Destruction.

12. *Salabedin*, and those who died with him, were honorably buried. The mountain he gave to Sultan *Alamo*, who came to him, forced from that place whither *Botiparao* went from hence. Hearing there was a Portugues Fleet at *Diu*, he flew thither with precipitation. But that being no matter of danger, he returned to the Conquest of *Chisor*, with one hundred thousand Horse,

B b

innumerable

innumerable Foot, and six hundred Cannoh. He incamped in the higher Grounds about that City, tho it was like *Raasinga*, it was battered the space of two months, and capitulated, and now *Badur* was possessed of three Kingdoms, each of which was considerable.

13. This was the time when *Tristan de Ga* was at the Court of *Badur*, by *Nuno de Cuna's* Order, to treat of Peace, which was delayed by sundry Accidents, chiefly the death of the King of the *Mogols*, whom he much feared.

14. *Badur*, through Covetousness, cut off the Pay of many that had served, which occasioned above four thousand of Note to desert to the *Mogol*. *Mujate Cham*, a prudent and notable Man, represented this to him, and he, to reward his Advice, sent him on some other pretence to *Diu*, with orders to *Melique Tocam* to kill him. But *Melique* abominating the wickedness of *Badur*, advised the innocent *Mujate Cham* to fly. *Mujate*, instead of flying to save himself, returned to *Badur*, before whom being prostrate, and delivering his own Cymiter, he said, *If I have deserved death of you, here is the Traitor and the Sword. If you please to kill me, I can have no greater honor than to die by your Hand, tho my Grandfather, Father and self have deserved better.* The King was surprized, received him with honor, and bestowed new Favours on him.

15. But his Rage was turned against *Melique Tocam* for discovering the private Order,

Order, so he sent *Rume Cham* to kill him. He got into *Diu*, where *Melique* was not at that time, but received advice of it at a Country-House where he was diverting himself, and fled. *Badur* came to the City, and with his usual craft brought it under. At the same time arrived there *Nuno de Cuna*, in order to that Interview, which took no effect.

16. It took no effect, because *Badur* never made any Proposals but to shift off a danger, which he greatly feared from the *Mogol*, and hoping to agree with him, he was willing to break with the *Portugueses*. But he was deceived, for that Prince recalled his Embassadors, and commenced the War. Let us see who this *Mogol* is.

---

## C H A P. VI.

*Continues the Government of Nuno de Cuna from the Year 1534, in the Reign of King John the Third.*

1. **T**HE *Mogols* call themselves *Chacatais*, in the same manner as the *Spaniards* call themselves *Goths*. *Chacata* is the Name of the Province they inhabit near *Turquestan*, and the Nobles suffer not themselves to be called *Mogols*. The *Persians* write

B b 2

they

they are descended from *Mogog*, Grandson to *Noah*, from whom they received the Worship of one only God. This Nation wandring through many Provinces, got the best footing in *Mogalia*, or *Mogostan*, called by *Ptolomey*, *Paropanifus*; now they stretch farther, and border upon the Kingdom *Horacum*, which that Author calls *Aria*, or *Here*, now the Metropolis thereof. The *Mogols* go from the North to drink the Waters of the River *Geum*, that runs through *Bactria*, so called from its Metropolis *Bactria*, or *Bobara* (a famous place for Learning, being the Remains of great *Zoroastes*, where *Avicen* got the Learning that made him so famous) neighbouring upon *Sogdiana*, now called *Quiximir*, and mount *Caucasus*, which divides *India* from other Northern Provinces. This Kingdom now reaches to the mountainous *Parvets* and *Bagous*, which they call *Angou*. As there are in it great Mountains, so there are most large and fruitful Plains, watered by five Rivers, which compose the famous *Indus*. They are *Bet*, *Satinague*, *Chanao*, *Rave* and *Rea*. The Cities are many, the Men courageous.

2. The *Mogols* are *Mahometans*, their Language *Turkish* and *Persian*, they are well shaped, white, and have small Eyes like the *Tartars* and *Chineses*. The Nobility wear rich and gay Cloaths, fashioned like the *Persians*, their Beards long. The Women are beautiful. Their military Dress is no less costly, their Arms being gilt and polished;



ed; they are singular at the Bow. In fight violent, and of good conduct: they use Artillery. Their King is treated with great Majesty, is seldom seen, his Guard two thousand Horse every quarter.

3. The *Mogols* and *Patanes* both equally strove to conquer *India*. They were Neighbours. The Event of War and Treachery brought the *Patanes* and *Delbi* under the Subjection of the *Mogol*, at the time when *Babor Paxiath*, great Grandson to *Tamerlane* the Great, reigned among them.

4. *Omaum*, Son of *Babor*, now broke with *Badur*, King of *Cambaya*, who to begin the War sent twenty thousand Horse, and a multitude of Foot upon his Enemies Frontiers. Here it may appear, that Ingratitude never escapes unpunished. The Queen *Cremensii*, who had saved *Badur's* Life, and in return was by him deprived of her Liberty and Kingdom of *Chitor*, now revenged her self on him, after this manner. He by his Embassadors required her to send him her Son with what Men she could to serve against the *Mogol*. The Queen desired he would restore her other Son, whom he kept as an Hostage, that she might not be deprived of both, and that the mean while she would raise the Forces. *Badur* not diving into her Design, sent him, and she immediately put her self into the protection of the *Mogol*. *Badur* enraged at this Action, gathered one hundred thousand Horse, four hundred and

fifteen thousand Foot, a thousand Cannon, many of great Bulk, six hundred armed Elephants, and six thousand Carriages. This multitude marched in great order, and was abundantly supplied with all things.

5. He besieged the City *Cbitor*, and battered it furiously; but tho the besieged received great damage, they did him much more. *Badur* now raging, received the News that the *Mogols* had slain twenty thousand of the Men he sent to ravage their Country. He vented his passion upon the City, and at last more by policy than strength became Master of it, having lost fifteen thousand Men, among them four *Portugueses*. The Queen with the choice of her Riches fled. *Badur* used no Cruelty towards the City, but repaired it against future dangers, leaving *Mirao Hozem* to command in it with twelve thousand Men. Then he marched towards his Enemy, who advanced victorious through the Kingdom of *Mandou*, in order to relieve *Cbitor*, and being now informed it was in possession of *Badur*, and that he was intrenched about *Duqor*, *Omaum* marched thither, and encamped.

6. *Badur* found the greatest danger where he sought security; for being incamped between a River and a Lake, and *Omaum* before him, the resort of Provisions was quite cut off, so that in few days they suffered extreme Famine, and such as went out to seek Relief, fell into the Hands of the

the Enemy, as did *Coraçam Cham* with two thousand Horse.

7. This so disheartened *Badur*, that he stole away, and his Camp was plundered by the *Mogols*, who found there vast Riches. *Badur* with all speed fled towards *Mandon*, accompanied by *Rume Cham*, and some *Portugueses*, being left by many persons of Note, and particularly *Melique Liaz*, for the murder of his two Brothers. In fine, very little of that mighty Army escaped the Sword or Famine, and what did was dispersed and disarmed. *Badur* got into *Mandou*, having slipped ten thousand *Mogols*, who thought to prevent his reaching that place.

8. *Badur* fortified this City, and gave the chief Command to *Rume Cham* his Favourite. *Omaum* hearing of it, lengthened his Marches to come upon him. *Rume Cham*, now fearful of his Master, deserts to *Omaum*, *Rume's* Wife, Daughter and Riches were at *Champanel*. *Badur* and *Rume* strove who should first secure *Champanel*, the former having there one (tho the least) of his three Treasures, which only in Copper-Mony was worth thirty Millions, besides Pearls, Precious Stones, and other things of value, with this Treasure he sent *Rume's* Family and Riches under a strong Guard to *Diu*, whilst he himself hearing the approach of *Omaum*, wasted the Country, and destroyed the Artillery, lest it should fall into the Enemies Hands. The same he did at *Cambaya*. *Rume Cham* seeing his Wife and

Riches were carried away, obtained of his new Master five thousand Horse to follow them. As he entered one Gate of *Cambaya*, *Badur* was going out at another, who seeing himself so close pursued by *Rume*, left his Women and Riches by the way, that they might put a stop to his pursuit. So it fell out, for *Rume Cham* returned to *Champanel*, and *Badur* got to *Diu*, whilst *Omaum* was at *Champanel*, dividing his Kingdom, and conquering that impregnable place with Liberality.

9. *Champanel* was impregnable by Art and Nature, and the *Mogols* not used to spend time even in easie Sieges, but Tyrants have nothing secure, so these Rocks which might have been a secure Retreat to him, turned against *Badur*. This mountain is thirty Leagues from the Sea, and yet visible thither, the ascent of it being almost five Leagues. Where Nature left any passage, Art supplied it with strong Walls. The City stands on the side of it, has sightly Buildings, twenty thousand Families, and a great Trade. The City it self is not walled, but there are many places upon the Mountain well fortified, strongly garrisoned and stored with Cannon. Somewhat higher is the Royal Palace, wonderful for Structure and Greatness, and on the top a Fort can terrifie the most daring. Here *Badur* found no security, for Tyrants can meet none in the World, and think themselves between Sheets, when they are between the strongest Walls, and when between



tween the finest Sheets they imagine they lie upon Thorns.

10. These Misfortunes were the Motives that induced *Badur* to consent to our raising the Fort at *Diu*. Before, to secure our Friendship against the *Mogol*, he had surrendered *Bacaim* to *Nuno de Cuna*, and now in hopes of our assistance to recover what was lost, he offered *Diu*. *Badur* sent to dispose *Martin Alphonso de Sousa*, who was at *Chaul*, and he urged the necessity of raising the Fort, giving advice hereof to *Nuno*, and desiring leave to go treat about this important Affair. *Cuna* refused him leave; jealous that any but himself should compass a matter so much desired by his Prince, and sent his own Secretary Ambassador to *Badur*.

11. Still *Badur* struggled with his Pride, and thought to get assistance from the *Turk* to recover his Kingdom. To this effect he sent *Saf Cham* Ambassador with a rich Present, but hearing the *Mogol* had taken *Champanel*, utterly despaired. He resolved to fly to *Meca*, and there wait the *Turks* Answer, but his Mother and Friends dissuaded him, advising to grant leave to the *Portugueses* to raise the Fort at *Diu*, and by their assistance his Fortune might be bettered. Instantly he sent to offer it to *Martin Alphonso* at *Chaul*, whither also came a Message from the *Mogol* with the same Offer.

12. *Martin Alphonso* having sent advice to the Governor, asked not a second time for leave,

leave, but set out immediately for *Diu*, as *Badur* desired. At Sea he met the Secretary *Simon Ferryra*, and both arrived at *Diu* on the twenty first of September. They soon came to an agreement upon these Articles, That *Badur* confirmed all that had been done relating to *Bacaim*; that something which concerned Trade should be transferred thence to *Diu*, that there should be a League offensive and defensive between the King of *Portugal* and him, that the Fort should be raised, where and in what manner the Governor should appoint, that a Bulwark upon the Sea should immediately be delivered to him, that they should not meddle with the King's Revenues at *Diu*, &c. Immediately a *Jew* and an *Armenian* were sent to *Portugal* with this News to the King; and to the Governor at *Goa*, *James de Mesquita*, one of the *Portugueses* who served *Badur* at the Siege of *Chitor*, that King desiring that *Nuno de Cuna* would instantly come to *Diu*.

13. Whilst these things were in agitation, seven Ships arrived from *Portugal* with Men and great Riches. They came to *Goa* before the first advice reached the Governor, and before the second could come he was under sail, with a resolution to accept the Offer of *Badur*. The King received him with much honor and demonstration of Joy. After the first Visits, he desired him to send some Men to recover the Fort of *Vruarce*, taken by the *Mogols* upon the River *Indus*, and some Relief to the City *Baroch*.

*Baroche.* *Vasco Perez de Sampayo* was sent to the first with two hundred and fifty *Portugueses* in twelve *Barques*. To the latter Enterprize went *Emanuel de Macedo*, who returned to *Diu*, without doing any thing, the Inhabitants having quitted the place which was too big for his small number to maintain.

14. About this time there was one *James Botello* in these parts, who was in disgrace with King *John*, because it was said he designed to go for *France*, being skillful in the Affairs of *India*. The Favour of Princes is generally recovered either by something very inconsiderable, or else by some Action that seems impossible. *Botello* resolved upon the latter. He knew how earnestly the King desired the raising the Fort at *Diu*; scarce was it granted, when he getting the Draught of it, and a Copy of the Capitulation, committed himself to the vast Ocean that is between *Spain* and *India*, in a *Barque* that was but sixteen Foot and half in length, nine Foot broad, and four Foot and a half deep. He set out privately with his own Slaves, three *Portugueses*, and two others, saying he went to *Cambaya*. Being out at Sea, he discovered his Design, they were all astonished, but overcome by fair Words and Promises. Till finding they were reduced to unspeakable Miseries, the Slaves agreed to kill him, and killed a Servant, which occasioned all the Slaves, who were Sailors, to be slain. Without Seamen or Pilot he held his Course, and to the admiration

miration of all Men arrived at *Lisbon*, where the Barque was immediately burnt, that no Body might see it was possible to perform that Voyage in so small a Vessel. The King was greatly pleased with the News, and *James Botello* restored to the Royal Favour, without any other Reward for this prodigious Action.

15. *Nuno de Cuna* began the Work with diligence, and a great number of Hands, being himself the first that laboured at the Foundation, which was done, with Sound of Trumpets, Fifes, Drums, Noise of Cannon and Shouts. The Work was soon finished, and the Command of the Fort given to *Emanuel de Sousa*, with nine hundred *Portugueses*, and sixty Pieces of great Cannon. *Badur* already reaped the Benefit of this Concession; for *Nizamaluco*, at the instance of *Nuno de Cuna*, not only made peace with, but assisted him against his Enemy. *Vasco Perez* had recovered *Variyene*, and King *Omaum* hearing *Nuno de Cuna* was at *Diu*, despaired of taking that City, and employed his Arms against other places.

16. *Badur* pleased with this success, desired to view in person how much of his Kingdom was yet left him. This he communicated to *Nuno de Cuna*, desiring a number of *Portugueses* might go with him, and particularly *Martin Alfonso de Sousa*. *Nuno* approved his Resolution, and gave him five hundred Men, whereof fifty were of Note. Now *Cuna* fearing *Omaum* would fall



fall upon *Bacaim*, sent to its Relief *Garcia de Sa*, with four hundred *Portugueses*. He seeing a mighty Army threaten that City resolved to quit it, to the terror of all the Inhabitants, and with miserable Cries of Women and Children. *Antony Galvam* considering the loss of the *Portugues* Reputation, persuaded him with strong Reasons to alter his Resolution. *Sa* began to fortifie the place, and the *Mogol* knowing their Resolution, drew off. This Retreat of the *Mogols* encouraged *Mirao Muhold*, Nephew to *Badur*, who was upon the Frontier of *Nizamaluco* to recover many places taken by the *Mogols*, which brought fresh Hopes to *Badur* of regaining his Crown.

17. *Badur* being thus prosperous with the assistance of the *Portugueses* only, and repenting he had given leave to raise the Fort, would build a Wall between it and the City, covering the Design he had thereby of gaining the Fort; with the pretence of parting the *Portugueses* and *Gurates*, whose too free Communication caused Divisions. There was some bickering between the King and *Nuno* about it, till the King desisted. *Nuno de Cuna* went to *Bacaim*, and began the Fort there, giving the honor of laying the first stone to *Antony Galvam*, in reward of his resolution in defence of it. *Garcia de Sa* was left to carry on the Work, and *Nuno* returned to *Goa*.

18. Let us return to *Malaca* and *Maluco*, whence the course of the Occurrences in *India* drew us. During the Government of *Lope Vaz*

*Vaz de Sampaio*, the King of *Achem* had caused to be killed *Simon de Sousa*, and others, bound for *Maluco*, and taken others prisoners. He feigned to be sorry for that Action, and sent three of the Prisoners to *Peter de Faria*, then commanding the first time at *Malaca*, offering Peace, and desiring him to send persons fit to treat of it, and he would deliver to them *Sousa* his Galley, and the other Prisoners. This was much for the ease of *Malaca*, and therefore *Peter de Faria* sent presently a Vessel with some *Portugueses*, who were all killed by that Tyrants Order before they came to him. Six months after *Garcia de Sa* then commanding, the King writ a Letter to him, saying, He wondered no Body was sent to treat of Peace; believing by reason of the-Secresie used in murdering the others, it was not known; and at the same time caused the Prisoners he had (whom, to compass his wicked ends, he treated kindly) to write to the Commander about it. *Sa* presently sent a Gallion well provided with Men and Cannon, commanded by *Emanuel Bacbeco*, who suffered himself to be circumvented by the King's Barques, and he with most of the Men were slain, the Gallion was carried for the King to see, who then caused the rest of the men, and the prisoners he made much of to be killed. Then he joined with the King of *Aru*, and all this to the intent to gain *Malaca*, having intelligence with *Sinaya Raja*, a considerable Moor, who lived

lived in that City. The Correspondence being discovered by some drunken *Achemes*, produced the publick safety and death of *Sinaya*, who was thrown headlong from a Tower by *Garcia de Sa* his order.

15. The year 1530 *Gonçalo Pereyra* set out from *Malaca* for *Maluco*, and in pursuance to the Governor's Order, by the way visited the King of *Borneo*, offering him liberty to trade at *Malaca*. *Borneo* is an Island fruitful of Provisions, rich in costly Merchandize, and produces the finest Diamonds. The King is powerful, his Religion the *Mahometan*, so his People. The City of that Name. is large, has beautiful Buildings and strong Walls. The Island has four principal Ports, to which resort Merchants from sundry parts. The Offer pleased the King. *Gonçalo Pereyra* arriving at *Ternate*, *D. George de Meneses* delivered him the Fort, and King *Cachil Daiabo*, who was there prisoner. The Queen his Mother, who had fled from her City as was before related, hearing of the new Commander, sent to put him in mind, how kindly the King her Husband had received the *Portugueses*, how ungrateful the Return had been from them, who caused his Son and Heir to die in a prison, and now kept the other, and obliged her their Mother to fly to the Mountains, having lost the City where she was born, and whereof she was Queen. That she demanded Reparation of *D. George* his Cruelty, and Liberty for her Son. After some Scruples *Gonçalo Pereyra* solemnly

solemnly swore he would set him at liberty as soon as opportunity served, whereupon she returned to the City, and they agreed; as did the King of *Tidore*, being eased of a Tribute, imposed by *D. George*, which he was not able to pay. There was also an Accommodation with the Spanish Captain *Ferdinand de la Torre*. Thus things were settled as was suitable to the Portugues Reputation.

20. *Gonçalo Pereyra*, in pursuance of the Governor's Orders made *D. George* a prisoner. He was carried to *Goa*, thence to *Portugal*, whence he was banished to *Brazil*, and killed by the Heathens there in a Battel. After this *Gonçalo Pereyra* examined the Proceedings of the Portugues Officers of the Revenue, and found them guilty of great Frauds. They offended at this Discovery, conspired with the Queen to kill him, which they executed, tho he defended himself with Resolution, yet most of the Murderers were killed by the other Portugueses, who maintained the Fort which was in great danger of being lost, and *Luis de Andrade* kept the Command as Lieutenant.

21. *Bras Pereyra*, who commanded by Sea, would have succeeded his Kinsman. But the Conspirators elected *Vincent Fonseca* one of their Companions. He having promised the Queen her Sons Liberty, if she would assist him in obtaining that Post, now loaded him with Irons, and secured his Brothers and Family. She withdrawing into the Country, stopped all provisions from



from coming to the Fort, and so obliged him to set her Son free, and all was appeased for the present.

22. This Quiet lasted not long; for the King being near of Age to govern, *Pate Sarangue*, who governed for him, finding his power expiring, conspired with *Fonseca*, to set up *Tabarija*, the King's Bastard Brother, who was younger. To this effect they began to lay several scandalous Imputations upon the King, and *Fonseca* attempted to secure him, which he having notice of fled to the Mountain. *Fonseca* follows, pretending he had a Design upon the Fort. The King might have defended himself, but forbore in respect to the *Portugueses* whom he loved. He fled with his Mother to *Tidore*. His Enemies set up *Tabarija*, and following to *Tidore*, oblige both Kings to seek security in the Mountains. *Fonseca* was the more enraged against the King for that at his return a *Moor* had killed his Son, and endeavoured to slay *Tabarija*, who escaped; and because many obeyed not the Usurper, calling him *Fonseca's* King, whereas they might more properly term *Fonseca*, *Tabarija's* King. He sent *Pate Sarangue* with Forces, and subdued all. He by treachery caught the Queen Mother, and gave her as Wife to *Sarangue*, and the deposed King's Wife to the Usurper. The distressed King leaving his Mother and Friends had recourse to the King of *Gilolo's* Courtesie.

23. Now *Fonseca* sends *Blas Pereyra* and others prisoners to *India*. The Governor informed of the Insolences committed at *Ternate*, sent *Tristan de Altaide* to command there, who secured *Fonseca*, and sent him to *Goa*. With him went the *Spaniards* from *Gilolo*, in order to be sent to *Spain* in the *Portugues Ships*. But the King of *Gilolo* refusing to surrender the *Spaniards*, *Tristan* was obliged to go with a power, in which the Kings of *Ternate*, *Tidore* and *Bacham* joined, the City was abandoned and burnt, and the *Spaniards* set at liberty.

24. *Tristan de Ataide*, at the instigation of *Samarao*, put *Tabarija* in prison, and set up his younger Brother *Cacbil Aeiro*. The King's Mother and *Sarangue* were also secured, and the City became desolate, the Natives of it finding no Comfort in their Neighbours, who upbraided them for admitting so wicked a People as the *Portugueses*, who since they had footing in this Island were guilty of the most exorbitant Villanies that could be imagined. In fine, *Ataide* sent those Prisoners to *Goa*, for the Crimes he was guilty of himself, and so *Nuno de Cuna* judged it, taking care to send them back to their Country.

25. Now *Tristan de Ataide* employed his Thoughts on the Profit he designed to make by the Sale of Cloves, and ordered it so, that the King of *Bacham* would not consent. *Tristan* in a rage sent his Men armed, the King protested he was a faithful Friend to the King of *Portugal*; but they sought  
Spice

Spice for themselves, not Friendship for their King. So they were convinced by the Sword, many killed, and the rest were shamefully put to flight. *Tristan* in a greater fury joining with the Kings of *Ternate* and *Tidore*, forced him of *Bacham* to abandon his City, which was destroyed, and to sue for peace, which was sold him for a Tribute to be paid in Cloves. Yet at the same time this King conspires with those of *Gilolo*, *Tidore*, and the deposed of *Ternate*, and with *Samarao* to kill *Ataide*, and take the Fort. They began their Design by persuading him to send Ships several ways, where he lost many Men, and *Cachil Daialo*, the deposed King of *Ternate*, laying hold of the opportunity, recovered part of his Kingdom, with the assistance of those of *Gilolo*, *Tidore*, *Bacham*, *Maquiem* and *Moutel*, with whose aid the *Ternates* slew all the *Portugueses* about the Island. *Ataide* prepared to take revenge, when *Simon Sodre* arrived from *Malaca* with a Ship and many Men, that brought new life to the desperate *Ataide*, and put him in a posture to recover some places.

26. The *Moors* endeavoured to burn some of our Vessels, bringing to execute this design almost three hundred Sail, they received some damage, but would not desist, nor hearken to *Ataide*, who sued for Peace, being in the Fort, and reduced to eat all sorts of Vermin. *D. Ferdinand de Momroy*, a *Spanish* Gentleman, who came from *Banda* with Provisions, delivered him out of this danger.

This Success was answered by a Misfortune, for all the Inhabitants fled from *Ternate*, and the *Moors* killed some of his Men, and took a Ship, but now a new Captain comes to the Fort, which stood in need of it. *Tristan de Ataide* was as deformed of Body as his Actions were scandalous. Let us return to the Affairs of *India*.

---

## C H A P. VII.

*Continues the Government of Nuno de Cuna, the same Year 1536, in the Reign of King John the Third.*

1. **W**E have already related how the Empire of *Decan* by the death of *Mahomet Xiath*, was divided into seven parts, by as many Governors who set themselves up as Kings, and warring among themselves were reduced to five. The first and chief of these was *Hidalcam*, whose Territories lie from North to South along the Sea Coast from the River *Domel*, eight Leagues off *Dabul*, to *Cintacola*, eleven below *Goa*, and has sixty Leagues in length, and fifty in breadth where largest. On the North it borders upon *Nizamaluco*, on the South upon *Canara*, and part of *Narsinga*, and on the East upon *Madremaluco*,  
*Melique*



*Melique Verido*, and *Cotamaluco*, which make the five into which that Crown was divided. *Cotamaluco* and *Verido* were at war because the former reflected upon the latter, as disloyal to the dead King, as if either of them were innocent. *Cota* came off with loss.

2. *Hidalcam* upon such like occasion took Arms against *Cotamaluco*, who was then at *Golkonda*, a City almost impregnable, being seated upon an inaccessible mountain, well fortified and garrisoned. *Hidalcam* set down before it with one hundred thousand Horse, and four hundred thousand Foot. *Cota*, not without reason, was apprehensive of this danger, but reposed great confidence in twelve *Portugueses* he had with him. The Enemy the first Attacks lost twenty thousand Men, and afterwards an hundred thousand, as well by Famine as Sword, for *Cotamaluco* cut off all his Provisions, and such parties as went out for them, and of what he took he sent ten thousand to *Hidalcam* without Ears or Noses, bidding him put upon them those of his Men he had served so the last War. The Sorrow for these Misfortunes caused his Death, whence sprang Wars between his Sons. These were *Mulacam*, who was received as Heir, and *Abraham*, who could not brook his being owned as such, and being encouraged by *Cotamaluco* and others, disturbed the common Peace, and was at last himself taken prisoner.

3. *Cotamaluco* set upon *Mulacham* as he was carrying his Father to bury him, but

was forced to fly to the Woods. Mean while *Abraman* escaped out of prison, and by the assistance of *Nizamaluco* possessed himself of the Kingdom, and took his Brother *Mulacham*, whom his Army infamously delivered up at *Bisapor*.

*Açadacam* set out with a good Army to rescue *Malucam*. But *Melique Caf*, in whose custody he was, cruelly put out his Eyes, and delivered him and his Treasure to *Abramam*. He desiring to appease *Açadacam*, made him great Offers, which were all rejected; *Açadacam* encamped within five Leagues of him, and sent a Messenger to him, whose Name was *Caçem*; this Man *Abramam* prevailed with to undertake to murder his Master, which *Açadacam* discovering, caused him to be stabbed before he approached him.

5. *Açadacam* endeavoured to alienate the Hearts of the great ones from *Abramam*, but was not altogether so successful as he wished. In fine, *Cogerte Cham*, who at his instigation acted in the same manner, was obliged to fly for relief to *Nizamaluco*, in whom he found his Ruin, being robbed by him, and brought to such misery, he resolved to retire to *Mecha*; but passing through *Dabul*, he accepted the Offer of Protection made him by *Simon Guedex*, then commanding there, till *Nuno de Cuna* received him at *Diu*, and obtained of King *Badur* to entertain him according to his Quality, where after he became one of the chief Generals of *Cambaya*.

6. The

6. The new *Hidalcan* (I mean *Abrabam*, for those Princes, when they come to the Crown, all take this Title) was perplexed with the Proceedings of *Açadacam*, and endeavoured to reconcile him. *Açadacam*'s Forces at this time ravaged all the Continent about *Goa*, and *Hidalcan* made fresh Instances to bring him to his Court, but to no effect. Mean while the desolation of that Country was such, that the Natives freely offered it up to *Nuno de Cuna*, he, after conferring about it with *Açadacam*, accepted the Offer to deliver that Country from utter Ruin.

7. *Açadacam* was a *Mahometan* as well in his Dealing, as Belief. The more to perplex *Hidalcan*, he goes into the Service of the King of *Bisnagar*, who received him with great honor. *Nuno de Cuna* was not exempted from his Frauds; therefore to carry on his Designs, he persuaded him to send *Christopher de Figueredo*, promising to prevail with the King of *Bisnagar* to resign to the King of *Portugal* the Continent about *Goa*, to which he had an ancient Title. *Hidalcan* being informed of these Proceedings encamped near him of *Bisnagar* with four hundred thousand Men, and 700 Elephants, the other had a 1000 Elephants more, and some thousands of Men. He sent to let him know, that according to former Agreements, he ought to deliver up to him his Slave *Açadacam*. The King of *Bisnagar* referred it to *Açadacam* himself to give the Answer, and he gave it such as deceived,

and at the same time was approved of.

8. But the King was soon undeceived; for *Açadacam*, who had done all this only to better his Fortunes, now went over to *Hidalcam*, when least he expected it. *Cotamaluco*, who had joined *Hidalcam*, to oppose *Açadacam*, seeing him received with great honor, goes over to the King of *Bisnagar*, who was marching to besiege the City *Rachol*, which he had before taken, and had again submitted to *Hidalcam*. At last these Princes came to a Composition, parting the Territory of that City, which fell to the Lot of *Hidalcam*. *Açadacam*, by order of his Master, marched after *Cotamaluco* to the City *Naiteguir* taken by him, and recovered it, and obliging him to put himself into *Hidalcam's* Power, with a Grand daughter he had offered him to Wife. The Wedding reconciled all this Discord.

9. King *Badur* pretended by an ancient Custom of *Indostan* to have the power of giving the Title of King. He sent the Royal Ensigns to *Hidalcam*, desiring he should acknowledge him as his Predecessors had done: but *Hidalcam* accepted his Friendship, and rejected the Title. *Badur's* intention was to secure *Hidalcam* against the *Portugueses*, to whom he owed the Recovering of his Crown. *Açadacam*, being suspicious of *Hidalcam*, endeavoured to be far from him, and to this end prevailed with *Cotamaluco* to return home and declare war. *Hidalcam* discovered the Author of  
this



this Discord, and would have killed him, but the Design being disclosed, *Azadacam* threw himself at his Feet with two hundred thousand *Pardaos* of Gold, begging pardon, tho he said he had done nothing to ask pardon for. Thus he bought his Life, and *Hidalcam* sold his safety. Such is the power of Gifts, even over those who can give greater.

10. *Hidalcam* now bent his thoughts upon recovering the Lands about *Goa*. *Açadacam*, who had been the cause that *Nuno de Cuna* took them, now was the promoter of his Master's demanding them. *Nuno* referred the Answer to *Diu*, whither he was going, being sent for by King *Badur*, at his arrival almost despoiled of his Crown. They expected no answer, but suddenly *Solyman Aga* invaded those Lands with almost six thousand Men. They began to hinder the carrying Provisions to *Goa*. *D. John Pereira*, who then commanded, sent to advertise *Solyman* of the Injustice of his Undertaking, but he gave no ear to it, and killed some *Portugueses* not without receiving considerable damage. He besieged *Christopher de Figueredo* in the Fort of *Mandor*, to whose relief came *Jordan de Freytas*, with some Men, sent by *D. John*, so the *Turk* raised the Siege, and fled as far as *Margam*.

11. *Don John* marched at the heels of *Freitas*, and being at *Mandor*, the *Aga* sent him word, he came not to make war, but to receive the Rents of those Lands: the Answer was, That he should march off within

within an hour and half. *Don John* followed the Messenger to force the *Turk*, in case he obeyed not, but finding he did, retired.

12. *Solyman* halted at *Ponda*, from whence he made fresh Instances to *D. John* to resign those Lands to *Hidalcan*. He answered, he acknowledged him not as his Minister, and prepared for War. He built the Fort of *Rachol*, where some Blood was spilt, *Solyman* endeavouring to obstruct it, who lost three thousand Men about *Bailim* and *Singuizar*, slain by the *Gentils*, assisted by two hundred *Portugueses*. *Jordan de Freytas*, with fifty Men, routed the *Turk Sarnabose*, sent by *Solyman* with five hundred. *Emanuel Vasconcelos* razed a Bulwark the Enemy was making in the Pass of *Borii*, and burnt some Houses. *Solyman* advances as far as *Margam*. *Pereyra* went to meet him with five hundred *Portugueses*, and seven hundred *Canaras*. The Fight began, the *Canaras* and some *Portugueses* gave way, terrified with strange Fire-works made by a Witch, who in Man's Cloaths sought to revenge the Death of her Husband. *Pereyra* seeing this Disorder, advanced, crying out, *Let who will follow me, for I hope with the help of God to overcome the Enemy*. All following his Example, *Solyman* quitted the Field, having lost eight hundred Men, on our side not one was killed. The Booty was considerable.

13. Mean while *Açadacam* attempted to recover these same Lands, but met no great success,

success, for *Hidalcam* endeavoured thus to divert him, while he gained his City of *Bilgam*, where his Riches lay. At length they agreed, and *Açadacam* designed again to attempt the Dependences of *Goa*. He proceeded not with Vigor, being conscious, *Nuno* had by his advice possessed himself of them, and because he had lately received a Message from him after his Return from *Diu*. Yet in conclusion he marched as far as *Ponda* with twenty thousand Men.

14. From that place he sent a Letter of *Hidalcam* to *Cuna*, demanding those Lands. The Answer was, He held them by consent of *Açadacam*, that if he desired war the *Portugueses* were not backward, and that he could not restore them, or raze the Fort of *Rachol* without his King's Consent. *Açadacam* fearing his Master would take his City, acted not much on this side. So there happened no considerable Action.

15. Now the Answer of *Hidalcam* was brought, containing, That since *Açadacam* was the Cause of his taking those Lands, he would stand by what should be agreed between them. Both coveting the same thing for themselves, they came to no agreement. *Cuna* relieved *Vasco Fernandez* who was in some distress, and they put the Enemy to flight. Hearing the Enemy appeared now in greater Numbers, he sent *Don John Pereyra* with one hundred and thirty Horse, six hundred *Portugues* Foot, and one thousand *Canaras*, commanded by *Crisna*, an honest Pagan. They found the Enemy  
at

at the Foot of a Mountain, and attacked them with such Vigor, they presently fled, their Commander and many more were slain, on our side only four.

16. *Açadacam*, after these Losses, desired a Conference with *Nuno de Cuna*, but it succeeded not, so the Inroads were continued chiefly about *Rachol*, where our Cannon killed some. Winter expiring, *Nuno* began to act more vigorously. He sent *Antony de Silveyra* to the Continent with two hundred *Canara* Horse, and seventeen hundred *Portugues* Foot. *Antony* went three Leagues up the Country, making great havock, and killing three hundred *Moors*, and two considerable Officers, with loss of eight *Portugueses*. Mean while *Gonzalo Vaz Coutinho* destroyed the Coast of *Dabul*, and thence brought to *Goa* many Vessels taken, and three hundred Prisoners, and abundance of Provisions, which encreased the Joy of the other Victories, and relieved the City distressed for want.

17. The Clamours of that ruined People, and a Letter from *Nuno de Cuna* coming to *Hidalcan*, he ordered *Açadacam* to desist. He obeyed not, but to justify his refusal, sent him a Present of a stately Horse and Cymiter, set with Jewels. *Hidalcan* going to take off a piece of Silk, in which the Cymiter was wrapped, was hindered by his Mother, who caused a Page to unfold it, he instantly fell down dead, as did two Men who were ordered to mount the Horse, Such was the Poison the Present carried.



carried. Then the Queen looking upon her Son, said, *Behold your Father's Murderer.* For it was believed he had been poisoned. The Governor perceiving that *Açadacam* did not desist, sent *Gonzalo Vaz Coutino* with thirty Vessels and three hundred Men, half *Canaras*, who burnt the Town of *Ponda*, and many Ships, and returned with three hundred Prisoners. *Açadacam* in a rage marched towards *Rachol*, and opposite to it began to erect a Fort called *Bori*, to obstruct our Sailing up the River of that Name; and notwithstanding our opposition, put it into such condition, it appeared formidable. *Nuno de Cuna* sent a fresh Supply to hinder this Work, and they assaulting it with more courage than conduct, four hundred of them were slain, and forty taken, whereof one appearing naked before *Açadacam*, he took off part of his own Garment to cover him, saying, *The Portugueses were not to be so used.* This Loïs caused the demolishing the Fort of *Rachol*, which the Governor ordered *Peter de Faria* to execute. *Nuno de Cuna's* presence was required at *Diu*, and he fearing to leave *Goa* in danger, concluded a Peace with *Açadacam*. This was rather a Truce than Peace, for neither desisted from his pretensions, unless *Açadacam* did by going away from *Ponda*.

18. Whilst these things were in agitation at *Goa*, the King of *Calicut* marched to *Cranganor*, upon pretence of visiting those parts, as their Emperor, but in reality to destroy

destroy the *Portugueses*, induced thereto by King *Badur*. Thence he designed to pass to *Vaipaim*, which being suspicious, *Peter Vaz* commanding at *Cochin*, endeavoured to prevent, striving withall to avoid affronting him, or being faulty in his Duty. Having made provision by Sea and Land, he desired the King to desist from that Design. The King gave no ear to him, but sent many Ships to clear the Passage: but they failed, above a thousand of their Men being slain, and much damage received by *Vincent de Fonseca's* Artillery, which guarded that Pass, many more flying with precipitation, were drowned. This happened near the Churches of *S. Thomas* and *S. James*, which they endeavoured to burn, but could not compass. The Passes were valiantly defended all the Winter.

19. On the nineteenth of September, *Martin Alfonso de Sousa* set out of *Goa* with one hundred and fifty Men in fifteen Vessels, and passing by *Calamute*, two thousand *Nayres* would have kept him in, whereof he killed many, dispersed the rest, burnt their Town, and took seven Barques. He arrived at *Cochin*, where were five Ships newly come from *Portugal*. The King of *Calicut* understanding *Martin Alfonso* was coming to meet him with almost a thousand Men drew off. *Martin Alfonso* now bent his Force against the King of *Repelim*, who had offended him of *Cochin*. *Antony de Brito* who had led the Van, met a vigorous opposition at this Island, till *Martin* coming

coming up they fled, who maintained the Outworks. The King retired to his City, in which were six thousand fighting Men. Next day *Souza* attacked it, after some resistance the King and all the Defendants fled. As *Souza* entered a Mosque, he had like to be killed by a *Moor*, but receiving the Stroke on his Buckler, he run the *Moor* through with a Javelin. This Victory cost us fourteen Men, the City was plundered and reduced to Ashes. The principal part of the Booty that fell to the King of *Cochin*, on whose account this Action was undertaken, was a piece of Marble, by him highly valued, because on it were carved the Names of the Kings of *Malabar* for three thousand years past, which was taken from him by the King of *Repelim*; some Brass Plates with Serpents engraved on them, esteemed a great Relick by the conquered King; and his Hat lost in the flight, which among them is the greatest Disgrace to the Conquered, and highest Glory to the Victor.

20. The King of *Calicut* returns with forty thousand Men to attempt the Pass of *Cambalam*. *Martin Alfonso* posts *Francis de Barros de Payra* to keep the Pass of *Cranganor* with three Vessels, which proved of great use; he himself goes to the other, and landing, sees five thousand of the King's Men attempt to pass the Ford. Our Men began to fear, but he encouraging them, boldly falls on, and killing three hundred of the Enemy, made them turn their

their Backs. *Zamori* comes up with the Gross of his Army, attempts the Ford, and is repulsed with equal loss. Now the Prince of *Cochin* joins us with twenty thousand *Nayres*. *Martin Alfonso* leaves *Antony de Brito* with them, and four hundred *Portugueses*, who in the space of twenty days fought six Battels with the King of *Calicut*, wherein he made such havock as obliged him to draw off with great Loss, and greater Shame.

21. The Reason why *Martin Alfonso* left that Post, was because, like a watchful Commander, he was at once in two places by his Vigilance, here in Body, and in Thought at Sea, where now appeared a powerful Fleet of *Calicut*. He therefore seeing the Valour of *Brito*, and the assistance of those *Nayres*, left him to command there, and put to Sea with three hundred *Portugueses* in eleven Ships. At *Cbale* he met *James Reynoso* with five Vessels, *Cutiale*, Admiral of *Calicut*, had taken one from him, he took *Reynoso* with him. He went in search of *Cutiale*, and found him with twenty five Vessels, and in them fifteen hundred Men, some of our Vessels impatient of delay, advanced before the rest, and forced him to retire to *Tiracole*, whither *Martin Alfonso* pursuing, the Fight lasted till night with great slaughter of the Enemy, who fortified themselves, and in the morning appeared six thousand strong, having flocked from all the Neighbourhood. Just at this time came an Express from



from the King of *Cochin*, desiring *Martin Alfonso* to return with all speed, because the King of *Calicut* knowing he was absent was coming down with a fresh Power This Advice diverted any farther Action He returned, and the King of *Calicut* who came on, because he was absent, retired as soon as he knew he was present. So great is the Force of Conceit.

22. Mean while *Madune Pandar*, King of *Ceitavaca*, besieged his Brother of *Cota*, with a Fleet by Sea. *Nuno Freyre de Andrade*, in defence of the latter went to *Columbo* to meet the other with only eight *Portugueses*, and six hundred Natives, where he killed many, and took four *Paraos*, with good Artillery. *Madune* demanded Aid of *Zamori*, he sent him two thousand Men. With this Assistance he besieged the City of *Cota* for the Term of three Months. Knowing then that *Martin Alfonso* was coming to his Brother's Relief, who had desired it as a Subject of *Portugal*, he raised the Siege. When *Martin* came, *Madune* was drawn off, and reconciled to his Brother. There being nothing left for *Martin Alfonso* to do here, having visited the King, who was most thankful for the speedy Succour, he set out in search of the *Malabar* Fleet, which had assisted *Madune*, and met it at *Mangalor*, where after a sharp Encounter it was defeated, and twelve hundred *Moors* slain.

## C H A P. VIII.

*Still continues the Government of Nuno de Cuna, from the Tear 1537, till the Tear 1538, in the Reign of King John the Third.*

1. **T**HE King of Cambaya, Badur ( who with only the assistance of the Portugueses had recovered his Kingdom) now studied their Ruin, and repenting he had granted leave to raise the Fort, endeavoured to take it, and kill the Commander, and all the Garrison. Nuno de Cuna understood his wicked Design, and began to prepare to prevent it. That brave Gentleman Emanuel de Sousa then commanded at Diu, by him Badur designed to begin the Execution. On the eighth of October at night a Moor came to the Wall, and told Sousa, The King would send for him next day to kill him, that he would not tell his Name, lest it might be thought an invention to get a Reward. Emanuel was long in doubt whether to go or stay, at last he resolved to go, and using at other times to have a numerous Retinue well armed, went now with only one Servant, being sent for at the hour he had been before warned. The King seeing him unconcerned, converted his malice for that time into an honorable Reception,

Reception, and *Emanuel* returned to the Fort. The King's Mother endeavoured to dissuade him from this wicked intention, and he thought it was better by often visiting the Captain in the Fort to take off all suspicion, and so murder him there, and seize upon it. He was of a violent nature, and so began his first Visit at an unseasonable hour of the night, not regarding the very unseasonableness was enough to render it suspicious. *Sousa* received him upon his Guard, they discoursed of things indifferent; the King went away, believing he had ensnared *Sousa*, and he had given him a sufficient caution.

2. *Nuno de Cuna* being advertised by *Emanuel de Sousa* of the posture of Affairs at *Diu*, thought strange, That he had not secured the King when in his Power, and his wicked Intentions were known; and that he had given out that Ships were come from *Portugal* with great Supplies. This Invention endangered *Nuno*, for *Badur* resolved to murder him first, that he might not come to the Relief of the Fort when *Sousa* was killed. He writ to him, desiring he would come to *Diu* about important Affairs. *Nuno*, tho he knew his wicked Designs, made no difficulty of going. He set out of *Goa* on the ninth of *January*, and with what Vessels he carried, and followed him, appeared there with near three hundred Sail.

3. He put in at *Chaul*, and found that *Nizamaluco*, induced thereto by *Badur*, had been there with eight thousand Men, pretending

pretending it was to divert his Women at Sea, but in reality with an ill design on that place, which was disappointed by the care of *Simon Guedez*, who commanded there. At *Bacaim* he took up his Brother-in-law, *Antony de Silveyra*, a Man of great worth, and left in his place *Ruy Vaz Pereyra*.

4. King *Badur* was at that time in the mountains hunting. *Nuno* sent to visit him; but he who let slip no opportunity, now especially, prevented him by sending to him first one *John de Santiago*, not long before a Christian, but fallen again, and become a Favourite of *Badur*, by the name of *Frangue Cham*. *Cuna* was indisposed, and feigned himself worse, so lying off of *Diu* he sent to excuse himself to the King for not landing immediately. The King feigning great Friendship presently enters into a Boat in which he had sent *Nuno* a Present of Venison. There went with him thirteen Men of Quality, and *Emanuel de Sousa*, who had carried the last Message from *Nuno de Cuna* to him. He received him aboard the Galeon in the best manner he could. Being seated, they discoursed of indifferent things, but the King was surpris'd to see a Page whisper *Nuno de Cuna*, and it was a Message from *Emanuel de Sousa*, who believing he was to be there secured, or killed, sent word that some Captains were waiting his Orders. The King was somewhat quieter, seeing *Cuna* did not mind the Page, and soon rose, and went away. *Cuna* had thought it strange that *Sousa* did not secure the



the King when he had him in the Fort alone, and now having him aboard the Gallion he did not detain him. *Nuno* ordered all the Officers to accompany the King first, and then *Emanuel de Sousa* to the Fort, where he proposed to secure the King, when he came to visit him; as the King on the other side had resolved to seize him at a dinner he had a design to invite him to, and send him to the great Turk in a Cage.

5. *Emanuel de Sousa* was going to invite the King to the Fort, while *Nuno de Cunha* got thither. He came up with the King's *Catur* or Barge, and made the offer by the means of *Rume Cham*, who at the same time advised the King not to go, because he suspected they would secure him. He slighted the Caution, and bid *Sousa* come into his Barge, who stepping over fell into the Sea, but being taken up, the Officers who came with him carried him to the King. At the same time came up another of our Barges and some Gentlemen, who seeing *Emanuel de Sousa* entred hastily into the Kings. He suspecting their hasty coming aboard, together with the Caution given by *Rume Cham*, ordered his Officers to kill *Emanuel de Sousa*. *James de Mesquita* understanding it, flew at, and wounded the King, whilst they killed that valiant Captain. There was a bloody Fray in which four of our Gentlemen were killed, having slain seven of the Enemy. Other of our Barges coming up received some damage from a Page who shot several

with the Kings Bow, till killed with a Musquet Ball. Three of the King's Ships came up to rescue him. He seeing the danger began to fly, but was stopped by a Cannon-shot which killed three of his Men that rowed. The King thought now to escape by swimming, but being in danger of drowning, cried out, discovering who he was. *Tristan de Payva de Santarem* coming up, reached out to him an Oar to bring him aboard his Vessel, when a Soldier struck him cross the Face with a Halberd, and so others, till he was killed. He was a little while above Water, and then sunk, and neither his nor *Emanuel de Sousa* his Body could be found, tho *Nuno de Cuna* caused them to be diligently looked after to give them the due Funeral Honors.

6. Most of the Citizens from the Walls beheld this Engagement, and no sooner was the News of the King's Death spread, but they began to abandon the City in such confusion, that many were trampled to death, running hastily to save life. The fear was that *Nuno de Cuna* would fall upon the City for the Plunder, but he soon quieted them with publick Proclamations. Such as had not fled, stayed; and those who had, returned. He was seen to enter the Town unarmed, comforting the Inhabitants, and restraining the Avarice of his Men, so that not the least Disorder was committed. Then he went to the Fort.

7. He gave the Command of the Fort to *Antony de Silveira Meneses*, his Brother-in-

in-law, whom he brought from *Baçaim*, and the Sequel shewed it was his Worth, not Kindred, that procured him that Post. *Payo Rodriguez de Arango* was appointed his Lieutenant. The Queen Mother was retired to *Navanaguir*. *Nuno de Cuna* sent to comfort her, and demonstrate the death of her Son had been of his own seeking, but she would not hear the Messenger. What was found in the Palace in Gold and Silver did not exceed two hundred thousand *Pardaos*. The quantity of Ammunition was to be admired. In the Port were one hundred and sixty Vessels, some of great bulk. No less wonderful was the number of Brass Cannon, for that of Iron was not reckoned. Among the first were found three Basilisks of such prodigious Greatness, that *Nuno de Cuna* sent one as a rarity to *Portugal*, which is to this day kept in the Castle of *S. Julian*, at the mouth of the River of *Lisbon*, and called, *The Gun of Din*.

8. Among the dead King's Papers, and those of *Abdel Cader* his Treasurer, were found Letters from *Saf Cham*, containing the progress he had made towards bringing the *Turks* upon the *Portugueses*, and Copies of others from the King to those of *Aden* and *Xael* to the same purpose. *Nuno* having gathered these and other Testimonies against the King, called *Coje Zofar*, a Man in great repute among the *Mahometans* and *Gentils*, who gathered the principal Merchants and *Caziges*, that is, Teachers of

the Law. Before all these the Governor produced the Letters and other Testimonials, which convinced the wicked Designs of the King, and justified all his own Proceedings in that Affair. All the *Moors* and *Pagans* confessed themselves fully satisfied, as to the Justice of the Action, and accordingly gave him Certificates thereof in the *Arabian* and *Persian* Languages, signed by *Coje Zofar*, and the principal Merchants and *Caziges*, which were dispersed to the Princes of *Decan*, *Narsinga*, *Ormuz*, and the Coast of *Arabia* as far as *Aden*, that they might all be informed of the true Causes of this Accident, and that the Jealousies caused by the King's death might be allayed.

9. For the greater satisfaction of the publick, *Nuno* ordered the *Mahometans* should have the free Exercise of their Religion and Laws; and that the Constitutions made by *Badur* should be observed as if he were present. All Pensions or Salaries allowed by him were continued. Among many that resorted to reap the Benefit of this unexpected Liberality was a *Moor* of *Bengala*, who by authentick Informations was found to be three hundred and twenty years of Age. He was seen long after, as shall be said, when we speak of his death, or vanishing. He had at this time two Sons, one ninety, the other twelve years old. His Beard and Teeth had fallen and grown again four or five times. To appearance he seemed about sixty years of Age. Of person



son indifferent, rather little than tall, neither fat nor very lean. He said, that being one day in his first Century, looking to his Cattle on the Bank of a River, there appeared to him a Man cloathed in Grey, girt with a Cord; with Wounds in his Hands and Feet, praying him to carry him over upon his Shoulders. And that having done it, he told him, That as a Reward for that Act of Charity, he should continue in the same disposition of Body, till he saw him again. The *Portugueses*, after this coming into *India*, and he into one of their Churches, and seeing the Image of *S. Francis*, cryed out with surprize: *This is, this is the Man I carried over the River; so many years ago.* This was the cause why *Badur* maintained him, and why now *Nuno de Cuna* continued his Allowance.

10. *Mir Mabomet Zaman* descended from the Kings of *Delhi*, who had reigned in *Cambaya*, hearing the death of *Badur*, went to visit the Queen Mother at *Novanaguer*. She fearing he came to rob her, would not see him. *Zaman* had no such intention then, but came to offer her his Service, and to revenge the death of the Son. She thinking she was not secure there, resolved to remove, and he offended at her Contempt, lay in wait for her with two thousand Horse, and robbed her of all that was of Value, which amounted to above two millions of Gold, and gathering above five thousand Men, was by them proclaimed King of *Guzarate*, and with this Title entered *Novanaguer*.

*vanaguer*. Hence he sent to *Nuno de Cuna*, acquainting him with the posture of his Affairs, his Title to the Crown, and desiring his Assistance, in requital for which he offered the *Portugueses* all the Coast from *Mangalor* to *Beth*, the Town of *Damam* as far as *Bassaim*, the Royal Country-House of *Novanaguer*, and other advantageous Conditions. *Nuno* admitted them, and caused him to be proclaimed King in the Mosque of *Diu*; at the same time advising him to raise Forces, and disperse the other Pretenders. *Zaman* fearing the Advice was deceitful, lay still, and found the ill Consequence, for the People set up *Mabomet*, Nephew to the deceased, and prepared to fall upon *Zaman* at *Novanaguer*, but delayed the Execution because *Cuna* was so near. At this time arrived five Ships from *Portugal*.

1538.

11. The Governor being gone as the Princes of *Guazarate* desired, the better to maintain *Mabomet's* Title, two of them marched towards *Zaman* with sixty thousand Men, they corrupted most of his Officers. He being sensible of it, ordered his Friends to carry about them as much Gold and Jewels as they could to serve them in their flight. Those who were corrupted did not fight; the others did wonders, particularly *Zaman*, who fled to *Omaum*, King of the *Mogols*, of whom he received the Kingdom of *Bengala*. The Conquerors called *Antony de Silveyra*, Commander of *Diu*, to an account for the King's death, and being satisfied of the Causes, proposed a Peace,

a Peace, but refusing the Conditions granted by *Zamam*, broke off. *Cuna* hearing this News, made ready to return to *Dis*, dispatching the homeward bound trading Ships, and sending *Martin Alfonso de Sousa* with forty Ships to guard the Coasts of *Malabar*.

12. The greatest Enemies the *Portugueses* found in *India* were the *Moors*, inhabiting from *Chaul* to *C. Comori*, the space of 200 Leagues, who had flocked hither in great numbers for the great Riches of the Sea in Pearls, and vast Trade of all those Ports. *Pate Marcar*, a powerful *Moor* of *Cochin*, offended that the *Portugueses* had taken some of his Vessels, went over to *Calicut* the better to annoy them with the assistance of that King. There he was furnished with above fifty Ships, two thousand Men, and four hundred Pieces of Cannon, to go to the assistance of *Madune Pandar*, against his Brother the King of *Ceylon*, our Ally. At *Coulam* he found a great *Portuguese* Ship lading with Pepper, he beset her, and after a sharp Engagement was forced to retire, having killed the Captain of her. Farther on he took a Ship, and killed all that were in it. Beyond *C. Comori* he destroyed a Town of the Christians. *Martin Alfonso* hearing of this, pursues, and running up a River with only nineteen Barques, offers him battel, but he refused, and got off. It looked like a rashness to follow further, so *Martin* returned to *Cochin*, in order to set out again better provided.

13. He

13. He set out with twenty three Vessels, all to row, and four hundred Men. At *Beadala* he met *Pate Marcar* careening, in order to go over to *Ceylon*. *Pate*, seeing *Alfonso*, gathered seven thousand Men, and *Alfonso* with his four hundred resolved to fight him. He ordered *Gasspar de Lemos* with seven Barges to stay till he gave the signal with a Cannon, and then to come up with all the greatest noise he could to divert the Enemy on that side, while he attacked them on the other. A Piece being fired without order, *Lemos* thinking it was the Signal, came up, and was killed with others, before *Martin Alfonso* could relieve him. At last he came and revenged the death of those, killing above seven hundred of the Enemy, and putting the rest to flight, whereby he remained Master of the Sea and Field. Thirty *Portugueses* were lost. Among the *Portugues Slaves* here set at liberty was a Woman, who was Mistress to one of them loaded with Chains, who could not be prevailed upon by Threats nor Promises to renounce her Faith, but with great Constancy (much to be admired in such a Woman) encouraged the Slaves to continue firm in the Faith, in contempt of all Tortures. The chief party of the Booty consisted of twenty three Barques, four hundred Cannon, fifteen hundred Musquets, and many Prisoners. This happened on the fifteenth of *February*. *Martin de Ayala* was sent to the Governor in a *Catur* or Barge, with fifteen Men, who meeting near



near *Chale*, a Galliot with two hundred *Malabars*, fought them so long till both sides desisted through weariness. *Ayala* being recovered, found he had but four Men left alive, and with them prosecuted his Voyage.

14. *Martin Alfonso* sailed over victorious to *Columbo*, the King of which place was besieged by his Brother *Madune Pandar*, who at first thought our Fleet had been that of *Pate*, coming to his assistance. But hearing the Ruin of it, raised the Siege, and made Peace. *Martin* and his Officers honored and presented by the King, sailed to *Cochin*, from whence they again set out to scour the Coast. Off of Mount *Delis* they met six *Paraos*, and took five of them. A little farther they had the like Success with seventeen others. Next day they took six, and a Ship laden with Provisions. Six thousand *Pardaos* were offered *Martin* for the Ransom of one *Moor*, and he chose rather to hang him for an Example. Being ordered by the Governor to *Diu*, because a great Fleet of *Turks* was expected, he forced ashore by the way a great Gallion of theirs, and loaded his small Vessels with the Riches were in it. Thus *Martin Alfonso* struck a Terror into all the Enemies, and purchased us great security for some time.

15. *D. Emanuel de Meneses* was gone about this time Embassador to *Xael*, and was there imprisoned by that King with all the *Portugueses* who were in the Town. Some base and insolent Spirits were the Cause of this

this Action. The King had favourably received some *Portugueses* in his Port, but they being a loose People, requited his Kindness with Injuries. One of these among others had robbed the King's own Cousin, and after other Tortures hung him and two other persons of Note by the private Parts, to make them discover their Treasure. *Gonzalo Vaz* committed another Robbery. *Alvaro Madera* being kindly entertained by an honest *Moor*, forced his Wife from him. One *Godino* had the Honor to treat the King at his House, and payed it with calling him Drunkard. Others took a Ship belonging to his Subjects, and impudently came to sell it in his Port. These and other Villanies had been acted, when *D. Emanuel de Meneses* came with seventy Men to settle a Peace. He was ignorant of what had happened, and suspected it the less, being well treated by the King. He was lodged, and then beset, the *Moors* killing all the *Portugueses* about the Town. A just Punishment for such Extravagances. The King sent for *D. Emanuel* to Court, he went with seventy Men, but was admitted with only one, and received very civilly, but detained a Prisoner, as were all the seventy, except *Godino*, whose Head was cut off in the presence of the King. For Insolences committed upon Royal Persons admit no delay of punishment. Of the seventy he sent thirty as a Present to the *Turk* to purchase his Favour, thinking he had by this Action lost the *Portugueses*. Among

mong the thirty was *Madera*, who making his Escape from *Constantinople*, carried the News to *Portugal* of the *Turkish* Fleet that was fitting at *Suez*, to invade *India*. This Advice caused the King to send continual Succors, and immediately he dispatched five Ships.

16. *Nuno de Cuna* hearing what had happened at *Xael*, ordered *D. Ferdinand de Lima* who was going to command at *Ormuz*, by the way to conclude a peace with that King. He did it, the Peace was sworn, and *D. Manuel de Meneses* with those who were still there restored. *Nuno* being satisfied the *Turks* were not coming, as the *Moon* gave out to terrifie him, began that vast Cistern, which is there of such bigness, that being twenty five Spans deep each Span contains a thousand Pipes of Water. This he provided against a long Siege, and added new Fortifications. Having given all the necessary Orders in this place, he sailed to *Goa*.

---

## C H A P. IX.

*Continues still the Government of Nuno de Cuna, the same Tear 1538, in the Reign of King John the Third.*

1. **L**ET us now turn a while to the Bay of *Bengala*, into which falls the famous River *Ganges*, by two mouths. This River has its Springs in the mountains of great

great *Tartary*, from whence it runs to the Southward near 600 Leagues, and divides *India* into two parts *Intra & extra Gangem*. On the mouth that falls into the Sea to the Eastward is the City *Chatigam*, on that to the Westward *Satigam*. The *Ganges* runs through the middle of the Kingdom of *Bengala*, to which were subject on the East those of *Caor*, *Comataii*, *Sirote*, *Codowoscum*, *Cou* and *Tipora*, but these two last joining together, threw off the Subjection; on the West of the River *Cospetir*, (whose Plain is overflowed by *Ganges*, as *Egypt* by the *Nile*) conquered by the *Patanas*. The Heathens here say, that God granted these particular Prerogatives or Blessings to five Kingdoms. To that of *Bengala* infinite numbers of Foot, to *Orixa* Elephants, to *Bisnagar* People skilled in Sword and Buckler, to *Delbi* abundance of Towns, and to *Cou* innumerable Horses. The Country of *Bengala* lying between twenty two and twenty six degrees of Northern Latitude, and being very well watered is most fruitful, and produces many sorts of Fruit some like that of *Spain*, Sugar and long Pepper, abundance of Cattel and fowl, infinite quantities of Cotten, which they work, the Curiosity of their Quilts is extraordinary. The Natives are Heathens, and Men of no Courage, but false and treacherous, that it may appear all the World over Cowardize and Treachery go together. The King is Heir to all Men. The principal City *Gouro* seated on the Banks of *Ganges*, three Leagues in length, containing



taining one million and two hundred thousand Families, and well fortified ; along the streets, which are wide and streight, Rows of Trees to shade the People, which sometimes is in such numbers that some are trod to death.

2. About fifty years before the *Portugueses* discovered *India*, came to *Gouro* an *Arabian Mahometan*, who growing rich and powerful, obtained the then King of *Bengala*, a Victory over the King of *Orixa*. The King besides other Rewards made him Captain of his Guard, and he ingratelully killed the King, usurped the Kingdom, and left the Inheritance thereof to the *Moors* that succeeded. They observe no Rule of Inheritance from Father to Son, but even Slaves sometimes obtain it by killing their Master, and whoever holds it three days they look upon as established by Divine Providence. Thus it fell out, that in forty years space they had thirteen Kings successively. At the time when *Martin Alfonso de Melo Jusarte* was prisoner to *Mahomet Xiath*, that King who tyrannically held the Crown kept his Court at *Gouro*, in great apprehension of being deposed, but with such state that only his Women amounted to the number of ten thousand. *Martin* and the others who were Prisoners with him obtained him success against the *Patanas* with whom he was at War.

3. *Martin* and his Fellows obtained their Liberty by the means of *Coje Sabadim*, a rich *Moor*, who promised, it *Nuno de Cuna*

E c

would

would carry him to *Ormuz*, he would contrive the King of *Portugal* should have a Fort in the Port of *Chatigam*. The Governor earnest upon this important Affair, granted all he demanded, and sent thither *Martin Alfonso* with two hundred Men in five Vessels. The better to gain the King's good Will, *Martin Alfonso* sent him a Present, but he being suspicious, would have killed the Messengers, had not some *Moors*, and a *Gentil* reputed a Saint, and to be two hundred years of Age, dissuaded him.

4. Thirteen who carried the Present, and thirty of forty wherewith *Alfonso* was invited to a Dinner, were secured at the same time, the former at *Gouro*, and the latter at *Chatigam*, the other ten that were with him were killed in the Fray:

5. *Nuno de Cuna* hearing hereof by those who escaped in the Ships, sent *Antony de Silva Meneses* with three hundred and fifty in nine Vessels, to treat of ransoming the Prisoners, with the assistance of *Coje Sabadin*, the Author of that Expedition, and detained a Ship of his richly laden, for security of his fair Proceedings therein. *Sylva* from *Chatigam* sent the King the Governor's Letter, and a Present. The Answer being long a coming, *Sylva* thought the King had secured the Messenger, and so rashly fell upon, and burnt *Chatigam* and other places. As he was spreading Sail, the Messenger came with the King's Answer, who knowing what *Antony* had done, kept the Prisoners more hardly.

6. Necessity

6. Necessity obliged him to turn his Severity into Kindness, for *Xercham*, a Man of Note with the *Mogol*, disobliged by his Prince, deserted to the King of *Bengala* with his Brother *Hedele Gham*. Both were put into great Posts. *Xercham*, now at the Head of a great Army, resolved to revenge upon this King the Death of a Child, by him murdered to secure himself the Crown. At the same time, *Omaum* the *Mogol*, in revenge of what *Xercham* had done at *Delbi*, met and defeated him. But being apparently reconciled, he recovered himself.

7. *Xercham* streightened the King, and he advised with *Martin Alfonso* how to withstand him, when *James Rabelo* came to *Chatigam*, sent by *Nuno de Cuna* with three Vessels to procure *Martin's* Liberty. The King being in distress ordered him to be favourably entertained, and to gain assistance from *Nuno de Cuna*, sent him twenty two of the Prisoners. *Nuno* sent nine Vessels. Mean while *Xercham* marched to gain a Pass upon the Fort of *Goris*, which is where the *Ganges* enters *Bengala*. By advice of *Martin Alfonso*, the King sent two of his Vessels, commanded by two *Portugueses*, with eight others to stop his Passage. They stopped him there, and he taking another way, set down before the City *Goura* with forty thousand Horse, two hundred thousand Foot, and fifteen hundred Elephants. Down the River came three hundred *Almadies*, which sailed to the

place where the King had eight hundred *Paraos* to oppose them. Here eight *Portugueses*, commanded by *Duarte de Brito*, did wonders in the King's fight, to take an Elephant that was swimming, and much coveted by the King; he was taken with the loss of three of the eight. *Xercham* distressed the City, and the King bought a Peace, and was content that he from his Army should do him reverence.

8. The King being at ease, gave liberty to *Martin Alfonso* and his Men to go for *India*, leaving only five as Hostages for the assistance he expected from the Governor. Soon after *Xercham* returns and enters *Gouro* by force, obliging the King already wounded to abandon the City, who died on his way to *Omaum*, the *Mogol*, while *Xercham* plundered the place. It was said *Xercham* drew off with above sixty millions of Gold value, when *Omaum* came on bringing the dead King with him. At this time *Vasco Perez de Sampayo* arrived with the Succour, but acted nothing. *Omaum* finding the City abandoned, buried the King, and set up in his place his own Brother-in law, *Mir Mabomet Zaman*, lately deprived of the Kingdom of *Cambaya*, and soon after of this; for *Xercham* having secured his Treasure, with diligence returned to *Gouro*, and made him fly thence.

9. *Omaum* again set out to meet *Xercham* with one hundred thousand Horse, and one hundred and fifty thousand Foot, besides the Followers of the Army, which were above



two hundred thousand. They met on the Banks of *Ganges*, near the City *Canose*. *Xercbam* by a stratagem got the day with such a slaughter, that *Omaum* with only twenty five Men never stopped till he came to *Labor*, where his Brother *Camiran Mirza* received him better than he deserved, *Mirza* being then under Cure of the Poison he had given him. *Xercbam* treated *Omaum's* Women, taken in that Battel with great respect, and afterwards restored them, well convinced of his Modesty and Liberality.

10. *Omaum* finding himself too weak for the Enterprize of *Bengala*, bent his Thoughts against *Cambaya*, and demanding Aid of his principal Subjects was by them disappointed. He went into *Persia*, in which King he had great Confidence, on account of the Friendship of their Fathers. Nor was he deceived; for the *Persian* King received him with Magnificence, gave him rich Presents, and lastly, an Army of twelve thousand Horse. And because *Sultan Xiath*, King of *Quereman*, to whom he gave the Command of them, excused himself, saying, It was not for his Reputation to engage where the person of his Prince was not. He gave him his Son and Heir, yet in his Nurses Arms, and made him Governor of him. So far can a truly royal Bounty extend when it resolves to do good.

11. Besides these twelve thousand given by *Xiath*, ten thousand Volunteers offered themselves to *Omaum*. Who joining his own Forces, invested the City *Candar*,

where his Broster *Astarii Mirza* had proclaimed himself King of *Mogostam*. The City taken, he gave to the young Prince, who possessed it not long, but died soon of the Fatigue of the Marches. King *Sultan Xiath*, his Governor, went to a City where many of the *Persian* Kings lie buried, to inter the Infant, leaving all the Men with *Omaum* for the space of two years, under four General Officers. These soon left him, and returned to *Persia*, where they were disgraced by the King, and made incapable of any Post of Honor, declaring he could not have wished the young Prince a more glorious death than he had in his Nurses Arms, assisting such a Prince as *Omaum*. *Xercham* raised by Fortune to a formidable pitch, having at command four hundred thousand Horse, and being courted by all the adjacent Princes, aspiring now to greater Undertakings, took the City *Calijor* of the *Resbuto*s, with intent to rob the Treasure that was there in a Temple. Pointing a Cannon to kill an Elephant belonging to that Temple, he killed himself; for the Piece bursting, tore him and many more to pieces. So that Fire turned all his Glory into Smoke. Such is the end of Pride.

12. At *Malaca* there were no less Troubles than in these parts. *D. Paulo de Gama* had the Command of this place, he, to sound *Alaudim* King of *Viantana*, Son to him of *Bintam*, destroyed by *Mascarenbas*, sent *Sebastian Vieyra* with five *Portugueses* to  
settle

settle a Friendly Correspondence. The King, at the instigation of him of *Pacem*, bound and poured boiling Water upon them till they died, and then gave them to be devoured by wild Beasts. *D. Paulo* was not then in a condition to take revenge. He sent *Emanuel Godino* to the Kings of *Panda* and *Pate*, who concluded a Peace with them, whereby *Malaca* was relieved with Provisions; which he of *Vjantana* cut off on the other side. The year 1534 *D. Stephen de Gama* came and took possession of that Command, and repaired the Works. Hearing some Vessels of the Enemy were in the River *Muar*, he sent one to discover them, he returned pursued by ten sent by *Lacxemen*, who came to the assistance of *Vjantana* with seventy sent by his Uncle *Tuam Gaba*. Instantly *D. Paulo* set out with nine Sail. Two *Paraos* were sent after to their assistance but too late, for when they came up a bloody Battel was ended, in which almost all our Men were slain, having done wonders, and made such a slaughter of the Enemy, that they durst not take the Ships whose Crew they had killed. Only three Men of Note escaped.

13. *D. Stephen* now resolved to destroy the City of *Vjantana*, and set out with twenty six Sail and two hundred and fifty Men. *Vjantana* is the South East Point of the Coast of *Malaca*, from which forty Leagues distant. On the West of it runs into the Sea the deep River *Tor*, on whose Banks was seated King *Alaudim's* City, and three

Leagues below it a Fort so well stored with Cannon, it could sink any Vessel should attempt the Entrance. Here *D. Stephen* entered with much danger, both Banks being covered with armed Men, but a party of Musqueteers on each side cleared the Shores. The first Attacks of the Fort *D. Stephen* received damage, but afterwards did much more for the space of eight days. The Besiegers began to dismay, but were encouraged by *D. Stephen* and *Peter Barriga*. Now the Enemy having received fresh Succour, drew out into the Field, where such slaughter of them was made, that they fled that day in despair to the Fort, and the next abandoned it, the King escaping with his Women and Treasure. The City *Tor* was plundered and burnt, much Cannon and some Vessels taken, such as could not be carried, perished in the Flames, and *D. Stephen* returned victorious to *Malaca*, where he was received in triumph, this being one of the notable Victories till then gained in *Asia*.

14. The King began again Acts of Hostility, and *D. Stephen* returns with four hundred Men. He found the Fort he had destroyed repaired, and in it five thousand Men. Five hundred of them were killed the first Assault. Many Ships were burnt, and *D. Stephen* marched towards the City, when the King from the Mountain, whither he had retired, sent to treat of Peace. He was ordered to send Hostages, and sent an Uncle of his own, with his Wives, so  
*D. Stephen*



*D. Stephen* returned to *Malaca*, whither four Embassadors followed, who concluded the Peace upon these Conditions. That the King should send to *Malaca* all the Cannon that was in his Country, that he should build no Ships of War, that he should erect no Forts, that he should restore all Prisoners and Goods taken, that he should not hinder bringing Provisions to *Malaca*, that his Subjects should resort thither to buy and sell. This Peace being sworn to, brought great Tranquility to *Malaca*. The year 1537 this Quiet was disturbed by a Commander of *Achem*, who attacked the Bridge with three thousand Men. *D. Stephen* met him with some Gentlemen and two hundred Soldiers, and slew five hundred without the loss of one, so the Enemy drew off with shame. Soon after he returns with five thousand, and retired with the like Disaster.

15. *D. Stephen* had sent *Francis de Barros* in a Ship with twenty *Portugueses* to the King of *Patane*. In that Port *Tuam Mabomet*, Admiral of *Vjantana*, fell upon him with forty Sail. The Fight was desperate, some *Portugueses* and many Enemies fell, and they parted. All advise *Barros* to save himself ashore, most leave him, and he stays aboard with only two, who at last prevail, and firing the Ship, they get ashore in the Boat, and bring off the Cannon. The King received them kindly. *Henry Mendez de Vasconcelos* was sent to bring them back. Those of *Java* fall upon them both  
with

with twenty *Calaluzes* that carried two Rows of Oars, well furnished with Cannon. *Mendez* and *Barros* were in two Vessels, ten *Calaluzes* attack each, one had sixteen, the other but few more *Portugueses*. The Fight was very hot, some *Portugueses* fall, and *Mendez* was stun'd with a poisoned Arrow. *Barros* was in danger, having but three Men and himself wounded. *Vasconcelos* recovering, comes to his aid, slays some, takes others of the *Calaluzes*, puts the Remainder to flight, and obtains an entire Victory.

16. Mean while *Tristan de Ataide*, at *Maluco*, through avarice, caused great Troubles. He took King *Tabarija* and sent him prisoner to *Nunó de Cuna*, who endeavoured to remedy these Disorders, by sending a very orderly Commander. Such was *Antony Galvam*, whose Prudence healed all the Sores made by his Predecessors. Having taken possession of the Command, he acted with Modesty and Justice, without favour or affection. The Fort was unprovided of Cannon and Ammunition, he furnished all at his own charge, and because Timber was wanting for the Works, he was always the first that went to the Woods, and returned loaded.

17. All things being settled here, *Galvam* turns to *Tidore*, where eight Kings with a vast number of Men were allied against the *Portugueses*. He sent to sound them, and they made a Truce, but observed it not, and *Galvam* seeing he had but few Men, that

that those decreased by Famine, and 'twas too tedious to expect relief from *India*, he resolved upon an Action that was accounted rash. He set out in four Ships with one hundred and seventy *Portugueses*, and fifty *Moors*. *Tristan de Ataide* was left in the Fort. *Galvam* was met by 2000 *Moors*, there passed some Blows. Soon after appeared three hundred Sail, containing above thirty thousand *Moors*, who thought to have terrified *Galvam*, but in vain; for he held on his course, and they followed him. They anchored at *Tidore*, the Shores were covered with multitudes who rent the Air with Shouts. The Cannon of the Fort played, but the Shot went over the Ships. The Fort appeared impregnable, but by that it was resolved to begin. *Galvam* scales it with one hundred and twenty *Portugueses*, and as many Slaves as made up in all three hundred. The Kings came upon him with fifty thousand Men, but he draws into a close Wood. They thought he fled, and pursue with hideous Shouts. Soon were they turned into Lamentations. King *Cachil Daialo*, who led the Enemies Van, came another way to fall upon *Galvam*, endeavouring to amuse him, till the Body of the Army came up, which he perceiving, gave the sign to fall on, and after a hot Dispute, the Enemy fled, the King being killed among the first. Some of those that fled disordered them that were marching, others run to the Fort. *Galvam* pursues the latter, and enters along with them. They

They abandon the Fort, and he set fire to it. Whilst the Fort flamed, the Kings fled to the Mountains with their Treasure, and *Antony* marches to the City. The Inhabitants abandon, and he burns it down to the Ground, levelling the Works so that scarce any memory of the City was left, but the signs of the Ashes. Many *Moors* were killed, and many taken. This unparallel'd Victory cost but one Slave.

18. Those Kings thought to do us some harm with Ambushes at imbarquing, and afterwards at Sea, but came off with loss. He of *Tidore* afterwards came to a peace, the Conditions honourable on our side. *Antony*, the more to oblige that King, offered to rebuild the City, which was immediately put in hand, with these and other Courtesies he so much obliged him and his Subjects, that they confided in him as an ancient tried Friend.

19. *Galvam* found it was easier to overcome the greatest Army of *Barbarians*, than the least *Portugues* Avarice. He proposed to put in execution the King's Instructions relating to the Trade of Clove, and the *Portugueses* opposed, because they put a stop to their Frauds and Robberies. Next he would have examined into the Crimes of *Tristan de Ataide*, and he conscious of his own Guilt begged Mercy. Tho undeserving, *Galvam* took pity on and reconciled him with many, that they might not be his Accusers. *Ataide* requited his kindness by provoking most of the *Portugueses*



gueses to mutiny about the Trade of Clove. *Antony* endeavouring to appease, found them them all in Arms. At length *Tristan* sailed for *India*, having hindered the loading Clove for the King's use, and carrying away most of the Mutineers. So the Fort was exposed to eminent danger. If the Commanders were bad, the *Moors* could not live with them, if good, they could not live with the *Portugueses*.

20. The Kings of *Gilolo* and *Bacham* prepared a fresh to fall upon *Galvam*. He being weak, offered peace; for the same Reason they refused it. *Galvam* finding himself in no condition to withstand, challenges them both to fight Man to Man. They accept of the Challenge, but the King of *Tidore* interposing, came to an agreement. The two Kings so religiously observed this Pacification, that they refused to admit into their Ports two *Spanish* Ships forced thither by stress of Weather. They were cast away upon the Coast, and those few that escaped, taken by the Natives, and ransomed by *Galvam*, who treated them courteously. Their Captain was *Ferdinand de Grijalva*, sent out the year 1537 by *Ferdinand Cortes*. Now the *Ternatenses* were at variance, refusing to obey *Cachil Aeiro* as King, set up by *Tristan de Ataide*, and clamouring for *Tabarija*, by him imprisoned and sent to *India*. They offered to make *Galvam* King till they had a lawful one. He refused and endeavoured to make them agree. This Action of his, and the persuasions

sions of the King of *Tidore*, prevailed with them to admit *Aciro*. After this all things continued in a wonderful Calm.

21. *Galvam* heard a great Fleet was coming upon *Ternate*, he borrowed some small Ships of the King of *Tidore*, into which he put forty *Portugueses*, and gave the Command to the Priest *Ferdinand Vinagre*, who behaved himself so well he beat that Fleet, and killed their Admiral. Then he quieted the Country, sometimes handling the Sword, sometimes putting on the Surplice, he baptized many. *Galvam* perceiving how great Fruit this Priest produced, assisted him to prosecute the Conversion; and he so treated the Converts, that the Natives said, *It must needs be a true God that such a man adored, and his Religion ought to be embraced by all men.* At this time *Galvam* was informed, a great Fleet was coming from *Java*, *Banda*, *Macaçar* and *Amboina* to load Clove at *Maluco*, by force of Arms. To meet them he sent *James Lopez de Azevedo* with forty *Portugueses*, and 400 *Ternatenses* and *Tidores*. The Battel was fought at *Amboina*, that Fleet defeated, Vessels, Cannon, Arms and Men taken. He scoured the Coast, and baptized three whole Towns, *Ativa*, *Matelo* and *Nocivel*. Two Brothers, Gentlemen of the Island *Macaçar*, came to *Ternate* to take *Galvam*, for their Godfather in Baptism, and took the Names of *Antony* and *Michael* with his Surname. They afterwards came to visit him with Ships richly laden, and several young Gentlemen

Gentlemen who were also baptized. They gave an account much might be wrought in their Islands, and those of *Celebes* both in Spirituals and Temporals. *Galvam* sent *Francis de Castro* with two Priests, who were drove by bad Weather to discover other Islands a hundred Leagues North of the *Malucos*. The first they came to was *Satigana*, the King and People Pagans. *Castro* made Peace with him, which was confirmed by drinking each the others Blood, to which effect they had a Vein opened. Then the King, Queen, a Son, three Brothers, and many Nobles were baptized. Next they discovered the Island *Mindanao*, where the same happened with the King, Queen, their two Daughters and many People. After them were baptized the Kings of *Butuano*, *Pimilano* and *Camisino*, the two first took the Name of *John*, the latter was called *Francis*. *Francis de Castro* brought to *Ternate* many Sons of the new Converts, for whom *Galvam*, at his own expence, erected a Seminary, where they might be instructed, which was the first in our Conquest. The obstinate *Mahometans* were astonished at so many Conversions, and endeavoured to persuade the Kings to put a stop to their progress; but were quite amazed when they saw an *Arab*, whom they revered almost as much as *Mahomet*, from whom he was descended, leave him to follow Christ. The term of *Galvam's* Command expiring, those Kings begged of ours to continue him for life. But wordly Felicities especially in Government are never lasting.

22. *Antony Galvam* seeing all things settled, and that it was unjust the Kings of that Island should always be Prisoners, set at liberty *Cacbil Aeiro* persuading him to choose a Queen. This confirmed the great opinion the *Ternatenses* had of him, and they made publick Songs in his Praise, which are the only History or Records they use. He composed all Differences between the *Portugueses* and Islanders, and being now at leisure built the Fort and all the Houses after the manner of *Spain*. After his Example the King beautified *Ternate*, with Buildings, and granted Lands to the *Portugueses*, who began to make curious Orchards and Gardens and Country Houses, the *Moors* did the same. Now *Antony Galvam* seeing there wanted Water, brought it from three Leagues distance. Being told he consumed his own without making any advantage of the Trade of Clove: he said, He could not meddle with Cloves, because it bore five Nobs, which represents the Wounds of Christ, and are the Arms of *Portugal*. His Command at *Ternate* expiring, he returned to *Portugal* full of Debts, thinking (but he thought ill, if he knew his own Country) that he should find some Reward of so much Valour, such Service, so great Parts and Merits. He found Contempt and Misery, which brought him to die in an Hospital. This was the Reward those who deserved best found in *Portugal*, where Heroick Actions were looked upon as Crimes, and Crimes as Heroick Actions. But his Fame will live for ever.

CHAP.



## C H A P. X.

*Which ends the Government of Nuno de Cuna this same Year 1538, in the Reign of King John the Third, and concludes the First Tome.*

1. **T**HE Present sent by the King of *Cambaya* to the great *Turk* to obtain Succour from him, was delivered together with the News of his Death. The great Value of this Present demonstrated to that Prince the vast Riches of *India*, and stirred up in him a desire of becoming Master of it. He thought he might expel the *Portugueses* in the East, and one of them a Renegado, then at *Constantinople*, promoted the Design by making it easie.

2. The *Turk* ordered a Fleet to be fitted, and gave the Command of it to the Eunuch *Solyman Bassa*, Governor of *Caire*. *Solyman* was a *Greek* Janisary, born in the *Morea*, of stature short, his Face ugly, and Belly so big, he was more like a Beast than Man, his Age eighty years, he could not rise up without the help of four Men. His Purse purchased him this Command, offering the *Turk* to furnish the Shipping at his own Cost. The better to perform this, he put to death many rich Men to seize their Estates. Among others he hanged *Mir Daud*, King of *Tbebayda*, after taking

F f

from

from him a great Sum of Mony. So it might well be said, this Fleet was rather built by the Dead than by the Living. It contained seventy Sail, most large Gallies, well stored with Cannon, Ammunition and Provisions, seven thousand Land-Men Janizaries, *Turks* and *Mamaluks*, the Seamen and Slaves of the best, many of the latter taken out of the *Venetian* Gallies then at *Alexandria*, which were seized upon, the Peace made by *Bajazet* in the year 1503, being now broke.

3. *Solyman* having set out committed Villanies natural to a Tyrant and Coward as he was. He caused four hundred Soldiers to be put to the Oars, and because they complained, put to death two hundred. He thought to have taken the King at *Gidda*, but he, who well knew him, escaped. At *Zebet* after receiving a rich Present he beheaded the King. In like manner after receiving a Present and Relief from the King of *Aden*, counterfeiting he had many sick Men aboard, they were set ashore privately armed, and seized the City while he murdered the King aboard. About the beginning of *September* he came before *Diu*, having lost six Vessels by the way.

4. When King *Badur* was killed upon the Sea with some of his Retinue, one *Coje Zofar* swam to shore, and was well received by the *Portugueses*, who put all others to the Sword. He upon several occasions shewed himself so grateful, that *Nuno de Cuna* much favoured and recommended him earnestly

to *Antony de Silveyra*. At last without any provocation he fled from *Diu* to the new King of *Cambaya*, offering his Service, and persuading him to war upon the *Portugueses*, and drive them from that Coast, affirming it might be easily done with the assistance of the *Turkish Fleet*, which he knew would soon be there. The King with this Encouragement forms a Body of five thousand Horse, and ten thousand Foot at *Champanel*. The first that appeared was *Coje Zofar*, with three thousand Horse and four thousand Foot, maintained by himself, knowing it is suspicious to advise dangerous Enterprizes, and not have part in them. *Antony de Silveyra* having notice hereof provided for a long and dangerous Siege.

5. *Coje Zofar* made the first Breach, falling upon the Town of the *Rumes* near *Diu*, where he did much harm. *Francis Pacheco* defended himself bravely in a Bulwark with fourteen *Portugueses*, till relieved by *Antony de Silveyra* and *Zofar*, was obliged to draw off, being wounded in the Arm. At the same time appears *Alu Cham*, the King's General with all the Army, and he and *Zofar* set down before the Passes. *Antony de Silveyra* orders the Officers, commanding them to quit those Posts, the better to maintain the City and Fort. In the Execution of these Orders they lost some Ships and Guns.

6 By reason of this Loss, and because there were many private Enemies, who only waited an opportunity of shewing  
F f 2 their

their malice, *Silveyra* could not maintain the City. Some he hanged, and retired to the Fort, always taking the Advice of his Captains. *Alu Cbam* and *Coje Zofar* presently possessed themselves of the City and Island abandoned by us, and began to play their Shot vigorously. *Lope de Sousa*, who guarded the Wood and Water, whereof the Fort stood in need, had several Rencounters, and slew many of the Enemy, without losing one Man, but was himself much wounded. *Antony de Silveyra*, hearing of the approach of the Turkish Fleet, with speed sent advice thereof to *Nuno de Cuna*, the Answer was the Diligence wherewith he prepared to relieve him in person.

7. *Michael Vaz*, a resolute Man, sent by *Silveyra* to discover, saw the Enemies Fleet, and the better to view it, came up so near, that their Shot reached his Vessel. He got off, and carried the News to the Governor at Goa. The Fleet came to an Anchor in the Harbour, and was now formidable, not only to those few *Portugueses*, but even to the *Moors*, who had expected it. Next day *Solyman* landed six hundred Janizaries well accoutred, and armed with Bows and Musquets to terrifie the Beholders. They entered the City, and there acted all the Insolencies used among Soldiers. Then drawing near the Fort, they killed six *Portugueses*, but three hundred of our Musqueteers advancing, killed fifty of them, and forced the rest to retire.



8. A storm obliged *Solyman* to remove to *Madresavat*, a safer Harbour. There he continued twenty days, in which time *Silveira* bettered the Fortifications, planted his Artillery, and assigned every Man his Post. The same was done by the *Turks*, assisted by *Coje Zofar*. Some of their Cannon played upon a Bulwark, to burn which they built a wooden Castle on a great Barque filled with combustible Matter. *Francis de Gouvea*, who had his Command by Sea, went out by night, and with great difficulty got to and burnt it. At this time came some relief sent by *Nuno de Cuna*, yet the greatest Comfort they brought was the hopes of his coming after in person.

9. *Solyman* returns from *Madresavat*, and fires his Cannon upon the Bulwark where *Francis de Gouvea* commanded; from whence, and from *S. Thomas* his Tower, he was so well answered, that one of his Gallies sunk with most of the Men. The greatest harm the *Portugueses* received, was from their own Cannon, which burst and killed some: for the Enemy only killed two Brothers, whose Mother took them in her Arms, and carried off the Bodies without shedding a tear. *Zofar* now furiously battered *Francis Pacheco's* Bulwark, which he rendered not tenable, seven hundred Janizaries assaulted it, and set up their Colours, but some of the scattered *Portugueses* advancing, fell on, dislodged them, and killed one hundred and fifty. The

Dispute lasted all day, and the Enemy drew off with shame, for the weight of this Action lay upon two resolute Gentlemen. Next day *Pacheco* in despair surrendred. The Enemy enters the Bulwark, casts down the Christian Colours, and set up the *Turkish*. *John Perez*, enraged hereat, throws down the *Turkish*, and again rears the Christian Ensigns, the *Turks* come on, and five *Portugueses* more join *Perez*, who all were killed upon the spot, and their Bodies cast into the Sea, which laid them at the Gate of the Fort, where they were honourably buried. *Pacheco* and those with him had articulated for Life and Liberty. The latter was not performed by *Solyman*, the first he granted, cloathing their Bodies with *Turkish* Garments, as they had cloathed their Souls with Infamy, in accepting them. Then he sent one of them to *Silveyra* to summon him to surrender. He made a jest of the Proposal.

10. *Solyman* enraged at this Contempt, prepared to batter the Fort. He planted his Artillery in several places under the direction of *Coje*. Among the Cannon were nine Pieces of wonderful bignets, carrying Ball of above ninety pounds weight. Thus several other Sizes of Cannon, which in all were above one hundred and thirty, guarded by two thousand *Turks*. Upon Monday the fourth of *October*, the Battery began, and continued violently twenty days, doing great harm to the Fort, from whence scarce any could be done, nor they could hardly repair

repair the most dangerous Breaches, tho all Art and Dilligence was used.

11. The sixth day after they began to batter, the *Turks* perceiving *Gaspar de Sousa's* Bulwark much damaged, thought to carry it, but many of them were killed in the Attempt, with the loss of two of ours. Every day there was Action. *Goncalo Falcam* had his Head shot off. *John Fonseca* being wounded in the Right Arm, held his Lance with the Left, as if he had received no hurt. The *Gallego John*, a Youth of nineteen years of age, of a little Body, but great Heart, pursued a *Moor* till he run into the Sea, thither he followed, till losing ground he was like to drown. The *Moor* perceiving it, laid hold on him to kill him, but he recovering himself without losing Gun or Sword, slew him, and came out all bloody, walking leisurely towards the Fort, while Showers of Bullets flew about him. Many other singular Acts of Valour were performed this Siege.

12. But by this time many brave Gentlemen had been killed in the Fort, Powder grew short, the Provisions shorter, the Relief of the Viceroy *D. Garcia de Noronba*, now arrived in *India*, moved slow, the Neighbouring Forts sent no Aid, and all began to be in confusion. Which was increased by a sickness that hindered most from swallowing the little Provision they had, swelling the Gums, and loosening the Teeth, so that they fell out; this was caused by the bad Water. In fine, the *Portu-*

*gueses* fought and suffered, as if so much Misery could not overcome them. Let the Valour of the Women now take place here. *Donna Isabel de Vega*, a Woman of great Virtue, and some Beauty, was Wife to *Manuel de Vasconcelos*, he fearing the Fort might be lost, and she taken by the *Turks*, earnestly entreated her to go to her Father *Francis Ferram* at Goa, but she begged not to be parted from him; which, with much regret at last he granted. Then this Virago considering there were many Men employed in the Work who might fight, and their places be supplied by as many Women, calling together all of that Sex that were in the Fort, she exhorted them to undertake that Labour, to the end so many Men might be added to the number of their Defendants. They all followed, she led and gave the Example, and with her *Anne Fernandez*, with whom she had before communicated her Design. This *Anne* was Wife to a Physician, and so courageous, that by night she viewed all the Posts, and appeared at Assaults, encouraging the Soldiers. Her Son being killed in her fight, she drew him away, returned where the Service was, and that ended, went to bury him.

13. Perceiving the *Turks* undermined his Bulwark, *Gaspar de Sousa* sallied with seventy Men to view their Work, which he did with great slaughter of the Enemy. At his Retreat missing two Men, he turned back upon the Enemy, fought bravely, and



and being surrounded, was hamstringed, yet so defended himself on his Knees till oppressed by the multitude. The Mina was countermined; the continual Labour was insupportable, and impossible to repair so many Ruins.

14. At this Juncture arrived four Vessels, sent by the Viceroy *D. Garcia*, which carried only twenty Men of Relief. *Solyman* was concerned at this Succour, tho small, and much more that the Fort stood so many Assaults, *Coje Zofar* having assured he would carry it at two. At the beginning of the Siege there were six hundred Men in the Fort, many were killed, and some Cannon burst. But the *Turk* placed no confidence herein, and looked toward the Sea, fearful of the *Portugues* Fleet he heard was coming upon him.

15. This moved him to press the Siege with more vigour. The Bulwark of the Sea where *Antony de Sousa* commanded, was furiously attacked with fifty Barques, two whereof were sunk by our Cannon. Then they attempted to scale it, and were repulsed with great slaughter. The Assault was repeated, and still the Enemy came off with loss. *Sousa* sent the wounded Men to be dressed, among them *Fernan Pemendo*, who waiting, heard the noise of a fresh Attack, and forgetting the Dressing, run thither, and received another Wound, the very same happened to him the third time, and then was dressed of all three. By this time there were left in the Fort but two hundred

dred and fifty of the six hundred Men, fit to take Arms.

16. *Solyman* now in despair resolved to venture all. First he counterfeited he would raise the Siege, and twelve Gallies put to Sea, that *Silveyra* might be the easier surprized, but he provided still to repulse the greatest danger. One night some Noise was heard at the Foot of the Wall by water, it appeared they were applying great numbers of scaling Ladders, they were opposed, till morning appearing shewed the place beset round, and assaulted by fourteen thousand Men. First the Cannon was played, and then they mounted on all sides, chiefly next the Commandant's House, where it was weakest: but he had placed such Men there as made a great slaughter. Failing there, they attempted a Bulwark, powring in showers of Arrows and Bullets. Great was the Confusion and Havock on both sides. Now come up fourteen Gallies powring in their great shot, but do no Execution. *Francis Gourvea* made them draw off, having battered two, and killed some Men with his Cannon. By this time two hundred *Turks* had entered the Bulwark, and planted their Colours. Scarce thirty *Portugueses* were there to oppose them, but they rushing on desperately regain the Work. The Enemy being very thick, none of our shot is lost, they sustain great damage, and such as were in this Action draw off. Fresh Men succeed, and set up four Colours. The *Portugueses* wounded  
and

and burnt run for ease, and dipped themselves in Jars of Salt Water, where they perished, seeking Refreshment with hellish Torture. *Antony de Silveira* indefatigably repaired to all places, encouraging all. Here a Soldier wanting Ball pulled out one of his Teeth to load his Musquet. The Enemy had much the better this second Assault, which a few Gentlemen perceiving, furiously rushed upon them. *John Rodrigues*, a Man of great Body, and as great Courage, run out with a Barrel of Powder, crying, *Clear the way; for here I carry my own and many a Man's death.* He threw the Barrel among the Enemies, and suddenly above a hundred were carried up into the Air, torn in peices, twenty lay burnt upon the ground. *John* himself came off without hurt, and doing other considerable Actions, deserved afterward some of the first Rewards and Honours gained this Siege. Other Fireworks burnt the four Ensigns who had set up the Colours. Two of our Cannon cleared the place of Enemies, and two Bullets threw down two Ensigns that succeeded the former. The Enemy withdraws, and fresh comes on the third time, and place their Colours. The Commander of these, Son-in-law to *Coje Zofar*, being killed, his Men dismayed, and turned their Backs. These Assaults lasted above four hours, the same small number of *Portugueses* withstanding still fresh and numerous Enemies. Our Women in the Fort, and theirs on the Walls of the City, being Spectators

Spectators of the whole Action. The *Portugueses* all smeared with Powder, looked more like *Moors* and were known by their Cloaths not Colour, and among themselves by the Voice, every one looking as if he came out of Hell, their black hue wrought with Fire, Blood and Sweat. In fine, the Enemy carried off above a thousand wounded and left above five hundred Men killed. Of ours fourteen were killed, and two hundred lay useless for want of Blood. Only forty remained able to bear Arms, and the Arms lay broken to pieces about the Ground, some serving such as could not stand on their Legs for Crutches. No hope was left if the Enemy renewed the Attack. The Walls were all shattered, and no Powder left. Nothing but horror appeared. Only the brave *Silveyra's* Countenance was what encouraged all Men.

17. *Solyman* put an end to all these Calamities; for not knowing the Condition the Fort was in, and terrified with this ill success, he raised the Siege. *Antony Silveyra* seeing them weigh anchor, and hoise sail, thought it was still counterfeit, and prepared to resist as if he had any thing to trust to. He posted the forty Men, and caused some that were wounded to lean against the Walls, to shew a number; those who could not rise ordered themselves to be carried in their Beds, saying, *It was to die in an honourable place.* Some of the Women also armed themselves, and appeared upon the Works. The Night was spent upon the watch,



watch, but the Morning was more comfortable to the afflicted; for *Solyman* was under Sail without any thought of returning. Tho fear did much, yet a Device of *Coje Zofar* did more towards removing *Solyman*. *Coje* was moved to it by two Reasons, one that he was weary of the unupportable Pride of that *Turk*; another an Order that he had from his King, in case he found the *Turk* would keep that City and Fort (as was feared) he should rather endeavour to leave it to the *Portugueses*. *Coje's* Device was, that he framed a Letter which came to *Solyman's* Hands, who finding it contained, that the Viceroy of *India* would be there the next day with a vast Fleet, he thought not fit to delay his Departure, and so sailed away on the fifth of *November*. The same night *Coje's* Men fired the City, and marched away. This was the first Siege of *Diu* which was admired throughout the World, and added new Lustre to the *Portugues* Glory, all due to the invincible Courage of the ever renowned *Antony de Silveira*, and those valiant Gentlemen who were with him, and whose Fame will last from Generation to Generation.

18. *Solyman* touched at the Ports on the Coast of *Arabia*, and took up some *Portugueses* he found there. He gathered above 140, and cutting off their Heads, then the Ears and Noses, salted and sent them to the great *Turk* to shew what he had done. Among these was *Francis Pacheco*,  
who

who had not the Courage to die like a Gentleman in his Bulwark. *Solyman* being come to the great *Turk*, and not well agreeing with one who aspired to his Post, was reduced to kill himself. Such is generally the end of Tyrants.

19. This famous Siege was far advanced when the Viceroy *D. Garcia de Noronha* arrived in *India*, to whom *Nuno de Cuna* immediately resigned the Government. His arrival with so considerable Relief as he brought might well have bettered the Affairs of *Diu*; yet on the contrary it much endangered them. For had he not come, *Nuno* had relieved *Diu* with eighty Sail he had in a readiness for that purpose, and prevented so many Miseries and the death of so many brave Men. Still fresh Advice was brought of the danger the besieged were in, and still *D. Garcia* wasted the time in considering of means to relieve them, without chusing any, or taking the advise of *Cuna*. Thus the Siege was raised before he found the method of relieving, having gathered one hundred and sixty Sail for that purpose.

20. *D. Garcia* wanted not Courage, having given good demonstrations of it under *Alfonso de Albuquerque*. But he chose rather to commit an Error through his own wilfulness, than act rightly by the advice of *Nuno de Cuna*.

21. It soon appeared *Noronha* was not at all disposed to take advice of *Cuna*, treating him in such manner at *Goa* as obliged him

him to go to *Cochin*, to order his Affairs in order to return to *Portugal*. At *Cochin* he refused him a convenient Ship, contrary to an Order he had from the King to act as Governor, and chuse such Vessel as he liked. He was forced to set out in a Merchant-Galeon, hired for himself and Family. Tho the Viceroy treated him ill there, no less ill usage was designed him here; and doubtless the knowledge *D. Garcia* had of the ill will the Ministers of State here bore him was the cause of his hard usage there.

22. *Nuno de Cuna* by the way fell sick and died. He protested at his death, that he had nothing belonging to the King but five Pieces of Coin, or Medals of Gold, found among the dead King *Badur's* Treasure, which for their Beauty he carried to shew to the King. A Chaplain asked, How he would have his Body ordered to be brought home. And he answered, *Since God is pleased I should die at Sea, let the Sea be my Grave. Since the Land would not have me, I will not give it my Bones.* He died like a good Christian. Ordered a sufficient Weight should be tied to his Feet to carry him to the bottom. Thus ended an excellent Governor of *India*. His Age fifty two years. He was Son of *Tristan de Cuna* and *Donna Antonia de Albuquerque*. Of stature large and well proportioned. He wanted one Eye. Tho he had Majesty in command, he was courteous, and not subject to any passion, easie to be reconciled, loved to do good to all, an observer of Justice,

Justice, free from Avarice, prudent in Counsel, affable in Discourse. His Picture represents his Complexion fair, his Beard black, all the Cloaths black, only the Cap blew. He governed ten years wanting two months, and died the beginning of the year 1539. He was the tenth Governor, and first of the Name.

*a Library Book*

*D-1731-*

---

~~The End of the Four Parts~~  
*The End of the Four Parts of the*  
*First Tome.*

---







# HISTORY OF INDIA PORTUGUESE,

CONTAINING

All their Discoveries, from the Coast of Africa,  
to the River of Plate, the Cape of Good Hope,  
the East Indies, the Moluccas, the Philippines,  
and all the Islands of the Indian Ocean,  
with a Catalogue of the Voyages, and the  
History of the Portuguese in India.

By WILLIAM H. D. D.

Written in Spanish, by DON JUAN DE CASTRO,  
and translated into English by

THOMAS H. D. D.

LONDON, 1795.

In the Year, Printed for C. Dumas at the Sign of  
the Gun, at the Wap. End of St. Pauls. 1695.

EV

DW B



---

---

DEDICATED  
TO  
HER MOST SACRED  
MAJESTY,  
CATHERINE,  
QUEEN-DOWAGER  
OF  
ENGLAND, &c.

---

THE  
SECRET

---

---

THE  
PREFACE.

SINCE our *Asia* now receives a new Prince, let us begin another Tome with a different Style. As the other Prefaces were filled with Instructions and Documents of pure Zeal; so shall this with the delightful Entertainment of a curious Reflection. For when Fortune makes it her Sport to heap Burdens of Care, there is none so resolved or unmoved but requires Diversion and Ease. The Kingdom of *Portugal* parted from  
that





## *The Preface.*

consider, that it began and ended in *Henry's*, and in the number 12; that the last King died on the Day and last Year of Peace; that the King and Kingdom expired where they had their Birth; that being founded by a *Spanish* Female, by another they were extinguished; and such-like Reflections; we shall discover no less remarkable Circumstances in the *Portugues Asia*. The Promoter of this wonderful Discovery was Prince *Henry*, and *Henry* was the last of our Princes that Possessed it. *Alfonso* was the Founder of the Royal Throne of *Portugal* in *Europe*, Christ appearing to him; and another of that in *Asia*, when the Cross appeared to *Alfonso de Albuquerque* in the *Red-Sea*. The  
a Throne

## *The Preface.*

Throne of this Kingdom, was raised on the Victory obtained by *Alfonso* at *Orique* over the Moorish Emperor called *Ismael*; and the Prince of *Goa*, the Metropolis of our Dominions in *Asia*, taken by *Albuquerque*; was called *Ismael*; and the King of *Persia*, deprived of his Sovereignty over *Ormuz*, was also *Ismael*. *Ferdinand Tellez de Menezes* was the last Governour of *India* sent by our Natural Princes, and his Picture was the last the Hall in the Palace of *Goa*, appointed to hang up the Portraits of the Viceroys and Governors, could contain. The Name of the first Viceroy of *India* was *Francis*, and consequently his is the first of those Pictures; and now we see the Name of the first Viceroy sent by

## *The Preface.*

by a Spanish Prince is Francis, and therefore the Picture of that Name is the first in the second Hall destined to preserve those Memorials. If there be still any obstinate Philosophers, who hold, That all Worldly Things are the meer Effect of Chance, let them condemn the Consideration of these Parallels on such important Occasions; but let not those despise it, who allowing the most inconsiderable Earthly Affairs to be the Work of Providence, cannot but be assured the Great are much more its Care. Let not those, I say, undervalue it, who know the Immortal Providence can be discovered but by Shadows. The Divine Power has always taken this course to manifest it-

2 2 self

## *The Preface.*

self to Man. What Wonder then it should take that Method in the Revolution of a Kingdom, more peculiarly belonging to Christ himself? Thus then, these wonderful Prefages first concurring, (not to speak of Comets,) the Kingdom of *Portugal* returned to its former Original, after 500 Years Peregrination over the whole circumference of the Earth. And now bringing that Precious Scepter from the East, puts it into the Hands of *Philip* in *Spain*, who had the Fortune to be the great Ocean to which run all the great, indifferent, and small Rivers of so many Empires, Kingdoms, and Sovereignties, spread over the whole Face of the Terrestrial Globe. Who would not be-



## *The Preface.*

believe, that the *Portugueses* would lose their Valour, having lost their Natural Prince, since it is certain the Presence of Princes is the chief Strength of it. We shall see them deprived of this Glory, but not of that Virtue. Our Hero's of this Age did not degenerate from those of the other, so soon as naturally might be expected. Such was their Bravery, such their Courage, they seem to have exceeded the Bounds of their Fortune, and even of Nature.

---

---

THE  
**CONTENTS.**

---

**TOM. III. PART I.**

---

**CHAP. I.**

*The Government of the Vice-Roy D. Francis Mascarennas Count De St. Cruz, from the Year 1581, till the Year 1584*  
Page 1

**CHAP. II.**

*Continues the Government of D. Francis Mascarennas*  
9

**CHAP. III.**

*The Government of the Vice-Roy D. Duarte de Meneses, from the Year 1584 till 1588.*  
20

**CHAP. IV.**

*Continues the Government of D. Duarte de Meneses*  
28

**CHAP.**

## The Contents.

### CHAP. V.

*Continues the Government of D. Duarte  
de Meneses* 40

### CHAP. VI.

*The End of the Government of D. Duarte  
de Meneses.* 47

### CHAP. VII.

*The Government of Emanuel de Sousa  
Coutinho, from the Year 1588, till  
1590* 56

### CHAP. VIII.

*The Government of the Vice-Roy Matthias  
de Albuquerque, from the Year 1591  
till 1597.* 64

### CHAP. IX.

*Continues and Concludes the Government of  
Matthias de Albuquerque* 71

### CHAP. X.

*Of the Propagation of the Gospel in the Em-  
pire of China during these later Years* 78

### CHAP. XI.

*Continues the Subject of the Propagation of  
the Gospel* 85

# The Contents.

---

## TOM. III. PART II.

---

### CHAP. I.

**T**HE Government of the Viceroy D.  
Francis de Gama Count de Vidi-  
gueyra, from the Year 1597 till 1600  
93

### CHAP. II.

*Continues the Government of D. Francis de  
Gama Count de Vidigueyra* 99

### CHAP. III.

*Continues the Government of D. Francis de  
Gama Count de Vidigueyra* 107

### CHAP. IV.

*The Remarkable Revolutions of Pegu, du-  
ring the Government of D. Francis de  
Gama Count de Vidigueyra* 117

### CHAP. V.

*The Government of the Viceroy Ayres de  
Saldanna, from the Year 1600, till  
1604* 124

CHAP.



# The Contents.

## CHAP. VI.

*The Government of the Viceroy D. Martin  
Alfonso de Castro, from the Year 1604  
till 1607* 138

## CHAP. VII.

*The Government of the Archbishop D. F.  
Alexius de Meneses, who was Gover-  
nor from the Year 1607 till 1609* 148

## CHAP. VIII.

*Of the Viceroy D. John Pereyra Frojas  
Count de Feyra, in the Year 1608* 153

## CHAP. IX.

*Of the Governour Andrew Furtado de  
Mendoça, in the Year 1609* 162

## CHAP. X.

*The Government of the Viceroy Ruy Lo-  
renço de Tavora, from the Year 1609  
till 1612* 166

## CHAP. XI.

*Of the Propagation of the Christian Faith in  
China* 174

TOM.

# The Contents.

---

## TOM. III. PART III.

---

### CHAP. I.

*The Government of the Viceroy D. Hierome  
de Azevedo, from the Year 1612 till  
1617* 181

### CHAP. II.

*Continues the Government of the Viceroy  
D. Hierome de Azevedo, in the Year  
1613* 190

### CHAP. III.

*Continues the Government of D. Hierome  
de Azevedo, in the Year 1614* 197

### CHAP. IV.

*Continues the Government of D. Hierome  
de Azevedo* 207

### CHAP. V.

*Continues the Government of the Viceroy  
D. Hierome de Azevedo, in the Year  
1615* 212

CHAP.

## The Contents.

### CHAP. VI.

*Continues the Government of the Viceroy  
D. Hierome de Azevedo, in the Year  
1615* 220

### CHAP. VII.

*Continues the Government of the Viceroy  
D. Hierome de Azevedo, in the Year  
1615* 224

### CHAP. VIII.

*Continues the Government of the Viceroy  
D. Hierome de Azevedo this same  
Year 1615, and that of 1616* 229

### CHAP. IX.

*Continues the Government of the Viceroy  
D. Hierome de Azevedo the same  
Year 1616* 234

### CHAP. X.

*Continues the Government of the Viceroy  
D. Hierome de Azevedo, in the Year  
1616* 242

CHAP.

## The Contents.

### CHAP. XI.

*Continues the Government of the Viceroy  
D. Hierome de Azevedo the same  
Year 1616* 249

### CHAP. XII.

*Continues the Government of the Viceroy  
D. Hierome de Azevedo, in the  
Year 1617.* 256

### CHAP. XIII.

*Particular Discoveries made in the Island  
of Madagascar, or St. Lawrence, by  
Order of the Viceroy D. Hierome de  
Azevedo.* 264

### CHAP. XIV.

*Continues the Discoveries in the Island Ma-  
dagascar, under the Viceroy D. Hie-  
rome de Azevedo* 271

### CHAP. XV.

*The Government of the Viceroy D. John  
Coutinno Count de Rodendo, from  
the Year 1617 till 1619* 278

CHAP.



## The Contents.

### CHAP. XVI.

*Continues the Government of the Viceroy  
D. John Coutinno Count de Redon-  
do* 284

### CHAP. XVII.

*Several wonderful Accidents during the two  
Years Government of the Viceroy the  
Count de Redondo* 292

### CHAP. XVIII.

*Of the Governor Ferdinand de Albu-  
querque, from the Year 1619, till  
1622* 299

### CHAP. XIX.

*Continues the Government of Ferdinand de  
Albuquerque.* 308

### CHAP. XX.

*Of the Viceroy D. Alfonso de Noronha, in  
the Year 1621* 314

### CHAP. XXI.

*Of the Propagation of the Faith in Japan,  
and Eshiochia about this Time* 316

TOM.

# The Contents.

---

## TOM. III. PART IV.

---

### CHAP. I.

*The Second Government of the Viceroy  
D. Francis de Gama Count de Vidi-  
gueyra, from the Year 1622 till 1627*  
Page 321

### CHAP. II.

*Continues the Government of the Viceroy  
D. Francis de Gama Count de Vidi-  
gueyra* 331

### CHAP. III.

*The Government of D. F. Luis de Brito,  
Bishop of Cochim, from the Year 1628,  
till 1629* 343

### CHAP. IV.

*Of the Viceroy D. Francis Mascarennas,  
in the Year 1628 ; with sundry Occur-  
rences at Pegu , Martavam , Prom,  
Siam, and other Places.* 347

CHAP.

## The Contents.

### CHAP. V.

*Continues the Affairs of the Kings of Siam  
and Pegu* 357

### CHAP. VI.

*Of the Governor Nunno Alvarez Botello,  
in the Year 1629* 364

### CHAP. VII.

*Continues the Exploits of the Governor and  
General Nunno Alvarez Botello* 370

### CHAP. VIII.

*The Government of the Viceroy D. Michael  
de Noronha Count de Linnares, from  
the Year 1629 till 1635* 374

### CHAP. IX.

*Of the Affairs of Ethiopia, during the  
Government of the Viceroy D. Michael  
de Noronha Count de Linnares* 383

### CHAP. X.

*Continues the Government of the Vice-  
roy D. Michael de Noronha, Count  
De Linnares.* 387

### CHAP. XI.

*Of the Recovery of Ceylon, during the  
Government of the Viceroy the Count de  
Linnares.* 396

### CHAP. XII.

*Of several Occurrences till the end of the  
Government of the Viceroy the Count  
De Linnares.* 402

### CHAP.

## The Contents.

### C H A P. XIII.

*The Government of the Viceroy Peter de  
Silva, from the Tear 1635 till 1638* 408

### C H A P. XIV.

*The Government of Antony Tellez de  
Silva, from the Tear 1639, till 1640.* 412

### C H A P. XV.

*Of the Viceroy John de Silva Tello, who  
went for India in the Tear 1640* 414

---

*A short Account of what the Portugueses  
are posselt of between the Cape of Good  
Hope and China ; of the several Dig-  
nities, Commands and Revenues in the  
said Possessions , and of the Religious  
Houses in those Parts* 415

*An Account of all the SHIPS that sailed  
from Lisbon to the Discovery of the  
Coasts of Africk and Asia, and the  
Annual Trading Ships, from the time  
Prince Henry first attempted the Disco-  
very, till the Tear 1640.* 421

*The Viceroy and Governors of India, from the  
first Discovery till the Tear 1640* 433  
*Books in Print and Manuscripts out of  
which the Portugues Asia was Col-  
lected* 436

T H E



---

THE  
PORTUGUES  
ASIA.

---

TOM. III. PART I

---

CHAP. I

*The Government of the Vice-Roy D. Francis Mascarennas Count de St. Cruz, from the Year 1581 till the Year 1584.*

1. **D**ON Francis Mascarennas Count of Santa Cruz, was the first Vice-Roy of India sent after the Revolution of the Kingdom of Portugal by the King of Spain. The Honours and Advantages conferred on him, together with this Command, exceeded all that till that time had been heard of upon the like Occasion. D. Francis very well deserved all Rewards of Honour and Profit, having served well in India, and bravely defended the City *Chaul* with

with a few Men and no Wall, against the Power of *Nizamaluco*, who besieged it with 150000 Men. Yet this his Advancement may be attributed, rather than to his Merit, to the Policy of Princes, who when they gain a Crown, to which there are other Competitors, endeavour to gain Hearts by Bounty, and heap on one what at another time would serve many. The Vice-Roy had five Ships.

2. Being come to *Goa*, he found *India* had already proclaim'd King *Philip*, according to the Orders not long before sent to the Governor *Ferdinand Telles de Menezes*. It is credible the great Favours bestowed on the Count were only to animate him to procure the peaceable submission of *India* to the new King, and that being already performed by *Ferdinand Telles*, the Count fortunately reaped the Benefit of his Care and Industry.

3. The new Vice-Roy being eased of that Care, applied himself to the usual Affairs of the Government, sending out Squadrons as customary in the beginning of Summer. *Matias de Albuquerque* with two Gallies and Twenty other Vessels and Seven hundred Men, were ordered for the Coast of *Malabar*.

4. He being on that Coast, sent *Francis Fernandez* with Eighteen Sail to burn *Comlete* the lesser, which was a Nest of Pyrats, it was executed by him without losing one Man; the same at *Capocate*, where Sixty *Almadies*, being fishing Vessels, were taken, and the Country

Country made desolate for a long time. A hundred *Moors* of *Capocate* seeing their Houses burnt, run in a Rage to the Shore where *Alonso Ferreyra* with Eighteen Men withstood them till he was relieved from the Ships, and got off without Loss, some of the Enemy being killed by our Cannon. *D. Giles Tavez* burnt some Vessels, and killed several Men up that River, then they all returned to their Admiral, who was become the Terror of all that Coast.

5. This Destruction fell chiefly on the Queens of the Mountains between *Calicut* and *Cananor*, and her of *Olala*, their Towns and Woods being burnt and cut down. The neighbouring People terrified herewith, submitted and paid the Tribute they owed for some Years; and the *Balala* of *Panabur* was again brought under subjection. *Francis Fernandez*, *Alvaro de Avelar*, and *Andrew Furrado* took each of them a considerable Ship. *Alonso Ferreyra* over against *Conulete* razed a Fort of the *Moors*, having killed some of One hundred and fifty; he attacked with few Men.

6. *James Lopez Coutinho de Santalém*, cruising on the Northern Coast with Eight Sail, near *Suratte* burnt a Village of the *Mogols*, because they had killed Six of Twenty-four Men, who without Orders went ashore; but as he drew off, the Enemy came down very numerous with some Elephants, and one piece of Cannon, and wounded many of his Men and himself, so that he was forced to be sent to *Daman* to be cured.

Afterwards burning another Village he came off with Loss.

7. The Vice-Roy being informed that the Turkish Gallies, which the Year before plundered *Mascate*, were again at Sea, feared they would make some attempt upon *Mocambique*, and therefore sent thither two Ships to relieve that Place. Mean while an Army of *Mogols* with Elephants and other Necessaries for a Siege entred the Country of *Pamam*, burnt Villages, and encamped not far from the City. Our Commander there, *Martin Alfonso de Melo*, having but few Men, and being ill fortified, sent Advice to the neighbouring Commanders and to the Vice-Roy; and in few Days so many Gentlemen resorted to him, that they valued not the Enemy.

8. The *Mogol* thinking nothing was to be got by Men who so freely offered themselves to Danger, forbore the Siege, and with fresh Fury over-ran the whole Country. He took a view of the Fort where *Ferdinand de Miranda* had Commanded, and was well known to him; he called *Miranda* loud, and rid out from the Front of his Army. *Ferdinand* knowing he that called was *Calichan*, General of those Troops, went out, and pointed his Lance so well, that hitting on his Breast it pierced the Armour, wounded him, and flew in pieces, but he fell not, being tied to the Saddle. *Calichan* retired to his Men, decamped and marched away, but left a Garrison to keep Possession of one Village.



Chap. I. *The Portugues Asia.*

5

But the *Portugueses* had like to have done themselves the Damage they might have feared from the *Mogol*, being drawn up in order to fight among themselves, on account of some Disputes about Superiority, and about opposing *Alfonso de Melo*, for imprisoning a Soldier. A fortunate alarm prevented this Mischief.

10. *Ramana da Rama*, King of *Sarceta*, five Leagues Northward of *Damam*, a Friend to the *Portugueses*, being upon this occasion entrusted to secure the Women and Children, covetous of the Riches they carried with them, refused to restore them. *Martin Alfonso de Melo* and *Ferdinand de Miranda* marched towards him with Eight hundred *Portugueses*, whereof 140 Horse, and 400 Musqueteers, and 1000 of the Natives. Being come in sight of the City *Kaumalaje*, the King sent to offer he would restore all, provided they would proceed no farther. They, thinking it was only to amuse them, marched on. The King with his Wife and Jewels getting on Elephants, and being followed by the Inhabitants, fled to a Mountain, whence he could see the City plundered and burnt, and all the Country about destroyed.

11. The Enemy made some attempts upon our Quarters, and at last the King came in Person with a good number of Men, for some time put our Men very hard to it, but in the end was forced to fly, and from his retreat sent to make entire restitution of all that had been demanded.

12. In Ceylon, *Raju* was preparing to fall upon *Columbo*. The Vice-Roy sent five Sail to its Relief, and *Raju* understanding it, stirred not. *John Correa de Brito*, Commander of *Columbo*, eased of that care, sent back three of the Ships, retaining only two.

13. *D. Hierome de Mascarenhas*, who was with a Squadron in the Red Sea, met with no Enemy, but one Night the Sky being serene and clear, they all saw a great opening in the Region of the Air with such brightness as enlightned all the Sea, then there fell abundance of Flames like flashes of Powder. This lasted not long; the Night after it continued clear as before, and they sailed to *Ormuz*.

14. The Kings of *Lara* always aspired to raise themselves above those of *Ormuz*, as formerly they had been. He that now reigned resolving to possess himself of all *Mogostan*, and leading a powerful Army, had taken several Towns, and kept the Fort of *Ormuz* in a manner besieged, by hindring the resort of the neighbouring Country People, who supply it with Provisions. The King of *Ormuz* who was equally apprehensive of this danger, had a Conference with *D. Gonzalo de Menezes*, Commander of the Fort, and having adjusted Matters, they both set out in *August*, when the heat of the Sun is intollerable, to meet the Enemy. The King led 3000 Men, *D. Gonzalo* 800 choice *Portugueses*, with a train equal to the greatest Princes. These 800 were divided into three Bodies. They marched to the Fort  
of

Chap. I. *The Portugues Asia:*

of *Xamel*, which they judged impregnable, not so much by Art as its natural Situation, in it were Five hundred *Lanins*, the flower of that Nation.

14. In planting our Cannon we lost one Man, and had many Wounded. The Fort was batter'd Twenty Days without any Effect. The Battery was removed against a Bastion near the Gate, where it soon made a considerable impression. The Bastion was assaulted and gained with the loss of six Men.

16. The Battery was removed thither, and continued playing till the King of *Lara* dying, and his two Sons falling at variance about the Succession, instead of relieving the Besieged, they were forced to surrender upon Condition to march out with their Baggage. As they marched the *Amadis* of the Army of *Ormuz*, who had feigned themselves their Friends, only to get the opportunity of revenging the Affronts received from them in the Persons of their Wives and Daughters, now suddenly fell upon them, killed 150, and had destroyed the rest, had not the King and *D. Gonzalo* interposed. *Milascar*, one of their Officers was killed by our Men whom he assaulted, believing them the Breakers of the Articles.

17. *Xaseambar*, another of their Officers more discreet, put himself into the Protection of *D. Gonzalo* who found much difficulty to save him. The *Amadis* begged of him, since he would not suffer them to kill him, he would at least permit them to lay their Mouths to his Wounds to

suck his Blood in revenge of their Affronts, with great trouble he appealed them. The King put *Coiccenadam* with Five hundred Men into the Fort, and returned to *Cochin*. Immediately after, Provisions, now grown scarce in the City, were plentifully brought to it.

18. At the same time the King of *Achem* came to *Malaca* with 150 Sail, and finding two Ships in that River, batter'd them the space of fifteen days. *D. John de Gama* who commanded there, and whose time was now expiring, was most vigilant till *Rocque de Melo* succeeded him. The Enemy weary with battering the Ships resolved to burn them, and had compassed it, had not *Bartholomew Fernandez a Mulato*, with two Soldiers turned off from them a flaming Vessel designed to set them on Fire.

19. *Nunno Monteyro* coming from the Sreight of *Singapura* in a Galliot with sixty Portugueses most of them born at *Malaca*, had the boldness to attack all that Fleet. Though it seem fabulous, at the first onset he made all those 150 Sail give way, then the greatest of them boarded him, and he had visibly the better of them, when some spark of Fire falling into his Powder blew up him, his Vessel and all the Men: Yet this Accident was but a just Punishment of *Monteyro's* Disobedience to the Commander of the City, and the Enemy content with this success weighed Anchor and made away.

20. The Enemy sailed thence to the City *For*, and began furiously to batter it, *Rigale*



## Chap. II. *The Portugues Affa.*

9  
gale the King sent to *Malacca* to desire Succour, it was sent him in twelve Ships, which entered that Port so unexpectedly, that before any resistance could be made, they fired some of the greatest Gallies, killing all that were in them, and presented the King with the Head of one of those Commanders, which being set up on the Shore so terrified the whole Fleet, they all fled.

21. Let us return to *Damam*. *Ferdinand de Miranda* put to Sea again with his Squadron, consisting of twenty Sail. After most violent Storms they were forced to come to an Anchor at *Suratte*. Setting out thence they attacked a mighty Ship of *Balala*, which surrendered, having articted for the Mens Lives.

## C H A P. II.

*Continues the Government of D. Francis Mascarennas.*

1. **M***iranda's* Men in a Rage that they were deprived of the Booty of that Ship which had submitted it self, beset him to the number of Fourteen Sail, and after much reproachful Language, left him and sailed away to *Damam*, putting that Town into a great fright, because they had set up black Colours. They landed and marched in warlike manner into the City, committing extravagant Enormities. Every  
one

one was astonished not knowing the cause, nor daring to ask it, and their Resolution was to kill *Miranda* as soon as he landed. As soon as he entered the Port, they ran to the Shore rashly, wounded several instead of him, no Authority being sufficient to curb them. *Miranda* privately withdrew to the Convent of St. *Francis*, and sent Presents to offer them as much as could come to every Man's share of that booty, where with they were appeased. It was not above two Towns a Man, which they valued above their Honour and Duty.

2. *Miranda* sailed hence with some small Vessels, and took another Ship at *Giga*, and then stood for *Capote*, a Nest of Robbers long since threatened by the *Portugueses*. He now coming furiously upon it demolished the Fort, burnt the Town, and put the Inhabitants to the Sword.

3. *Zamori* seeing so many Villages on the Coast destroyed by *Matbias de Albuquerque*, offered a Peace, *Albuquerque* was Commissioned to treat of it, he finding himself still amuzed with Delays, fell again to acts of Hostility, destroying all the Coast with Fire and Sword. The City of *Calicut* felt this Fury, being strongly cannonaded, as were *Paracale*, *Capocate* and *Chatua*. This done *Matbias* went away to *Ormuz*, of which Place he was appointed Captain, leaving his Squadron under the Command of *D. Giles Tanes Mascarennus*, who came to succeed him with eight Ships.

4. This

## Chap. II. *The Portugues Asia.*

11

4. This Year Five Ships set out from *Lisbon*, two of them were forced in again, one was cast away at *Malta*, two arrived in *India*, one of which upon his return fought three or four English Vessels, and got off with Honour.

5. *D. Hieronimo de Mascarenhas* and *Ferdinando de Miranda* being assisted with their Squadrons, took each of them two English Ships. Both these Commanders were going to join *Emanuel de Saldanha*, Captain of *Portugal*, against the King of the *Coles*, who was joined over the *Camponeses* of that Neighbourhood. These Commanders being joined with 300 Horse, 800 Musketeers, almost 1000 Slaves and Natives, and the King of *Savotta* at the request of the Vice-Roy with 150 Horse and 500 Foot, they marched with great difficulty for the great heat and badness of the ways by *Agacaim*, *Manora*, *Affarim*, and at the end of Fifteen days discovered the City *Tavar* they sought for. The City had beautiful Buildings and Gardens, seated on a Hill that overlooks a very large Plain. The King and Inhabitants being fled, it was easily burnt with the neighbouring Villages, and the Country People and Cattel carried away.

6. Our Men advancing into narrow De-files where two could not go abreast, the King of the *Coles* with 6000 Men fell upon their Rear, whilst some Parties annoyed them from the tops of the Hills. Here they were brought into great danger, and forced

to make their utmost Efforts. Many Gentlemen signalized themselves, and the King of *Sarret* appeared always in the greatest danger, encouraging the Men with his Sword in hand. At length our Men made their way through the Defiles, and the K. of the *Coles* defeated, was forced to sue for Peace, and accept of such a one as we were pleased to grant him.

7. This year began with two great Losses. D. *João de Gama* sailing from *Malacca* towards *Goa* with his Wife, Children, much Riches, and many Men, lost his Ship at midnight at *Niesbar*: Above 50 Persons were lost, and among them, his eldest Son. Another Son, his Wife, and almost 300 Persons, were saved in an Island not inhabited. He framed a Barque which held 90, and with great Hardships, after being made Slaves, they got to *Cochim*, the rest being left behind till they could return to fetch them. *Simon Ferreyra* coming in a Ship richly laden from *China*, was cast away in sight of the Coast of *Jor*. He desired that King to assist him with some Vessels to save part of the Goods, and the King took them to himself.

8. D. *Giles Tanes Mascarennas*, who commanded the Squadron on the Coast of *Malabar*, would not seem inferior to his Predecessor. He made such havock along that Shore, that nothing was heard but the Cries of the Inhabitants. He twice set fire to *Calicut*, *Panane*, *Calegate*, *Marate*, *Concebe*, and the Island *Daruti*, not without opposition



Chap. II. *The Portugues Asia.*

13

tion with great slaughter of the Heathens.

9. They came to the River *Cunnale*, upon which is a Fort of the same Name, the Refuge of Pirates subject to the Commander of the Fort. Two *Malabar* Ships were standing in, and being attacked by two of ours, the one was taken; in the other, 50 Men killed by one Ball that swept from Stern to Stern; being boarded, and almost taken, she ungraciously fled, and made to the Shore that was covered with *Mores*, and defended with Cannon. *Tavora*, who commanded our Ship, pursued to save 6 *Portugueses* who were carried away by the Enemy, till a Cannon Ball carried away his Leg, of which he died. Of the 6, only one was carried to *Cunnale*, who at one stroke cut him in two. The King of *Chale*, to prevent his own Ruin, agreed to pay Tribute, assign a place, and furnish Workmen and Materials to raise a Fort. *Mascerennas* on his way to *Goa*, in the River *Sal*, burnt the Villages of *Aselunar*, and those of *Cuenti* in *Salfete*.

10. *Bracalar*, a City seated on the Coast of *Canara* in almost 14 Degrees of Latitude, was once one of the most noted places of Trade in *India* in the form of a Commonwealth, but much decayed since the *Portugueses* built a Fort there. The People of this place observing, that our Commander *Francis de Mello & Sampayo* was wholly taken up in heaping Riches, and pleasing his Wife, resolved to rid themselves of that Clog. They agreed to fall upon, and kill all the *Portugueses*

auguster taken up with the Procession on Maundy-Thursday, and had effected it but that Giles Tanez put in there with his Squadron in his way to Goa. In departing on Friday, they prevailed with some Christians to let them into the Fort on Easter Night. The Design was discovered, and the Conspirators quartered. Now they refused to attack it by open force, and joyning with their Neighbour King of Tolar and 5000 Men, burn the outward Town, and bring us into great danger. The Viceroy having notice, sent *Madreau Furtado*, who routed those Mutiniere, and going up the River made great Havock along the Shore. Thus the Fort was secured, but the Officers not justified.

11. The Religious of the Society of *Jesuits*, who have so much laboured for the Conversion of Infidels, had sent some of their Number into the Island *Salsete*, which contains 66 Villages of Pagans. These Fathers took great pains, and the Viceroy *D. Antony de Noronha* finding the People incorrigible, destroyed all their Pagods, yet they in the year 1559. taking up Arms, ruined our Churches.

12. This done, they refused to pay the Tribute they owed us, and fell to destroying the Preachers of the Gospel. At this time *F. Rodulphus de Aquaviva* desiring to spread the Faith in the five Villages of *Coculii*, went thither with *F. Francis Pacheco* and *F. Francis Aranna*, three Portuguese Soldiers, and some Natives. The Heathens fell upon them, cut off *F. Rodulphus* his Legs, and then

then his Head. *Padre* was struck through with a Spear, and then stuck full of Arrows. The rest were all slain after several manners. The same day *F. Ignacia de Azevedo* that went to *Brasil* with 40 Companions, all suffered Martyrdom.

13. *Gallic Tauxa de Freyredo* Commander of *Bahia*, by the Viceroy's Order made a great slaughter of the People of *Salses*, destroyed their Habitations, and left them not one Temple standing. He carried by a wife getting those into his power who had married the Fathers, made *Escolas* of them; which so terrified the *Indians* that many of them fled, new Christian Churches were erected, and Crosses set up on all the Hills.

14. This was the posture of Affairs in *India*, when five Ships arrived from *Portugal*, and in them *F. Vincent de Fonseca* a Dominican, who went to succeed *F. Henry de Tavora* in the Arch-Bishoprick of *Goa*.

15. *Sultan Amalifar* the lawful King of *Cambaya*, kept Prisoner by the *Mogul* after he had usurped his Kingdom, at this time fled by the means of some Women. In disguise he came to a *Baneane* at *Cambayese*, by whom he was conveyed to *Jambo*, one who in the late Revolution had secured to himself a Limb of that Empire. He dutifully owned, and caused him to be owned by others, so that in few days they gathered an Army, in which there were above 30000 Horse. Behold, how attractive is the Person of a Prince found after having been lost!

In a very short time, either by force or consent, they recovered most of the Kingdom of *Bombay*.

16. Our Viceroy, the better to take the advantage of these Confusions, and hoping thereby to gain *Saratte*, went with 40 Sail to *Chaul*, and thence sent some understanding men to *Burcho*, then besieged by *Amadifar*, the Wife and Children of *Colibidachan*, whom he had fraudulently taken and slain being in the Town. These Agents had Orders to Treat both with the King and that Woman, without letting either of them know any Correspondence was held with the other, that so our Interest might be secured with the prevailing Party. But the *Mogul* coming down with a great Power, and recovering all he had lost, put a stop to the Viceroy's Proceedings; who returned to *Goa* much afflicted for the Death of *D. João de Castro*. This young Gentleman commanded a Ship of *Ferdinand de Miranda's* Squadron, and being parted from him by a Storm, was attacked by two *Malabar* Paraos between *Tarapur* and *Mali*, and his Powder taking fire, the Ship blew up, only three of the Men escaping Death to be led into Slavery.

17. Whilst the Viceroy was absent from *Goa*, many of the principal Subjects of *Hidalcán*, provoked by the Insolencies of *Larvacan* his Favourite, resolved to set up *Cusfocan* Son to that *Meale*, who being Prisoner at *Goa*, so long kept this powerful Neighbour in awe. *Cuse* was at *Goa*, and the Conspirators



rators contrived how to get him out, and *Larvacan* pretending to act for them, corrupted the Guards, and procured his Liberty. This Treachery was managed by an infamous *Portuguese*, called *James Lopez Bayam*, much in the King's Favour for such-like Services. *Cuso* thinking he went to them that designed to Crown him, found himself in the hands of *Larvacan*, who caused his Eyes to be put out.

18. Then came to *Goa* a Woman of great fame, formerly banished by *Hidalcan*. She was about 65 years of Age, little of Stature, of Complexion fair, still shewing the Ruins of Beauty, esteemed a Virgin, and much valued for her Prudence, Wit, and Courage, for in a Man's Habit (except her Head which was dressed in white) on Horseback with a Bow and Arrow she followed the Army like an *Amazon*, and gained Reputation. Her Name *Abchi*. She pretended to Treat with the Viceroy about important Affairs, which were never known. She was taken by the Inquisition, banished to *Ormuz*, and thence fled to the *Mogol*.

19. *Zamori* now tired with so much Destruction, and the Clamours of his Subjects, his own Palace in *Calicut* being burnt by *D. Giles Tanex*, and all that lay without the Town, at last sued for Peace, and concluded it on such Terms as we thought fit.

20. At *Cochin*, that King having assigned over all the Customs to the *Portugueses*, the People rose to the number of 20000, swearing on a Mass-Book to die in defence of  
C their

their Liberties hereby infringed. D. George de Meneses Baroche, who commanded there, finding the Tumult too high to be opposed, suspended the Execution of the Viceroy's Orders relating to this Affair.

21. D. Giles Yanez Mascarennas being appointed to go to *Cochim* to endeavour to suppress that Tumult, was ordered by the Viceroy by the way to destroy the *Nayque* of *Sanguicer*, who having raised a Fort on the River of that Name, protected Pirats to our great loss. He had 14 Sail with 300 of the choice Men of *Goa*.

22. D. Giles run up the River, and the better to come where he desired, went out of his Galeon into a small Vessel, and run so far between the Rocks that he could not get out, and his Stem lay almost on the Shore. Those of *Sanguicer* poured in their Shot, so that all his Men left him where he was killed, the other Vessels being no way able to relieve him.

23. James de Azambuja, Commander of *Tidore*, was driven to great streights, because no Relief came from *Malaca*, Ferdinand Ortiz de Tavora designed thither, having been stopped by the coming of the King of *Achem* upon that City. He understood by *Santiago de Vera* Governour of the *Philippine* Islands, that King *Philip* was Proclaimed in *Portugal*, and therefore asked Succour of him, who sent ten Sail commanded by D. John Ronquillo. This was not only a Supply of Ammunition, for the *Spaniards* were assisting to him with their Persons, espe-

Chap. II. *The Portugues Asia.*

19

especially by taking some Vessels of *Java*, that to our loss used that Port. *Babu* King of *Ternate* dying, left his Bastard Son *Bozai* possessed of the Crown, though he had a lawful Heir, who wanting Power lost his Right: For seldom does Right prevail where Force is wanting.

24. About this time the Great Turk sent *Mahomet Bassa* with 12000 Horse, many Pioniers, much Artillery and Money, to secure his late Conquests in *Persia*. *Xa Codabanda* joyning with *Semecombel*, the *Georgian* met him with a moderate Army, and as he was fording a River cut off many of his Horse, and caused 40000 Foot to be drowned. The *Persians* and *Georgians* got not only the Victory, but much Riches.

25. *Persia* was now in a great confusion, for the *Georgian Mirsa Salmas*, Son-in-Law and Favourite to *Xa*, perswaded him, that his Son *Abax Mirsa* King of *Ceorazone* stiled himself *Emperour of Persia*, and caused him to Arm against him. The *Emperour* marched against his Son, cutting off the Heads of many principal Men, till he came to the City *Hers* built by *Tamerlan* the Great, and now the Court of the innocent *Abax*, who not knowing the cause of this his Father's motion, had fortified himself. But now coming before his Father and clearing himself, the wicked *Salmas* his Head was cut off in his presence. The *Turk* taking this advantage, sent the *Bassa Ferabat* with 100000 Horse, and much Money, to conquer the Province of *Raviam*. He did much harm

C 2

there,

there, and had done much more, but that the Emperor reconciled to his Son, put a stop to his Current.

27. Now arrives in *India* *D. Duarte de Meneses*, who went to succeed the Viceroy *D. Francis*, who delivered up the Sword, after having held it three Years, being the 16th Vice-Roy, and 31th in the number of Governors, and Third of the Name and Sirname.

---

### C H A P. III.

*The Government of the Vice-Roy D. Duarte de Meneses, from the Tear 1584 till 1588.*

1. **D.** *Duarte de Meneses*, though of great Quality, yet was better known by his Valour, which moved the King to make choicé of him without any Recommendations or Pretensions of his, not doubting he would be as successful in *India* as he had been in *Tangier*. He had six Ships and a prosperous Voyage.

2. The first thing he applied himself to was the appeasing the Tumults at *Cochin*. The Vice-Roy *D. Francis* had sent Commissioners to treat with the Heads of that People, and they had reduced them to hearken to an Accommodation. *D. Duarte* now arriving admits their Proposals, so that the Affair



### Chap. III. *The Portugues Asia.*

21

Affair of the Custom-House was settled. He dispatched the Ships for *Lisbon*, one whereof was never heard of. The Vice-Roy *D. Francis* returned in one of them.

3. The Vice-Roy being at *Goa* treated with the Ambassador of *Hidalcan*, about the manner of chastising the *Nayque* of *Sanguicer*, for the Death of *D. Giles Taner*, and to prevent Piracy. The Ambassador agreed that *Rostican*, Governor of *Ponda* should assist with Forty Thousand Men by Land, whilst *D. Hierome de Mascarennas*, sent by the Vice-Roy, attacked the *Nayque* by Sea.

4. *Hierome* entring the River, sent up 13 Vessels that rowed, and at break of Day courageously landed, attacked some Works, killed many of their Defendants, and took their Cannon. Then they marched to the Town, and the Inhabitants flying up the Inland, fell into the Hands of *Rostican*, who, according to agreement, was upon his March destroying all before him. Next day *D. Hierome* landed, and he marching on the one side, and *Rostican* on the other, they laid all the Country in Ashes. The *Nayque* from the Woods sent to implore Mercy, promising to perform Conditions, if the ruined Country were restored to him, which was granted.

5. *James de Azambuja*, Cammander of *Tidore*, was in great want of Ammunition, the Governor of *Manila* sent four Barques to his Relief, commanded by *Peter Sarmiento*, who by the way took Possession of the Island

*Monsel.* The King of *Ternate*, whose the Island was, resolving to be revenged on three of the Barques that went for Provisions to *Bacham*, sent his Brother *Cachil Tulo* with 24 Galliot to take them. They being abroad on this Design, met two Vessels belonging to the *Philippine* Islands that had also brought Relief to *Tidore*, commanded by *N. de Duenna*. He not able to avoid them, attacked the Admiral Galliot and sunk her, but all the others falling upon the 2 Vessels, in which were but 12 Spaniards, they were all slain, having fought to admiration, and killed and wounded many of the Enemy. *Tulo* proud of this Success, met those he before looked for, after a desperate fight night parted them, 200 of the *Ternatenses* and 8 Spaniards being killed.

6. Then arrived at *Tidore* *Duarte Pereyra* with one Galleon, he went to succeed *Azambuja*, who instead of resigning the Command, assaulted *Pereyra* in a House where he was with his Wife and Family, and all was in great danger, had not the King interposed. At the same time arrived 400 Spaniards from *Manila* to assist *Azambuja* to recover the Fort of *Ternate*, but he fearing *Pereyra* in his absence would take Possession of the Command, resolved to let slip this opportunity. *Pereyra* understanding it, and being of another mind, said, 'Such important Affairs ought not to be lost upon such Motives; that if the other would go, he would bear him Company. At length *Azambuja* set out, accompanied by the Kings  
of

### Chap. III. *The Portugues Asia:*

23

of *Tidore*, *Bachan* and *Celebes*. They landed, though opposed by the Natives, battered the Fort without effect, lost some Men, and retired to *Tidore*.

7. The City *Tauris*, on the Borders of the greater *Armenia*, at the Foot of the Mountain *Orate*, was once the Court of the Kings of *Persia*, and is now one of the most famous Places of Trade in the East, rich and plentiful. The Great *Turk* desiring to raise a Fort there, sent *Osman Bassa* with a powerful Army, who encamped before it on the Banks of a River. The *Persian* Emperor was ready to receive him with 70000 Horse, and sent out a Party to engage him, while his Son *Mirazen Mirsa* lay in Ambush with 10000 to break out in the heat of the Fight. The Youth was brave, and performed his Part so well, that at one onset he killed 7000 *Turks*, and retired with Honour and Booty. 7000 pursue him, and he facing them cut off one half of them. Next day the *Turks* assault the City, but the *Persians* sallying, killed 3000 at that time, and again at Night 4000 more. But the Governor after this abandons the City, yet the Inhabitants stood upon their defence, and at first made a great slaughter, till over-powered by the multitude many of them were put to the Sword, their Wives and Daughters abused, and all plundered.

8. *Osman* being now in Possession, in a Months time raised a wonderful Fort for greatness and strength in the Royal Gardens as the most convenient place. Some of the

*Turks* frequenting the Baths in the City, fell out with some of the Inhabitants, and being worsted by them, stirred up the whole Army to revenge. They left no sort of Villany unessayed, but Murdered, Ravished, Robbed, and marched out with an unspeakable Treasure. The Prince of *Persia* in a Rage obtained of his Father 20000 Horse, and falling upon the *Turks*, at one time killed 8000, and soon after 20000. They decamped and began to march, and the Prince desiring to recover the Treasure they had taken at *Tauris*, was so successful, that killing 20000 more he retired with 18000 Camels loaded with Riches, and an infinite quantity of Arms and Ammunition. He pursues them again, but Fortune changing, he did less harm than he received, and was forced to retire with loss of 3000 *Persians*.

9. Fifteen Years before this time there came upon the Country of *Moçambique*, such an Inundation of *Cafres*, that they could not be numbred. They came from that Part of *Monomotapa* where is the great Lake, out of which spring those great Rivers whose source was formerly unknown, to these were joined the *Cafres*, *Macabires* and *Ambei*, and other Borderers upon *Abissinia*. With them came their Wives and Families as those that sought new Countries to inhabit, their own not being able to contain them. Their choice Food human Flesh, and for want of it that of Beasts. They left no other signs of the Towns they passed by, but the heaps of Ruins and Bones of the Inhabitants. For want



want of them they eat their own, beginning by the Sick and Aged, so that doubtless Fathers became Food to their Children. The Women deformed and hardy, carry their Goods on their Backs, and in fight use the Bow as dexterously as the Men, these march in Armour, and where-ever they halt fortifie themselves.

10. *Hierome de Andrade*, from the Castle of *Tete*, sent out a Party of Musqueteers, who firing among that Multitude killed some to their great astonishment, having never before seen that sort of Arms, that they fled without looking back; in two Ran-counters above 5000 were slain. They stopped not till they came to the Country of *Moçambique*, having destroyed all in their way like a fiery Inundation. This Place was approved of by *Mambea*, Commander of about 6000, and he began to build a Fort and Towns two Leagues from *Moçambique*. The Fort of *Cuama* where *Nunno Vello Pereyra* commanded, was much incommoded by them, he therefore sent out *Antony Rodrigues Pimentel*, or *Pinto*, with 400 Men, four of them *Portugueses*, who unexpectedly falling on the Barbarians, slew a vast number and burnt the Fort, but retiring in disorder, they fell upon and killed him and all his Men, except three *Portugueses* and very few Blacks. All the dead were eaten by the victorious *Cafres*, except their Heads, Hands and Feet.

11. Since this Relation has brought us to *Moçambique*, it will not be amiss to give some

some Account of that Country. It is full of Orchards and Fruit-trees, especially Citron, Limon and Orange-trees, has all sorts of tame and wild Beasts, as in *Europe*, an infinite number of Elephants. The People feed on Indian-Wheat, the Woods are of Ebony, a high Tree, bearing a Leaf like that of our Apple-trees, the Fruit like Medlars but not eatable; from the Ground upward it is so covered with Thorns, it is difficult to come to it; where one is cut down, another never grows; the Bark of it is as susceptible of Fire as tinder. There is another sort of a yellowish Colour that is of value. The best Manna is produced here. Among the Fish of that River, there is one as devouring as Crocodils; no Man in reach escapes them, but they touch not Women, so great is the Privilege of that Sex. One of these of a prodigious bigness was taken that had Gold Rings in the Ears. It was supposed to be some piece of Witchcraft of the *Cafres*, to clear the River of those dangerous Monsters. To confirm this Opinion, *Merude* a learned *Arabian* relates in an account of Modern Prodigies, That about the Year 863, in the Foundation of an *Egyptian* Temple there was found a brazen Crocodile with certain Characters, which being broke to pieces the Crocodils of *Nile* began to devour Men; whence it was inferred, that was a Charm upon the Crocodiles.

12. Hatred conceived against the Favourites of *Nizam-ulnoo* in *Canara*, brought the  
Mogols

*Mogols* upon the Kingdom of *Verara*, who after much Plunder and Desolation possessed themselves of many Towns and Cities. The occasion was, that the King being ill of a contagious Distemper, his Favourite *Acc-decan* first, and after him *Calabatecan*, kept him up without suffering any Body to see him. The Prince and People had recourse to Arms to oblige these Tyrants to give them a sight of the King; and they perswading it was to depose him, so far prevailed, that he meeting them in hostile manner, made a great slaughter of them, and hereupon the *Mogols* were called in to their aid.

13. Five Ships sailed this Year from *Lisbon* for *India*, one of them was lost beyond the Cape of *Good-Hope*, at the Place called *Bajos de la India*, a Promontory that rises with many Points, which at a distance look like Trees; it is oval and three Leagues in length, and abounds in Coral, which being naturally soft and white, grows hard and turns green, grey, black and red, but being pounded to Dust, resumes its whiteness.

14. The Captain with a few Men got into a Boat, and after six Days landed at *Quilimane*. About sixty got into another Boat, others put to Sea on Planks, above two hundred were upon the Rocks expecting to be swallowed by the Sea, or else scorched by the Sun, or starved to Death.

15. Those in the second Vessel chose *Duarte de Melo de Baçaim* to command them, and being over-loaded, were forced the first time

time to throw Seventeen into the Sea to save the rest, and, not being light enough, afterwards some others, among which the Lot fell upon one of two Brothers, the youngest whereof freely leaped overboard, but having swam three Leagues after the Boat, was again taken up.

16. A Boat built by the Pilot *Roderick Migueys* contained 40 Men, as they were under Sail a great Storm arose at Night, and is said to have ceased, by casting into the Water a piece of the Holy Cross one of them carried. Of 400 Men that were in the Ship, only these mentioned are known to have escaped.

---

#### C H A P. IV.

*Continues the Government of D. Duarte de Meneses.*

1. **T**HE Vice-Roy governed *India*, and his Unkle *Ruy Gonçalez de Camara* him, who desiring to engross all that was honourable, endangered what was necessary. It was requisite at the same time to send a Squadron into the Red Sea, and another to build a Fort at *Panane* in *Malabar*, and he would command the one and build the other. The Work ought to be solid and of Stone, yet the Vice-Roy agreed it should be slight and of Wood, that being soon finished *Camara* might be free to take the other Command.

2. *Ca-*



2. *Camara* being come to *Panane*, advertized *Zamori* of his Design, and he consenting, desired him to wait his coming, for he would be present at the chusing the Ground. He delayed coming, because his Bramenes could not find a lucky day for him to set out; and *Camara* being in haste, sent Presents to those Fortune-tellers, who there-upon presently found a fortunate hour.

4. *Zamori* being come, the Fort was made of Wood, and the Command of it given to *Ruy Gomez de Gram*, who pulled it all down, and built it after another manner, and of considerable strength. So that *Gram* built the Fort, and *Camara* had the Credit of it.

4. As soon as *Camara* had, as he thought, finished what *Gram* believed not begun, he went aboard his Squadron, which having been ill undertaken came to a worse end. Too much haste in going to *Panane*, made him too slow in going to the Red Sea; and now this slowness in going to Sea was as prejudicial as the haste in building the Fort. His Squadron consisted of four Gallies, two Galleons, and twenty other Vessels.

5. *Cosme Faya* went before to discover, and being deceived by a *Xequé* in the Island *Camaran*, was slain with all his Men. *Camara* sailing with the Wind at East, entred the Mouth of the Red Sea, and came to an Anchor in a Bay on the Coast of *Arabia*, Eleven Leagues from the City *Moca*. Some of his Ships were dispersed, and he designing

ing to take fresh Water while he waited for them, sent some Officers and 60 Soldiers with those that were to take Water. Thirty Turkish Horse and 500 Foot falling upon them out of an Ambush, killed 5 or 6; but our Men taking courage stood them eight hours, killing many, till Relief coming, the Enemy fled. Camara sailed thence to find his scattered Fleet, he found and lost them again, and after suffering much, chiefly through want of Water, he put into Ormuz, without having done any thing.

6. But before his going in, he sent Peter Homem Pereyra with 15 Sail against the Niquilus, now dangerous Neighbours, who hindered the carrying of Provisions to Ormuz, from whence 5 Vessels more were sent him, with which he made up 600 Men, many of them Men of Note. Scarce were they landed, when the Enemy rising from an Ambush fell on them with such fury, that breaking those who were drawn up, and hindering the others from forming themselves, they slew 250, forcing the rest to swim to their Vessels, many whereof were drowned. This was one of the greatest and most shameful Losses we sustained in India.

7. The pretence for sending this Squadron to the Red Sea, was to fight the Turkish Gallies that were to set out from Moca, whereas in truth there were no such Gallies, and the real design was only to employ Camara, and strengthen his Pretensions; and whereas he ought to have entred Goa in mourning after such a Loss, he entred that

that place with all demonstrations of Joy as if Triumphant, and had great favour shewn him. So fortunate is undeserving Impudence.

8. Nevertheless the pretence of sending out this Squadron was made good by two rotten Gallies that afterwards put to Sea from *Moca*. One of them so rotten, she sunk as soon as out of the Port; the other did as much as might have been expected from a sound Squadron. Of such efficacy is the Valour or Fortune of one single Man. Such was the *More Mir Alibet*, who now confirmed the great Opinion before conceived of his Abilities, for coming before the City *Magadano*, he brought it under the subjection of the Great *Turk* only by telling the Inhabitants, he was but the Forerunner of a great Fleet that came to conquer all the Coast of *Melinde*. At the City *Lusiva* he took from *Rocque de Brito* a rich little Ship that had there put itself under the Protection of the King of *Lamo*, who basely betrayed it to the *More* upon Promise from him of being spared himself, which Promise the *More* after broke. The *Portugues* defended himself bravely, but was at last put to the Oar, and died at *Constantinople*.

9. The same happened to another *Portugues* Ship at *Pate*. *Alibet* had thus framed a Fleet of 20 *Pangayo's* or small Vessels, and daring much, brought under the *Turkish* Subjection the Kings of *Ampaza*, *Pate*, *Lamo*, *Mombaca*, *Calife*, *Brava*, *Jugo*, and other Cities. All submitted to the force he gave out

out followed him, whereas he might have been destroyed by any *Portugues* Vessel, for in his Galley there were but 80 Men, and she was in such a condition, that she sunk in the Port of *Maça* before she could be carried home, without any stress of Weather.

10. *John Cayado de Gamboa* being abroad with some Ships against the Pirats of the North, found that *Caliche Mahomet* had a Ship at *Surat* which he designed to put out without the *Portugueses* Leave. *Gambo* lay to keep him in, and *Mahomet* sent him 3000 Ducats underhand to remove, which he took, and therewith in the Town bought Provisions, whereof he stood in need to continue there. This done, he returned the Money, letting the *More* know, He was not a Man that would sell his Honour, but returned Thanks for supplying him with Provisions whereof he stood in need, to lay wait for his Ship. The *More* was amazed, and ashamed to be so slighted, and lost his Voyage.

11. Some time since, *Raju* Son of the Tyrant *Madune* of *Ceylon* had besieged our Fort of *Columbo*, commanded by *Emanuel de Sousa Coutinho*, who defended it with Valour. He now again sits down before it, *John Correa de Brito* being Commander. But perceiving that his Father, Brothers, and some principal Subjects, were a hindrance to his wicked Designs, he murdered them all. This was a just Judgment of God, for his Father *Madune* had done the same with his own Father and Brothers; but this was no Excuse for



for *Raja's* Cruelty. Having nothing now to stand in awe of but his Mother-in-Law, a venerable Matron, who had tenderly bred him as her own, he caused her to be stripped before him, and sent into Banishment, where she died with grief.

12. The Tyrant began to turn his Fury upon the *Portugueses*, and they, though but few, engaged a Body of 4000 of his Men, killed 800 of them, and their Commander *Palimada*, on the day of the Invention of the Holy Cross in May, which therefore was established an annual Feast in that Place. *Raja* had yet a Nephew that gave him some jealousy, he sent for him to a Village where he then resided. The Message was full of Kindness, but the young Man well understood the smiles of Tyrants are fatal, and that the hour he went to him would be the last of his Life. He therefore with a pleasing Countenance entertained the Messengers (who had orders to carry him by force if he refused) and preparing a Dose of most strong Poison, went with it where his Wives, Children and Family were. After exhorting them to die courageously, he drank first, and then offered it to each of them, whereof not one refused to bear him Company in Death. The Messengers weary of staying, went in and found them all dead.

13. The Great *Turk* understanding his Fort lately built at *Tabris* in *Persia* wanted to be supplied, and desiring to raise another in the City *Gonsar*; to effect both, sent the *Bassa Ferat* with 160000 Horse. The *Persian*

*lian* having notice hereof, ordered *Hemadion*, Governor of *Gansar*, to go and treat with the *Georgians* his Neighbours to bring them to his assistance. He sent the Prince with 20000 *Horse* to secure *Gansar*, and he with the rest of his Army sat down before *Tabris*, and reduced the *Turks* in Garrison there to the last Extremities.

14. The Prince (not long before the Terror of the *Turks*) was overcome by the Beauty of the absent Governor's Daughter, and enjoyed her. Advice being given the Father, he concluded hastily, but to content the Affair he was sent to; and dissembling with the Prince, bribed his Barber with 20000 Crowns to cut his Throat as he shaved him. He did it, and was soon in pieces by the Servants.

15. The Death of the Prince, who was the Terror of the *Turks*, endangered the whole *Persian* Empire, and so *Feras*, without any Opposition, relieved *Tabris* and raised the Fort at *Gansar*, giving the Command thereof to *Chedar* Bassa, by Birth a *Portugues*. *Gansar* is one of the most populous and beautiful Cities of *Media*, divided from the Province of *Xerxes* by the River *Lirus*, which the *Turks* call *Cur*. The *Persian* Emperor was shut up in the City *Casby*, and the offended Governor conspiring with others, resolved to set up *Tamas Mirsa*, the King's Third Son, who was blind. But *Abas Mirsa*, who was the Second, and then govern'd *Coerazone*, being the lawful Successor, took Arms to oppose them. The  
Rebels

#### Chap. IV. *The Portuguese Asia.*

35

Rebels thought to take him by Treachery, but he dexterously apprehending the Heads, put them to Death, and prepared to March and Depose his Father.

16. The old Man fearing he would kill him, hanging a Sword about his Neck, and leading his third and fourth Sons, presented himself to *Abas Mirsa*, saying, *He would save him the trouble of looking for his Father or Brothers, if he desired to Murder them, for there he had brought both them and the Sword.* The Youth vanquished with that miserable Spectacle, cast himself at his Father's Feet, and said, *He was his Father, his Lord and his King; but since his Age and Infirmities would not permit him to do it, he begged he might be allowed to put a stop to the Ruine that threatened their Affairs, not as a King (for only his Father should be so whilst he lived) but as General of his Army.* The old Man took comfort hereat, and the Son marched to curb the Fury of the *Usbeques*, who, led by their King, in great numbers had broke into *Corazon*.

17. In the *Molucco* Islands the Kings of *Tidore* and *Ternate* were at War, for that the latter refused the former his Sister that he had promised to give him to Wife. At that time arrived thert *N. de Brito* with one Galeon from *Malacca*, and Orders to treat with the King of *Ternate* about restoring the Fort. He carried a Letter for him from King *Philip*, and another from the Vice-Roy, and a Present that rather offended than obliged him, for though but of small value,

it was not to be given him unless he performed what was proposed. Whilst he knew not this Condition, he agreed with the *Portugueses* and King of *Tidore*; but as soon as it was made known to him, broke off in such a Passion, that he ordered no *Portugueses* should enter the City unless they came bare-footed.

18. *James de Azambuja* now gave up that Command to *Duarte Pereyra*, who came from *Manilla*, where he had stayed for that Post. He agreed with the King of *Ternate*, who fearing his Unkle *Mandraxa*, the rightful Heir of that Crown, would deprive him of it, perfidiously killed him. That Prince was in love with his Niece, the King's Sister, who had promised her to him of *Tidore*, and seeing that Promise, hindred him from giving her to his Unkle, agreed with him he should steal her, that so there might be a plausible excuse made to the other. *Mandraxa* had scarce possessed himself of the Bride, when the King accused him of this Violence, whereupon he was condemned to perpetual Imprisonment, but the Nephew caused him to be stabbed, and married his Sister to the King of *Gilolo*. The King of *Tidore* resolv'd to be reveng'd of this Affront, and consulting with *Duarte Pereyra*, they agreed to contrive the Death of the King of *Ternate*, by the means of his Unkle *Cacbil Tulo*, offering him the Kingdom. He approved of the Proposal, and they concluded on the manner of doing of it.



19. *Rajale*, King of the City *Jor*, offended that a Vessel of his had been sunk at *Malaca*, though they made him satisfaction, studied Revenge, hindring the resort of Provisions to that place. *D. Hierom de Azavedo*, who came to be Admiral of those Seas, sent *Peter Vello* to burn a Town near *Jor* with 8 Ships. He executed it, but the Enemies Fleet meeting him on his return, he was beaten, lost 4 Vessels, and had lost all but that *Peter de Cunha Carneyro* coming up with his Galeon, bravely brought him off. *Rajale* thinking himself Victorious, appeared in the River *Malaca* with 100 Sail, but this Bravade cost him dear, much harm being done him as he drew off by our Fleet.

20. *Paul Diaz* at *Angola* prosecuted the War against that King with his usual success; the King was in the Field with 600000 fighting Men, whom he put to flight with little more than 100 *Portugueses*, and a number of *Blacks*.

21. The beginning of this Year sailed from *Lisbon* for *India* 6 Ships, one of them by the way had a sharp Engagement with two *English* Vessels in one Degree and an half of North Latitude. In these Ships went Orders for erecting the Court of *Chancery* at *Goa*. The *Portugueses* of *India* had sued for it, being pestered with Law-Suits, and they begged Locusts, for now they beg for Mercy being devoured by Lawyers. Two of the Ships that went from *India* this Year were lost, the Men and Goods saved. By the way died the Archbishop *F. Vincent*, who

left his Archbishoprick, being no longer able to bear with the Viceroy, Ministers, and even with the Church-men. He said, He came to inform the King and the Pope; the Accusation ended with his Death. One of the Ships about the Islands *Azores* was taken by Sir *Francis Drake*, who using honourably of his Victory, gave the Captain and his Men a Galeon, in which they came to *Lisbon*.

22. About this time many Pirats put to Sea from the Fort of *Cunnale*, who scouring all that Coast, killed and took many *Portugueses*. These in the Dungeon were kept several days from starving by a Mouse, for that Creature having made a hole through the Wall into a place where there was much Rice, every Night caused as much to fall through that hole as kept them alive. *Emanuel de Oliveyra*, one of these Slaves, being asked by *Cunnale*, 'Whether any of them would fight one of his Men? Answered, He would challenge any two. *Cunnale* replied, 'If he would turn *Mahometan*, he should have great Favours bestowed upon him; and several times endeavoured to prevail by kindnesses, and then again by Threats, but all to no effect; for *Oliveyra* declared, He would rather Die, than forsake the Faith; and accordingly had his Head cut off upon the Shore, and gained a Crown of Martyrdom.

23. The King of *Melinde*, always most faithful to us since our first Discoveries in *Asia*, advertised the Viceroy how prejudicial

to our Affairs, what *Mir Albu* had done with the *Galley of Moza*, would prove. And indeed, this was a great Rep towards the *Portugues* design of possessing himself of the Mines at *Esafala* and *Cuama*, the King of *Mombaza* having given him leave to raise a Fort there. The Viceroy hereupon consulted the Men of most Experience in those Affairs, the Resolution was, That a considerable Fleet must be sent to stop their further Progress. Eighteen Sail were fitted out, and the Command of them given to *Martin Al- fonso de Melo Pombeyro*.

24. They came to an Anchor in the Port of *Amboina*, because that being the first place that offended, it was thought fit to punish it first, as also because that King relying on his Fortifications, and 4000 Armed Men, had executed *John Rabelo* for not renouncing the Christian Faith. Our Men assaulted the Town in two Bodies, the first met great opposition, and slew the King, then making their way, both Parties entred the Town, sparing neither Women nor Children. The Town and Vessels in the Port were burnt, whilst the Woods were cut down. Ten days were spent in destroying all, with the loss of only four Men on our part.

25. The King of *Pate* seeing this Ruin, submitted, he of *Lusiva* fled to the Mountains, and our Admiral gave this Kingdom to a Matron, who had been deposed by him, that fled and came now to plead her Right. The King of *Mombaza* at first made shew as if he would oppose us, having got toge-

ther 7000 Men, but afterwards fled out of the Island, and from the top of a Mountain beheld the Flames that consumed his City. Our Admiral set sail for *Ormae*, according to his Orders, and sent to advertise the King of what he had done, and by the way saved a Ship of the former Fleet that was just sinking. The Admiral died at *Ormae*, and another went to raise the Fort at *Mafate*, who finished it.

26. The Commander of *Mozambique*, D. George de Meneses, was not idle, but still employed against the *Mores*, who endeavoured to settle themselves in the Trade of those parts of the Island *Madagascar*, that lay opposite to him. Many of ours were slain, and among them F. John of St. Thomas, a Dominican, who preached the Faith to those Infidels.

## C H A P. V.

*Continues the Government of D. Duarte de Meneses.*

1. **T**HE King of *Ujantana* took many of our Ships, and hindered the carrying of Provisions to *Malaca*, infomuch that Famine raged there to such a degree, that 100 died in one day, and Mothers cast away their Children for want of Food. The *Manacabo's*, a Neighbouring People, contributed much to this Misery, destroying what grew



## Chap. V. *The Portugals Asia.*

41

grow about the Town, and hindred the Country People from bringing in any Supplies.

2. *James de Azambuja* lately come from the *Molucces*, marched against them with 100 *Portugalls*, and 600 *Malays*, whereof 400 were *Mulattoes*. With great labour they came to the Town of *Nam*, where they met 2000 of the Enemy. *D. Emanuel de Al* made charged them with half our Men, and driving them out of the Field, persued them into their Works, which he cleared with great slaughter. Thence our Men proceeded to *Bombé*, where the King of *Jor* had a Fort, which the Commander forsook, and the Inhabitants submitted, pleading they had no hand in what was done to our prejudice.

3. The King of *Achem* seeing *Malacca* distressed had provided a Fleet of 300 Sail to fall upon it, and was ready to set out, when his General *Maratine*, who had long since designed to usurp that Crown, murdered him, the Queen and Chief of the Nobility, and stayed at home to secure his usurped Kingdom, which was the saving of *Malacca*. But *Rajale* setting Sail from his Port of *Jor*, entred the River of *Malacca* with 120 Vessels, in which were 6000 Men. *John de Silva*, who commanded in the Town, and *D. Antony de Noronha* at Sea, both applied themselves with all diligence to the Preservation of that place.

4. The Enemy attempting to Land in two Places, were drove back to their Ships with great

great loss, and many of them drowned, our Ships with their Cannon sunk two of theirs, and did good Execution: In the Church of the *Capucins* is said to have been seen a friar driving out the Enemies, who not appearing afterwards, was supposed to be St. Francis. The Commander stood at the Gate buying the Heads of the Enemies at 20 Crowns each.

5. *D. Hierome de Azevedo* cruising about *Romania*, took and sunk some Ships which proved some ease to *Malaca*. The City of *Cochin* sent thither plentiful and speedy relief. *John de Silva* the Commander, whether through any other Accident or Grief of the Miseries he saw there, is not known, ran mad. The Bishop took upon him the Government. *Baqaim*, *Chaul* and *Goa*, sent the Vice-Roy Money to relieve this City, the latter desiring that *D. Paul de Lima* might command the Squadron to be sent thither, and *Malaca* having desired the same, the Vice-Roy consented to it.

6. *D. Paul de Lima* set Sail with 500 Men in two Galleys, three Galleons, four Gallies, and seven other Vessels. In their way to *Malaca* they suffered much for want of Water, and got some, though with danger, on the Shores of *Achem*, where they took some Ships, killed many Men, and made several Prisoners, but particularly *Rajale's* Ambassador, who was there to incite that our professed Enemy to join with him against us.

## Chap. V. *The Portugues Asia.*

43

7. Before *D. Paul* could come up, some of his Ships joined those commanded by *D. Antony de Noronha* before *Jor*. The Enemies Fleet attacked them, and at the first Charge of our Cannon fled again, two of them were taken. *D. Antony* seeking to gather his Squadron, found his Men burning the Fort of *Corison*, fired above the Water, with Thirty Pieces of Cannon, and Two hundred, many of the Defendants were slain, the rest fled. *Antony de Andria* landing, brought off the Cannon, leaving the Fort in a Flame. Then they fired some Shipping and the Suburbs, and retired on their Ships with much Booty and many Prisoners.

8. This Success made *D. Antony de Noronha* believe it was easie to take the City, if he assaulted it in the Morning. Ambitious of gaining this Honour, and contrary to the Opinion of the Captains, he Assaulted the City with only 200 Men, knowing there were 12000 within, and the Walls at every Step planted with Cannon. Nevertheless he entered it, but had lost his Life, had not *D. Paul de Lima's* Captains snatched him out of the Enemies Hands, being penned up between Palisades with only Seventeen Souldiers, and gained him time to retire to his Ships.

9. The City *Jor* is seated on the height of a Point of Land in the Country of *Malaca*, in one degree and half of North Latitude, not far distant from the Shore, girt with thick Walls, though of Wood, yet strong,

strong, being composed of vast Beams well knit together; at small distances are Bastions all well stored with Artillery, and defended by great numbers of Malays, Manucabo's, and Islanders of Java and other Warlike Places, some of them commanded by their Kings, as those of *Tringale*, *Dragon*, *Camper*, and others. The River adds much to this strength, embracing the City with two Arms.

11. *D. Paul* being come, consulted the manner of attempting the place, and began a Battery with good success. The Enemies Fleet endeavoured a Diversion, but in vain. The Battery was continued till the day of the Assumption of our B. Lady, to which *D. Paul* had a peculiar Devotion.

11. The morning of that day he landed 600 *Portugueses* in three Bodies. *D. Antony de Noronha*, who led one, had a hot Dispute about landing with a Number of the Enemies Musketers, who being repulsed, still rallied; but at length our Men made their way to attempt the Town, where some of them were killed, endeavouring to force a passage where there was none.

12. In the mean while *D. Paul* cutting through 2000 of the Enemy in a Wood, joyned *D. Antony*, and both together broke into the City. The Enemy no longer able to sustain our Fury, gave way, and was pursued by those two Bodies into the City. The third of our Battalions had the same success in getting in, and with equal danger, being charged by one of the Kings upon an Ele.



Elephant with a strong and resolute Party. But the Beast being shot by *D. Nuno Alvarez Pereyra* so disordered them, that our Men had the opportunity to advance.

13. The Fight was very desperate in the Streets, many Arrows and Darts flying from the Windows; yet our Men advanced till they came to the place where the King was with his Allies, and there the Battle was renewed. *D. Paul* encouraged his Men, not only with Words, but with his Example, leading them on with Sword in hand.

14. After 6 hours Combat, the fortune of the Day still seemed dubious, till *Martinus Pereyra*, who had only 15 Men left with him of 150, attacked and entred the Fort *Cotabato*, which gave new Life to our Men almost spent with continual Labour.

15. *Luis Martines Pereyra*, who was left to command the Fleet, ceased not battering the Town, hearing only the noise of the Fight, and seeing the Enemies Colours upon the Walls, but seeing the Christian set up on the Fort *Cotabato*, he desisted. The Kings also discovering them, and other signs of their Ruin, mounted on Elephants with their Wives, and fled up the Inland.

16. After the Victory the City was fired, which being great, and of combustible matter, raised a terrible Flame. Many People were burnt, chiefly Women and Children, who in the Confusion could not escape. The Booty was very great, the Prisoners many, and the number of Slain by the *Portugueses* amounted to 4000, besides near  
3000

3000 killed by those that came to assist Rajah when they saw he was defeated; on our side 80 were lost. Almost 1000 Pieces of Cannon were found, some very large, 1500 Muskets, and 1200 Vessels. D. Paul of all the Booty took to himself only an Image of our B. Lady, found by a Soldier in the Wood where he was first engaged.

17. The City Malacca resolved to receive D. Paul in Triumph; D. Antony de Noronha, for the share he had in this Victory, desired he would let him go by his Side, and he replied, *Gloriam meam alteri non dabo*. D. Antony attended hereat, acquainted his Soldiers, and they resolved to anticipate the Triumph. They landed with sound of Drums, Trumpets, and noise of Cannon, and covering the way with their Cloaths, led him to the Church. D. Paul landed in the same manner he had done at Jo, was received by the Religious Orders with their Crosses, and singing, placed under a Canopy, and crowned by the Bishop with a Garland of Roses and Flowers.

## CHAP. VI.

*The End of the Government of D. Duarte de Meneses.*

1. **T**HE Tyrant Raja resolving to possess himself of our Fort of Colombo in Ceylon, to this effect gathered 10000 fighting Men, 60000 Pioneers, and near as many Artificers and other Labourers, 2200 Elephants, 40000 Oxen, 150 Pieces of Cannon, 50000 Axes, Shovels, Pickaxes, and Spades; an innumerable quantity of spare Arms and Tools; two Cailles, carried each upon a great Cart with 9 Wheels, and almost 500 Sail. He thought fit first to consult the Idols about the Success, and having placed Men behind them, who should say as he had directed them, the Answer was, *That if he would enter Colombo, he must shed innocent Blood.*

2. The People was astonished at this familiarity between their Prince and Idols, and he pretending Obedience to the Divine Commands, caused 500 Children to be snatched from their Mothers Arms, which were all slaughtered, and the Idols sprinkled with their Blood.

3. Thus prepared, he marched and sat down before the Town, choosing the Ground he best liked, there being no body to hinder him.

him. Our Commander *John de Brito* knowing this Storm was like to fall upon him, had made the best provision he could. He had but 300 *Portugueses*, the third part of them useless, being old Men or Children, and 700 Natives and Slaves, which he posted to the best advantage about that Wall, the Circumference whereof is very great, reserving 50 to be ready with himself, wherever the greatest Danger called. *Raja* spent a month in dreining a Lake that on one side secured the Town, about this Work, and securing some Boats, we had upon that Water, there were many Skirmishes, in which the Enemy came off with great loss.

4. The Fort was much weakened by the want of that Water, which was the chief Defence on that side. Our Commander gave Advice of the Danger he was in to the Neighbouring Places. The first that sent Relief was *John de Melo* Commander of *Manar*, it consisted of 40 Men under the Command of his Nephew *Ferdinand*, and Ammunition. *Ferdinand* was posted on the side of the Lake. Whilst *Raja* prepared for the Attack, there was a Skirmish between the Besiegers and Besieged, in which the former lost many Men, and had some of their Works levelled.

5. On the 4th of *August*, before day, *Raja* advanced to give the first Assault, with such silence he could not be heard, and the Darkness was such he could not have been seen, but the Musketers lighted Matches discovered them. They laid their Ladders,  
and



and mounted the Bastions *St. Michael*, *St. Goncalo*, and *St. Francis*, 2000 Pioniers at the same time working below to undermine the Wall, many of the former were cast down upon these last, and abundance of them in the Field torn in pieces by our Cannon.

6. All within and without was full of confusion with the Cries of Women and Children, Groans of Wounded Men, and Noise of Cannon and Elephants. These, forced to the Walls by their Governors, were again put back with many Wounds, and did great execution among their own Men. The multitude of the Enemy was such, no Slaughter seemed to lessen them, fresh Men still succeeding in the place of the Dead.

7. Our Commander was in all places where the greatest Danger called, and after a most tedious Dispute, that vast number of Enemies gave way, leaving 400 Men dead or dying under the Walls. Some few *Chingala's*, who were retired to the Fort for fear of the Tyrant, fought as if they had been *Portugueses*.

8. Twice after this was the Assault renewed, and the Enemy as often repulsed. The King enraged fortifies himself anew, and provides for another Attack. *James Fernandez Pessoa* coming from *Negapatan* with a Ship of his own was stopped by a Storm, but came afterwards. *Antony de Aguiar & Vasconcelos* arrived with a Ship, and comforted the Besieged. The Modeliar of *Canda D. John de Austria*, and the Arache *D. Alfonso*, did great execution among the

Barbarians; and a Soldier called *Joseph Fernandez* of great strength, threw several of them behind him for those that followed to kill them, he having before broke his Spear.

9. The City *Cochim* understanding the danger of *Columbo*, fitted out 6 Ships with Men and Ammunition, under the Command of *Nuno Alvarez de Atouguia*, to relieve that place. But *Raju* resolving to prevent all Relief, on the 20th of *August*, at night, gave another general Assault both by Sea and Land, so that Religious Men were forced to play the parts of Officers and Soldiers; and the Enemy after a great Slaughter was again repulsed in both places.

10. Then came *Atouguia* with the Relief sent from *Cochim*; and from *St. Thomas* and other places, arrived of their own free will *Ferdinand de Lima*, *Emanuel de Amaral*, and *Roderick de Alvarez*. *Emanuel Mixia* rising out of an Ambush fell upon one *Arache*, (who the former Siege had killed 29 of our Men) and running him through with a Spear, brought him to the Fort, where one of our Men cutting him open at the Heart, drank his Blood. Such was the Hatred they had towards him, as obliged them to commit this brutal Action. In *September* arrived a Galley and 6 Ships, under the Command of *Bernardin de Carvalho*, sent to their Assistance by the City of *Goa*.

11. Before these Ships departed thence, four were come in from *Lisbon*; five set out, but one was forced back. These Ships carried

ried new Instructions about Trade, the King having agreed with Merchants about setting out the *India Squadron*. These Instructions were so prejudicial to the Inhabitants of *Goa*, that the Viceroy had need of all his Authority, and that of Religious Men to appease them. All this was the Project of insatiable Ministers of State, who, for their own interest, will hazard the Ruin of an Empire, on pretence of Zeal to the Prince.

12. The Relief being come to *Columbo*, *Raja* despairing of carrying the Place by Assault, resolved to undermine it, and had effected it, but that *Thomas de Sousa* found out a way to destroy the Miners in the Work. The Tyrant next applied himself to Treachery, and agreed with some of his Wizards, that counterfeiting Discontent they should desert to the Town, poison their Water, and bewitch our Men. These were suspected, put to the Rack, confessed the Design, and were drowned. While one of these was on the Rack, he uttered some Words which deprived the Executioners of their Senses, and left them struggling with Convulsions for 24 hours. *Raja* afterwards sent others, and they were punished as the former.

13. Treachery failing, he turns again to Force, and causes his Fleet to attack ours commanded by *Thomas de Sousa*, who sunk two of his Ships, and took two, killing most of the Men, and hanging the rest at the Yard-Arms. Of the Enemy 300 were slain, of  
E 2
ours

ours only two private Men. *Raju* in a rage beheaded the Captains of his Fleet, because they had not overcome ours. Now arrived *Philip Carneyro* with a Ship laden with Ammunition sent by the Viceroy, and *Antony de Brito*, and *Emanuel de Macedo*, Volunteers. The Enemy gave another Assault by Night with the same Success as the former.

14. At the same time came *John Cayado de Gamboa*, sent by the Viceroy with a Galleon and 150 Men, many of them of Note. Our Commander finding himself strong, sent out *Peter Alfonso* with a Squadron to destroy all he could along the Coast. He did so in the Towns of *Belicote*, *Berberii*, and *Beligao*, where, for haste to take off the Women's Bracelets and Pendants, they cut off their Hands and Ears, and having made great Havock in many other places, they returned with much Booty and Prisoners.

15. But now Sickness threatned to do what *Raju* with all his Power could not effect. This Disease began to rage in the Neighbouring Towns, and being brought into the City, the Physicians found no Cure for it. This Year was drier than any had been known that Age, and that was thought to cause this Malady. The Doctors opening some that died of it, found their Entrails impostumated, which they said proceeded from Heat occasioned by that Drought. They then applied cold and dry Medicines, and the Disease decreased.

16. The Year ended, but not the Siege. In the beginning of *January Raju* gave two  
Al.



Assaults, in the last of which the Bastions of *St. Sebastian*, *St. Gonçalo*, and *Santiago*, were in great danger; but by the bravery of the Defendants the Enemy was at length repulsed, having lost many Men, and three Elephants.

17. Mean while our Fleet, again sent out under the Command of *Thomas de Sousa*, ruined all along the Coast of *Ceylon*. He destroyed the Villages of *Coscóre*, *Madania*, *Guindurem*, *Gale*, *Beligao*, *Maturé*, and *Tanavar*, where the Idolaters were now undeceived, who believed, our Arms could never reach that place by reason of a Pagod that is there. The Pagod is seated on a Hill not far from the Town, and at Sea looks like a City. The circumference of it was above a League; it is richly Vaulted, and the Arches covered with gilded Copper Plates; the Idols in it were above 1000 on the side Chapels, and large Cloisters. All round were Streets full of Shops, because People from all Parts resorted to the Pagod. *Sousa* entering this Temple, cast down all the Idols, demolished the curious Workmanship, carried away all that could be removed on Men's backs, and killed Cows within, which is the greatest Affront can be offered to those Idolaters.

18. Let us in a few words here perpetuate the Memory of two illustrious Actions; the one the effect of a sincere Love, the other of true Generosity. Among the Prisoners taken at *Coscóre*, one was a Bride. As the Ships were ready to weigh Anchor, there ran suddenly into that where the young Wo-

man was a lusty Man, and embracing her, and she him, they said many words not understood. By the help of an Interpreter it was known, that that Man was the Bridegroom, who being abroad when the Bride was taken, came to be a Slave with her rather than live without her. *And, she said, That since he by that demonstration of Love had made her happier than all the Chingala Women, (for they were of those People) she esteemed her Slavery rather a Blessing, than a Misfortune.* Sousa hearing hereof, resolved not to part such real Lovers, and taking hold of both their hands, said, *God forbid two such Lovers for my private Interest should be made unhappy, Love has sufficiently captivated you, I freely give you your Liberties.* Then he ordered them to be set ashore; but they two seeing his unexpected Bounty, requited it by despising their Liberties, and replied, *They only desired to be his, and die in his Service.* They lived afterwards in Columbo, where the Man on sundry occasions faithfully served the *Portugueses*.

19. The Viceroy careful of the security of Columbo, sent to the Relief of it Emanuel de Sousa Continno, and D. Paul de Lima. Scarce did Raju see Sousa enter that Port, after he had ruined all the Coast and the great City *Chilao*; and was informed, that D. Paul was coming, some of his Ships being already in the Port, but despairing of Success when the Besieged least expected it, he decamped, and began to march away.

20. Yet our Men, not to suffer him to go quietly away, fell upon his Rear, and in several Skirmishes cut off many of his Men. During this Siege, some say he lost 10000 Men, others not above half the Number. Many Towns, Cities, Villages, and Ships, were burnt and destroyed. The Cannon, Prisoners, and other Booty taken, were considerable. This rendred *Raju* very contemptible in the Eyes of those Princes who waited the Success of his Undertakings. On our side were killed 140 Men, 30 of them *Portugueses*. Of the Sickness before-mentioned died 500.

21. *D. Paul* came the day after the Siege was raised. Eight days were spent in leveling *Raju's* Works. They repaired the Damage done to the Fort, and furnished it with 600 Men and Ammunition.

22. The Viceroy, after receiving the joyful News of this Victory, and honouring *Emanuel de Sousa* and *D. Paul*, died of a violent Sickness in the beginning of *May*. He was little of Stature, but Graceful, Courageous, Prudent in Counsel, and of great Authority, a good *Latinist*, and *Italian*, and so addicted to Poetry, that he writ good Verses, a lover of Justice, and free from Avarice. The Fault laid to his Charge is, that he suffered himself to be governed by one less capable of Government than himself. He was the 15th Viceroy, and 32d Governour, for the space of almost four Years, the 2d of the Name, and 5th of the Surname.

## C H A P. VII.

*The Government of Emanuel de Soufa Coutinno, from the Year 1588, till 1590.*

1. **T**HE Viceroy being dead, and Patents of Succession opened, they first appointed *Matthias de Albuquerque*, who was gone for *Portugal*; the second, *Emanuel de Soufa Coutinno*, then present, who took upon him the Government, and was well qualified for it, as being very brave, and well experienced in the Affairs of *India*.

2. Soon after arrived 5 Ships from *Portugal*. *D. Paul de Lima*, weary of the Toils of War, and much more troubled that he was so ill rewarded, resolved to return to *Portugal*.

3. The Ships that were homeward bound, being dispatched, *D. Paul* embarked in that called *The St. Thomas*, whereof *Stephen de Vega* was Captain. On the Coast of *Natal* she sprung aleak in the Stern, and a Storm raging she could not be kept above Water, though they threw over board all the Riches that was in her.

4. The Boat being lanced, all strove to perish in it, because they would have it hold all that the Ship contained. Several were killed upon this occasion, and *D. Paul* standing on the side with his Sword drawn, could



no way prevent it. At length, those that the Boat could not contain returned to the Ship. The Women were let down, and almost drowned before they were taken in, because it could not come to the Ship's side. Dr. *Joaquim de Mendica* going in to it, left behind a Daughter but two Years old, and calling for her afterwards, could not get her, because the Nurse would not let the Child go unless they would take her with it.

5. The Boat was not far from the Ship when they saw it swallowed up by the Sea. It was yet worse, that being over-loaded with 120 Persons, and there being no other Remedy left, they were forced to throw some into the Sea, who immediately sunk. The Boat came to the Shore.

6. Ninety eight Persons, Men and Women, landed, several of them Gentlemen of Note, their Wives, and some Friers, one of which after having confessed, the People in the Ship would have stayed to die with them, that he might be aiding to them in that last hour. They marched in good order, a Frier going before with a Crucifix on high. The Women put themselves into Men's Habit after the *Indian* manner, that their Coats might not be a hinderance to them in going.

7. The Place where they landed, by the *Portugueses* is called, *The Country of the Fummas*, by the Natives of the *Macomates*, being inhabited by *Cafres* of this Name. It is in the Latitude of 27 deg. 20 min. beyond the River of *Simon Dote*, 50 Leagues South of the

the Bay of *Lorenzo Marquez*. All the Land of the *Fumas* belongs to the King of *Virangane*, and runs 30 Leagues up the Inland, bordering on the South with the Country of *Mocafapata*, the King whereof extends his Dominion to the upper part of the River *St. Lucia*, in the Latitude of 18 deg. 15 min. and to the Kingdom of *Vambe*, that contains a great part of *Terra del Natal*. From hence to the Cape of *Good Hope* there are no King, but *Ancozes*, or Lords of Villages. Next the Kingdom of *Virangane*, is that of *Innaca*, towards the N.E. to the Point of the Bay *S. Lawrence*, in 25 deg. 45 min. of South Latitude, and has two Islands opposite to it called *Choombone* and *Sotimuro*, the last not inhabited is the receptacle of the *Portugueses* that resort thither to buy Ivory. About the Bay many great Rivers fall into the Sea, as *Beligane*, *Mannica*, *Spiritu Santo*, *Vumo*, *Anzate*, and *Angomane*. At *Vumo* died D<sup>a</sup> *Leonor* and her Children, and *Emanuel de Sousa* was lost. *Anzate* runs along the edge of vast inaccessible Mountains covered with Herds of Elephants, the People of a Gigantick Stature. In the Latitude of 25 degrees the River *De los Reyes*, or *Del Oro*, falls into the Sea, West of which are the Kingdoms of *Innapola* and *Mannuca*. From this place to Cape *Corrientes* the Sea makes a great Bay, along which inhabit the *Moeranges*, notable Thieves. Opposite to the Point *St. Sebastian* are the Islands of *Bazaruta*, and not far from it the Kingdom of *Innabuze*, that reaches to the River *Innarigue*; then that

Chap. VII. *The Portugues Asia.*

that of *Pande*, bordering on the other *Mounibe*, which extends to that of *Zavara* in the Inland. Near these are the Kingdoms of *Gamba* and *Mocuraba*, next to it is *Cape Corrientes*.

8. After suffering much Hunger, Thirst, Weariness, and being persecuted by Thieves, they came to the Town of the King of *Manica*, by whom they were courteously received, and entertained; he offer'd them to live in his Town, or in the Island (where we said before the *Portugueses* used to reside, during the time of their stay) till such time as *Portugues* Merchants came thither. They accepted of the Island, where some died. Being ill accommodated there, they passed over in Boats to the other side of the Continent, and in the Passage were parted. Some few got to the Fort of *Zofala*, others to the King of *Innaca's* Town, where were some *Portugues* Traders, who had also suffered Shipwrack, here after enduring great Hardships, many died.

9. *D. Paul de Lima* ended his Days, and was there buried on the Shore. Such as escaped Death a long time after went over to *Goa*. Among these were three Women, *Donna Mariana*, *Donna Joanna Mendoca*, who after led a solitary Life, and *Donna Beatrix*, Wife to *D. Paul*, who carried his Bones to *Goa*, then went to *Portugal*, and Married again at *Oporto*.

10. Let us return to *India*. *Mir Alibet* encouraged by his Success in the Year 1587, set out the beginning of this Summer from  
*Meca*

*Mossa* with four Gallies, and the Vessel he had taken from *Rocque de Brito* at *Lamo*. He anchor'd off of *Melinde*, and was obliged to remove the first Night by *Matthew Mendez de Vasconcelos*, who commanded on that Coast. Our Governor, *Emanuel de Sousa Continno*, understanding this Pyrate was a broad, sent against him his own Brother *Thomas de Sousa Continno* with 900 Men in 20 Vessels of several sorts.

11. After a troublesom Voyage he arrived at *Mombaca* in February, where *Mir Alibet* had already fortified himself. Our Fleet passed through the Enemies Fire up the River, took the four Gallies, killed above 70 *Turks*, released many Christians, and took many Prisoners, and 30 Pieces of Cannon.

12. The *Muzimba's* at this time were on the other side ( in such Numbers as shall be related in the Year 1593 ) intending to kill and plunder the Moors of *Mombaca*. Having from thence with admiration beheld what the *Portugueses* had done, their Commander sent to *Thomas de Sousa* to desire him, That since the *Portugueses* were Gods of the Sea, and he of the Land, and they had done their Work, they would give him leave to begin his. *Sousa* consented, and they entring the Island, killed the *Moors* and *Turks*, who from the City fled to the Woods. Many fled to the Ships and were taken in, the rest were cut in pieces to be eaten by the *Muzimbas*. Among those that preferr'd Captivity before Death, was *Mir Alibet*, and a Son and Brother of the King of *Qua-life*.



13. *Sonsa* went over to the Island, the King whereof had been a Principal Actor in this Revolt, and being now in Arms refused to come to him ; but *D. Bernardin Coutinho* with only one Souldier ran up to the King at the Head of his Men, and threatening to stab him if any one stirred, brought him away. He, the King of *Qualife's* Brother, and two Governors of *Pate* were beheaded. The King of *Sio* was put to the Oar, the rest were all fined. Then our Commander passed over to the Island *Mandra*, the People of which Place had told some *Portugueses*, that only the Sun Beams could enter there. Yet the Island and Town were entred, the one wasted, the other levelled with the Ground.

14. Thus *Sonsa* brought all that Coast under Subjection, and was received at *Goa* with great applause. *Mir Alibet* was brought to *Portugal* where he died a Christian.

15. About the end of the Year arrived in *India* five Ships from *Portugal*.

16. It is not my Intention to relate only what is honourable of the *Portugues*, I will here set down four ridiculous and destructive Actions of theirs. The first was thus : The King of *Banguel* our Friend, desiring to destroy a Wood belonging to an Enemy of his, desired our Admiral of the Coast of *Calicut* to assist him with 300 Men, to guard those that cut down the Wood. They were sent, and instead of securing him, so dispersed themselves in the Wood, that the Enemy taking the advantage cut them all off. The second ;

second; A Portugues Galley meeting some Pirats of *Cangate* pursued them with Scoffs, scorning to take up Arms against them, and they turning upon the Galley entred it, and put all the Men to the Sword.

17. The third; The Admiral that was so unfortunate in the Red Sea in the Year 1586, having now taken a rich Ship of *Meca* and killed the Captain, order'd the Moors in her (as if it had been one of his Gallions) to follow the Admiral's Light. They as soon as it was night fled, and he being ashamed to be so deceived, endeavoured to excuse himself by saying, The Jesuits had advised him so to do, as if that were any Justification of his Folly. The fourth; Seven hundred Portugueses from *Chatigam*, took a Town, and being in it, a Cannon that was hid accidentally took fire, and they without examining further, fled to their Ships in such a Consternation, that one single Moor durst follow them throwing of Stones.

18. Two of our Gallies going to *Chaul*, to bring an Ambassador sent by the *Mogol*, were set upon at the River of *Carapatan*, Eighteen Leagues from *Goa*, by a great Squadron of *Malabars*, commanded by the famous Moor *Castamuza*. After a tedious fight, the Enemy left them in such a Condition, that only their departure could have saved our Men, who may be said to have had the Victory, because they kept the Field.

19. In May 1591, *Matthias de Albuquerque* arrived in *India* alone, having set out of *Lisbon* with five Ships, four whereof were driven back to *Portugal*. He went to succeed *Emanuel de Sousa* with the Title of Viceroy. *Sousa* having given up the Sword, Embarqued for *Portugal* on the greatest Ship that had ever been seen on the Ocean, and vastly Rich, and was cast away on the Sands of *Garajao*, nothing that was in the Ship being saved. This Ship made up the number of 22 lost in this Voyage between the Years 1579, and 1591, a great loss for so short a time, and may be attributed to two Causes, the over-loading, and making them too big, both faults proceeding from Covetousness.

20. In fine, *Emanuel de Sousa Coutinho* was born in the Village *de los Arroyos*, in the Diocess of *Lamego*, and was a Gentleman, might make the Place of his Birth honourable. He was the 33th Governor, first of the Name, and second of both Surnames.

## C H A P. VIII.

*The Government of the Vice-Roy Mathias de Albuquerque, from the Year 1591 till 1597.*

1. **M**athias de Albuquerque, a Gentleman well deserving this Command, was before named for this Government by the Patents of Succession, but being come for Portugal when they were opened was again here appointed with the Title of Vice-Roy. The Season was so far advanced, it was generally believed he could not go through, but he caused himself to be Painted on his Colours standing upon Fortune, and setting them up in his Ship, said, He would perform the Voyage in Spight of her, and did it. About the time he entred upon the Government, there sailed from Lisbon James Pereyra Tibao in a small Ship, and in December Ruy Gomez de Gram in a Galleon, and Gaspar Fagundes in a Caravel, who were to be in India about the middle of this Year we now enter upon, and about the end of it arrived there four Ships, that set out about the beginning.

2. The Vice-Roy understanding that the King of *Jasanapatan* assisted him of *Condea* against, and delighted in Persecuting such as imbraced the Christian Religion, calling himself King of Kings, sent against him *Andrew Furiado*, that great Commander, with 20 Sail.

2. The



3. Off of *Calicut* he met three Ships of *Mecca*, after a hot Engagement he sunk two and took one. Then he sailed in search of the Pirat *Cotimuzo*, Nephew and Admiral to *Cannale*, who with 14 (some say 22) Galleys, was become absolute on the Coast of *Cormandel*, had taken several of our Ships, and designed to take from us the Forts of *Columbo* and *Manar*. At the Mouth of the River *Cardiva*, *Furtado* met and fought him, and he having behaved himself well escaped by swimming, leaving us possessed of his whole Fleet. It is pity we want the Particulars of this fine Action.

4. Our Admiral after this Victory entring the Port of *Manar*, found there a great Fleet, and made himself Master of it, many of the Men swimming a-shore to join the King's Army. *Furtado* Lands and marches toward the Town, which was well fortified, manned and provided. He assaults the Works, and drives the Defendants into the Town, whence the King with severe Language made his Commander return to Charge the *Portugueses*, without hearkning to the Advice he gave him to shift for himself, because they would soon be in his Palace. The General returned, and was killed with all his Men. The *Portugueses* advancing, slew the King and his eldest Son, his younger Brother casting himself at *Furtado's* Feet begged his Life, which was granted him, and the Government of that Kingdom, till the Vice-Roy should order it otherwise. He was afterwards made King upon reasonable Terms. F 5.

5. At this time *Cunnale Marcar*, a Subject of the King of *Calicut*, successfully scoured that Coast with a good Squadron. Against him the Vice-Roy sent *D. Alvaro de Abranhez* with a considerable Fleet. *F. Francis da Costa* was then Prisoner at the Court of *Zamori*, who inclined that Prince to treat of Peace with the *Portugueses*, and to that effect sent the same Father to *D. Alvaro*, who was then in that Sea. *D. Alvaro* sent him to the Vice-Roy, the Peace was concluded to the content of both Parties, and *Zamori* not only released all the Slaves in his Kingdom, but encouraged the Jesuits to build a Church, himself laying the first Stone.

6. The beginning of this Year sailed from *Lisbon* four Ships, two whereof we shall see miserably perish, at the latter end of the Year following.

7. Let us go to *Moçambique*, where there happened a great loss. Our Commander of *Tete* had some Skirmishes with the *Cafres* our Enemies. *Tete* is a Fort of that Authority, that all the Neighbours for three Leagues about, divided under eleven Captains, obey the Commander of it, as each does their own, and upon the least signal given resort thither, to the number of 2000 armed Men. With these *Cafres*, and some *Portugueses*, he marched against *Quisura*, Captain of the *Munbo Cafres*, who was at *Chicarongo*. Six hundred of these gave him Battle, and were cut off every Man of them, whereby many Prisoners were released, who were to have been

been slaughtered like Cattle for the Shambles, theirs being of human Flesh. The Tyrant *Quisara* was also killed, who used to pave the way to his Habitation with the Skulls of those he had overcome.

8. *Andrew de Santiago*, Commander of the Fort of *Sena*, designing as much against the *Muzimba's*, found them so well fortified, he was obliged to send to *Peter Fernandes de Chaves*, Commander of *Tete*, for aid. *Chaves* marched with some Portugues Musqueteers and the *Cafres* under his Command; but the *Muzimba's* being informed of it, and fearing the Conjunction of those Forces, fell upon him so unexpectedly, that they slew him and all his Portugueses, being advanced before their *Cafres*, who thereby had time to retire. The Victors quarter'd the dead for Food, and returned with them to their Works. *F. Nicholas* of the Rosary, a Dominican, was reserved from this general slaughter, and after shot to death with Arrows.

9. Next day the *Muzimba's* marched out of their Works after their Leader, who had put on the *Casula*, or Vestment taken from the martyr'd Priest, and holding a Dart in his Right hand, and the Chalice in the Left. The Men carried the Commander of *Tete's* Head on a Spear, and the Quarters of the Portugueses on their Backs. *Andrew de Santiago* astonished at that Sight thought to retire by Night, but the Enemy falling upon him he was killed with most of his Men; so that in both Actions above 136 of them

were cut in pieces, to be buried in those Barbarians Bellies.

10. *D. Peter de Sousa*, Commander of *Mozambique*, under whose Jurisdiction *Tete* is, set out with 200 *Portugueses* and 1500 *Cafres*, to take Revenge on these *Muzimba's*. He batter'd their Works, but with no success, and endeavouring to Scale them was repulsed. Being likely to succeed, by raising Gabions as high as their Trenches, he was prevented by some cowardly *Portugueses*, who, to hide their fear, pretended the Fort of *Sena* was in danger. Our Commander drawing off to relieve it, was attacked by the *Muzimba's*, lost many of his Men, the Cannon and other Booty. Yet the Enemy offered a Peace, which was concluded.

11. Soon after one of these *Muzimba's* marching Eastward, gather'd 15000 Men, and killing all in his way that had Life, set down before *Quiloa*, which he entred by the Treachery of one of the Inhabitants, and put them all to the Sword.

12. This done, he caused the Traytor and all his Family in his presence to be cast into the River, saying, It was not fit such base People, who betrayed their Country, should be spared, nor yet eaten, because they were venomous, therefore he cast them to be Food for the Fish. So odious is Treason even among Barbarians. He designed to have done the same at *Melinde*, but that King, assisted by 30 *Portugueses*, withstood him till 3000 of the *Mossagnejo Cafres* coming to the Relief of *Melinde*, the *Muzimba's* were



were so slaughtered, that of all that Army only 100 escaped with the general, after they had ravaged 300 Leagues. Behold the Chalice of this *Muximba*.

13. *Matthew Mendez de Vasconcelos* by force of Arms re-established the King of the Island *Pemba*, expelled by his Subjects; and they soon after, provoked by the Villanies of the *Portugueses*, forced him and them to fly to *Mombaca*, after having killed many, and deprived the rest of the hope of ever returning to that Island.

14. Let us return to *India*. *Melique* had a City opposite to *Chaul*, and of the same Name, full of *Moors*, and of great Trade as being a good Port, and famous for weaving of Silks. The Commander of it was an Eunuch, once a Slave to the *Portugueses*, now to *Melique*. This Man posted himself on that noted Height, called *Morro*, with 4000 Horse and 7000 Foot. *Morro* is a Promontory over the Sea, and this runs down to the Shore of *Chaul* which lies to the Northward of it, the River running between them.

15. They terrified the *Portugueses* of *Chaul*, and destroyed them with 65 large Cannon they played from that Elevation. This motion was made by *Nizamaluco* contrary to the Peace established when *Francis Barreto* governed, and he justified it with Complaints against *Matthias de Albuquerque*.

16. This Siege was commenced in *April*, when Winter begins, at a time the *Moors* infested the Lands of *Bacaim*, and some Horse, those of *Chaul*. Small Vessels did great harm along the Coast, but much more was sustained in the City from the Cannon. Then came 14 *Mogols* to be present at the taking of the *Portugueses*, which they held as a thing certain, but being assaulted by some of our Men, 9 were killed, 2 taken, and the other 3 fled. The Eunuch *Tahadar* escaped being taken, and died of his Wounds, as did a *Turk* that succeeded him in the Command. After him, that Post fell to *Faratecan*.

17. He with continual Batteries gave our Men no respite. About 1000 withstood his Power, till D. *Alvaro de Abranches* brought 300 from *Bacaim*, and another 200 from *Salsete*. They now made up 1500 *Portugueses*, and a like number of such faithful Slaves, that they received the Wounds themselves to protect their Masters. Having appointed a day to attack the Enemy, they all confessed themselves, and then went up the River in several Vessels.

18, The *Portugueses*, beyond all expectation, made their way to the Plain on the top of the Promontory, and there the Fight was renewed. Ten Elephants being turned loose, a Soldier of ours gave one such a cut as made him run back, trampling his own Men till he fell into the Ditch, making us a Bridge to pass over. Another Elephant made way to a Wicket, the *Portugueses* entered

tred, and found so many dead, as were a stop to them from killing others.

19. Some Accounts say, 10000 were slain, others make them no less than 60000. *Fara-tecan*, his Wife, and Daughter, were taken; he became a Christian before he died, as did his Daughter, and came to *Portugal*; his Wife was Ransomed. Only 21 *Portugueses* were lost. There were taken a great quantity of Ammunition, many Horlès, 5 Elephants, and 75 extraordinary Pieces of Cannon.

C H A P. IX.

*Continues and concludes the Government of Matthias de Albuquerque.*

1. **T**HE *Portugueses*, in hopes the Death of *Raja* might contribute towards recovering what they had lost in *Ceylon*, gave Advice thereof to the Viceroy, who sent thither *Peter Lopez de Sousa* with a good number of Men and Ammunition. This Commander made a halt at *Palnagure*, and ordered *Francis de Silva* to bring the Queen of *Candea*, whom he would put into Possession of that Kingdom. But *John Chingala*, who had usurped it, taking the advantage of *Peter* his ill Conduct, took him and almost 500 Men Prisoners, and cut off their Noses. The Queen was put in Prison, and

above 150 *Portugueses* suffered several sorts of Death.

2. *D. Hierome de Azevedo* succeeded *Peter Lopez* in this Command, and with 400 *Portugueses* fought 12000 *Chingala's*, but came off with great los. These Mutiniers were commanded by *Dominick Correa* a *Chingala*, who was afterwards taken, carried to *Columbo*, and there quartered.

3. Five Ships arrived now from *Portugal*, and then was first carried into *India* the Bull of the *Croisade*, whereof *F. Francis de Faria* a *Dominican* was Commissary.

4. The Ship *St. Albertus* sailing for *Portugal*, was cast away on the Coast *Del Natal*, some of the Men lost, the rest marched in a Body under the command of *Nunno Vello Pereyra*, suffering great Hardships to the River of *Lorenço Marquez*, where finding *Emanuel Malleyro* with a Ship, *Nunno* and most of the Men embarked and came to *Moçambique*. Those who were left behind travelled by Land, and forgetting their miserable condition, so provoked the *Cafres* with their Insolence, that they killed most of them.

5. *Nunno Vello Pereyra* embarked again on the Ship *Chagas*, commanded by *Francis de Melo*, and had no better fortune the second Voyage than the first. Near the Islands *Azores* three *English* Ships met, and after a bloody Fight, burnt them. Only 12 escaped, burning or drowning on Planks, among which were *Nunno Vello*, and *Blas Correa*; they were taken up by the *English*, carried into *England*, and ransomed.

6. The



6. The Annual Ship coming in *April* from *China* vastly rich, and being on the *Malabar* Coast almost in sight of *Goa*, was set upon by 14 Galliots of the Enemy. There were but 14 *Portugueses* in the Ship, 1594. who fought 3 days and 3 nights till they were all killed; then an Islander of *Java* going into the round Top from thence, with a Barrel of Powder set her a fire, so that the Enemy got little by her. A poor Comfort.

7. The Viceroy fitted out a Squadron of 18 Sail with 700 Men, and gave the Command of it to *Andrew Furtado*. On the first of *August* he met 3 Ships belonging to *Zamori* full of Riches, and People of both Sexes and all Ages, above 2000 of them were killed in Fight, the Ships taken, and the Booty was such, that a Servant happen'd upon 5 Bags of Pagods, a Gold Coin of the bigness of half a Royal Plate, but thicker, and worth a Crown. *Furtado* went on, and found the *Malabar* Fleet he went in search of in the River of *Cardiga*, which shunned not the Ingagement, but was totally defeated, and a great Booty taken.

8. Then he sailed for *Ceylon*, arrived at *Columbo*, and secured that place, in great danger of utter Ruin by means of the *Portugueses*, who were at Variance among themselves, and mutinied against their Captain. This done, he returned with fresh Honour to *Goa*.

9. Now

9. Now arrived 3 Ships from *Portugal*, and found another beautiful one built, called *The Mother of God*, to return with them, which was lost on the Coast called *Desierto de la Esthiopia Oriental*, between *Magadaxo* and the Island *Zocotora*. Many of the Men were drowned, and more perished with Hunger and Thirst ashore: Only 16 escaped, enduring such Miseries, they often envied the Happiness of the Dead.

10. I find not any account of the Occurrences of this Year, only that about the end end of it came 5 Ships from *Lisbon*, and in one of them *F. Alexim de Meneses*, of the Order of *St. Augustin*, who went to succeed *F. Matthew* in the Archbishoprick of *Goa*.

11. About this time the Religious of *St. Deminick*, to secure the Preaching of the Gospel in their District, raised a Fort at *Solor*, which grew so considerable, it was afterwards found convenient to send a Commander thither. The first, or among the first, were *Antony de Vellegas*, and *Antony de Andria*, who put to the Sword many of the Natives that had killed some Religious Men. This Punishment, in stead of Amendment, made them worse, for two years after conspiring together, they agreed to kill the Commander and Friars. They fell furiously upon the Town and Fort, in the Town they did much harm, the Commander withdrew himself out of the Fort, and could not be found. They imagining he had forsaken it,  
en.

Chap. IX. *The Portugues Asia.*

75

entred, and *Andria* with a few *Portugueses* coming upon them through a private Door they knew not of, killed most of them.

12. A Galley and five other Vessels of ours cruizing off Cape *Comori* to secure our Traders from *Coromandel*, were so surpris'd by the *Malabars*, that they entred and burnt the Galley. The 5 Sail that were at some distance coming up time enough to have taken the Enemies Vessels, suffered them to go away without molestation.

13. On the 5th of *February* happened the Death of the 7 *Franciscan* Martyrs of *Japan*. They suffered at *Nagasaki* under the cruel *Cambaco*, in revenge 1596. for the Numbers they had converted. Their Names were, F. *Peter Baptista* the Commissary, F. *Martin* of the Assumption, F. *Francis Blanco*, and the Brothers, *Philip* of *Jesus*, and *Francis de Barrillo*, and *Gonzalo Garzia*, with 20 *Japonneses*, among which were 3 Brothers *Jesuits*, and 3 Children, *Thomas*, *Antony*, and *Lewin*. They were Crucified, and then shot with Arrows.

14. On the Coast of *Malabar*, between the Cities of *Goa* and *Cochim*, 77 Leagues from the one, and 33 from the other, is the little Port of *Pudepatam*, within which the Creeks form a *Peninsula*, joyning to the Land on the South side. On the North of it are the *Ariores* or Lords of *Baragare* and *Motonge*. They are all divided by a Rivulet, and towards the East a River falls there from the Mountain Gate, and another called *Capocape* on the South. The Moor *Pate Mar-*

as perceiving how convenient a place this was to shelter Pirats that might scour all that Coast, obtained Leave of Zamori, whose Subject he was, and the *Peninsula* his, to build a Fort there.

15. He went over thither with his Kindred and Followers, and began to raise a square Fort on the East Point of it. From hence he began to make War upon us, taking many of our Ships richly laden. He assaulted the Village of *Tana* in the Island *Salsete* near *Bacaim*, and carried away a rich Booty, taking the opportunity of doing it, when those who should defend it were at the Devotions of the Holy Week.

16. *Mabomet Cunnale Marco* succeeded him in the Sovereignty of that Fort, finished and increased it; and foreseeing the *Portugueses* would seek Revenge, he fortified the Town (called also *Cunnale*) by Sea and Land. On the Land side he made a deep Ditch with double Trenches 2 Yards and a half thick from Sea to Sea. At distances he raised Towers that flanked the Work, and on the Towers (by them called *Zarames*) planted small Cannon. Between the two Creeks he built a strong Wall which secured the Town, with two Towers, one at each end, and along the Sea-shore stuck *Pallsadoes*, where were also two *Bastions*, one greater than the other, planted with gross Cannon to secure the entrance of the Harbour, which besides was made very difficult even to small Vessels by Masts strongly chained together.



17. Being thus secure, he took upon him the Style and Title of *King*, and carried on his Uncle's Design against the *Portugueses* with greater success. He took one of our Gallies, a Ship coming from *Ghina*, and many lesser Vessels, assisted the Queen of *Olaba* when she revolted, and *Melique* at the last Siege of *Chaul*, and now robbed not only the *Portugueses*, but the *Malabars* also, filling his *Peninsula* with Riches.

18. Our Viceroy concerned at the increase of his Power, resolved towards the end of his Government to weaken it, and by *D. Alvaro de Abranches*, Admiral of that Sea, advertised *Zamori*, how that Pirat was equally prejudicial to him as to the *Portugueses*, and therefore it would be convenient they should both joyn to extirpate him. That Prince being made sensible of this Truth, a new Peace was concluded, and they agreed, That he by Land, and the *Portugueses* by Sea, should joynly undertake the expulsion of *Cunnale*, and razing the Fort. Both Parties provided for this Expedition, when a new Viceroy coming, the prosecution of it was carried on, as shall be seen in his Government.

19. *Matthias de Albuquerque* was one of the most deserving Men that arrived to this Command, as well for his Fortune and Valour, as his Prudence and Justice. In the Treasury he left 80000 Ducats in Money, and Jewels of *Ceylon* of great value. He thought no body could cheat him, and a Soldier to undeceive him received his Pay  
three

three times in three several Shapes, and by as many Names. *Mambin* afterwards hearing of it sent for him, and was kind to the Man, advising him to use that Art no more.

20. He was of a middle Stature, lame of one Foot, but not lame in Manners, being as much a Christian as a Gentleman, of Viceroy's the 16th, of Governours the 34th, first of the Name, and second of the Surname.

## CHAP. X.

*Of the Propagation of the Gospel in the Empire of China during these later Years.*

1. **T**HE manner of the introducing and propagating the Gospel in *China* from the Year 1580, till 1600, was so remarkable and worthy of memory, that tho I descend not to the Particulars, I cannot but give some general Account of it.

2. Some Religious Orders had with Courage and Profit laboured therein before the Holy Society of *Jesui* appeared in *India*. The first that set foot there was the Order of the most *Holy Trinity*, in the Person of *D. Vasco de Gama* his Confessor, who (as is before said) was of that Congregation. The second was that of *St. Francis*, and the third of *St. Dominick's*, who trampling all Difficulties,

culties, sowed the Doctrine of Life there, watering it with their Blood. Afterwards some Secular Priests, and even Lay-men, made themselves famous by this Spiritual Work.

3. This was the Estate of Christianity in *Asia*, till its new Apostle St. *Francis Xavierius* came thither, who from the Year 1541, till 1552, never ceased Preaching to those People, and died in the Island *Sancham*, with an ardent desire of entering *China*. By his Death, the design of instructing the *Chinese* was laid aside till the Year 1580, when *F. Alexandrinus de Valiniano* an Italian, and Visitor of the Society in *Asia*, undertook it, notwithstanding all the Difficulties that obstructed.

4. None of the smallest was the hardness of the *Chinese* Language, more uncouth to us than all the others of *Asia*. Yet at length a few attained some knowledge of it; and the first that set foot in *Quanton*, was *F. Michael Rogerius* a Neapolitan, on pretence of Administring the Sacraments to the *Portugueses* who Traded there, and by this means converted some of the Natives, who went over to *Macao*, where for their better Instruction was erected a sort of Seminary near to the House of the *Jesuits*.

5. *Valiniano* considering the greatness of the Difficulties, was resolved to desist, but God prevented the execution of this Resolution. This Language, at first so difficult, was afterwards the best spoke and writ by these Fathers, and other Obstacles, though  
not

not removed yet, began to appear less terrible. By order of the Visitor *Valiniano*, who resided at *Japan*, there came from *India* to *Macao* *F. Matthew Rivius* an *Italian*, to assist *F. Michael Rogerius*. They founded a Confraternity in that City for such *Japoneses* and *Chinese*s as were converted, calling it, *The Sanctuary of Jesus*. Other Fathers resorted thither, and among them *F. Francis Pafius*.

6. This was the posture of Affairs, when the Viceroy of *Xanking*, for his private Interest, sent for the Bishop and Governor of *Macao*. The one sent *F. Rogerius*, the other *Matthews Penela*, with a Present which satisfied him. *F. Rogerius* returned thither again with *F. Plafius*, and presenting the Viceroy a Striking Watch, and Triangular Glass which shews Things of several Colours; the Novelty of these Things so pleased him, that he gave them leave to build a Church and House in the Suburb, where he entertained them kindly. But after 4 Months, a new Viceroy succeeding, they were forced to return to *Macao*, where *Plafius* died.

7. The new Viceroy sends for the Fathers, the same *Rogerius* and *Matthew Rivius* go to him, and return without any Success, but with much Trouble. In *May* they are again sent for to *Xanking*, whither they came in *November*, 1583. are kindly received, and have a pleasant Place assigned them without the City to build.



8. It is remarkable, that when these Religious Men were banished this City, they left an Altar-Stone in the custody of *Nicho Chus*, a Youth well inclined to Christianity; at their return they found it decently placed in a Room with Perfumes burning before it, and over it a Board with these Words, TIEN CHU, that is, *To the Lord of Heaven*. Here the Religious, for this strange Accident, said Mass, till their Church was made ready.

9. The Fathers, to be the more acceptable, put on the *Chinese* Habit, and named God in their Prayers by that Title they had seen on the Board, which much pleased the Natives. Many of the Gentry and Learned Men began to Reverence the Images of *Christ*, and the blessed Virgin; they began to give ear to Matters of Faith, printed and dispersed among the People the Ten Commandments, highly approving of them, supplied the Church with Lights and Perfumes, and gave Alms to the Fathers.

10. The first baptized was a sick Man of mean condition. The Christian Doctrine was printed after their manner, and dispersed through the whole Province with no small Reputation for the great Titles the Viceroy bestowed on the Authors of it.

11. *F. Rogerius* now went to *Macao*, to seek some Relief to the great Poverty that place was in. Mean while the *Chinese* changing their humours, began to slander the Fathers, and often threw Stones at their House. *F. Matthew Rivius* was carried be-

G

fore

fore the Supream Court, he carried his Sleeves full of the Stones had been thrown at him, and letting them fall at the Judges Feet, so mollified him, that he caused the Accuser to be whipped, and ordered on severe Penalties no Wrong should be offered the Fathers. *Rivius* was skilled in the Mathematicks, and made Maps and Dials, all pleasing and new there, particularly seeing so many Countries in the World to them unknown, as believing there was nothing beyond *Asia*. This Novelty attracted People from very remote Parts to behold it, and proved a great Motive to incline them to receive the Faith.

12. F. Rector *Francis Cabrall*, Superintendent of this Mission, came from *Macao* to visit this new Colony of the Church. He found more Fruit than was expected, and baptized the first Converts, among which a learned Man of the Province of *Fokien*, whom he called *Paul*, and another *John*, which was he that with such Reverence kept the Altar-stone aforementioned.

13. The Visitor *Valiniano*, for joy of this Success, made this Mission Independent of *Macao*, subjecting it immediately to himself, and the Provincial of *Japan*. D. *Duarte de Meneses*, then Viceroy, settled an Allowance out of the Custom-House of *Malaca* upon the Fathers.

14. F. *Almeyda* and *Rogerus*, having obtained leave, went to erect another House in the Province of *Chekiang*, where they immediately baptized an ancient Gentleman

tleman, Father to the Governor of *Xanquim*, and soon after others. This was in the City *Xanchin*.

15. But this lasted not long, for the Fathers were soon expelled. Those of *Xanking* were in danger, but got off, and their Accusers were punished. These religious Men considering, this Prosperity could not be lasting without the King's Authority, sent *F. Rogerius* to *Rome* to obtain a Letter and Present from the Pope for the King; but the Pope dying the Business was delayed, and *F. Rogerius* ended his days at *Salerno*, in the Kingdom of *Naples*. Mean while the Fathers at *Xanking* were not without Troubles, but still protected by the Viceroy; converted many People, till a new Viceroy coming they were banished, and all they had taken from them.

16. On their way to *Macao* they were overtaken by fresh Orders from the Viceroy; whereupon they returned to *Xanking*, and had a Place assigned them to settle at *Hanchen*. Not far from that City is a most delightful Plain along the side of a River, and in it a vast Temple and Monastery of 1000 Bonzos, called *Manhoa*, and yet the number of Idols exceeds that of the Bonzos, for only in one of 12 Apartments, into which it is divided, there were seen 500. These, as they call them, religious Men live there with their Wives and Children, and when they think fit, go out to rob. To this place were the Fathers led, that if they liked they might settle there, and were well received

by the Bonzos, but the design of the Religious was to live in the City.

17. The Fathers were admitted into the City with the general good liking of all People. They soon suffered by the Contagion of the Air, which infects the very Natives with a Disease like an Ague, yet escaped the danger. From *Macao* two young *Chinese* Converts were sent to be their Companions, who were afterwards the first of that Nation admitted into the Society.

18. They laboured with no small Fruit, some Persons of Note being converted. Among the rest, *Cuytaiso*, the Son of a great Man, having lost or spent his Fortune, came to *F. Rivius*, thinking he was a Chimist, and might teach him the way to make Gold, and being by him instructed, found the true Treasure of the Faith. The same happened to an ancient Gentlemen of almost eighty Years of Age.

19. A Persecution was now raised at *Hanchen*, and the Governor examining into it, decreed to punish the Causers of it, but pardoned them at the Intercession of *F. Rivius*. In the Year 1591 was converted a Rich Merchant, who long had consulted the Idols and their Ministers about the way to Salvation, and at length found it among the Jesuits. *F. Rivius* went with his Disciple *Cuytaiso*, and by his Perswasion to *Nanking* where he had innumerable Auditors, baptized six, left many many more in good Disposition. He had done much more here, but that he was



was sent for to *Hanchen*, whither he returned, and converting many, suffered another Persecution, but weather'd it.

20. Till the end of the Year 1594, our Fathers wore their own Habit, and shaved as in *Europe*; and then changed it for that used by the Lawyers, for three Reasons; first, to avoid being called *Bonzos*, for that those cloathed like them and shaved; secondly, to gain the better admittance to Magistrates, who familiarly receive none without that Habit; and thirdly, to please the People.

C H A P. XI.

*Continues the Subject of the Propagation of the Gospel.*

1. **A**Bout the middle of the Year 1595, *F. Matthew Rivius* set out for the City *Nanking* in Company of a Great Man. The Way was up great Rivers, in one of which the Vessels were sunk, and *F. Rivius* forced to swim for his Life, having lost his Companion *John Barradas*. His Design was to settle a Residence in that Court, where he found many Opposers, and among them a powerful Man who had pretended much Friendship.

2. He went to *Nancham*, the Metropolis of the Province *Kiangsi*, between *Nanking* and *Quantung*. Being there in despair of any Success, he obtained a Lodging, where

he said Mass on the Day of *St. Peter and Paul*, and afterwards leave to fix a Residence, whither resorted *F. John Soeyra* from *Macao*, and the Brothers *Francis Martinez* and *Sebastian Rodriguez* from *Hanchen*; with much trouble they founded a Church.

3. The Visitor *Valiniano* seeing how inconvenient it was the Affairs of *China* should have any dependance abroad, granted *F. Matthew Rivius* the full superintendence of them. He resolved again to attempt settling a Residence at *Nanking*. From hence he proposed to send advice of his coming to that King, with a Present of Things very common in *Europe*, though there much esteemed for their Rarity. These were Clocks much admired of the *Chinises*, for that they move of themselves. Triangular Glasses, that represent variety of Colours. A Harpsical. But what was more surprizing than all the rest, was the Learning of *F. Rivius*, his Art of Memory, his Maps of the World, his Understanding, Wit and Judgment.

4. There being no way to send the Present, it was agreed the Fathers should carry it themselves, going in Company of a Nobleman that Travelled thither. In the way to *Peking* they saw many Cities and innumerable Villages along the Banks of the Rivers up which they went. Being come to *Peking*, they spent a Month soliciting an Audience of the King, but without success.

5. *Rivius* with great trouble returned to *Suchen*, being sent for by his Disciple *Cui-tayso*. This is doubtless the most glorious City;

City in those Parts. It is built in a River, as *Venice* in the Sea, and is of great strength to prevent all Accidents. The occasion of sending for *F. Rivius*, was to fix a Residence there. The Viceroy of *Nanking's* leave was requisite for this undertaking: Both Master and Disciple take a Journey thither, and and the Viceroy grants leave to settle in both Places. Here *F. Rivius* disputed with a famous Bonzo, and overcame him even in the Judgment of his Adversaries.

6. The Court of Publick Works proposed to the Fathers to buy a House that had long stood empty because haunted by Devils, they did, and all the People was astonished to see that after their entrance the Fiends had forsaken it. They could not undertake any thing than at *Suchen* for want of more Fathers.

7. Still *F. Rivius* his Thoughts were bent upon *Peking*, to obtain the King's consent to proceed. Whilst he prepared for this Journey, the Faith considerably spread at *Nanking*. The first Baptized was a discreet old Man 70 Years of Age, of a Noble Family, who had an hereditary Military Command, his Sirname was *Chin*, and he was Christened by the Name of *Paul*. His Son, a Learned Man, followed the good Example, and was named *John*, then all their Family, and some Kindred.

8. On the 16th of *May* 1600, *F. Rivius* Embarqued the second time upon the River for *Peking*, with him went *F. James Pantoja* a Spaniard, called by a learned Man Golden

Hands, for the delicate Works he wrought, and the two Brothers *Sebastian* and *Emanuel*. At *Nanking* remained *F. Lazarus de Catania* and *B. John*.

9. Whilst they went up the River, the Viceroy of the Province of *Xangfi's* Wife dream'd she saw a Sovereign Deity with two Children. She concluded her Dream was expounded, when her Husband relating the Things contained in the Present, for the King mentioned a Picture of our Blessed Lady, with our Saviour and *St. John Baptist*. The Lady desiring such a Picture, and there being no Painter to Copy it, *F. Rivius* gave her a Copy he had. The Viceroy receiving it with respect, assured him he and his Family would always Reverence the Mother and Son.

10. At the City *Linchin* a covetous Eunuch, who was Receiver-General of the Revenue, called *Mathan*, imprisoned them in the Fort of *Tiensim*, seizing upon the Present they carried for the King, and all they had. After six Months confinement, an Order came from the King (without knowing who had procured it) that the Fathers should be sent to him. All things were restored them, and they arrived at *Peking* about the end of the Year 1601. The Present was publickly carried to Court, and the King as soon as he saw the Picture of Christ admiring it, said; This is the living God. Yet afterwards caused it to be removed out of his sight. The same happened with his Mother; nevertheless it was set in a decent place,



place, and honoured with Perfumes, and is said to be preserved in that Palace to this Day. A striking Clock was much admired; so several other things.

11. Afterwards they were sent for, a favourite Eunuch spoke to them in the King's Name; they gave him an account who they were, whence they came, and what they desired. He acquainted the King with it, and they were lodged in the Palace, in the Apartment of the Mathematicians, and nobly entertained. There they instructed some Men appointed by the King in the Motion of the Clocks, and how to keep them, and then removed to a hired House. The King saw them not, because he scarce used to see his own People, but to have some sort of sight of them, sent Painters to draw their Pictures. Having seen the Pictures he took them for *Moors*. *Pantoja* was again introduced into the Palace, to teach some Musicians to play upon the Harpsical.

12. Thus far were our hopes advanced, when the Fathers were imprisoned by the Court of Ceremonies, for presuming to reside there, without presenting themselves before their Tribunal. This confinement lasted but three days, because the King sent for them. Though he sent for them they saw him not, yet performed all the usual impertinent Ceremonies to his Throne as if he had been there. The Supream President of that Court more particularly examined *F. Rivius* who he was, whence he came, and what he and his Companions pretended at Court;

Court; and he being the most expert in the *Chinese* Language, in most lofty terms answer'd to all those Particulars, to the great admiration of the President and all the Auditory.

13. The King being informed hereof, granted the Fathers leave to live at that Court, and all the Courtiers favoured them, especially the Ministers of State and Mandarins. *F. Rivius* so far gained the favour of a Calao, the Supream Dignity in that Empire, that he treated him as his equal (a thing never used in that great Place) seated him at his Table, and gave singular attention to all he said, particularly in Matters relating to Religion. One of the things that most pleased him was, that Christianity allowed not of more Wives than one. Thus *Rivius* contracted Friendship with the President of the Supream Council, and soon after most of the Principal Men.

14. Thus with Divine and Royal Assistance the Faith was propagated at *Peking*, *Hanchen*, *Nanking* and *Nancham*. There were converted Mandarins, Lawyers and other Persons of Note; some with their whole Families; and the Society of Jesus, after 20 Years labour, in the Year 1601 was possessed of four Residences in *China*, one whereof at Court, which was to support all the rest.

15. *F. Nicholas Longobardo*, a *Sicilian*, who was Rector at *Hanchen*, suffered very much, but some Men of Note, especially one *Tauli*, pleading for the Fathers, the Storm was some.

somewhat appeased. But it broke out more furious at the Instigation of a Witch, who, there being a great Dearth, said, the Goddess *Quonbin* would not give Rain whilst the Fathers were there, and F. *Nicholas* was threatned with Death, who desirous to suffer Martyrdom, ran to the Place where they were threatening him. He finding those People disputing about the Rain, told them how vain it was to expect it from any but the God he preached ; and immediately there fell such abundance as refreshed the Fields, and quenched their Thirst after his Blood ; so that House for that time was restored to its former quiet. Let this for the present suffice touching the Conversion of *China*, till we have occasion to speak of it again.

---

*The End of the First Part.*





---

---

THE  
PORTUGUES  
ASIA.

---

TOM. III. PART II.

---

CHAP. I.

*The Government of the Viceroy D. Francis de Gama, Count de Vidigeyra, from the Year 1597 till 1600.*

**D**ON Francis de Gama Count de Vidigeyra arrived at Goa in May, having set out from Lisbon the Year before with five Sail, whereof only his Ship Winter'd at Mombacá. He carried himself from the beginning with such State, that he gained the general ill Will of all Men, notwithstanding in other things he endeavoured to oblige.

2. He disposed of all Places in the gift of the Viceroys to his own Creatures, who sold them to underserving Persons, whereby those who

who had merited them by their Service were put by their Right. Yet afterwards hearing the just Complaints made against this unjust Proceeding, he caused the Buyers to be refunded, and gave those Places to Men of more worth.

3. *Manasfinza*, the great *Mogol's* Favorite, marched to subdue the *Patanes* who were in Rebellion, because *Catula* King of *Orixa* having plunder'd and profaned a famous Pagod, they unexpectedly fell upon him, and killed his Son with 2000 Men. *Manasfinza* had with him 35000 Horse, 80000 Foot, many Elephants with Castles and great quantity of all other warlike Engines. At the City *Jassalor* all the Inhabitants, to the number 6000 fell furiously upon the Enemy, resolving to die, and ordering as soon as they were cut off, their Goods, Wives and Children should be burnt, that the Enemy might not possess their Riches or dishonour their Families. They did great Execution at the first onset, but were all cut to pieces, and there being no time to put in execution their design, *Manasfinza* entred *Jassalor* plundering the Riches, and ravishing Women; which struck such a Terror into the rest of the *Patanes* they all submitted themselves. Then marching towards the King of *Orixa*, and he not daring to stand a Battel freely offered Subjection.

4. In *Ceylon*, the Tyrant D. *John* King of *Candea*, taking the advantage of time when our General D. *Hierome de Azevedo* had dispersed his Men to refresh them, caus'd the

the King of *Uva* and the Princes of *Dinavaca* to join, and take the Field with 4000 Men, many Musketeers, and armed Elephants. With this force they marched towards our Fort of *Corvite* (six Leagues from *Ceitavaca*) where *Salvador Pereyra de Silva* commanded with 100 Men. *Silva* by the General's order chose some of his Men, and marched one Night with such a secrecy four Leagues to the Place where the Enemy was Encamped, that they sooner felt than heard him, killing many of their Men before they could handle their Arms. The Confusion was such they presently fled, he pursued them, slew above 1000, and carried away some Prisoners, Elephants and other Booty.

5. In the Summer D. *John*, takes the Field again with the King of *Uva* and *Simon Correa*, who being in Rebellion called himself King of *Ceitavaca*. He thought to draw our General D. *Hierome* out of his Works, by attacking our Quarters at *Mature*, where D. *Ferdinand* the Modeliar commanded. D. *Ferdinand* understanding the Enemy was near, thought to have performed such another fortunate piece of Service as *Salvador Pereyra* had done, but his Companion *Simon Pincham* prevented him, and after a desperate Fight, in which he was almost lost, obtained a Victory equal to that of *Pereyra*, and falling upon the Rebels in their Works killed most of them, so that the Flower of *Candea* fell this Day.

6. At the end of *May* died at *Columbo* the lawful King of the whole Island of *Ceylon*,  
D. *John*

D. *John Parca Pandar*, a Catholick and without Heirs. King *Philip* was with the usual Solemnity immediately Proclaimed King of the whole Island, and the Oath of Fidelity to him taken by all the Principal Men, as being appointed Heir by the last Will of the Deceased.

7. About this time came first into *India* the Scourge of the *Portugues* Pride and Covetousness; for in the Month of *September* News was brought to *Goa*, that the two first *Holland* Ships which durst cut those Seas, had been in the Port of *Titangone*, and were bound for the Island *Sunda*. The Viceroy having held a Council about this Affair, it was resolved to fit out a Squadron of two Galleons, three Gallies, and nine other Vessels, and the Command of it was given to *Laurence de Brito*, an ancient and experienced Captain deserving of greater Commands.

8. Three Ships arrived now from *Portugal*. That which had brought the Viceroy was ready at *Cochin* to return thither with them, and accidentally taking fire was burnt with all the Riches in her, amounting to a Million and half.

9. Not only Custom but Necessity now required the sending out the two usual Squadrons for the Coast of *Malabar* and the North; the design of the Northern Squadron shall follow; that of *Malabar* was to give a Check to *Zamori*, who not only winked at but went shares with the Pyrates of the *Fort Cunnale*. Among other Losses that of  
Captain



Captain *Alonso de Alvarado* and *Miró* was greatly assisted by the *Portuguese* Cape *Angola* with *two* Ships, and *two* other *eight* *Paraos* of *Indians*, who in his *own* *slain*, after having killed *100* of the *Enemy*. The Squadron the *Viceroy* appointed for that Coast, consisted of *four* Gallies, and *30* other Vessels, with almost *2000* *Spanish* Men, under the Command of the *Baron* *D. Luis de Gama*. They did not differ much in the same nature as has been related on the like Occasions, which obliged *Zouari* to incline to make War on *Cannale*, rather to avoid the harm we did him, than in observance of the Agreement before made.

The Squadron for the North consisted of *20* Ships commanded by *Luis de Silva*. He in hunting the *Pirates* he was in search of in the *Island* of the *Sanguet*, landed, and ravaged it for harbours of them. In the *River* *Chagwa* he found four *Paraos* of these *Pirates*, took two and sunk one, killing many of the *Men*. Of those who got ashore above *200* were taken, and being *Beheaded*, their *Heads* were set up at the Mouths of those *Rivers* to terrify their *Companions*. Near *Chani* he took a *Galliot*, and further on another, more properly a *Galley*, in which was the *Nephew* of *Cannale* with *200* Men, whereof *100* were killed, without the loss of one Man on our side.

II. The War continued at *Ceylon*. The Tyrant of *Candea* endeavoured to better his Fortune, by distracting us with several Bodies, of *3* or *4000* Men each. Our General

neral D. Hierome de Azevedo ordered *Salvador Perceira de Silva*, and *Simon Pinheiro*, with a few, but choice, Men to oppose him. They with singular success destroyed Towns, took Forts, slaughtered many People, (not without Cruelty to strike a Terror) and reduced all the *Corras* or Precincts that were in Rebellion to our Obedience.

12. The two *Holland Ships*, before mentioned, did some small Damage along the Coast of *Malabar*, and other places, till on that of *Malaca* they met 6 Ships coming out of the Port bound for *India*, and commanded by *Francis de Silva*. They engaged and fought all that afternoon, and part of the night. Next morning they fell to it again, and held it for 8 days continually, till the *Hollanders* finding themselves too weak, made for the Port of *Queda*, many of their Men being killed, and most wounded. There for want of Men they quitted the weakest Ship, and going all into the other, were cast away on the Coast of *Pegu*.

13. D. *Luis de Cerqueyra* Bishop of *China*, went this year to succeed D. *Peter Morcinez*, who died at *Japan*, that nothing might be there wanting towards the Spiritual Conquest for the lack of a Prelate.

14. With the Bishop D. *Luis* went F. *Alexander de Valiniano*. They were present at the Death of *Taicoxana*, Emperor of those Islands. Some time before his Death he had designed to cause himself to be adored as a God, and to this purpose to have his Images set upon Altars in the chief Parts  
of

## Chap. II. *The Portugues Asia:*

99

of certain beautiful Gardens in the Fort of *Tuximii*. But scarce had he fixed the place of his Adoration, when on the 20th of *July*, 1596. there appeared over the City *Meaco* a wonderful Blazing Star, then it rained Ashes and Sand, and there followed an Earthquake which threw down the Fort and Palace of *Tuximii*, and in other places many Temples of Idols, with great slaughter of People. The Sea breaking out, and overflowing for 20 Leagues towards *Miaco*, *Zifo*, and *Bungo*, drowned whole Cities and Towns, over-running the Tops of some Mountains like the general Deluge. Nevertheless after his Death he was adored, and Statues raised to him with the Title of *The God of War*.

---

## C H A P. II.

*Continues the Government of D. Francis de Gama Count de Vidigueyra.*

1. **Z**amori was now sufficiently incensed against *Cunnale*, who called himself *King of the Malabar Moors*, and *Lord of the Indian Sea*. It was not these Titles, or his Pride, or the Complaints of the *Portugueses*, that provoked *Zamori*, but that *Cunnale* had caused the Tail of one of his Elephants to be cut off, as also the Privy Parts of a *Nayre*, which were also fastened to his Mouth.

¶ 2

2. The

2. The *Portugueses* laying hold of this opportunity, offered their Assistance against that common Enemy, and blew the Coals of *Zamori's* Anger they saw already lighted. The Viceroy instantly fitted out some light Vessels, ordering *D. Ferdinand de Noronna* to lie with them before the Mouth of the Port of *Cunnale*, till a greater force could be sent to joyn, in order to assist *Zamori*, who was marching to besiege that place with 20000 Men, and some Cannon.

3. That which is properly called the Coast of *Malabar*, runs from *Cananor* to *Cochim* the space of 42 Leagues. Two to the little Island *Tremapatan*, opposite to which is the mouth of a good River, thence half a League to the River *Sal*, thence one and a half to that of *Maim*, one to the Town of *Comenna*, at a small distance those of *Motangue*, *Curiare*, and *Baregare*; then the River *Pudepatan*; two Leagues farther, the Town of *Tiracole*, two Leagues from *Cotulete*, a League from this the River *Capocate*, one farther *Pudiangare*, one thence to *Calecut*, two to the River *Cale*, two to the City *Pananor*, two thence to *Tanor*, and two more to *Paranora*, one more to the famous River *Panane*, thence nine to *Paliporto*, four to the River of *Granganor*, and five more to *Cochim*. At the mouth of the River *Pudepatan* is the Fort of *Cunnale*, seated in a square *Peninsula*, the length of the Sides about a Cannon Shot. Just within the Bar a Creek turns towards the South, good Vessels can go about half way up it, beyond that only  
Alma-



Almadies or Boats; the great River runs first towards the North-East, then turning to the South forms that *Peninsula*. Upon that turn of the River the Fort is built. The *Isthmus* is secured by a strong Wall about a Musket-Shot in length from the Creek to the River, which there opens and forms the little Island *Pinale*. We have already spoke particularly of the Fort, in general it was large, strong, well Manned, and stored with Cannon.

4. *Cunnale* was well provided, and had distributed the Posts to 1500 choice *Moors* well armed. Our small Vessels at the mouth of the River battered the Fort to keep the Defendants in action, that they might not be any hindrance to *Zamori* who was on the other side, taking up the Ground for his Army.

5. *D. Ferdinand* scoured the Coast, and taking some of the Pirats, hindred the resort of Provisions to the Fort. Now comes our Squadron commanded by *D. Luis de Gama*, Brother to the Viceroy, both unfortunate, the one in choosing, the other in being chose.

6. *D. Luis* his Squadron consisted of 4 Gallies, and 35 smaller Vessels, 10 more brought by private Gentlemen at their own charge, three full of Men and Ammunition sent by the City of *Cochim*. Besides, there were two large Barques with heavy Cannon to batter the Fort.

7. The King of *Cochin* seeing that great Power that was falling upon *Cannale* might be his Ruin, by entirely uniting *Zamor* and the *Portugueses*, gave out, That *Zamor* had agreed with *Cannale* to cut off all our Men at one stroke when they should be deepest engaged in the Assault. *D. F. Alencas de Alencas* Archbishop of *Goa*, who was there on his way to the Mountains of *St. Thomas*, at first was fearful, imagining this might be a faithful Discovery; but considering better, perceived it was the Politick Product of the King's Jealousie, answered the King modestly, diverting him from any other designs seeing this fail. He assured the City their Ships might safely set sail, yet sent Advice to proceed with Caution. All our Fleet now joyned, they found *Cannale* had added to the former Works a Line of Gallies on the edge of the Water under the Fort, imagining he might be attacked that way.

8. It was resolved in Council to enter the River, and draw up the Ships in a Line, with their Stems to the Shore, that they might cover the Men who attacked the Fort. This Resolution was sent to *Goa*, and approved of by the Viceroy, who ordered his Brother to put it in execution! He overpersuaded by some Gentlemen that sought his Disgrace, disobeyed, and carried the Attack by the side of *Ariole*, believing the entrance of the Bay might be fatal, and his Ruin lay in not entering it.

9. *Zamori*, who was battering the Town, desired some *Portugueses* might be sent him; *D. Luis* being suspicious of him demanded Hostages, which were presently sent, being 6 principal Men, and among them the Princes of *Tamor*, *Chale*, *Gaurine*, and the chief Judge of his Kingdom. The Hostages taken, 300 *Portugueses* were sent to him under the command of *Belchior Ferreyra*. On the 3d of May, at night, our Men began to land, *Luis de Silva* led the van with 600 Men, and among them the Major *D. Anthony de Leyva*. The Sign for both Armies to fall on, was a burning Lance. Before this was lighted, there appeared one in the Air, which running along swiftly, at last vanished in Sparks.

10. The Besieged took this for a good Omen, as the Besiegers for a bad. *Belchior Calaca*, who was to give the Sign with the Lance, mistaking the hour gave it too soon, and all began to be in confusion. For *Ferreyra*, who was in *Zamori's* Army waiting the Signal, as soon as he saw the Flame, fell on with his *Portugueses* and 5000 *Nayres*, and assaulting the Works, lost at the first onset 28 Men.

11. But *Luis de Silva*, though he was ready, seeing it was not past midnight stirred not then, which proved of ill consequence to the others, the Enemy not being diverted on this side. Towards morning he passed the Creek of *Balgupe* in 60 *Almadies* or Boats with 500 Men. *Benedict Correa* was the first that Landed, and was killed. *Luis*

*de Silva*, as soon as ashore, was slain by a Musket Shot. The Ensign *Antony Dias* concealed his Death, by stripping the Colours off the Staff, and covering him there-with.

12. Thus they landed without Colours or Commander. D. *Francis Pereyra*, who succeeded D. *Luis* in the Command, followed him also in Death. The next was the famous Major *Leyva*, and he seeing all lost, chose rather to die, than stain his Honour by flight; and having performed incredible Feats, was slain with many other Gentlemen that stuck by him.

13. F. *Francis Baptista* a Capuchin, who encouraged the Men, holding up a Crucifix till it was shot to pieces; after moistening it with Tears, bathed it with his Blood, being killed with it in his Arms. So *Luis Cardoso*, who getting from under a Vessel that overfet, upon the Keel defended his Companions that were swimming from the *Moors*.

14. Whilst those mentioned and many other Gentlemen died honourably, performing Actions beyond all belief, about 150 shamefully fled, many of them meeting Death, where they sought an Inglorious Life, no Perswasions being of force to bring them back. Doubtless these were some condemned Malefactors who were pardon'd on account to serve in this Expedition, for none are greater Cowards than infamous wicked Men. Our Commander in chief, who had left the Fleet to D. *Vasco*, and had posted himself on the other side the River,

op-



opposite to the Fort, running into the Water up to the Wall, spent himself, calling upon and encouraging the Men, but could send no Relief for want of Boats. So this proved the greatest Disgrace the *Portugueses* received in *Asia*, (next to that of *Ruy Gonzales de Camera* at *Ormuz*.) Three hundred Men were lost, the greatest part drowned, the others piercing up to the Fort, had burnt the Mosque, and part of the Town, and killed 500 *Moors* and *Malabars*, well revenging their Deaths. Among the Enemies Dead there was above 40 of Note.

15. The Commander in chief, *D. Luis*, resolved to retire to *Cochim*, and leave somebody to guard the entrance of the River, but no body would accept of that Post except *D. Francis de Sousa*, who perceiving some of his Men intended to forsake him and swim away, ordered a Boat to be brought to the side of the Galley for them, and said, *He would keep none by force, nor have them go away with danger.* This made them ashamed, and they all stayed, and he more by Policy than Force hindered the Vessels resorting with Provision to the Fort. *D. Francis* perswaded *Zamori* to assault the Town, believing the late Slaughter had so weakened the Defendants, it might be easily carried; and he, desiring to have all the Booty he supposed was within to himself, gave the assault with 20000 Men, but was repulsed.

16. This bad News being carried to *Goa*, Orders were sent to *D. Luis* for him to re-  
turn

turn to *Cannale*, and there settle a Peace with *Zamori* to his content, that he might not raise the Siege that Winter, but lie till our Fleet could return the beginning of Summer and take the Town. He returned, and *D. Ferdinand de Noronha* went to swear the Peace to the liking of *Zamori*. The first Article was, "That he should permit the Faith to be preached in his Kingdom and Churches erected. The Peace concluded, the same *D. Ferdinand* was left there with 12 Ships.

17. *D. Luis de Gama* returning to *Goa*, refreshed the ill-will all Men bore him and his Brother, because he was going to be Commander of *Ormuz*, which they looked upon as a Reward of his ill Success, whereas it was the King's Grant before he came from *Portugal*, whereof he could not be deprived without being found guilty of some Misdemeanour. To fix some Crime upon him, he was brought to a Trial, but acquitted.

18. About this time came to the City *Meco* a Spanish Vessel, commanded by *D. John de Samudio*, from *Manila*, he raised a Fort in the Port of *Pinal*, notwithstanding *D. Paul de Portugal*, who commanded there, opposed him. He protested against this Proceeding, and made use of Threats, but all to no effect.

## C H A P. III.

*Continues the Government of D. Francis  
de Gama Count de Vidigueyra.*

1. **T**HE *Hollanders*, in hatred to our new Prince, and desirous to purchase the Spices of *Asia* at a cheaper rate, resolved not to beg them any longer in *Portugal*, and to this effect set out, in the Year 1595, some Ships which were unsuccessful; yet this did not deter them, for in the Year 1597, they fitted out the first Squadron for this Voyage, and reaped the benefit of it in 1599. This Squadron consisted of 8 Ships, in which were 800 Men, and Provisions for 3 Years. Their Admiral was *Jacob Cornelius Neque* of *Amsterdam*, they set sail from that Port on the 13th of May, 1598. arrived at *Madera* on the 15th; on the 17th at the *Canaries*, where they took Wine; on the 23d at the Islands of *Cabo Verde*; on the 29th they were in the Latitude of 6 degrees, and passed the Line on the 8th of *June*; a wonderful swiftness, and to me incredible.

2. On the 24th of *July* they saw the Cape of *Good Hope*, where a violent Storm parted three of the Ships which arrived at the Island *Banda* the latter end of *April*. The others on the 24th of *August* discovered the Island *Madagascar*, and on the 30th Cape  
St. *Juan*

*St. Julian.* On the 20th of *September* they came to the Island *Cerne*, or *Cisne*, in 21 degrees of Latitude, and called it *Mauricia*. Here they found Tortoises of such a magnitude, that they carried two Men on their Backs, and Birds they killed with Sticks, which made them conclude it was not inhabited: At *Banda* they joyned the other three Ships. They loaded four which returned for *Holland*, the others steered for the *Molucas*.

3. On the 21st of *January* they discovered the great *Java*, and touched at the City *Tuban*, and on the 27th at the Port of *Madura*, an Island in 2 deg. 30 min. of South Latitude. There they endeavoured to Ransome some of their Country men, part cast away in their former Ships, and part secured for offering false Money; because the Natives demanded too great a Rate for them, they attempted to rescue them by force. In the fray, two Boats full of Men they would rescue were sunk, and at last they were forced to Ransome them. At *Amboina* they settled Trade. Two Ships returned to *Banda* erected a Factory, and loading Spice, arrived in *Holland* on the 20th of *April*, 1600. Those that were left at *Amboina* went to *Ternate*, were well received by the King, and loading Clove, returned home.

4. *D. Hierome de Azevedo* in *Ceylon* raising a strong Fort at *Manicavare* to be the nearer to the Kingdom of *Candea*, the Conquest whereof was his chief aim, so perplexed the Usurper, that he setting out several Bo- dies



dies with the King of *Uss* to distract our General, was in all places by him overthrown. More had been done, but that the Men mutinied for want, and dispersed themselves throughout the Villages for sustenance. Being refreshed, they returned to their Duty, and reduced all the *Carlas* to our Obedience, *D. Hierome* cutting off many Heads as a Punishment to them, and Terror to others. The Year following he obtained another Victory on the Borders of *Candea*.

5. *D. Alexius de Meneses* Archbishop of *Goa* was gone to visit the Christians, called of *St. Thomas*, who live dispersed about the Mountains of *Malabar* in *Malia*, *Turubuli*, *Masta*, *Barimena*, *Diamper*, *Pimienta*, *Tetemute*, *Parca*, *Paru*, and *Cartuti*.

6. Those Christians continued firm in the Faith till about the Year 750, though with some mixture of Errors. About the Year 810, came thither the second *Thomas*, (mentioned at the end of the second *Tome*,) repaired the Temples erected by the first, and restored the Doctrine. Thus it continued almost 100 Years, till about the Year 900 it was over-run with the *Nestorian* Heresie. In the Year 890 came thither from *Babylon* two *Caldeans*, called *Mar Xarfo*, and *Mar Prod*, who divided that District into two Bishopricks, and were ever after prayed to as Saints, till our Archbishop, suspicious of them, forbid it. After them came *Mar Joanne*, (sent by the *Greek Patriarch*,) who living at *Cranganor*, introduced the *Caldean*  
Bre-

*Brevolary*. His Successor was *Mar Jacob*, who died the Year 1500, and after him *Mar Joannate*.

7. Thus the Bishops and Heresies continued till the Year 1550, when Pope *Paul* the Fourth confirmed D. *John Bernardino* Patriarch of *Bibiopsis*, and *Simon Salazar* Bishop of *Cochermit*, the Metropolis of *Malaputania*; and *Mar Elias*, and *Mar Joseph*, confirmed by the Pope, the first as Patriarch of *Mussal*, and the others in their Suffragan Bishopricks, and ordered *Joseph*, who was Bishop of *Ninke* to go govern the Christians of *Malabar*, and the Bishop D. *Ambrose Manteceli* for his Coadjutor. Thus the Patriarchal Seat was divided into two, the one Orthodox at *Mussal*, the Heretical at *Atioch*. *Joseph* and *Ambrose* passed over to the Mountains of *Malabar*, where the latter would not follow the other, and after reading Divinity at *Goa*, died at *Cochin* in the Year 1557. D. *George Tennado*, Bishop of that place, perceiving *Joseph* spread the Poison of *Nestor*, caused him to be secured, and brought in Chains to *Portugal*, whence he returned to his Bishoprick upon promise of Amendment. He found *Mar Abraham* in his Place, being chosen in his absence by the *Thomites*. *Abraham* being Persecuted, went to *Rome*, and promising to reduce that People to Truth, got Pope *Pius* the Fourth his Breves as Prelate. Neither of them performed what they had promised, but continued in their Heresies.

8. Then

8. Then came *Mar Simon*, saying, *He was sent by the Patriarch of Babylon to succeed in that Bishoprick*. The Queen of *Pimienta* received and placed him at *Catase*, where he exercised the Episcopal Power; till being carried to *Lubon*, he went thence to *Rome*, and was condemned by Pope *Stuart Quintus*, as not being so much as a Priest, and a meer *Nestorian*. *Abraham* died, and his Archdeacon governed the Diocess, no *Babylonian* Bishop daring to come there. *D. F. Alexius* endeavouring to keep out such Heretical Prelates, and that was the occasion of this his Visitation.

9. This Prelate found, that amidst their other Errors they denied the Virginity of our Blessed Lady; rejected the use of Images, believed the Souls of the Just enjoyed not God till the General Judgment; allowed but three Sacraments, Baptism, Order, and the Eucharist; used, in stead of Confession, a Perfuming in the Churches; that their Consecration Wine was of Cocos; that their Host was a Cake with Oyl and Salt; that Priests were Ordained at 17 Years of Age; and Married after Ordination; that Fathers, Sons, and Grandsons, administered Sacraments in the same Church; that their Wives (called *Catolinas*, or *Cassaneras*, that is, Priests Wives,) wore a particular Mark to be known by; that in Matrimony they used no other Formalities but the consent of Parties, and the uniting the Couple by getting a Child; that Women observed the time of the Old Law to be Church'd; that

no

no Sacraments were administred *gratis*; that Holy Water was made with Dust of Frankincense, and some of the Earth where they believed St. Thomas had trod; that they used Sorcery and Witchcraft; and in fine, that all was Error and Confusion.

10. D. F. *Alexius* with great Labour and Toil convinced them of their Errors, and reduced them to receive the true Doctrine. Whole Towns were baptized, and submitted to the *Roman* See.

11. He held a Provincial Synod at *Diamper*, and all its Decrees were confirmed by the Pope, and *Francis Rodrigues* a Jesuit, who had assisted the Archbishop, was made Bishop of that Diocess. The Synod breaking up, D. F. *Alexius* visited all those Churches.

12. The Archbishop being in the Queen of *Changanate's* Country visiting the Church of *Talavaccare*, one of the ancientest in those Parts, (where they shewed him three Plates, on which were ingraven the Priviledges and Revenues granted by the King of *Ceylon* when the Babylonians *Xabro* and *Pro* built there) met *Topanata Pandara* King of *Gundara*, Neighbouring on that place, and presented him a Letter of King *Philip*, in which he granted him the Title of *Brother*, in regard he had allowed liberty for the Christian Religion in his Dominions.



13. Towards the End of this Year arriv'd in *India* eight Ships from *Portugal*, which brought the News of the Death of King *Philip*; five of them being ready to Sail the Year before, were detained because the Earl of *Cumberland* lay before the Mouth of *Lisbon* River with an *English* Squadron, till the Season was spent. One was lost on the *Parcell de Zofala*; another at her return fought two *Holland* Ships near the Island *St. Helena* and worsted them.

14. The Viceroy having dispatched the Homeward bound Ships and usual Squadrons, began to think of carrying on the War against *Cunnale*. There were Men enough, but they wanted a Commander; neither was such a one wanting, but that the Envy of the *Portugueses* endeavoured to rob *Andrew Furtado* of that Glory, or rather their Country of that Advantage.

15. At length they were forced to comply and employ him to recover our lost Reputation, for *Cunnale Marcar* proud of his late Success, had added to his former as vain Titles, calling himself, *Defender of Mahometanism, and Expeller of the Portugueses*. Many Princes began to have an Eye upon his Success; nevertheless *D. Antony de Noronna*, who lay before the Port all Winter, had perplexed him, taking several Vessels laden with Provisions, and killing above 100 of his Men that opposed him taking fresh Water.

16. The Fleet *Andrew Furtado* was to Command, consisted of 3 Gallies and 54  
I
other

other Vessels. By the way he diswaded the King of *Banguel* and Queen of *Olala*, who designed to assist our Enemy, from their Purpose, and cut off the Relief five Ships of *Meca* were bringing to him.

17. Our Commander being come to an Anchor in the Port of *Cunnale*, set forward to treat with *Zamori*, and he advanced to meet him on the Shore. The King was naked from the Waist upwards; about his middle a piece of Cloath of Gold that reached several times about him, and hung down to his Knees, fastned with a Girdle of the breadth of a Hand, of an inestimable value; his Arms cover'd to the Wrists with Gold Bracelets set with rich Stones, the weight of this Treasure was so great that two Men supported his Arms; about his Neck was an extraordinary rich Chain; in his Ears hung so many Diamonds and Rubies, as stretched them down with the weight; his Age was about 30 Years, his Presence very Majestick. A little from his side came the Prince with his Sword naked held up, behind him the Nobility, and somewhat nearer *F. Francis Rodriguez*. The King and *Furtado* embraced kindly, and all the Cannon of the Fleet was fired. Being come to the King's Tent, they were seated, and discoursed about the Affair in hand. *Furtado* at taking his leave, put a rich Collar about the King's Neck over the other, and they parted very amicably.

18. *Zamori* sent the Prince of *Tanor* and other great Men aboard the Admiral with  
full

full power to treat and conclude all things that were for the common Interest of both Parties. This done there arrived from *Goa* and other Places one Galleon, one Galley, eleven Ships and twenty-one other Vessels, with Ammunition, and 790 Men. *Furtado* went himself to view the Enemies Works, raised others, Planted his Cannon, and became absolute Master of the River. He caused some Outworks to be attacked, the *Moors* fled, but *Cunnale* coming in Person to second them, they made our Men give ground till *Furtado* landing came up with Sword in hand and renewed the Fight, here he was in great danger, but at length remained Victorious, killing 600 *Moors*. On our side were slain two Captains and nine Soldiers.

19. Fort *Blanco*, or the White Fort, was next assaulted with greater Bravery than Success. Here Captain *Andrew Rodriguez Palota* loosing nine Teeth by a Musket Shot, jesting said, *Doubtless the Moor knew I had no need of them*: Which he said in respect he was always so poor he wanted sustenance. *Cunnale* being in distress, bribed *Zamori* with great Presents to accept the Surrender upon Security of the Mens Lives. *Zamori* was yielding, and *Furtado* understanding it furiously assaults the Works; the King perceiving it, falls on on the other side with 6000 *Nayres*. The Works were entred, and the lower Town plundered and burnt. Batteries were raised against the upper Town

I 2

and

and Fort, and doing great Execution reduced the Defendants to despair.

20 In fine, *Cunnale* Surrendred upon no Condition but Life, and marched out with a black Veil on his Head, carrying his Sword with the point down, which he delivered to *Zamori*, and he to our General. *Cunnale* was about 50 Years of Age, of a low Stature, but well shaped and strong. He and his Nephew *Cinale* and 40 *Moors* of Note, were sent Prisoners aboard the Fleet and well treated. *Furtado* dealt generously with *Zamori*, for it being one of the Articles of Agreement, that the spoil should be equally divided, he said it was to be understood only in relation to Artillery, and appeased the Soldiers, who expected that Reward of their Labour. The Fort and all other Works being levelled with the Ground, *Furtado* returned to *Goa*.

21. As soon as some of the Prisoners were set ashore, they were torn to pieces by the Rabble. How can they who are guilty of such Inhumanities call the much more honourable *Indians* Barbarians. *Cunnale* and his Nephew *Cinale* were both publicly beheaded, without any regard that they had articulated for Life. So did that Government and Rabble go hand in hand in Murder and breach of Faith.



## C H A P. IV.

*The remarkable Revolutions of Pegu, during the Government of D. Francis de Gama, Count de Vidigueyra.*

1. **T**HE Kingdom of *Pegu*, before not very considerable, was raised to be one of the greatest Empires in *Asia*, by the King of *Uva* and *Brama*, assisted by 1000 *Portugueses* under the Command of *Antony Ferreyra de Braganca*, who served him as his natural Prince. The Kingdom of *Pegu*, properly so called, borders on that of *Arracam*, the Countries of the *Brama's* and *Jungoma's*; on the West is bounded by the Sea of *Bengala*, from the City *Rei* to that of *Sidoa*, distant 90 Leagues from each other; the breadth of the Kingdom is about the same, and its true Name is *Bagon*.

2. It is about 1000 Years since this Kingdom was first erected by a Seaman, who was the first King; then his Son, who lived 80 Years; next the Grandson, called *Tam*; these and all their Successors added to their Name the Title of *Banna, Coél Uca, Talanna, Inda, Darar, Mampla*. *Ximindo*, the last, who died the Year 1640 (as was before related) when *Branginoco* so far enlarged it by his Conquests, that it extended to *China* and *Tartary*, and was Sovereign of

Twenty-four great Kingdoms, beside Eighty Princes not inferior to Kings. Thus it became the powerfullst Monarchy in *Asia*, except that of *China*.

3. This King for the Conquest of *Martavam*, thirty Leagues distant from *Pegu*, gathered 700000, Men and 1700 Ships. The Siege lasted six Months, in which died 160000 Men. The City being taken and the King killed, 140000 Houses were burnt, besides 1600 Temples, in which were taken 60000 Idols, most of Gold and precious Stones; there were also taken 3000 Elephants, 6000 Cannon, and innumerable Prisoners. The King's share of the Spoil was above 100 Millions of Gold.

4. For the Conquest of *Siam* he led a greater Force, possessed himself of the Kingdom, and took the King and his two Sons, called, by reason of their different colour, one the Black, the other the White. He was content to leave that King in Possession of the Crown as his Vassal, having himself been till then his Subject, carrying away his two Sons as Hostages.

5. *Branginoco* returning Victorious to *Pegu*, entred the City in Triumph, many Waggons going before loaded with Idols and inestimable Booty. He came at last in a Chariot with the conquered Queens loaden with Jewels at his Feet, and drawn by the Captive Princes and Lords; before him marched Two thousand Elephants richly adorned, and after him his victorious Troops.

Troops. He built a Palace as big as an ordinary City. The least part of its Beauty was rich Painting and Gilding; for the Roofs of some Apartments were covered with Plates of solid Gold. Some Rooms were set with Statues of Kings and Queens of massy Gold, set with rich Stones as big as the Life. He was carried on a Litter of Gold upon many Mens Shoulders, the Reverence paid him was more like a God than a Prince.

6. After some time the two Brothers asked leave of the King to go visit their Father, which he granted, and afterwards sending to demand the usual Tribute, the black Prince refused to pay it. The King in a Rage sends his great Favourite *Banna* with a powerful Army against him. *Banna* ravaged the Country of *Siam*, and Besieges the Prince in *Hudixa*, who defended it so bravely, that *Banna* being forced to draw off, he fell upon and totally defeated him. The King sends his Brother-in-Law with a greater Power, and he receives a greater overthrow, 200000 of his Men were cut in pieces, with a great number of Elephants and Horses, many more of both taken. The black Prince remained Victorious, his Men were enriched, and all encouraged to follow their good Fortune.

7. The King of *Pegu* raises another Army of 1700000 Men, 1500 Elephants, 80000 Horse and all Necessaries proportionable; the Command of it he gave to *Mapa Raju* his Son, with the Title of King of *Siam*,

not doubting of the Victory. At the News of this Power all *Siam* trembled, except the valiant Black, now King, who met his Enemy, and gave him Battel. The two Kings encoutring on their Elephants fought, and he of *Pegu* was cast dead off his Elephant, at which sight his Men fled, and the *Siamites* pursued them a Month, destroying the greatest part of that vast Army.

8. The King of *Pegu* in a Rage for the Death of his Son, turned his Fury against the People, and some days burnt above Ten Thousand, throwing so many into the River *Ganga*, as stopped the Passage even of Boats. He forbid them sowing, which caused such a Famine, that they not only eat one another, to which purpose there was a publick Butchery of Man's Flesh, but devoured part of their own Bodies. For want of Fuel they made fire of human Bones, having first taken off the Flesh to eat. It is wonderful all this Tyranny never obliged that People to rebel. A good Example given by Heathens, to those more barbarous Christians, who dare fly in the Face of just Princes, without the least shadow of Oppression.

9. This was followed by a Pestilence that depopulated all the Kingdom. The neighbouring Princes taking this advantage, fell upon the King of *Pegu*, covetous of his Treasures. Among them was the Black of *Siam*, who retired with the loss 100000 Men. The King of *Tangu* was he that possessed himself of all, he promised Life, Liberty



berty and Estates to all that would come over to him. The first that deserted were the *Portugueses* and *Moors* ; for some *Portugueses* are like *Moors* in Matters of Interest. After them followed a Bastard Son of the King, whose Head was cut off by Order of the King of *Pegu's* Sister, Wife to him of *Tangu*, saying, That he who was false to his Father could not be true to her. She said and did well, but who will punish her for treating her Brother barbarously when taken.

10. He in despair delivers himself up to the King of *Tangu*, who being possessed of the City and Palace found such Treasure, that he made no account of Silver, and other Metals and Riches. It is avouched for truth, that he could not remove all the Jewels and Gold in twelve Caravans, each consisting of Seven hundred Elephants and Horses. The News of this Treasure drew thither the King of *Arracam*, who contenting himself with what he of *Tangu* undervalued, gathered above Three Millions, and a great Train of large Cannon. The King of *Tangu* presented him of *Pegu* to his Sister ; and she who (having killed his Son for betraying him) it was thought would comfort, used him Reproachfully, and afterwards seeing the King her Hnsband inclined to Mercy, caused him to be beaten to Death.

11. The King of *Tangu*, in whose House he of *Pegu* was Murdered by his own Sister, was his Creature, and Son to a Carter.

ter. So that Kingdom had its beginning in a Seaman or Waterman, and ended in a Carter, both Employs of the same Nature, one by Land and the other by Water.

12. This Year came into *India* from the remote Mountains of *Scythia* or *Tartary*, the Prince *Baxan*, Fourth Grandson of *Tamerlain* the Great, was by the *Augustin* Friars converted to the Faith, lived some time, and married a Woman of Quality at *Goa*, and thence came over to live in *Portugal*.

13. Four Ships arrived safe at *Goa* from *Lisbon*, commanded by *Ayres de Saldana*, who went Viceroy of *India*. One of these Ships was taken coming home at the mouth of *Lisbon* River. In another returned the late Viceroy, *D. Francis de Gama*, better beloved by the Elements than by the *Portugueses*, as will appear by what follows.

14. *Matthias de Albuquerque* one of the great Men of *India*, who afterwards fell at variance with the Count; before that happened, sent him a Present of two Horses worth Two Thousand Crowns. He accepted, but upon the falling out returned them. *Albuquerque* would not take them, and the Count's Messenger left them by his Order tied at the Door of one of *Matthias* his Servants. *Albuquerque* commanded his Servant to turn them loose, and they run about the City, till no Body receiving them, they were by his Order tied at the Hospital Door with a Bill, signifying they were given to the Poor.

15. The

15. The Statue of the Great D. *Vasco de Gama*, Grandfather to the Count, of a large Proportion cut in Marble, stood over the principal Gate of the City, fastned to the Wall by a strong Iron Bar. The *French* Ingenier *Sebastian Tibao*, at the Instigation of those Gentlemen, the Count's Enemies, in the Night applied to the Iron that Herb that has the quality of eating it, by which means the next Night it was pulled down, broke, and the Quarters hung up in publick Places.

16. The Day the Count was to Embarque, Forty Men well armed got aboard before him, and hanged up at the Yard Arm his Effigies made exactly like him in Face and Habit. He was going aboard as they returned, and seeing that sight asked what it was; they answered, *It is your Lordship, and those are the Men that did it.* He only replied, *No more, no more India.* He caused the Statute to be dropt into the Sea, set sail, and within two Days came again into the Port, to take in Fowl for the Voyage, because all he had before were poisoned. This is a common Practice in *India*, especially among the great Ones.

17. But as was said, the Elements loved the Count better than the Men, for he was the first that ever came from *India* to *Lisbon* without furling Sail. The continual biting of the Yards upon the Masts had so fastned them, that they were forced to cut them down when they came to *Lisbon* to lower them, because they would not run.

18. He

18. He set sail on the 25th of *December*, and arrived at *Lisbon* the 27th of *May*, so that he spent but 5 Months in the Voyage, which equals the swiftness of the Winds themselves, and could not have been performed but by running continually with them. The Count was tall, and well shaped, of a grave Aspect, his Complexion fair, capable of the greatest Command, and not Covetous. He was the 17th Viceroy, and 35th Governour, 5th of the Name, 3d of the Surname, and the 5th Count.

---

## C H A P. V.

*The Government of the Vice-Roy Ayres de Saldanna, from the Tear 1600, till 1604.*

1. **A**S soon as *Ayres de Saldanna* had taken upon him the Government, he dispatched the homeward bound Ships, which were six, under the command of *D. Hierome Continno*. That called the *St. Simon*, commanded by *James de Sousa* of *Viana*, came first to the Island *St. Helena*, where there were two great *Holland* Ships, with each two tire of Guns. They presently sent aboard our Ship to tell the Captain, "He must instantly yield, and go aboard them, unless he would soon be sent to the other World. *Sousa* considering that Message required a loud Answer, sent it from the mouth



mouth of a Cannon, and they understanding it, replied with 8; the Terror whereof made our Men drop from the Yards who were furling the Sails, but they soon recovered themselves.

2. The Enemies Cannon playing, killed at first two of our Men, and tore the Rigging and Masts; at which our People were so frightened, they sought to abandon the Ship. *Sousa* with much Valour encouraged them, and began to play his Guns with good success. The Fight lasted without ceasing that afternoon, all night, and the next morning, wherein the *Hollanders* receiving great Damage, made away, leaving ashore the Cask they had sent for Water. Our 5 Ships came up afterwards, and continued their Voyage together.

3. The Viceroy found at *Cochim* great Complaints against the King of *Jafanapatan*, for that, contrary to the Treaty of Peace, he gave Passage to the King of *Candea* through his Country. The Commander of *Manar*, *Manuel Barreto de Silva*, was sent against him with 3000 Men. The King expected him with 12000. Being upon the point of engaging, the Difference was amicably made up by *F. Emanuel* of *St. Matthias*. Religious Men are good to promote Peace between Lay-Governors, but when they take upon them Secular Governments, they confound all.

4. This Year 4 Ships set out of *Lisbon* for *India*, and were all drove back. Five Galleons also sailed, and two of them were forced

forced in again, one lost on the Coast of *Zocotora*. Another returning next Year from *India* richly laden, met at the Island *St. Helen* 3 *Holland Ships* of 30 Guns each, ours had but 27 small ones, yet could not avoid fighting.

5. The Fight lasted some days, till the Galleon was beaten to pieces, and the Enemy got nothing by the Victory. The Captain and most of the Men were taken, and basely treated by the *Hollanders*, who put them ashore in the Island of *Ferdinand de Noronna*, whence they passed to *Pernambuco*, and were there nobly entertained by *James Botello*, provided with all Necessaries, and sent home.

6. The Ships that were forced back the last Year, and two more, arrived in *India*, and brought the News, That on the 24th of *November*, 1602. there appeared over *Islands* a Blue Cross, seeming to the Eye about four Fathoms in length, and two in breadth, of a curious form, with Green Boughs over it. It continued two hours about day-break, during which time it was seen by above forty Christians of *Saneputat*, who were going to Mass to their Parish of *St. Lazarus*. The following Year 5 Ships went from *Portugal*. We have no farther account of the Occurrences of these Years, and therefore must be content with what follows, which happened about that time.

7. *Andrew Furtado* went over to the *Molucco* Islands, in hope to recover them. He drove the *Hollanders* out of *Ambina* and *Sun-*

*Sunda*, restored the *Rosatelos* to our subjection, gained many strong Places from those of *Ito*, *Nao*, and *Veranula*, and then appeared before *Ternate*; from which by bad Weather, and other Accidents, he was drove, after having spent 5 Years in continual labour. Let us leave him at *Amboina* while we treat of the Conquest of *Pegu*, which happened about the same time.

8. *Xilimixa* King of *Arracam*, who had possessed himself of the Crown of *Pegu*, to express his Gratitude to the *Portugueses* that served him, gave them the Port of *Siriam*, at the mouth of the River of the same Name, that runs within a League of *Bagon*, the Court of the Kings of *Pegu*. This Grant was obtained of the King for the *Portugueses* by *Philip de Brito & Nicote*, who most ingratelously proved false to that Prince, that had raised him from a vile Collier to his Favour and Esteem. The manner was thus:

9. *Xilimixa* confiding in *Nicote*, was by him perswaded to erect a Custom-house at the mouth of that River for the increase of his Revenue, and his design was to seize upon it, and build a Fort there to give footing to the *Portugueses* for the Conquest of that Kingdom. The King, who suspected not the Design, having finished the Work, put it into the Hands of one *Bannadala*, who fortified himself, and suffered no *Portugues* to enter there, except *F. Belchior de la Luz* a Dominican. *Nicote* seeing that Design fail, resolved to carry it on by other means

means before the Works were too far advanced.

10. He had with him three *Portugues* Officers, viz. *John de Oliva*, *Paul del Rego*, and *Salvador Ribeyro*, with 50 Men; these he order'd to surprise the Fort, and turn out *Bannadala*, not doubting but his great Credit with *Xilimixa* would bear him out in it.

11. The three Captains so well performed *Nicote's* Orders, that they gained the Name of *Founders of the Portugues Dominion in that Kingdom*; and *Ribeyro* was like to carry the whole Fame of this Action, some affirming, he was the real Author of it.

12. *Bannadala*, who foresaw the Designs of the *Portugueses*, contrived to expel them thence at the same time that *Riberio* thought to surprise him. *Bannadala* provided many flaming Carts guarded by 600 Men, which advancing by night took such effect, that the *Portugueses* were obliged to quit their Factory; but flying thence, attacked *Bannadala's* Fort with such fury, that having left many Men, he was glad to retire to an Island not far distant, where he fortified himself, gathering 1000 Men, and securing the Treasure of the Pagod of *Digan* to maintain them. The King being informed hereof was much offended, and resolved to relieve *Bannadala*, but was dissuaded by the false *Nicote*, who put him in mind he favoured a Sacrilegious Robber, and offered to compose Matters with the *Portugueses*. He went thither, and ordered Things to his own mind,



mind, so that the Work still advanced under the *Portugueses*.

13. *Nicote* seeing the Fort in a good posture, went to *Coa* in order to deliver it up to the Viceroy, and thence facilitate the Conquest of his Master's Kingdom; perswading him at the same time, his Journey was to bring Succours wherewith he might become Emperour of all *Bengala*. He perswaded every one of the Neighbouring Princes, If he would joyn with the Viceroy, he might easily be King of *Pegu*. Some of them sent Embassadors to this effect along with him. Scarce was *Nicote* gone when the King, being sensible of his oversight, sent down the River a Fleet with 6000 Men under the command of *Bannadala*.

14. Coming down towards the Fort, they were met by 3 Vessels with only 30 *Portugueses*, commanded by *Salvador Ribeyro*, who in a little time, without losing one Man, killed many, took 40 Ships, and put the rest to flight. The King joyning him of *Pram*, beset the place with 1200 Sail by Water, and 40000 Men by Land. *Ribeyro* understanding they observed no Order, boldly fell upon them with his handful of Men, and killing the General, put that whole Army to the rout.

15. *Bannadala* gathering 8000 Foot of this scattered Army, sat down the third time before the Fort, lodging his Men in good order, and furiously battering the Place, till in the dead of night he ventured to give a fierce Assault. Our Men bravely

K

op.

opposing, killed above 1000, which were seen the next morning to fill up the Ditch.

16. The Enemy continued the Siege eight months. Some of our Men deserted, yet *Ribeyro* was no way dismayed, but encouraged those that had stayed with him, and to take from them all hope of Escape, burnt the Vessels that were in the Port. The Viceroy *Ayres de Saldanna* hearing of these Proceedings, sent considerable Succours, and many, covetous of Honour or Profit, voluntarily resorted thither; so that the Commander finding himself 800 strong, resolved to attack the Enemy in his Works. He put this Design in execution with much Conduct and Bravery, and was received with no less, till at length *Basadala* was forced to fly 3 Leagues without looking back, and then stood to see all the Works he had raised in a Year burnt. The *Portugueses* thinking this Success had secured their Affairs in *Pegu*, dispersed every Man to make his own advantage, so that there remained with the Captains only 200 that had been sent by the Viceroy.

17. The Enemy returns the fourth time with many moving Castles, and several sorts of Fireworks. The Fort was reduced to a dangerous condition, when a fiery Meteor so frightened the Besiegers, that they fled, leaving their Castles behind, which were soon fired by our Men. Lastly, the Victory we obtained over King *Massinga* in the Province of *Camelan*, killing him, and doing great harm both by Sea and Land, produced the

the Security we so much sought after. For those People finding us not only Victorious, but Courteous, followed us so, that in few days we had above 20000 of them. These Men considering the Success of *Philip de Brito & Nicote*, and his natural good Temper, (which occasioned their calling him *Changa*, that is, Good Man,) proclaimed him King of *Pegu*. *Salvador Ribeyro* accepted of the Crown in his Name, he being then absent, and this, perhaps, might be the cause it was thought in *Spain*, it was he that was proclaimed.

18. *Nicote* afterwards received the Kingdom in the Name of his Prince as a Loyal Subject, and was the first of our Men that rose to that pitch of Fortune in *Asia*. *Roderick Alvarez de Sequeyra* succeeded him in the Command of the Fort, who bravely defended it till it accidentally took fire, and only the bare Walls of it were left standing.

19. Mean while *Nicote* solicited for Succours to carry thither, which were not hard to be obtained; for the Viceroy seeing his great Riches, and the prospect he had of more, married him to a Niece he had born in *Goa* of a *Fava*-Woman, and for her sake could deny him nothing. He gave him the Title of *Commander of Siriam*, and *General of the Conquest of Pegu*, and Succours in 6 Ships. Being come to *Siriam* he repaired the Fort, built a Church, and sent a rich Present to the King of *Arracam*, who had sent to compliment him upon his arrival.

20. He ordered the Affairs of the Custom-house according to the Viceroy's Instructions, obliging all Vessels that traded on the Coast of *Pegu* to make their Entries there. Some of the Coast of *Coromandel* refused to obey; against them he sent *D. Francis de Moura* with 6 Sail, who discharged himself well, and took on the Coast of *Tanazanim* 2 Ships of *Achem* richly laden. The King of *Arracam*, to the intent to possess himself of that Custom-house, resolved to joyn with the King of *Tangu*, and sent an Embassador to him with 20 *Jalias*, or small Ships. *Nicote* understanding it, caused *Bartholomew Ferreyra*, Captain of our small Craft, to fall upon them, who put them to flight, so that they were forced to make their escape to the King of *Jangona's* Country. The Enemy thus exasperated, gathered 700 small Vessels with 4000 Men under the command of the Prince his Son, with whom were *Ximicolia*, and *Marquetam*, Sons to the then Emperor of *Pegu*.

21. *Paul del Rego Pinnero* set out to meet them with the Boats and 7 Ships, and having taken 10 Boats that were advanced before the rest, returned to secure them and set out again; but observing the Enemy was too strong for him, went in to gather more Force. Being reinforced he meets the Prince, routs him, and takes several Vessels. The Prince thinking to save himself by running up a River, got into a small Creek, where *Pinnero* took all the rest of his Vessels, obliging him to escape by Land, having  
lost



lost One Thousand of his Men. Then he took the Fort of *Chinin*, and in it many Prisoners, among which was the Wife of *Bannadala*.

22. *Nicote* was now abroad with Fourteen small Vessels, in which were Sixty *Portugueses* and Two hundred *Pegues*, he run up a River, and hearing the Prince was on the Shore with Four thousand Men, Nine Hundred of them Musqueteers, he attacks him. *Ximisto*, a valiant *Pegu*, attempted to take the Prince, and being himself hurt wounded the Prince in the Face, which occasioned his being made Prisoner, and gained us the Victory. Two Thousand Men of the King of *Pram* came to the Prince's assistance as he was taken, and were also defeated. The *Pegues* seeing their Prince carried away to Captivity, would all have gone with him, striving to get into our Vessels. Such as could not, remained on the Shore, cursing their hard Fortune, that would not permit them to follow him a Prisoner, as they had done in Liberty. Christians may here learn the Duty they owe to their Princes.

23. *Nicote* may also be a President to all Men; how to use their Victories; for he not forgetting he had been a Slave to the Prince now his Prisoner, served him with the same respect now, as he had done then. He watched him sleeping, holding his Buskins in his Hands with Arms across, a Ceremony used by the meanest with their Kings in those Parts, and himself attended him upon all Occasions. This generosity may well

equal him with great Men, and purchased him together with other the like Proceedings, the Name of *Changa*, which, as was before said, signifies *Good Man*.

24. But now ends the Government of *Ayres de Saldanna*, by the arrival at *Goa* of *Martin Alfonso de Castro*, who came to succeed him with the same Title of Viceroy. He set out from *Lisbon* with five Ships, whereof one was forced in again. About the end of the same Year there sailed thence two Caravels.

25. *Ayres de Saldanna* seems to have had more natural Goodness than Inclination to War; for in his time nothing of this sort was set on Foot. He was one of those few Viceroys and Governors who are believed not to have wronged the King. On his return home he died in the Latitude of the Islands, and the Ship that brought him was lost at the mouth of *Lisbon River*. He was tall and somewhat corpulent, of a tawny Complexion; of Viceroys the 18th, of Governors the 36th, and First of the Name and Sirname.

26. I have purposely reserved for the end of this Government the Discovery of *Grand Cathay*, for which we are beholding to *F. Nicholas Pimenta*, Visitor-General of the Jesuits in *Asia*. He chose for this employ *B. Benediã Goes*, a Man well versed in several Languages, and particularly the *Persian*, which was the most important for that Design. *B. Goes* cloathed himself in the Habit of an *Armenian Christian Merchant*,  
and

and after their manner took the Name of *Abdula Isai*, which signifies, *Christian Lord*. He set out from the Mogol's Court with that Prince's Favour and Merchandize. In his Company went two *Greeks* well skilled in the manner of Travelling, and were *Leo Grimanus* a Priest, and *Demetrius* a Merchant. These had four Mahometan Servants (who were afterwards Christians) which they left at *Laur* (one of the Mogol's Courts) as useless, and took in their stead *Isaac* an *Armenian*, who had a Wife and Children there, and was there faithful Companion. From *Laur* they set out on the 6th of *January* 1603.

27. With great Labour and Hardships they passed through the Cities *Abee*, *Passaur*, *Caserhan*, *Guideli* and *Cabul*. Here they were forced to stay 8 Months, and meeting a Sister of *Hamet Can* King of *Cascar*, that was going a Pilgrimage to *Meca*, and was taking up Money at Interest. *B. Benedict* considering it would oblige that Princess and her Brother, through whose Dominions he was to pass, lent her 600 Ducats without Interest, which afterwards stood him in good stead. The Priest *Grimanus* spent with Labour, turned back from *Cabul*. The Caravan set forward, and passed the Dominions of the Mogol's, in sight of the Cities *Characar* and *Parvam*.

28. They passed the high Mountains of *Aingaran*, and entring *Chalca* saw a fair People like the *Germans*, then went through *Gialalabat*, *Thalham*, *Quenam*, *Badukar*,

*Carabumar, Serpanil, Sarcunor, Tanguetar, Jacanich*, in which Journey almost two years were spent with great Toils and Dangers. Hence they Travelled to *Hiarcan*, the Court of the King of *Cascar*, and Place of great Trade. They stayed a Year for another Carravan, and then set out, much favoured by the King, for the Kingdom of *Cbalis*. The Son of the Pilgrim Lady they lent the Money to at *Cabal* was very serviceable to them, and they were repaid in precious Jasper-stone, the richest Merchandize in that Country. In their way they passed through these Towns, *Jolchi, Hanchalin, Alchegret, Hagabaretb Combaxi, Aconferet, Chiacor* and *Acfu*. *Acfu* is a Town belonging to the King of *Cascar*, where a Grandson of his, only ten Years of Age, then governed, who favoured *Goes* the time he was obliged to stay there.

29. *B. Benediã* and *Isaac* setting forward again (for *Demetrius* stayed behind at *Hiarcan*) and passing the famous Desert *Caracatay* (that is, The black Land of *Catay*) and these Towns, *Oitograck, Gazo, Canani, Delai, Saraguebedal, Ugan* and *Cucha*, they came to the City *Cbalis*, where a Son of the King of *Cascar* governed, and where they were in great danger, and stayed 3 months. Here came in the Caravan from *Cathay*, by whom our Discoverer heard of *F. Matthew Rivius*, then residing at *Peking*, and found that *China* and *Cathay* were the same Country, and only the Names differed. *Goes* joyful of this Discovery resolved to proceed. On his



his way he passed through these Towns, *Puchan*, *Turfan*, *Arumath*, *Camul* and *Quiscion*, (whence may be seen that famous Wall that parts *China* and *Tartary*) and came to *Su-chin*, where hearing much of the Court of *Peking*, he was throughly satisfied that *China* and *Cashay* where the same thing.

30. Then ended the Year 1606. The 4th of these Travels now grown pleasing to B. *Benedict*, for that he had compassed his end, found his Order where it was least to be expected, and could relieve them with what he had got by his Merchandize, which amounted to 1500 Crowns, and at that time was a considerable Treasure. He gave advice of his arrival to F. *Matthew* at *Peking*, and he sent B. *John Fernandez*, a Novice of the Converts to conduct him forward. He arrived at *Su-chin* the latter end of *March* 1607, and 11 Days after our Discoverer died, not without suspicion of Poison given by the *Moors* to rob him, as they did, abusing *Isaac* and B. *Fernandez*, who having buried the deceased went to *Peking*.

## C H A P. VI.

*The Government of the Viceroy D. Martin  
Alfonso de Castro, from the Year 1604  
till 1607.*

1. **D**ON Martin Alfonso de Castro entering upon the Government, gave some signs of being ambitious of Glory, but Fortune was not favourable to him, or, as some say, his own Humour was an impediment. Therefore let us proceed with the Affairs of the Conquest of Pegu.

2. *Ximilica* King of *Arracam* considering his Son was Prisoner, thought good to treat with *Nicote*, and he, to come to an agreement the better to make his advantage of the Profits of the Custom-House, sent Advice of all to *Goa*, and received Orders thence to return the Prince without any Ransom. But Interest being his greatest aim, neither Obedience to the Viceroy, nor the Respect he owed that King, whose Creature he was, could prevail to hinder him from selling that Prince for 50000 Crowns, pretending it was for the Charge of the Fleet the King had obliged him to fit out.

3. The King of *Arracam* justly offended hereat, set out a small Fleet against *Siriam*, which was easily defeated, but gave him occasion

casion to enslave 100000 Christians, and treat them with great rigour; which nevertheless moved not many of them, though but new Converts. Afterwards he combines with the King of *Tangu*, who Besieges the Town with a great Army by Land, while he shuts it up by Sea with 800 Sail, in which he had 10000 Men. *Paul del Rego*, met him with 80 Ships, and failing of the success he had formerly, setting Fire to the Powder, blew up himself and all that were with him, rather than fall into the Hands of the Enemy. The Siege continued so long, till the besieged were ready to surrender, when on a sudden upon some suspicion the King of *Tangu* quits the Field by night, and he of *Arracam* found it to no purpose to lie longer upon the Sea.

4. Some of the neighbouring Princes startled at this success of *Nicote* sought his Friendship, and an Alliance with the King of *Portugal*. The first that effected it was the King of *Tangu*. *Nicote* marries his Son *Simon* to a Daughter of the King of *Martavam*, thereby to strengthen himself, and have the opportunity of gathering more Riches. And being now desirous to rob the King of *Tangu*, tho actually then in Peace with him, to colour his wicked Design he pretends that King was overcome by him of *Ova*, (as indeed he was and made Tributary) since the Treaty, as if that could absolve him for breach of Faith. In fine, with the King of *Martavam*'s assistance, he fell upon, took, and robbed him of *Tangu*, and returned with him and  
above

above a Million of Gold, without hearkning to the Proteſtations he made of his continuing a faithful Vaffal to the Crown of Portugal.

5. Let us keep in mind theſe his unjuſt Proceedings, and in its place we ſhall ſee them rewarded as they deſerve; for all theſe Particulars happened not at this time, but it is anticipated, to prevent too much diſmembring the Relation of them. Indeed it is to be admired, a Chriſtian Government ſhould ſupport ſuch Unchriſtian Proceedings.

6. It will be fit to return to the Affairs of the *Molucco* Iſlands. The *Hollanders* were now ſtrong in thoſe Seas, and well backed by the Iſlanders, who tired out with our inſatiable Avarice, joined with thoſe Rebels to expel us.

7. The *Hollanders* about this time having forced us thence, had poſſeſſed themſelves of *Ambonia*. *Gaspar de Melo* commanded there, whom abſolute Neceſſity obliged to quit it, yet being unjuſtly accuſed and in danger of ſuffering with Diſgrace, his Wife poiſoned him. A ſtrange Government, where notorious Criminals were not puniſhed, and an innocent Perſon was ſo Perſecuted, that ſhe who loved him took away his Life, leaſt they ſhould take away his Honour, who had none of their own. The *Portugueſes* who were at *Tidore* ſince the looſing of *Ternate*, ſeeing the King did not deliver them up to the *Hollanders* who demanded them, and had nine Ships in the Harbour,



Harbour, but that he was resolved to stand by them, took such Courage, that they withstood the continual Batteries of 120 Cannons, which played on them without intermission.

8. The King of *Ternate* sends a Fleet to assist the *Hollanders*, and Landing batters the Fort on the other side. All we had to oppose this Power, was 10 or 12 pieces of Cannon, and but a small number of Men able to bear Arms. After four days Battery the Enemy gives the Assault, our Men encouraged by their Captain *Peter Alvarez de Abreu*, with Sword in Hand bravely repulse them. In the midst of their hopes that this defeat would oblige the Enemy to desist, the Powder by some accident taking fire, blew up the greatest part of the Fort and most of the Men; so that the Enemy entred it when they least expected, and our Men were forced to accept of some Vessels to go where they thought fit.

9. About Four hundred Persons of all sorts were shipped, and got to the *Philippine Islands*, where D *Peter de Cunna* Commanded. Neither was their Voyage without danger, the enraged Sea being ready to swallow them; but the Mercy of God brought them safe ashore, by virtue of certain Reliques thrown into the Water by a Jesuit, which laid the Storm, and after their landing were brought and laid upon the Sand by a Fish.

10. In February *Cunna* sailed from the *Philippine* Islands towards *Ternate* with One thousand *Spaniards* and Four hundred of the *Natives*. He Besieged the Fort, in which was the King himself, and had above One hundred Cannons. The *Hollanders* and *Ternatenses* thinking to surprize the Besiegers, made a Sally, and were so received by *John Rodriguez Camelo*, who commanded a Company of *Portugueses*, that he not only beat them back, but entred the Fort along with them. So that when the *Spanish* Commander came up, fearing some mischance might be occasioned by that heat, *Camelo* met him at the Gate with the Keys of the Fort, and *Cunna* to honour him for that Action, put about his Neck a Gold Chain he had upon his own.

11. The *Ternatenses* in the fright abandoned the City as they had done the Fort. The *Spanish* Commander losing no time, drove the *Hollanders* out of *Tidore*, and cut off their hopes of ever settling in those Islands, which from that time forward remained subject to *Spain*.

12. Though the *Hollanders* lost *Tidore*, yet they aspired to greater Conquests. To this purpose they made a League with seven of the Neighbouring Kings about *Malaca*, thinking to gain that Place. They gathered a Fleet of One hundred and fifty Sail, in which were 16000 Men. There were but few above One hundred *Portugueses* in a condition to oppose this Power, but they were

were Commanded by the Great *Andrew Furtado de Mendoça*. He sent out several Parties to discover the Enemy's Designs. The first was but of four Soldiers with *Gasper de Fonseca*; the Enemy thinking they Deserted, gave them free Passage, but were undeceived, receiving considerable damage from only those five Men. Next Captain *Ferdinand de Costa de Andria* with Forty Men, some of them *Japoneses*, cut off a good Party of them, and retired without any loss.

13. The Enemy having taken their Ground, began to batter the City; and those within to feel the Miseries of a Siege, being in want of all Necessaries. To this was added, that the Master-Gunner was a *Hollander*, who designedly burst many pieces of Cannon, having under-hand Intelligence with the Enemy. A *Moor* who commanded some Men acted no less treacherously, but being discovered, they were both hanged over the Wall. Many of our Men signalized themselves by brave Actions, and particularly *John Rodriguez Camelo*, who with great danger brought a number of Men and did good Service with them. The Enemy lost so many Men during four Months the Siege lasted, in which time they spent above Fifty thousand Cannon Balls; that despairing of success they raised the Siege; the Kings returning home, and the *Hollanders* to their Ships.

14. The News that *D. Martin Alphonso de Castro*, our Viceroy, was coming with twelve Galleons, four Gallies, and seventy other

other Vessels, caused the Siege to be sooner raised. He set out of *Goa* in *May*, on *St. Antony's Day* in *June* came to Anchor at *Achem*, where he took three of the Enemy's Ships loaden with Provisions, and resolved to take Revenge on that King for receiving the *Hollanders* into his Ports, contrary to a former Agreement. On the 29th the Men landed, the Enemy's opposed them in great numbers with many Elephants, but after a brave resistance were forced to their Works. Our Men mounted and planted their Colours, and had they followed their Victory, the City had been that day destroyed. Yet the fight lasted all that and next day; when the Viceroy perceiving no Benefit accrued, shipped his Men, much afflicted that he had slipped such an Opportunity.

15. After suffering much for want of Water, and loosing some Vessels by bad Weather, the Fleet came before *Malaca*, where *Andrew Furtado* acquainted the Viceroy the Siege was carried on by Sea and Land, on the Sea were eleven Ships and seven Galliots of the *Hollanders*, and Three hundred small Vessels of the Natives; by Land, eleven neighbouring Kings in their Persons with 14000 Men. Both of them, during those four Months the Siege lasted, had destroyed many Buildings, and committed great Outrages against Images and other holy Things. On the 17th of *August* the 11 Ships went out to receive our Fleet, playing their Cannon furiously, and were answer'd  
in



in like manner with equal loss, till Night parted them.

16. Morning appearing the Fight was renewed with great Fury, but the Damage was greater on our side, because the Enemies Ships exceeded us in strength, swiftness, number of Cannons, and goodness of Gunners. *Sebastian Suarez* boarded one and burnt it, after having killed many *Hollanders*. *Alvaro de Carvalho* would have done the like to another, and *Duarte de Guerra* coming up to second him, they all three were consumed by fire, and none of the Men saved.

17. D. *Henry de Noronna* boarded the Admiral *Cornelius Madclif*, and being both in danger of being burnt, they parted by consent, promising if they met again they would not encounter. Whereupon *Noronna* quitted his Command, telling the Viceroy, He had rather serve as a private Man, than be obliged to perform the Promise he had made to the Enemy. D. *Peter Mascarennas* succeeded him in the Command, who did Wonders; for the *Dutch* Admiral coming up to salute him, supposing it had been *Noronna*, they engaged furiously; and after the fight, Four hundred Cannon shot were found in the Galleon, which had done no other harm than the killing one *Casre*. The Fleets were engaged eight Days, and our Vessels very much disabled. On the 24th of *August* the Viceroy again offered the Enemy Battel, but they all fled.

18. The Viceroy entred *Malaca*, which had been ruined during the Siege. *Andrew Furtado* was of Opinion, the Fleet should be kept together, lest the Enemy might destroy it, being separated: Others advised it should divide; the worst Advice was followed. *D. Alvaro de Meneses* had a Squadron of seven Galleons, to go meet the Ships that were expected from *Portugal* at the Islands of *Nicobar*. *Nunno Alvarez Pereyra*; another of five, to secure the Ships of *Java*, that brought Provisions to *Malaca*, through the Streight of *Singapura*, but having met the Enemy, he returned into the Port.

19. The *Hollanders* having refitted, and hearing our Fleet was divided, came again before *Malaca*, and finding there the five Galleons, they began a desperate fight on the twenty-second of *October*. Many Men of Note of our side were killed; one of our Vessels blew up, and only seven Men were saved: In fine, the whole Squadron was destroyed. Of the *Hollanders* about Five hundred were killed. The Viceroy soon after died at *Malaca*, it was believed that of Grief for this Loss.

20. The *Hollanders* met not with the like Success in the Bay of *Polobutum*, where *D. Alvaro de Meneses* was with his Squadron of seven Galleons; for after a bloody Fight, they were forced to give way, having lost three Ships. But since the Viceroy is dead, and we must enter upon a new Government, it will be fit to mention what Ships failed

failed from *Lisbon* for *India* during his Life. In the Year 1605, 7 Ships. Before them three Galleons, which were with the Fleet at *Malaca*. After the 7 Ships, set out *Belchior Rodriguez* in a Caravel with some fresh Advice, who overtaking them under the Line, returned to *Lisbon*.

21. In the Year 1606, 3 Ships were to have gone, but were prevented by a *Dutch* Squadron that lay at the mouth of the River till the Season was past. Thus much of the Government of *D. Martin Alfonso de Castro*, who was Viceroy two Years and a half, the 19th of that Number, and 37th Governour, the second both of Name and Sirname. Of Stature somewhat tall, of Complexion fallow, a good Christian, a good Gentleman, well beloved in *India*, and Zealous of the Kings's Service, a Thing now rare in the World.

## C H A P. VII.

*The Government of the Archbishop D. F. Alexius de Meneses, who was Governour from the Year 1607, till 1609.*

1. **D** On *Martin Alfonso de Castra* the Vice-roy being dead, *D. F. Alexius de Meneses* Archbishop of *Goa* succeeded him in the Government, but not in the Title. About the beginning of his Government sailed from *Lisbon* the three Ships, which were to have set out the Year before. After them followed two Galleons, and two small Ships, the two former were to remain in *India*.

2. The *Hollanders* now aimed at the Conquest of the Island of *Mozambique*. Our Fort there was commandèd by *D. Stephen de Ataide*, who not long before had obtained of the Emperor of *Monomotapa* a Grant of all the Silver Mines in his Dominions, which are much richer than those of *Asia*, to the Crown of *Portugal*. The Motive of this Donation was, that we might assist him to subdue his Rebellious Subjects, which *D. Stephen* performed, securing him in his Throne, and to us that great Gift, if we had known how to make use of it.

3. About the end of *May*, *Paul Vercaden* the Dutch Admiral anchored in the great Port



Port of *Mozambique* with 8 Ships well stored, and carrying 1500 Men. In the Fort there were but 80 Men, a few and but indifferent Pieces of Cannon, and that scarce fit for Service. Nevertheless *D. Stephen* lost no Courage, but posted his Men, whilst the Enemy invested the Place.

4. The Enemies Cannon-Balls flying very thick, kept the Walls bare of Men, so that a Colonel of theirs boldly rode about viewing our Works, till he was struck down dead with a Bullet. The Enemy carrying on their Approaches under the shelter of their Batteries that continually played, our Men were forced to appear upon the Walls to oppose that Danger, and the *Hollanders* being tired, offered a Truce, which was accepted. While it lasted, they reproached the *Portugueses* that they had degenerated from their ancient Valour, who, to convince them of the contrary, offered to fight 50 of them with only 25; which they refusing, it gave new Courage to the Besieged.

5. The Truce expiring, the Cannon on both sides began to play. The Enemy thought to take off the use of ours, by bringing up to the Walls great Wooden Towers equal with our Parapets. It was a dark stormy night when they began to advance, but our watchful Centinels perceiving it, so many Fireworks were heaped on them, they were forced to retire with some loss. Next night, notwithstanding all opposition, they were laid close to the Walls. Twenty five

*Portugueses* sallied with a Resolution to burn or break them, but succeeded not.

6. Being disappointed of that Design, they fall upon the *Hollanders*, who increased to 500, and killing many, those 25 retired without losing one, only some were wounded. This Action seemed to have astonished the Enemy, for the next day they stirred not; nor after that for a whole week, tho they saw their Castles burnt. At last the Admiral sent *Ataide* a Letter, threatening to spoil all the Country about, unless he redeemed it from Ruin with a Sum of Money.

7. Our Commander refused, and the *Hollander* burnt down all that the Fire could lay hold of, so the Town and other Buildings perished. Next they cut down all the Woods, and then raised the Siege which had lasted two months; during which time, 13 of our Men were killed, and of theirs above 300. As they went over the Bar, one of their Ships was sunk by our Cannon. Scarce were they gone in the beginning of *June*, when three of our Ships from *Portugal*, under the command of *D. Hierome Coutino*, entered the Port. Not long after came in *Peter Blens*, about the end of *July*, with 3 *Holland* Ships, and 2000 Men, which might have been our Ruin had they come sooner.

8. *D. Hierome*, having the best he could relieved the Place, was under Sail for *India*, when *Blens* came in, imagining *Vercaden* was by that time possess'd of the Fort. The *Per-*

*Portugueses* undeceived him with some Cannon Shot, to which he answered by landing his Men, and besieging the Fort as the other had done. The first day the Batteries played they spent above 300 great Shot, which laid one side open; and they might have entred, had they been as resolute to Assault, as furious in making the Breach. The Damage received by Day, was repaired by night. Next morning 25 Men sallying killed 30, and returned without losing one, bringing in Arms, Drums, and Colours. One of these engaged with three of the Enemy well Armed, killed two, and put the other to flight.

9. A *Frenchman* and 4 *Hollanders* came to the Wall, begging to be protected as being Catholicks. *Blens* in a fury demands them of our Commander, who refused to deliver them, and he in revenge ties 6 *Portugueses* taken at his entrance into the Harbour, and shoots them to Death. One hundred and fifty more were in the same danger, who were taken out of a Galleon, which coming from *Portugal*, and knowing nothing of what had happened there, run into the midst of the Enemies Ships, and was burnt by them. D. *Stephen* chose rather to expose those Men to danger, than break Faith with those five he had taken into Protection. But *Blens* his Passion being over, he recalled the Sentence, raised the Siege, and setting Sail, put all the *Portugueses* he had taken ashore in the Island of *St. George*. The loss on both sides now, was much the same as

had been given and received before by *Ver. caden.* *Blens* sailed out of the Port about the end of *August*.

10. While the Archbishop was Governour, two Squadrons sailed from *Portugal* for *India*. That of the Year 1608, shall be spoke of in the next Chapter, because it carried D. *John Pereyra Frojas Count de Feyra*, who went Viceroy of *India*, but died by the way. The other of the same Year which arrived there in 1609, and carried *Ruy Lorenzo de Tavora* to the same Command, shall be spoken of in the Chapter of *Andrew Furtado de Mendoca*, who succeeded the Archbishop. This Religious Man governed two Years and a half, and was the 38th Governour, the first of the Name, and sixth of the Sirname, and first Church-man that had that Post. He was of a middle Stature, white of Complexion, grey with Years, of a serene Countenance which moved Respect, and took such care of his Servants, that many got Estates.



C H A P. VIII.

*Of the Viceroy D. John Pereyra Frojas  
Count de Feyra, in the Tear 1608.*

1. **A**T the beginning of this Year failed from the Port of *Lisbon* for *India* D. John Pereyra Frojas Count de Feyra with the Title of Viceroy. He raised in all Men great expectation, as well for his Personal Merit, as the greatness of his Quality, and the Preparations for his Voyage were suitable, being the greatest that till then had been. His Squadron consisted of 6 Ships, and 8 Galleons.

2. The Viceroy set out on the 29th of *March*, died on the 15th of *May*; his Body was sent back, and brought to *Lisbon* the 24th of *July*. The Admiral *Noronna* succeeded in the Command of the Fleet. The Count was the second that died by the way going to govern *India*, and may be accounted 3d of the Name, 20th Viceroy, and 39th Governour; for the Patent, not the Possession, make a Man so.

3. But since this Viceroy has not afforded Matter for a Chapter, let us make it up with one of the greatest Prodigies of the *Portugues* Fortune that *Asia* produced. Three Years she was big with this Monster, from 1605, till 1608. We shall see another

*James*

*James Suarez de Molo*, and another *Philip de Brito & Nicote*, famous for their incredible Rise and Insolence. This was *Sebastian Gonzalez Tibao*, a Man of obscure Extraction, as born in the Village of *St. Antony del Tojal*, near *Lisbon*, a Place never yet produced any worth Note, either for Parentage, or worthy Actions. In the Year 1605 he imbarqued for *India*, went over to *Bengala*, listed himself a Soldier, and then fell to dealing in Salt, which is a great Merchandise there. By this Trade he soon gained as much as purchased a *Jalia*, that is, a sort of small Vessel. In this Vessel he went with Salt to *Dianga*, a great Port of the King of *Arracam*, at such time as that King slew 600 *Portugueses* who resided there, and suspected nothing less, living quietly as good Subjects under his Protection. The Motive of this Cruelty was, That *Philip de Brito & Nicote* being possessed of *Siriam*, thought it would be for his Advantage to gain *Dianga*. He fitted out some Vessels, and sent in them his Son as Embassador to beg that Port of the King. Some *Portugueses* perswaded the King, *Nicote's* design in getting that Port, was to deprive him of his Kingdom. He orders the Son with his Officers to come to Court, and there murders them; the same was done in their Vessels; and afterwards that Fury fell upon all the Inhabitants of *Dianga*. This was in the beginning of the Year 1607. Some few escaped into the Woods, and 9 or 10 Vessels got to Sea, whereof one was that of *Sebastian Gonzales*:

4. *Emanuel de Mattos* Commander of *Bandel of Dianga*, who died not long before, had been Lord of *Sundiva*, an Island 70 Leagues in compass. *Fatecan* a resolute Moor, whom he had intrusted with the Island in his absence, hearing of his Death, makes himself Master of it, and the more to secure himself, murders all the *Portugueses* that were in it, with their Wives and Children, and such of the Natives as were Christians. Then he gathered *Moors* and *Patans* to his assistance, fitted out a Fleet of 40 Sail, and plentifully maintained this Charge with the Revenue of the Island, which is great. *Sebastian Gonzalez* and his Companions, with those 9 or 10 Vessels that escaped at *Dianga*, having no Head to govern them, lived by robbing in the Country of *Arracam*, carrying their Booty to the King of *Bacala's* Ports, who was our Friend. *Fatecan* understanding they plyed thereabouts, went out to seek them with such assurance of Success, that he had this Inscription upon his Colours; *Fatecan, by the Grace of GOD Lord of Sundiva, shedder of Christian Blood, and destroyer of the Portugues Nation.*

6. One evening he thought to surprize them, and had effected it, but that they quarrelling about dividing some Spoil they had taken; this falling out, proved their Preservation: For *Sebastian Pinto* upon that account leaving them in a River of the Island *Xavaspur*, met *Fatecan's* Fleet and gave them notice. They ingaged and fought desperately all night, the morning discovered

80 *Portugueses* victorious over 600 *Moors* and *Patanes*, and 10 Vessels over 40. Not one Sail got off, nor a Man escaped being killed or taken; among the Dead was *Fatecan*. Had they been under a Commander that knew how to make use of the Victory, the Island must then have been their own. This obliged them to choose a Head, and they pitched upon *Stephen Palmeyro*, a Man of Years, Experience, and Discretion. He gave Proof hereof, by refusing (notwithstanding their repeated Instances) to Command such wicked People. However they desired him to appoint one, and they would punctually obey him. He named *Sebastian Gonzales Tibao*.

6. As soon as the Commander was named, they resolved to gain *Sundiva*. More *Portugueses* were gathered from *Bengala*, and other Neighbouring Ports. *Tibao* articted with the King of *Bacala*, "That he would give him half the Revenue of the Island, if he assisted him to conquer it. The King sent some Ships, and 200 Horse. In *March*, 1609. he had above 40 Sail, and 400 *Portugueses*. The Island having had time to provide for its Defence, was full of Resolute Men. A great number of *Moors*, commanded by *Fatecan's* Brother, received them at Landing, but were forced to retire into a Fort. The *Portugueses* besiege it, and lying long before it, were in danger of perishing, not being able to come at the Provisions and Ammunition that were aboard their Vessels. *Gaspar de Pina*, a *Spaniard*, deli.



delivered them from this Danger, for he coming with his Ship to that Port, and resolving to assist them, landed 50 Men he was Captain of, and marching by night with many Lights, and great Noise, made the Enemy believe he brought great Succour. As soon as he came up the Fort was assaulted, entred, and all within that had life put to the Sword. The Natives of the Island, who before had been subject to the *Portugueses*, presently submitted themselves to *Sebastian Gonzales*. He received them upon condition they should deliver up to him all the Strangers that were in the Island. They brought him above 1000 *Moors*, and as they came he cut off their Heads; about as many more were killed in the Fort. Thus *Sebastian Gonzales* became absolute Master of the Island, and was obeyed by the Natives and *Portugueses* as an absolute Lord independent of any Prince, and his Orders had the force of Laws.

7. To recompence the chief *Portugueses* who had served him, he gave them Lands in the Island, and then repenting, took them away. In stead of giving the King of *Bacala* half the Revenue of the Island, as had been agreed, he made War upon him. As he grew Great, so he grew Insolent and Ungrateful, and had now at Command 1000 *Portugueses*, 2000 Natives well Armed, 200 Horse, and above 80 Sail with good Cannon. Many Merchants traded thither, and he erected a Custom-house. The Neighbouring Kings surprized at his prodigious  
Suc-

Success, sought his Friendship. From the King of *Batecala*, to whom he owed so great Favours, he took the Islands of *Xavapur* and *Patelabanga*, and other Lands from others, so that on a sudden he was possessed of vast Riches, equal with many Princes, and sovereign of many brave Men. But these Monsters are like Comets that last little, and threaten lasting Ruin. They are like Lightning, that no sooner gives the flash but it is gone. Let us proceed, and we shall see this verified.

8. Such was the fortune of *Sebastian Gonzales* in *Sundiva*, when there happened a Difference between the Prince of *Arracam* and his Brother *Anaporam*; the Occasion was, that the latter refused to give the other an Elephant, to which all other Elephants of that Country were said to allow a sort of Superiority, and durst not appear before him. The Prince seeing he could not prevail by Intreaties nor Threats, raises a great Army, and deprives his Brother both of his Kingdom, and that so much coveted Beast. *Anaporam* fled to *Sebastian Gonzales* for Succour, who demanded his Sister as a Hostage. Then he sets out to fight the Conqueror, but to no purpose, for he had too great a Power, to wit, 80000 Men, and 700 fighting Elephants. King *Anaporam* returned with *Sebastian Gonzales* to *Sundiva*, bringing over his Wife, Family, Treasure, and Elephants. Thus he remained as a Subject to *Sebastian Gonzales*, who Baptizing his Sister, married her, and though so vile a Wretch,

Wretch, pretended he did that Prince a great favour. Soon after the Prince dies, not without suspicion of Poison, for *Sebastian Gonzales* seized upon all his Treasure, Elephants, and Goods, without any consideration of his Wife and Son. To stop the mouths of the People, he would have married the Queen to his Brother *Antony Tibao* Admiral of his Fleet, but could not compass it, for she could never be prevailed upon to become a Christian.

9. *Sebastian* waged War upon the King of *Arracam* with good success. An Instance hereof may be, that his Brother *Antony* with only 5 Sail took 100 of that King's. This moved the King to conclude a Peace with him, and thereby recovered his Sister-in-Law and Brother's Widow, whom he married to the King of *Chatigam*. At this time the *Mogol* undertook the Conquest of the Kingdom of *Balua*, and *Sebastian* considering it might prove of dangerous consequence, that Kingdom lying opposite to him, he makes a League with the King of *Arracam* for the defence of that Country. The League concluded, the King takes the Field with 80000 Men, most of them Musketers, 10000 *Pegues* that fought with Sword and Buckler, and 700 Elephants loaded with Castles and Armed Men. He put to Sea above 200 Sail, carrying 4000 Men, which were to joyn *Sebastian Gonzales* his Fleet, and to be under his Command. The agreement was, That *Sebastian* should hinder the *Mogol* from passing to the Kingdom of *Balua*,  
till

till the King of *Arracam* could march thither with his Army; and that the *Mogol* being expelled, half the Kingdom of *Balua* should be given to *Sebastian*, who gave the King, as Hostages for his Fleet, a Nephew of his own, and the Sons of some *Portugueses* Inhabitants of *Sundiva*.

10. The King of *Arracam* entring the Kingdom of *Balua* with his Army, expelled the *Mogols*. It was thought, that *Sebastian* overcome with Bribes had given them free passage, which, according to the Agreement with the King of *Arracam*, he was to obstruct. Others say, He did it to revenge the Death of the *Portugueses* slain by that King in *Banguel* of *Dianga*. Be it as it will, he was guilty of an execrable Treachery, for, leaving the mouth of the River *Daugatiar*, he gave them free Passage. He enters a Creek of the Island *Desiarta* with his Fleet, and calling all the King of *Arracam*'s Captains aboard his Ship, murders them, then falling upon the Ships, killed or made Slaves of all the Men. Having committed this infamous Action, and secured that Fleet, he returned to *Sundiva*. Mean while the *Mogols* coming down again with a greater Power, entered the Kingdom of *Balua*, and reduced the King of *Arracam* to such distress, that with much difficulty he escaped by the help of an Elephant, and came almost alone to the Fort of *Chatigam*.

11. *Sebastian Gonzales* understanding the Slaughter the *Mogols* had made of the *Arracam* Army, and that they were possess'd of the  
the



the Kingdom of *Balua*, he sets out with his Fleet, plundering and destroying with Fire and Sword all the Forts of *Arracam* that lie along the Coast, and were then unprovided, and confiding in the Peace that was between them. He had the Impudence to go up to *Arracam*, where as the Matter was more, so was the Destruction, there were burnt many Merchant Ships of several Nations. The King was highly concerned at these Losses, though not so much at those occasioned by the *Mogol*, as those he sustained by this *Portugueses*, as being all the effects of Treachery; but above all, he resented the loss of a Ship which he kept in that Port for to take his Pleasure. It was of a vast Bigness, and wonderful Workmanship, with several Apartments like a Palace, all covered with Gold and Ivory, and yet the curiosity of the Work surpassed all the rest.

12. The King seeing the Insolence and Falshood of *Sebastian Gonzales*, and that he did not, or would not, remember his Nephew was in his Power as a Hostage, he resolved to put him in mind; and causing a Stake to be run through him, made him be set up on a high place below the Port of *Arracam*, that his Uncle as he went out might see him. But he who had no Honour, valued not at whose Cost he advanced his own Interest. Nevertheless the guilt of so many Villanies began to touch his Conscience, and being come to *Sundiva*, he began to apprehend some heavy Punishment would fall upon him, which he had little means to avert, for all

Men looked upon him as a Traytor unworthy of any Favour. The *Arracams*, because he betrayed them to the *Mogol*; and the *Mogols*, because he was so false to those that trusted him. But what he did not expect from those we call *Barbarians*, he shall obtain of the *Portugues* Government in *India* which shall assist him, and both he and they that Relieve him shall receive their just Reward, as will appear under the Government of *D. Hierome de Azevedo*.

---

## C H A P. IX.

*Of the Governour Andrew Furtado de Mendoça, in the Year 1609.*

1. **M**ost Men appear fit for publick Employments before they have them, and afterwards wholly incapable of them; It was not so with *Andrew Furtado*, for every body esteemed him fitter to Govern when he was placed in that Power, than they had done before, and yet there was none before but wished to see him in that Post. The Arts by which he gained this Esteem, were Valour, Generosity, Liberality, and Affability. And being now advanced to this Command, he confirmed the good Opinion the World had conceived of him, by being courteous to his Inferiors, and not lifting himself above those who had been his Equals.

2. When

2. When a private Captain he dressed costely, now being Governor plainer than a private Captain. The Work-houses were his Rooms of State, the Shore his Garden. His thoughts were full of great Undertakings; but considering how small a Bank there was for such Designs, he gathered the Council of *Goa*, the Chief Gentry, and richest Men of that City. Being assembled, he made a Speech, representing the great Progress the *Hollanders* had made in *India*, and exhorting them with their Persons and Purse to be assisting to expel them.

3. They all assured him there should be nothing he could propose, but they would forward to the utmost of their power. This was soon made good, for within two months and a half he had a great Fleet, well manned and provided. All Men were in expectation of the Effect of those great Preparations, when on the first of *September* there appeared at a great distance several Sail that seemed to be of bulk. It was concluded they were *Hollanders*. Our Governor hearing of it, run down to the Shore, and in a few hours made ready some Ships and Galliot, saying, *Now shall they see how Andrew Furtado with these light Vessels boards their three Deck Ships. The time is come.*

4. Just as he came out to order Affairs, so without returning to Court was he going aboard, without calling any Body; but this his Resolution being known, there soon flocked to him as many Men as there was occasion for. So it happened to King *Ema-*

*nucl* (whom he now seemed to imitate) who hearing the danger *Arzila* was in, set out Post, and without beating Drum by that his speed presently raised a great Army. But as the Governor was spreading Sail, advice was brought that they were no Enemies, but Ships from *Portugal*, that brought a new Viceroy.

5. This was *Ruy Lorenzo de Tavora*, who sailed from *Lisbon* at the end of *October* with four Galleons and a Caravel, and had Wintered in the Island of *Ibo*. Those who came received a double satisfaction, one in their safe arrival, the other in seeing that Port of *Goa* covered with such a number of Ships, as represented the past more happy times.

6. Many were sorry *Furtado* was so soon deprived of that Government, for the great hopes they had conceived of his good Fortune, and Heaven seemed to favour his continuance, by the Death of the Count *de Feyra*, who was going to that Command.

7. Even the Viceroy that went to succeed him was troubled; for seeing that Bay full of many so Ships and in such Order, he asked; *Who governed India?* and being told that *Andrew Furtado*, he replied, *I thought so, for the greatness of this Work assured me it could have no other Author. I am sorry I came now to India to take this Command; because it is a hindrance to the great Actions might be expected from such a Governor.*

8. Since this untimely arrival of the Viceroy, has cut off what might be expected from *Furtado's* Government, let us Epitomize



mize what he acted under others. At 16 Years of Age he was in *Africk*, when the unfortunate King *Sebastian* went over thither. Then passed over into *India*, and having performed some Military Exploits, had the Command of ten Ships, with which he relieved the Fort of *Braçalor* besieged by King *Sincarnoboro*. He not only raised the Siege, but reduced the King to become Tributary to *Portugal*; then falling upon those that had combined with him, destroyed their Countries with Fire and Sword, and took one of the chiefest with all his Vessels, putting all the Men to the Sword. He took several Ships of *Meca*, defeated the great General *Cotimuza*, destroyed another Fleet at *Manar*, taking many Ships, slew the King of *Jasapatan* that was in Rebellion, ruined a Fleet of *Malabars* that did us great harm on those Seas; raised the Siege *Raju* had laid to *Columbo*, levelled the Formidable Fort of *Cunnale*, bringing him and his Nephew Prisoners to *Goa*; drove the *Hollanders* from *Ambryna* and *Sunda*, reduced the *Rosatelo's* then in Rebellion, gained many strong holds in the Islands of *Ito*, *Nao* and *Veranula*; and being Commander of *Malaca* held out a Siege of four Months against the *Hollanders* and 11 neighbouring Kings.

9. It was great to overcome so many Enemies, but far greater to conquer himself. In the dead of Night a Woman got into his Apartment, offering him her Daughter, moved thereto by extream want. After a severe Reprimand, he charges her to marry

the Daughter, and gives her a Purse of Money, with assurance he would make up the Portion.

10. All these great Actions he had performed at the Age of 45, besides many more which in another had been considerable, but not of Note to him. He was as to his Quality of the best of *Portugal*. Having governed three Months, he Embarqued for *Portugal*, died by the way of the Jaundice, and lies in the Church of our Lady of Grace in *Lisbon*. Of Stature he was somewhat tall, his Complexion tawny, of Body lean, and was the 4<sup>th</sup> Governor, and 2<sup>d</sup> of the Sirname.

## C H A P. X.

*The Government of the Vice-Roy Ruy Lorenço de Tavora, from the Year 1609, till 1612.*

1. Scarce was Ruy Lorrenço de Tavora settled in the Government, when there came in 5 Ships from *Portugal*, which with the same number that carried him made 10, and consequently a great number of Men that went in them.

2. About the beginning of the Year were set out the usual Squadrons, but more numerous and better manned than usual, by reason of the great Preparations before spoke of, and the Men that came newly. At the

the same time came from *Libon* 3 Ships for *India*.

3. The greatest Action at this time was in *Ceylon*, where *D. Hierome de Azevedo*, who had that Command, went on with the usual Success that always attended him in that Post. He marched with 700 *Portugueses* and 25000 *Lascarines* (that is *Cbingala* Soldiers) to assault the City *Candea*, and finding by the way the Fort of *Balane* abandoned, left *Antony de Costa Monteyro* in it with two Companies. Then advancing to the River of *Candea*, and finding it well fortified, nevertheless he attempted to pass it, receiving the Enemy's Fire, which for some time did no Execution. Yet our Men gave way till *F. Gaspar de la Madalena*, a *Franciscan*, ran into the River holding up a Crucifix and encouraging them, whereupon they charged and drove the Enemy from their Works, who fled to the Mountains abandoning the City, which was burnt, and such as could be overtaken slain.

4. This Success so thoroughly reconciled the King of *Candea* to us, that he admitted the Conversation of the *Franciscans*, and put his two Sons into their Hands to be bred Christians. Thus the Peace was concluded, and he writ to our King *Philip* to Compliment him upon his accession to the Crown, testifying the great Affection he bore him, and desiring to be esteemed among the Princes of *Asia*, as one that most desired his Correspondence.

5. The Moor *Abdala Carima*, *Tanadar* of *Nizamaluco*, who, besides his natural hatred to the *Portugueses*, was malicious on account that he had lost half a hand by them, disturbed the Peace at *Chaul*. His Pretence was receiving his Prince's Revenue, wherein he proceeded with much Insolence ; and we on our part bore much, rather than break into open War.

6. Our Commander, *D. Francis Rolim*, complained to *Nizamaluco*, who answered with Threats, that he would fit out a Fleet, and that the *Hollanders* were already in that Sea. To be as good as his Word, he set out 30 *Paraos*, which robbed all that came in their way belonging to the *Portugueses*. The *Tanadar* being thus backed, hearing that *George Henrique* was gone out to a Wood, he killed him, and took his Wife and two Daughters.

7. The People of *Chaul* pressed the Commander to commence the War, he having no Orders from the Viceroy, and but few Men ; yet sent out 16 Men with two Officers one Night, they found 30 Moors near the Pagod of *Ramaceyra*, and killing half of them retired. *Peter Cornejo* with 30 Men fell upon the Village of *Tal*, killed the Inhabitants, burnt the Houses, and sunk two Vessels that were in the Port. Tho' this was a sufficient Revenge against the *Tanadar*, yet knowing some Men value not their Honour, whilst their Persons are untouched, it was thought fit to make him feel some part himself.

8. To



8. To this purpose D. Francis Rolim marched to *Upper Chaul* with 350 Men in three Bodies, one Commanded by him, another by *Michael de Abreu*, and the third by *Calleyros*. *Abreu* entred first into a narrow Street which ended in a broad Place where the Enemy was drawn up, and with their first fire killed our Captain and two Soldiers. *Rolim* coming up, they made way into the broad Place, and revenged the Death of those three, with the slaughter of many Enemies, the rest saving themselves by flight. Thus they came to the *Tanadar's* House, which being forsaken by him was burnt; the same happened to a whole Street, where the Moors had renewed the Fight, firing out of the Houses. Marching out of the Town victorious, they killed all that had Life in the Fields, so that Town and Country were covered with dead Bodies.

9. At the end of this Year arrived at *Goa* three Ships from *Portugal*. In *October* sailed from *Lisbon* two Caravels, in *November* one Galleon, in which went *Antony Pinto de Fonseca* with the Title of Visitor and Proveditor of the Forts in *India*, as if no Viceroy had been there; in *December* another Galleon, in which went a Patent for D. *Hierome de Azevedo*, to succeed in that Government.

10. The War being begun at *Chaul*, both Parties encreased, and several Skirmishes happened, in which the *Portugueses* always had the best, till D. *Francis de Sotomayor* came thither with the Northern Fleet,  
and

and left there three Vessels. Being thus reinforced, our Men took the Field, and offered Battel to the Moors, who were also increased. *Antony Furtado de Mendoza* advancing too far with only two Men was killed, and the *Portugues* Body coming up worsted; for though they did great Execution, being drawn into an Ambush, *Gonzalo de Abreu* was killed, his Country-House lost, afterwards the War went on with less vigour.

11. Whilst this happened at *Chaul*, *Nuno de Cunha* fought the *English* at *Suratt* with more valour and Success. He had four Gallions well manned, but ill provided with Gunners, for they were ignorant and fearful. He found in that Port a great *English* Ship and a Ketch, which had a short fight between the little Island of *John de Nova* and the Bank called *Baxo de la India*, beyond the Cape of *Good Hope*, with two Ships of ours, of three that this year sailed from *Lisbon* for *India*, one whereof commanded by *D. Luis de Gama* making for *Zacotora*, was drove by a violent Storm between the Islands called *Dos Hermanos*, whence he got late to *Goa*, after losing four hundred Men; some by the Fatigue of the Sea, and others through the Miseries they endured in defence of the Ship, and the Cruelty of that barbarous People.

12. When the *English*, whose Ships were excellent Sailers, discovered our heavy Vessels, though they had cause to fear their number, they undervalued them by reason  
of

of that fault. They presently ingaged us in the Evening, and fought till dark Night parted them, having killed 30 of our Men. As soon as Day appeared they fell to it again, and two of our Galleons running to Board the two *English* Vessels, were stuck on the Sands, there being too little Water for the Galleons. The *Pink* seeing them aground, kept firing its Cannon upon one till the Evening Tide brought it off. The great Ship kept the other two Galleons that were a float in play all that Day. The third day all the Galleons being afloat made up to board the Enemy, but they who relied on their Cannon and swiftnes, made away to *Castelec*, a Bay of the Pyrats of *Diu*.

13. *Luis de Brito* who plied upon that Coast with some small Vessels gave advice to *Cunna*, that the *English* were in that Port. He sailed thither, and they fought two whole Days, in which time our Ships, by reason of their heaviness, could never board them; at length the *English* stood away, having put up black Colours in token their Captain was killed; they lost many Men, and slew many of ours. They made to *Surratt*, *Cunna* followed; they left the Port, and *Cunna* returned to *Goa*, where then *D: Hierome de Azevedo* had been Governor two Months.

14. Some time before 5 Galiots set our for *China* and two Merchant Ships for *Japan*, they all Wintered at *Malaca*, the Season being unfit to Sail. Provisions were very scarce there

there, and the more now by the addition of those Men. *Michael de Sousa* sent out some Ships to get Provisions in the Neighbourhood. These met several Sail bound for *Pam* and *Jor*, laden with Spice and other Goods, which they took and brought to *Malaca*. Then sailed to *Pam* where the King of *Jor* was with a Fleet, and tho' at Peace with the *Portugueses* he went out of their way. Not far from *Patane* they took 8 Vessels richly laden, and returning with them to *Malaca*, that City was not only relieved, but enriched.

15. The Viceroy receiving Advice from *Portugal*, that a considerable Fleet was fitting out in *Holland*, with a Design against *Malaca*, he sent *James de Mendoça Furtado*, with 8 Gallions to relieve it. Being under Sail for *Pulobutum* they were dispersed by a Storm in the Golph of *Ceylon*, but met again in that Port. Four of them sailed out before the Admiral and the others, and meeting a Ship of *Java* with seventy Men who traded in the Kingdom of *Quedar*, with which we were at War, attacked it, and were well received, having four Men killed and ten much wounded; but being provoked by this loss, they boarded the Vessel and killed all in her.

16. The Admiral *James de Mendoça* continued his Voyage to *Malaca*, whence he passed not without danger of the Sea to *Pam*, to bring thence some Princes of *Borneo* who were travelling.

16. Leaving



16. Leaving those Princes at *Malaca*, *Mendoça* with *Emannel Mascarennas*, Commander of that City, went over to the Kingdom of *Pera*, understanding that three great Ships of *Guzarat*'s richly laden were in that Port, which lessened our Customs. *Mendoça* had Fifteen Ships, he entred the River, which is so narrow, only two Ships can sail abreast. He boardest the first of the three Ships, and tho' the Enemy fought well, entred her, and they set fire to her, so she perished ; the second Ship was easily taken ; the third escaped thro' our own fault, for being too busie about the Plunder of the other ; the Day was spent, and the Enemy stole away by Night. The Ship taken was brought to *Malaca*, it had 32 Guns and rich Lading. *James de Mendoça Furtado* returned to *Goa*, where he found *D. Hierome de Azevedo* was then Viceroy. *Ruy Lorenzo de Tavora* was Viceroy three Years, the 21th of that number, 41th Governor, and second of the Name and Sirname. He had more Inclination to Peace than War, which produced Concord with all the Kings of *India*, of Stature tall, his Complexion fair, aged, and a good Christian, a rare thing among Men of Quality.

## C H A P. XI.

*Of the Propagation of the Christian Faith  
in China.*

1. **T**Hough these Affairs properly appertain to the Ecclesiastical History, of which I design a particular Volume; yet for the satisfaction of those who desire some Information herein, and having at the end of the First Part said somewhat touching the first entrance of Christianity in *China*, I will here briefly relate its Progress till the Year 1640, though it be anticipating the Time, that the Relation may not be too much dismembred, and because that Order is chiefly observed by me in Martial Affairs.

2. The four Houses or Residences of *Xanchen*, *Nancham*, *Nanking*, and *Peking*, being settled, *F. Emanuel Diaz* was sent as Visitor of the three first, because *F. Matthew Rivius* could not be spared from the other, which was the Soul of them all. The Visitor-General *Valiniano* settled 30 Crowns a Year upon each Residence, finding it sufficient to cloath and maintain the Religious who were to live there, that they might not obstruct the advancement of the Faith by the necessity of asking any thing.

3. The Visitor sent new Fathers to all the Residences. In the Year 1604, *Cuitayso* was Baptized,

Baptized, till then he only gave ear to it, but was the cause that many were converted, and procured the Foundation at *Nanking*. He was called *Ignatius*. In the Year 1606, died the Visitor *Valiniano* at *Macao*; *Nicholas Pimenta* succeeded him.

4. *F. Matthew Rivius* died at *Peking* in the Year 1610; the King appointed his place of Burial, and allotted his Companions a House and Church. The *Mandarins* and others celebrated his Funeral with great demonstrations of esteem. He was the first buried in that country, for all that died before were carried to *Macao*.

5. The Year 1613, the Religious were expelled *Hanchen*, and coming to the City *Nanbiinn* built a Church there, and afterwards others. In the Year 1616, there were 7 Residences, two at *Peking*, one of them without the Walls, one at *Nanking*, one at *Hanchen*, one at *Nancham*, one at *Caiyen*, and one at *Nanbiinn*. In them all were 22 Fathers, the Converts amounted to 6000, among them many Nobles, Lawyers and Mandarines, and some Bonzo's.

6. The Year 1617, the Religious were expelled from all their Residences, the Persecution began at *Nanking*. Some escaped to *Quantung* and *Macao*, 14 remained hid in *China*, who were afterwards called by other Cities to erect new Foundations. One was at *Kiencham*, in the Province of *Kiangsi*, through the means of a Lawyer who was converted, and christned *Stephen*. Another at *Xambay*, in the Country of *Paul* the Doctor.

stor. Another at *Quartim*, in the Province of *Nanking*, which City it could serve without a Residence there; but the Fathers were restored to it by the assistance of Doctor *Michael*, a great Admirer of them and of Christianity, and afterwards one of the most famous Preachers of the Gospel. By degrees the Persecution ceased, and the Fathers were every where restored. Two new Residences were erected in the Cities of *Xanfi* and *Xenfi*, and some of those that had been banished returned from *Macao*.

7. The Year 1622, two other Residences were settled in the Province of *Fokien*, another at *Xanfi*, another at *Xenfi*, another at *Honan*. All things went on successfully, and the Year 1630 the Converts came in by hundreds, afterwards by thousands.

8. In the Year 1634, there were in *China* 22 *European* Fathers and 4 Brothers, greatly esteemed by the Mandarins and other Persons of Note. A Prince of the Province of *Xantung* sent for some Fathers to hear their Doctrine, so did other Provinces afterwards.

9. At *Peking* there were 288 Converts, among them Mandarines, Lawyers, and Soldiers, one Eunuch, and one Bonzo, which is considerable, they being a sort of Priests; he converted his Father, and some Relations.

10. At *Nanking*, 70 Converts, and a Noble Eunuch of 75 Years of Age. The Christians here were so zealous, that when the Fathers removed, a Lawyer and his Nephew carrying



carrying the Vestments and other Church-stuff on their backs, and being told by the Father, *The Servants might do it*: They replied, "It was not fit any body should carry the Things of the Church, but they who were proud to be Porters to *Jesus Christ*."

11. At *Kiamcheu* and *Pucheu* almost 2000 Converts, at a time when the three greatest Calamities of this World succeeded each other. The first was Famine, which raged to that degree they eat one another; two Women were shot to Death, being convicted of eating 40 Children. A Father and Mother, rather than see their Child perish in their Arms, cast it into a River, and themselves after it. Others buried a Child alive; a Christian, call'd *Peter*, saved both the Children, and brought them up. The next Calamity was War; and the third the Plague.

12. At *Hanchen*, in the Province of *Chekiang*, the Converts amounted not to 150. At *Xambay* 400. At *Narcham* only 26. At *Quiencham* 80. In the City *Fokien* 257, and many in the Country. At *Singam* not 100, by reason of the Famine that raged; as at *Quiamcheu* they eat the Dead, ground Stones, and used the Dust in stead of Meal. Some at *Hoachen* and the Neighbourhood. At *Honan* but 30. In the Kingdom of *Hannam*, which the *Portugueses* call *Tonking*, almost 100000.

13. *Thomas*, a Native of *Thinboa*, laboured in the Kingdom of the *Lao's*. That  
N Pec-

People is white, good conditioned, and have no Thieves among them. Those of *Hannam* undervalue them for eating of Vermin. They wear narrow Gowns, their Feet bare, the Head commonly uncovered, their Hair round and short like a Lay-Brother, only one Lock on the Temples, which is run through holes made to that purpose in the Ears, they adore an Idol called *Theica*, with the same Ceremonies those of *Hannam* worship their *Tham*. They Trade into this Kingdom their Merchandize, Elephants, *Buda's* Skins, Benjamin, and Amber.

14. At *Dangthan* 2441 Converts, and many at *Thinboz*. At *Nighiban* 4200, the Residence is at *Rumo*; there are 26 Churches, and the Divine Offices are celebrated with much magnificence. In *Bochinh*, a half Province next *Cochinchina*, 130 were Baptized. In an Orchard here was found a Tree brought from the *Laos*, the Leaves whereof gain him that carries them the Affection of all he meets, and Reconcile them if Enemies. Being examined whether it was not Superstition, it was judged to be a Natural Virtue.

15. In the Year 1635, there were not above 3300 Converted among all the Residences. The House at *Chincheo* was then first founded. A Church was erected in the Town of *Tunchum*, and another in the City *Chanchen*. Now there will be a greater Fruit reaped, because the King protects and countenances the Religious, and their Doctrine; and in the Year 1638, gave them

2000 Taes or Crowns to buy a House and Land. He also granted them (what was more than they could have wished) to put over their Door this Inscription, *I the King Approve of and Protect the Science of Heaven.*

16. In fine, there are now in *China* this Year 1640. above 100000 Catholicks, and among them many Nobles, Mandarines, some Bonzos and Eunuchs. Of Mandarines and Colao's, the most admirable were 3 or 4 *Pauls*, one *Michael*, one *Ignatius*, one *Leo*, and one *Stephen*, who were not only Converted, but Preached the Faith with great Elegancy, and much Profit. The great Colao *Paul* herein surpassed all others.

17. The Jesuits at this time in *China* have twelve principal Residences in the chief Provinces and capital Cities; under these above 500 private Oratories, with hundreds of Christians belonging to each. They have also gained good footing about the Neighbouring Countries, as in *Tomking*, *Cochinchina*, *Cambodia*, *Laos*, and other Kingdoms. In these last Countries, between 10 and 15000 Souls are converted every Year.

18. The King of *China* himself casts down Idols, and orders the Prince his Son to fall down before the Images of *Jesus* and *Mary*. The Queen in her Apartment gives ear to what the converted Eunuchs say concerning our Religion. Mass is often celebrated in the Palace, and there is great hope of the King, whose Piety and Zeal have inclined him to respect the Divine

Law, infomuch that our Religious have been joyed upon his Conversion.

19. What wonderful Accidents have happened, and Miracles been wrought in the Conversion of those Christians, are set down in sundry particular Relations, and in the History of *China*, and are not so proper for this, which is only a profane History. Besides, that being miraculous to some Readers, they will appear as Fictions; those who are curious, may see them in the afore-said History and Relations. Having given the substance of what was writ on a Stone found in *China* at the end of the Second Volume, it will be needless to repeat the whole, which is long, and is no more than the same thing in many more Words. What has been said relating to *China* in these two Volumes, may deserve the Credit of all Men, as being the Observations of the Curious, as well as Learned and Pious F. *Alvaro Semmedo*, who spent 22 years, Preaching and Teaching, in that Country.

*The End of the Second Part.*

---



---

THE  
PORTUGUES  
ASIA.

---

TOM. III. PART III.

---

CHAP. I.

*The Government of the Viceroy D. Hierome de Azevedo, from the Year 1612, till 1617.*

1. **A**T the end of last Year came to *India* the King's Orders for D. *Hierome de Azevedo* to succeed *Ruy Lorenzo de Tavora* as Viceroy. This Gentleman had purchased a great Name by many Years service, and chiefly by 18 spent in *Ceylon*, a Thing rare for one who had also gathered great Riches. Not that Riches make a Man incapable of a good Name, but because commonly the means of acquiring them contribute much to stain it. The Fame of his Substance contributed as much as that of his Valour to his Promotion

to this Employment, it being thought, that he who had so much, would be less guilty of those Crimes that proceed from Avarice; whereas Experience teaches, that those who have most covet most. But D. *Hierome* had offered to accept of that Post without the usual Salary, yet afterwards he received it, making that a Crime by breaking his Promise, which had been none if not offered.

2. On *Christmas* Eve *Ruy Lorenzo de Tavora* delivered him the Sword; and the first thing he did. was to forbid the payment of Debts contracted by his Predecessor, who resolved not to depart *India* till the payment of them was secured, as well for his own Reputation, as in respect no Viceroy for the future would be able to get any Money advanced upon the urgent Necessities of the State, if that ill Precedent was given, and his Debts were all on the account of the Publick. At length it was concluded, they should be paid as *Tavora* had ordered. The next Action of the Viceroy was to dispatch *Danibeque* *Sedesable* Ambassador from *Abas* the *Xa* or King of *Persia*, who falsely courted the Friendship of all those Princes he designed to spoil, promising each great Advantages, and stirring them up one against the other. Thus he Treated with King *Philip* in *Spain*, and King *James* in *England*, which he foud most suitable to his Designs. Thus he had taken the Island *Baharem*, and strove to possess himself of *Ormuz*.

3. *Da-*

3. *Danisbeque* was returned from *Spain* with the Answer of his Embassy; and besides, what the King had given him in return for a Present of Silks he carried, the Viceroy had Orders to add something at his discretion. He added the value of 12000 Crowns in Spice, which in *Persia* was worth much more; and having nobly entertained him, sent away with him *D. F. Antony de Gouvea* Bishop of *Sirene*, who also came from *Spain*, and went to propogate Christianity, which had but a slender beginning there. The Bishop went no farther than *Ormuz*, for the *Persians* being already ill-affected towards him, he feared it would be worse when the Embassador had delivered his Answer. So it happened, for the King finding the Embassador brought not the Return he expected, caused him to be killed, and obliged 6000 *Armenians* to renounce the Faith.

4. The Viceroy as well versed in the Affairs of *Ceylon*, gave the necessary Orders for its preservation, recommending the putting them in execution to *Antony Vaz Freyre*, Surveyor of the Revenue in that Island. *Antony Pinto de Fonseca*, who had served well in *Flanders*, and was now Visitor of the Forts in *India*, with the Viceroy's Leave went to perform the Duties of his Employ, *D. Henry de Noronna* being confirmed in the Command of the Coast of *Malabar* given him by *Ruy Lorenzo*, united the Kings of *Vanguel*, *Sierra*, and *Carnate*, against *Ventapanaique*, on pretence of their safety; where-

as indeed it was to secure our selves against him, in whose Dominions we held *Braçador* and *Ouor*.

5. This done, D. Henry steered for the Coast of *Malabar* with 28 Sail. *Andrew Coello* was sent by the late Governour with 3 Ships to relieve *Palicate* and *Siriam*, and being now driven by strefs of Weather to *Columbo*, they were beaten to pieces on that Coast, but the Men saved.

6. When D. *Hierome* came from *Ceylon* to be *Viceroy*, he gave the supream Command there to *Fran. Rojo*, a Man of unknown Birth, but noted Valour, and by his Courage had attained to the greatest Preferments. It was since found, that he was of the Family of *Meneses*, as being Son to D. *James Count de Ericeyra*, and Grandson to D. *Henry de Meneses*, who was Governour of *India*.

7. This D. *Francis de Meneses Rojo* being General in that Island, and understanding the King of *Candea* lay before the Fort of *Balane*, and the Commander *Emanuel Falcam* was in some danger, he instantly set out with a very small number, spreading his Orders for all Men to follow, and marched 10 Leagues afoot that day. In three he reached *Balane*, and the King at the sight of him raised the Siege. D. *Francis* relieved the Fort, and returned with Glory to his Quarters, destroying all the Enemy's Country.

8. The *Tanadar* of *Chanl* meditating Revenge for the Losses he had sustained by us the last Year, hired some Moors *Naytia's* that



that lived in *Caranja*, and were free with the *Portugueses* to kill *Baltasar Rabello de Almeida* Commander of that Fort. They guided by *Melique Balane*, entred suddenly when he was at Supper, and killed him and a Sister-in-Law of his. This done, they shut themselves in, but the *Portugueses* forcing the Gates, put them all to the Sword. *Ferdinand de Sampaio & Cunna* succeeded in the Widow and Command. About the middle of *April*, *Abascan* General of the Enemy led a great Body of them to revenge the Death of the others on *Caranja*. He could not be prevented entring the Town, but being in disorder killing and plundering, *Simon Kangel* with 17 *Portugueses* doing great Execution, began to put the *Moors* to flight, whilst *Cunna* coming on another way with few Men, they made a great slaughter. This was a warning to the *Naytia's* not to return to *Caranja*. Afterwards *Cunna*, not satisfied with what he had done, ravaged their Country, and brought away above 3000 Prisoners. He shewed much Generosity, when two *Moors* being brought to him for entring a Place forbid them upon pain of Death, he set them at liberty; because being asked, How they durst come thither without a safe Conduct; one of them answered, "That they had done it, relying on the Fame of his Courtessie, to ransom certain Kindred of theirs.

9. *Ruy Freyre de Andrade*, who cruized on that Coast with a Squadron of small Ships, understanding that *Nizamaluco*, since the War broke out at *Ghaul*, spread it as far as *Salsete*

*Jete* and *Agacaim*, he repaired thither. In a Village between *Caranja* and *Tana*, he cut off some Moors that opposed him, and put the rest to flight. Higher they discovered 500 Moors, and an Elephant with a Castle on his Back, in which were two Cannons. Twelve Soldiers landed, a Captain with 80 Horse attacking them was shot dead, our Men seeing the Enemy halt, stood some time, and then *George Marino* sent to challenge their Leader, but he not accepting of it they returned aboard.

10. From *Tana Freyre* sent some Ships to relieve the Town of *Agacaim*, which being indanger'd by the Moors, run a greater hazard through the discord of the Inhabitants. They were but 50 Families, yet all full of Division, and *Ruy Freyre* could no way reconcile them. Every one said he was able to defend all their Houses, and all together could not defend one ; for 2000 Moors soon forced them thence into the Monastery of *St. Francis*, shewing them how great difference there is betwixt saying and doing, between Animosity and Discretion. *Freyre* carried the Women and Children to *Bacaim*, and then relieved *Manora*, passing through multitudes of Enemies who expected him ashore, and fought resolutely, insomuch that one laid hold of the Colours, on which was the Picture of the Blessed Virgin, carried by *Emanuel Ambrosio*, the Moor was shot dead. He got into the Fort without losing one Man, having killed and wounded many, and after securing all things there, return-  
to

ed to the Mouths of the Rivers of *Tana*, where he behaved himself well.

11. The Affairs of *Agacaim* grew worse, for fresh Troops of *Melique* resorting thither, *Ruy Freyre* was obliged to return to their assistance. At his coming he saw the Enemy was firing *John de Caldas* his House, where he had fortified himself, and *James Rodriguez Caldera*, a Soldier well known for his Valour, was let down by a Rope to quench it, as he did. *Freyre* with much difficulty brought off those that were left, and carried them to *Bacaim*. There he landed, and joining the Commander of the Fort, and Men of the Northern and *Diu* Fleets, they pursued a Body of Moors, till it was thought fit to retire, for fear of an Ambush. A few Days after, *Freyre* and the Northern Squadron being gone to convoy a Fleet that lay at *Damam* for fear of Pirats, *Andrew Pereyra de Sousa* with three Companies was drawn into an Ambush, and not a Man of them escaped.

12. The Moors at the upper *Chaul* were drawn into the like snare by *D. Emanuel de Azevedo*, Commander of that Place, a Man well skilled in Military Affairs, having gained Experience by several Years Service in *Ceylon*.

13. The Necessities of *Damam*, represented by the People and their Commander *Nunno Alvarez Pereyra*, obliged *Ruy Freyre* to make some stay there. The Case was, that among other Enemies the King of the *Sarcetus*, who lives in intricate Woods which  
serve

serve him for defence, had sent out Parties of Horse and Foot which destroyed and carried away all they found in the neighbouring Villages. Freyre gathering about 200 Men from *Damam*, *Maim* and *Trapor*, fell upon 600 of the Enemy in their Woods and Works before Day when they were all asleep, slew a great number of them, and retired with a considerable Booty, burning all that could not be carried away. Above 700 of the Enemy pursued him, but not daring come too near, he retired in good Order and got into *Damam* with Honour.

14. D. Henry de Noronna had detached *George de Castilo* with some small Vessels towards Cape *Comori* to convoy the Fleet of *Turocori*. There he discovered a Galliot that carried 170 Moors. *Francis de Sousa Pereyra* with his little Ship in which were but 16 Souldiers bore down upon her, *Castillo* sends two more to second him, and they discovering some Ships of *Bengala*, leave him to follow them. Those of the Galliot seeing our small Vessel forsaken, fire their Cannon upon her, which killed three of the Men that rowed, and the rest leaped into the Sea. The Moors board her, and all our Men were either killed or taken.

15. In May, *Nunno de Cunna* sailed from *Goa* for *Bacaim* to succeed *Ruy Dias de Sampayo* as Admiral of the North Sea; his Squadron consisted of 13 Ships, in which were 400 chosen Souldiers, designed to carry on the War against *Melique*, who was grown strong. By the way he had some Encounters

not



not considerable enough to be related, and at the City *Galiana* after entring the Enemies Works, taking some Cannon, and killing many with the loss of one Man, was forced by a Storm to desist from his Design of burning some small Vessels.

16. Being at *Baçaim* he kept the Enemy in great awe, notwithstanding they had 400 Horse and as many Foot, whereas we had but 30 Horse and 160 Foot. Several were killed in Skirmishes this Winter, the number of theirs not known, on our side 40. On *All Saints Day* the Enemy came on through a Plain, having to distract us made a feint of coming through the Water. Their Horse having made *Antony Pinto de Fonseca* give way, were bogged, and our Men rallying upon them, killed, and took some, putting the rest to flight. *Francis Tavares* who carried *Lope Sarmiento's* Colours, stripped and wrapped them about his Arm, charging the Enemies with the Spear, till being thrown down he lay upon the Colours, so that they could not be taken from him, but the *Portugueses* coming into his assistance he rose, and tho' the Blood run from him, fell in again among the Moors.

17. During all this time the Moors shewed such respect to the Christian Churches, as may well confound Christians themselves. The *Portugueses* made use of two Churches dedicated to our B. Lady, putting 50 Men into each, and tho' thence they annoyed the Enemy, yet the Moors never made one shot at them, because some of them had there  
reco-

recovered their Health, making Vows which they punctually paid.

## C H A P. II.

*Continues the Government of the Viceroy  
D. Hierome de Azevedo, in the  
Year 1613.*

1. **I**T was the fate of the Fort of *Mombaca* to have insolent Commanders. *Emanuel de Melo Pereyra* herein exceeded many of his Predecessors treating the King *Sultan Hazen* with unexpressible disrespect. The chief Promoter of the Disagreement betwixt *Melo* and the King was his Uncle *Munganaje*, an old Man, who, pretending much Zeal for our Affairs, aimed at the Crown. He vented his Malice one day by giving out in the Fort, the King designed to kill them all.
2. *Melo* resolved to attack the King's House, but he being sensible how fruitless any excuses would be, fled with the Christian Colours to the Town *Quelisi* of the *Cafres* seven Leagues distant. That People pressed him to reinthroned himself by force, but he several times withstood their Importunities.
3. At length not able to prevail upon him they marched without him, and entred the Town of the Moors, but they were all retir'd into our Fort. The *Cafres* not thinking good

good to assault the Fort, were upon their return, when *Emanuel de Melo*, who observed them, pursuing and falling suddenly on them, cut off the best Part. A few days after the King returned to his House, and having excused himself to our Commander thought he was satisfied, but he only dissembled his Malice, as shall appear hereafter.

4. Our Fortune in *Pegu* now declined with the same swiftness it had rise, and it was just a wicked encrease should have a sudden detriment. The violence committed by *Philip de Brito Nicote* on the King of *Tangu*, provoked the Anger of the King of *Oua*, under whose Protection he was. Scarce had he heard the News, when casting on the Ground his Gown and Veil, he vowed to the Idol *Biay* of *Degu*, he would not enter within his Gates till this Quarrel was revenged. He marched with 120000 Men, having put to Sea 400 Vessels of considerable strength, in which were above 6000 of those Moors of noted Valour (called *de Capernaça*, or that wear Caps. All that was without the Walls of *Siriam* he burnt, but met with vigorous opposition at that Place, notwithstanding *Nicote* was quite unprovided, having suffered most of his Men to go for *India*, and being scarce of Powder, as who had fired the vast quantity of it found at *Tangu*. In this distress he sent a Soldier to buy Powder at *Bengala*, and he run away with the Money; and having sent for some to the Town of *St. Thomas*, they sent

sent him none. Besides, those few *Portugueses* that were with him committed such Outrages, Robberies and Murders as seemed to hasten his Ruine.

5. For want of Powder there was no firing of Cannon, they poured boiling Pitch and Oil upon the Enemy. His number of Men might suffice, having 100 *Portugueses* and 3000 *Peguos*. *Nicote* sends out three Ships against the Fleet, in one of them all the Men were slain, the two retired with all theirs wounded. The Enemy began to undermine the Works, and the Besieged laboured much, but to small purpose. After the Siege had lasted 34 Days, *Nicote* sent to beg Mercy, but was not heard. He thought to prevail by the means of the King of *Tangu* whom he had robbed of his Crown, Riches and Liberty, but the King of *Ova* understood, and was resolved to punish him.

6. The King of *Arraçam* whom he had so grievously offended, sent 50 Sail to his Assistance, which were all taken by the Besiegers. The King of *Ova* gives an assault, and they fought three days without intermission; the end of it was, that 700 of the Besieged were slain, one *Banna* whom *Nicote* had always honoured having betrayed him. *Nicote* was taken, carried to the King, and by him ordered to be impaled, and set up in an Eminence above the Fort, that he might the better look to it, as the King said. He lived two Days in that misery. His Wife *De Luísa de Saldanna* was kept 3 Days



Days in the River to be cleansed, because the King designed her for himself, but being brought before, and exclaiming against him, he ordered her Leg to be bored, and that she should be sent to *Ova* among the other Slaves.

7. *Francis Mendez* and a Nephew of his were treated as *Nicote*. *Banna* demanding a Reward was soon torn to pieces, the King saying, He could never be true to him that betrayed the Man who so much had honoured him. *Sebastian Rodriguez* was cooped up with a Yoke about his Neck. At first the King designed not to spare any of the Inhabitants of that Place, but growing calm, he sent many Slaves to *Ova*. Then passing by *Martavam* he obliged that King to kill his own Daughter's Husband, because he was *Nicote's* Son, that none of the Race might remain. This was the end of that Man's Avarice, who being naked a few years before, was raised to be worth 3 Millions; he had one when he went to *Goa*, brought another from *Tangu*, and had got at least another since by Prizes and Trade. The Enemy confessed they lost at that Siege 30000 Men.

8. But that it may appear that seldom any great Calamity happens without the help of a Woman, it is necessary to show how *Nicote's* Wife was one of the Principal Causes of his Ruin. She entertained one of his Captains as her Gallant, and perceiving the *Portugueses* censured their familiarity, they persuaded *Nicote* he had no need of them,

O

which

which was the reason they were dismissed, and that the cause of his Ruine.

9. Our Viceroy understanding the danger of *Siriam*, and thinking to relieve it in time, sent thither *James de Mendoca Furtado* with 5 Galliot. He had orders to act something by the way, and endeavour to strengthen himself by the addition of some other Ships and Men, which he effected not till he came to *Martavam*, where in the River he found a Fleet of 20 Sail, which after a sharp Engagement fled, except 4 that were taken with some Men, from whom he heard what had happened at *Siriam*, so that there was no need to go farther.

10. Not long before this set out from *Goa* for *China* *John Cayado de Gamboa* with 3 Galleons, and was to join *Michael de Sousa Pimentel*, who was there with 4 others to secure our *China* Trade against the *Hollanders*, who were this Year very strong in those Seas. One of the 3 Galleons was cast away near *Sanchem* 60 Leagues from *Macao*, the Sea then running so high that it drowned several Towns. There were above 200 Men in that Vessel, whereof about 60 *Portugueses* and 80 others escaped. They chose *Gonzalo Machado* a noted Souldier to command them, and having the good Fortune to be well treated, cloathed and fed by the *Chineses*, came to a City where they were so nobly entertained, they had almost forgot the end of their Voyage. Their common Food was three Pullets a day each, they were feasted on the River in stately Boats like Palaces with several

veral Apartments, and garnished with Gold. In fine, on their way thence to *Macao* they were attended as if they had been *Chinese Colas*, or *Mandarines*. At the Inns they were treated with a sort of Food most pleasant and delicious, which afterwards they were informed was made of Toads and Worms. What chiefly they admired after this Journey was the Chastity of the *Chinese Women*; for tho' they are beautiful, and Beauty be inclined to Wantonness, and though our Men were long among them and familiarly entertained, yet they could never by any means prevail with any of them to yield to their Desires. At *Macao* they found the other two Galleons, which had escaped the Storm, having more Sea room.

11. Near the end of this Year *Luis de Brito & Melo* entred the Port of *Goz* from Cruizing in the Sea of *Diu*, and brought with him a rich Ship of the *Mogol's* that came from *Meca*. He took her off of *Suratt*, after a vigorous resistance, in which he lost some Men, and was forced to send to *Ruy Freyre* for aid. This provoked the *Mogol* to Besiege *Damam*, and destroy the Country about it. The King of *Decan* did the same about *Chaul* and *Bacaim*, at the Instigation of the *Mogol*, who thought to drive us out of *Asia*.

12. A Letter writ by D. *Luis de Gama* from *Ormuz* with more Passion than Discretion, moved the *Persians* on the other side to gather 300 Barques, in order to take the Port of *Bandel*, and stop the Course of the

Water that goes to *Ormuz*. *Ferdinand de Silva* Admiral of that Sea went to quell them, and as he engaged, his Powder taking fire was blown up. *D. Nunno Alvarez Pereyra* succeeded him, who drove them away with such slaughter, that the *Xa* of *Persia* excused himself to the Viceroy, saying, that attempt was made only by the *Sultan* of *Lara*.

13. *Francis Lopez Calleyros* brought into *Malaca* a Dutch *Pink*, that had taken a rich Portugues Ship. The News of the *Hollanders* taking that Prize, was the occasion of his setting out in a Ship of his own with 28 Soldiers.

14. This Year expired with great dissatisfaction in *India* (tho' the like had happened other times) for the Ships from *Portugal*, which were expected with impatience, the better to oppose the *English* and *Hollanders*, were forced back to *Lisbon*, after having been five Months abroad ; they were four.

15. *D. Hierome de Almeйда* returning to *Portugal* with the Ships of the last Year, in the Bay of *St. Helena* met four mighty *Holland* Ships. They fought with much equal Courage and Loss. The Dutch Admiral was sunk, and ours beginning to take fire *Emanuel de Prado* & *Magallanes* rowled himself upon it till he quenched it. For this Action the Command of the Fort of *Mascate* was given him, with the Privilege of leaving it to whom he pleased in his Will. We shall see him hereafter serve well, and die valiantly in fight.



## C H A P. III.

*Continues the Government of D. Hierome de Azevedo, in the Tear 1614.*

1. **T**HE King of *Ova* grown Proud with his success against the *Portugueses* at *Siriam*, resolved to conquer all the neighbouring Princes. He caused himself to be Crowned at *Bagon*, and by the Conduct of his Brother with 50000 Men was soon Master of the Kingdom of *Tavay*. This General moves to *Tenafarim*, and Besieges it by Sea and Land. *Christopher Rabelo*, who had fled from his House at *Cochim* for some Crimes, durst attack his Fleet of 500 Sail with only 40 *Portugueses* and 70 Slaves in 4 Galliots, and put it to flight, after burning many Vessels, and killing 2000 Men.

2. The King of *Siam*, to whom that Town belonged, for joy of this Action highly honoured the Victorious *Portugueses*, and offered them leave to build a Fort in any part of his Kingdom they would chuse; to this intent sending for *James de Mendoga Furtado*, who was in that Sea with a Squadron, and offering him the Title of an Earl with a suitable Revenue; but there being too much then on our hands these offers could not be accepted of. *Furtado* in his way to *Malacca* destroyed the Towns of *Queda* and *Payles* with Fire and Sword.

3. D. *James de Vasconcelos* sailed from *Goa* with the Squadron for the North consisting of 17 Sail, he had orders to take in D. *Emanuel de Azevedo* at *Chaul* and carry him to *Diu*, being appointed Commander of that Place. By the way landing at the River *Sifardam* in *Melique's* Lands, he destroyed a Town abandoned by the Inhabitants.

4. *Azevedo* being come to *Diu*, seized on the Goods of his Predecessor *Sebastian de Macedo*, for the Money he was indebted to the King. Next he resolved to fall upon the People of *Por*, for the Damage the Trade of *Diu* sustained by their means; *Gaspar de Melo & Sampayo* was sent with a Squadron to this Expedition, who came before that City (40 Leagues distant) with much difficulty, because our Vessels could go but one at a time up a narrow Creek that leads to it, and the Enemy pour'd in showers of Bullets and Arrows from the Shore, and from the Bastions, killing 18 of our Men. The Walls were scaled on the one side, whilst our Men entred at a Breach on the other, notwithstanding the vigorous opposition of 4000 resolute Enemies, whereof many were slain, the rest fled, some into the Fields, and others to a Fort standing in the middle of the Town.

5. Those in the Fort offered Forty thousand Crowns, if we would not batter the Place. It was denied; they attacked to no purpose, and our Men forced to depart with double dissatisfaction, for refusing the offer and suffering the repulse. The City was plundered,

plundered, 1000 killed, and 300 taken; the Houses then fired being full of Perfumes cast a delightful smell.

6. *James de Vasconcelos* from *Diu* sailed with 9 Ships to the mouth of the River of *Agasaim*, where 16 *Paraos* of *Malabars* set upon him. Without the Loss of one Man he slew many, took several Prisoners, and all the *Paraos*. *Vasconcelos* himself took one of them, thinking their Commander *Percaffé* had been in it, but that Honour fell to *Michael Ferran de Castellobranco*.

7. *Ruy Freyre de Andrade* went from *Damam* to *Chaul*, to succeed in that Command to *D. Emanuel de Azevedo*, who was gone to that of *Diu*. He was ordered by the Viceroy only to secure himself within the Walls, and not attempt any thing abroad, because the Country swarmed with Enemies, and there were but few Men in the Fort. But he training many *Camponeses*, raised new Works, and forced the Enemy to withdraw with great loss.

8. *Gaspar de Melo* now commanded the Northern Squadron consisting of 16 Sail, he went to *Bacaim* understanding there was most need of his Assistance. The posture of our Affairs was much mended by this Relief, the Enemy being kept more in awe, till one day fighting from Sun to Sun, our Men without losing one Man overcame a great multitude.

9. The Fort of *Manora*, four Leagues from the mouth of the River of *Agasaim*, being besieged by the *Decariis*, and *Bacaim*

in a good Posture, *Gasspar de Melo* resolved to relieve it, and *Antony Pinto* to bear him Company; the chief of their Strength was 700 *Portugueses*. *Gasspar* one night went himself to view the Enemies Camp, and finding it stronger than he had imagined; when he returned perswaded his Men it was much weaker. He prepared them to fall on before day, which was done so successfully, that some fled at first with the surprize, and many being killed, the rest followed. Thus that Siege was raised without the Loss of one Man.

10. Hence *Gasspar de Melo* went to *Damam* again infested by the King of the *Sarceta's*, and in sight of the Enemy cut down their Woods and Orchards, they not daring to oppose him. The heat of the Sun was then so violent, that it caused a Soldier immediately to run mad, and died soon after; this was all the Loss sustained by us in that Action.

11. Then *Melo* returned to *Chaul*, where he found *Ruy Freyre de Andrade* successful over his Enemies. They marched to destroy a Wood near Upper *Chaul*, in defence whereof a great multitude of the Enemy met them, and there ensued an obstinate fight. Here *Melo* forgetting the Duty of a Captain, acted more like a private Soldier, which heat of his *Ruy Freyre* did endeavour to moderate; he now gave the advice he would not afterwards take. They returned victorious, but not without losing some Men.



12. *Freyre* being left alone, gave Orders to fall upon the Enemy, Captain *Peter Gomes Villano* answered, They had no Men. Advancing still, he again orders them to fall on, and at the same time received a Musket Shot in his Belly. His Men seeing it, began to give way, but he running forward, cried out, There is no cause to retire, I am very well; yet for some time his Life was in danger. Here it was he wanted the Advice he gave to *Melo*, yet that Resolution produced an honourable Victory.

13. *Melo* again joins *Pinto de Fonseca* at *Bacaim* in order to relieve the Fort of *Affarim*, that high Mountain that overtops the flight of Birds, and is counted impregnable. Tho' the Country swarm'd with Enemies, they conducted 200 Waggon's to that Mountain, and having relieved it returned in safety.

14. We had not the like success at *Diu*, for *Francis Sodre* being sent against the *Resbutos* at *Cocbe* with 300 Men in 13 Ships, behaved himself so indiscreetly, that they slew many of his Men, and forced him to retire to his Ships in haste, but not cowardly, for he still faced them, and did all that could be expected at such a time.

15. Our Affairs at *Mombaca* were in a very bad posture, for King *Sultan Hazen* being persecuted by his Unkle *Munganaje*, who aimed at the Crown, and by the Commander *Emanuel de Melo*, who thirsted after his Riches, was accused of Treason, those being really the Traytors who accused him. His  
 feigned

feigned Crimes being laid before the Viceroy, he rashly orders him to be brought to Goa, directing *Simon de Melo Pereyra*, who went to succeed *Emanuel de Melo* to seize him. The King understanding the Design, endeavoured to avoid being taken, and the new Commander attacking his House obliged him again to fly to *Arabaya* of the *Ca. frs.* Our Commander with Money prevailed to have him killed, and cutting off his Head sent it to Goa, as it had been a Trophy of some great Conquest. Then he puts the Government into the Hands of the Traytor *Munganaje*, joining with him *Melinde*, Brother to the deceased. But he who desired no Colleague, laid Crimes to his Charge, as was done to his Brother, and caused him to be beheaded. We shall hereafter see the Benefit reaped by this Tyranny and Treachery.

16. *Cojenitamo*, Commander of *Suratte* for the *Mogol*, with 800 Horse and some Elephants, on a sudden over-ran the Country of *Damam*, burning the Villages; and some of our Men endeavouring to put a stop to him, were drawn into an Ambush, and all slain. The Enemy comes on again with a greater Power, and was now absolute Master of the Field, when *Luis de Brito e Melo* Admiral of the North-Sea came into that Port with his Squadron, which consisted of 14 Sail, and in them 350 Souldiers. These joined 200 of *Damam*, and 70 Horse, and above 1000 other Foot. They attacked the Enemy who far exceeded them in numbers, yet drove

drove him out of those Lands, killing above 400 of them, 2 Elephants, and their Commander in Chief *Dalapute Rao*; on our side only *Antony Godinno* was slain.

17. *Luis de Brito* pursued them to the Fort of *Baroche*, and entering the Port, burnt the Town, and all the Vessels that lay there. As he returned Victorious, discovering the City of the *Resbuto's*, called *Barbute*, he resolved to attack it. A great number of them met him, and after a Fight which was long dubious, were defeated with the loss of 450. On our side died one Captain, and four others. The City was burnt, and the Heads of most of the Dead cut off, which were cast ashore near *Surat*, to be seen by the *Moors* of that place.

18. At *Bacaim* and *Chaul* there were many Skirmishes, which for brevity are omitted; but many Towns were burnt, much Plunder taken, and the Enemy on all sides kept under.

19. *Emanuel Mascarennas Homem* succeeded *D. Francis de Meneses Rojo* as General of *Ceylon*; he had Orders to curb the Insolence of the *Portugueses*, well known to the Viceroy since he Commanded there, and which did us more hurt than the Enemies Sword. We had not grown odious to the *Chingala's*, had we not provoked them by our infamous Proceedings. Not only the poor Soldiers went out to rob, but those who were Lords of Villages adding Rapes and Adulteries, which obliged that People to seek the company of Beasts on Mountains, rather than  
be

be subject to the more beastly Villanies of Men.

20. The Viceroy perceiving that *India* was not in a condition to withstand so great Enemies as was the *Mogol*, and *Xarife Melique* Commander of *Ponda*, and suspecting that *Ibrahim Idalxa* underhand supported him, sent *Antony Monteyro Corte Real*, Embassador to the latter, with a Present for the King, and another for his Favourite. Being come to *Visapor*, he had the desired Success, which was to obtain, that *Melique* should be Imprisoned at *Ponda*; that the *Hollanders*, who laboured to settle a Factory there, should be expelled. This was done by the assistance of *Vincent Ribeyro* a *Portugues*, who lived at *Visapor*, and had much interest with the Favourite.

21. At *Bacaim*, *Luis de Brito & Melo*, and *D. John de Almada* Admiral of the *Diu* Squadron, joyned *Antony Pinto de Fonseca* Commander of that place, resolving to force the Enemies Camp. They made up 1500 Men, and marched toward the Enemy, who had 1000 Horse and 1500 Foot well intrenched. Our design was to surprize them, but they had intelligence from some *Portugueses* in the City; nevertheless their Trenches were forced with the loss of 6 or 7 of our Men, and not above 500 of the Enemy escaped. This Victory secured the Inhabitants of that Country, and the Island of *Salsete*, who had suffered much during the two last Years.

22. *Zamori* possessed himself of the Kingdom of *Upper Granganor*, which was of dangerous



gerous consequence to our Town of the same Name, which he always coveted, having an Eye upon a Pagod where the ancient Emperors of *Malabar* used to be Crowned. This Neighbourhood became the more dangerous, for that the little King of *Paru*, a small Island, relying on his Friendship with *Zamori*, had began the War in the Rivers between *Cochim* and *Paliporto*. The King of *Cochim* (not without cause offended at the *Portugueses*) underhand kindled this Fire. The Viceroy sent *D. Lope de Almeyda* with one Galley and ten Ships to relieve *Cananor*. He came upon the King of *Paru*, who terrified thereat, concluded a Peace. Only the King of *Cochim* and *Zamori* now remained : an Embassy, and Presents were sent to the latter; both which he admitted, but nothing was concluded.

23. At this time arrived at *Goa* 4 Ships from *Portugal*, five came thence, but one was lost within two Leagues of *Melinde*. Of 3000 Soldiers that were shipped aboard these Vessels, not half the number came to *India*, the rest dying by the way, which was a great loss, by reason of the want of Men there was there, having so many Enemies upon them, and because these same Ships should have come the Year before, and were forced back to *Lisbon*. Three Ships homeward bound had yet worse fortune, for one was cast away at the *Maldivy* Islands; another, in which were all the Men of the former at the Island *Fayal*; where above 200 Men perished; the third arrived at *Lisbon*.

24. The

24. The Viceroy with that small Recruit resolved to go in Person to the North to meet our *European* Enemies the *English* and *Hollanders*, who were strong in these Seas, he sent before D. *Emanuel de Azevedo* with 22 Sail, who at *Suratte* joyned the two Squadrons under *Luis de Brito*, and D. *John de Almada*. They landed, and destroyed the Lands of *Cifandam* and *Diva*; the Towns of *Baroche* and *Goga* were plundered and burnt, as were six great Ships in that Bay. Hence they sailed to the City *Patane*, the Inhabitants whereof, terrified by the Flames of *Goga*, fled to the Woods; so the Town was fired without any opposition.

25. Mean while the Viceroy set out with 7 Galleons, that in which he was so large, it carried with ease 230 Men at Arms, the 30 all Gentlemen. There were besides two Pinks, one Galley, one Caravel, and five other Vessels. In all which were 1400 *Portugueses*, and much Artillery, but unskilful Gunners.

## C H A P. IV.

*Continues the Government of D. Hierome de Azevedo.*

1. **T**HE chief Design of this Squadron, which at *Suratte* joyned those three under *Azevedo*, *Brito*, and *Almeyda*, was to destroy four *English* Ships that lay in that Port. These Preparations seemed too great for such an Enterprize, but the Event proved the contrary. Being come in sight of the *English*, the Viceroy ordered the two *Pinks*, the *Caravel*, and other smaller Vessels, to lay aboard one of the Ships which was separated from the others. Having all grappled, and almost entred her, the other three coming up beat them off. The first three of our Vessels having taken fire, endeavouring to burn that of the Enemy, perished, and the *English* escaped. All this day was spent without any Success on our side; and the next nothing was done, because the Ships lay in a hole, where only one of our Gallions could come at them at once, and so might be one by one disabled by the Enemies Cannon. Some said, this was only a pretence of those who had no mind to come at them. It was attempted to burn them with Fireships, but without success.

2. The

2. The Viceroy perceiving he only lost his Time there, sailed to *Diu* to send thence Relief to *Ormuz*, having received Advice from *D. Luis de Gama* Commander of that Place, that the Fort of *Comoran* was besieged by a *Persian* Captain of *Xirav* with 14000 Men by Sea and Land. This Siege was laid by order of *Abus Xa* of *Persia*, on account that *Gama* did not pay him certain Duties due to the King of *Lara*, and the *Persian* was now possessed of that Kingdom. He was glad of this pretence of taking Arms, as desiring to possess himself of *Ormuz*, towards which he thought the Fort of *Comoran* was a good step. Nor did he miss his aim, for no sooner did the ancient Men of *Ormuz* hear that Fort was delivered, but they concluded this lost. *D. Luis* sent some Succour which hastened the Surrender, because one half of it was cut off, and the rest returned. *Andrew de Quadros* commanded at *Comoran*, he had but few Men, and less Cannon, (for always our Aim was at trade,) and was forced to surrender upon Conditions, which the Enemy never observed. This was done when the Relief of 9 Sail, sent by the Viceroy, arrived under the command of *Michael de Sousa Pimentel*, who having nothing to do there, and to shun the Distalts that happened between him and *D. Luis de Gama*, went away to *Mascat*.

3. The Viceroy returning with his Fleet from *Diu*, discovered the 4 *English* Ships a great way from *Surat* making all the sail they could, and standing to the Southward.  
He



He made the best of his way, and in the afternoon came up alone within Cannon-shot of one of them, because his Galleon was a better Sailer than the rest of the Fleet. His Gunner offered to sink her with two 40 Pounders; many opposed it, representing the other 3 Ships would come upon him, and the Fleet being out of sight, the Galleon would be lost, which would be a great discredit, besides the Damage at such a time when the Government was so poor. The Viceroy submitted to their Opinions, without obliging them to give it under their hands, thinking they would never deny it, which they did when he was accused for not doing what the Gunner proposed. The *English* returned Thanks for this kindness, firing their Cannon without Ball.

4. The Ships that this Year went from *Portugal*, carried Orders to the Viceroy, to sell all Commands and Employments that would yield Money, there being no other means than to supply the Wants of that Government. This was put in execution, and much resented, for three Reasons; one, That it had never been done before; another, Because many were debarred thereby the Right to those Places they had purchased by long Service; and the third, Because by this means those who had Money, though never so undeserving, would get those Posts.

5. The Ships that this Year sailed from *Lisbon* for *India*, in which the abovesaid Order went, were four. D. *Antony Tello*  
 Cap-

Captain of one of them being ashore when they set sail, and not able to get aboard, though he followed in another Vessel as far as the Island *Madera*, returned to *Lisbon*, and taking with him Captain *Emanuel de Prado de Magallanes*, travelled to *India* by Land, found his Ship there, and returned in her to *Portugal*. *Francis Lopez Carrasco*, Captain of another of those Ships, was left behind through neglect at *Goa* when the Ships came away, and *Francis de Magallanes* came in his Place. *John Pereyra Cortereal*, a third Captain of the same Ships, returned not without Trouble, which he overcame like a good Commander, for some of his Men mutinying, he with his own hand slew one of them, and caused two to be hanged; for which good Service he was rewarded.

6. This Year also set out from *Goa* another Ship commanded by *Francis de Brito*, which was lost off of the Islands of *Querimba*, where and at *Moçambique* the Men were saved with the Fatigues usual in those Shipwrecks. *D. Hierome Manuel*, who commanded the 4 Ships that came from *Lisbon*, returned next Year, when we shall speak of him.

7. *Abus Xa*, King of *Persia*, desiring to settle some Trade with us to vend his Silks, writ to our King, telling him, " He was weary of receiving Friars as Ambassadors, " and desiring him to send some Gentleman of Note, for he should better know how " to treat with such a one, and God and his " Majesty would be better served, because a " Religious Man out of his Cell was like a  
"Fisa

“ Fish out of the Water. D. *Garcia de Silva* & *Figueroa* a Spanish Gentleman, well qualified for that Employment, was sent to him. He carried a rich and beautiful Present, and of rare Workmanship in Silver and Gold, set with precious Stones. He went from *Madrid* to *Lisbon*, thence to *India*, where he was to receive further Instructions, and 20000 Crowns consigned on the Custom-house of *Ormuz* for his expence, besides what he had before received, because his Equipage was very great. Thus far we had an account of this Embassy; hereafter we shall see that *Ormuz* was lost, which was what the *Persian* coveted; so that it seems the Embassy did not divert him from that Thought.

8. The *Blacks* besieged the City of *St. Thomas*, and raising a Fort, they put in Ammunition and 600 Men, spreading 20000 about the Town, which they battered from the Pagod near *St. Francis*. Captain *Emanuel de Fria* besieges the Fort, which was surrendered to him for want of Water. Among the Cannon found in it, there was one Piece of 25 Spans, that is, 6 Yards and a quarter in length, that carried a Ball of 50 Pounds weight.

9. A Peace was concluded between the *Mogul* and us through the sollicitation of *Hierome Xaverius* of the Society of *Jesuit*.

## C H A P. V.

*Continues the Government of the Vice-Roy  
D. Hierome de Azevedo, in the  
Year 1615.*

1. **D**ON *John de Silva* commanded for the *Spaniards* at *Manila*, who demanded Succors of the *Portugueses* to defend the *Moluco* Islands against the *Rebellious Hollanders*. The Viceroy fitted out 4 Galleons for this Expedition under the Command of *Francis de Miranda Enriquer*. It was easie to foresee they would be unfortunate, because most of the Souldiers were Outlaws, Men who have Courage to commit Villanies, but in dangers of Honour are meer Cowards, as has always been found by Experience, and was at this time, for many deserted as soon as they had received their Pay at *Goa*, and many at *Malaca*, the Admiral contrary to his Orders, having touched there.

2. Between the Islands of *Nicobar* they were some time becalmed. Not far from those of *Diu* they met two *Holland Ships* coming from *Paliacate*, our Admiral prepared to fight, and they having made show of standing to it, after some Cannon-shot exchange'd, stood away. Being pursued very close they threw many Goods overboard to be the lighter; among other things they cast over some Pigeons, the weight whereof could not much  
hin.



hinder them, but in the Confusion they knew not what they did. Our Galleons could not make up with them, and in the morning they were not to be seen. It was afterwards known they skulked behind the Island of *Pulopinam*.

3. The Galleons being in the Road of *Malaca*, the Admiral landed *D. Gonçalo de Silva*, Bishop of that City, whom he carried to this intent, and thought to hold on his Voyage, having already been out above 2 Months, and it being about the middle of *July*. Going out of the streight there arose a storm, and the Vice-Admiral springing a Leak, they were forced to put into *Malaca*; where they all stayed, resolving to prosecute their Voyage the next Year, not knowing the ill Fortune that attended them there.

3. When they came in, *James de Mendonça Furtado*, Commander in Chief by Sea and Land, was ready to set out with 6 Galleons and 12 *Jalia's*, or small Vessels. They were manned by the Garrison of *Malaca*, and went to meet the Ships that were expected from *China*, and at the same time to discover whether any Fleet of *Achem* appear'd as was reported. They discovered it about 5 Leagues from the streight; it consisted of above 500 Sail, whereof above 100 Gallies greater than ours, and above 150 less, yet considerable. The King came himself in this Fleet with his Wives, the best of his Treasure, and 60000 Men. He carried no Colours, but Globes of massy Gold, as was

the Throne whereon he sat. He was four Years in fitting out this Fleet.

5. *James de Mendoga Furtado* having well viewed that Fleet, designed to fight, and in order thereto called all his Captains to Council; it was resolved he should not fight but return to *Malaca*, which was weak for want of those Men they had drawn out. He stood thither, sending Advice to the Gallions to prepare to fight. The Admiral *Fr. de Miranda Enriquez* received the Advice, and with *Furtado's* Squadron on the 4th day met that vast Fleet, which was standing for *Malaca*. Both Parties drew themselves into order of Battel, and after Noon *Miranda* began to play his Cannon without losing a Shot, the Enemy stood so thick, and they received all his Fire without making any return, as it were in contempt of him.

6. *Furtado* and *Ferdinand de Costa* with their two Galliot's attack 7 Gallies; one they boarded and burnt, another was blown up by a Ball that fell into their Powder Room. Several of the Enemy made up to the Galliot's, our Gallies move to succour them, and then the whole Enemies Fleet comes on. This was towards Evening when a Storm rising so separated our small Vessels, that they could not join the Gallies till next day at Noon. Being joined they made towards the Enemy, who not regarding them stood in for *Malaca*. Our Gallies being ill manned, because many of the Men were fled to the Woods, it was found expedient to take those

those out of the Galliot who were of try'd Valour. Thus they prepared for Battel, which the Enemy accepted, drawn up in the form of a half Moon. This happened on a Sunday in the Afternoon about the middle of November.

7. The Admiral, and D. *John de Silveira's* Galleons were boarded, *Ant. Rodrigues de Gamboa* with his Galliot came to assist *Silveira's* his Brother-in-Law, but the Galliot taking fire fired the Galleon, and both perished. There were 50 Men in them, 20 of them died, and the other 30 were taken. The Admiral *Miranda* was three times boarded, and, tho' he had but few Men, still cleared the Decks, killing numbers of the Enemy, and sinking some of their Galleys. Ships were fired on both sides, and the labour to quench them was great especially on our side. The fight lasted till midnight, the flaming Ships and other fires lighted of purpose by the King affording them light.

8. In fine, the Admiral's Galleon during this time was attacked by the whole Fleet 14 times, fired 18, and as often quenched, Men wrapped in wet Blankets rowling themselves in the fire. *Miranda* being struck down by a great Splinter, a Soldier cried out he was killed, but he instantly arose, saying, *I am not dead, here I am alive, fight courageously my brave Lions, for Heaven promises us a glorious Victory.* The 3 Galleons were in a Line at about a Musket shot distance from each other, and for want of Wind the 2 could not come up to succour

the Admiral, against whom the Enemy bent all his Force. Could they have come up, the Enemy had been utterly ruined, for they were so disabled, that they retired towards *Bancales*.

9. Day appearing, and the Enemy gone, our Galleons thought to pursue them but could not. Their Loss was computed to 20000 Men, and 50 Sail of all Sorts. *James de Mendoga & Silva* being upon discovery with his small Vessels, found the King had sent out his Boats for Water, he fell in among them and took them all, and 200 Prisoners. The King after this loss asked the Prisoners he had taken, whether an Embassy to treat of their Liberry would be acceptable at *Malaca*, and being by them assured it would, he writ to the Admiral and Commander of the Town, affirming our Ships had attacked him without cause, when he was going only to subdue his rebellious Subjects, expressing concern for the loss of our Galleon and Galliot, offering to restore the Prisoners without Ransom, if they sent for them. This King being very subtle and false, it was not fit to give two much Credit to him; yet his Ambassadors were well received, and it was answered, that the King's Designs not being known, it could not but be believed he designed against *Malaca*. They sent him all his Subjects taken by *James de Mendoga* and a good Present, thanking him for the offer of restoring the *Portugueses*, and desiring he would deliver them to him that carried the others. The King being under  
fail



sail when our Messenger came to him, said he would answer after he had treated him as became a *Portugues* Ambassador. He had rather have taken his answer there, being suspicious of the King, but was forced to follow. The King being come home, received the Embassy friendly, and a Month after dispatched him well satisfied with the Prisoners.

10. The reason why, as was before hinted, the 3 Galleons could not pursue the *Achem* Fleet, was because they had advice that 8 Holland Ships were sailing towards *Malaca*. *Mendoça* was of opinion to repair to the City for the security thereof, but *Miranda* was for pursuing the Enemy, and having destroyed them they might retire to *Palubutum* or *Gale*; which would have ruined the *Achem* Fleet, and saved our Galleons which were destroyed afterwards by the *Hollanders*. These drawing near, *Ferdinand de Costa* was for securing the Galleons at *Gale*; *Miranda* for fighting; and *Furtado* advised to draw the Galleons close to the little Island, so that the *Hollanders* might not pass between them and the Land, so they might do the more Execution, bringing all their Cannon over to one side. This Opinion being approved of, was scarce put in Execution, when the 8 Ships appeared and made at them. Every Ship exceeded each of our Galleons in number of Men and Cannon, able Seamen and Gunners. The order of drawing under the Island was so ill executed, that the *Hollanders* took the Post ours aimed at.

11. The

11. The Battel began and continued all that day with equal Loss. Next day one of Galleons, after losing 3 Captains, and being torn to pieces even with the superficies of the Water, was quitted by those Men that were left. The 3d day only 10 Men being left in another Galleon, they fired it and got ashore. The Admiral *Miranda* would defend himself, tho' wounded in the Leg, with only 6, but they and a Jesuit by force carried him into the Island, leaving the Galleon on fire. About 200 Men were lost in them all. The loss of the *Hollanders* was considerable, but being Masters of the Sea they sailed to the Mouth of the Streight, to intercept the Ships that were expected from *China*, till understanding that D. *John de Silva*, Governor of *Malina*, was coming that way with his Fleet, they quitted that Sea, which was no small comfort after so great a Loss.

12. *Francis de Miranda Enriquez* went to *Goa*, where he walked upon Crutches, by reason of the hurt received in his Legs when he fought the *Hollanders*. However he was brought to a Tryal, for not sailing directly for *Manila*, according to his Instructions, or not retiring where they might have been secured. In the Conclusion he was cleared, and having behaved himself so bravely, it was but reason he should.

13. D. *John de Silva* being informed that the four Galleons could not go to *Manila*, did all that could be expected of a good Commander to join us in order to suppress  
the

the *Hollanders*. He sent Ammunition to our Fleet at *Mataca*, and advice for our Ships to avoid falling into the Enemies hands. But all failed, the advice by the ill Conduct of him that carried it; and the Ammunition, because our Galleons were lost when it came. Without knowing hereof he put to Sea with 10 strong Galleons, the product of his great Care and Industry. Eight days after his departure 6 *Holland* Ships came to the Bay of *Mariboles* and were the first of that Nation that passed the Streights of *Magellan*. Had D. *John* set out 10 days sooner, he had taken the 8 Ships that defeated *Francis de Miranda*, and 10 Days later those other 6. Ships On the Sea of *Pulatinam* he found the Galleon commanded by Captain *Antony Homem de Azevedo* and the Plate Ship coming from *China*. Having passed the Streight of *Singapura*, he left the Galleons with his Vice-Admiral and with two Galleys, he had went himself and convoyed those two Vessels to *Malaca*. There he was received under a Canopy with great State, and demonstrations of Love and Gratitude; there also he soon fell sick in such manner, that the seventh Day were buried with him the great hopes conceived of destroying the *Hollanders* by his Zeal, Valour and Conduct. The Galleys carrying the Body returned to his Nephew, and the Vice-Admiral and he with them to *Manila*.

## C H A P. VI.

*Continues the Government of the Viceroy  
D. Hierome de Azevedo, in the  
Year 1615.*

I. **A**Bout this same time a Peace was concluded at *Damam* between the *Portugueses* and King *Chontia*. *Gonzalo Pinto de Fonseca* was appointed to go to exchange the Ratifications. The King would not come into our Dominions to swear it, nor would we go into his; those of the King of *Sarceta*, tho' our Enemy, and his Father-in-Law, were agreed upon. *Pinto* came to a Village appointed for this Ceremony with 400 Foot and 50 Horse, and found the King there with 40 of the latter, and 900 of the former. Our Commissioner offer'd his Tent, and the King his, urging his Character. It was accepted to avoid displeasing him. The Quarrel had been about certain Lands the King pretended to, and now quitting his Claim the Peace was solemnly i sworn with satisfaction of both Parties. He offered to serve our King with 1000 Foot and 200 Horse, and that his Son should live at *Damam* to Command a Fleet at Sea. He added pleasantly, that he envied those who could be in *Damam* at the publick Feasts, and caused *Pinto* with some of the chief *Portugueses* to go to his House, saying, the Queen was desirous



desirous of seeing him. She saw him, but not he her, being behind a close Lettice. The King made fresh offers, and gave good Proofs of real Friendship.

2. The same *Gonçalo Pinto* concluded a Peace with the *Mogol*. The Articles were, That *Jabanguier*, King of the *Mogols*, and the Viceroy should hold no Correspondence with *English* or *Hollanders*. That they should harbour neither of those Nations in their Ports, that they should be obliged to expel them the Sea of *Guzarate* in 3 Months after any of them came thither. That if the *English* entred the Lock of *Suratte*, the *Portugueses* should have leave to plant Guns ashore to drive them out. That all Animosities laid aside, the *Mogols* and *Portugueses* should Trade freely in each others Ports. That Prisoners be restored on both sides. That the King should restore all the *Portugues* Effects in his Kingdom, after repaying himself 70000 *Xerafines*, he had received Damage in a Ship that came from *Meca*. That the Hulk of a Ship should be given to the Queen-Mother for one of hers burnt at *Gox*. That the Viceroy should give leave for two Ships of his once, and one every Year to Trade from *Suratte* to *Meca*, without paying any Duties. That the *Malabars* should be excluded the Ports of both Parties as pernicious Pirates. That by this Peace the King of *Portugal*'s Right to the Duties paid at *Diu*, by the Ships that Trade in the Bay of *Cambaya*, should be no way infringed.

3. About

3. About the middle of February, *Gonzalo Rodriguez de Sousa* came to the *Molucco* Islands with 6 Galliot's of War, and two of Merchants. He was sent by the Viceroy with Succours. *D. John de Silva*, Governor of *Manila*, with his *Spaniards* were then besieged at *Ternate* by 11 *Dutch* Ships, *Sousa* in sight of them relieved the Place, and the Besiegers stood away to the Southward. *D. John* ordered two Galleys and a Pink with the Galliot's to follow the Enemy, who steered for *Macassa*. These put the Towns of *Arsula* Besi, and the greater and lesser *Manciolas* to Fire and Sword. They burnt Ships belonging to the Kings of *Ternate*, *Maquien*, *Bacham* and *Cocoa*, who favoured the *Holland* Rebels. Landing in the Kingdom of *Corane*, they easily took the chief Fort, the King who was in it flying for shelter to the Woods. Returning aboard, they discovered three great Ships in which came the King's Son-in-Law and Grandson to his aid, the latter was taken, the other killed. On the 2d of April they arrived at *Macassa*, at such time as the Admiral of the 11 *Hollanders* seen at *Ternate*, was coming into that Port. After half a Day's fight being upon the point of taking her, a sudden Storm parted them. Our Men returned to *Ternate* with Booty, Provisions, and more Ships than they carried out.

4. In *Ceylon* our Gen. *Em. Mascarennas Homem* marched against *Candea* with 14 Companies of *Portugueses* of 30 Men each, and the *Dissava's*, or Chiefs of the Natives. Near the

the River of *Candea* fell so great a Rain, there was no dry place to lie down, and in the Morning they were all running Blood, being bit by Leeches. It appeared difficult to pass the River being then swelled, but there being 11000 Men there they cut Trees, and laying a Bridge over passed. The *Cbingalas* began to Skirmish, chiefly at Night, taking the advantage of the Woods. We lost some Men. The like happened at the Entrance into the Kingdom of *Uva*.

5. They marched to the City *Babulo*, Metropolis of that Kingdom, burning all that lay in their way. Three thousand of the Enemy, who lay in Ambush near the City, fell upon *Simon Correa* who led our Van, but 600 Musqueteers charging them, they fled to the Woods, about 40 being killed on both sides. The same happened in the Rear. There being no Plunder in the City it was burnt, and all Fruit-Trees cut down. Our General spent 3 Months in this Expedition, in March returned to *Sofragan*, and thence to *Malvane*, having done the Enemy great harm.

6. In August he sent *Peter Peixoto de Silva*, with 8 Companies to *Tumpane*, another Inlet into the Kingdom of *Candea* towards the North a League from *Balane*. He spared neither Sex nor Age, for that the *Tumpanses* had endeavoured to betray us to the Enemy. The Lands of *Archiapato* of *Candea* were burnt; but in a Village they cut off 20 of our Blacks in an Ambush; 25 of them were slain in the same manner on their way

to *Matale*. Near *Matale* 70 more fell of 1500 that came to oppose us, which caused them to quit the Field, and *Peixoto* returned to *Manicovare* with 500 Prisoners, and 2000 Head of Cattle, some of them Elephants.

7. After this the *Dissava Philip de Oliveyra* had much the same success, making a Road into *Candea* with 10 Companies. The success, continued as long as *Emanuel Mascarenhas Homem* commanded in that Island, which was little above a Year, every one wishing it had been much longer as much in respect of his Valour, as Fortune and Affability.

## C H A P. VII.

*Continues the Government of the Viceroy  
D. Hierome de Azevedo, in the  
Year 1615.*

1. **I**N the Year 1608 we gave an account of the prodigious rise of *Sebastian Gonzales Tibao*, who of a poor seller of Salt in a small Barque the Year 1605, in that of 1608 was become an absolute Sovereign without dependance on any Prince whatsoever. It is now time to shew the end of such Monsters. This base Man being lifted to that height, the steps by which he ascended being Treachery and Ingratitude, he now found it was no longer possible to support



support his Power without some considerable Succour.

2. This Man, who in his Prosperity forgot to submit himself to the Viceroy, now seeing the probability of falling, acquaints him with the Danger he is in. He proposes like an absolute Prince, That if the Viceroy will effectually support him, he will become Tributary to *Portugal*, with the acknowledgment of a Galleon loaden with Rice, to be delivered Yearly at *Goa* or *Malaca*. He urged, all had been done by him was to revenge the Murder of the *Portugueses* slaughtered by the King of *Arracam* in *Bahuel* of *Dianga*; and (to gain the Viceroy by the hope of Profit) hinted, that the vast Treasure of that King might be taken. This last so blinded the Viceroy, that in stead of abhorring the Villanies of that Wretch, he resolved to assist him, contrary to all Human and Divine Laws.

3. For this Expedition, the Viceroy fitted out 14 of the largest Gallies, one Flyboat, and a Pink, and gave the Command of them to D. *Francis de Meneses Roxo*, who had governed *Ceylon*. He sailed from *Goa* about the middle of *September* well manned and equipped, but not without much foreboding of an unfortunate Event; for as the Viceroy only weighed the prospect of Gain, the People considered the injustice of the Enterprize.

4. On the 3d of *October* D. *Francis* arrived at *Arracam*, the chief Port and Residence of that King, he had before sent a

Q

Gat

Galliot with Advice of his coming to *Sebastian Gonzales* at *Sundiva*. His Instructions being opened before all the Captains, they contained, that he should enter that Kingdom without expecting *Sebastian Gonzalez*. It was more reasonable that man should have been expected, as who knew the Country, and their manner of Fight, besides the Forces he was to bring; but God had decreed the Ruin of that vile Wretch, and of that unjust Succour. On the 15th of *October*, they discovered coming down the River a Fleet so numerous, they could not see the end of it. The foremost was a *Dutch* Pink, and many *Hollanders* commanded other Vessels. All that could be discovered appeared full of Men, and well equipped, an ill fight for 15 little Ships that expected them; neither were they now 15, for one was gone to *Sundiva*; the Pink was in pursuit of a Ship that fled, and another was gone to fetch the Pink.

5. The *Dutch* Pink fired the first Gun, and then the Fight began furiously, our Galliot's advancing without any dread of that vast Fleet. Four Galliot's got before the others, and in an instant their Captains and many Soldiers were killed, yet the rest were no way dismayed, and the other eight came up, darkening the day with Smoak, notwithstanding the repeated flashes of Fire. Many of the Enemy were drowned, oversetting their Vessels through haste to fly from us. The Fight lasted from morning till evening, when the Enemy drew off, thinking

ing some Relief was coming to us, having discovered the Galliot that went to seek the Pink, which they could not find. We lost 25 Men of Note, besides others.

6. Next morning the Pink came up, aboard him the wounded Men were carried, and such as he had fit for Service taken out. D. Francis resolved to lie at the mouth of the River till *Sebastian Gonzalez* came to joyn him, and then again attack the Enemy. At length *Gonzalez* came with 50 Sail well manned and equipped, and hearing what was done, railed against the Viceroy for giving such Orders, and against D. Francis for obeying them. About the middle of November they sailed up the River, discovered the Enemies vast Fleet riding in a safe Place, and resolved to attack it. D. Francis took half *Gonzalez* his Ships, and gave him half those he brought, so they made two equal Squadrons. They divided themselves and fell on on both sides, firing upon those Vessels they could reach, but none of them advanced. The King from the Shore encouraged his Men, causing the Heads of some that fled to be set upon Spears for a Terror to the rest.

7. Scarce had our Men time to breath, when a great part of that vast Fleet came down upon them divided into 3 Squadrons. This was at Noon, when the heat of the Sun scorched. *Sebastian Gonzalez* put to flight those that attacked him; our Pink did as much with the *Hollander*. D. Francis received and did much harm. The Advantage

was visible on our side, till about Sun-setting our Admiral *D. Francis* was killed by two Musket-Balls, one in the Forehead, the other in the left Eye. A Signal given on Board his Galliot, caused *Sebastian Gonzalez* to cease following his good Fortune, and the Tide ebbing, the Fleets parted; but *Gaspar de Abreu's* Galeot being left among the Enemy, all her Men were slain, and the Vessel torn in pieces; yet *Abreu* was brought off by *Antony Carvalho* mortally wounded, and lived some days after.

8. Our Fleet being come back to the mouth of the River, care was taken of the Wounded, and above 200 Dead were buried in the Sea. The Body of *D. Francis* was embalmed. *D. Luis de Azevedo* the Vice-Admiral succeeded in the Command. They all sailed over to *Sundiva*, and *D. Luis* with his Squadron thence to *Goa*, notwithstanding *Sebastian Gonzales* for his own security laboured all he could to keep him there. Not long after the King of *Arracam* falling upon him in his Island, took it, and reduced him to his former miserable condition; so his Sovereignty passed like a Shadow, his Pride was humbled, and his Villanies punished. Our Fleet on their return burnt some Ships of the *Moors*, laden with Provisions, upon the Coast of *Paliacate* and *St. Thomas*. But *John Gomez Paex* fighting with others, had his Galliot blown up, and few Men were saved.



## C H A P. VIII.

*Continues the Government of the Viceroy  
D. Hierome de Azevedo this same  
Year 1615, and that of 1616.*

1. **T**HE Viceroy fitted out the Squadron for the North, which consisted of 12 Ships, and as many small Vessels, in which were at least 20 Gentlemen of Quality, whom the Portugueses call *Fidalgos*, that served as Volunteers. The Admiral was *Ruy Freyre de Andrade*.

2. This Fleet set out about the end of October. *Ruy Freyre* by the way visited the Northern Forts. At *Balcar*, beyond *Surat*, he sent out the Fleet for *Cambaya* under the Convoy of two Ships, giving Advice to the Commander to send away that which was there. As soon as *Ruy Freyre* came to *Suratte*, *Nahabo*, who commanded there for the *Mogol*, sent him two Vessels loaded (as he said) with fresh Provisions, but they were costly Curiosities and Silks. *Ruy Freyre* to receive this Message, called all the Captains aboard his Galliot, and before them viewed and commended the Present. That done, he took only one Piece, assuring the Messenger, 'All must be returned, but that he should be as ready to serve his Master, as if he had

‘ received the whole Present. *Nababo* much admired this Proceeding, understanding it was *Freyre*’s custom rather to Give than Receive.

3. The Piece *Freyre* kept was *Cambolim*, worth about 20 *Pardao*’s. The value of a *Pardao* is 12 *Royals* and a half. *Cambolim* is a piece of Stuff the Women wear on their Shoulders like a Veil. The Captain’s extolling this Action, he said, ‘ The *Cambolim* ‘ was due to some Lady; that they should ‘ agree whose Mistress was handsomest, and ‘ it should be given to her. The Price without any dispute was allowed to *Mippolito Fur-tado* his Mistress.

4. Whilst the Merchant Fleet stayed at *Cambaya*, *Freyre* went to visit the Fort of *Diu*, and landed by the way at *Goga*, once a proud City of the *Moors*, but humbled by our Arms the last Year. At the end of *December*, the Fleet sailed from *Cambaya*, and was the greatest that had been seen in many Years, *Freyre* with his Squadron convoyed it; Near *Damam* there arose such a Storm, that it was a wonder they did not all perish. Two Ships were lost, with all the Men; of another, only one Man was saved; of a fourth, all the Men. What caused most admiration was, that 10 small Boats escaped, which in a calm Sea carried but a span above Water. At length they got into *Bacaim*; 8 Merchant Ships being drove to *Chaul*, met there 4 *Parao*’s of Pirates, who took two of them. *Freyre* caused the Beards of the Soldiers of the other six to be cut off for not fol-

following his light. At last he came safe to Goa with the Fleet.

5. D. Bernard de Noronna commanded the Fleet on the Coast of *Malabar*. Zamori had again broke the Peace, and distressed *Granganor*. Noronna hasted thither, and cut off all Correspondence between Zamori and 3 *Holland Ships* that came into that Sea; and in despite of all the *Nayres* relieved *Granganor*. Mean while D. Henry de Sousa sent by him with 11 Sail to *Calicut*, burnt there a great Ship belonging to that Emperor, loaded and ready to sail for *Meca*. This done, D. Bernard having visited the Forts of *Malabar* and *Canara*, returned to Goa.

6. D. Nunno Alvarez Pereyra succeeded Emanuel Mascarennas Homem, as General of *Ceylon*, and made several successful Roads into the Kingdom of *Candea*, bringing thence many Prisoners, and much Cattel. But let us relate a dangerous Commotion that happened in that Island, the Occasion whereof, though it be not new in the World, is one of those that, though often repeated, is still admired, and was thus:

7. Some Years before this died *Nicapeti* King of *Ceylon*, who being converted, and having no Issue, made the King of *Portugal* his Heir. At this time there lived in *Ceylon* a poor Fellow called also *Nicapeti*: He served the *Portugueses*, and gaining admittance to one of the Queens of *Valgameme*, heard somewhat of that Prince called *Nicapeti*. This Fellow being of the same Name, resolved to represent his Person, and perswade

the People, that he was their Natural Prince come to Life again. He feigns himself a *Fogue*, (that is, the same as an Hermit among us,) and beginning to appear about *Mareguepore*, gave out, That taking compassion on the Calamities of his Country, he came to free them from the *Portugues* Bondage. He found Credit, and Men flocking to him entred the seven Corla's, when the *Dislava Philip de Olivera* was absent. At *Matiaagama* he slew two Fathers of the Society, in 6 or 7 days was succoured by the King of *Candea* with 2000 Men, and declared King by most of the Country.

8. As soon as our General had notice hereof, he sent *Emanuel Cesar* with some Men to quench this Fire before it grew Masterless. *Cesar* meeting him with 6000 Men at *Gandola*, a Village on the River *Laoa*, they ingaged, and *Ferdinand Caldeyra*, who led our Van, going on rashly, was killed, with 10 or 12 Soldiers, and Captain *Gaspar de Antas*:

9. In the heat of the Battle 1000 *Chingala's*, who served under *Luis Gomez Pinto*, deserted to the Enemy. At this sight our Men gave themselves for lost, but much more when *D. Constantine* a *Chingala*, but Subject of *Portugal*, and of the Royal Blood, stepping forward, cried aloud, *Whither do you fly, my Friends? If you look for your Natural King, here am I, who by seven several Branches am descended from them.* In a moment they all turned to, and proclaimed him King, and he made use of this opportunity to reduce them



them that had revolted from us. After a long Dispute, the Enemy fled over the River. Next morning our Men passed over, and meeting no Enemy, stayed there for further Intelligence.

10. In the mean while *Philip de Oliveyra* returned from *Candea*, having heard of *Nicapeti's* Attempt, but not of our Victory. There was then a considerable number of *Chingala's* who served under him; to incite these to rebel one came, and from the top of a Mountain admonished them to forsake the *Portugueses*, and follow their Natural Prince. This caused much disorder among the Men, and next day *Oliveyra* marching on, came to the Field of the late Battle, and finding above 1000 slain, could not discover who had gained that Victory. On a Tree was seen an Inscription, signifying that all *Portugueses* were slain, no body of them left in *Ceylon*, and that *Columbo* was surrendred. This startled the *Portugueses*, and not a little rejoiced the *Lascarines*, (the *Chingala's* that serve among us are so called,) who were 800 in number.

11. As *Philip de Oliveyra* continued his march, 300 Men attacked his Rear, but as soon as he faced them, fled. *Nybe* came upon him near the River *Laoa*, he sent to *Emanuel Cesar* and they joyned, which made the Revolters fly to the Woods. They two agreed to take all the Women and Children of some Villages, hoping by that means to reduce the *Chingala's* that were in Arms. *Oliveyra* took above 400; the same night the

800 *Lascarines* deserted with their Arms, leaving the *Portugueses* alone, who were not above 200. These marched 5 Leagues to the Pagod called *Atanagale*, near *Maluana*, where the General resided, who sent them 500 Men, 200 whereof were *Portugueses*. He ordered *D. Emanuel de Castro* to take care of Provisions and Ammunition, having made *D. Constantine Dissava* of the *Corla*, (this was the *Chingala*, who, as was above-said, brought back those who fled from us,) in stead of *D. Philip de Oliveyra*, wrongfully punishing him for the desertion of the 800 *Lascarines*.

## C H A P. IX.

*Continues the Government of the Viceroy  
D. Hierome de Azevedo the same  
Year 1616.*

1. **N** *Icapeti*, like an absolute King, bestowed Employments and Lands, having gathered an Army of 24000 Men, with which he marched towards *Columbo*; so vain, that half a League from that Town on the Banks of the River *Nacolega*, he would be proclaimed Emperor of *Ceylon*. He sent to the King of *Candea* to send him one of his two Wives, who answered, *It should be done when the Portugueses were subdued*. *Nicapeti*, in a Rage at this Answer, threatned to use that

that King like the *Portugueses*, Those 2000 Men, sent by him to *Nicapeti's* assistance, hearing these Threats, deserted him, and returned home. This set those two Enemies of ours at variance, and was no small help to our Affairs.

2. The two Commanders, *Emanuel Cesar* and *D. Constantine*, being joyned, they marched towards *Nicapeti*, and found the way he was to come very clean, and strewed with Flowers. A *Cbingala* carried *Nicapeti* the News of our approach, who caused him to be impaled, saying, *There were no Portugueses left in Ceylon*. He was soon undeceived, the two Vanguards coming in sight of each other. *Nicapeti* instantly possesses himself of a Hill, and intrenches with 7000 Men. Our Van attacks and enters his Works, kill 1000 of his Men, and force him, laying aside the Regal Ornaments, to fly to the Woods. We lost only an Ensign. The other part of the Enemies Army seeing this defeated, fled over the River *Laoa*. Night coming on, our Men rested there, and in the morning found themselves strengthen'd by 500 *Cbingala's*, who had deserted from the Enemy.

3. At this time a *Cbingala*, who had been a Christian, and Follower of the *Portugueses* by the Name of *Antony Barreto*, served the King of *Candea*. Though of base Birth, his Valour advanced him to be General of that King's Forces, with the Title of, *Prince and Governour of the Kingdom of Ulva*. This Man laying hold of the opportunity of *Nicapeti's* Revolt,

Revolt, came with a considerable Power to seize our Fort of *Sofragan*. *Barreto* counterfeiting Friendship, drew our Men, which were but 60, under two Captains, *Faria* and *Matoso*, to a Conference, and treacherously slew most of them. Those that escaped retired to a Church, where want of Ammunition obliged them to surrender, and they were carried to the King of *Candea*.

4. This misfortune was justly due to those *Portugueses* for murdering an Embassadour sent by that King to Treat of an Accommodation, that they might joyntly carry on the War against *Nicapeti*. The King, who might justly have put to death *Faria* and his Men in Revenge for his Ambassadour, Treated them courteously. He sent two of them to *Balane*, to advise our Garison there to deliver that Place to him, being distressed by *Nicapeti*; they went, and having advised the contrary, returned into Slavery.

5. The King being informed by these Messengers, that those of *Balane* would not surrender, fell upon them with 10000 Men, and many Elephants. Our Commander *Emanuel Falcam* held out some days, but seeing 6 *Portugueses* had deserted, and there was no hope of Relief, was forced to Capitulate. The King treated him and his better than they deserved. He was so desirous of Peace, that he presently sent an Ambassadour to Treat thereof with our General *D. Nunno Alvarez Percyra*, but the Success of that Negotiation belongs to the next Year.



6. An Embassly came to *Goa* from the King of *Siam*, acknowledging the Favours received of the *Portugueses*. The Heads of the Message were, that he had received a Letter from *James de Mendoca*, who stayed not for the Answer, that he offered the King of *Portugal* the Port of *Martavam* to build a Fort there; that he would maintain the Garrison and a small Fleet to Cruize on that Sea against the King of *Dua*. The Ambassadors were splendidly entertained, and *F. Francis* of the Annunciation, a Dominican, sent along with them with the same Character. He set out the beginning of *May*, with a costly Present for the King. The King received the Ambassador with great Satisfaction, who proposed to him how ambitious the *Portugueses* were of his Friendship, that they should both join their Forces to subdue the King of *Ava*, that there should be a free Trade between *Siam* and *Malaca*; that he should not admit the *Hollanders* into his Country.

7. The King answer'd, That the *Portugues* Merchants might freely resort to his Ports and be exempt from all Duties, and his Subjects should Trade to *Malaca*; that the reason they had not done it of late was the ill usage they found there, whereof he gave good Instances; that he had admitted the *English*, *Dutch* and *Malayes* into his Ports for the great respect they showed him, and the need he had of them; that he had assisted the *Portugueses* against the *Hollanders*; that he was no way concerned for the harm those

those of *Malaca* had done the Queen of *Pastane*, because she was a Madwoman, but she being now dead he had placed one of more Sense there, and desired there might be free Trade with her as well as with *Siam*; that the Goods of such *Portugueses* as died in his Dominions should go to their Heirs; that he had ordered all *Portugueses* who committed any Crimes, should be tried at his Court, to prevent any wrong being done them by the prejudice of Magistrates. Thus our Ambassador was answered and dispatched, and the King sent with him two *Siam* Gentlemen, to go his Ambassadors into *Spain*.

8. There were great Complaints against the Commander of *Moçambique* *Ruy de Melo & Sampayo*, for that he robbed the Natives, and did not pay the Soldiers, having privately strangled some of them, which caused a Mutiny. *Francis de Fonseca Pinto* was sent from *Goa* to regulate these Disorders. With him went *Salvador Vaz de Gama* to succeed *Melo*, in case he were found Guilty. *Melo's* Conscience accusing him, he refused to admit the Judge, who resolved to return to *Goa*, but hearing that *Melo* had left open a Wicket of the Fort, he rush'd in, and deposing him, gave the Command to *Guerra*, contrary to what the Viceroy had ordered. He was also to Victual the Fort at *Tete*, and furnish it with Cloth, that Fort being maintained to continue the discovery of the Mines of *Montomatapa*, which gave great hopes of Profit. But before we relate what hap-

happened at this time, let us refresh the Memory of what was before.

9. In the 10th Chap. of the 3d Part of the 2d Vol. we gave some account of what was acted by some of our Commanders in these Parts. *Cbunzo* a powerful King rebelled against the Emperor of *Monomotapa*, and was subdued by the assistance of the *Portugueses*; so other Rebels. To gratifie these Favours he for ever gave all his Mines to the King of *Portugal*, making a resignation of them to *James Simoens Madera*, Commander of *Tete*, who was then in his Service. The substance of the Instrument was, That he gave all his Mines of Gold, Silver, Copper, Tin, Iron, Lead, to the King of *Portugal*, upon Condition he should support him in his Throne; That the King should admit of him as his Brother; That the next Year he would send his Son with an Ambassador to *Goa*; That he had put two Sons, and would soon two Daughters, into the Custody of *James Simoens* to be bred Christians. The Emperor ordered *Simoens* to have an Instrument made hereof; and he asking how he would Sign it, since in his Empire none could write, the Emperor made three Crosses on the Ground, one under the other, and said, he would sign it that way, which accordingly he did.

10. This done, *Simoens* with his Men accompanied the Emperor who was marching towards *Ancone* that was in Rebellion. *Gasper Pereyra Cabral* being left behind wounded was carried by *Cafres*, who run away from him. *Simoens* understanding it, went back

back with one Slave, and helped to carry him on his own back. An Act worthy of memory, from a Captain to a Souldier. The Rebel being subdued, *Simoens* returned to *Tete* with the Emporor's two Sons. They were baptized by the Names of *Philip* and *James*. The latter remained there, the other went back to his Father.

11. The Emperor thinking he could now overcome his Enemies without the assistance of *Portugueses*, marched to the Kingdom of *Baroe*, and was there defeated; at *Monga* he had a Son killed, and *Matuzianne* usurped the whole Empire. *James Simoens* restored him, and possessed himself of *Chicova*. *Matuzianne* raising new Forces was defeated and killed by the *Portugueses*. *D. Stephen de Ataide* raised a Fort at *Massapa*, and gave that Command to *James Carvalho*, whom he sent to *Monomotapa* with a present to obtain the Delivery of the Mines.

12. *Carvalho* went and told the Emperor he had a great Present, but gave him none; and he seeing the *Portugueses* entred his Lands for Gold without his consent, caused all they had to be taken from them, and many to be killed. *Carvalho* had with him some Forces belonging to the Emperor, with whose assistance he curbed the Robbers of *Quizinga*, and supported himself. He resolved to revenge the spoiling of the *Portugueses* by a horrid Treachery against those that served him, for joining with the *Quizinga's*, he one Night fell upon the *Cafres*, and killing many put the rest to flight, who  
justly



justly cursed the falseness of the *Portugueses*.

13. *Carvalho* fearful of his own Wickedness, abandoned the Fort of *Massapa* and went to *Tete*, leaving all the Country in Arms against the *Portugueses*. All he acted was by order of *D. Stephen de Ataide*, who, instead of appeasing the Emperor, threatened him with War. He sent out from *Sena*, and by his order *Carvalho* raised another Fort on the Banks of *Zambeze*, two days Journey from *Tete*. *James Simoens Madera* was left to Command at *Tete*, because *Ataide* returned to *Mozambique*, hearing the *Hollanders* were coming thither. *D. Stephen* perceiving no *Dutch* appeared in 6 months, returned to *Tete*. The Emperor sent to offer him *Chicova* if he would send the ordinary Present, which was a Debt, and no Gift. *D. Stephen* would not so much as hear the Embassadors, refusing to give a Present of 5000 Crowns, which might have saved much greater Charges, for above 30000 were already lost at *Massapa* to no purpose.

14. *D. Stephen* set forward with 150 Men, but being better advised, expected News from *Portugal* and *India*. In *July* he received the King's Orders to go to *Goa*, and give the Command of *Tete* to *James Simoens*, and that of *Mozambique* to *D. John de Ataide* the Viceroy's Brother. *D. Stephen* obeyed against his Will, leaving *Simoens* 140 Soldiers without any thing to maintain them in that dangerous Conquest. However *Simoens* made the best on't, and resolved to proceed,

beginning with *Chombe* a powerful *Cafre*, demanding of him what he owed as our Tributary, and the Restitution of the *Portugueses* he had. Some infamous *Portugueses* advised *Chombe* to take no notice of *Simoens*, because he could do him no harm. This caused that King first to slight, and then to molest him in the Vessels wherein he sailed for *Tete*. *Simoens* landing drove the *Cafres* so, that they troubled him no more.

---

## C H A P. X.

*Continues the Government of the Viceroy D. Hierome de Azevedo, in the Year 1616.*

1. **J**ames *Simoens* *Madera* raising 6000 *Cafres*, marched with them and his *Portugueses* against *Chombe* at the beginning of September. One night they heard a Voice that said, *Chombe* rejoyces at your coming, and desires you will make haste, for he is hungry, and expects to feast upon your Bodies. *Simoens* marched on, and fortified himself close under the Enemies Works, which were half a League in length, and in breadth proportionable, furnished with 8000 Men. *Simoens* attacks them twice, but to no effect. Next night a *Cafre* fled to the Enemy, and from them a Christian Black Woman to us with Advice, That *Chombe* would fall upon our  
Men

Men before day. *Simoens* expected them with silence, and killing 1000, put the rest to flight.

2. The Enemy proposes a Peace, but nothing is concluded. *Simoens* attempts their Works, but without success; he sends to the Commander of *Senna* for Succour, who sends him 40 *Portugueses*, and 3000 *Cafres*. The Works were again assaulted in vain; soon after some Deserters informed, the Intrenchment was weakest on the side of a Lake. Here the Assault was renewed, the Works entred, *Chombe* put to flight, and the Place given to *Quitambo* a *Cafre*, who faithfully served us, on condition to pay what *Chombe* had denied.

3. *James Simoens* was now bent upon the Conquest of the Silver Mines in *Chicova*. The Emperor sent to acquaint him, 'He again  
' resigned those Mines to him, upon condition he should not go thither with an  
' Armed Power. *Simoens* desired, he would send one to put him in Possession thereof, and to receive Cloth to the value of 4000 Ducats he had to present him. The Emperor was satisfied, and *Simoens*, with Applause of all the *Cafres*, took possession of *Chicova* on the 8th of May, 1614. being put into it by *Onanxangue* a great Man, Nephew to the Emperor. The first thing he did was to raise a Fort there; the next, to joyn Friendship with a powerful *Cafre* called *Sapoe*, and his Country *Borore*.

4. The Lord of *Chicova*, now subject to the *Portugueses* by virtue of the Emperor's Resignation, withdrew himself from them; so that Complaint was made thereof to the Emperor, who gave leave to Depose him, and put another in his Place, sending a *Cafre* called *Cherema* to shew the Mines. This Man twice deceived *Simoens*, causing him to dig in Places where he had hid some Ore, for which reason he was confined; and then shewed another place, of which some hope was conceived, he excusing himself what was done had been by the Emperor's Order. Nevertheless *Simoens* sent him a Present; he detained the Messengers, and sent word, 'He would have Needles, Pins, Knives, ' Looking-Glasses, Candles, Soap, Zafran, ' Pepper, and some rich Silks. He repented the giving of *Chicova*, and sought occasion of Disagreement, thinking that *Simoens* could not send what he demanded. But he sending all things, the Emperor seemed satisfied.

5. That D. *Philip* the Emperor's Son, whom *James Simoens* caused to be Baptized, attempted several times to make his escape to the *Portugueses*, and was taken; at length he got to the Fort of *Chicova*, and was joyfully received. Hearing there that *Chirema* was fled to avoid discovering the Mines, he sent for him, pretending to be sent Embassador by his Father, and having rebuked and secured him, went himself to *Tete*. The Emperor hearing hereof, proffered great Rewards to any would kill his Son. At the same



same time it fell out, that a Soldier gathering some Fruit, the Son of the Owner, who was a powerful Man, forbid him; the Soldier complains to his Captain *James Teyxera Barroso*, who without farther examination shot the young Man. The Father, in Revenge of his Son's Death, did the *Portugueses* much harm; and the Emperor declared War, because they entertained his Son against his will.

6. In March, 1615. 10000 *Cafres* assault the Fort, but were forced thence with great loss, *James Simoens* coming in time with Succour. The Country being clear, *Simoens* sent some Men with *Cherema* to discover the Mines; after some days digging they discovered Ore, whereof one half was pure Metal, and some scarce wanted casting. It appeared to be no cheat, some being grown into the Roots of a Tree.

7. Our Commander being assured there were rich Silver Mines, resolved to send three great clods of Ore for a Proof to Spain. The Messengers and Ore were received with great joy at Madrid. *Gaspar Bocarro* was so ambitious of carrying this News, that after the others were gone, he gave 2000 Ducats to purchase the Employ, and offered to go by Land at his own Expence; but he ended his days at *Mozambique*.

8. The excessive Heat caused a Sickness in the Fort of *Chicova*, whereof the Soldiers died in 3 or 4 days. Next followed a Famine, which gave occasion to the *Cafres*, who served the Fort and dug in the Mines,

to run away, so that there was no Silver to buy Cloth, and consequently no Cloth to purchase Provisions with at *Sape*, it being the only Coin that passed there. *James Simoens* had acquainted the Viceroy, That Conquest could not be maintained without Relief. The chief Sustenance of that Garrison for some days was a small Fruit, so harsh they could not swallow it, unless rowled in Ashes.

9. The Supplies were sent by the Viceroy to *Mozambique*, but never reached *Chicova*, which thereupon was abandoned. The hated the Lawyer *Francis de Fonseca Pinto*, to whom the Viceroy had given the whole Charge of the Affair, bore to *James Simoens*, was the cause he was not Relieved, and that important Place lost.

10. This is that *Francis de Fonseca Pinto*, who (as was said before) took the Command of *Mozambique* from *Ruy de Melo & Sampayo*, and had all Necessaries for *Chicova*, as well of Provisions as Tools to work in the Mines. But his hatred to *Simoens* diverted him from sending those Succors; besides, he sold all that was to relieve that Place, and converted it to his own use, and seized upon *Ruy de Melo's* Effects. *James Simoens* pressed him by Letters for Relief, in his last protesting with all his Men, 'If the Place were lost, the fault would lie upon him.

11. All the Answer that insolent Fellow returned, was putting *Simoens* his Nephew, sent to conduct him, in Irons. Then he entered his Lands, and destroyed all that was there,

there, selling his Slaves ; he forbid the Inhabitants on pain of Death corresponding with, or relieving those of *Chicova*, and sent word to the Emperor, that he might freely kill *Simoens*, for entring his Dominions without Orders from the Viceroy. Not satisfied to procure his Ruin by those means, he marched towards *Chicova* with intention to murder him. *Simoens* understanding it withdrew thence, and *Pinto* hearing of it, though so near, would not relieve the Fort, nor examine the Mines as he had in Orders, but returned hastily to *Tete*, fearing *James Simoens* should meet him. But going back to the Fort, caused the Notary to draw an Instrument, containing the Causes why that Fort was abandoned, to which they all signed. This done, they marched with their Women and Children towards *Tete*.

12. Weakness caused them to march very slow, and two Soldiers fell dead for want. At *Marenga*, *Simoens* received a Summons from *Pinto*, to appear before him at *Tete* in 9 Days to answer for himself. But knowing now he had quitted the Fort, sent 2000 *Cafres* commanded by a *Portugues* to murder him ; they, tho' the opportunity was presented, would not do it. *Simoens* stayed in the Country of *Inambanzo* which was his own, and all the Company went to *Tete*. There *Pinto* inquired of them, whether there were any Mines at *Chicova*, they all unanimously answered there were. But he in hatred to *Simoens* desiring to conceal them, with

Threats and Rewards prevailed with each of them single to swear there were none. Then he gave Sentence against *Simoens* for abandoning the Fort, not considering if there were no Mines there (as he endeavoured to made out) it was no Crime, and that if any fault were it was his own, since the other held it longer than could be required.

13. This done *Pinto* Promises the Emperor a considerable Present, if he would fall upon *Simoens* at *Inambanzo*. The Emperor not only expelled *Simoens* those Lands, but so distressed *Tete*, that they were forced to make up the Present promised by *Pinto*, to buy his absence, the Emperor positively requiring it at their hands. *James Simoens* afterwards returned to *Tete*, being utterly ruined by his good Service, and *Pinto* who had ruined all was enriched by his Villanies and Rapine. This is what happened about the Mines of *Monomotapa*. I will only add that the first Commander there, *Francis Barreto*, was undone by a Divine, and now *James Simoens* the last by a Lawyer; and the King, by employing such Gownmen in things they understand not, lost the great Advantages might be expected from those Mines.



## C H A P. XI.

*Continues the Government of the Viceroy  
D. Hierome de Azevedo the same  
Year 1616.*

1. **T**HE Inhabitants of the City *Meliapor*, commonly called *St. Thomas*, were all divided, killing one another without any regard of Human or Divine Laws, or any Shame, that even the *Moors* and *Gentiles* abominated their Wickedness. The occasion was what they call *Points of Honour*. To appease these Disorders, the Viceroy sent *Ruy Diaz de Sampayo* with 7 Sail, and 250 Soldiers.

2. *Ruy Diaz* performed all that was given in Charge to him, and having reconciled the Citizens of *S. Thomas*, sent 6 of his Ships to scour the Coast of *Carriero* under the Command of *Peter Gomez de Sousa*, a Man more couragious than discreet. At *Montepoli* he made cruel havock, surprizing the Inhabitants. As he returned with great Booty, and many Women and Children, an ancient *Moor* appeared upon the Shore, who coming to our Men told them, he was much wronged by *Cotamuza* King of *Goloconda*, and therefore would not only turn Christian, but show them a Fort (meaning that of *Carriero*) they might easily surprize. This was all a Fiction devised by a *Moor*, who seeing what

what was done by our Men, had gathered 600 Moors, and lay in Ambush to see whether *Peter Gomez* would suffer himself to be deceived by this Messenger.

3. *Peter Gomez*, though warned that all this was Treachery, gave Credit to the Moor, followed him a League, and there fell into the Ambush, where he and all his Captains, save one that was left at *St. Thomas*, with 130 *Portugueses* were all slain, 25 taken, and only 30 escaped by flight: 186 *Indians* were killed in the Action.

4. *Joseph Pereyra de Sampayo*, who was left Prisoner by *Peter Gomez*, carried the remainder of the Men and Ships to *S. Thomas*. The Moors sent the *Portugueses* they had taken to the King of *Goloconda*, who complained to *F. Bartholomew Dias*, sent to him by the Bishop of *Meliapor*, that the *Portugues* should enter his Country in hostile manner, at the same time they treated amicably with him. The King admitted the weak excuse, that it was not done by order of the Government, and delivered the Prisoners upon condition those of *Montepoli* should be restored.

5. *D. Emanuel de Meneses* sailed from *Lisbon* with 3 Ships for *India*, one of them springing a Leake was forced to put into the Port again; another arrived safe at *Goa*, after being parted from *D. Emanuel* by a Storm on the Coast of *Guinea*. *D. Emanuel* near the Island of *Madagascar* met 4 *English* Ships, the Commander of them sent to order our Captain aboard, who refused,  
but

but sent an Understanding Man to view their Strength, and he returning said publicly, that the Enemy's Admiral alone was too strong for our Ship. D. *Emanuel* taking him aside, blamed his Indiscretion for disheartning the Men; then he sent word to the *English*, that since their Kings were at Peace, there was no reason the Subjects should break it; that they should bear off, and not come a head of him. Nevertheless the least of the 4 did, he fired at her, and then all the 4 at him.

6. Night came on, our Ship held her Course, and in the Morning found her self among some Islands near the Head of that called *Mannoto*. The Enemy coming on, and the Wind calming, we were forced to engage, our Vessel was soon unmasted, and made the best it could for the Island *Angagiza*. The *English* sent to tell D. *Emanuel* he was running to his Ruine; that if he would surrender himself, all the Men should be landed at *Suratte*, whence they might travel by Land to *Goa*; he answered, if any more such Message were sent him, he would hang him that carried it. The Ship driving towards the Shore with the Tide, stuck between two Rocks, which proved the saving of all the Men, who got ashore leaping a narrow Gut, into which many fell for haste.

7. As soon as landed, the *Cafres* received them with showers of Stones. They were appeased with some Gifts, and the help of some Musket Balls let fly among them by *Josepb Alvarez Torres*, who (though it was plain

plain their Safety consisted in their Arms) advised they should be cast into the Sea, because the *Cafres* would not furnish them with Provisions as long as they were armed. D. *Emanuel* consented, and scarce were they seen next day unarmed, when the *Cafres* stripped them even of their Shirts. Some travelled up the Country, and others along the Shore; the latter in two Days found no Water to drink, were consumed with the heat of the Sun, and some died for want.

8. The 3d Day they met other *Cafres*, who seeing nothing to take from them, gave them Milk and Water with Signs of Compassion. *Sebastian Prestes*, the Pilot of the Ship, attempted to save himself with a few Men in the Boat, and coasting along the Island, met *Chande* a Noble Moor of *Pate*, who was sailing for the Island *Madagascar* with two *Pangayos*. He told the Pilot that King was his Friend, and for his sake would use them all well. The Pilot sent to acquaint D. *Emanuel*, and it appeared those *Cafres* with whom he was, were that King's Subjects. They all came to the Port, and the Moor gave each of them a Cloath to cover his Nakedness. Here it appeared how little the *Cafres* esteem what we most value, they gave many Pieces of Eight for a Rag scarce worth a Farthing, and fetching Bags full of Money out of the Ship, scattered it about the Rocks, and putting their Heads into the Bags were very well pleased.

9. It may well be doubted whether a *Portugues* would have done with 600 Moors, as  
this



this Moor did with 600 *Portugueses* in that miserable Condition. He maintained them, gave them Cloaths, which sold to the *Cafres* had been worth much Money; justly restored them Jewels of great value wherewith they entrusted him, and gave them his two Pangayos to go over to *Mombaca*. They arrived thither on the 4th of *September*, and were maintained and clothed by the Charity of that little Town. On the 10th of that Month they Embarqued, and arrived safe at *Goa*. The Viceroy sent Presents to D. *Emanuel de Meneses*, and comforted him for his Loss. D. *Hierome Manuel*, who commanded the homeward bound Ships about the Islands of *Flores* fought with 4 Pirats, and put into the Island *Tercera*, whence he came to *Portugal* with the Ship that was put back the Year before.

10. The Trade of the Port of *Soar* in *Arabia* much lessened the Customs of *Ormuz* and *Mascate*. To remedy this the Viceroy sent D. *Francis Rolim* with a Galley and five other Vessels, who joined D. *Vasco de Gama* Admiral of that Sea with five Sail more at *Mascate*. *Amer*, Head of a Hord of *Arabs*, to revenge himself upon *Mahomet* King of *Soar*, took part with us, and marched by Land with 1200 Men. Our Men landed, and possessed themselves of some Mosques to secure themselves till the Cannon was set ashore.

11. A Fort on a Hill was first attacked, but so well defended it could not be entred that Day, tho' *Mahomet* who commanded it  
was

was killed with a Musket-Ball. We lost a Captain and 6 Men. In the Morning the Trenches were entred, then a Mosque, and lastly a Town, where many Women and Children were made Prisoners, and much Booty found. In this Action we lost 6 Men more. The Fort not able to hold out for want of Men surrendred; and the King's Brother being taken, was put to Death. Our Men violated the Articles they had made, killing and plundering many of them that marched out. And having agreed with *Amer*, that there should be no Prisoners made, yet they took several Girls on pretence of Breeding them Christians, as if that were an excuse for Breach for Faith. *John de Sousa* was left to Command that Fort, and *Antony Pimenta* joined with him, as skilled in the Affairs of that Country.

12. At *Cananor* happened an accident sad enough, and yet ridiculous. The *Nayres* show no Mercy to a Thief, tho' the thing stolen be of no value. They impale the Criminal, and leave him to be eaten by the Birds. An *Indian* that was turned Christian stole a Knife, the *Nayres* apprehended him, and sent to acquaint the Judge of the *Portugueses* at *Cananor*. He returned answer, they should kill him. They instantly cut off his Head, thinking it was a piece of Civility, being he was a Christian, to kill him our way. Our Commander, *Nicholas Soveral*, sent some Soldiers to fetch the Body, and revenge his Death on the *Nayres*, as if they had not obtained leave for what they did.

The

The Soldiers killed a *Nayre*, which provoked them in great numbers to besiege the Fort with great Threats, if Satisfaction was not given them. Our Cammanders made show of hanging one of *Several's* Servants to appease the *Nayres*; and being cut down put him into a Coffin, as if he were really dead. The *Nayres* were satisfied, and our Men as well pleased that this Fiction had passed upon them, as if the Condescention had not been equal, whether the Act was faigned or real.

13. The King of *Ova*, or *Ava* (for both Names are given him) fearing the Kings of *Siam* and *Arracam*, his Enemies should come to an accommodation with the *Portugueses*, sent Ambassadors to settle a Peace with us, excusing the killing of *Philip de Brito Nicote*, offering to restore the Prisoners he had taken, and to assist us against the King of *Arracam*, of whose great Treasure he desired nothing for himself, but the white Elephant. The Viceroy accepted of the Ambassadors Proposals, and sent back with them *Martin de Costa Falcam* to ratifie the Agreement. He spent many Days in soliciting an hour's Audience, at length it was appointed at Midnight, and he was led in the dark to a Place where they ordered him to speak, for the King heard; he spoke and saw no King, nor heard no answer. He signified the desire he had of seeing the King, and was ordered to wait his going abroad. He went out one Day upon an Elephant, and knowing *Falcam* waited in the Street

Street to see him, never so much as turned his Eyes that way. Such was the account he made of our Embassy, so the Ambassador returned to *Goa* without concluding any thing.

14. Let us conclude this Year with an account of a Monster. In *September* was born at *Chaul* this Monster, whose Head and Face were as round as a Ball, the Mouth of excessive bigness, the Nose quite flat, the Eyes very little, the Ears vastly big like those of an Elephant, the Neck extream thick, in other respects like a Pig. It died the hour it was born.

## C H A P. XII.

*Continues the Government of the Viceroy  
D. Hierome de Azevedo, in the  
Year 1617.*

1. **T**HE Affairs of *Ceylon* were in a dangerous Condition, for we had three powerful Enemies, but few Men to oppose them, and lost the Forts of *Sofragam* and *Balane*. Our Enemies were the King, the *Chingala Antony de Barreto* and *Nicapeti*, who though overcome still was strong. Our General, *D. Nunno Alvares Pereyra*, divided his Men, who with much hazard put all to the Fire and Sword, sparing neither Sex nor Age; for neither Mercy obliged the *Chingala*



*gala's*, nor did Cruelty terrifie them. The Particulars are not worth relating, let us see what happened with *Nicapeti*.

2. Our Forces marched after *Nicapeti* from *Pelandu* to *Catugambala*, *Devamede* and *Cornagal*, taking some Forts by the way, killing many, and carrying away 600 Prisoners. The Tyrant retired to *Talampeti* his usual Refuge, our Men advanced to *Polpeti* in sight of the Enemies Camp, and forcing their Works passed to *Balapane* of *Religiam*, whence they sent away the Prisoners and wounded Men. It was debated in Counsel what was best to be done, and the worst advice prevailed, so D. *Constantine* marched with a Party towards *Alicur* after *Barreto*, and heard he was fortified with 6000 Men at *Jatipara*, having secured all the Women of the *Arabes* and *Lascarines*, and that *Nicapeti* was at *Moratena*. Our Men being divided did little, and had performed much more, if the best advice, which was to keep together, had been followed. The *Chingala's* when the *Portugueses* prevailed offer'd submission, but upon any ill success of ours recanted. At last our Forces quite harassed, went into Quarters at *Botale*.

3. At this time *Laurence Perem de Carvalho* sailed from *Goa* for *Ceylon* with Men and Ammunition in a *Pink*, all at his own proper Charge. A Counsel being held before our General D. *Nunno Alvarez* at *Columbo*, the result was, That he marched in Person with a considerable force to drive *Barreto* from *Sofragam* and *Mature*; *Luis*

Gomez, Pinto was left with his Regiment to secure *Alicur*, and oppose *Nicapeti*, and *Emanuel Cesar* stayed at *Botale* with 100 Men. It was about the End of *March*, when those who were for *Sofragam* set out, carrying *Laurence Lopez Carvalho* with them. Our Parties were successful on all sides, driving the Enemy from their Works, and slaughtering them in the Woods.

4. In *May* our Army advanced towards *Nicapeti*, who was well fortified at *Moratena*, yet fled towards *Candea* with such speed, that our Army could not keep with him. *Luis Gomez Pinto* with his Men and two Companies more was detached to pursue him, who was so intent upon overtaking *Nicapeti*, that he passed by several rich Booties that offered by the way. At length he overtook him in the Deserts of *Anorojapure*, and unexpectedly fell in with him. *Nicapeti* having killed one of our *Lascarines* with an Arrow, fled to the Woods, his Men made a small stand till 60 were slain, and then took the same shelter of the Woods. *Nicapeti's* Wives called Queens, and a Grandson of *Raju*, and Nephew of *Madune*, who used to be at *Uva* with *Barreto*, were taken. The Fame of this Victory brought the Inhabitants of the *Corlas* loaded with Rice to submit themselves to our General at *Malvana*, which had been much distressed, but for this unexpected Victory that happened about *July*.

5. The News hereof also moved *Anara Pandar*, King of *Pandar*, to send his Ambassadors with 32 *Portugueses* he had Prisoners

to treat of Peace. Our General sent his Letters to *Goa*, and the Viceroy read them in Council. The Contents were, That a perpetual Peace should be settled; That he would become Tributary to *Portugal* with the yearly acknowledgment of 4 Elephants, and a quantity of Cinnamon; That he would repair and restore the Fort of *Balane*; That he would consent to the raising another in *Candea*; That his Kingdom should be confirmed upon him, and his three Sons. All the Conditions were admitted, only in what related to settling the Kingdom on him and his Heirs, care should be had that nothing of the Claim the *Portugueses* have to it were diminished. Yet afterwards finding us less formidable, he recanted of part of the Conditions, and the Peace was concluded only with the yearly Tribute of two Elephants.

6. The King of *Portugal* had a Title to the Kingdom of *Jasanapatan*, that King dying and leaving his Son a Child under the Tutition of his Brother *Chingali*, a fair opportunity was offered of seizing that Crown, but other Affairs diverting our Forces, the Viceroy ordered *Chingali* should continue his Possession with the Title of Governor.

7. The Cities of *Bacaim* and *Chaul*, and Lands of *Trapor* and *Tana*, were consumed by Discord among the *Portugueses*, and some of them were daily killed. *Bacaim* chiefly was full of Broils, occasioned by *Ferdinand de Miranda* and *Andrew de Abren*. To suppress these Disorders, the Council sent thither *Dominick Cardoso de Melo* Judge of the

Criminal Court, and with him D. *Peter de Azevedo* Commander of the North. We shall hereafter see God's Judgments on that City and the other Places, to convince those Men they could not escape his Justice, tho' they did that of Men.

8. *Ruy de Melo*, who was deprived of his Command of *Moçambique* by the Judge *Fr. de Fousca Pinto*, went to *Goa*, and being tryed was cleared of all the Crimes laid to his Charge, and ordered to be restored to his Post; *James de Cunna & Castellobranco* Judge of the Criminal Court, was sent to restore him. The Viceroy charged *Melo* to forget past Grudges, to take care of the Peace and Preservation of that Place, and not to offend *Guerra* or *Pinto*; and the more to secure the latter, continued his former Commission during his stay in those Parts. The same Charge he gave to the Judge *Cunna*.

9. *Melo* and *Cunna* sailed from *Goa* in two Vessels, and *Cunna* arrived first at *Moçambique* in *May*. As soon as he came he promised to reconcile him to *Melo*, and in return desired him to secure *Pinto*, contrary to the Viceroy's Orders, which made their Power equal. *Pinto* coming with above 100000 Crowns he had gathered by Extortion, was put into Irons. Being a Prisoner in the Fort he made use of his Rhetorick, telling *Guerra* how much he was beholden to him, and offering, if he would release him and secure *Cunna*, to give him sufficient Certificates to save his Reputation, and clear him



him of all Crimes at *Goa*. This he said, because *Guerra's* guilt was no less than his own.

10. *Guerra* overcome with these Promises, releases *Pinto*, and sending for *Cunna* on pretence of Business detains him Prisoner. He seeing himself in the Power of his two greatest Enemies, whose design was to stay him at *Moçambique*, giving 18000 Ducats security, got loose and escaped to *Mombaca*, where *Ruy de Melo* was detained. They two with *Simon de Melo Pereyra*, Commander of that Fort, and *Emanuel Freyre de Andrade* gave Sentence of Death against *Guerra*, as a Rebel. *Melo* and *Cunna* Embarque for *Moçambique*; mean while *Pinto* to secure his Gold was sailing for *Goa*. *Guerra* was advised not to stay the coming of his Enemies, yet he did, and receiving *Melo* at the Gate deliver'd him the Keys. *Melo*, or his Son (for in this particular Relations vary) embracing *Guerra* stabbed him, then spurning and reviling, caused him to be apprehended. A few Days after he was condemned to be hanged, and tho' he offered to fit out a compleat Gallion for the King's Service to purchase Life, was executed.

11. The *Chineses* provoked by the Insolencies of the *Portugueses* at *Macao*, were drawing together Forces to expel them. The *Mandarines* of the Province of *Quantung*, sent to them first to reproach them of their Crimes, ordering that either they should for the future resolve to live honestly, or immediately withdraw from thence with their Wives and Children. The *Portugueses* pleaded

pleaded innocence, excused their Faults, and promised for the time to come to observe their Laws.

12. *D. Garcia de Silva* (of whom mention was made before) was still at *Goa*, in order to go Ambassador to *Persia*. The Reason of his stay was because that King continued to commit Hostilities, having taken from us *Bandel of Comoram* in *Arabia*. Yet now he resolved to send an Ambassador to *Spain*, and chose for this Employ *Robert Sherley* an Englishman.

13. The *Persian* sending an Ambassador to *Spain*, it was thought the Spaniard might safely go to him. *D. Garcia* began to make ready, but his long stay at *Goa* having been chargeable, he demanded 30000 Ducats of the Viceroy, who was forced to give him the best part of that Sum; but this being in the dead of Winter, his Voyage was put off till Spring, and I cannot find any farther account what became of him or his Embassy.

14. The Viceroy, to gratifie the King of *Macassa* for his kind Entertainment of *Gongalo Rodrigues de Sousa*, answered his Letter, and sent him a Present by *Augustin Lobato*, who sailed from *Goa* on the 3d of October with 2 Galliots. On the way he took two Vessels of *Achem*, and being well received and dispatched by the King of *Macassa*, he sailed then loaden with Provisions for *Ternate*. He fought two Dutch Vessels, landed the Provisions, returned again and brought more from *Macassa*, then going to *Manila* winter'd there.

15. The *Portugueses* sailing from *Malaca* to *Manila*, found there was a Days difference between those two Places; that is, they who go from *Malaca* think they arrive at *Manila* on a Sunday, and it is Monday; and the contrary from *Manila* to *Malaca*. The reason is, that those who sail to the Eastward at every 15 Degrees have the Sun rising an hour sooner, and they who to the Westward an hour later. From *Portugal* to *India* 7 hours are gained, the rest from *Goa* to *Manila*, which added to those lost between *Manila* and *Spain*, make up the difference of a whole Day.

16. Our Viceroy earnestly desired to hear of the many *Portugueses* were said to be cast away on the Island of *Madagascar* since the Discovery of *India*, as also to plant the Christian Faith there, and settle a friendly Correspondence with the Kings thereof, to the Exclusion of the *Hollanders* out of those Ports. To this effect he sent thither several Vessels during his Government. I have thought fit not to divide the Relation of those Expeditions, and therefore place them together in the following Chapters.

## C H A P. XIII.

*Particular Discoveries made in the Island of Madagascar, or St. Lawrence, by order of the Viceroy D. Hierome de Azevedo.*

1. **T**HE Viceroy, in pursuance of the King's Orders for discovery of the Affairs of the Island *Madagascar*, or *St. Lawrence*, fitted out a Caravel for that Expedition under the Command of *Paul Rodriguez de Costa*, with Soldiers, two Jesuits, and Interpreters.

2. They set sail from *Goa* at the end of *January*, and reached that Island about the middle of *April*. The circumference of it is about 600 leagues, the length 260, and lies North-North-East, and South-South-West; the breadth, where most, is not above 80 leagues on the South part, and less Northward, for there it ends in a Point which bears the Name of *St. Ignatius*, and is about 15 leagues in length from East to West. It is therefore divided into 3 parts; the first made by an imaginary Line drawn from East to West at Cape *St. Andrew*, forms the North part: The other two are divided by a ridge of Mountains running from the said Line along the middle of the Island to Cape *St. Romanus*.



3. I will not name the Kingdoms it contains, because they are too many, and confused. It is very Populous, the Inhabitants living in Cities and Town of different extent and grandeur, well watered, and diversified with Mountains, Valleys, Bays, and Ports. The Names of *Madagascar* and *St. Lawrence* are given it by Strangers, the Natives having no general Name thereof. There is no certainty of the first Planting of it. The generality of the Natives, called *Buques*, have no Religion, and consequently no Priests, or Churches. Any body circumcises the Children between 5 and 7 Years of Age.

4. They are not all of a Colour, some quite Black, with curled Hair; some not so dark, with lank Hair; some like *Mulato's*; and some up the Inlands whiter, yet of both sorts of Hair. Of Stature large, well made and strong, of a clear judgment, and apt to learn. Every Man has as many Wives as he can or will, and turns them off at pleasure, and they find other Husbands. The Husband gives the Portion, saying, *It is a Recompence for their Fathers by whom they were bred for them.* Their Funeral Obsequies consist in Feasting the Guests. The Mourning, in laying aside all marks of Joy, cutting the Hair, or covering the Face and Body with Clay.

5. Their Government is Monarchical, the Kings are called *Andis*, *Anvins*, and *Dias*, without any dependance on another. They are continually in War, the end whereof is rather Plunder than Slaughter. No Arms

WERE

were found among them, but some Guns given by the *Moors* and *Hollanders*, which they do not use, and are fearful of them in their own hands. Their Merchandize is excellent Amber, white Sandal, Tortoises, Ebony, other sweet Woods, and abundance of Slaves. There is plenty of all sorts of Cattle. Their Goat is as sweet as our Mutton, They have abundance of Sea-Cows, Sea-Horses, Monkeys, some say Tigers, and Snakes not very very venomous. No Elephants, Horses, Alces, Lions, Bears, Deer, Foxes, nor Hares.

6. This is the Island of *Madagascar*, where our Discoverers now were in a large Bay near *Mafialage*, in which is an Island half a league round, which contains a City of 8000 Inhabitants, most of them Weavers of excellent Stuffs made of the Palm-Tree, in the Latitude of 16 degrees. Here the *Moors* used to buy Boys, whom they carried to *Arabia* to serve their Lust. The King of this Place was called *Samamo*, with whom Friendship was established, and he granted Leave to Preach the Gospel. They coasted almost 40 leagues Westward, discovering the mouth of the great River *Balue* in the Latitude of somewhat more than 16 degrees. Turning Cape St. *Andrew*, they saw the River and Kingdom of *Casame* in 17 degrees of Latitude, where they found little Water, and had much Trouble. Here also Amity was established with the King, called *Sampilla*, a discreet old Man, but in all this way heard no News of the *Portugueses* sought after. About the middle of *May*, on *Whitsunday*, Mass was said

said on Shore, and two Crosses set up, which that King seemed to be pleased at, promising to restore them if at any time they fell.

7. In the Holy-days they discovered a small Island in 18 degrees of Latitude, which they call *Espirito Santo*; half a degree farther Banks of Sand 9 leagues in length, where they were in some danger. On *Trinity-Sunday* they landed further on, were again in danger of Sands, anchored at the 7 Islands of *Cuerpo de Dios* in 19 degrees of Latitude, near the River and Kingdom *Sadia*, to which they came on the 15th of *June*, and found scarce Water enough for Caravels. The Kingdom is large, the City on the Banks of the River has about 10000 Inhabitants, great plenty of Flesh, *Indian* Wheat, Tar, Tortoises, Sandal, Ebony, and sweet Woods, the People black, simple, but good natured, and have no Trade. The King's Name was *Capitape*, an ancient Man, much respected, and very sincere. He established Peace, and gave his Son to guide our Men, and assist them along that Coast. All along this Coast from *Massalaje* to *Sadia*, which are 130 leagues, is used the Language of the *Cafres*. All the rest of the Island uses the Language called *Buqua*, which is the Native.

8. Turning towards the South they discovered the Country of the *Buques*, a very wicked and poor People, feeding upon the Spawn of Fish. The Inland Kings, who are more powerful, oppress them. They passed  
by

by the River *Mane*; that of *Saume* in 20 degrees 15 minutes of South Latitude; *Mano-puta* in 20 degrees 30 minutes, (here they heard of *Portugueses*;) *Isango* in 21 degrees; *Terrir* 21 degrees 30 minutes; the 7 Islands of *St. Elizabeth* in 22 degrees. On the 11th of *July* they came into the Port of *St. Felix* in 22 degrees, and heard somewhat of *Portugueses* from *Dissamuto* the King.

9. Our Men offering a Silver Chain here for some Provisions, the Natives gave it to an old Woman to try whether it was right, she said, That 3 days Journey down a River there was an Island inhabited long since by a white Warlike People, habited like our Men, that wore Crosses about their Necks, and lived upon Rapine, that they easily took what they would, being Armed with Spears and Guns. Our Men were pleased at this Information, and here whilst they were at *Mafs*, the Prince of *Loquexa* with a Black ran away. Three *Portugueses* caught him, and he begged they would kill him; being brought back and better treated, he wholly submitted to their will.

10. Passing by the Bay of *St. Bonaventure*, and the mouth of the River *Massimanga*, they entred the Port *Santa Clara*, whither *Diamassuto* came to them, concluded a Peace, and on his knees worshipped the Crucifix. They were told, that white People resorted to the Neighbouring Port, which were supposed to be *Hollanders*. Going on they found Banks of Sand not set down in the Charts, and entred the Port in 24 degrees



grees of Latitude. The People were affable, their King's Name *Diacomena*; they said, That on the opposite Coast there were *Portugueses* who had been cast away, and fed Cattle; that the *Hollanders* had been there three times, and left them four Muskietiers, with whose help they made War on their Enemies. Friendship was established here, upon condition they should not again admit the *Hollanders*. Some Inscriptions were found carved on Trees, one of them had these words, *Christophorus Neoportus Anglus Cap.* And another, *Dominus Robertus Schurleius Comes, Legatus Regii Persarum.*

11. In the Latitude of 25 degrees, entering a Port they called it of *St. Augustin*, the Name of the Kingdom is *Vavalinta*, the King's *Diamacrinali* a Buque, who no sooner saw the *Portugueses* but he said, *Are these some of the Men of the other Coast?* This confirmed what had been heard of the *Portugueses* before; and the King, being asked, said, *They were 6 days sail thence.* In September our Men saw Cape *St. Mary*, where they spent 40 days in stormy weather, and on *St. Luke's* day entered the Port of the same Name in the Kingdom of *Enscroe*. The Natives said, That half a day's Journey off there were white People with Crosses, who had a great Town. *Randumana* the King came to the Caravel, and sent one of his Subjects with a *Portugues* to shew him where he said those White Men were, but the Black left our Man half way.

12. Among

12. Among others, there came thither to Trade with our Men a King with above 500 fighting Men, his Sons almost white, their Hair long, wearing Gowns and Breeches of Cotton of several colours, with Silver Buttons, Bracelets, and other Jewels of Gold, Pearl, and Coral. This King's Name was *Bruto Chembanga*; his Kingdom, called *Matacassi*, borders upon *Enseoo* on the West. He shewed *Arabick* Books. He said, The *Portugueses* were all dead, who not far from thence had built a Town of Stone, and worshipped a Cross, on the foot whereof were unknown Characters. He drew all on the Sand, repeated *Portugues* Surnames, and demanded much Gold for telling his knowledge herein. Some of his Men wore Crosses, and informed our People, there were two *Holland* Ships in Port St. Lucy or *Mangascafe*.

13. In a small Island here was found a square Stone Fort, and at the foot of it carved on a piece of Marble the Arms of *Portugal*, with this Inscription, *REX PORTUGALENSIS* © S. Many Judgments were made of that Circle between the two last S's, but nothing of certainty can be concluded.

14. The King *Chambanga* desired a *Portugues* might be sent to his Court to treat about important Affairs, leaving a Nephew Hostage for his safe return. The Master *Antony Gonzalez*, and *F. Peter Freyre*, were sent, who at 12 leagues distance found his Court, called *Fanfaria*, very populous and magnificent. He Treated them well at first,  
then

then coldly; but they making him a considerable Present, they were good Friends, and he delivered them his eldest Son to be carried to *Goa*, desiring as Hostages for him the two Jesuits, and four other *Portugueses*, to whom he gave the Island of *St. Cruz* to live in.

15. These People are descended from the *Moors*, and call themselves *Zelima's*; they use the Alcoran in *Arabick*, and have Faquies who teach them to write and read; they eat no Bacon, are Circumcised, and some marry several Wives.

---

C H A P. XIV.

*Continues the Discoveries in the Island Madagascar under the Vice-Roy D. Hierome de Azevedo.*

1. **T**HE same King told the *Portugueses*, That in his Father's time a Ship of theirs was cast away on that Coast; that about 100 of the Men came ashore, some brought their Wives, others married there, and left a numerous Offspring. He repeated several of their Names, and shewed a Book writ in *Portugues* and *Latin*, and some Maps, and concluded, saying, There were more *Portugueses* on that Coast 7 days Journey Northward.

2. Inquiring further, our Men found an old Man 90 Years of Age, who had known  
the

the *Portugueses* that were cast away there, and could remember still some odd Words of our Language. The Ships that were lost, and never known where since the discovery of *India*, were as follows. In the Year 1504, three Ships; one in the Year 1505; in 1527, two were cast away on the Island *Madagascar*, and the Men remained there for want of Vessels to transport them; four were lost the Year 1534, not known where; one more in the Year 1538. The *Portugueses*, those People spoke of, must belong to some of these Ships.

3. Our Men all set their hands to work, and built a small Chapel and House for the four *Portugueses* and two Religious Men, who were to remain there. The Work done, Mass was said, and many of the Natives came to learn to make the sign of the Cross. The King seeing some Men labour under a Cross that was to be set upon a Rock run half naked and bare footed, and carried it alone to the Place appointed. The *Portugueses* might say, they had found another Emperor *Heraclius*, for after this pious Action he became wicked, in this manner.

4. Our Captain being ready to sail, demanded that Son the King had promised to send with him; and he not only refused to perform, but denied he had made any such Promise, and offered a Slave. The Captain seeing this change, sent the Master and Pilot with some Men to demand Hostages, that a *Portugues* might go to Port St. *Lucy* to sound it, and see an Inscription the Natives said was  
in



in that place. If the King granted this, they were to require no more; if not, to endeavour to bring away by force one of his Sons.

The Peace thus broke, and some Attempts of getting one of the King's Sons sailing, some *Portugueses* marched with their Muskets. The King dreaded them, but kept his Men in readiness. A Fray ensuing, they caught one of his Sons 11 Years of Age, who was his Darling. The King endeavoured to rescue him, but was repulsed by our Shot. The Subjects of another King came to offer any thing for the Boy's Ransom; but being told, it was the Viceroy's Command, the King's Promise, and that they should lose their Heads if they did not carry him, they went away satisfied. Thus ended the Year 1613. The Child came to Goa about the middle of the Year 1614, the Viceroy caused him to be well instructed in the Faith by the Jesuits, and was his God-father in Baptism, giving him the Name of *Andrew* because it was on that Apostle's day, and the Sirname of *Azevedo* as his God-child.

6. The Viceroy treated him with all Honour and Magnificence, hoping to gain him, that when he succeeded his Father, he might forward the Propagation of the Gospel; and believing he was sufficiently grounded, sent him away with four Jesuits. The Vessels were a *Pink* and a *Caravel*, commanded by *Peter de Almeyda Cabral*, and *John Cardoso de Pina*, who set out on the 17th of

Sep-

September 1616, and on the 20th of *March* they discovered the Island *Del Cifao*, or *The Sw-n*, a most delightful Place, watered with pure Springs, and bearing several unknown Plants and Herbs, besides many known both Sweet and Medicinal. The Religious on the Barks of the Trees carved the time of their arrival there, and planted some Crosses.

7. In this Island there are two Mountains that overtop the Clouds. The Wreck of two *Holland* Ships was found there. Our Ships entred Port *St. Lucas*, in the Island of *Madagascar*. The King and Queen came to receive their Son with great joy, and delivered Hostages at taking him away.

8. With the Prince went the Fathers and six Soldiers. He was every where till he came to the Court, received with demonstrations of Joy, which to us seem ridiculous, as those used by us would appear to them. This done, the King made the same Agreement with our Captain that had been with the former, which was, that the Religious should inhabit the Island of *Santa Cruz*, and thence have the liberty to go out and Preach the Gospel; that there should be a League Offensive and Defensive between the King and *Portugueses*. So the Fathers, *Almeyda* and *Costa*, went to the Fort of *Santa Cruz*, and *D. Andrew* the King's Son sent them Workmen and Provisions.

9. The Captain *Peter de Almeyda* had Orders to carry the King to *Goa*; or if he refused, another Son, which, if not consented to, should be taken by force. A Son being de-

demanded, he answered, *He had but one, who was too young for that Voyage.* *Almeida* thinking this was but an Excuse, began to commit Hostilities, but being informed it was true, desisted. Yet he carried away *Amia Sambo* the King's Nephew, who was Baptized at *Goa* by the Name of *Hierome*.

10. Being now a Christian, he was sent to his Country in a Plink, commanded by *Emanuel Freyre de Andrade*, with 100 Soldiers, 2 Jesuits, and a Present worth 4000 Ducats for the King and Prince. They set out in the beginning of *February*, and being forced to water at the Island *Del Cisne*, or *The Swan*, they saw three Ships sunk at the mouth of a River. Our Men landing, found 2 leagues from the Shore 20 *Hollanders* guarding the Goods they had saved. They made some opposition, but being overcome, *Freyre* carried them to his Pink, with a great quantity of Clove, Pepper, Arms, Ammunition, and Provision, then fired all that was left. The *Hollanders* said, They came from the *Molucco* Islands with a Pass from their Admiral *Lawrence Ales*.

11. *Freyre* coming into Port *St. Lucas*, the two Jesuits came to him, both sick, affirming it was impossible to live there, and that those who had been left with them were dead. The Captain sent the King the Letters he had for him, and a Present, by his Nephew *D Hierome's* Servant's. The King in return sent 100 fat Oxen, much Fowl, Honey, and 6 Slaves, but would not come himself; and

it was found, that his Son *D. Andrew* fell off from the Faith into Mahometanism. The *Sadio's* and *Fansayra's* are *Indians* *Cafres*, and love the liberty of having many Wives. The King was a *Fansayra*, and now designed to destroy *Freyre* by Treachery. The cause of this Change was a *Cbingala*, Slave to the Jesuits, who running away from them, periwaded the King the *Portugueses* would deprive him of his Kingdom, and undertook to destroy them. Many *Cafres* coming to the Shore, to this purpose began a Fray, giving *F. Almeyda* a cuff, then Stones and Darts began to fly, but our Bullets also flying, some were killed, and their Quarters hung upon the Trees for an Example, and one of their Towns was burnt.

12. *Emanuel Freyre* carried away with him the King's Nephew *D. Hierome*, and a Brother of his taken in the Skirmish with the *Cafres*, who was converted, and died at *Goa*. All the Jesuits agreed to desist from that Mission, and depart with the Captain, though he opposed them, and came to *Goa*, where the Viceroy not allowing their weak Excuses, much condemned their remissness in that Affair.

13. Towards the end of this Year arrived in India *D. John Coutinno Count de Redondo*, who was to succeed the Viceroy  
1617. *D. Hierome de Azevedo*, and of whom we shall next treat. *D. Hierome* returned to *Portugal* in the same Ship that had carried the Count, and no sooner anchored at *Lisbon* but he was made Prisoner, and put into the  
Dun-



Dungeon of the Castle. He was disrespectfully treated, after a long Imprisonment, had a Hearing, and then again was worse used. The chief Crime laid to his Charge, was not fighting the *Hollanders*.

14. He was so rich at his entring upon the Government, that *Nunno de Cunha* telling him after all his Misfortunes, he was still worth 4 or 500000 Ducats; he answered, *I am worth that in Cattle*. Notwithstanding all this Riches, he died poor in Prison, and the King got nothing by it. His Liberality was so great, he gave the value of several thousand Ducats in one Present of Curiosities at *Ceylon*. He was of the Ancient and Noble Family of *Azevedo*, a Soldier of Valour, and wise Commander, and zealous Viceroy.

15. But it is not amiss to observe, that though this Gentleman could not justly Suffer for the Crimes laid to his Charge, yet these his Misfortunes were a Judgment from the Hand of GOD for his extraordinary Cruelty. In the height of his Success in *Ceylon*, he forced Mothers to cast their Children between Mill-stones, and having seen them ground to Mash, they were afterwards Beheaded.

16. He caused the Soldiers to take up Children on the Points of their Pikes, and hearing them cry, bid them hark how those Cocks crowed. Playing upon the likeness of the Names, those People being called *Gala's*, and Cocks in Portugues *Galo's*. He caused many Men to be cast off the Bridge of *Maj-*

*vana*, for the Souldiers to see the Crocodils devour them. And those Creatures were so used to this Food, that at a Whistle they would lift their Heads above Water.

17. D. *Hierome* was of a middle Stature, thick and swarthy, his under Lip hanging, and always moist, a certain Token of Cruelty. He was reduced to such Extremity in Prison, that the Society of *Jesus* maintained, and after his Death decently buried him. He held the Government almost five Years, and was one of them who best deserved it. Of Viceroyes he is the 22th, of Governors the 42th, the 1st of the Name and Sirname.

## C H A P. XV.

*The Government of the Viceroy D. John Coutinno Count de Rodondo, from the Year 1617 till 1619.*

1. **T**His Year sailed from *Lisbon* D. *John Coutinno Count de Rodondo* with four Ships, one whereof was forced back from the Line. During his Government, which lasted not two Years compleat, there happened wonderful Prodigies, Storms, Dearth, and other Judgments. I will give an account of the most remarkable, dividing that from what relates to his Government, which shall be first spoke of.

2. The War continued at *Mangalor*, where *Salvador Ribeyro Marinno* commanded, who being

being assisted by D. *João Coutinho*, Commander in Chief of *Malabar*, took the Field against 12000 Natives, and destroyed many with the loss of 6 Men. The little King of that *Banguel*, or District, who was our Friend, not able to maintain it against his Enemy *Bentacanayque*, made it over to us to defend it. *Antony de Saldanha* was left to command there afterwards. D. *Francis de Adames de Bacaim* was sent to his assistance with an allowance of 4000 Crowns; for now the Wages were grown greater than the Employments. The Men landing in disorder, the Moors, who lost no advantage, slew some; but the others forming themselves put them to flight. For some time they were kept under by 300 *Portugueses* and 1000 *Indians*.

3. Soon after another Skirmish happening with the *Canara's*, the Plain was covered with the dead Bodies. In *August* the Vice-roy sent thither *Francis de Miranda Enriquez* with 8 sail, and by the end of the same Month 4000 of the Enemy were slain, with the loss of 800 *Portugueses*. *Miranda* having taken a rich Ship of the Queen of *Olala* coming from *Meca*, gave her occasion to assist our Enemy with a good Body of Men, they besieged our Fort of *Banguel*, burnt the Town, and hereupon followed so sharp an Engagement, that though many of the Enemy were slaughtered, it was with such loss on our side we had no cause to rejoice. *Miranda* thought to have taken the Fort of *Olala* by Storm, but was repulsed. The beginning

ginning of the next Year was more unfortunate; for *Bontacanayque* with 12000 *Canara's* falling upon *Luis de Brito & Melo*, who carried Succors, and *D. Francis de Miranda*, killed them both with 180 *Portugueses*, and above 60 Slaves. The day after the News of this Disaster came to *Goa*, there was found a Lampoon upon the Viceroy, the Secretary, the Surveyor of the Revenue, and the Chancellor, laying that and other Misfortunes to their Charge.

4. It has been related how *Ruy de Melo*, and *Sampayo*, and *James de Cunha* executed *Salvador Vaz de Guerra* at *Mozambique*. The News of that impudent Action brought to *Goa* so terrified the Judge *Francis de Pousica Pinto*, then a Prisoner, that he made his Escape by Bribes, and died in the Country of the *Moors*.

5. The Viceroy sent an Ambassador to the *Mogol*, to desire he would not admit our Enemies the *English* and *Dutch* into his Ports; *F. Emanuel Pineyro*, a Jesuit, went on this Errand. The result was, that the King took off the Embargo that was upon 200 Sail of ours in his Ports, and forbore making War upon *Damam* and *Diu*, for which purpose he had already detached 80000 Horse from the Army, that was ready to march against the *Persians* who invaded his Territories. His Army consisted of 300000 Horse, the Foot innumerable, many Thousand Camels, 12000 Elephants, 8000 Yoke of Oxen drawing as many Carts, besides such as carry on their backs like Mules;



Mules; 70000 poor People followed this multitude.

6. This multitude being to pass a rapid River that falls from a Mountain, he laid over it a wooden Bridge for the Men, and broke the Fury of its Course with a Dam for the Beasts to swim over safely. A whole Month was spent in passing. The Camp was 8 Leagues in compass so regular, so beautified with such Tents, and so well supplied with all Necessaries, that it looked like a well govern'd City.

7. This Year sailed from *Lisbon* for *India* 3 Ships, and 2 Flyboats, under the Command of D. Christopher de Noronha. Six English Ships lay then about the Cape of Good Hope, which taking one of the Flyboats, understood the others were coming, and lay in wait for them. They meeting, the English Admiral said, *He had Orders from his King to seize Effects of the Portuguese to the value of 70000 Crowns for the Damage done by the Viceroy D. Hierome de Azevedo to the English Ships in the Bay of Surat.* This Sum was immediately paid him, and 20000 Ducats more to divide among his Men. Our Admiral no sooner arrived at *Goa*, but he was secured by the Viceroy, and sent Prisoner to *Lisbon*.

8. The King of *Jorcon* came into the River of *Malaca* with 80 Sail in a miserable condition, as who was expelled his Dominions by the King of *Achem*. Our Officers going to visit him, he desired Assistance against

against that Enemy, which was denied him; and yet afterwards they desired the same of the King, to oppose the Power of *Achem* which threatened that Place, and was more formidable than it had been till that time.

9. A small Squadron was sent from *Malacca*, under the Command of *Lope de Sousa*, to plunder the *Hollander* Factory at *Joaze*, where they found only 4 or 5 *Dutch* Men with a number of the *Natives*, yet would not attack them for fear of exposing the Son-in-Law, and Son of the Commander of *Malacca*, who, if not to be exposed, ought not to have gone. They lost the opportunity of taking a great Sum of Money that was kept there, and in stead of plundering that Enemy, gained another, by destroying some Towns along the Coast.

10. The *Tartars* having ruined part of the famous Wall of *China*, entred like a Torrent with above a million of Men, bearing down Cities, and whole Provinces, till they drew near the Court of *Peking* in so terrible a manner, that the King was about withdrawing to *Nanking*. But the *Chineses* recovering of the first Fright, fell upon the *Tartars*, and made such a slaughter as obliged them to quit that Province. The *Jesuits* here gained much Esteem, having been very serviceable with their Intelligence. For an Example to posterity, I will relate the Particulars of this Invasion of the *Tartars* till the Year 1640.

11. When

11. When *Hunnu*, the first of the Family, now reigning in *China*, expelled the *Tartars*, who for 90 Years had been possessor of that Crown, he not only recovered what had been lost, but conquered the Frontiers of *Tartary*, dividing them into several Governments. These in time grew to such a height, that they raised themselves into 3 Kingdoms, one on the East, the other towards the West, and the third on the North. The two last immediately cast off the *Chinese* Yoke, the other continued in Obedience till the *Chinese* seeing it grow powerful, without any other occasion resolved to weaken it. But the *Tartars* oppressed taking courage, revenged themselves, running to Arms, and securing a strong Hold in the Province of *Leautung*, by which and other Actions they became Masters of the Field. The other two Kingdoms moved by the hope of Gain, joyned with the former, and in the Year 1618, (which was 300 after *Hunnu*,) formed a most formidable Army, which coming to Battel with that of *China*, no less numerous, gave it a total overthrow, rather to be attributed to the ill Conduct of the *Chinese*, than Valour of the *Tartars*. The King of *China* so much neglected his Government, he seemed to be in a perfect Lethargy; and all the Industry used by his Ministers to awake him, was of no effect.

12. In fine, the *Tartars* continued the War with such Success, that they conquered the Northern Province of *Leautung*, and forced the Kingdom of *Corea* to pay them Tribute,

as

as they did till then to *China*. After the *Tartars* were beaten from *Peking*, a *Chinese* Woman headed some Troops against them, and gained great Fame, defeating them in several places.

---

## C H A P. XVI.

*Continues the Government of the Viceroy D. John Coutinho Count De Redondo.*

1. **A**T the time the *Tartar* Invasion appeared most formidable, *Gonsalo Teyceyra* a *Portugues* was at *Peking*, having carried thither a Present from the City *Macao* to the *Mandarins*, he in the Name of the said City offered to assist them with a number of expert Soldiers. They accepted the Offer, and sent thither him that made it, and F. *John Rodriguez* a *Jesuit*. Four hundred Men were raised in the City, most of them *Portugueses*, the rest *Chineses* bred among them, and consequently good Musketers. Every Soldier had a *Mulatto* Servant bought at the King's expense, and their Pay was so great, they all cloathed themselves in costly Apparel, bought the best Arms, and yet thought themselves rich. They embarked under two Captains, *Peter Cardero* in chief, and *Antony Rodriguez del Cabo*. At *Quantung* the *Chineses* were assisted



nished at their Volleys, and Exercise. They were sent in Boats up the River, and well treated. Being come to a Mountain they crossed it on Horseback, and then took Boats again, crossing almost all the Province of *Kiangsi*, till they came to the Metropolis thereof. The People admired their Presence, Arms, and Garb: and because some had their Cloaths slashed, said, 'They could not imagine why Men of sense should purposely tear a Stuff that was whole.

2. These Men, who might have been so serviceable upon this occasion, were from that City sent back to *Macao*. The principal Reason is supposed to be, That the *Chinases* of *Quamung*, who are Factors for the *Portugueses*, fearing this might be a means for them to be admitted into the Kingdom, whereby they should lose the Advantages they made of them in the way of Trade, represented it to the Magistrates as a thing dangerous to introduce those Strangers into the Kingdom, and under-hand bribing the *Mandarins*, prevailed with those very Men who had advised the King to send for the *Portugueses* with so great Expence to send them back, saying, 'It was not convenient to make use of them.

3. The King answered: 'It is not long since you proposed making use of these Men against the *Tartars*, now you say, it is not convenient. When you propose any thing again, consider of it better, and if they are not for our service, let them return. It is remarkable, that whereas the  
*Chi-*

*Chineses* are so jealous, they suffer no Strangers (even Ambassadors) to view their Towns, especially the Court, these Soldiers had liberty to see all Things at their pleasure without any lett. The same liberty was given to the Ambassadors sent by the City *Macao*, and to the *Jesuits*.

4. The *Jesuits* made at this time good progress in the propagation of the Faith, and were informed of a certain People called of the Cross, as being descended from ancient Christians. Two Fathers had this Intelligence from certain Jews in the City *Caisumfir*. These Jews had there a Synagogue as big as a large Church, well adorned, and the Bible in *Hebrew*, *Syrisk*, and *Chaldeick*.

5. They gave some account of those People of the Cross, who were then dispersed, and their Church converted to a Heathen Pagod. The *Jesuits* inquiring in the Neighbouring Towns, found some footsteps of that People, though they concealed themselves, fearing this search after them was upon some ill design. One of these had the Pictures of *St. Peter* and *St. Paul*.

6. Four Galliots sailing from *Macao*, were attacked by a *Holland* Ship, and being boarded by them, fired herself. One *Japonesse* was saved, who said, That Ship carried Money to supply their Forts, and that there were aboard some *Chineses* of Quality taken not long before. Five *Portugueses* were lost in the Ship.

7. *Constantine de Sa & Noronha* succeeded *D. Mano Alvarez Pereira*, who was gone to the Conquest of the *Mounts of Cuama*, in the Post of General of *Ceylon*. He built the Fort of *Sofragam*, because the Neighbourhood was in Arms, and left there 100 *Portugueses* and 200 *Lascarines*. Then he marched towards *Madune*, who was fortified at the two *Corls's*, the ancient Patrimony of his Forefathers, a Mountainous Country, well watered, bearing much Rice, and about 7 Leagues in compais. *Noronha* staid some days at *Ceytavaca* to get Provisions, and settle 30 *Portugueses* in a high Tower, the only part standing of that great City. After a month's march through the Enemies Country, where Hunger began to pinch, he understood *Madune* fled. He follows to his City, and finding it abandoned, burns it. A *Budisme* was here destroyed, that is, a Tree those People highly esteem, saying, *Their God Budum leaned against it*, whence it takes its Name. On the foot of this were the Images of several Idols curiously carved.

9. *Noronha* finding no Enemy, was upon his return, when 500 of *Madune's* Men appeared in his Rear, commanded by *Chacatien Zala*. Our General laid a few *Portugueses* and 1000 *Lascarines* in ambush, and though some of our Men at first fled, he broke the Enemy, killing many, and taking 35 Men of great Note, whereof one was *Chacatien*. The Enemy seeking Revenge another day, had 30 principal Men slain, and among them

them the Prince of *Uva*, who called himself King.

10. The *Hollanders* this Year took several good Prizes, the *Portugueses* endeavouring to gather Wealth, but not providing the means to defend it. The Particulars are too inconsiderable to be related, I will say somewhat of the *Malabar* Pirates, whom our Carelessness and Presumption made bold.

11. Whilst our Admiral of the *Malabar* Sea was upon that Coast, D. *Pedro* (a Cousin of that *Cannale* who was beheaded at *Goa*) after becoming a Christian fled from that City, and commanding 5 *Parao's*, took several of our Ships, hindred the Trade, and took the Island *De las Vagas*, and that of *Tristan Galayo*. Our General D. *Catharine de Sa* from *Columbo* sent 40 Gallions to *Manar*, to joyn 18 small Vessels there, and destroy that Pirat. They set out on the Eve of the *Ascension*, and being parted by a Storm, the 18th met at the Island of *Galayo*. *Vitoria de Abreu* commanded them, who being informed by two Blacks, left there by the Owner of the Island, that the 5 *Parao's* were gone to some Place near for Ammunition, and that before they returned he might possess himself of Goods to the value of 30000 Ducats lost there by D. *Pedro* in a House; he made light of this Intelligence, and staying for the Enemy, lost 12 of the 18 Sail, and about 300 Men besides those that were taken, whereof he was one.



12. Mean while our Squadron convoyed the Merchant Fleet after such a manner, that the same Pirate took a Vessel without their offering to defend it. The Merchants of *Macao* desired the Captains of the Con- voy to recover that Ship, but they would, or durst not. A Spanish Flyboat accidentally passing by, at the request of that City re- cover'd it.

13. *Constantine de Sa*, ever since he was General of *Duple*, had intelligence, that *Changali Camara* King of *Jafanapatan*, and our Subject, mistak'd *Madag*. He offered much Money to have receiving the Price of the Elephants due as Tribute. *Changali* pri- vily Armed, and *Constantine* sent *Philip de Oliveyra* with 200 Portugueses, and 3000 *Esquaves*, who demanded the value of the Elephants, and he answered not to the pur- pose, relying on 8000 Men well Armed, and his strong Walls. *Oliveyra* advanced, and the King understanding it by a treacherous Portugues, sent to him not to proceed, and he would stand by the former Capitulation. This was only a Stratagem to cut off our Van, which was far advanced under *Luis Ca- bral de Faria*.

14. *Oliveyra* credited the Fraud, and sent Orders to *Faria* to come back, but at such time as the Enemy had attacked him; he answered, *It was then too late, and breaking a Body of 1000 Blacks, advanced. Two thou- sand that followed him were defeated by Oliveyra, who hearing the noise, marched with all speed. Changali flying over the*  
V River,

River, was taken, and with him 8000 Crowns, our Men undecently treating the Princesses that were in his company. The King seeing his Brother in-Law's Ears cut off for the Ear-Rings, took out his own, and gave them to the next Man. *Oliveyra* ordered him at *Jafanapatan* to make a List of the *Portugueses* he held Correspondence with. He made one, and among the many named was *Oliveyra* himself, with the allowance of 2000 Crowns, and the late General *D. Nanno Alvarez Pereira* with 9000. The King was carried to *Goa*, *Oliveyra* was left to govern the Kingdom. *Madune* wanting this Friend, submitted himself.

15. *Andrew Botello de Costa* coming to *Jafanapatan* with 6 Sail, understood there was a great *Danish* Ship at *Gale* that had taken some Prizes, he found out, and after three hours Fight, took her. Of the Enemy, 8 were killed, some burned, others got ashore with the Captain, and 40 were taken. On our side 8 were slain, whereof one was the Commander.

16. The *Hollanders* took a *Portugues* Ship bound for *Brasil*, and cast into the Sea 20 of the Men, their Hands and Feet bound. The rest they carried to *Jacatra* to serve that Place; but they run away to the *English*, who had a Factory 20 leagues off, and sent them to *Mulaca*. They said, one of the *English* had told them, they had lost a Ship at *Sunda* that carried the Money given by *D. Christopher de Noronna* to save fighting, and that they had several times fought the *Dutch* by

by Sea and Land, always worsting them; and lastly, that the *Dutch* had taken the Governour sent from *Portugal* for *Angola*, and carried him to *Java*.

17. *Augustin Lobato* sailed from *Malaca* with two Ships and a Galliot. At *Joatume* he fought and worsted a *Hollander*; then hearing the *Dutch* had a Factory at *Bima*, 7 leagues distant, assaulted it with 14 Men, slew 4, took 3; whereof one was the Factor; he distributed 600 Crowns among the Soldiers, having done damage to the value of 20000. Having burnt the Factory he retired, and burnt seven Towns about *Ende*.

18. At *Solor* he landed with 40 Men, and fought many thousand Enemies, killing 200, but lost 10 or 12, to the great admiration of the Adversaries, who thought them to be Sons of the Sun, and consequently Immortal. This encouraged them to press on, and it was much the 30 escaped. *Lobato* being ready to imbark, was killed by a *Japonesse*.

19. *Malaca* feared to be besieged by the King of *Achem*, but he armed to defend himself against the Viceroy, who, 'twas said, would go thither in Person. Fifteen *English* Ships at *Sunda* fought 20 *Hollanders* and defeated them, killing 1500 Men. At *Patane* the *Dutch* had better success, taking two of the Victors, and killing a Captain who was a *Portugues*, and was visiting the Factories of that Nation. At *Java* they took a *Dutch* Ship, another was lost in a Storm. It was

reported, the Governour of *Manila* took five in one Fight. At this time there were in the South 35 *Dutch* Ships, and above 20 *English*. The *French* had Factories at *Maceffa* and *Java*.

20. The Viceroy sent *Gaspar de Melo* with a Squadron to succour *Mangalor*, and destroy a Fort built by the *Canara's*. The little King coming on while he battered the Fort, was twice defeated, and many of his Men made Prisoners. This Year sailed from *Lisbon* for *India* four Ships, two Galleons, and three Flyboats.

## C H A P. XVII.

*Several wonderful Accidents during the two Years Government of the Viceroy the Count De Redondo.*

1. **I**N May 1618, there was a general, and doubtless Diabolical Storm, whereof it is convenient to give some account. On the 15th of that Month it began at *Bacaim* (the *Portugues Ninive*) so terrible, that the People hid themselves in Cellars, not doubting the Houses would be torn to pieces; but an Earthquake beginning at two in the morning, many Houses fell. The Sea, though remote from the Town, was brought into it by the Wind.

2. The



2. The noise of the Waves overcame that of the Ruins, notwithstanding the tops of Churches were blown off, and vast Stones flew a great distance. Two thousand were killed in the Town and adjacent Parts. The Fish died in the Ponds, and corrupted the Waters. Most of the Churches were laid even with the ground, as if God had shewed there was no need of them among such wicked People. A Lamp remained burning before the Blessed Sacrament in the Church of *St. Dominick* when the Wind overthrew Buildings.

3. Many Vessels were lost in the Port. Some Cattle was seen to fly, and the Birds to fall. The Woods were torn up by the Roots. Men fled to the Mountains for shelter, and the wild Beasts to the Town. Nature seemed reversed, the People rent the Skies with Cries for Mercy, which at last obtained, the Storm ceased.

4. There were strange Prodigies before and during this Storm, as Giants seen in the Air throwing great Globes of Fire one at the other. A confusion of Human Voices was heard there, trampling of Horses, and the sound of Warlike Instruments. A Troop of furious Horsemen was seen to attack the City, and a Man cloathed in Skins to oppose them; those were concluded to be Devils, and he *St. John Baptist*.

5. At *Bombaim* the Sea swallowed above 60 Sail, some Men, and much Riches. At *Agcaim* a Boat flew out of the Sea into a House, where it killed a Woman and her Child.

Child. At *Tana*, a Beast taken up by the Wind fell upon a Tree that was torn up by the Roots, and a Branch struck through the Body of it. A Woman seeing a Giant-like Man carrying a Pan of burning Coals, asked him for one, and he blowing it, burnt her Face. Much of this nature happened at *Salseto*, and other Places.

6. *D. Luis de Gama* coming from *Ormuz*, where he had Commanded for *Goa*, in a Ship full of Riches, was cast away on the Coast of *Bombaim*. A new married Couple being upon a Plank, the Bridegroom fell off, and the Bride for grief cast her self after him; he came up again and was saved, without Wife or Goods. A Maid that went to be a Nun escaping, was ravished by the *Moors*, and then killed. Thus several Ships belonging to Captains who came from their Commands perished, perhaps a Judgment for their unjust heaping of Wealth.

7. The City *Goa* seeing this destruction, had recourse to Heaven. All the Religious Orders made Processions, and performed great Acts of Mortification. The Women rent the Clouds with Cries of Mercy. All lay down in the Churches to be trampled upon. This lasted some days and nights; the Churches were continually open, the Streets full, yet in all the Concourse the least noise was not heard.

8. This Example was followed at *Cochim*. The Bishop of this City had excommunicated any that should buy Timber of the Queen of *Coulam*. A *Portugues* presumed to build

a Ship there, when it should be Launched, no Force or Art could move it. The *Portugues* confesses his Crime with Repentance, and returning to the Ship, it was Launched without the least difficulty.

9. There reigned through all *India* a new Distemper, which caused great Pains over all the Body, and contraction of Sinews, so that some lost the use of their Limbs. Many with Anguish ran mad; whole Families sickned at once. The only Remedy was found to be Bleeding. A Chirurgeon being no way able to stanch the Blood of a sick Man, laid upon it a Cross he had, in which was believed to be a piece of that of our Saviour, and it stopped immediately.

10. A *Cafre* fled from a Widow, whose Slave he was, to a *Fidalgo* or Nobleman's House, and afterwards returned to his Mistress. The *Fidalgo* sent to demand the Slave of her, as if he had been his own. She refusing, he sent some Soldiers to take him by force; but she received them with Granadoes in her hands, and they returned with shame.

11. *N. Barreto* a *Fidalgo*, 16 Years of Age, killed his Father, for which his Head was cut off; so Justice was done where there never was any. The Mercers of *Goa*, esteemed more Honorable than the Goldsmiths, would not allow them to use a sort of Umbrello, with an Ornament on the top and middle of it. A Goldsmith went abroad with such an Umbrello, the Mercers broke it and beat him. The other Goldsmiths coming to assist

their Brother, there ensued a Fray, in which much Blood was spilt, and much Plunder got, though no Victory, for the *Almoxarifes* or Officers robbed the Shops of those who were fighting.

12. On the 11th of *November* appeared a Comet in the East, and another on the 24th. They were seen at four in the morning, both under the Sign *Scorpio*. The first extended towards the South in the form of a Palm; the other toward the North, and was like a Flower-pot. The latter lasted till the beginning of *January*, the other till the 20th of *December*.

13. The first time the King of *Arracan* went to the City *Chastigam* after the *Portugueses* inhabited there, they presented him a Bough thick set with Figs; he offered it to his white Elephant (so coveted by all the Eastern Princes) to eat, but he would not, though the King prayed him to take it for the King of *Ova*, the *Mogol*, and his own sake. But scarce did he desire him to eat it for the King of *Portugal*, when the Elephant joyfully snatched it in his Trunk. The King in a Passion caused him to be deprived of all his Ornaments, as a Golden Dish on which he fed, Gold Chain by which they led him, and the like. The Beast for Grief would not eat, and the King, for fear it should die, was forced to restore its Furniture.

14. At this time died at *Bengala* that *Moor* so famous for his Age, being above 300 Years old when *Nunno de Cunna* took *Diu*, which was



was 60 Years before this time, and he seemed now but 60 Years of Age. It was reported, there were others 200 Years old thereabouts, but upon enquiry none appeared. Only one Woman was found about 100 Years of Age, and had married that same Year, having before buried seven Husbands. Thus much for the Year 1618, now for that of 1619, which is no less wonderful.

15. Upon one of the three Hills that overlook Goa stood a large wooden Cross, on which very many of the Inhabitants of that City, the 23th Day of February, saw the perfect Figure of a Man Crucified. The Archbishop having examined the Truth of it, took it down, and of it made a small one two spans in length, with a Crucifix of Ivory upon, and a Glory of Gold round. The remaining Pieces were distributed to the Churches and Persons of Quality. Ten Days after the Cross was taken down, Water gushed from the hole where it had been fixed, in which Cloaths being dipped wrought many miraculous Cures. On the Place where the Cross stood was built a Church.

16. It was debated in an Assembly of the principal Clergy, whether the Threads the *Bramenes* hang across their Shoulders were a Heathenish Superstition, or only a mark of Nobility; after some time it was concluded in favour of the latter, as only a distinction of Honour. The reason of examining this Point was, because many of the *Bramenes* refused to embrace the Faith, only for that they

they were obliged as soon as Christians to leave off those Threads.

17. D. F. *Christopher*, the Archbishop, said the first Mass in his Cathedral at *Goa*, which was finished this Year, and is not inferior in Grandure to many of the *European* Churches of Fame. It was dedicated to St. *Catherine*, on whose Day that City was taken.

18. There happened a great Dearth and Famine, which destroyed many People. In only the little Island of *Bardes* almost 400 died. There was a wonderful Eclipse of the Sun most visible at *Mozambique*, soon after noon, the day becoming quite dark the space of two hours. This caused great Admiration, as did another of the Moon at *Goa*.

19. In the Province of *Peking* in *China* it rained not for a whole Year. In that of *Xantung* the Famin was such, Men eat one another. Two Women were executed for eating eleven Children. In that of *Nanking* was a Plague of Mice. Two Parts in five of the King's Palace were burnt; and five Towers were blown down in the City. Two Suns were seen together, the one eclipsing the other. A Man entred the Palace to kill the Prince. In the Province of *Xangsi* appeared a Man cloathed in yellow with a green Cap and Fan of Feathers, who said. *Vambie* (that was the King's Name) does not govern; he has reigned long; is always asleep; the Kingdom going to Ruine, the People starves, the Captains are slain. This said he vanished

vanished, and, though all means were used to find him, he could never be heard of.

20. That there might be somewhat extraordinary in the Viceroy, he died on the 10th of *November* of a swelling upon his Back as big as the Crown of a Hat, so black and monstrous, it frightened not only the ignorant, but the ablest Physicians.

21. The Viceroy was buried in the Church of the King's, a League down the River, the usual Burial Place of those who die in that Command, as his Father did who is there interred. He was not of a very piercing Judgment, but positive; of Stature tall, well shaped, neither white nor swarthy. Of Viceroys he was the 23th; of Governors 43th; the 4th of the Name, and 3d of the Surname.

C H A P. XVIII.

*Of the Governour Ferdinand de Albuquerque, from the Tear 1619, till 1622.*

I. **T**HE first Patent of Succession being opened, there was found named *Ferdinand de Albuquerque*, a Gentleman 70 Years of Age, 40 whereof he had been married, and an Inhabitant of *Goa*, and consequently well versed in the Affairs of *India*. But having lived long at ease, was become  
slow

slow in Business, which suited not with the pressing Occasions of that time.

2. The King of *Parca* always ill affected to the *Portugueses*, this Year embraced our Friendship with great Demonstrations of Sincerity and Affection.

3. The Arache D. *Luis*, who became a Christian only to gain the better Opportunity of raising new Troubles, now disturbed the Peace of *Jasanapatan*. He stirred up the People to Enthrone a Prince at *Remancor*, and marched with 30000 Men towards our Men, who were fortified in a Pagod. *Philip de Oliveyra* had but 30 Men, having sent the rest to *Ceylon* as fearing no Insurrection. With those 30 he withstood all that number of Enemies, who first attacked the Church of our Lady, in which were 30 other *Portugueses*, and then the Pagod where *Oliveyra* was, and were at both Places repulsed with Loss. *Oliveyra* held it out a Month, till Relief came from *Ceylon*. *Andrew Coello* brought Succors by Water, and *Luis Teyxeyra* 1600 Men by Land. The latter entering the Kingdom, did many Actions barbarous and inhuman. He clove Men with Axes like Trees, opened the Wombs of Women and put in their Children snatched from their Arms. These are impieties unworthy a Christian, yet sometimes excused in War.

4. *Oliveyra* finding himself thus strong took the Field, slew a multitude of the Enemies, and gave them a total overthrow. Scarce had they breathed after this Victory, when the Prince of *Remancor* appeared with his



his Army, but *Teyxera* suddenly falling upon him made such havock, he was glad to cast himself at *Teyxera*'s feet, who received him with great Courtesie. They returned to give Thanks for this Victory in Our Lady's Church, where the Religious at the Door, offering *Oliveyra* a Palm, he said it was due to *Teyxera*, and caused it to be given to him. Both deserved, but he doubly who refused, once for conquering his Enemies, another for overcoming himself in not accepting it. A wonderful Victory in our Age.

5. The Arache D. *Luis* escaped, his Wife and Children were taken, she in despair slew her self, whilst he perswaded the Nayque of *Tanjaor* he might make himself King of *Jafonapatan*. He raised 2000 *Badagoes*, and gave the Command of them to *Cheem Nayque*, that King of the *Caren* who not long before assisted *Cbingali*. *Oliveyra* was strong in Our Lady's Church, but in *November* met the Enemy. The fight being desperate with some loss on our side; he advanced to encourage the Men, the Enemy knowing him, seven of them attack him, and one of them struck a Spear through his Mouth out at his Throat, yet he recovering killed two of them, the others fled.

6. The Enemy retired to their Trenches, *Oliveyra* being reinforced by 1000 Men from *Ceylon* assaults them, kills many, and took many more; yet after all he ransomed 1500 taken by the *Cbingalaes*, and set them at Liberty. The Nayque still coveting that  
Crown

Crown raised more *Badagers*, *Oliveyra* sent three Captains with their Companies to suppress him; they slew so many without losing one Man, that being weary of killing they returned with 1000 Heads.

7. The Prince, Son to the late King of *Jafanapatan*, who had escaped the Tyranny of *Chingali*, being in the Hands of the *Françiscans*, was baptized together with his Mother and many Nobles and Commoners, and at last making over his Claim to that Kingdom to the King of *Portugal*, took the Habit of that Order, by the Name of *F. Constantine* of Christ.

8. *Chingali*, who was taken some time before, was sent to *Goa* with his Wife, there condemned to Death; and being first converted to the Faith made a most happy end. His Wife following the Example given by him was baptized by the Name of *Margaret* of *Austria*; and retiring to the House of the Converts in that City, led a Life that may be an Example to all ancient Christians.

9. I think I have not specified the cause of these Troubles, which was thus. *Pera Raja Cheygra Pandara*, made Governor and King of *Jafanapatan* when *Andrew Furtado* slew the former King, wore that Crown 28 Years, and hoping the Viceroy would confirm his Choice, named a Son of the deceased to succeed him, who being but 7 Years of Age, he ordered his Brother *Areaquerari Pandara* should govern till he was of Age, him *Chingali Cumara* murdered to usurp the Crown. After that he slew many others, whereupon  
the

the People mutinying reduced him to great Streights, till being succoured by a number of *Budagaes*, raised by the Nayque of *Tangoor*, and commanded by the King of the *Carcas*; they came to a Battel, wherein *Changali* being victorious, secured the Crown for some time. This Tyrant not content that the *Portugueses* winked at his bad Title, refused to pay them the usual Tribute, which was the Cause why *Oliveyra* fell upon and took him as has been related.

10. *Abas Xa* King of *Persia* being bent upon possessing himself of the Island and Kingdom of *Ormuz*, *Camberbeque Cam* of *Lara* began to undertake it, on pretence an ancient Tribute was not paid him, which he never had since *Alfonso de Albuquerque* entred that Place. He hindred the Trade, and secured several *Portugues* Merchants; and seeing we did not agree with him about the Trade of his Silks, he settled it with *James* King of *England*, concluding a League with him for the taking of *Ormuz*. *Ray Freyre de Andrade* who came the Year before from *Lisbon* with 5 Galleons to cruize on that Sea, sent to *Goa* for Succour but could not obtain it, tho' he only desired 4 small Vessels.

11. Nevertheless *Freyre* fights the *English* and worsts them, The *Arabs* joining with the *Persians* had taken *Julfar* and *Dola*, which caused great icarcity of Water at *Ormuz*, where there is none but what is brought from abroad. *Freyre* went over to forward the building a new Fort at *Queixome*, and by his Absence the

the Fleet before weak, was much impaired. Then came two Galleons from Goa commanded by D. Emanuel de Azavedo and D. John de Silveira, an Enemy to Freyre; they were ill manned, and scarce of Ammunition, and brought Instructions that curbed the Power of the Admiral.

12. Being now strong at *Quinoms* he scouted that Coast, where were burnt 400 Sail, and the Towns of *Beami*, *Camir*, *Congue*, *Astan*, and *Dogar*, at *Niquilay* he took and destroyed four Ships, and above 80 great Barques. The *Persians* assisted by the *English* furiously batter'd the Fort at *Queizom*, yet Freyre carried on his Work, and assisted the *Arabs* that continued firm to us. When Freyre was somewhat streightned, the two Captains that came with the Galleons to his assistance from Goa left him.

13. This Year sailed from *Lisbon* for *India* 4 Ships under the Command of *Nunno Alvares Botello*. There came also two *Pinks*, one for *Malaca*, the other for *Mogambique*; and two Ships more under *Jacome de Morales Sarmiento*, who was to be General at *Mogambique* during the War about the Mines of *Monomotapa*, as if he were like to last as long as the War.

14. The Ships that came from *Portugal* under the Command of *Botello*, returned the next Year, and with them two more built at *Goa*, with the Men and Loadings of two others, one left in *India* as unfit for the Voyage, the other lost at *Mombasa*. In one of these two Ships called the *Conception*, was a Hermit,



Hermit, who whilst they Winter'd at *St. Helena* stole away, and being asked why he left the Company, said, *He had rather stay in that desert Island, than to go see the Misfortune that Ship would soon fall into.* Being come to the Island *Tercera*, they found Orders there to make the Lat. of 39 Deg. where they would find *D. Antony de Ataide*, Admiral of *Portugal*. They obeyed, but missing of him, one Morning at the Mouth of *Tagus* they met 15 or 16 Sail of *Turks*. Our Ship was ill manned, had but few Guns, and her Steeridge full of Bails.

15. The *Turks* having powred in their broad-sides boarded the Ship, killing 20 *Portugueses* of 140 that were in her, most of them sick, yet the Enemy receiving great damage entred with 400 Men, who were all slain save 8 or 9 that got off. This done our Ship cast Anchor in an advantageous Place, but next day received Orders to put to Sea where she would find the Fleet to defend her. She was no sooner out but the *Turks* attack her, yet after a desperate fight again left her. But the third Day the Enemy coming on again burnt her, few of the Men escaping Death, and those remaining in Captivity.

16. The Ship called *St. John*, another of the two built in *India*, had no better Fortune, for springing a leak she was with much labour of Pumping brought as far as the Cape of *Good Hope*, where three *Holland* Ships pursued her 20 Days, whereof 8 were spent in fight. Our Ship being totally disabled,

X

offered

offered to surrender upon Conditions, but whilst they treated a Storm parted them, and she was drove aground full of Water two Leagues from the Shore in the Bay of *Lagoa*, which is in the Lat. of 32 Deg. The Captain was forced with his own hand to kill a troublesom Pilot, who to save himself and 30 more would expose all the rest to perish inevitably.

17. The Captain landed the Ammunition and Provisions with the loss of 9 Men, and marched with 260 towards *Zofala*, having burnt the Ship, and saved the Diamonds, Pearls, Amber and Musk. They marched in sight of the Sea, carrying the Women on their Shoulders. Having set forward the beginning of *September*, about the end of *November*, being weary of carrying those things of value, they cast into a River all the Musk.

18. Those who carried the Women could no longer hold out, tho' many thousand Ducats were promised them. A Maid not able to go a foot was left to the Mercy of *Casres*, or Fury of wild Beasts. A young Man her Brother would have stayed with her, but was not permitted, and he soon after died for Grief.

19. Some Men died with Fatigue, and the strongest conspired to take all the Diamonds and march faster. The Captain being informed of it, slew him he thought to be the Ringleader of that Contrivance. About the middle of *December*, those who carried four Women would do it no longer,

## Chap. XVIII. *The Portuguese Asia:*

307

10000 Ducats were offered to any to undertake it, but none accepted the offer. Sixteen were left behind with their Slaves who murdered them, and afterwards overtaking the Company, and being examined were hanged. Hunger forced them to eat these and others that died. The Captain *Morales* died, and *Francis Vaz de Almada* succeeded him. There were but 150 Men left, and half of them not able to fight when the King of *Mocoranga* assails them with 1000 *Cafres* and robs them, killing some. Those that escaped came to *Mocambique*, having travelled 500 Leagues with unspeakable Misery.

20. At this time *Ruy Freyre de Andrade*, who had but Three hundred *Portugueses* in the Fort of *Quixome* with some of the Natives and Arabs that came afterwards, was besieged by the Sultan of *Xiras* with 20000 Men, and the Fort began to be undermined. *Freyre* defended himself with much valour; but the News being brought that the *English* Succours were at hand, the Defendants dismayed.

fr

## C H A P. XIX.

*Continues the Government of Ferdinand de Albuquerque.*

1. **F**reyre being besieged by Sea and Land, the *English* and *Persians* being joined; *Simon de Melo* came from *Goa* with 13 Sail, rather to affront than relieve them.

2. The Commander of *Ormuz*, who somewhat comforted *Freyre* in these Troubles died, and *Simon de Melo* by the Governor's Order succeeded him; which was another wrong done to *Freyre*, because according to the ancient Custom he being Admiral of that Sea ought to have succeeded. This was the Ruin of *Ormuz*, for had he been there it had not been lost. *Freyre* nevertheless desisted not from sending advice to *Ormuz*, which *Melo* slighted, relying on the Strength of the Place, though it was in no posture of Defence, the Commanders of it for many Years having only taken care to enrich themselves, so that there was but little Cannon, and that lay on the Ground without Carriages, and stopped up with Earth.

3. The *English* offered *Freyre* honourable Conditions if he would surrender, but he refused, thinking Ships would have come that Night from *Ormuz*, to carry him off and dismantle the Fort. *D. Gonzalo de Silveira* came with only one Barque carrying some Ammu-



Ammunition, a small Relief in that Distress. Freyre seeing this, sent fresh Advice to Melo how to act in his own defence; and he taking it in ill part, writ to the Governor, accusing Freyre of Arrogance and Ignorance, for pretending from *Queixome* to instruct and terrifie him.

4. Freyre no longer able to withstand the *English* and *Persians*, resolved to burn the Fort, and die honourably in the Field; but his Men crying they would not cast away their Lives to no purpose, designed to deliver him up to the *English*; and some leaped from the Wall into the Sea to save themselves. Freyre was forced to capitulate to march out on the side of *Arabia* with his Colours, Arms and Ammunition; the Capitulation was not observed, for the *Portugueses* were stripped, the Natives delivered to the *Persians*, who put them to the Sword, Freyre and four Captains sent Prisoners to *Surat*.

5. Melo at *Ormuz* thinking the Enemy would be satisfied with the taking of *Queixome*, began to treat of Peace with the *Persians*, but to no effect. Above 12000 *Persians* came over in their Barques, and the *English* in 6 Ships, besieging the Town and furiously battering it.

6. *Luis de Brito* agreeing with others who loved not to expose their Lives, was let down from the Wall by a Rope, concluded Articles of Surrender with the *English*, and returned to the Town to put them in Execution. *Simon de Melo* seemed to oppose

pose the Surrender, but the Soldiers feigning to mutiny (for it was supposed to be done by his Direction) the Enemy entered the Town, above 2000 *Portugueses* of both Sexes and all Ages were sent stripped to *Masate*, leaving a great Treasure, and the Honour of their Country, in the Enemies Hands.

7. Mean while *Freyre*, who was Prisoner, with the four Captains made his Escape, and having lost one of them with the other three got to *Damam*, thence to *Bacaim*, and at last to *Masate*. *Constantine de Sa* was then there with Succours for *Ormuz*, and they were upon going thither when the People that were dispossessed of that Place appeared. *Freyre* insisted to go on, hoping to surprize the Enemy, but could not prevail upon *Sa*; so he went away to *Goa*, and Embarqued for *Portugal*.

8. At this time the *Mogol* was highly respected by all the Eastern Princes, and there resided at his Court several Ambassadors, who carried him rich Presents. One sent by the King of *Massanapatan* was valued at Two Millions, consisting of Elephants with costly Trappings, Camels and precious Stones.

9. The *Portugueses*, who in the Years 1542 and 1545 had escaped the Destruction of the Cities *Liampo* and *Chincheo*, lived in the Island *Lampaçau*, till the Year 1557, they then built the City *Macao*, the greatest we have in *Asia* next to *Goa*. The manner was thus: They resorted to the Island *San-*

*chuan*

*chuan* on the Coast of *China* to Trade, where they lived in Hats made of the Boughs of Trees, and covered with Sails during their stay.

10. From this Island to another called *Gaoxana*, are 18 Leagues closer in upon the Coast of *China*. The Island being intricate and mountainous, was the Refuge of Robbers who infested the Continent. The *Chinese*, who had twice expelled the *Portugueses*, thinking them a more tolerable Evil than those Outlaws, offered them the Island if they could root out that Generation of Thieves. The *Portugueses* undertook and performed it without losing a Man.

11. The Island being cleared, every one began to build where he liked best, there being no Proprietor to sell the Land, which afterwards was sold at a great Rate, the Trade and Fame of this City increasing. This caused the *Hollanders* to have an Eye always upon it, desiring to make themselves Masters thereof.

12. It contains about 1000 *Portugues* Inhabitants, all Rich, and of the best in *India*, because the Portions being there very considerable, many Persons of Quality resort thither for Wives. There is besides a considerable number of Christian *Chinese*, who are cloathed and live after the manner of *Portugal*; and of Heathens, being Artificers, Shopkeepers and Merchants, about 6000. They have a Bishop and a Judge. The Duties of the Ships trading thence to *Japan* amount to 300000 Xeraphins, at 10 per Cent.

A Xeraphin is almost a piece of Eight. The Yearly Expence of the City to maintain their Fortifications and Garrison is above 40000 Ducats. At the Fair of *Quantung* is paid the like Sum for Duties, at six and seven *per Cent*. The Voyage of *Japan*, with Embassies and Presents for the King and *Tonos*, costs 25000. The House called *La Misericordia* spends 8 or 9000 in Works of Charity. The City maintains two Hospitals, three Parish Churches, five Monasteries, besides the continual Alms it sends to the neighbouring necessitous Christians in *Cbina*, *Aynam*, *Japan*, *Tunquim*, *Cochinchina*, *Cambodia* and *Siam*.

13. On the 19th of *July*, 17 (some say 23) Sail of *Hollanders* came before this City, hoping to take the Fleet that was there ready to sail for *Japan*, having taken several *Chineses* and *Portugues* Ship about the *Philippine* Islands. They had aboard 2000 fighting Men. Their Admiral *Cornelius Regers* intending to gain the City, battered the Fort of *St. Francis* the space of five Days. On Midsummer Day in the Morning he landed Eight hundred Men, and without much opposition made himself Master of an Intrenchment.

14. The Enemy marched towards the City, thinking to meet no resistance, but *John Suarez Vivas*, seeing them advance to gain a considerable Post, prevented them with 160 Men. After a Discharge of their fire Arms, they fell to the Sword, the *Hollanders* fled with precipitation to their Ships, leaving



leaving 300 dead on the Shore; seven and their Colours were taken, one piece of Cannon, and all their Arms which they threw away when swimming to their Ships. Mean while the Ships battered the Fort, which answered so effectually some of them were sunk and 60 Men killed. This Victory cost us 6 *Portugueses*, and some few Slaves. A *Cafre* Woman a Slave had share in it, who fighting in Man's Cloaths with a Halbard killed 3 *Hollanders*.

15. The Citizens seeing themselves exposed to such Attempts, built a Wall round the Town, with six Bastions. On that of *St. Paul*, which overtops the City, they planted six large Cannons; on that of the Bar fourteen, some 50 Pounders; eight on that of *Our Lady of Good Deliverance*; five on that of *St. Peter*; eight on that of *St. Francis*, that looks towards the Sea; and three on that of *St. John*. And because the Mountain of *Our Lady of the Guide* overtops the Bastion of *St. Paul*, they fortified it, planting thereon 10 large pieces.

16. This Year were computed to be converted in *India* 10000 Souls. Some with such pure Zeal, that five being condemned to Death, and desiring first to be Baptized, they were told it should not save their Lives, they answered, *They knew it, and only sought the Salvation of their Souls.* They were all Baptized under the Gallows, and died with Resolution and Stedfastness in the Faith, though they saw the others hanged before them.

17. The

17. The Government of *Ferdinand de Albuquerque*, in what related to the Civil Administration, was inferior to none; in the Military, especially what concerned *Ormuz*, unfortunate. It was observed how little care was had of this Government in *Spain*, for that during the whole time of his Government he had not one Letter from the King. He was of a middle Stature, a good Christian, the 44th Governor, 2d of the Name, and 3d of the Sirname.

---

## C H A P. XX.

*Of the Viceroy D. Alfonso de Noronna,  
in the Year 1621.*

1. **I**N the Year 1597, D. *Alfonso de Noronna* commanded the Ships that went for *India*, and was now chose Viceroy, as well in respect of his good Services, as his Birth and Experience. He set out the 29th of *April* with four Ships and six Galleons, of all which only one reached *India*, by being a little a head of the others, which were all put back to *Lisbon*. This makes good that notable Saying of an able Seaman, who being asked when was the best time for the Ships to Sail, answered, *The last Day of February is too soon, and the first of March too late.*

2. In

2. In fine, D. *Alfonso* was put back with all that Relief whereof *India* stood in great want; he, his Ship, and the Captain of her were used to this Misfortune, having been put in the Year before. Some would attribute this to the ill Fate of the Captain or Ship.

3. This was the last Governor of *India* named by the Pious *Philip III.* (but Second of *Portugal*) and the first that sailing from *Lisbon* with that Command was forced in again. D. *Alfonso de Noronha* was ancient and well qualified for that Post; affable and courteous, moderating the gravity of his Age. As soon as the News was brought to *Lisbon* of the shameful Surrender of the City *Baya* in *Brasil* to the *Hollanders*, without regarding his Quality, Age and Commands he had bore, he listed himself a private Centinel for that Service. A bravery well deserving eternal Fame, and an Example that moved many to follow it.

4. As we have hitherto reckoned the Viceroyes and Governors who were chosen, tho' they enjoyed not the Command, we will account D. *Alfonso de Noronha* the 24th of the former, and 45th of the latter; the 3d of the Name, and 5th of the Surname.

## C H A P. XXI.

*Of the Propagation of the Faith in Japan,  
and Aethiopia about this Time.*

1. **S**ome small hints have been already given of the Progress of Christianity in *Japan*, since their Apostle *St. Francis Xavierius* began to Preach there. The Proceedings there are much like those in *China*, save that the latter has not been so much sprinkled with the Blood of Martyrs. I will only touch upon some Martyrdoms that happened in *Japan*.

2. At *Firando*, in the Year 1622, *F. Peter de Zuniga*, and *F. Luis Flores* of Saint *Dominick*, were burnt alive by the Emperor's Command, together with Captain *Joachim*, a *Japonese*, who carried them in his Ship from *Manila*, and twelve Seamen beheaded.

3. At *Mangasaku* 25 were burnt alive, and 25 beheaded. Of the first number was Father *Charles Spinola*, a *Genoese*, and Father *Sebastian Quimura* born at *Firando* the first *Japonese* Priest, and six *Japonese* Lay-Brothers all Jesuits. Five *Franciscans*, and nine *Dominicans*. Also a Woman and twelve Children were executed, and after that a *Dominican* and others.

4. At



4. At *Omura*, a *Dominican*, a *Franciscan* and twelve more were burnt alive. Ten suffer'd Martyrdom at *Iquinofima*. Another was burnt at *Firando*, fourteen at *Nangasqui*, and others in other Places, all which made up the number of 118, whereof 46 burnt alive.

5. In the Year 1624, another Persecution was raised at the Court by means of a *Bonzo*, who becoming a Christian in hopes to grow rich, and being disappointed, became an Informer against Christians. The Emperor gave him the Charge of Discovering them. The first apprehended were two Jesuits and a Franciscan, who being committed to Prison where *Faramandono* the Emperor's Cousin was, Baptized there forty Persons: Fifty in all were taken out of the Prison and burnt alive. Two Gentlemen who were Christians, but not known, being present, leaped from their Horses and cast themselves into the Fire, crying, They died for the Faith. At Night Three hundred Christians assembled and stole the Relicks of the Martyrs. This gave occasion to a new Search, and almost Five hundred suffered. To prevent the concealing of any Religious Men, all the *Spaniards* were expelled *Nangasqui*; and some married to *Japonesse* Women were parted from them. Many Natives who would not renounce the Faith were banished, and many more, especially at *Oxaguna*, had a Cross burnt deep on their Foreheads, that they might be known

known to be Christians; and they joyfully said, *Now we shall be known to be Slaves of Jesus.* They were turned off with that mark, and almost naked in the dead of Winter, with their Children, and many of them died.

6. In the Year 1637, Father *Marcelus Francis Mastrioli* of the Society of Jesus, was apprehended with his Companion *Lazarus*, and carried to *Nangasacki*, where he endured many Tortures. On the fourteenth of October he was brought out in sight of all the People, with a Paper on his Back whereon were these Words; "*Joan Sama, Emperor of Japan, Orders this mad Man to be Executed, for Preaching in these Kingdoms a Law contrary to that of Xuxa, and Amida, and of the Fisoques. Come all to see him, for he is to die hanging in the Cave for an Example.*" At the Market-place of *Tendo*, where the *Portuguese* Merchants resort, he saluted them three times with his head, having a Gag in his mouth.

7. He was hanged up by the Feet in the Cave of the Mountain, where generally Martyrs suffer, and is therefore called Holy. He hung four days uttering wonderful Doctrine, and the Blood never fell into his Head, as is usual in such Cases. Seeing he did not die, they took him out to be beheaded, and he expected the stroke on his Knees, saying twice, *My Father Saint Francis Xavier.* It is believed he saw that Saint,

Saint, and that was the occasion of naming him. The first stroke took no Effect, the second made an impression, and the third his Head fell to the Ground, having called upon Jesus and *Mary*. There followed an Earthquake all the Country about. Being dead he had many Wounds given him, then was burnt, and the Ashes cast into the Sea. Thus much of *Japan*, let us say somewhat of *Ethiopia*.

8. In the Year 1521, *Sultan Sagued* being Emperor, the Society of Jesus had a Residence at *Gorgora* in the Kingdom of *Dambia*, and a stately Church. Another Residence at *Colela* in the Kingdom of *Gagan*, to which was subordinate the Mission of the *Agass*, a large Province. Another at *Fremena* in the Kingdom of *Tigre*.

9. The first Patriarch of *Ethiopia* was D. *John Bermudez*, chosen by the Emperor and confirmed by the Pope, of whom we spoke in the Sixth Chapter of the Fourth Part of the Second Tome. The second Patriarch was D. *John Nunnez Barreto*, a Jesuit, of whose Sanctity it is a sufficient Testimony, that he being at *Tetuan* serving the Slaves, the Bassa of that Place said, *The Works of the Holiest Moor were not so compare with his*. He died at *Goa* without reaching *Ethiopia*. The third was D. *Andrew de Oviedo*, of a very Religious and Austere Life. He suffered much Persecution, for Preaching and Converting many *Ethiopians*. The fourth Patriarch was D.  
*Belchior*

Belebior Carnero, a Jesuit, who died at Goa. The fifth, D. *Alfonso Mendez*, of whom we shall speak hereafter. The sixth, D. *Apollinaris de Almeyda*, of whose Banishment also a further Account shall be given in its Place.

---

*The End of the Third Part.*

---



---



---

THE  
PORTUGUES  
ASIA.

---

TOM. III. PART IV.

---

CHAP. I.

*The second Government of the Viceroy  
D. Francis de Gama Count De Vidi-  
gueyrá, from the Year 1622, till  
1627.*

1. **D**ON *Francis de Gama Count De Vi-  
digueyra* having left the Govern-  
ment of *India* much hated, and affronted,  
always endeavoured to obtain that Com-  
mand again; not to be revenged, as some  
said, but to satisfie the World he had not  
deserved that ill Usage. Twenty Years  
passed before he could obtain his Desire,  
which was upon the Accession to the Crown  
of *Phillip* the Fourth of *Spain*, and Third of  
*Portugal*.

2. He sailed from *Liſbon* on the 18th of *March* with 4 Ships. Not long before him parted thence *Sancho de Tovar & Silva* with 2 Galleons and 2 Pinks. On the Coast of *Tierra de Natal* a flash of Lightning falling upon the Count's Ship, burnt the Colours, and did some harm, but killed no body. Under the Line two of his Ships left him, and arrived at *Goa* at the end of *August*. The third stayed behind him; it was thought they shunned his Company designedly.

3. About this time 6 *Dutch* Ships plied near the Islands of *Angoxa*, one of them perished in pursuit of a *Portugues*. The Vice-roy standing for *Mozambique*, met the other five on the 22d of *June*. His other Ships had now joyned him, and there ensued a terrible Fight, which fell heaviest upon the Vice-Admiral, who was entirely disabled. The Viceroy and *D. Francis Lobo* rescued and brought him off. But the Ship being so much battered sunk, some Men and Money were saved, and some fell into the Enemies hands. Night coming on, the Viceroy and *Lobo* were drove upon the Sands, and their Ships lost; they saved what Goods, Rigging, Ammunition and Cannon they could, and fired the rest, that the Enemy might make no Advantage of it. The Viceroy shipped all the Goods, and what Men he could, aboard some Galliot, and arrived at *Cochim*. *Gonzalo de Sequeyra* was gone before with his Galleon to relieve *Ormuz*, but came too late.

4. From *Cochim* he went to *Goa*, and arrived there in *September*. His Enemies seeing him in that Post, were all terrified, fearing he now in Power would revenge the Affronts done to his Person, but he carried himself with more moderation than was expected. The Count thought of punishing *Simon de Melo* and *Luis de Brito*, as the most guilty of the shameful loss of *Ormuz*. *Melo* was fled over to the *Moors*, and *Brito* in Prison; this was Beheaded, as was the other in Effigies.

5. *Gonçalo de Sequeira*, who was to have relieved *Ormuz*, stayed with his Galleon at *Mascate*, believing his Assistance necessary upon a Report that the *Persians* designed against that Place. Hearing the Enemy fortified at *Soar* in *Arabia*, he fitted out 7 Sail, and coming before it, expelled the *Persians* with much slaughter, and not without loss, because they defended it with more Valour than the *Portuguezes* had *Ormuz*. *Gonçalo de Sequeyra* remained there, and again defeated the Enemy endeavouring to gain *Mascate*.

6. The *Dutch*, who had lain before the Bar of *Goa*, being gone towards *Triquilimalé*, the Viceroy sent *Constantine de Sa* and *Ruy Freyre* with a Squadron to assist *Sequeyra* in the Sea of *Ormuz*. They chased an *English* Ship, which got away from them, and returning to the Sea of *Ormuz* took two Ships of the *Moors*, putting them all to the Sword.

7. Three Galleots of *Cochin* defeated some *Dutch* and *Pegu* Ships at *Paleacate*. *D. Francis Mascarennas*, a Person of known Valour and Prudence, was sent to Command at *Macao* to oppose the *Hollanders*, and quiet the Disorders that were among the Citizens. The Divisions among the Laity being made up, there began others among the Clergy about the Government of that Cathedral for want of a Bishop.

8. Three Ships, three Galleons, and two Pinks, sailed from *Lisbon* for *India*. One of the Ships returning home, was lost at the mouth of *Lisbon* River, the Men and some Goods saved; another perished at *Moçambique*; the third on the Island *St. Helena*, part of her Loading being taken into the other Ships, the rest fetched away from *Brasil*. Two of the Galleons were also cast away at *Moçambique*; and a Pink, through the unskilfulness of the Pilot, on the Coast of *Arabia*. In these Vessels were 5000 Men, whereof many died of Sickness, besides what perished by Shipwrack.

9. Now begins the Year 1624, famous for the Sufferings of *Gativanda* Queen of *Dopoli* at *Xiras* in *Persia*, and Cruelty of the King *Xa Abas*. But this having relation to the Religious of *St. Augustin*, who laboured much in the conversion of *Asia*, I will relate some Particulars of what they did in those Parts. They resided at *Ormuz*, where, among many others, the Heir of that Crown was converted, and took their Habit by the Name of *F. Hierome Jaete*, and afterwards  
Preached



Chap. I. *The Portugues Asia.*

325

Preached with much Zeal. With him was Baptized D. *Alfonso Nordin* of the Blood Royal, and his Sister D<sup>a</sup>. *Philippa Morada*.

10. The Fathers preached also with success along the Skirts of *Arabia Petrea*. When *Ormuz* was lost, they went over to *Bacora*, a City subject to the Turk, below *Babylon*, on the Borders of *Arabia Felix*, with Orders from the Archbishop of *Goa* to endeavour chiefly the Reduction of the *Armenian Schismatics* called *Christians of St. John*, in the Kingdom of *Bombareca*, where F. *Francis* of the Presentation, and F. *Matthias* an *Englishman*, who died at *Ormuz* with a general Opinion of Sanctity, had been before, but with no success. After them F. *Nicholas de la Vega*, with the consent of the *Turkish* Bassa, erected there a House and Chapel.

11. F. *John de los Santos*, and F. *Joseph* of the Presentation, built a Church and Convent, and many Schismatics were reconciled to the Church. The Bassa gave them Power over all the Christians, Chaldeans, Nestorians, and Jews, and many Chaldeans were Baptized. Many Infidels, Arabs, Turks and Persians, resorted to the Convent, and some were converted. In the City and the Neighbourhood there are about 70000 Inhabitants, whereof about 5000 Christians of *St. John*, so called, because they have a Tradition, That their Forefathers were Baptized in the River *Jordan* by the Baptist.

12. The *Portugueses*, after the loss of *Ormuz*, settled their Trade in this City, and founded a Seminary for Learning. The

Bassa very much countenanced the Religious, and seeing a Christian Soldier in love with a *Moorish* Woman, secured and delivered him up to them. They sent him to *Mascate*, she followed, was baptized, and married him. He consented that a Girl should be taken from her Mother, who seeing her go, followed, and both were reconciled to the Church.

13. The first time *Vespers* were sung, a Drum going about to gather the Christians, all the *Moors* flocked thither, in so much that the *Cacizes* said, This was some particular Act of Divine Providence, and cried, 'The World must be at an end.

14. These Religious first entred the Court of *Ispahan* in the time of King *Sebastian*, afterwards 5 *Armenian* Bishops, many Priests, and a multitude of People, submitted to the See of *Rome*. The King offered the Fathers 2000 Ducats a Year, which they refused, lest it should be thought they went to enrich themselves, not to plant Religion. They were afterwards Imprisoned by the *Moors*, ill Treated, and sent to *Xiras*, 100 Leagues distant. The Governour of that Place sent them to the Convent with Fetters on their Feet, and Yoaks on their Necks. The Governour pretended the cause of their Imprisonment was, That *Ruy Freyre* had secured three *Moors* at *Ormuz*, and said, They should be set at liberty if those were restored. Brother *Peter* carried Advice hereof to *Gos*, and the *Moors* were released.

15. The

15. The Labours of these Fathers have been very successful in *Gorgistan* or *Georgia*. The first that undertook that Mission was *F. William* of *St. Augustin*, who was well received by the *Georgians*, but put to Death by the Sultan of *Fabris*, and was buried by the *Armenian* Religious of the Order of *St. Dominick*.

16. The King of *Persia* invading one of the *Georgian* Princes, he sent his Mother called *Gativanda* to Treat with him, who, after giving an ambiguous Answer, caused her on the way home to be apprehended, and carried Prisoner to *Xiras*. This Lady was kept in Prison 11 Years, living always a most godly Life in Fasting and Penance; her greatest Grief was, to hear that some of the Captives of her Country wavered in the Faith.

17. The Religious coming at that time to *Xiras*, greatly comforted her. The King of *Persia* being solicited to release *Gativanda*, sent to advise her to turn *Mahometan*, otherwise she must expect to endure the cruelest of Tortures. She desiring a little time to recollect herself, spent it in Prayer, and that ended, resolutely told the Officers, They might fulfill their Orders. They taking compassion, endeavoured to perswade, telling her, The Torments would be insupportable, and she replied, 'The Delay was the most grievous Torture.'

18. Her Hands being tied, the Executioners put on her Head a Copper Vessel made red hot, and tore her Cheeks and Breasts with burning Pinchers. Not a Sigh came

from her till she was stripped to the Waste to have her Breasts cut off, looking upon it more grievous to be naked, than to endure such unsupportable Pains. Her Feet were torn, and she then fainting, they cast all the Fire upon her. Seeing she neither died nor complained, the Executioners strangled her, after having suffered alone enough to purchase many the Glory of Martyrdom.

19. *Tamarscan*, the Queen's Son, understanding the Death of his Mother, entred *Persia* in a rage, and obtained several Victories, in 3 Years slew above 70000 *Persians*. At length a Peace was concluded, and he restored to all he had lost.

20. Two of the Religious of *St. Augustin* travelled towards *Georgia* suffered great Extremities in vast Desarts, in some Places near perishing in Snow. At *Emanenga* in *Armenia* they were entertained by the Religious of the Order of *St. Dominick*, who reside there.

21. At *Ervan*, the Metropolis of *Armenia*, they were courteously received by the Patriarch in a Convent of 30 Religious of *St. Basil*, whose Office is long, being the whole Psalter every day, and Matins at midnight. That Prelate was a Man of a very austere Life, gave great Alms, redeemed Captives, repaired Churches, was a great Reformer of Manners, and suppressed Married Priests. He was almost Adored by the *Armenians*, and hearkened to the Proposal of submitting to the See of *Rome*. Our Religious found him Preaching in a Church, but



as soon as he saw them, he took leave of the Auditory, and went to receive them, washed and kissed their Feet, telling the People, Those were the true Apostles of Christ.

22. At length our Religious entred *Georgia*, were honourably received by the King, who refused to let them kiss his Hand, but made them sit; and knowing they carried the greatest part of his Mother's Body, declared himself pleased above measure.

23. That day they dined with the King, the next with the Queen; she and her Ladies went to receive the Body, and heard Mass with great attention. The King caused his Mother to be buried among the ancient Kings of *Georgia*. Speaking of the Pope, he said, He owned him as chief Prelate, and had always declared him such. Being presented with two Images of our Saviour and Blessed Lady, he said, He worshipped them not because they were Idols, and only honoured Pictures. One of the Fathers reprehended him, and was going away, but he held by his Habit, kissed him, and begged Pardon, affirming, He knew not what he said.

24. Next day the King and Queen excused themselves to the Father, praying him not to depart, but to choose any Place in the Kingdom to build a Church and Monastery. He pitched upon the City *Gori*, which is seated in a Plain watered by two great Rivers well stored with Fish. The Patriarch an ancient and venerable Person, with the Bishops

Bishops and other Clergy, thought they could never sufficiently encourage the new Foundation. This happened about the end of the Year 1628.

25. To conclude, with these Religious they laboured as much as any in *China, India, Persia, and Arabia*. On the 17th of *May*, 1626, after Noon, at *Bassora* was seen a Cloud rising in the East in the form of a Half-Moon, the Horns whereof seemed to inclose that City. It appeared like Smoke and Ashes, and moved with a Noise that seemed to threaten Destruction. All the Country about for the space of half an hour was quite dark, then for two hours followed such a storm of Wind and Thunder, as terrified all those People. The *Turks* and *Persians* fled to the Christian Church, believing that the only safe place, and crying aloud, the former, *Codá, Codá*; the latter, *Ala, Ala*; that is, *God, God*, without remembering *Mahomet*.

26. In the Year 1627, the Enemy surprized a Ship of ours there, and killed all the Men but three, who being carried before *Hazen* Governour of *Humo*, he offered them their Lives if they would become *Mahometans*. They answered, They were ready to die rather than do so. He caused them to be Beheaded on the 21st of *December*, 1628.

27. In *Africk* these Religious baptized the Prince of *Melinde*, who afterwards coming to the Crown acknowledged the Pope, writing a Letter to him in the Year 1627, which  
he

he signed by the Name of D. *Hierome Cbinalgia*. This was the first King that received the Faith in those Parts, which might have spread more, had not the *Portugueses* by their Enormities obliged this Prince to fall off from them and the Faith, as shall be seen hereafter.

C H A P. II.

*Continues the Government of the Viceroy D. Francis de Gama Count De Vidigueyra.*

1. **T**His Year sailed from *Lisbon* two Ships and six Galleons under the Command of *Nunno Alvarez Botello*, and arrived all safe at *Goa*. Mean while *Ruy Freyre de Andrade* with his Squadron was successful in the Sea of *Ormuz*, cutting off Provisions from that Town, sinking some Vessels, and chasing others. He had done more if better supported.

5. Some *Englisk* and *Dutch* Ships having relieved *Ormuz* distressed by that Gentleman, the Viceroy strengthened by those Ships come from *Portugal*, would not suffer them to depart without being visited. He sent *Nunno Alvarez Botello* Admiral against them with 8 Galleons. They sailed at the beginning of the Year 1625, and were separated by a Storm; but six meeting *Botello*, appeared

in the Sea of *Ormuz*, and was received by twelve of those two Nations. The Fight was very terrible, and the Enemy having the Wind, our Admiral could not come to board as he desired. The *Dutch* Admiral and Vice-Admiral being disabled, were forced to draw off. At the same time *Ruy Freyre* having heard the noise of the Cannon came up with three Galliots, and the Enemy drew off to the Bay of *Comoran*. We had many Men killed and wounded, among the latter our Admiral *Botello*.

3. About the middle of *February* they met again. *Nunno* fearing he should not be able to come to board them, sent a Challenge to their Admiral; but he not accepting of it, the Fight began, and was continued with great fury till the Enemy again drew into *Comoran*, having lost many Men, and we 2 Captains and 40 Soldiers. *Botello* went to Water at the Island *Larra* opposite to them, and hearing a Cannon fired, answered with another, supposing it had been a Signal of Battel, but the Enemy stirred not then, though our Vessels were almost unmasted since the last Engagement. At last they thinking it time to depart drew out, and being pursued, there ensued another Fight. The Enemy fled, having lost in those three Encounters 1000 Men, and 3 Ships which were sunk; some of them carried 60 Guns.

4. Our Admiral gave chase, but soon lost sight of them, and went to Winter at *Mas-cate*, whence he set out in *September* with 7 Sail, whereof he lost three in a Storm, the  
Men



Men saved. He came to an Anchor with the rest at *Soveral*, where he took a rich Ship of *Moca* that sailed with a *Dutch* Pass. Understanding by the Prisoners some of the Enemies Ships were at *Surat*, he hasted thither, and found they were the same that escaped after the Fights of *Ormuz* and *Comoran*. It being impossible to come at them, he provoked them by Signs, and set up a Challenge on the City Gates; but seeing they did not stir, sailed away. Not far from *Damam* he discovers three *English* Ships, and coming up with them found they were strong, and carried two Tire of Guns. They fought three days, at last the Enemy made away.

5. There were great Tumults at *Macao*, the Inhabitants of that City forcing their Commander *D. Francis Mascarennas* to shut himself up in the Fort, but being defeated, were pardoned by him. The *Chineses* growing jealous on account of the Wall built by him, it was found absolutely necessary to throw down part of it.

6. The Patriarch *D. Alfonso Mendez* now set out from *Diu* for *Ethiopia* with 6 Fathers, and other Retinue in 3 Vessels. He landed at *Bailur*, a Town subject to a little King, and travelled over the Field called of *Salt*, because that is found there which passes in stead of Money being like small Bars. Next is the Mountain, where is another sort of reddish Salt, good against some Diseases. Travelling by night, by reason of the heat of the day, they saw an Exhalation so bright,

bright, it enlightned all the Country about. This was held as a good *Omen*. At *Fremosa* they understood the same Light had been seen there. They travelled with greater labour to the Court, and were received with great joy by the Emperor, who soon after acknowledged the Pope's Supremacy; but this Happiness was not lasting, as shall appear hereafter.

7. About this same time was discovered the famous Kingdom of *Tibet*, extending to the Springs of *Ganges*. The Natives are well inclined, and docible, zealous of their Salvation, and value Things of Devotion given them by their Priests called *Lama's*, who profess Poverty and Chastity, and are much given to Prayer. They have strange Customs and Ceremonies, Churches like the most Curious of ours, and some knowledge of the Christian Religion, but mixed with many Errors; they abhor the *Mahometans* and *Gentiles*. It plainly appears, that in former Ages they had the true Light of the Gospel. They are easie to be converted. The Country produces some Fruit like that of *Europe*, Rice and Wheat, and breeds Cattle, but there is much barren. It is fit to say somewhat of their Religion and *Lama's*. Their Habit is a Red Cassock without Sleeves, for the Arms are naked; it is girt with a piece of Cloth of the same colour, the ends whereof hang down to the Feet; on their Shoulders a striped Cloth, which they say is the Habit of the Son of God; at their Wasse hangs a little Bottle of Water. They

They keep two Fasts, in the greatest they eat but once a day, and speak not a word; necessary Affairs are expressed by Signs: In the second it is allowed to eat as often as every one pleases, but Flesh only once. They call to Prayers with Trumpets, some made with dead Men's Bones; the Skulls serve to drink out of: Of other Bones Beads are made, which they say is to put them in mind of Death. The Churches are opened only twice a Year, those who resort to them walk round three times, then enter and do Reverence to the Images. Among which are some of Angels, called by them *Las*. The greatest is he that intercedes before God for the Souls. It being painted Armed, with the Devil under its Feet, make it supposed to be St. *Micbael*. It is not unworthy consideration, that *Lamas*, the Name of their Priests, begins with *La*, which signifies an *Angel*. The young *Lama's* go about the Towns dancing regular and modestly with Crowns, Bells and other noisy Instruments. They say, it is in imitation of the Angels, as they are painted among us, singing in Choirs. The beginning of every month they make a Procession with black Flags, Figures of Devils, Drums and Musick, and believe this chases the Evil Spirits. Holy Water is made with many Prayers, and putting into it Gold, Coral, and Rice, and is used against Devils that haunt Houses. The Country People bring to the Towns black Horses, Cows, and Sheep, over which the *Lama's* say many Prayers,

Prayers, saying, the Devils endeavour to get into black Cattle. They cure the Sick by blowing on the Part afflicted. Three sorts of Funerals are used, according to the Star rules the time of Death. One is after our manner; and there are Tombs adorned with gilded Pyramids. Another is burning the Body, and of the Ashes mixed with Clay they make Images, by which they swear. Another is casting the Bodies to certain white Birds like Cranes, and this is reckoned the happiest Burial. These three Forms are used with such as are esteemed to have lived well, for others being cut in pieces are thrown to Dogs. They believe the Good dying go directly to Heaven, the Bad to Hell; but such as are indifferent between both, their Souls instantly return into noble or base Creatures, according to their deserts. They advise Fathers to give their Children the Names of filthy Beasts, that the Devil may be loth to meddle with them. They use Divination after a ridiculous manner. In fine, they acknowledge One God in Trinity; that his Son becoming Man died, and is in Heaven; that he is God as well as his Father, and Man at the same time; that his Mother was a Woman, and gone to Heaven; that from the Death of the Son till that time, were about 1600 Years. They know there is a Hell, in the same manner as we do. They burn Lamps, that God may light them in the way of the other World.



8. *F. Anthony de Andrade*, and *Andrew Marques*, both Jesuits, set out for this Kingdom from *Delhi* in the *Mogol's* Country with a Caravan, that conducted Pilgrims to a famous Pagod. They passed the Kingdom of *Lao*, and came to the vast Mountains, whence the *Ganges* falls into the deep Valleys. On the way they saw many stately Temples full of Idols. The great Fatigue lessened the pleasure of seeing the variety of beautiful Trees, and smelling those odoriferous Flowers, on the scent whereof the Ancients said those People lived. At the Kingdom of *Sirangay* they saw the *Ganges* running over Snow, the whiteness whereof almost blinds such as travel that way.

9. At the end of 50 Days they came to the Pagod on the Borders of the Kingdom of *Sirangay*, whither Multitudes resort to wash in a Spring so hot it is scarce tolerable, which they imagine cleanses them from Sin. There Food here is raw Flesh, and are very healthy eating much Snow. The Women there do what is the Work of Men among us, and the contrary; the Women Plow, and the Men Spin. Hence the Fathers came to the Town of *Mana*, and having rested, continued their Journey, almost blind with the continual travelling among Snow, till they saw the Springs of *Ganges*, which runs out of a great Lake. Soon after they entered the Kingdom of *Tibet*, and were honourably received by Officers sent to that purpose from the King's Court at *Chaparagur*. The King and Queen heard them with much

Satisfaction, and admitted their Doctrine without any dispute.

10. The time being come they must return to *Siranagar*, the King would not permit them to depart till they swore they would return, and then he promised they should have liberty to Preach, and he would build them a Church, being much pleased with a Picture they left him of our Lady with our Saviour sleeping in her Arms. The Fathers returned according to promise, and the King in pursuance of his built the Church with great joy, and was afterwards Baptized with the Queen, notwithstanding the Lama's for their private Ends did all they could to oppose it. The Fathers understood by Merchants who came from *China*, that it was 60 Days Journey distant from that Court, travelling through the Kingdom of *Usangue*, 40 Days Journey from the same Court, and thence 20 to *China*: That there were two great Kingdoms where the Cross was much used. That *Cathay* is not a Kingdom, but a great City and Metropolis of a Province subject to the Grand *Sopo*, very near *China*. Hence perhaps some gave *China* the name of *Cathay*. Perhaps this Empire of *Tibet* is that of *Prester John*, so much spoken of, and not *Ethiopia*, as was believed. But let us return to *India*.

11. In April 4. *Malabar* Parao's took a Portugues Ship, carrying the Men into slavery under *Arcolo*, a King of the Country opposite to the Place where the famous Fort of *Cunnale* once stood. Among the Prisoners were

were two Franciscans, one whereof proved so acceptable to the King, that he was the cause of settling a firm Peace between him and the Viceroy.

12. Two Ships arrived from *Lisbon*, which returning home the next Year were lost, with the whole *Portugues* Fleet upon the Coast of *France* in a terrible Storm, and was the greatest Loss *Portugal* sustained since the time of King *Sebastian*.

13. There being nothing remarkable this Year in *India*, let us see what the *Carmelites* did in *Persia*, where they got footing in the Year 1604. They soon erected several Convents, and confirmed the Armenians who were in danger of falling from the Faith, terrified with the Persecution raised by the King of *Persia*. F. *Basil* of St. *Francis* was very successful among those called of Saint *John* about *Bassora*. In the short space of six Months he Preached in the difficult *Persian*, *Arabian* and *Turkish* Languages, as if he had part of the gift of Languages peculiar to the Apostles, and gained such Reputation, that many neighbouring Princes permitted him to Preach and build Churches in their Dominions.

14. F. *John Thadeus* and F. *Peter* of Saint *Thomas* went to the City *Xiras*, being sent for by the Sultan thereof, where they converted some Mahometans; others gave them their Doubts in Writing to be sent to *Rome*, assuring if they were satisfied in those Points, there would be no need of Preaching to convert them. *Vertaviet Moses* an Arme-

nian Bishop, acknowledged his Error in denying the Supremacy of the Church of Rome, and promised to perswade all her Dioceses to acknowledge it. In fine, these Fathers have laboured with great Profit and Success.

15. Three Ships sailed this Year from Lisbon to India, one of them at his return, on this side the Cape Good Hope, fought twice with three Dutch Ships, and came off with Honour.

16. Nunno Alvarez Botello sailing with his Galleons for Mascate, there arose such a terrible Storm, that it parted all his Company from him, and he had much difficulty to perswade his Men in despair to work: The Tempest ceasing their Provisions fell short; there was but one Pipe of Water for 500 Men, and no Land near where they might be supplied. Some died with Thirst, others running mad leaped overboard. After a Fortnight spent in this miserable Condition, they discovered the Land of Rozalgate always fatal to the Portugueses. The Men cried to go ashore, but Nunno with fair words and kindness dissuaded them, and coming to Teve they were relieved without danger.

17. Off Surat Nunno discovered six Dutch Ships, he gave them chase, but lost them. He sailed to Bombaim to refit a Galleon, and thence to the Bar of Diu. An English and Dutch Squadron, both consisting of 17 Sail, sailed to Bombaim thinking to find him there. They battered the Fort, and meeting no Oppo-



Opposition burnt the poor Towns along the Coast. A *Dutch* Captain entring the Church of *Our Lady of Hope*, with his Sword cut to pieces a great Crucifix, and burnt part of it. He had soon after the Reward of this Barbarity, his Ship being burnt by *Roy Freyre*, and he with all the Men slain. *Nunno* hearing of this Action begged the Crucifix of the Rector, vowing to carry it always with him, till he had revenged the Wrong, or died in the Execution of it. So it fell out, as will be seen hereafter.

18. The King of *Achem* fitted out a Fleet of 35 Galleys against *Malaca*, *D. Francis Coutinho* with 16 Sail burnt 34 of them killing or taking 3000 Men, and bringing off 800 pieces of Cannon.

19. On the 17th of *June* 4 *Dutch* Ships came before the Port of *Macao*, designing to fall upon the Fleet was ready to sail for *Japan*. The King's Revenue being low, our Commander could act nothing against them, some rich Men undertook it in Merchant Ships. They fitted out five, and boarding the Enemy's Admiral burnt her, killing 37 Men, taking 50, 24 pieces of Cannon, a quantity of Ball, some Money and much Provisions. The other 3 fled.

20. *Ferdinand de Sousa* commanded at *Angola*, and after defending it against two *Dutch* Squadrons, fortified the Coast the space of half a League, raising 4 Works planted with Cannon, and cast up a Trench at the Bar of *Corimba*, which secured it against any attempt. *Zinga* Queen of *Angola*

went with a great Power to Besiege the Garrison of *Ambaca*, but *John Carreyro* sending a Company of *Portugueses* to assist that Lord who was our Friend, the Queen was defeated. A Body of Men marching to her aid was met by nine *Portugueses* with a number of Blacks, who fled at first sight; the nine *Portugueses* fought till their Poudre was spent, and two being killed, the other seven were taken, which was no small Satisfaction to the Queen, and many of the Blacks who before were our Friends, hereupon became Neuters.

21. Soon after the Queen was defeated and deposed, and her Brother *Airiquibange* Crowned King, being become a Christian, as did many Persons of Note by his means. At *Congo* the City *Salvador* was taken by the Prince of *Sunne*, who killing the King, placed in his stead D. *Ambrose* of the same Blood Royal. He proved a wise and religious Prince.

22. The beginning of this Year went from *Portugal* for *India* but one Ship, and a Pink. The latter as it return'd was burnt by the *Dutch*, and the Men made Prisoners. But in *November* 3 Ships more set sail. The Viceroy returned to *Portugal* in the first Ship, having resigned the Government to D. F. *Luis de Brito* Bishop of *Cochim*, by reason D. *Francis Mascarennas*, appointed to succeed him, was gone to *Spain*. The Count this second time Govern'd above 5 Years. He was the 25th Viceroy, and 46th Governor; the 6th of the Name, and 4th of the Surname.

C H A P. III.

*The Government D. F. Luis de Brito,  
Bishop of Cochim, from the Year 1628,  
till 1629.*

1. **T**HE King having ordered the Count *de Vidiqueyra* to resign the Government to *D. Francis Mascarennus* then gone to *Spain*, he committed it to *D. F. Luis de Brito*, Bishop of *Cochim*. There being no account of any thing memorable in this first Year of his Government, we will go on to next. The first that occurs is what happened at *Ceylon*.

2. Our General *Constantine de Sa* having declared War against *Candea*, *F. Francis Negram* sent him advice to attack that City immediately, and he might take the King, as being wholly unprovided; he lost the Opportunity by only a short Delay about other Affairs. Nevertheless the City was destroyed with Fire and Sword.

3 The King of *Achem* inflamed with the Desire of recovering *Malaca*, contrary to the Laws of Nations, imprisoned our Ambassador then residing at his Court, and made extraordinary Preparations for a Siege, as designing to undertake it in Person. *Laçamane* his great General who had conquered many Kings for him, opposed this

Resolution, for which he lost his Prince's Favour.

4. *Marraja* ambitious by Flattery to gain his Prince's Esteem, promised the King to make him soon Master of that so much coveted Town; and hereupon had the Command of the Sea given him, as *Lacamana* that of the Land. The King set out with a Fleet of near 250 Sail in which he carried 20000 Men, and a great Train of Artillery. In this number of Vessels were forty-seven Gallies of extraordinary Strength, Beauty and Value, all near One hundred Foot in length, and of a proportionable breadth. The King went aboard with his Treasure, Wife and Children; but upon some ill Omen the Fleet sailed without him, and came before *Malaca* at the beginning of July.

5. As they landed they marched towards the Castle that is between the City and *Pangor*. *Antony Pinto de Fonseca* with 200 Men, charges them, and kills above 300 without losing a Man. *John Suarez Viva*, who commanded 350 Portugueses at *Iller*, after doing great Execution among the Enemy on several occasions, overpower'd by their numbers was forced to abandon that Post.

6. The Enemy having gained Mount St. *John*, thence battered the Fort furiously, which answered with no less liberality. The *Capuchin* Convent of the Mother of God was of importance to the defence of the Fort, *James Lopez de Fonseca* having defended



sended it 50 Days, made a Sally with 200 Men defeating 2000 of the Enemy. *Lopez* falling sick, *Francis Carvalho do Maya* took that Post and defended it so well, that the Enemy was provoked to batter it with such Fury, that the Monastery was abandoned, being levelled with the Ground. Out of those Ruins the Enemy raised good Works, where *Lagamane* held his Quarter with 3000 Men. *Maraja* had another large Fort upon Mount St. *John*; there was another towards *Iller*; another at St. *Lawrence*, and so in other Places with Lines of Communication. They provided Boats to run up the River, and straiten the Town on all sides.

7. Our General *Fonseca* desiring to disturb *Lagamane*, sent *Vivas* with 220 *Portugueses* to attack his Works. He killing 100 and the rest flying, possessed himself of the Work by Night, and retired with some of the Cannon. The King of *Pam* our Allye understanding the Posture of our Affairs, sent a Fleet with 2000 Men to the assistance of the Town. Next came *Michael Pereyra Borallo* with five Sail from St. *Thomas*, but all was too little to remove so powerful an Enemy, though they had lost above 4000 Men, having killed but 60 of ours. This was the Condition of the Town at the end of *October* when *Nunno Alvarez Botello* arriv'd there.

8. The Bishop then Governor was informed of this Design upon *Malaca* in *June*, and of the weakness of the Place, which required

required a speedy Relief. It was then the dead of Winter, and the Bishop was not very forward; so the business was put off till *September*. The Bishop falling sick minded the Recovery of his Health, more than the Town, and was put in mind by the principal Men of *Goa* (moved thereto by *Nunno Alvarez Botello*) of the great danger that Place would be exposed to, if not speedily relieved. They desired him to appoint some Person who might forward that Business since sickness hindred him. He, after seeming to approve of what they said, could never be prevailed with to name any, fearing perhaps he so named would wrest the Government from him sooner than Death.

9. But Death took him away about the end of *July*, that those who were Ambitious to relieve *Malaca* might put their Designs in Execution. That Bishop governed nineteen or twenty Months, was the Forty-seventh Governor, second of the Name, first of the Sirname, and the second Prelate that had that Command.

C H A P. IV.

*Of the Viceroy D. Francis Mascarennas in the Year 1628, with sundry Occurrences at Pegu, Martavam, Prom, Siam, and other Places.*

1. **D**ON Francis Mascarennas had served so well in *India*, that without soliciting he was appointed Viceroy there, at the same time he was coming for *Spain*. Being arrived here, he was sent back this Year with the same Title, and sailed from *Lisbon* with three Ships, only one of them reached *India*, the other two with the Viceroy were put back to *Lisbon*.

2. In the Viceroy's Ship a Gentleman was taken actually committing an abominable Crime, whom the Viceroy caused to be shot in pieces at the mouth of a Cannon. He was accused of this Action, as not having power of Life and Death, being at that time upon his return, yet he was well received at Court, and sworn of the Council of State of *Portugal*. He may be reckoned the 27th Viceroy, and 48th Governor, the 7th of the Name, and 4th of the Sirname.

3. Since this Gentleman not passing to *India* has deprived us of the worthy Actions might be expected from him, let that Want be supplied with an account of Exploits of the

the Black King of *Siam*, in whom appeared a strange mixture of Virtues and Vices. Much has been said of him already, whereof some hints shall be given here, and all that was before omitted added.

4. In the Year 1544, the King of the *Brama's* by Sea and Land besieged the City *Martavam*, Metropolis of the great and flourishing Kingdom of that Name, whose Yearly Revenue was 3 Millions of Gold, *Chaubainas* being then King, and *Nbay Canotoo* Queen thereof, who from the height of Fortune fell to the depth of Misery. The *Brama* Fleet consisted of 700 Sail, 100 of them great Gallies. In them were 700 *Portugueses* commanded by one *John Cayro*, reputed a Man of Valour and Conduct.

5. After a Siege of 7 Months and 5 Assaults, wherein the *Brama's* lost 12000 Men; *Chaubainas* found it was impossible to withstand that Power, Provision being already so scarce, they had eaten 3000 Elephants. He offered to Capitulate, but no Conditions were allowed by the Besieger; and therefore resolved to make use of the *Portugueses*, to whom he had always been very just and serviceable. But Man never remembers Favours received in Prosperity of those he sees in Adversity.

6. The disconsolate King sent one *Seixas* to *Cayro* to offer, if he would receive him, his Family and Treasure into the four Ships under his Command, he would give half the Treasure to the King of *Portugal*, become his Vassal, and pay such Tribute as should be



be agreed upon, not doubting with the assistance of 2000 *Portugueses*, who should be maintained at his own Expence, to recover his Kingdom. *Cayro* consulted the principal *Portugueses*, and in their presence asked of *Seixas* what the Treasure of *Martavam* was; who affirmed, he had not seen all, but that of what he had two of our Ships might be loaded with Jewels and Gold, and 4 or 5 of Silver. The *Portugueses* envious of the great Fortune *Cayero* might make by accepting that Offer, threatned to discover him to the King of *Brama* if he consented.

7. The King of *Martavam* surprized at this refusal, and seeing *Seixas* took his leave to fly the Danger that threatned the City, gave him a pair of Bracelets, excusing the smallness of the Gift, and they were afterwards sold to the Governour of *Narfinga* for 80000 Ducats. Then he resolved to fire the City and, falling with those few Men he had left, die honourably among his Enemies. But that night an Officer with 4000 Men deserted to the Enemy, and discovered the Design. The King thus betrayed, Capitulated with the Enemy for his own and the Lives of his Wife and Children, and leave to end his Days in Retirement. This and more was granted easily, because the Conquerour designed to perform no part of the Promise.

8. From the City Gate to the King of *Brama's* Tent was a league distance, all which way was a Lane of many thousand Musketers of sundry Nations, and next the Gate were

were posted the *Portugueses*. The first came out was the Queen in a Chair, her two Daughters and two Sons in two others. About them 40 beautiful Ladies led by as many ancient ones encompassed with *Talegrepos*, (a sort of Religious Men among them habited like our *Capuchins*) who prayed and comforted them. Then came the King guarded by his Enemies, seated on a small She-Elephant, cloathed in black Velvet; his Head, Beard, and Eye-brows shaved, and a Rope about his Neck, which moved even the Enemy to compassion.

9. The unfortunate King seeing the *Portugueses* would not stir one foot till they were removed from that Post, and that done went on. Being come before the King of *Brama*, he cast himself at his Feet; but not being able to speak for Grief, the *Raolim* of *Mounay Talaypor*, Chief Priest of those Gentiles, and esteemed a Saint, made an Harangue in his behalf, of force to have moved to Compassion any other but that obdurate King. The miserable King, his Queen, Children, and Ladies, were secured. The two following days were spent in removing the Treasure, at which 1000 Men laboured, and it amounted to 100 Millions of Gold. The third day the Army had liberty to plunder, which lasted four days, and was valued 12 Millions. Next the City was burnt, wherein perished by Fire and Sword above 60000 Souls, besides as many made Slaves; 2000 Temples, and 40000 Houses, were laid even with the Ground. There were in the  
TOWN

Town 6000 Pieces of Cannon, 100000 Quintals of Pepper, and as much of other Spices.

10. The morning that followed this Destruction, there appeared on a Hill called *Beylao* 21 Gibbets, with a strong Guard of Horse. Thither was led the Queen, with her Children and Ladies, in all making 140, and were all hanged up by the Feet. The King and 50 Men of great Quality were cast into the Sea with Stones about their Necks. The Army seeing this Barbarity, mutinied, and the King was in great danger.

11. He leaving People to Rebuild the ruined City, returned to *Pegu* with the rest of his Army, and among them *John Caeyro* and his 700 *Portugueses*. Of these, four stayed at *Martavam*; one of them was *John Falcam*, who, in stead of assisting *Fernan Mendez Pinto*, sent by *Peter de Faria* Commander of *Malaca* to confirm the Peace with the murdered King, accused him to the Governour of the Town as an Enemy to the King of *Brama*. The Governour seized *Pinto's* Vessel, and in it Goods to the value of 100000 Ducats, killed the Master and some others, and sent the rest Prisoners to *Pegu*. This false Dealing was not new in *Falcam*, for he had before forsaken the murdered King after being much honoured by him.

12. The King of *Brama*, who thought now to reap the Fruit of his Victories in Peace, was alarmed by him of *Siam*, who attempted to recover the Kingdom of *Tangu*,  
which

which had been wrested from him. In March 1546, he embarked 900000 Men on 12000 Vessels upon the River *Ansedaa*, and passing out of it into that called *Pichau Malacou* in April, came before the City *Prom*. The King hereof was dead, and had left a Son to inherit but 23 Years of Age, married to the King of *Avas*'s Daughter, from whom he expected 60000 Men would come to his Assistance. This moved the King to press the Siege, hoping to gain the City before that Succour could come. After 6 days, the Queen offered to hold the Crown of him, and pay what Tribute he should impose, provided he would draw off from the City.

13. The King insisted, that the Queen should put herself into his hands with all her Treasure, but she knowing how perfidious he was, resolved to defend herself. He gave several Assaults, and by the Sword in them, and a Plague that raged in the Army, lost 80000 Men, among which were 500 *Portugueses*.

14. This way of Assault proving so pernicious, he raised a Mount, which overlooking the Town, and being full of Cannon, left no place of safety to the besieged; but 5000 of them sallying, destroyed the Mount, killed 15000 of their Enemies, carried off 80 Cannons, and wounded the King, who in a rage slew 2000 *Portugueses* that were upon the Guard, as negligent of their Duty.

15. About



15. About the end of *August*, *Xemin Melatay*, one of the four principal Men that commanded in the City, treacherously gave him entrance, and the Place was utterly subverted with Fire and Sword. Two thousand Children cut in pieces were served as Food for the Elephants. The Queen was publickly whipped, and delivered up to the Lust of the Soldiers till she died. The young King was tied to her dead Body, and cast into the River; the same was done with 300 Gentlemen, after Stakes were drove through their Bodies.

16. The Prince of *Avaa* marching to the relief of his Sister, understood what had happened, and meeting the Traytor *Xemin* that had betrayed her leading a great Power, they came to a Battel, in which all the *Avaa's* were slain to 800, having made an incredible slaughter of their Enemies. The King coming up, fell upon those 800 and slew them all, with the loss of 12000 of his Army, and then beheaded the Traytor *Xemin*.

17. After this Victory he went up the River *Queytor* with 60000 Men in 1000 Boats, and coming to the Port of *Avaa* about the middle of *October*, burnt above 2000 Vessels and some Villages with the loss of 8000 Men, and among them 62 *Portugueses*. He understood the City was defended by 20000 *Moors*, 30000 of which People had at *Melalay* slain 150000 of his Army; and that the King of *Siam* was preparing to come to their Relief. Upon this News he returned with speed to *Prom* and fortified him-

self, whilst an Ambassador went to purchase Succours from the Emperor of *Calaminam* with rich Presents, and the offer of certain Lands.

18. The Empire of *Calaminam* is said to be 300 leagues in length, and as much in breadth, formerly divided into 27 Kingdoms, all using the same Language, beautified with many Cities and great Towns, and very fruitful. In it is to be found all that *Asia* produces. The Metropolis is called *Timpam*, seated on the River *Pitui*, which is covered with multitudes of Boats. It is girt by two strong and beautiful Walls, contains 400000 Inhabitants, the Buildings good, especially some stately Palaces with fine Gardens; in and about it are 2500 Temples belonging to 24 several Sects. Some use bloody Sacrifices, and some of the Priests abstain from Women, but satisfy their Lust by such ways, it were better they did not abstain. The Women are well shaped, fair and beautiful; though beautiful, they are chaste, two Qualifications seldom go together. Their Habit suitable to their Quality, not the Purse. The great ones are served in Gold. In their Law Suits, (O happy Country!) they use no Attorneys, Solicitors, nor Proctors; all Things are decided at one Hearing. The Kingdom maintains 1700000 Soldiers, 400000 of them Horse: 6000 Elephants, whereof the Emperor styles himself *Lord* by reason of their numerousness; his Revenue is above 20 Millions. There remain some footsteps of Christianity from  
an

ancient Times among them; as, that they believe the Blessed Trinity, and make the sign of the Cross when they sneeze.

19. This was the Empire of *Calaminnam*, whither the King of *Brama* sent his Ambassador. He being returned, the King sent 150000 Men in 1300 Boats against the City *Sebadii*, 130 leagues distant towards the North-East. The General *Chaunigrem* having lost many Men in several Assaults, raised two Mounts, whence he did great harm in the City; but the Besieged sallying, killed at once 8000, another time 5000 of his Men. Let us a while leave the King of *Brama's* Affairs in this condition to see what was done at *Siam*, in order to treat of them both together.

20. The King of *Cheammay*, after destroying 30000 Men that guarded the Frontiers, besieged the City of *Guitirvam*, belonging to the King of *Siam*, who immediately gathered 500000 Men, among which were 120 *Portugueses* much honoured by him. This multitude was conveyed along the River in 3000 Boats, and by Land marched 4000 Elephants, and 200 Pieces of Cannon. He found the Enemy had about 300000 Men, and 2000 Boats. The *Siammite* gave the Command of his Army to three Generals, two *Turks*, and one *Portugues* called *Dominick Seixas*. At first the *Siammite* was worsted, but recovering, defeated his Enemy, killing 130000 Men, whereof almost 40000 were good Horse. This Victory cost him 50000, but of the worst of his Army.

21. This done, he marched against the Queen of *Guibem*, who had given the Enemy passage through her Country, and entring the City *Fumbacor*, spared neither Sex nor Age. The Queen being besieged in her Court of *Guiror*, agreed to pay a Tribute of 60000 Ducats, and gave her Son as Hostage. Then he advanced towards the City *Taysfram*, (whither he thought the King of *Chiammay* was fled) putting all to Fire and Sword, only sparing the Women; then Winter coming on, returned home.

22. Being come to his Court of *Oiaa*, or *Odiaz*, he was poisoned by the Queen, then big with Child by one of her Servants; but before he died, caused his eldest Son, then young, to be declared King. He left 30000 Ducats to the 120 *Portugueses* that served him, and ordered they should pay no Duties in any of his Ports for 3 Years to come.

23. The Adulterous Queen, being near the time of her Delivery, poisoned her lawful Son, married her Servant, and caused him to be proclaimed King. But they enjoyed not the Crown long, being both slain at a Feast on the second of *February* by the King of *Cambodia* and *Oya Panfiloco*, with all their Adherents.



C H A P. V.

*Continues the Affairs of the Kings of Siam  
and Pegu.*

1. **T**H E R E being no lawful Heir to the Kingdom of *Siam*, Pretiel a Religious *Talagrepo*, bastard Brother to the poisoned King, was by common Consent received as such, in the beginning of the Year 1549. The King of *Brama* or *Pegu* (for it is the same) seeing the Affairs of *Siam* in Confusion, resolved to conquer that Kingdom. He raised an Army of 800000 Men, among which were 1000 *Portugueses*, 40000 Horse, 60000 Musqueteers, 20000 Elephants, 1000 Cannon drawn by as many Yoke of Oxen and Abadas, and 1000 Waggon of Ammunition drawn by Bufaloes. The *Portugueses* were commanded by *James Suarez de Melo* called the *Gallego*, who came to *India* in the Year 1538, in 1542 was Pyrating about *Moçambique*, in 1547 was at the Relief of *Malaca*, and in 1549 being in the Service of this King was worth four Millions in Jewels and other things of value, had a Pension of 200000 Ducats yearly, and the Title of the King's Brother, was supream Governour of all his Dominions, and General of his Army.

2. The King marched with that prodigious multitude, and after one repulle took the Fort of *Tapuram* defended by 2000 *Si-*  
A a 3
ammites,

ammities, putting all to the Sword, with the loss of 3000 of Men. By the way the City *Juvopisam* surrendred, and he fate down before *Odiaa*, the Capital of *Siam*, which seemed to make no account of that great Power. *James Suarez* who commanded in chief surprized hereat, gave an assault and lost 10000 Men. Another attempt was made with Elephants, but with no better success.

3. The King offered 500000 Ducats to have a Gate of the City delivered to him; *Oya Pafiloco* who commanded in the Town understanding it, opened a Gate, and sent to tell him he might bring the Money, for he was ready to receive it. The Tyrant had no answer to make, but continuing the Siege with vigour, was forced to slacken upon the coming of the new King. Five Months being spent with the loss of 150000 Men; News was brought that *Xemindoo*, a Man of great Parts, had rebelled at *Pegu*, and killed 15000 Men that opposed him. As soon as this was known in the Camp, 120000 *Pegues* deserted in hatred to that Foreign King that oppressed, and to the Insolence of *James Suarez* who commanded them.

4. *Xemindoo* was of the ancient Blood Royal of *Pegu*, a great Preacher, and esteemed a Saint. He made a Sermon so efficacious against the Tyranny of Princes and Oppression of that Kingdom; that he was taken out of the Pulpit and proclaimed King. Whereupon he slew 5000 Brama's  
in

in the Palace, seizing all the Treasure, and in a few Days all the strong Holds in the Kingdom submitted to him.

5. The Armies of the two Kings met within two Leagues of the City *Pegu*; that of *Brama* consisted of 350000 Men, *Xeminboos* of 600000; of the latter about 300000 were slain, and 60000 of the former. The victorious King entred *Pegu*, and contrary to agreement slew many, and seized great Treasures.

6. Mean while the City *Martavam* declares for *Xemindoo*, killing 2000 *Bramaes*. *Xemim* of *Zatan* did the same in the City of that name. The King marched towards him, but he contrived to have him murdered by the way. This was the end of that Tyrant.

7. *Xemim* was proclaimed King by his Party, and in nine Days gathered above 30000 Men. *Chanmigrem*, Brother to the dead King, plundered the City and Palace and fled to *Tangu* where he was born. *Xemim de Zatan* became so odious by his ill Government, that in four Months many of his Subjects fled, and some joined with *Xemindoo*, who made an Army of 60000 Men. Let us leave him a while to relate the end of *James Suarez de Melo*, after the wonderful Rile already mentioned.

8. *James Suarez* passing by a rich Merchant's House, on the Day of his Daughter's Wedding, and seeing the great Beauty of the Bride, attempted to carry her away by force, killing the Bridegroom and others

who came to her rescue. Mean while the Bride strangled her self.

9. The Father expecting no Justice whilst that King Reigned, shut himself up, and never stirred abroad till *Xemim de Zatan* coming to the Crown, he so lamented his Wrong about the Town, that above 50000 of the People gathered about him crying out for Justice. The new King fearing some worse consequence caused *Suarez* to be apprehended and delivered up to that Rabble.

10. This was accordingly performed, and and the multitude stoning him he was in a minute buried under a heap of Rubbish. No sooner was that done, but they took the Body from under that Pile, and tearing it in pieces delivered it to the Boys to drag about the Streets, they giving them Alms for so doing. His House was plundered, and the Treasure found being much less than what was expected, it was believed he had buried the rest.

11. The new King *Xemim de Zatan* soon followed *James Suarez*, for his Subjects no longer able to bear his Cruelty and Avarice, fled in great numbers to *Xemimdoe*, who was now Master of some considerable Towns. He marched to the City *Pegu* with 200000 Men, and 5000 Elephants. *Zatan* met him with 800000, and the Fight was long doubtful, till *Gonçalo Neto* who with 80 *Portugueses* followed *Xemimdoe*, killed *Zatan* with a Musket Shot, which opened the way for *Zemimdoe* into the City, where he was Crown-  
ed



ed on the 3d of February 1550. *Gonzalo Neto* had 10000 Crowns for that fortunate Shot, and his Companions 5000.

12. *Chau-migrem*, who the Year before retired to *Pegu*, hearing afterwards that *Xemindoo* was unprovided, marched against him, and obtaining the Victory brought that Crown again under the subjection of the *Bramaes*. *Xemindoo* taken some time after, was publickly beheaded.

13. The War began again between *Chau-migrem* King of *Pegu* and him of *Siam*. The Army of *Pegu* consisted of 1700000 Men, among which were many *Portugueses*, and 17000 Elephants. All this Army came to Ruin, and the Kingdom of *Pegu* was made subject to that of *Arracam*, as was related in the 3d Chapter of the 2d Part of this Tome. The Kingdom of *Siam*, though much harassed with these Invasions, held out, and in the Year 1627, whereof we now treat, was possessed by the Black King, so called because he really was so, whereas all that People is white and fair.

14. This King in the Year 1621, sent an Embassy to *Goa*, desiring some *Franciscans* would come to Preach in his Kingdom. *F. Andrew* of the Holy Ghost went, and was much honoured by him at his Court of *O-diaa*. He not only gave him leave to erect a Church, but was himself at the whole Expence, and offered the Father great Riches, which he constantly refused to the great admiration of that King.

15. This

15. This Prince was of Stature small, of an ill Presence, and of Temper in part most wicked, and in part generous. Tho' cruel Men be generally Cowards, he was most cruel and valiant; and whereas Tyrants for the most part are covetous, he was most liberal. As much barbarity as he practised in some things, he shewed as much goodness in others.

16. He was not content to put Thieves and Robbers to common Deaths, but caused them to be torn to pieces in his Presence, and for his Pastime by Tigers and Crocodiles. Understanding that a King his Vassal was about to Rebel, he shut him up in a Cage, and fed him with morsels of his own Flesh torn from his Body, and then had him fryed in a Pan. With his own hand he cut 7 Court-Ladies off at the Wast, only because he said they walked too fast. He cut off the Legs of 3 others because they staid long, being sent for Money he was to give to certain *Portugueses*: The first suffered for going too fast, these for being too slow.

17. This severity extended to brute Beasts. He cut off the Paw of a Monkey he much valued, because the silly Beast put it into a Box wherein were some Curiosities. A Horse no less esteemed had his Head cut off in the Stable before the rest, because he stopt not when he checked him. Some Crows making a noise over the Palace, he caused 500 of them to be caught, some were kill'd, others shut up, and others turned loose with Yokes about their Necks. A Tiger that did not  
imme-

immediately seize a Criminal cast to him, was by his Command beheaded as a Coward

18. Thus much of the wicked part of this Prince, now to speak of his Vertues. He kept his word inviolably, was rigorous in the Execution of Justice, liberal above measure, and very merciful to those that committed pardonable Faults. He sent a *Portugues* with much Money to *Malaca* to buy several Goods, he after buying them lost all at Play, and yet had the boldness to return to the King's Presence, who received him kindly, saying, He valued the Confidence reposed in his Generosity, more than all the Goods he could have brought. He shewed great respect to our religious Men, and encouraged the planting of Christianity in his Dominions. His Valour was unspeakable.

19. Let us conclude this Chapter with a short Description of this Kingdom. Its proper Name is *Sornau*. The extent along the Coast is about 700 Leagues, and the breadth up the Inland 260. Most of the Country consists of fruitful Plains, being watered by many Rivers: It is plentiful of all sorts of Provisions. The Hills are covered with variety of Trees, particularly abundance of Ebony, Brasil and Angelin. There are many Mines of Sulphur, Salt-Petre, Tin, Iron, Silver, Gold, Zaphirs and Rubies; much Sweetwood, Benjamin, Wax, Cinnamon, Pepper, Ginger and Cardamum, Sugar, Honey, Silk and Cotton. The King's Revenue

venne is about 13 Millions. In his Dominions are almost 13000 Cities and Towns, besides innumerable Villages. All the Towns are walled, the People for the most part timorous, weak and unarmed. The Coast reaches to both Seas ; on that of *India* are *Junzalam* and *Tanauzarim* ; on that of *China*, *Mompolocota*, *Cey*, *Lugor*, *Chinbu* and *Perdio*.

---

## C H A P. VI.

*Of the Governor Nunno Alvarez Botello,  
in the Year 1629.*

1. **T**HE Bishop late Governor being deceased, and the next Patent of Succession opened, there appeared two named ; *D. Laurence de Cunna* Commander of *Goa* for the Civil Government, and *Nunno Alvarez Pereyra* for the Military. Of this last Name there were two in *India*, or none ; for if *D. Nunno Alvarez Pereyra*, a Gentleman well known, was meant, there wanted the Title of Don ; and if *Nunno Alvarez Botello*, the Sirname was wrong.

2. It was thought unlikely the Title of Don could be omitted through a mistake, because in *Portugal* it is peculiar to some Families only, and therefore could not be forgot. The mistake as to *Nunno Alvarez Botello* was more probable, because he had long



long gone by the Name of *Pereyra*, in memory of his Grandfather *Alvarez Pereyra*, and changed *Pereyra* for *Botello* when he inherited the Estate of his Father *Botello*; yet some called him by the one, and some by the other Name. For this Reason, and because the Counsel of *Goa*, and the Count *de Linnares* when he came to *India* allowed *Nunno Alvarez Botello* as such, I have given him this Place among the Governors of *India*.

3. *Nunno Alvarez Botello* zealous of the Honor of his Country, and considering how dangerous Delays might prove to *Malaca* then in distress, undertook the Relief of that Place, saying, he would refer the Decision of the Debate about his or the others Right to the Government till his return. Nevertheless by general Consent he went with the Title of Governor. Afterwards it was concluded by the Counsel of *Goa*, that *Gonçalo Pinto de Fonseca* the High Chancellor, should have the Charge of the Administration of Justice. Thus the whole Government was divided between *Cunna*, *Fonseca*, and *Nunno*.

4. *Nunno* now admitted as Governor, left the Palace to go live upon the Shore, to be the more at hand to forward the Preparations for his Design, wherein he used such Diligence, that having that Charge committed to him on the 2d of *August*, by the beginning of *September* he had gathered 500 *Portugueses*, a good Train of Artillery, store of Arms and Ammunition, and had 30 Sail ready to put to Sea, if the Weather had permitted.

5. He

5. He set Sail the 22th of September, and was in 4 Storms; 2 of them, so terrible, they all gave themselves for lost. In this manner he sailed to *Pulubutum*, and sent 2 Vessels to give notice of his coming at *Malaca*, but came himself before the Advice, and understood that *Michael Pereyra Botello* sent by the Bishop late Governor was there before him. At *Pulubutum* he found a Vessel of *Cochim*, and two of *Negapatan*, which was some addition to his Fleet. On the 22th of October after Noon, the Fleet arrived at *Malaca* divided into 3 Squadrons, *Nunno* commanded one, the Vice-Admiral *Coello* and *D. Hierome de Silveira* the other two. *Laçamane* was strangely surprized, because his Fleet was then in the River *Pongor*, a League from the Fort, whence they could not escape ours.

6. Our General landed and gave the necessary Orders, then imbarquing again entred the River through showers of Bullets, which he repaid so effectually, that the Enemy the same Night abandoned their advanced Works, retiring to those of the Capuchin Monastery. There was not Water enough in the River *Pongor* for our Ships, therefore our General put what Men he could aboard 33 Balones or Balames, lighter Vessels, and with them went in Person to view the Enemy's Strength.

7. The Enemy in care for their Galleys, quit their Works at *Madre de Dios* and *St. John*, and with wonderful Expedition cast up others. *Nunno* attacks them, and gain-  
ed

ed so much advantage, he proposed to the Enemy to surrender, *Moraja* returned a civil and resolute Answer.

8. His Case being desperate, he attempted to escape by Night in the lesser Vessels, leaving the main Fleet to our disposal, but was discovered and prevented by the vigilance and bravery of *Beliasar Mendez Vasquez de Evora*, who cut off many of his Men, not without some Loss, whereof was no small part that of his own Arm. Our Governor understanding the Enemy resolved to make use of their formidable Gallies prepared to receive them, and perceiving that called *The Terror of the World* move, sent *Francis Lopez* Admiral of our Gallies to attack her: He pierced through Clouds of smoke, and millions of Bullets, boards, and after two hours fight makes himself Master of her, killing 500 of 700 Moors she carried, with the loss of seven of his own Men.

9. On the 25th of November the Enemy firing a Galley that was full of Women brought to People *Malaca*, and now sent to People Hell, again attempted to break through our Fleet, but without success, many of them were taken, and many leaping into the Water fled to the Woods, where they were devoured by wild Beasts. *Lacamane* hanging out a white Flag, sent Commissioners to treat with *Nunno*, who answered, No Treaty could be allowed, till they delivered our Ambassador Peter de Abreu, whom they kept Prisoner.

*Prisoner.* But they delaying, our Cannon began again to play furiously.

10. The last Day of *November* our Governor understood *Marraja* was killed, and at the same time, that our Allye the King of *Pam* was coming with 100 Sail to his assistance. *Nunno* went to visit him, and his Mother who came with him, and was received with the greatest Ceremonies used by those Eastern Princes to our Governors. Presents were sent reciprocally, and *Nunno* returned to his Post. The Enemy played their Cannon so desperately, it made our Men abate of their Confidence, but on the 4th of *December* sent our Ambassador *Abreu* with Proposals, only desiring 3 Gallies of all their Fleet to carry off 4000 Men that were left of 20000 that came before the Town.

11. It was answered, they must immediately surrender upon promise of Life. Whilst *Laçamane* doubted, *Nunno* assaults him, and forcing all his Works puts many to the Sword; some flying to the River are drowned, others in the Woods become food to the wild Beasts. In fine, *Nunno* obtain'd the most glorious Victory the *Portugueses* ever had in *India*; for of all that Fleet not one Vessel got off, and of that great Army not a Man escaped being killed, or taken. The Booty was such, all our Men were enriched, and *Nunno* reserved for himself nothing but a Parrot much valued by *Laçamane*.

12. He



12. He distributed the Cannon that was taken among the Forts of *India*, the Gallies and Slaves among the Religious, and so the rest to others. This done, he entred the City in Triumph, not that he desired it, having begged they would suffer him to go alone and barefoot, to prostrate himself before the Lord of Hosts, and acknowledge this Victory was wholly his, and not of the *Portugueses*, but he was forced to submit to the Will and Intreaties of the City.

13. The Streets were thronged with Men, the Windows and tops of Houses with Women, sprinkling sweet Waters, and strewing Flowers upon our Hero. The Musick could not be heard for the noise of Cannon, and all the City was filled with Joy. The like Demonstrations were afterwards in all our other Eastern Conquests.

14. This done, the Governor returned aboard, having other Designs in hand. Then came an Embassy from the King of *Pera* Tributary to him of *Achem* now defeated, he offered to pay our Crown the Tribute, he had till then paid the other, and to deliver up great Riches left in his Custody belonging to that King and the General *Laçamane*. D. *Dierome de Silveyra* was sent with 11 Ships to receive the Treasure, and established the Peace, which he performed, and returned with all that had been promised. It was applied to pay the Men, and refit the Fleet.

15. The King of *Pam* came to congratulate the Victory, and *Nunno* set out to meet him

B b

him

him. Great Civilities and presents passed between them, and the King desired leave to see the City, which was granted, and whilst he was there nobly entertained, the Magistrates and Officers went to visit his Mother, a wise Woman, and great lover of the *Portugueses*. These Ceremonies performed, Nunno resolved to sail towards the Streight of *Cingapura*, to secure the Ships that were expected from *China* against the *Hollanders*. The King kept him Company a little way, and they parted on the 11th of *December*, Nunno earnestly recommending to him the taking of *Laçamane*, who was fled into the Woods, and the King promising his utmost endeavours, after which they steered several Courses.

---

## C H A P. VII.

*Continues the Exploits of the Governor and General Nunno Alvarez Botello.*

1. **A** Bout the middle of *January* Nunno *Alvarez Botello* being about *Romanis*, there were brought Prisoners to him *Laçamane*, and two other Officers, one of them the first Lord of *Achem*. Such was the diligence used by the King of *Pam*. Our Governor received them honourably, and *Laçamane* being before him nothing daunted, said, *Behold here Laçamane the first time over-*

come

come and Prisoner; but two things concur to make my Misfortune more tolerable, one, That I am overcome by you; another, That Obedience to my King contrary to my own advice, has brought me into this Condition. Nunno replied, Malaca is beholding to you for the advice you gave your Prince, and I for your Obedience to him.

2. Nunno Alvarez, by reason of the contrary Winds, could not come up with five Holland Ships that were about *Pulolaoer*, and took one of our Galliot's coming from *China*, the Men getting ashore. He returned to *Malaca* to refit his Ships, and resolved to attempt the Fort of *Jacatara*, the best those Rebels possess in *Asia*. But first he sent *Anthony de Sousa Continno* with *Laçamane's* Admiral Galley, called *The Terror of the World*, in which he was Prisoner in order to be sent to *Spain*, the Galley went of a Present to the City *Goa*. This Galley carried one Gun of *Tambaca*, a precious sort of Metal, which was valued at above 7000 Ducats, another much more for its curious Workmanship. *Laçamane* died before he could be brought to *Portugal*.

3. Nunno understanding the new Viceroy, the Count *de Linnares*, was arrived at *Goa* in *October*, gave him an account of what had been done, and desired assistance and his approbation to continue in those Parts, in order to carry on his Designs against the *English* and *Dutch*. About the end of *April* the Viceroy sent all he desired and much more, which was a full Power to act as Go-

vernour, without being obliged to expect any Orders from *Goa*.

4. Mean while *Nunno* sailed with 2 Ships towards the Streight of *Cingapura*. Putting in at *Jambe*, a Place abounding in Pepper, and therefore much resorted to by our *European* Enemies, after a stout opposition he took two large Ships, the least whereof, with the Prisoners, was sent to *Malaca*. Then sailing up the River, he discovered another Ship so large and beautiful, he designed it to make his entrance into *Goa*, but a Bullet falling into the Powder, blew her up. Passing farther up, several of the Men seeing the Water cool and clear, and not knowing its venomous quality, drank of it and died.

5. They spent 22 days going up the River with much trouble. About two leagues from them was the Town where the *Hollanders* had two Ships under shelter, and our Admiral was desirous to take them. He manned 14 light Vessels to go view the Place and Works; 26 Sail of the Natives and *Dutch* met him, and were put to flight.

6. Having viewed the Works, and found it not practicable to attempt the two Ships by reason of the shelter they were under, he destroyed all the Neighbouring Places with Fire and Sword, then sailed down the River designing for *Jacatara*. By the way he discovered a *Dutch* Ship of 24 Guns laden with Powder for their Forts. Our Vessels beset and boarded her, and she took fire.



7. *Nunno* understanding the Danger, ordered his Ships to draw off, lest the Enemy's blowing up some of them might be lost with it. Finding *D. Antony Mascarennas* did not bear away from her, he made to him with his Galliot to bring him off; but coming about the Poop of the Enemies Ship, she blew up, and sunk his Galliot downright. All our Vessels made to that place, and of all that was in the Galliot, they found nothing above Water but the Body of *Nunno Alvarez*, as yet with some life, which soon fled.

8. Every body was astonished at this unfortunate Accident, the Body was opened to be embalmed, and his Heart was found to be of an extraordinary bigness. At *Malaca* the Body was received with a general Lamentation of the whole City, and honourably buried in the Church of the Jesuits.

9. *Nunno Alvarez* was well shaped, of a clear Complexion, his Hair yellow, somewhat tall, and Limbed proportionably, his Strength and Valour equal, his Countenance pleasing and grave. He was virtuously inclined, addicted to Learning, chiefly Poetry, very Liberal, and not known to be addicted to any Vice.

10. The News of his Exploits and Death being brought together to King *Philip* the Fourth, he writ with his own Hand as follows. *Considering the two Pinks that were fitting for India may be gone without an account of my Concern for the Death of Nunno Alvarez Botello, an Express shall immediately be sent by*

*Land with Advice, That if I were not now in Mourning for my Aunt the Queen of Poland, I would wear it for him. I create his Son an Earl, and allow his Wife the Honours of a Countess, and the Profits of the Fort of Mocambique to pay her Debts, and whatever she has belonging to the Crown for ever, the Revenues of Military Orders she is possessed of for four Lives after her with 1500 Ducats Pension from others, and 1000 more during her Life. And if the Kingdom were in a better condition, I would bestow a great Estate on her. Nunno Alvarez was the 49th Governour, and D. Laurence de Cunna may be reckoned the 50th.*

---

[C H A P. VIII.]

*The Government of the Viceroy D. Michael de Noronna Count De Linnares, from the Year 1629, till 1635.*

1. **T**HIS Year sailed from Lisbon D. Michael de Noronna Count de Linnares, Viceroy of India, with three Ships and six Galleons. One of them was cast away near the Cape of Good Hope, and not a Man of 400 that were aboard saved.

2. When the Count arrived at Goa, Nunno Alvarez Botello was gone for Malaca, and all Men promised themselves good success, when about the beginning of the Year came the

the News of the Victory by him obtained. The Viceroy returned Thanks to the King of *Pam* for the Succours he carried to *Malaca*, and sent him Presents. In the same manner he endeavoured to oblige the Neighbouring Kings, and honoured the Admiral *Antony Pinto de Fonseca* for his good Service.

3. *Constantine de Sa*, who Commanded in *Ceylon*, puffed up with the Honour of having destroyed the City *Candea*, and relying too much upon the Fidelity of the Christian *Cbingala's*, who underhand held Correspondence with that King for our Destruction, gave too much Credit to *Theodosius* their Captain, by whom his Head was promised to the King, at the same time he promised *D. Constantin* to deliver the King into his hands. *D. Constantin* had more faith in that Traytor than in the *Franciscan*, who being among the Enemy sent him intelligence, or in his own Officers who foresaw his Ruin, which soon followed.

4. He marched from *Columbo*, leaving that Fort with almost no Garison, entred the Kingdom of *Uva* with 400 *Portugueses*, and destroyed the Capital City. As he returned after this Victory, the King of *Candea*, who had left that Town as a Bait to draw him on, meets him with a great Power. *D. Theodosius* and his *Cbingala's* no sooner discovered the King's Forces, but they went over to him and faced the *Portugueses*, whom they served the moment before.

5. The 400 *Portugueses* and 200 Natives that remained with them fought three days with incredible bravery. The General *D. Constantin* having done more than Man, was slain, and then his Men being broke, many were put to the Sword, and many made Prisoners. The King of *Candea* understanding how weak the Garison of *Columbo* was, fate down before it with 50000 Men, and a number of Elephants, believing the Natives had (as was agreed) murdered those few *Portugueses* left there. But they seeing farther than their General, had destroyed those were to kill them, and so the King was disappointed. The Death of *D. Constantin* being known, *Lancelot de Seixas* succeeded him in the Command, and being in that Distress, did more than could have been expected from so small a Force..

6. He distributed 400 Men, which was his whole Strength, including the Religious, among the most important Posts, who behaved themselves so well, the King found he had a harder Task in hand than at first he had imagined. But Hunger was a more dangerous Enemy within the Walls, than the other without. This was much increased by the useless multitude of Women and Children, notwithstanding *D. Philip Mascarennas* Commander of *Cochin* sent a Ship loaden with Provision and Ammunition to their Relief, *D. Blas de Castro* five from *St. Thomas*, and the Viceroy one. Yet all their Hope was in *Nunno Alvarez Botello*, not knowing, as yet, of his unfortunate End.

7. The



7. The Inhabitants of *Cambolim à Peninsula*, 40 leagues from *Goa*, and in sight of *Cananor*, offered the Viceroy leave to build a Fort there upon certain Conditions. *James de Fonseca*, Commander of *Zofala*, was sent to carry on that Work. Being begun, it was interrupted by *Virabadar Hayque*, the Usurper of the Kingdom of *Canara*. After much opposition, finding it could not be obstructed, he made a Virtue of Necessity, and seemed to be well satisfied it should go on. The principal Article of the *Cambolims* was, 'That no Religious, but those of *St. Francis*, should be sent thither. At this time arrived at *Goa* two Ships from *Portugal*, one of them returning, was lost upon the Bar of *Libon*.

8. It is, doubtless, those who are destined to perish unfortunately, meet their Fate even where they thought to find their safety; this will appear by the loss of the Ship *St. Gonzalo*, some of the Men whereof being taken up by that mentioned in the last Paragraph, were cast away in her; I will therefore give some account of the loss of the said Ship *St. Gonzalo*, in relation to the other. This Vessel having set out from *Goa* with two others, finding, after being parted from her Company, that she could not be kept above Water, they made the shore, and came to an Anchor in the Bay called *Fermosa*, for its largeness being 3 leagues over, exposed to no Winds but the East, North-East, and South-East, and lies near the Cape of *Good Hope*.

9. Being

9. Being come to anchor, they ought whilst the Weather favoured to have landed the Men and Goods that were not before cast overboard; but in stead of that, at the persuation of some Officers, they attempted to suck the Ship dry in order to sail again. Three Men were let down one after another to clear the Pump, and returned not; then a fourth being put down with a Rope about him, and brought up almost dead, it appeared the Steam of the Pepper which had taken wet killed them.

10. In order to refit the Ship, 100 Men landed, and 130 remained aboard, who after 50 days perished together with the Ship, by a sudden Storm being beaten to pieces upon the Coast. The 100 Men left ashore built Huts, because it would be long before they could find the means of going to Sea, which were only by building two small Vessels out of the Wreck and the Trees on the Mountain. The Captain being old and sick, gave the Men leave to choose another, and they pitched upon *Rocque Borges*, who behaved himself well; but one *Simon de Figueyredo*, in that misery ambitious of Command, endeavouring to kill him missed his Design, yet grievously wounded him, but *Borges* recovering, stabbed him, and all was quiet again.

11. They sowed some Seeds, and reaped the Fruit; mean while they lived upon Rice that had been saved, some Fish taken, and Cows and Sheep they bought of the Natives for Iron. The Language of these Natives could

could not be understood, therefore they had recourse to Signs. They are not quite black, go naked, cover their Privy Parts with a Skin, in Winter wear Cloaks of the same, about their Necks hang Bulls Pizles, their Bodies anointed with the Dung of those Beasts, they make sudden stops in their Speech, carry Fox tails in their Hands to make Signs with; have no Towns, but wander with their Cattle like the Hords of *Arabs*; some carry Stakes and Mats to make a sort of Tents; they use no Tillage, and offered our Men a Cake that seemed to be made of Meal of Roots mixed with Cow-Dung; they eat Flesh, but almost raw, just shewed to the Fire, which is made by rubbing Sticks together; their choicest Food is the Guts and Tripes, the Filth only squeezed out; their Weapons are Darts and Bows, no sign of Religion was discovered among them. But it was observed, that on *Midsummer* or *St. John Baptist's Day* they appeared crowned with Garlands of sweet Herbs and Flowers.

12. The Soil is fruitful, free from Stones, produces all sorts of Herbs, Plants, sweet Flowers, and variety of Trees. It is watered by great Rivers, and many Springs. The *Spring* begins in *November*. *Summer* and *Winter* in these Parts, as also in *India*, are not caused by the Sun coming near or going from the *Zenith* as in *Europe*, but by the Winds. It is *Winter* when it rains, and then the Sun is in his greatest Altitude; when in his greatest Declination it rains not,

not, and then it is *Summer*. *Winter* begins about the end of *May*, when the West Wind reigns, which brings great Rain, and lasts till *September*, during which time all Navigation ceases. From *September* till *May* the North East Winds blow, which keep a serene Sky, and this is the Summer when all put to Sea. Let us return to the description of that Country, and our Men there.

13. There is an infinite number of wild Beasts, and those very large, as Deer, Wolves, Sea-Horses, Bufaloes, wild Boars, Monkeys, Tigers, and Elephants, and some Rabbits not unlike our Ferrets. They have abundance of wild Turkeys, Geese, Pigeons, Turtles, and Partridges, which last build their Nests hanging on Branches of Trees. Thus much of the People and Country about the Cape of *Good Hope*. There lived our Shipwreck'd *Portugueses*, and had erected a sort of Church where Mass was said, and there were frequent Sermons, five Priests being in that Company.

14. The Ships being built, in stead of Tar they made use of Benjamin and Frankincense; and wanting Oyl to dissolve them, supplied it with that of Sea-Wolves. Before their departure they erected a Cross on the top of a Mountain, with an Inscription signifying their Misfortune. The Vessels were launched, the Men and Goods shipped, one Party designing for *Portugal*, the other for *India*. The former, after some days fruitless labour, were almost in the same place



place they set out from, and in that condition were taken up by *Antony de Sousa & Carvalho* in that Ship which, as was before said, afterwards perished.

15. *D. Nunno Alvarez Pereyra* was Commander of *Moçambique*, and died this Year. *D. Philipa Christian* was Emperor of *Momotapa*, with whom we were in league. A *Cafre*, called *Capranzirle*, rebelled against him, who falling upon a Body of our Men as they marched to *Tete*, slew 300 *Portugueses*, the chief cause whereof was a Dispute between our Captains about Superiority. All had been lost but for *Christopher de Brito & Vasconelos*, who put a stop to the Current of the Victorious Enemy. *James de Sousa & Meneses* commanded *Moçambique* at that time in the Place of *Pereyra*. Soon after it was known the *Cafre* died of a Musket Shot he had received, and a Brother of the Emperor but 13 Years of Age, and a Christian, baptized by the *Dominicans* by the Name of *Dominick*, was proclaimed King.

16. About the end of this Year a great *Danish* Ship entred the Port of *Coulam*. *Emanuel de Camara & Noronna* Admiral of the *Canara* Coast went to meet her with a Galley and eight other Vessels, she fled, he gave her chace, and coming up after a sharp Dispute, fired and then took her; what remained of her was carried to *Coulam*.

17. In *April* 1631, *D. Blas de Castro*, who commanded 12 Sail at *Negapatam*, took a *Dutch* Ship, and soon after in a Storm lost half his Ships, and about 100 *Portugueses*,  
who

who got ashore, were left in slavery. The excessive Covetousness of the *Portugueses* keeping the Prices of Spice so high, moved our European Enemies to seek it at a cheaper Rate in *India*, and their Insolencies inclined the *Indians* to receive those *Holland* Rebels into their Ports. Covetousness couched under the Pretence of Religion, carried the *Portugueses* to conquer those remote Countries; and the insatiable Avarice of some expels and makes them esteemed less than Rebels and Pyrats.

18. Two Ships that sailed from *Lisbon* for *India*, after five Months Voyage were put back into the same River, having lost many Men by sickness. In *November* sailed two *Pinks*. The Viceroy desiring to recover *Ormuz*, sent *Dominick de Toral* and *Valdez*, a *Spaniard*, to view the Place, and confer with *Ruy Freyre* then at *Mascat* about it, but it came to nothing. However a Fort was built at *Julfar*, a Fishery of Pearl 50 Leagues distant from *Mascat*.

1632. 19. This Year our European Enemies ranging the Seas without any opposition took many of our Ships, and ruined our Trade. Besides they incensed the *Indian* Princes against us, we having no body at those Courts to disappoint their Designs. The Ruine of our Affairs proceeds from the little regard the great ones have for the lesser sort; and the covetousness of the small ones, which made them forget their Country and their Honour.

20. The

20. The *Portugueses* dispersed in *Ceylon* since the defeat of *D. Constantine*, gathering again considerably annoyed the Enemy. Hence it appears our own Disorders are our Ruine. The *Portugueses* can recover what is lost, but know not how to preserve what they gain, which is the most glorious part, it being the Work of Fortune to gain, and that of Prudence to preserve.

---

C H A P. IX.

*Of the Affairs of Ethiopia, during the Government of the Viceroy D. Michael de Noronna Count de Linnares.*

1. **T**HIS being the last time we shall treat of *Ethiopia*, it will not be amiss to relate some farther Particulars of the Reception of the Patriarch *D. Alfonso Mendez*, though somewhat has been already said concerning it. He sailed from *Goa* on the 17th of *November* 1624, and at *Chaul* received a Letter from the Emperor, Congratulating his arrival in *India*.

2. All the way he travelled in *Ethiopia*, he was entertained by the Governors and principal Men, was met by the Sons of those *Portugueses* who went thither with *D. Christopher de Gama*, to the assistance of the Emperor then Reigning, and came to *Fremona*, the chief Residence of Catholicks on the 21th of

of *June*, 1625. The Emperor much rejoiced at the News of his arrival, and sent two Men of great Quality to Conduct him, but could not then see him, being in the Field with his Army against certain Rebels. On the 6th of *February* 1626, he was sent for by the Emperor to the Army. The Prince accompanied by the Viceroy and Nobility, went out to meet and conduct him through a Lane of 18000 Men to a Tent provided for his reception. There he put on his Pontifical Robes, and being mounted on a Horse led by the Emperor's High-Steward *Sarta Christos*, and under a Canopy held up by Viceroy and Lords, went to the Church, where the Emperor sitting in a rich Chair, with a Crown of Gold on his Head, and rich Cushions at his Feet, expected him. The Emperor rising embraced him, and then all the Cannon was fired.

3. The Emperor went to his Palace, the Patriarch to the Habitation of his Religious, and having put off his Pontifical Ornaments returned to Court. The Emperor made him sit, expressed much Joy for his coming, and appointed a Day for all the Nobility to meet and make their publick Submission to the Sea of Rome. *Wednesday* the 11th of *January* being the Day prefixed, the Emperor and Patriarch were equally seated, and there appeared before them all the Princes, Viceroy, Lords, Commanders, Priests, Religious, Masters and Lawyers. The Patriarch made an Harangue to them, which was answered in the Emperor's name by his Nephew



Nephew and High-Steward Viceroy of *Semen Melcam* *Christus*.

4. The Speeches ended, the Emperor turning to the Patriarch said, 'I would  
' not have your Lordship believe the thing  
' I am going about is newly thought of, for  
' it is long since I made my Submission to  
' to his Holiness by the means of Father Su-  
' perior, who is here present. Then the  
Patriarch opening a Missal, or Mass-Book,  
the Emperor knelt and swore in these words.  
' We *Sultan Segued*, Emperor of *Ethiopia*,  
' do believe and confess, That *St. Peter*,  
' Prince of the Apostles, was by our Lord  
' Jesus Christ constituted Head of all the  
' Christian Church throughout the World,  
' when he said to him, *Tu es Petrus & super*  
' *banc Petram edificabo ecclesiam meam, &*  
' *tibi dabo claves regni celorum*; and again,  
' *Pasce oves meas*. We believe and confess  
' that the Pope of *Rome*, duly elected, is  
' the true Successor of *St. Peter* the Apostle,  
' and has the same Power, Dignity, and  
' Supremacy over all the Catholick Church.  
' And we do Promise and Swear to give  
' true Obedience to, and humbly submit our  
' selves and our Empire at the Feet of the  
' Holy Father *Urban*, by the Grace of God  
' the Eighth, and our Lord: So helpus God  
' and the Holy Evangelists.

5. All there present Swore in the same  
manner, and that done they took an Oath  
to the Prince as Heir apparent. The Em-  
peror allotted the Patriarch more and better  
Lands than his Predecessors had enjoyed,

and sent him a Present of 2000 Crowns. There was a great resort of *Ethiopians* to be instructed in the true Catholick Doctrine, their greatest difficulty was to be satisfied with one Wife, and fast Lent; nevertheless the number of Converts in a few Days amounted to 100000.

6. The Emperor after this taking the Field against the Rebels, subdued them, killing above 100000. Still the Empress continued obstinate, and was a great favourer of the Schismatics. In the Years 1627 and 1628, above 160000 were converted. There were nine Residencies of the Jesuits, and in them above 200000 Communicants.

7. Who would imagine this same Emperor *Sultan Segued*, who had given such evident Signs of a real Conversion, should endeavour to root out the Faith in his Dominions. The same Emperor on the 24th of June 1632, by publick Proclamation banished the Catholicks, and gave free liberty to all his Subjects, to return to their antient Ceremonies and Errors.

8. The chief Motives of this great Change, were the natural inconstancy of the *Ethiopians*, and their Inclination to Judaism. Immediately after the Proclamation for banishment, 4 *Portuguezes* suffered Martyrdom; nor were there wanting *Ethiopians* who remained constant, notwithstanding the severity of the Edicts. Thus ended the great hope of reducing the Emperor to the Church.

## C H A P. X.

*Continues the Government of the Vice-roy D. Michael de Noronna, Count De Linnares.*

1. **I**N its proper place we said the *Portugueses* would one day pay for the Insolence wherewith they treated the Kings of *Mombaca*, and now the Day is come, which was the 15th of *August*. *Peter Leytam de Gambia* was Commander of that Fort, who using that King as if he had been his Slave, provoked him to revolt, and deliver himself from the Tyranny he was under. The King was *D. Hierome Cbingulia*, who being bred a Catholick at *Goa* under the Religious of *St. Augustin*, had submitted to the See of *Rome*, as was related in the Year 1627. The memory of his Father's Death, who was cruelly murdered by the Commander *Simon de Melo Pereyra*, was no small incentive to stir up the King.

2. He used often to visit his Father's Tomb, and was once observed by a *Portugues*, who seeing him weep, and use some Ceremonies he thought favoured of *Mahometanism*, gave an account thereof to the Commander *Gambia*, who told him privately, he would the next Day secure and send the King to *Goa*. As soon as that Man heard it,

he acquainted the King by whose Order he was slain in a Wood by the *Cafres*.

3. The King having dispatched that *Portugues*, gathered 300 *Cafres*, and entring the Fort as it were to visit the Captain, slew him and all the Guards, making himself absolute Master of the Place. The Wife and Daughter of the Commander were killed with a Priest, for refusing to renounce the Faith.

4. This done, the King in his Fury put all the *Portugueses* to the Sword, and fired their Town. Some few escaping to the Convent of the *Augustins*, held out 7 Days, when for want of Provision they surrendered upon promise of their Lives, but were all with their Wives and Children shot to Death. Then the King declared himself a *Mabometan*, affirming he had long hated the name of a Christian. This was the effect of the *Portugues Villanies*; for could he have lived among them, he had never proceeded to commit all these Murders.

5. After gathering the Plunder of the Dead, the King came out a Horseback to view the Bodies of the slain, which were 60 with their Families. Some of the Converts died among the *Portugueses*, the rest being assembled in the Church the King made a Speech, advising them to return to their old Religion, which some of the Auditory did; such as refused were sent to *Meca* with Merchandize to be sold in order to bring some *Turks* to his Assistance. All was sent in a good Ship, which returned with a Flag; the  
Cazices



Cazices or Priests of theirs said, would defend them against all Enemies, being set upon the Fort.

6. The King putting to Death all that would not renounce the Faith, only spared his Queen who was a Native of *India*, and that at the request of his Aunt, but treated her as a Slave, and it was said afterwards, when he fled to *Arabia*, he prevailed with her to turn Mahometan. In fine, all that belonged to the Church was profaned, and then the King applied himself to carry his Revenge farther, advertising the neighbouring Kings of what he had done, and advising them to kill all the *Portugueses* in their Dominions. Those of *Montangante*, *Tanga* and *Morone* put it in Execution; others sent him Succors. *Manazonga* King of the *Mozungoes*, came in Person to his Assistance.

7. The News of the Loss of *Mombaca* being brought to *Goa*, all Men of Sense rather admired it had been kept so long, than that it was now lost, being sensible of the reason there was to expect it: However immediate care was taken for the recovery of it. The Viceroy fitted out a Galley, a Pink, 7 Galliots, and 7 other Vessels, carrying 500 *Portugueses* and his Son, who being too young for that Command, it was given to D. *Francis de Moura*, a Man well versed in the Affairs of *India*. He sailed from *Goa* about the middle of *December*, came to *Am-*  
*paza* on the 2d of *January*, and was  
there informed of the Posture of those Af-  
fairs by certain *Portugueses*. On the 10th

he arrived at *Mombaça*, and was joined by 3 small Vessels sent from *Mascate* by *Ruy Freyre* with 100 Men; *Adam Barbosa* and *Martin Lorenzo* brought 20 Men at their own charge. The Cities of *Chaul* and *Bacaim* sent each a Vessel, in which were 30 Soldiers; so the number of Sea and Landmen was made up to 800. It soon appeared this Fleet would not be very successful; for whereas they might have taken or burnt some Ships of the Enemy that were in the Harbour, they did neither, every Captain striving to execute it, it was omitted by all.

8. *D. Francis* began to land some Men with difficulty, because the Sea ran high, and on the 11th of *January* went in his Boat with the Viceroy's Son to view the Channel of *Marepa*, leaving five Vessels there to hinder any resort from the Continent to the Island. Five Men deserted to us from *Mombaça*. *Gaspar Pacheco* was ordered to land all Necessaries for a Siege under the Fort upon the Continent. Two Boats that were under the Fort were taken, and *D. Francis* sent an Express to our King by the way of *Moçambique*, promising speedily to make himself Master of that Place, but the Event depending upon Fortune, he was not so good as his Word. The Major *Dominick de Toral & Valdez*, who went over with the Viceroy from *Madrid*, was sent to view the Ground about the Fort, which he found would be dangerous to be supplied with Provisions from the Sea, because being in the middle of the Island, Provisions and Ammunition

nition must be conveyed thither with a strong Guard.

9. *Andrew Vello* took 6 of the Enemies Boats, and had 5 Seamen and a Soldier killed and others wounded. On the 15th *Toral* went again to view the Fort with 10 Men in a Boat, had 3 killed, and the Ensign *Carvalho* who dying confessed great Crimes aloud. *Andrew Vello* attempting to burn the Cops near the City lost one Man, had 3 wounded, and failed of his Design. On the 16th *D. Francis* with the Viceroy's Son went to view the Fort on the side of the Sea. *Toral* and others going up a Creek observed that side. On the 17th *D. Francis* and *Toral* viewed the City of the Moors, and Bastion of the Turks. It was resolved in Council to land at the Place called *Our Lady*.

10. *D. Francisco* was ashore on the side of *Tuaca* preparing Gabions and Necessaries to land, he made a Review of his Men, and found above 400 *Portugueses* and many Blacks. On the 22th he ordered *Andrew Vello* what was to be done on the side of the *Moors* City to divert the Enemy, that they might not hinder our Landing. This Day 8 of our Seamen deserting to the Enemy discovered our Designs, which caused them to move their Cannon to a place whence they could annoy us. On the 24th the Men attempting to land, could not perform it in the place appointed, because the Sea was rough, but did at the place where two of the Enemies Ships lay.

11. They marched in good Order with their Cannon, through difficult ways to a Wood where they halted and Entrenched, to find out a fit Place for a Battery. Three hundred Blacks opposed the Landing, but were repulsed with Loss; of our Men 8 were killed. Those who were to return to the Ships did it in a great Consternation, some throwing away their Arms at the first sight of the Blacks. On the 26th the Enemy appeared, shewing the Heads of 2 *Portugueses* they had killed the Day before. In order to make our Approaches, a House defended by some Blacks was taken, but found of no use to us. Three Battalions of Blacks beset the House, and pressed those within so vigorously, that we lost 28 Men, besides many wounded, among which was *D. Francis* hurt with 24 Arrows; 7 of which were mortal, as being poisoned, if the Limb be not cut off, or the Blood-sucked. A Servant sucked those Wounds and died, but saved the Life of *D. Francis*.

12. The noise of the Fight brought *D. Ferdinand* the Viceroy's Son thither with some Men, which saved those that were left in the House, for the Blacks presently retired to a Wood, whence they annoyed us, till the Cannon being brought they fled. *D. Francis* being unfit to Command by reason of his Wounds, was carried aboard his Galley, and *Gonçalo Barros de Silva* was appointed to Command in his stead, but the Men refusing to obey him, *Peter Rodriguez Botello* the Vice-Admiral, who had before refused



fused that Post, was obliged now to accept of it. It was now the beginning of *February*, and our Men were more attentive to commit Villanies, than prosecute on the War; D. *Francis* understanding it, caused himself to be carried ashore in a Chair, and put some Remedy to it. Two large Vessels were built to batter the Fort, and they began to execute it successfully, and promised a good Event. A Battery was also raised upon the *Turks* Bastion. On the 2d of *March* the Enemy began to play a twelve Pounder from the *Moors* Town, which did much harm aboard our battering Vessels, killing 3 Men and wounding 10.

13. On the *Turks* Bastion were planted 2 ten Pounders, and began to play. The *Moors* of the Continent attacked it by Night, killed 2 of our Men, and wounded 6. At last that Battery was found to be useless, so all was Shipped again; and it was agreed, there was no staying there longer, for Winter came on, and it was necessary to return to *Goa*. Winter begins there at the end of *May*, and *March* was not yet over; there was time enough to take the Place, because it could not hold out four Days. In fine, D. *Francis* returned to *Goa*, leaving three Ships to guard the Coast, and hinder any Provisions from being carried to the Enemy. Two of them had Orders as soon as Winter began to retire to *Patij* and *Zanzibar*, which they did before their time, leaving their Vessels behind. A Seaman deserting before the Fleet set Sail, gave Intelligence to the  
Enemy

Enemy of our Designs ; and they planting a Gun on the top of the Mosque did much harm, chiefly among those that were wattering to return to Goa. The Fleet sailed on the 20th of *March*, and arrived at Goa the last Day of *May*.

14. As soon as the King of *Mombaca* saw the Coast clear, he made use of his own and our two Ships left there, to get away. He imbarqued all the Artillery, razed the Fort and City, destroyed all Fruit-trees, and then sailed with his Treasure, some Moors, and some Native Christians to the Coast of *Arabia*. That Place lay 2 Months desolate before any of our People knew it, and might have been so much longer, had not some Moors advertised *Peter Rodriguez Botello* who was at *Zanzibar*, and immediately went over to *Mombaca*, where beginning to build he found 5 or 6 Servants of *Portugueses* that had lain hid in the Woods when that Destruction happened.

15. Mean while at Goa the Viceroy was accused for sending *D. Francis de Mour* : upon that Expedition, and he for want of Conduct, and coming away too soon. The Viceroy excused himself, and put the other upon his Tryal, desiring *Toral* to take the Guilt upon himself, by saying he had voted for coming away, which he refused, and was 2 Months in Prison without any cause shown. At last he was released to accompany *D. Roderick de Costa*, who towards the end of this Year was going to discover certain Islands, but meeting two *Dutch Ships* about

about *Damam* had his Head struck off by a Cannon Ball the first Charge; so the Fleet returned without doing any thing. *D. Francis de Monra* was cleared of that Impeachment, being honoured at *Madrid*.

16. The *Hollanders* lying at *Pulolao* intercepted most of our *China* Fleet, which enabled them to relieve all their Forts and Factories. This great Booty cost them no Blood, because we had no fighting Ships on that Sea, all being imployed at *Mombaca* and *Ceylon*.

17. The Persecution of the Christians continued at *Japan*, but there were hopes it would cease, the Emperor lying very ill. In *China* they were alarmed by the *Tartars*. *Nababo Azafacan* Father-in-Law to King *Coran* with the Army of the *Mogol* besieged *Visapor*, and some time after drew off with great loss sustained by Want and Sicknes. The *Mogol* so highly resented this Misfortune, that he removed *Nababo*, though his Favourite, and preferred to that place *Mobatecan* his Enemy, a Man of great Repute among the Soldiers. Thus ended this Year, much dreaded in *India*, without any known reason, every Body saying before it came; *Oh that the Year 32 were past.*

## C H A P. XI.

*Of the Recovery of Ceylon, during the Government of the Viceroy the Count de Linnares.*

1. **A**FTER the Natives had left but a small part of the Island, *Ceylon* in our Possession, the Kings of *Matale*, *Uva* and *Candea* with 20000 Men came to Besiege *Columbo*, the chief Place then in our hands. The Besieged were reduced to that Extremity, it is said they eat the Dead, and some Mothers their own Children. Then came in five Ships sent by the Viceroy, rather to take up the Cinnamon was to be sent to *Portugal*, than relieve the Place. But the Besiegers thinking it was Relief raised the Siege. *D. Philip de Mascarennas* went over from *Cochin* to *Ceylon* with a *Pink* loaden with Provisions and well manned at his own expence, which was a great help to that Place.

2. The Viceroy gave the Command of General of *Ceylon* to *D. George de Almeyda*, who set out on the 19th of *February* 1631, in the great Galley taken by *Nunno Alvarez Botello*, when he destroyed the Fleet of *Achem*. This Vessel tho' large being not found enough to endure any Storm might rise, a Flyboat that went loaded with Provisions, was ordered to keep close always with *D. George*, which soon left him, and was the cause that many perished.

3. The



3. The Galley having coasted as far as Cape Comori, and then striking over to Ceylon, a Storm arose, and it appeared impossible to save her. D. George perceiving she must perish, launched the Boat and got into it with 29 Persons, whereof 4 were Religious. This was done so late and with such precipitation, that there was not in the Boat Provision for one meal. The Night was spent in lading out the Water the Sea and Rain brought into the Boat. In the Morning discovering a Sail at a distance, tho' D. George assured them in 3 or 4 Days he would bring them to Maldivia, they made towards it, and coming near found it was their own Galley then sinking.

4. With much trouble on the 4th Day they reached one of the Maldivia Islands about evening. This was at a time that the Natives keep a Fast of 30 Days, during which time they eat nothing between Sun and Sun, and do nothing but gormandise all the Night. Here D. George stayed 30 days, spending what he had got to maintain his Men, and got some Shipping to go over to the Coast of India. The Men made a sort of Habitation, but D. George lay in his Boat to be always the readier against the Moors, who kept them always upon their Guard. There was a vast number of Mosquiroes or Gnats, that made the Blood run where they stung; next followed a Sickness which none were free from, and was cured by Bleeding; two died of it, one a Franciscan. The King of the Islands writ to D. George, condoling his

his Misfortunes, and sending him a parcel of Rice.

5. Being provided with all Necessaries they sailed to *Cochim*, where D. George lay sick a long time. When he was somewhat recovered, there came to that Port 2 Pinks sent by the Viceroy to the Relief of *Ceylon* with 500 *Cafres*, 800 *Canarats*, some *Portugueses*, 40000 *Xerafins*, which are worth about a piece of Eight each, Provisions and Ammunition. D. George embarked with them, having raised some more Men; sailed from *Cochim* on the 17th of *October*, and arrived at *Columbo* the 21th. He marched not presently towards the Enemy (though censured upon that account) by reason the Season being wet, that Country, which is for the most part plain, is boggy and overflowed. Besides the Trees are full of Leeches, which drop down upon Men as they pass, and bleed them to Death.

6. The Season being somewhat more favourable, D. George marched on the 5th Day of *January* 1632, and passed the River *Calane* towards the North. Six Ships were ordered to go up the River with several Pieces of Cannon, but only two could perform it. The first day they could march but one League, and quartered at *Calane*. Next Morning having heard Mass, they marched with great difficulty, by reason of the Bogs and Waters, through which they waded up to the Breast. Besides the Enemies Musketers endeavoured to hinder our Passage about the Fort called *Tranqueyragrande*,

*grande*, but many of them were slain, our General giving 3 or 4 Pistols for every Head that was brought him. This Pass being cleared they advanced to another, where the Enemy appeared again. Our General went himself to view it, and returning disposed his Men to attack those Works, in which were almost 6000 Men. It was done with such fury, that many of the Enemy being killed, the rest fled, firing all they left behind. Our Army advanced to *Malunga*, where they found only 3 old Men, who said the Prince of *Canda* hearing the approach of our Men, had the day before abandoned that Place. All the Houses were burnt by D. George his Order.

7. The Fame of these Actions made many come in and submit, whom our General treated with kindness and rewarded; but Fear and Malice being equally prevalent in them, they hid themselves, thinking to get away to their own People again, which D. George understanding caused them to be apprehended, gave some as Slaves to the Captains, and delivering one to the Castre, they in sight of his Wife and Children immediately cut him in pieces, which they divided among themselves to eat.

7. The Army marched to *Cardovola*, where were 2 Forts, whence showers of Bullets flew. The General having viewed them, drew out 3 Battalions to give the assault. These advanced, and the whole Army ambitious of sharing the Honour, followed of their own accord, and D. George had much difficulty

difficulty to stop them. On a sudden the 3 Bodies crying *St. James* applied the scaling Ladders, mounted, and plantd our Colours upon the Walls of both Forts. We lost two Officers and four private Men, and had some few wounded. As our General entred one of these Forts, a *Chingala* came and told him that of *Tanqueyra Grande* was abandoned by the Enemy; he sent thither a Body of Men, and found it was true, and that they had left in that Fort good Brass and Iron Cannon, many Muskets and Ammunition. Those of *Cardevola* which were presently demolished were no worse provided, one piece of Cannon was found with the Royal Arms of *Portugal* upon it.

8. In several Parts of the River Bodies were afterwards found with Cymeters, which showed many in confusion were drowned for haste. The Enemy had strowed Crows-feet about the Fort to gall our Men, which did them the greatest harm as they fled. Our Army pursued the Enemy, but could not come to any Action, till they met at the Foot of the Mountains of *Candea*, where they were defeated, and we remained Masters of the Forts of *Manicravate*, *Sofragan*, *Maluana*, and *Caliture*. About *Maturé*, where *D. Theodosius* lived as a King, was the like Success.

9. The same at *Chilao*, a Sea-Port, which our General assaulted by Sea and Land, and took there a great Booty, part whereof were 130 Vessels. The King of *Candea* sent Ambassadors to sue for Peace, the General was  
against



against it, but being importuned by the religious, in consideration of the Misery the Country was reduced to by those Troubles, he granted the Ambassadors should go to *Goa*, to treat with the Viceroy. In fine, D. *George* not only recovered our lost Reputation, but encreased it.

10. D. *George* found the Inhabitants of *Columbo*, that ought to have worshipped him for delivering them from a deplorable Condition, more dangerous Enemies than the Natives. He endeavoured to put in Execution the King's Orders, to prevent the Frauds committed by the Officers of the Revenue; they arming made several Shots at him, by one of which he lost a Finger. This Mutiny being looked into, those concerned were put out of their Places and the Island; and it was declared in the Council of State, that D. *George* had acted better then any before him; and it was requisite for the King's Service, he should be continued in that Post. *Peter de Silva*, who was Viceroy after the Count *de Linnares*, removed him, only because it is a Custom for the new Viceroy to undo what his Predecessor has done. But no sooner did D. *George* leave the Command of the Island *Ceylon*, than all that he had gained was lost. Returning to *Goa* poor and full of Merit; he died in a low Condition, rather (as was believed) through Grief than Age.

## C H A P. XII.

*Of several Occurrences till the end of the Government of the Viceroy the Count De Linnares.*

1. **A**N Indian Woman married to a Portugues was delivered at *Bardes* of a Monster with two Heads and Teeth, the Ears like a Monkey, on the Forehead an Excrescency of Flesh like a Horn, the Legs so joyned they looked like one, leaping out of the Midwife's hands; it seized a Black, and bit out a piece of her Flesh. The Wife of a Heathen Barber brought forth much such another Creature, and a Cow a third, all successively one after the other. These Prodigious were general through most of the World this Year.

2. The Year 1633. was not quite unlike it; the beginning of this Year we lost the Town of *Golin* in *Bengala* in this manner. The *Mogol* having lost above 50000 Horse the last Year in several Engagements he had with *Hidalcan*, attributed it to the Assistance the latter received from the Portugueses. In Revenge thereof he now besieges *Golin* with almost 200000 Men by Land, and a vast Fleet sent down the River *Ganges*. In the Place were 200 Portugueses and their Slaves, who defended themselves several days without

out any Fortifications, killing 50000 *Mogols*. Being no longer able to hold out, they attempted to escape in four Vessels, two whereof full of Women and Children, and vast Riches, fell into the Enemies hands. The Women, rather than remain in Slavery, fired the Vessels, and were burnt with their Children and Treasure. The other two Ships with the Men were also taken; and the *Mogol* offering their liberty to such as were not Inhabitants of *Cambolim*, they refused, saying, They would all share the same Fortune. It is not known whether they were killed or made Slaves.

3. The War continued in *Ceylon* with the King of *Candea*. The false *D. Theodosius* had returned to our Friendship but with a design to deceive us, but was at last killed. The King sued for Peace, and submitted to our Conditions, but then again refused to ratifie it, and *James de Melo & Castro* offering him Battel if he persisted in the denial, he signed the Treaty. Thus we were again restored to all that had been lost in *Ceylon*.

4. Last Year three Ships were ready at *Lisbon* to sail for *India* at the usual time, which is about *March*, but the Weather proved so bad, they were disappointed. In *July* three others set out, and two of them had the good fortune to make the Voyage without seeing Land till they came to *Goa*. This Year we now treat of sailed the three Ships that were disappointed the last. One of these coming back, was cast away beyond

the Cape of *Good Hope*, but lost not one Man, and very few of them died ashore. Of the Wreck, and some Wood cut in the Mountains, they built two small Vessels that carried them off, though not without difficulty, the greatest to make the Men agree to this only means of saving themselves.

5. On the 16th of *February* 1634, *Antony Tellez de Silva* sailed from *Goa* towards the North with 6 Galleons, in search of the like number of *Dutch Ships* that came from *Ferfia*. About *Trapor* he discovered them, and giving chase they fled, throwing overboard many Goods to lighten.

6. The Viceroy was not so wholly taken up with the Military Affairs, but he could attend adorning and beautifying the City. He built a Church dedicated to *St. Laurence* near the Bar, and gave it to the *Franciscans*. Then he founded and endowed an Hospital for the Poor in the Field of *St. Lazarus*, which made four Hospitals at *Goa*. He rebuilt the Council-house of the Inquisition, and Palace of the Viceroys, which were going to ruin.

7. For Military Works, at *Panelim* he finished that called the Powder-house, where are daily made 14 Quintals of Powder. Repaired the Fortifications of *Mascate*, and others. These Works seem sufficient to have made him beloved, but either some Humours made him odious, or else it was impossible to please the *Portugueses*. Some discontented Persons, when the Viceroy was about to depart, set up several scandalous Libels



Libels against him in publick Places, and hanged his Effigies on the publick Gibbet. Yet after all it was voted, that an honourable Statue should be erected to him in the same place where the other had been hang'd, but it succeeded not, for when the Pedestal was set up, there arrived a new Viceroy, and the arrival of such always reverses what so ever was done before.

8. Now died the famous Commander *Ruy Freyre de Andrade* full of Merit unrewarded; we have already spoke of his Actions, his Qualities were a mixture of good and bad, more Politick than Conscientious. He was Prudent and Generous. Gave all his Orders in doubtful terms, to reserve a Meaning to justify himself by in case of ill success. Was familiar with no body, choosing rather to be feared than beloved. He heard all Soldiers standing, or made them sit. Any breach of Orders he never pardoned, but beheaded a Captain for saving a beautiful young Woman, being commanded to put all to the Sword. It is needless to repeat more Extravagancies of this kind.

9. Two Ships sailed from *Lubon*, carrying a new Viceroy to *India*. The Count *De Linarez* returned with them, one whereof was cast away near *Lubon*; the other, in which he was, went to *Malaga*, where many of the Men died, much of the Loading was wasted, and the Ship was broke up.

10. The Count went to Court, and was the first that presented his Prince with part of what he had gained. To the King he

gave a Hatband, to the Queen a pair of Pendants, both valued by some 100000, by others 80000 Crowns. He was at first received with Honour, and after Imprisoned. The Count was of a beautiful Presence, and comely Aspect, discreet and well inclined, of Viceroys the 27<sup>th</sup>, of Governours the 51<sup>st</sup>, and 6<sup>th</sup> of the Sirname.

11. This Year was remarkable in *Cochin-china* for a Dearth, which caused such a Famine as had not been known in the memory of Man, and for repeated Treasons. About the beginning of the Year a Bastard Son of the King, but Adopted by the Queen, went to govern the Provinces between *Cacham* and *Chapa*; he had before his departure conspired with eight principal Men to bring the Government of the Kingdom into his and his Brothers hands, which then was managed by the Sons of another Woman. As soon as he came to his Government he began to make Warlike Preparations; the King understanding it sent for him, and he kept off till the King died, and the Princes possessed themselves of the Palace. The Conspirators came to celebrate the Funeral Rites. An Uncle of those young Princes was present, who understanding those Traitors design to murder his Nephews, called up the Guards that were ready to execute his Orders, but he thought it enough to terrifie those Conspirators. The Funeral ended, the Prince having with difficulty got the Royal Seal from the Queen, tendred it to his Uncle, offering to acknowledge him as King;

King; but the old Man unwilling to be out-done by the Youth, refused the Offer, only desiring him to remember his Children.

12. The News of the King's Death being brought to the Bastard at the City *Cacham*, he ordered the deepest Mourning according to the custom of that Country, which was to cut their Hair short. This to them is a great Affliction, for they wear their Hair at length like Women, and think it makes them beautiful, whereas they are very ugly. This done, he raised Men, and fortified himself at *Turam*. The young King's two Brothers soon came upon him, and were Masters of all. He fled, and being taken, attempted to kill himself with a Knife; but failing, was committed to Prison, where he poisoned himself. After his Death many Persons of great Note, being Accomplices in the Treason, were put to Death.

## C H A P. XIII.

*The Government of the Viceroy Peter de Silva, from the Tear 1635, till 1638.*

1. **A**Bout the end of this Year 1635, the Count *de Linarez* resigned the Government of *India* to *Peter de Silva*. The same People that accused the Count for being so rigid, accused *Silva* of being too easie. Perhaps they blamed the Extreame, but what Man can overcome his Inclinations? Every Man's Qualifications ought to be looked into before an Employment is given him. I know not whether *Sylva* were naturally easie, but he had gained the Nickname of *Mole*, which in *Portugues* signifies Soft. Neither did he like the Government, being often heard to say, *God forgive them that named me for this Imploy, for I am not fit for it.*

2. In *March*, *Antony Tellez* set out again with his 6 *Galleons*, after 13 *Sail* of *Dutch* he expected to meet at *Surat*. A Storm forced him to *Bombaim*, and the Enemy to shun him put into *Dabul*. *Tellez* returned to *Goa*, and being there at Anchor, four great *Holland* Ships appeared before the Port, he went out, and having fought two days, forced them to lighten their Loading, the better to escape. This done, he enters the Port again,



again, and a Squadron of 10 Sail of the Enemy was seen at his Heels, the Disadvantage being too great, it was not thought expedient to fight them.

3. This Year was signalized with a Miracle that happen'd with a Crucifix. There is a Monastery of Nuns at *Goa*, in the Arch of their Choir facing the Nuns was placed a Crucifix, the Workmanship whereof was not liked because the Eyes were quite shut, and the Knees too high. On the first *Friday* of Lent, after the usual Procession, some Nuns being at Prayers in the Choir, distinctly saw the Image open its Eyes; the Women frighted cried out, and all the other Religious with the Father Confessor resorted thither, and before Midnight all of them saw the Eyes open 26 times, and sometimes the Body and Cross seemed to move, the Mouth opened as if it spoke, and Blood ran from the Temples and Wounds. Some part of these Wonders were seen several days, till on a *Tuesday*, the Church being full of People, they all saw what the Nuns had seen, for the Body of the Image turned to one side. The Bishop and Inquisitors were Witnesses of much of this Motion, and the whole was confirmed by the Asseveration of all the Citizens. The Eyes remained half open, the Knees stretched lower, the Feet falling and dragging the Nail after them, and the whole Body of the Image appeared more beautiful.

4. Only

4. Only two Ships sailed from *Portugal* this Year for *India*, whereof one was put into *Lubon* again. D. *Hierome Cbongala*, who now called himself *Suso*, that had lost the Kingdom of *Mombasa*, as has been related, appeared about this time in the Island *Madagascar*. When he fled he carried with him above 400 Christians, and sold them on the Coast of *Arabia*, obliging many to turn *Mabometans*. After wandering on that Coast he returned towards *Africk*, and landed at *Madagascar*, where the King of *Massalaye* and Moors of *Pate* favoured him. The News hereof being brought to *Moçambique*, the Inhabitants of that Town resolved to attack him. They fitted out 10 Ships and some other small Vessels, in which were about 60 *Portugueses* and 110 *Cafres*, commanded by *Andrew Borges* and *Antony de Oliveyra*, who were to obey *Rocque Borges* that was about that Coast.

5. On the 17th of *May* the *Cafres* landed to discover *Suso's* Works, where they slew some Men, and brought the Heads of three, losing one Man. *Borges* resolved to assault the Works next day, leaving the Care of the Vessels to *John Gomez Suarez*, a secure Man, that he might have a Retreat in case of any Misfortune. The Men marched half a League through Bogs up to the Knees, at the foot of a Mountain *Suso* met them with a multitude of Blacks. After a resolute Fight, *Suso* retired so orderly, that *Borges* suspected it was to draw him into some Ambush; wherefore after 4 hours Engagement find-

finding it impossible to overcome by reason of the multitude of Enemies and disadvantage of Ground, he withdrew to the Ships, having killed many of the Blacks without losing one Man. *Snarez* had not been idle there, for 1000 Blacks and Moors of *Pate* had assaulted the Ships, but were repulled with considerable loss. Our Commander carried the War along the Coast, burning some Towns and 15 large Vessels, besides the small, whereof he saved much Rigging, Ammunition, and Cannon.

6. On the 21<sup>st</sup> of *January*, *Antony Tellex* obtained leave to set out to fight the *Hollanders*, who upbraided us with Cowardice. After 8 hours Dispute the Enemy gave way. Our Admiral meeting them again about the middle of *February* in the Northern Sea, had the like success.

7. At *Malaca* the Feuds were so great between the Commander of the Town and Admiral of the Coast, that the latter shot an Uncle of the other. This encouraged the King of *Achem* to break with us, imprisoning *Francis de Sousa & Castro*, who resided there as Ambassador, and killing all the *Portugueses* about his Court. *Malaca* being much distressed for want of Provisions, and the Viceroy endeavouring to relieve it, News came that our Commander at *Damama* was dead, whereupon it was found necessary to divide that Relief. Four Galleons were sent to *Malaca*, and *Antony Tellex* the Hero of these Times with 500 Men, half of them Soldiers, to *Damam*. *Tellex* went no farther than

than *Bacaim*, understanding there that the Peace offered by the *Mogol* was concluded.

8. Two Ships sailed from *Lisbon* for *India*. About the end of *June* died the Viceroy *Peter de Silva*. An Inventory being made of what he was worth, it was censured to be too much for the little time he had to get it. He held the Government almost four Years, was the 28th Viceroy, and 53d Governour, the third of the Name, and first of the Sirname.

#### C H A P. XIV.

*The Government of Antony Tellez de Silva, from the Year 1639, till 1640.*

1. **A** *Ntony Tellez de Silva* served in *India* with much Valour, and had been successful against the *Hollanders*, as has been related. He was named to succeed 1639. in the Government in one of the Royal Patents, which were opened upon the Death of the Viceroy *Peter de Silva*; others also were appointed, whose Names were not known to the Military Men, they might perhaps be singular for Sanctity, which, when real, is very private. But because *Antony Tellez* was then absent, *D. F. Francis* of the *Martyrs* Archbishop of *Goa*, who was one of those before-mentioned, took upon him to Govern



Chap. XIV. *The Portugues Asia.*

413

Govern in his Name. He sent *Tellez* Advice of his Election, and the mean while employed himself in fitting out 12 Men of War, and some Victuallers, to relieve *Malaca*.

2. At the same time 9 *Holland* Ships entering the River of *Goa*, fired three of our Galleons that were at *Murmugam* without the least opposition, because the Fort was quite destitute of Men and Ammunition. Then arrived the Governour *Antony Tellez* storming at this unlucky Accident, not so much for the greatness of the Loss, as for Shame that the Enemy should compass their Ends in our Harbour, without sustaining the least harm.

3. After this Misfortune, News was brought, that two Enemies united were in sight of *Malaca*, the *Dutch* with 12 Men of War, and King of *Achem* with 25 Galleys. 1640.

The Governour was taken up, making greater Preparations to remedy these Disasters, than the low condition of *India* seemed to promise, when one came to succeed him in the Government, which he held not long, because it would have been for the advantage of *India*. He was the 53d Governour, third of the Name, and second of the Surname.

---

## CHAP. XV.

*Of the Viceroy John de Silva Tello, who went for India in the Year 1640.*

1. **J**ohn de Silva Tello, who had Commanded the famous Place of *Mazagam*, on the Coast of *Africk*, and done good Service there, was now made Viceroy of *India*, and sailed from *Liabon* with two Ships and two Pinks. He received the Sword from *Antony Tellez de Silva* then Governing, who presently imbarqued for *Portugal*, and so *India* lost him, he not thinking it proper to serve as Admiral where he had been Governour. Other Authors will write the Actions of the Viceroy *John de Silva Tello*, for he begins his Task where I end mine, which is at the end of the Fatal Year 1640, the Period of my Labours. I will only reckon him the 28th Viceroy, 54th Governour, the fifth of the Name, and third of the Surname.

*The End of the Fourth Part.*

---

*A Short*

A short Account of what the Portugueses are possess of between the Cape of Good Hope and China ; of the severall Dignities, Commands and Revenues in the said Possessions , and of the Religious Houses in those Parts.

1. **T**HE Portugues Empire to the Eastward, extends from the Cape of Good Hope in Africk, to Cape Liampo in China, distant from one another 4000 Leagues along the Sea Coasts, without including the Shores of the Red Sea and Persian Golph, which make about 1200 Leagues. Between this space lies half Africk, and all Asia with innumerable Islands adjoining to those two vast Parts of the World. These 4000 Leagues are divided into seven Parts: The 1st is bounded by the Cape of Good Hope and the Mouth of the Red Sea; the 2d by the Mouth of the Red Sea and Persian Golph; the 3d by that Golph and the River Indus; the 4th by that River and Cape Comorij; the 5th by that Cape and the River Ganges; the 6th by Ganges and Cape Singapura; the 7th by Cape Singapura and that of Liampo.

2. The first Division between the famous Cape of Good Hope and Mouth of the Red Sea, contains along the Coast many Kingdoms of the Cafres, as the vast one of Ma-

nomo-

*nomotapa*, who is Lord of all the Gold Mines in *Africk*; those of *Zofala*, *Moçambique*, *Quiloa*, *Pemba*, *Melinde Pate*, *Brava*, *Magedoxa*, and many other Sovereigns. Here the Crown of *Portugal* is posselt of the Forts of *Zofala* and *Mombaça*, and the City and Fort of *Moçambique*.

3. The second Division between the Mouth of the Red Sea and Persian Golph, contains the Coast of *Arabia*; where we have the impregnable Fortreſſs of *Mascat*.

4. The third Division between *Bagora* or the Persian Golph and *Indies*, contains the Kingdoms of *Ormuz*, *Guadel* and *Sinde*, part of those of *Persia* and *Cambaya*; here we hold the Fort of *Bandel*, and that of *Diu*.

5. The fourth Division between *Indus* and Cape *Comorij*, contains what is properly called *India*, that is part of *Cambaya*, *Decan*, *Canara*, and *Malabar*, subject to several Princes. Here we have the Forts of *Dammam*, *Aſſarim*, *Dannu*, *St. Genſ*, *Agaſaim*, *Maim*, *Manora*, *Trapor*, *Baſaim* with the City, *Tana*, *Caranja*, the City *Chaul* and opposite Fort called *Morro*. The most noble City *Goa*, large, strong, and populous, the Metropolis of our Eastern Dominions; an Archbishoprick, whose Prelate is Primate of all the East: This is the Residence of the Viceroyſ, and here are the Courts of the Inquisition, Exchequer and Chancery, a Custom-Houſe, Arsenal and Magazines well provided. The City is ſeated in an Iſland girt with a ſtrong Wall and ſix mighty Caſtles



Cities called of *Danguim*, *St. Blas* of *Basileto*, *Santiago*, *Agacaim*, *Panguim* and *Nuoffra Sennora del Cabo*. On the other side to secure the Bar is that of *Bardes*. Opposite to the *Castle Danguim* is the *Fort of Norua*, with a good Town. On one side of this Island lies that of *Salsete*, where is the *Fort of Rachel*. Then going along the Coast we have the *Forts of Onor*, *Barcelor*, *Mangalor*, *Cannur*, *Granganor*, and then *Cochim*, which is a *Bishoprick*; behind it *Angamale* another *Bishoprick*, and near *Cape Comorij* the Town and *Fort of Coulam*.

6. The fifth Division between *Cape Comorii* and *Ganges*, contains *Coromandel* and *Oriza*, where we have the *Fort of Negapatam*, that of *Meliapor* with the City which is a *Bishoprick* of late called *St. Thomas*, and *Masulapatam*.

7. The sixth Division between *Ganges* and *Cape Singapura*, contains the vast Kingdoms of *Bengala*, *Pegu*, *Tanazarim*, and others of less Note. Here we have the City *Malaca*, a *Bishop's Seat*, and the last place we possess in the Eastern Continent.

8. The seventh Division between the Capes *Singapura* and *Liampo*, contains the Kingdoms of *Pam*, *Lugor*, *Siam*, *Cambodia*, *Tsiampa*, *Cochinchina*, and vast Empire of *China*. Here we have no place but the City *Macao*, yet Trade all along those Coasts.

9. In the Island *Ceylon* we possess the City and *Fort of Columbo*, those of *Manar*, *Gale* and others. Beyond *Malaca* a *Fort in*  
E e
the

*The Portuguese Asia.*

the Island *Timor*. The number of our Forts in all this great Tract is above fifty, and twenty Cities and Towns, besides many Villages depending on the others.

10. As to the Revenue; the Customs of *Diu* are worth above 100000 Crowns; those of *Goa* 160000; those of *Malacca* 70000; the Tribute paid by several Places amounts to 200000, all which with Prizes and other Profits uncertain, will make above a Million. If the Officers had any honesty, it might amount to Two Millions; for there is no doubt but they cheat the King of half his Income, as may appear by what follows.

11. The Forts of *Zofala* and *Mozambique* are worth to their Commanders 200000 Ducats each; *Mombaca* 30000, *Mascara* 30000, *Bandel* 2000, *Diu* 60000, a Fort at the Mouth of that River 1000, the Pass of *Brancavara* 1000, *Affarim* 4000, *Dann* 600, *S. Gons* 600, *Agacaim* 600, *Maim* 600, *Manora* 15000, *Trapor* 400, *Bacaim* 30000, *Tana* 400, two Forts upon that River 1000, *Chaul* 80000, *Goa* 20000, the Fort of *Dau-guim* 3000, *St. Blas* 1000, *Agacaim* 2000, *Bardes* 6000, *Noroa* 1500, *Rachol* 600, *Onor*, 12000, *Barcelor* 30000, *Mangalor* 12000, *Cauzanor* 15000, *Granganor* 6000, *Cochim* 100000, *Conlam* 12000, *Negapatam* 8000, *Musalapatam* 8000, *Meliapor* or *St. Thomas* 12000, *Malaca* 150000, *Columbo* 40000, *Manar* 24000, *Gale* 16000, *Solor* 16000, besides others of lesser value.

12. All together are worth to their Commanders yearly half a Million. The value above is computed for three Years. There are other Employments no less profitable than the Command of Forts, as are the several Voyages. That from *Goa* to *China* and *Japan* is worth to him that Commands it 100000 Crowns. From *Coremandel* to *Malacca* 20000. From *Goa* to *Mozambique* 24000. To *Ceylon* 4000. This arise only of the Freight of Goods carried, and the Captain makes as much more by way of Trade.

13. The Viceroy's Salary is 18000 Crowns, besides the disposing of Places, which are all sold; but the chief thing which they all look upon is Trade, for whereas the King gets nothing out of *India*; some Viceroy's have cleared 3, some 5, and some 800000 Ducats. All other Officers have great Salaries, besides their lawful Profits, and their more considerable Frauds. The Salaries are considerable enough to have made Men honest, but Avarice knows no bounds. Thus much of the Temporal Power, let us come to the Spiritual.

14. The Archbishop of *Goa* is Metropolitan and Primate of all *Asia*. *Cochin* was made a Bishoprick in the Year 1559; *Malacca* the same Year; *Meliapor* 1607. The Bishops of *China* were instituted by Pope *Pius Quintus*. There is also a Bishop of *Japan*, and one of the Mountain near *St. Thomas Meliapor*. There were Bishops of *Persia*, as also Patriarchs of *Ethiopia*. The City *Angamale* is a Bishoprick, as is that of *Macao*.

E c 2

15. We

*The Portuguese Asia.*

15. We will set down the Houses, Churches, or Monasteries of Religious, according to the time of their first going into *India*. The Franciscans have 22; the Dominicans 9; the Augustins 16; the Jesuits about 28 Monasteries, Colleges and Seminaries, besides a vast number of Residencies, so called by them where there are only 2 or 3 Fathers. This may suffice to show the great Progress made there in propagating the Faith, which has been more particularly spoke of in many Places of this History.

---



*An Account of all the SHIPS that sailed from Lisbon to the Discovery of the Coasts of Africk and Asia, and the Annual Trading Ships, from the time Prince Henry first attempted the Discovery, till the Tear 1640.*

1. **O**NE Ship sent by Prince Henry, who began these Discoveries about the Year 1412, and reached as far as Cape Bojador, none till then having passed beyond Cape Nam, which in Portugues, according to their way of Pronouncing, signifies No, as who should say, There was no going farther.

*Tear 1412*

2. Two Ships having lost their Account in Storm, accidentally discovered the Island called *Puerto Santo*.

*1418*

3. The same two going out again with another, found the Island *Madera*.

*1419*

4. Two Ships passed 30 leagues beyond Cape Bojador, where they landed and returned home.

*1434*

5. Next Year set out two Ships which advanced 12 leagues farther, fought with some of the Natives, and brought home Skins of Sea-Wolves.

*1435*

6. Two Ships touched at the place where the former killed the Sea-Wolves, fought with the Natives, and brought some Prisoners to Portugal.

*1440*

E e 3

7. Anthony

*The Portugues Asia.*

7. *Anthony Gonzalez* with one Ship discovered the River he called *Del Oro*, or of Gold, because he found somethere, and brought the first Blacks to *Portugal*. Year 1442

8. *Nunno Tristan* discovered the Islands of *Arguim*, and that of *Garcas*. 1443

9. A Company being erected to carry on these Discoveries, one *Lancelote* sailed with 6 Ships discovered the Island *Nar*, and others. 1444

10. *Gonzalo de Sintra* with one Ship passed 14 leagues beyond *Rio del Oro*. 1445

11. *Antony Gonzalez* went with 3 Ships to Trade at *Rio del Oro*. 1446

12. *Nunno Tristan* with one Ship went to *Rio del Oro*. 1446

13. *Dinis Fernandez* with one Ship reached to the River *Sanaga*, and discovered the Islands of *Cabo Verde*. 1446

14. *Antony Gonzalez* with 3 Ships sailed as far as the Islands of *Arguim*. 1447

15. The same Year set out first 3 Ships, which went no farther than the Islands of *Arguim*. Then 14 Sail, after them 3 more. Then another Squadron, the number of Vessels not known, but they carried 2600 Men to conquer the *Canary* Islands. After this another Squadron; no number of Ships known. Then *Nunno Tristan* with one Ship, who went as far as *Rio Grande*, and was there killed. And last, *Alvaro Fernandez*, who passed 40 leagues beyond *Rio Grande* to the River *Tabite*. All these set out in one Year. 1447

16. *Giles*

## The Portugues Asia.

423

16. *Giles Taner* with 10 Caravels went no further than what was before discovered. *James Gil Homem* with one Ship passed beyond Cape *Gus*, and brought the first Lion from those Parts to *Lisbon*. *Ferdinand Alonfo* with one Ship went Ambassador to the King of *Cabo Verde*. *Gonzalo Vello* with one Ship discovered the Islands *Azores*. All these the same Year. Year 1448

17. *Suero Mendez* with one Ship went to build a Fort at *Arguim*, which was the first erected in those Conquests. 1449

18. *Amory de Nole* with 3 Ships discovered the Islands *Mayo*, and *St. Philip* and *St. Jacob*. 1460

19. *Peter de Sintra* with 2 Ships sailed as far as *Sierra Leona*. 1467

20. *John de Santarem* with two Ships went as far as Cape *St. Catherine*. *Ferdinand Po* with one Ship discovered the Island *Hermosa*; there were also other Discoveries, but the Discoverers are not known. 1469

21. *James de Azambuja* with 12 Sail and 600 Men built a Fort in *Guinea*, from which time the King styled himself Lord of *Guinea*. 1481

22. *James Cam* with one Ship discovered the River of *Congo*, or *Zeyre*. 1484

23. *James Cam* setting out again with one Ship, ran 200 Leagues farther, discovering the Kingdom of *Beni*, and Empire of *Ogane*. 1485

24. *Bartholomew Diaz* with 3 Ships discovered the Bay called *Angra de los Vaqueros*, the Island *De la Cruz*, the River *Del Infante*, and

*The Portugues Asia.*

and Cape he called *Tormentofo*, but King *John* the Second named it *Cape of Good Hope*. Year 1486

25. *Gonzalo Coello* went to assist the Prince of *Falof*, the number of his Ships not known. *Peter Vaz de Cuna* sent to the River *Zanaga* with 20 Sail. 1488

26. *Gonzalo de Sousa* sailed with 3 Ships to *Congo*. 1489

27. *Vasco de Gama* with 3 Sail discovered *India*. 1493

28. *Peter Alvarez Cabral* sailed for *India* with 13 Vessels, whereof 5 were cast away, one put back to *Liſbon*, and another accidentally discovered *Brasil*, being drove thither by a Storm. 1500

29. *John de Nova* with 4 Ships, one of them discovered the Islands *Conceiçam*, and *St. Helena*. 1501

30. *D. Vasco de Gama*, the first Discoverer, returns again to *India* with 9 Sail. 1501

31. *Vincent Sodre* commanded 5 Sail bound for *India*, as are all that follow, so that it will be needless to repeat it; two of these were lost. 1502

32. *Stephen de Gama* with 5 Sail. After him *Alfonso de Albuquerque* with three, then *Francis de Albuquerque* with three, *Antony de Saldana* with three; two of this number were lost; one found the Island *Zocotora*. 1503

33. *Lope Soarez de Albergaria* with 13 Sail. 1504

34. *D. Francis de Almeyda*, first Viceroy of *India*, with 20 Sail; one was cast away. *Peter de Anaya* with 6 Sail, two of them perished



*The Portugues Asia.*

425

ished. *Sebastian Barbuda*, or *Cyd Barbosa*,  
with 2 Sail. Year 1503

35. *Tristan de Cunha* with 16 Sail, who  
discovered the Islands to which he gave his  
own Name; one of these Ships was cast away.  
*Alfonso de Albuquerque* with 6. 1506

36. *George de Melo* with 4 Sail. *Ferdinand Suarez* with 4. *Vasco Gomez de Abreu*  
with 7. 1507

37. *James Lopez de Sequeyra* with four  
Sail. 1508

38. *George de Aguiar* with 13 Sail, three  
of them were cast away. *D. Francis Continno* with 17. 1509

39. *James Mendez de Vasconcelos* with  
4 Sail. *Gonçalo de Sequeyra* with 7, one of  
them was lost. *John Serram* with 3. 1510

40. *D. Garcia de Noronna* with 6 Sail. 1511

41. *George de Melo* with 9 Sail, one cast  
away. *Garcia de Sousa* with 4. *John Chanoa*  
with one Ship. 1512

42. *John de Sousa & Lima* with 4 Sail, two  
of them cast away. 1513

43. *George* or *Christopher de Brito* with  
5 Sail, one cast away. *Luis Figueyra* with  
two. 1514

44. *Lope Suarez de Albergaria* with 17 Sail.  
*Fernan Perez de Andrade* with 3. 1515

45. *John de Silva*, or *Silveyra*, with 5 Sail,  
two of them cast away. *James de Unnos*,  
or *Vnos*, with only one. 1516

46. *Antony de Saldanna* with 6 Sail. 1517

47. *James Lopez de Sequeyra* with 12  
Sail. 1518

48. *George*

48. *George de Albuquerque* with 14 Sail; one of them cast away, the Captain ran away with another. *Raphael Castano* with 3. Year 1519
49. *George de Brito* with 10 Sail. 1520
50. *D. Duarte de Mensez* with 12 Sail. *Sebastian de Sousa* with 3. 1521
51. *D. Peter de Castro* with 4 Sail, one of them lost. 1522
52. *James de Silveira* with 9 Sail, one cast away. 1523
53. *D. Vasco de Gama* with 17 Sail, 3 cast away. 1524
54. *D. Lope de Almeyda* with 4 Sail. 1525
55. *Christopher de Vega* with 5 Sail. 1526
56. *Emanuel de Lacerda* with 5 Sail, two were lost. 1527
57. *Nunno de Cunha* with 11 Sail, three lost. 1528
58. *James de Silveira* with 5 Sail. 1529
59. *Francis de Sousa Tavoriz* with 6 Sail. 1530
60. *Achilles Godinho* with 5 Sail. 1531
61. *Peter Vaz* with 5 Sail. 1532
62. *D. John Pereyra* with 7 Sail, one cast away. *D. Peter de Castello Branco* with 10 Sail. 1533
63. *Martin Alfonso de Sousa* with 5 Sail. 1534
64. *Fernan Perez de Andrade* with 7 Sail. 1535
65. *George de Lima* with 5 Sail. 1536
66. *George Cabral* with 5 Sail. *D. Laurence de Silva* with 6. 1537
67. *James*

*The Portugues Asia.*

427

67. *James Lopez de Sousa* with 8 Sail. Year 1537
68. *D. Garcia de Noronha* with 11 Sail, one lost. 1538
69. *James or Peter Lopez* with 6 Sail, one lost. 1539
70. *Francois de Sousa Tavares* with 4 Sail. 1540
71. *Martin Alonso de Sousa* with 5 Sail. 1541
72. *Henry de Macedo* with 4 Sail, one was lost. 1542
73. *James de Silveyra* with 5 Sail. 1543
74. *Fernan Perez de Andrade* with 6 Sail, one cast away. 1544
75. *D. John de Castro* with 6 Sail. 1545
76. *Laurence Perez de Tavora* with 6 Sail. 1546
- Lionel de Sousa* with one. 1546
77. *D. Francis de Lima* with 6 Sail. *Martin Correa de Silva* with 3. 1547
78. *Francis Barreto* with 3 Sail. 1547
79. *Emanuel de Mendoça* with 5 Sail. 1548
- John de Mendoça* with 3. *D. John Enriques* with 3. 1548
80. *D. Alvaro de Noronha* with 5 Sail, one lost. 1549
81. *D. Alfonso de Noronha* with 5 Sail, two lost. 1550
82. *James Lopez de Sousa* with 8 Sail. 1551
83. *Fernan Suarez de Albergaria* with 6 Sail, one cast away. 1552
84. *Fernan Alvarez Cabral* with 5 Sail, one burnt, one cast away. 1553
85. *D. Peter Mascarennus* with 6 Sail, one lost. 1554
86. *D.*

*The Portugues Asia.*

86. D. John de Meneses & Sequeira with  
5 Sail, one cast away. Year 1555
87. D. Leonardo de Sousa with 5 Sail, one  
lost. 1556
88. D. Luis Fernandez de Vasconcelos with  
5 Sail, two cast away. 1557
89. D. Constantine de Bragança with 4 Sail.  
1558
90. Peter or Lope Vaz de Sequeira with  
6 Sail. 1559
91. D. George de Sousa with 6 Sail, one  
lost. 1560
92. D. Francis Coutino Count de Redondo  
with 5 Sail. 1561
93. D. George Manuel with 6 Sail. 1562
94. D. George de Sousa with 4 Sail. 1563
95. D. Antony de Noronna with 4 Sail. 1564
96. D. Francis de Sa with 4 Sail, one  
lost. 1565
97. Luis or Ruy Gomez de Cuna with  
4 Sail. 1566
98. John Gomez de Silva with 4 Sail. 1567
99. D. Luis de Ataide with 5 Sail. 1568
100. Philip Carnero de Alcaçova with 4  
Sail. 1569
101. George de Mendoça with 4 Sail. Emanuel de Mesquita with one Galleon, Francis Barreto with three. 1570
102. D. Antony de Noronna with 7 Sail. 1571
103. Duarte de Melo with 4 Sail, one lost. Bartholomew de Vasconcelos & Cuna with one Ship. 1572
104. D. Francis de Sousa with 4 Sail, one  
lost. 1573



*The Portugues Asia.*

429

105. *Ambrose de Aguiar Continno* with 6  
Sail. Year 1574
106. *D. John de Castello Branco* with 4 Sail.  
1575
107. *Ruy Lorchço de Tavora* with 5 Sail. 1576
108. *Pantallon de Sa* with 4 Sail, one cast  
away. 1577
109. *Matthias de Albuquerque* with 2 Sail,  
one lost. *D. Luis de Ataide Count de Aton-*  
*gues* with 3 Sail. 1577
110. *George de Silva* with 3 Sail. 1578
111. *D. Stephen de Meneses Barochi*, and  
*John de Melo*, with 2 Caravels. 1578
112. *John de Saldanna* with 5 Sail. 1579
113. *Emanuel de Melo de Cuna* with 4  
Sail. 1580
114. *D. Francis Mascarennas Count de*  
*Santa Cruz* with 5 Sail, one lost. 1581
115. *Antony de Melo & Castro* with 5 Sail,  
one lost. 1582
116. *Antony de Melo & Castro* with 5  
Sail. 1583
117. *D. Duarte de Meneses* with 6 Sail, one  
lost. 1584
118. *Ferdinand Mendoça* with 5 Sail, one  
lost. 1585
119. *D. Hieronym Continno* with 6 Sail, two  
cast away, one taken by Sir Fr. Drake. 1586
220. *Fr. de Melo* with 6 Sail, one lost. 1587
121. *John de Tovar Camina* with 5 Sail, one  
lost. 1588
122. *Bernardin Ribero Pacheco* with 5 Sail,  
one lost. 1589
123. *Matthias de Albuquerque* with 5 Sail,  
one lost. 1590
124. The

*The Portugues Asia.*

124. The Commander not known three  
Sail. Year 1590
125. *Ferdinand de Mendoga* with 6 Sail,  
one cast away, another burnt, and a third  
taken by the *Englifr.* 1591
126. *Francis de Melo* with 4 Sail, one cast  
away. 1592
127. *D. Luis Continno* with 5 Sail, 3 lost. 1593
128. *Ayres de Miranda Enriquez* with 10  
Sail, one lost. 1594
129. *John de Saldana* with 5 Sail, 2 lost. 1595
130. *D. Francis de Gama Count de Vidigney.*  
ra with 5 Sail, one burnt, one run ashore. 1596
131. *D. Alonso de Noronha* with 3 Sail. 1597
132. *D. Hierome Continno* with 3 Sail was  
ready, but went not from *Lisbon*, the *Englifr*  
lying before the Harbour. 1598
133. The last Year's Commander with four  
of the same Ships, and *Simon de Mendoga* with  
three others. 1599
134. *Ayres de Saldanna* with 4 Sail, one  
cast away, another taken. 1600
135. *D. Francis Tello de Meneses* with 4 Sail,  
all forced back to *Lisbon.* *Antony de Melo*  
& *Castro* with 5 Galleons, he taken by the  
*Dutch.* 1601
136. *D. Francis Tello de Meneses* with 6  
Sail. 1602
137. *Peter Hurtado de Mendoga* with 5  
Sail. 1603
138. *D. Martin Alonso de Castro* with 5 Sail,  
one lost. More 2 Caravels. 1604
139. *Blas Tellez de Meneses* with 6 Sail, two  
lost. *Alvaro de Carvalho* with 3 Galleons. *Bel-*  
*chier Rodrigues* with one Caravel. 1605
140. D.

*The Portugues Asia.*

432

140. D. Hierome Continno with 3 Sail, let not out the Darts lying at the mouth of the River. Year 1606

141. D. Hier. Continno with the last Year's Ships. John Correa de Sousa with 4 Sail. 1607

142. D. John Pereyra Count de Feysa with 6 Sail, 3 cast away. D. Christopher de Noronna with 8 Galleons, one lost. Ruy Lorenzo de Tavoré with 5 Sail. 1608

143. D. Em. de Meneses with 5 Sail. 1609

144. Luis Mendez de Vasconcelos with 3 Sail, one lost. 1610

145. D. Antony de Atayde with 3 Sail. 1611

146. Andrew Coelho with 2 Caravels. Antony Pinto de Fonseca one Galleon. John Corres de Mendosa one Galleon. 1611

147. D. Hier. de Almeyda with 3 Sail. 1612

148. D. Em. de Meneses with 4 Sail, all put back by stress of Weather. Belchior Rodriguez one Ship. 1613

149. D. E. Continno with 5 Sail, 4 lost. 1614

150. D. Hierome Manuel with 4 Sail. 1615

151. D. Em. de Meneses with 3 Sail. 1616

152. D. John Continno Count de Redondo with 4 Sail. Afterward 4 Sail more. 1617

153. D. Chr. de Noronna with 5 Sail. 1618

154. D. Fr. de Lima with 4 Sail. Ruy Freyre de Andrade with 5 Galleons. 1619

155. Nunno Alvarez Batello with 4 Sail, one lost. Jacome de Morales Sarmiento with two. After them two more. 1620

156. D. Alonso de Noronna with 4 Sail, were all put back by stress of Weather. D. Alonso de Noronna again with 6 Galleons, all put back again but one. 1621

157. D.

*The Portugues Asia.*

157. *D. Francis de Gama* Count *de Vidi-  
gueyra* with 4 Sail, two were lost. *Sancho  
de Tovar y Silva* with 4 Galleons. Year 1622.
158. *D. Antony Tello & Meneses* with 3 Sail,  
all lost. *D. Philip Mascarennas* with 5 Gal-  
leons, three lost. 1623
159. *Nunno Alvarez Botello* with 2 Sail. *Se-  
bastian de Costa Valente* with 6 Galleons. 1624
160. *Vincent de Brito & Meneses* with 2 Sail,  
both cast away. 1625
161. *D. Emanuel Pereyra Continno* with  
3 Sail. 1626
162. *John Sequeyra Varejam* with 2 Sail.  
*Dominick de Camara* with 4. 1627
163. *D. Fr. Mascarennas* with 3 Sail. 1628
164. *D. Michael de Noronna* Count *de Li-  
narez* with 9 Sail, two lost. 1629
165. *D. George de Almeyda* with 2 Sail,  
one lost. 1630
166. *Antony de Saldana* with 2 Ships, both  
put back by Weather. *Fr. Vas de Almada*  
with 2 Sail. 1631
167. *Jos. Pinto Pereyra* with 7 Sail. 1632
168. *Antony de Saldana* with 5 Sail. 1633
169. *Hier. de Saldana* with 3 Sail. 1634
170. *Peter de Silva* with 2 Sail, one lost. *Gon-  
zalo de Barros & Silva* with two 1635
171. *John de Melo* with 2 Sail. 1636
172. *John Suarez Vivas* with 2 Sail. 1637
173. *J. de Sequeyra Varejam* with 4 Sail. 1638

These are all the Ships there is any account  
of that sailed from *Lisbon* to discover, and af-  
ter for *India*, since the Year 1412, when Prince  
*Henry* first attempted finding the way to *India*  
by Sea.

*The*



*The Viceroy and Governors of India, from  
the first Discovery till the Year 1640.*

1. **D**ON Francis de Almeyda, first Vice-roy and Governor Year 1505
2. *Alfonso de Albuquerque*, second Governor 1509
3. *Lope Soarez de Albergaria*, third Governor 1515
4. *James Lopez de Sequeyra*, 4th Governor. 1518
5. *D. Duarte de Meneses*, 5th Governor. 1522
6. *D. Vasco de Gama* Count de Vidigueyra, 2d Viceroy and 6th Governor. 1524
7. *D. Henry de Meneses*, 7th Governor. 1527
8. *Peter Mascarennas*, 8th Governor. 1529
9. *Lope Vaz de Sampaio*, 9th Governor. 1529
10. *Nuno de Cunna*, 10th Governor. 1529
11. *D. Garcia de Noronha*, 3d Viceroy and 11th Governor. 1538
12. *D. Stephen de Gama*, 12th Governor. 1540
13. *Martin Alfonso de Sousa*, 13th Governor. 1542
14. *D. John de Castro*, 4th Viceroy and 14th Governor. 1543
15. *Garcia de Sa*, 15th Governor 1549
16. *George Cabral*, 16th Governor 1549
17. *D. Alonso de Noronha*, 5th Viceroy and 17th Governor. 1550
18. *D. Peter Mascarennas*, 6th Viceroy and 18th

- |  |           |
|--|-----------|
| 18th Governor.   | Year 1554 |
| 19. Francis Barreto, 19 Governor   | 1555      |
| 20. D. Constantin de Bragança, 7th Viceroy and 20th Governor.                  | 1558      |
| 21. D. Francis Continno Count de Redondo, 8th Viceroy and 21th Governor.       | 1561      |
| 22. John de Mendoga, 22 Governor.  | 1564      |
| 23. D. Antony de Noronna, 9th Viceroy and 23d Governor.                        | 1564      |
| 24. D. Luis de Ataide, 10th Viceroy and 24th Governor.                         | 1567      |
| 25. D. Antony de Noronna, 11th Viceroy and 25th Governor.                      | 1571      |
| 26. Antony Monez Barreto, 26 Gov.  | 1573      |
| 27. D. Laurence de Tavora, 12th Viceroy and 27th Governor.                     | 1576      |
| 28. D. James de Meneses, 28 Gover.   | 1576      |
| 29. D. Luis de Ataide Count de Atouguia the second time, 13 Vicer. and 29 Gov. | 1578      |
| 30. Ferdinand Tellez de Meneses, 30th Governor.                                | 1581      |
| 31. D. Francis Mascarennas Count de Santa Cruz, 14 Viceroy and 31 Governor.    | 1581      |
| 32. D. Duarte de Meneses, 15th Viceroy and 32th Governor.                      | 1584      |
| 33. Emanuel de Sousa Coutinno, 33 Gov.   | 1588      |
| 34. Mathias de Albuquerque, 16th Viceroy and 34th Governor.                    | 1691      |
| 35. D. Francis de Gama Count de Vidigueira, 17th Viceroy and 35th Governor.    | 1597      |
| 36. Ayres de Saldanna, 18th Viceroy and 36 Governor.                           | 1600      |
| 37. Martin Alfonso de Castro, 19th Viceroy and 37th Governor.                  | 1604      |
| 38. D. F. Alexius de Meneses Archbishop of                                     |           |

- of Goa, 38th Governor. 1607
39. D. *John Pereyra Count de Fcyra*, 20th Viceroy and 39th Governor. 1608
40. *Andrew Furtado de Mendoça*, 40th Governor. 1609
41. *Ruy Lorenzo de Tavora*, 21th Viceroy and 41st Governor. 1609
42. D. *Hierome de Azevedo*, 22th Viceroy and 42th Governor. 1613
43. D. *John Coutinho Count de Redondo*, 23th Viceroy and 33th Governor. 1617
44. *Ferdinand de Albuquerque*, 44 Gov. 1619
45. D. *Alfonso de Noronna*, 24th Viceroy and 45th Governor. 1621
46. D. *Francis de Gama Count de Vidigueyra*, the 2d time, 25 Viceroy, 46 Governor. 1622
47. D. *Luis de Brito Bishop of Cochim*, 47th Governor. 1628
48. D. *Francis Mascarennas*, 26 Viceroy, 48 Governor. 1628
49. *Nunno Alvarez Bstello*, 49 Gov. 1628
50. D. *Michael de Noronna Count de Linnares*, 27 Viceroy, 50 Governor. 1629
51. *Peter de Silva*, 28th Viceroy, 51th Governor. 1635
52. *Antony Tellez de Silva*, 52 Gov. 1639
53. *John de Silva Tello*, 29 Viceroy, 53 Governor. 1640

*Books in Print and Manuscripts out of which the Portugues Asia was Collected.*

*B O O K S in Print.*

1. **E**ight Volumes of the Affairs of *India*, by *Ferdinand Lopez de Castaneda*, who went into *India* only to examine into the Truth of what he writ. His Stile nor Geography are not commendable, but he has many curious, though tedious Remarks. It has been translated into French and Italian, and I suppose some other Languages.
2. Four Decades of the great *John de Barros*, who though posterior to *Castaneda* as to time, is preferable to all for Judgment, and is particularly esteemed for his Geography.
3. Four other Decades of *James de Couto*, Historiographer of *India*, from the 4th to the 7th; for he began at the 4th, for then that of *John de Barros* was not publick.
4. Commentaries of the Actions of the great *Alfonso de Albuquerque*, writ by his Son of the same Name.
5. *Antony Pinto Pereyra* his Chronicle of *D Luis de Atayde*, the famous Viceroy and Supporter of *India*, writ in the Days of King *Sebastian*.
6. *Ferdinand Mendez Pinto* his Indian History,



History, writ at the same time as the last. Many make a doubt of Truth of what he writes; and as many who have travelled those Parts affirm he might with truth have writ much more no less incredible to our apprehension. I look upon him as a very true Historian, for many Reasons. Yet supposing he is not, it is in things wholly omitted by me.

7. The Bishop D. *Hierome Osorio*, wrote the History of *India* in Latin, which beyond dispute is the best Work of that Nature, next to *Titus Livius*. As to his Latin, all Men grant him to be the best *Ciceronian*. His method is singular, his Judgment piercing, his Reflections sharp, his Ornament majestic. In fine, he is accomplished in all Points.

8. *Mafew* is well known and very pleasant; he did little but Epitomizing the Decades of *John de Barros*, as to the Substance of the History.

9. F. *Antony de S. Roman*, did little more than Translate *Mafew*, but not with Elegancy equal to him; the Translation there is of him in Italian is better.

10. *John de Lucena* a Jesuit, in the Life of S. *Francis Xaverius* brings in many Particulars of the Indian History. He sticks not to the Rules of History, but in his way of Writing deserves esteem for his Judgment, Elegancy, and way of Reasoning.

11. *Antony Galvam* who was Commander of *Ternate*, writ much concerning *India*, and particularly of the Affairs of those Islands, which has not been Printed, or is extant,  
at

at least it has not come to my Hands. I only saw the Books he calls of Discoveries, which is only short hints of things.

12. Dr. *Garcia Dorta*, of the Drugs and Medicinal Plants of *Asia*.

13. A Collection of several small Books by several Authors, giving an Account of many Shipwrecks that happen'd, whereof we make mention in their Places.

14. Several Relations, particularly of the Jesuits.

15. My own Book of the Empire of *China*, collected from the Memories and Observations of *F. Alvaro Semedo*, of the Society of Jesus.

16. *Bartholomew de Argensola* of the *Malucoes*, who in many Particulars errs as much as *F. Urreta*.

17. *Manuel Xaverius* a Jesuit, of the Victories obtained by *Nunno Alvarez Botello*.

18. Two Poems of *Hierome de Cortereal*.

19. *Francis Alvarez* a Priest of the Affairs of *Abassia*.

20. *F. John de los Santos* a Dominican, of the Affairs of *Ethiopia*.

21. *F. Luis de Urreta*.

#### MANUSCRIPTS.

1. ONE Volume of the *Portugues Voyages*, found among the Papers of the Bishop D. *Hierome Osorio*. *Emanuel Fernandez Villareal* helped me to the sight of it. and from me it went to D. *Hierome Mascarennus* of the Council of Orders in *Casile*.

2. Five

2. Five Decades of *James de Canto* Historiographer of *India*, from the 8th to the 12th, the last but half compleat.

3. The History of the Actions of *D. Paul de Lima*, a great Man in *India*, by the same *Canto*.

4. The 13th Decade of *Antony Bocarro*, Historiographer of *India*, yet not divided into 10 Books, as the Title implies.

5. Military Affairs of *India*, a Book of great Learning written by *Francis Rodriguez Silveira*, who served there some Years, and gained Reputation.

6. The Spiritual Conquest in *Asia*, by *F. Paul of the Trinity* a Franciscan in the Year 1630. I saw it upon occasion of its being designed to be Printed at *Madrid* in the Year 1638, when the Ordinary sent it to me for my approbation. It is a good Work, and treats of what relates to that Order.

7. A Translation of that which among the *Malabars* is held in the same Account, as the Bible among us. It treats of their Gods and Ceremonies; it is strange, and resembles *Ovid's Metamorphoses*. The Heads of it are in the 4th Part of the 2d Tome of my *Asia*.

8. One Volume of several Relations of the Affairs of *Asia*, and of some Shipwrecks. A Relation of the Government of the Viceroy the Count de *Linnares*, given by his Order to a Spaniard, who promised to write his Actions. Another of the same by Captain *Dominick de Toral y Valdez*, who served under him in *Indis*.

9. A Copy of several other Relations communicated to me by *Emanuel de Severim*, as also the Book of the *Malabari*, that of the military Affairs, and that of *Bocarro* above mentioned.

10. Loose Papers and annual Letters of the Jesuits, imparted to me by *F. Alvaro Semmedo* of the same Order, out of which I afterwards collected the History intituled, *The Empire of China*.

11. The Chronicles of King *Alfonso* the 5th, and the Earl *D. Duarte de Meneses* Commander in *Africk*, by *Gomez Yanez de Azurara*, Historiographer to King *Alfonso* the 5th.

12. One Volume of divers Relations of Occurrences in *Africk*, during the Reigns of King *John II. Emanuel, John III. and Sebastian*.

13. A Description of *Ethiopia*, by *P. Emanuel Barradas* a Jesuit, who having seen the Country himself, truly and zealously discovers the many and remarkable Errors set down in his *Ethiopia* by the Learned and Elegant *F. Luis de Urreta, Emanuel Severim de Faria* imparted it to me.

Besides the Books above mentioned, there is much relating to *Asia* in the Chronicles of King *John II. King Emanuel, King John III. and King Sebastian*, as well in those which are still in Manuscripts, as those Printed.

*FINIS,*



